











J. G. Elliot

BARROUGH (Philip) The Method of Phisick, containing the Causes, Signes,
and Cures of Inward Diseases in mans body from the head to the
foote. Whereunto is added, the forme and rule of making remedies
and medicines, 4to. *clean copy, calf, very neat, red edges*

Imprinted at London, by Richard Field, 1596

6 0 0

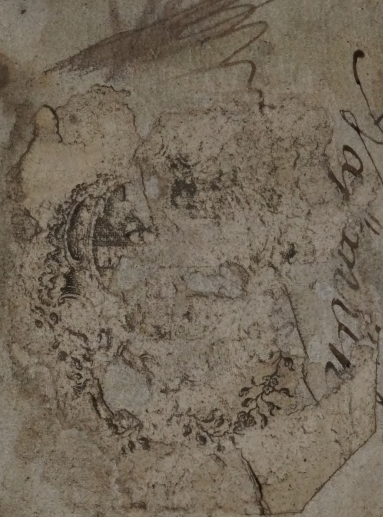
634 / B J. Elliot A. xxix. Bar

1826
1601

STC 154

- / 2

215



3/6 Michael
myrroel
myrroel

15.13.30
The
THE
METHOD OF
PHISICK, CONTAINING
THE CAUSES, SIGNES, AND CVRES
OF INWARD DISEASES IN MANS BODY,
FROM THE HEAD TO THE FOOTE.

Whereunto is added, the forme and rule of making remedies and medicines, which our Phisitions commonly use at this day, with the proportion, quantity, and names of each medicine.

By Philip Barrough.

The third Edition, corrected and amended.

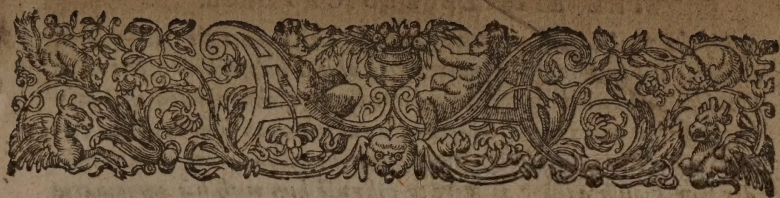


Imprinted at London by Richard field, and are to be sold in Paules Church-yard at the signe of the brasen Serpent. 1601.

Paigne
14/17/11

For the
New College
London

L. C. & Pict-



TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE AND HIS SINGVLAR GOOD LORD AND MASTER, THE LORD Burghley, high Treasurer of England, Knight of the most Noble order of the Garter, and one of the Queenes Maiesties most honorable priuie Counsell. P. B. wisheth all health, with long life and increase of honor.

TH E chiefeſt thing (Right Honorable and my ſingular good Lord) that emboldneth men to dedicate their labours vnto any perſonage, is the affinitie betweene the matter of the worke which they offer, and the mind of him to whom it is preſented. And as the ancient comickall Poets were wont to pen ſuch Enterludes, as they thought would be plauſibly heard of their auditorie: ſo our common writers do faſhion and ſhape the ſubiect of which they intreate, according to the affection of him, whoſe patronage they require in countenancing their wrutings: this (I ſay) though it be practiſed of all writers now a dayes, and might haue ſerued as a fit preſident for me to haue followed: yet haue I ſwarued and digreſſed from ſo generall a cuſtome, in preferring this labour of mine to the view of your Honor (the matter ſo farre diſſenting from your Honors diſpoſitions) ſo that as it may perhaps not without ſome colour be objected, that I might haue provided farre better (had I bene any way ſufficient) both for the acceptation of my labour, and alſo for the fit anſwering of your Honors affection, if I had treated of the politicke gouernement of our country,

[THE EPISTLE DEDICATORIE.

and of the weilding of a common wealth: to the necessitie of which calling, not Fortune the *Queene* of the olde Philosophers, but God himselfe hath called, or rather enforced you, if that opinion of Plato be true, that euery good Magistrate taketh upon him his office unwillingly. But that obiection will soone be taken away, if we consider how foolish a thing it were to instruct him with his imaginarie precepts, whom (besides a great light of nature) most happie experience hath made a perfect and absolute gouernour. Plato that most graue and wise doer of the State tyrannicall, was so many times conuicted of follie, how often he aduentured in the presence of kings to discourse of the regiment of a common wealth. Dionysius (of whom it was doubted, whether he did more harme by his extreme cruelty, or good by his promident wisdom, which both he left a like to his successors to imitate) called that notable Philosopher (whom I euen now named) into Sicilia of purpose to heare him, and with great patience listened to him, as he disputed of mans felicitie, and admired him as he handled those morall vertues, which Socrates his maister was feigned to haue brought from heauen, and as he treated of the frame and machine of the world: but on a time (taking aduantage by the kings attention) when he had stolne into the discourse of pollicy, Dionysius felt himselfe so moued, that he had exercised his tyranny against him also, if Dion and Aristomanes had not recovered him out of his iawes, and so ridde him out of the land, by selling him to Polis the Lacedomonian Merchant. And this was the verdict, that the wise king (when his furie was somewhat calmed) gaue of that most learned Philosopher for his wholesome counsell (as he thought) namely, that his discourses seemed vnto him to be the prattles of idle old men: so much experience disdaineth to be controlled by art, and so impatient is he of instruction, whose knowledge is acquired Vsu & Memoria (the two aunient parents of wisdom.) What a great argument of follie therefore shall he giue, that shall go about to lay a plot for your Honor, from whence you may deriue an example of gouernement, who haue so many yeares in so troublesome a common-wealth, and to the most wise and vertuous Princeesse in the world; bene retained as a most honorable and graue Counsellor? I will not say, as Zopyrus vnto Darius, or as Cineas vnto his Pyrrhus, or as Cresus vnto his Cyrus, the one of which by pollicie aduised his king to circumuent his enemies, the other allured them to
his

THE EPISTLE DEDICATORIE.

his subiection by his eloquence, and the third by his owne unfortunate experience directed him how to conuey any dangerous enterprife. All which serued their Princes to none other vse, but to helpe them to purchase the worst part of glory by bloudy oppression: but rather as a Nestor vnto his Agamemnon, as a Zenophon vnto his Cyrus, and as a Plutarch vnto his Traian, which thought it not so glorious to tie their enemies to them by forced feare, as their friends and neighbours by peaceable amity, the strongest guard that Princes can trust vnto. I must needs confesse that these comparisons do faile in representing so much as I do conceiue, for that I may not feare the suspicion of flattery in so manifest a truth, can the whole Scene of mans life so gorgeously and stately set foorth by the Historians of seuerall ages, shew vs at one time, on one stage two such notable actors, namely, so redoubted, so peerelesse, and so vertuous a Princeesse holding the septer, so graue, so wise, and so provident a counsellor sustaining the person of Eubolus? I wold I might (my credit saued with your Honor) pursue your praises yet farther, but I know very well, that you (who with an vnwearied affection do not cease continually to commit such vertuous deedes as deserue to be eternized for euer) are soone tired, when you heare them remembred by another. And truly I would not haue spoken so much for feare of offence, but that I know for a certainty, that you ascribe the being of your vertues to God the giuer of all good things, before whom to extenuate our graces, I know not whether it be more blame worthy, then shamelesly to assume vnto our selues, what soeuer is wrongfully attributed vnto vs by our flattering friends. But to what end (will you say) are all these words? namely to this: to excuse my selfe, in that I haue not laboured to fit your affection in the presentment of this my labour, which is so impossible, in respect of your singular knowledge in all kind of good learning, that there is no man so selfewise or lofty, which feareth not to come vnder your learned censure. Which excellency of yours when I had looked into, and had found my selfe altogether vnable to answer: I purposed (as I thought) more politikelly to assay your humanitie, which (indeede) graceth all the rest of your vertues, which (I thought) I might soone abuse in offering such a subiect, in which some studie and industry (besides many yeares) had made me in part able to iudge, and such a one, as the earnest affaires of the common-wealth, in which you are alwayes busied.

THE EPISTLE DEDICATORIE.

together with the inconuenient vneafnesse of the studie hath kept your Honour from being acquainted with. Which bold attempt of mine, your wisdom shall so much the easier be brought to pardon, by how much the more earnestly your rare clemencie encouraged me to enterprise: for I doe plainly confesse, that I haue not thought this Booke of mine worthy to be perused of your Honour, as well because of mine owne vnabilitie, who am altogether vsufficient to performe any thing that your Honor may like of, as also in respect of those manifold graces, wherewith the Lord hath filled you: by the vertue of which you could in a tongue (farre more eloquent then this of ours) discern and know the secrets of Physicke which I haue now in part reuealed, if the common weale of vs all did not rather carrie you away, than that delight which is otherwise reaped by priuate studie. And yet neuerthelesse, when I consider with my selfe, that it was not the affection of any popular praise, but an honest zeale to benefite my countrymen, which begot in me this desire to publish this worke, and also (if I may without the suspect of vaine glorie seeme to diuine of the issue of my labours) perceiving that they might bring some commoditie vnto the more ignorant sort of our common Practitioners and Amperiques (if they were with diligence perused:) and thirdly, when I perceiued in my selfe a certaine earnest willingnesse which I haue alwayes had (though of late it hath bin more vehemently inflamed) to commend some peece of seruice vnto your Honor: (I say) these causes meeting thus together, did especially aduance me (though many doubts stept afore me in mine enterprise, offering to reinforce my ouer presumptuous determination) with such a bold confidencie as it were to rush into your presence, and to demand without any shew of merite, your Honors most favorable protection, that this booke of mine (vnable of it selfe) may run under your patronage, which as it were Gorgon his buckler, I wil obuert & turne against al the venomous bytings of slanderous tongues. The Lord God (who hath made you a notable instrument to worke the aduancement of his glorie, the furtherance and propagation of good learning) lengthen and protract your life beyond your fatall period, and giue you a will to liue, a desire still to beare vp that burthen which her Maiesstie hath layed vpon your shoulders, and with these, all good successe in this world, and eternall happinesse in his kingdome.

Your Honors most humble seruant,
PHILIP BARROVGH.

The



THE PREFACE TO THE READER.



When God had perfected the wonderful worke of his (I meane the frame of the world) and had ascribed to euerie parte thereof his speciall dutie : namely, to the water to harbour fishes, to the ayre to vphold all feathered foules, to the earth to foster beastes, and to produce and bring forth good and wholesome herbes and trees : and ouer all these, as regent and gouernour, had appointed man his last and noblest creature : he demaunded of his Angels who were present with him at this worke, what might be desired in this so rare and strange a workmanship: who answered nothing but a tongue to vnfold the secrets of his labours, to talke and commune of them, with the which also, he, as workeman of all, might be extolled and magnified: who partly moued with this suggestion, perceiuing it to be a notable meanes to ad-uaunce his glorie, as before he had infused into man a conceiueable minde, apt to vnderstand his mysteries : so now he gaue him a tongue, able to vtter the sundry conceptions of the heart, whatsoever it imagined. This fable (proceeding I know not from what braine) is remembred of *Philo* the Iewe in his treatise of the world, which seemeth to imply thus much, that as there is nothing within this mortall circuite, that God hath, as it were kept to him selfe, and not made subiect to the industrious capacitie of man : so there is no meanes by which a man can approach nearer vnto the perfection of that nature which he first enioyed, and then lost by his fall, then by the painefull indagation of the secretes of nature, or anie way, whereby he may more truly glorifie his maker, then in his life time with his tongue to communicate that knowledge which he hath by his industrie atchieued, and to haue a care also, that it may be faithfully commended to his posteritie. And doubtlesse this was the consideration, that moued the wise king *Salomon* to wade so farre in the searching of the causes of things, who abandoning all those glistening shewes, which his riches and kingdome profered him, applied his minde to the studie of nature, and compiled a great volume, wherein he largely discoursed not onely of birdes and beastes, but of all herbes and trees, euen from the Cedar of Libanon, to the Hysope that groweth out of the wall. And the selfe same opinion of the excellencie of that kinde of life, hath from time to time inuaded the mindes of many Kings and noble personages, vowing to them selues without anie light of their forefathers, to go through the cloudie darkenesse of nature. And although they sometime stumbled, yet are they to be pardoned, if we consider both the obscuritie and the length of the way they went in. *Zoroastes* the reputed sonne of *Noah* was the first, that of many confused experiments, began to fashion out and as it were to delineate the beginning of an Art, by setting downe certaine

THE PREFACE

precepts of the same, and after him *Osiri* the King of *Ægypt*, and *Zesostris* also King of the same country (though rudely) layed the foundation of Astronomy by demonstration of the course of the heavens, and of phisicke, by opening the nature of many herbs, and also the secrets of their water of *Nilus*. To the worthinesse of which secret, *Plato* that great Philosopher did willingly subscribe, when falling into a grievous malady in *Ægypt*, and being not able by his own experiments (though he had assayed many) to cure himselfe, he was preserved by the Priestes of that countrey, who taught him the vertue of their water, whereas after, in remembrance of this benefit, he wrote this verse rehearsed by *Laertius*: *Mare universa proluit hominum mala*: the sea doth wash away all the infirmities of man. So that by this we may see, that this noble and learned Philosopher had neuer brought vs newes out of *Ægypt*, either of their policy & government of their country, or of the rare and exquisite knowledge in Astronomy, if he had not tasted of the benefit which the phisicke of that time afforded him. But we will remember some of those Kings, who had an especiall fantasy to this Art, whose names are deuolued and brought vnto vs by the succession of ages, though their workes haue not escaped the wracke, but haue perished in the seagulf of antiquity, which hath swallowed the doings of many men. And *Mithridates* the king of *Pontus* shall be the first, who at one time vndertooke two mighty battels, the one with the Romaines, the other with nature. In the last of which, the more dangerous, he preuailed like a conqueror, and in the first he dealt so valiantly, that the glory of his forepassed victories suppressed and killed the remembrance of his last ouerthrow. The which (as *Plinie* remembreth) was alike profitable to the common-wealth, and to mans life: for in his Manour where he lay, there were found many bookes written by his owne hands, both of the vertues of herbes, and of the constitution of mans body, with remedies of many infirmities of the same. *Euax* also the king of *Arabia* wrote a booke of the effects of simples, which he dedicated to *Nero* the Emperour. But what should I reckon particularly the names of euery one, when in former ages there was no king, either of *Æthiopia*, *Ægypt*, or *Arabia*, who did not himselfe either write somewhat concerning this Art of phisicke, or else by his liberalitie encouraged others to employ their time in the same: which may make much (no doubt) to the credite of the Art, when as Kings haue appropriated it to themselves, and haue thought themselves honoured by the profession of the same. And as many arguments do induce me to beleue besides the witnesse of the Historians, that phisicke is the Arte, wherein many Kings haue trauelled and delighted: so nothing more strongly then this, that whereas other gods were tyed to their seuerall places, as *Iupiter* to *Elis*, *Diana* to *Ephesus*, *Apollo* to *Delos*, & so forth. *Æsculapius* the son of *Apollo* by the daughter of *Phlegias*, made a god for his cunning in phisicke, hath his temple & altars euery where, in *Corinth*, in *Lacedæmon*, in *Athens*, in *Thebes*, in *Epidaur*, in *Arcadia*, *Messenia*, and in many other countries (as *Pausanias* remembreth) all which honors which were done to him (no doubt) were instituted by the kings and rulers of those countries, who specially fauoured that Art, thinking it great reaso, that he who inuented an art so generally available for mankind, should be generally honoured of all men. And (I pray you) how much

TO THE READER

much inferour was the renowne of *Hippocrates*, who descended of his line, saying that the one was placed amongst the Gods in heauen, & the other reuerenced as a mortall god vpon earth? Did not he make *Coos*, the place where he was borne, of an inglorious Iland a famous countrey, onely by the accessse of other nations, who were brought thither by the report of his wonderfull skill in Physicke? what familiarity had he with Kings? what estimation among the Philosophers of that time? as *Democrates* & others? and to conclude, how was his fame spread vniuersally throughout all Greece? I will not tarry vpon the recitall of the famous Physitions, who haue liued before vs in seuerall ages, as *Dioscorides*, *Galen*, *Paulus Aetius*, *Aegineta* and others. For it will easily appeare of what credit this noble science of physicke was in times past, if you consider the insolency and pride of ancient Physitions, whereof many of them disdained the fellowship of Kings, and some of them emboldned onely by the credit of their science purchaied amongst men, grew to such impudency, that they wold haue ceremonies and rites performed vnto them as vnto gods. One such was *Themison Ciprius* the dainty of *Antiochus*, another was *Thessalus* whom *Galen* maketh mention of, who went about to innouate and change the method of Physicke set downe by *Hippocrates* and others. But the most famous of all was *Menocrates* the Syracusan, who foolishly vsurped the name of *Iupiter*, oftentimes boasting, that by his Arte he could breath life into mortall men, after the manner of *Iupiter*: which arrogant title the people neuer went about to derogate from him, but rather supposed that it was deserued on his part, because he cured many of the falling euill, which disease especially reigned in his time. This *Menocrates* in a certaine Epistle which he wrote to *Philip* the King of Macedonie, vsed these wordes: Thou art King of Macedon, and I of Physicke, it lyeth in thy power at thy pleasure, to destroy men which enioy their health, and in mine to preserue sicke men, and restore dead men to life, and to keepe the health of men vnspotted, euen vnto their old age, if they will obey me. Vnreasonable surely and monstrous was the pride of this man, and it was so fedde with the applause and approbation of his Citizens, who wondred at his rare cunning, that he marched in the Citie with a trayne of gods after him: one in the habite of *Hercules*, another in the shape of *Mercurie*: another tooke vpon him the forme of *Apollo*, and he himselfe supereminent in the middest resembling *Iupiter*, woare a purple robe, and a Crowne of gold vpon his head, and held in his hand a mighty scepter. The opinion of this science did so possesse the mindes of the people in those dayes, that they imagined the professor of the same to be sent immediatly from heauen, for the commodity of the whole countrey, and for the preseruati-
 on of mankind: which made them not to doubt to doe vnto them all superstitious reuerence that might be, whereof grew this excessive pride, which hath arrested as it were the mindes of many Physitions. I would not wish that the Physitions of our time should draw this vnto an example, but rather with all lowlinesse to visite euen the poorest, when their helpe is required, for seeing that the life of the most miserable vassall is as deare in the sight of God, as the life of the most renowned Monarch, shall not the Physition looke to haue a shrewd checke at Gods hand, if he either hath

THE PREFACE

proudly denied his helpe to the poore, or negligently visited them? I will not descend into this common place, though (to speake the truth) the arrogancie of many of our Physitions might giue me sufficient occasion, wishing them to leaue off to imitate the swelling insolencie of *Menecrates* and the rest; and to tract rather in the steppes of *Hippocrates* and *Galen*, of whom it is thus written: that they neuer disdained to shroude themselues vnder the simplest rooffe in their countrie, to do the poorest man good: and as they themselues said (besides the glorie that they purchased by their courteous benignitie) they added alwayes to their cunning, and by experience confirmed their Arte and knowledge, which might well stagger, if you respect the infinite varietie of diseases, & the strange diuersities of mens dispositions. And truly if nothing else, yet the enriching of their knowledge, which is gathered especially by long experience, might be cause good enough to attract & draw them to lay hold of any occasion to go to the diseased person. And in mine opinion, the neglecting of this, which proceedeth either from couetousnesse or pride, hath bene the onely cause, that euen from the beginning, there haue bene reckened so few good Physitions: for exempt only *Hippocrates*, *Galen*, *Anicen*, *Agineta*, *Aetius* and *Soranus*, though the number of common Physitions hath bin great you shal not find any that haue climed vp to the perfection of their science: nay farre from that, which might chalenge the fift or sixt place. Which although some men will ascribe to the laborious difficultie and confused vastnesse of this Arte especially: yet I dare boldly affirme, that there hath not bene, nor is, any such blocke or stay, which hath impeached so much their endeouours, as the defect of experience. And truly I cannot more fitly compare our *Æmperiques* and practitioners, then to him that purposeth to be a sea-man and traueller, who though he studiously striueth to attaine to the perfection of his Art, though he carefully busieth him selfe about the Cosmographickall mappes, though he industriously peruseth the books of Nauigation; nay (that which is more) though he diligently conferreth with verie expert Sailers: yet when he hath forsaken the quiet haven, and launched out into the rough seas, and hath taken vpon him the government of the ship, when he shall behold so many horrible mountaines of water, the roaring of so many huge waues, and the outraging surges of the disquieted monster, he wil then confesse that he onely dreamed before, when he imagined of the course of the seas, that his bookes were lame schole-maisters, that the tales of his companions were a great deale lesse then the things themselues: when he shall cast vp his eyes, and thinke that euery starre which he had hoped to haue vsed as guides and directions, had threatned his ruine and destruction, when he shall looke downe and tremble at the rising of euery waue, when he shall turne him about, and with great feare seeketo eschue those rockes, which he had read were couched in that part of the sea: and to conclude, when he shall consider the hugeness of the Ocean sea, and the smalnesse of his barke, he will thinke sure the least perrie or gale were of force to ouerwhelme him, notwithstanding his great cunning he had thought he had gained on the land. Euen so fareth it with our common Physitions, who while they containe them selues within the compasse of their litle studie, where they do as it were, *ē tabula pictos ediscere mundos*, where

they

TO THE READER.

they perceiue their science redacted into a method, where they see *Galen* reaching his hand to them to leade them throughout the whole body of physick, by whom they are taught the constitution of the bodie, the diuersitie of temperature, the varietie of diseases, the causes, signes and symptomates of the same, they straight way imagine, that they haue runne the race, and that they haue acquired as much knowledge as becommeth an *Æmperique*. But after that, when they go forth into the common wealth to practise, when they shall meete with diseases which *Galen* neuer dreamed of, when they shall view the maruellous and secret affections and properties of mens bodies, the sudden and momentanie changes of the same (which a man can scarcely follow with his mind) when they shal perceiue, that in respect of the strange temperature of the bodie, & the violent alteration of the same, they scarcely can aime at the disease, when they shall strike vpon so many rocks: besides their great paines and watchfull industrie, will it not (thinke we) amaze them? wil they not confesse then that their Art is vnperfect? will they not acknowledge (thinke you) that as experience was the ancient beginner of Physicke, so that now it is the true & sincere accomplisher of the perfection of the same? Since therefore the case so standeth, that Art is weake without practise, and that (as *Galen* saith) experience is gotten *longo rerum usu*, let the Physitian (if he doth not preferre lying fame and vile lucre before true and absolute knowledge) let him (I say) that his minde may be enriched, not leaue the poorest house vnfrequented. But to say the truth, there is nothing derogateh so much from the excellling in their science, as doth the opinion of perfection, which is especially gotten by the iudgement of the multitude, the peruerse determiner of things. For, when a man knoweth his name to flie amongst them, he sitteth still and admirereth himselfe, thinking then, that he hath studied enough both for himselfe and his countrie, when he hath gotten his name enrolled amongst the number of excellent Physitians by that ignorant & vnaduised register. I haue spoken this by the way, and the interiection of these few lines hath not made me to forget (good Reader) that I before discoursed of the glorie of this science, and how it hath bene accounted of in times past: the dignitie whereof, though it be something lessened and empaired (which whether it hath happened by the ignorance of our Physitians, or by the sinister opinion of the world, I will not now discusse) yet if we wil vprightly wey with our selues, we may perceiue that the iudgement of men hath not any whit detracted from the true dignitie of the thing it self. For truly, what can be more noble then to preferue the bodie of a man in a good estate, which of the Philosophers is termed, a litle world, in respect of the varietie of his seuerall functions? What can be more excellent, then to be able to maintaine and keepe in order that best workmanship of God, and (that which is more) to correct, reforme, and amend it, and as it were a cunning Pylot, to gouerne and rule it as a litle vessell cast out into the great Ocean, subiect (I do not know) to how many rockes and dangers, if it be not vprightly weilded? And seeing there is nothing giuen vnto vs of God, more acceptable then the health of the bodie, how honorably must we thinke of the meanes, by which it is continued, and restored if it be lost? *Pirrius* the king of Epire did sacrifice vnto no other god or goddesse, but only vnto health

THE PREFACE

to whom he erected a famous temple in his owne country, calling it *Templum sanitatis*. He contemned or at the least neglected al oracles which other Princes busily sought after, as predictions of the euents and successes of the batrels which they attempted, or any other the like enterprise. He craued nothing at the hands of the Gods, but onely the fruition of his health, thinking that industry & diligēce, meeting with the health of the body, were able to achieve any thing, were it beset with neuer so many dangers. And in mine opiniō (as the Historiā very grauely discourseth) men do foolishly erre, when they cōplaine of nature for limiting the age of mā within the cōpasse of so few yeres, as three or foure score: whē as truly, if the matter were well expended, we wold confesse, *Industria potius quā tempus deesse* (as he saith) and that there is no arte or science, be it neuer so difficult, but might be perfectly knowne within that short precinct, if the greater part of our life did not passe and vanish away in darkenesse (slouth and ignorance drowning and ouerwhelming in vs all light of nature) or if the course thereof were interrupted and cut off by vntimely death, which is hastened on our parts by our inordinate and heedlesse liuing. The yongman flourishing as it were in the April of his age, cockereth in himselfe a foolish imagination of his owne lustinesse, and reputeth it as a discredit to him to seeme to feare the approach of any disease, leauing the prouident government of the body to decrepitate & withered old age. In the meane time he layeth the reyne vpon his affections, and exposeth himselfe to anie inconuenience: either he weltereth in idlenesse, or is tyred with immoderate exercise, or (that which is incident specially to that part of our age) he admitteth vnseasonable watchings, surfetting, bankers, and the vnstiate excecuring of the follies of *Venus*, thinking indeed that there is nothing lesse agreeing vnto youth and adolescencie, then to be pliant and obedient to any commendable & wholesome method of life: yea many of them are of this mind, that the time of their youth is infamously ouerslipped, when they do not rush in their voluptuous & inordinat demeanour, at what time the lusty prime of their age do somewhat enable & support the: & if at any time they be ouertakē with any infirmity (which often happeneth) as vnwilling to be beholding to the science of phisick, they leaue it to be worn away by the strength of their body, which indeed I confesse hideth many diseases, & for the time taketh away the sence of them, but it neuer vtterly extinguisheth any: for although in the infancy of the infirmity, in respect of the weakenesse of it, it be easily depressed and ouermastred by the valour of the body (which in youth is something puissant & forcible) yet whē age comming on with his stealing steps, or else recklesse life doth detract from the force of the one, & maketh way for the other to spread & gather power, the disease being as it were the suruiour, possesseth the whole body, & at the last procureth his vtter subuersion. And many times it happeneth, that a disease breaketh out in old age, the cause whereof herhaps was giuen in our youth. And it fareth with vs, as it doth with them which are bitten with that little Serpent of Arabia, which striketh a man, but so secretly, that he neuer feeleth it, neither doth he know it but by the wound, which sheweth it selfe a long time after the foundation thereof was layed. The opinion that the ancient Physitions had of the effect of snow water, is of force to perswade

TO THE READER.

perswade this, who haue writren, that if snowe resolued into water be drunken of a young childe; it will as it were maintaine warre against naturall heate, and that with such continuance, as it will not shew his effect, vntill he hath attained vnto extreme old age. I do not altogether beleue this, although the great cold which is naturally in that water, may leade me to thinke, that it is of a mightie operation. But there is nothing more certaine then this; that many men reposing too much trust in the strength of their bodies, & so being carelesse in gain-standing & resisting the beginnings of maladies (which their dissolute order of life hath begotten and engendred) haue bene yoked by olde age before the course of their yeares did require it, and haue brought it so to passe, that their bodies haue bene nothing else, but store-houses & mansions of diseases. Which kind of men I may well compare to an euill and negligent tenant, who being settled in a faire dwelling house by his Land-lord, suffereth it to ruinate, and in the end to fall vpon his owne head for want of repairing: so they, when God hath bestowed their bodies vpon them as gorgeous palaces, or mansion houses, wherein the minde may dwell with pleasure and delight, do first by this euill demeanour shake, and discrease them, and then being altogether carelesse of repairing them, do suffer them to run to destruction, or else while they go about too late to vnderprop the declining to ruine, (as he that is lodged in an old cabbin, feareth lest with euery puffe of wind it should be ouerturned) so they quake at the least alteration of their body, & at euery little paine, do expect a final dissolution: then they will confesse vnto you, that while they rioted vnadvisedly in their youth, they did but build matter for repentence in age. And what do they else but by their examples giue vs to learne, that as the interception & praecision of diseases is verie auailable, which carrieth a man throughout his race with pleasure and delight, (so that nothing commeth more neare vnto the goodnesse therof, then (if by chance when we be plunged into any disease) carefully to provide that the beginning therof may be impeached: the which that thou mayest the better do, I haue (good Reader) for thy benefit, collected out of sundry authors, as it were a breuiarie or abridgement of phisick, & together with those deductions I haue interlaced experiments of mine own, which by long vse & practise I haue obserued to be true. Throughout the whole booke I haue bin more curious in prescribing the sundrie curations & waies to helpe the diseases, then in explaining the nature of them: my reason was, because if my books should come to the hands of the vnlearned a little would suffice (the former being more necessarie.) Again I knew, that the learned would not be contented or satisfied with it, though it had bene neuer so great: and yet I haue not omitted any necessarie signe, that the disease may appeare easily to any capable braine. I shall seeme boldly to haue aduentured the edition of this labour, seeing that I shall runne into the babble of our country Phisitions, who thinke their Arte to be discreditied, when it is published in a base tongue; and againe, are loth to haue the secrets of their science reuealed to euery man. Indeed I know that vnder some colour they may obiekt somewhat, but yet they may vnderstand, that I haue followed the example of many learned Phisitions both of our Englishmen and other countrymen also, who published their praecises in their mother tong, & in other countries,

THE PREFACE

especially it is so rife and common, that in Italie and France you shall not find any learned Phisition, that hath not written as much (nay rather more) in his owne cuntry language, then in Latin: yea we haue many bookes in phisicke, that haue first bene set out in French and Italian, and afterward for the commoditie of other nations, haue bene translated into Latine, and so made generall, which before the writer had as it were bequeathed to his countreymen. And no doubt they were all touched with an especiall care to profite their owne cuntry, being willing that all men (asindeed it concerneth all) should reape the commodities of their labours. For I cannot see, how that saying of *Quintilian* can be verified in this one Art (which is this) that then all Artes should be truely happie, when the professors of the same should onely iudge of them: but I haue alwaies bene of this mind, that it behoueth euery man to be cunning in his owne constitution, and to knowe so much as may serue to forestall the coming of many ordinarie diseases, which commonly light vpon the ignorant: yea and sometime to be able to chase away a maladie when it hath already caught hold of the bodie: my reason is, both because euery man may iudge best of his owne bodie, and perceiue the declininges and alterations of the same. And againe we knowe, how many haue died, and doe die continually for want of helpe, (the Phisition being not alwaies at their elbowe) whereas in the beginning of their sicknesse, a litle knowledge might haue stopped the passage of the infirmitie. In the old time when Phisicke was brought vnder no forme, but consisted onely of a few experiments which passed from hand to hand, young children together with other Artes did receiue certaine precepts and rules, how to order and gouerne the bodie, and learned also preseruatiues against poyson, and the receipt of salues to cure any greene wound, and the meanes to helpe certaine ordinarie diseases, which (indeed) were but fewe (the age of man being then farre more strong.) We reade how *Linus*, who was schoole maister to *Hercules*, when he had instructed him in the Art of wrastring, (which then was honored especially) and in Musicke, that he gaue him the receipt of a certaine balme, which he often vsed in many of his aduentures. And what was it that gaue matter to the fable of *Achilles*, how his mother *Thetis* had made his bodie impenetrable, but that knowledge of his which he had learned of his maister *Chyron* the Centaure, who taught him the vertue of an herbe, which to this day beareth his name, by which he healed all his wounds he receiued in battell: What an honorable mention doth *Homer* make of *Machaon* and *Podalirius* the sonnes of *Aesculapius*, in that they could cure themselves when they were at any time hurt of the enemy? This cunning also had *Mithridates*, and *Fabritius* the Romaine, he that vanquished *Pirrhus*, and also *Marcus Curius*, and many other who are recorded by histories, whose names I would remember, if I did not see the enlarging of this common place by examples to be altogether vnnesseary, when there is no man which so farre swarveth from common sense, that will not confesse it to be very expedient and needfull for all to know the estate of their owne bodies. I will therefore forsake the proouing of so manifest a thing, and returne vnto thee (good Reader) whom I haue already offended in exceeding the iust length of a Preface, like vnto that wayfaring man, who when he had purposed to vnder-

TO THE READER.

take a long journey, stumbled, euen in the very threshold of his dore. But if it be an offence, I did voluntarily runne into it, chusing rather to be carped at of the Rethorician for vsing too many words, then to be worthily reprehended of the readers for being too sparing in vterring the reasons whereby I was first adduced to publish this my labour. For I know not how it commeth to passe, yet we see it daily, that ridiculous toies and absurd pamphlets being put forth without any colour, be neuerthelesse plausibly and pleasingly accepted: whereas a man moued with an honest care to profite his countrey, being willing to leaue a testimony of the same behind him, when he offereth any work, if it hath not a delectable subiect, it behoueth him to shew many graue and substantiall reasons of his doings, or else they will not yeeld their hoped for benefit, which is to be benignely construed, and perused with humanity: so that if a man couet to haue his books fauorably accepted and read, he must behaue himselfe so in writing, as *Solon* did in framing his lawes, who (as *Plutarch* sayth) did not fashion them according to the true line of equity, but set down such as he thought the people would willingly obserue: euen so the iniquity of the time hath brought to passe, that those bookes which are generally perused, and read throughout, must not serue the time, but must satisfie the opinion of men. A man may easily discourse of this, but the fantasies of men are too variant to preuaile a whit in dissuading them. For mine owne part (that I may now end) I haue not sought nor hunted after any vaine glorie by the edition of this my labour, but only I haue endeouored by this meanes (being vnable any way else) to do some good to my countrey-men: which desire of mine shall sufficiently comfort me, though I want the outward probacion of the world. And yet this one thing I would craue at the hands of the learned, that if by chance my bookes come vnder their censure, they will either giue them their good word, or else suffer themselues to be iudged of by performing the like labor. And as *Martial* pretily sung;

Cum tua edas, carpi mea carmina Leli,

Carpere vel mli nostra, vel ede tua,

Though indeed this supplication of mine may rather more fitly be preferred vnto the vnlearned, who thinke they haue gotten a goodly meanes to purchase their owne credit, when they can vnder some colour maligne the doings of any man, as though others well doings were as impeachments to their estimations, or the errours of other men the subiect of their praises. Those kinds of serpents (I say) which do nothing else but picke quarrels with Authors, I would aduise them either to speake themselues, or (if their ignorance will not let the) to lay their finger on their mouth till other men tell their tale, and not to make their harvest of other mens offences vnwillingly committed, whilst they themselues rest vnable to do any whit of good. And thus (good Reader) I will abruptly end, expecting the fauorable accepration of these my labours, which expectation of mine (if it be not deluded) I shall be further encouraged to consecrate the residue of my studies to thy commodity.

Philip Barrough.

OF VWEIGHTS.

A brieue declaration of the notes of all those kindes of
weightes, which are generally vsed and contained through-
out this whole booke; and of the
quantitie of them.

FOrasmuch as the true and perfect knowledge in compounding of medicines, cannot be
attained vnto without the knowledge of the quantitie of weightes, which are at this
present day most commonly vsed in making of medicines: I will therefore here briefly de-
clare the vse of them: for seeing that the weightes of some medicines be so iustly and cer-
tainly ordained and made, that if any man do chance rashly to erre in the true quantitie
thereof, he doth much hurt to the bodie, and many times putteth the life in leopardie: you
must therefore diligently endeavour, and applie your minde to studie and consider of the
medicines, that so you may haue the more full and perfect knowledge thereof. The notes
which I (following the order of other Physitions) haue vsed in this my booke in writing of
weightes, be these, as followeth.

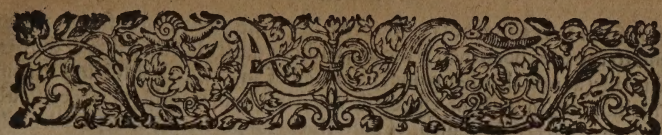
1. Grana.
2. Scrupuli.
3. Drachmæ.
4. Unciæ.
5. Quart.
6. Libræ.
7. Semis.
8. Manipuli.
9. Pugilli.
10. Ana.

11. G.
12. S.
13. D.
14. Q.
15. L.
16. M.
17. P.
18. Ana.

Have this note

A graine is a barley corne taken in the midst of the eare.
A scruple is twentie barley cornes.
Three Scruples containe a Drachme.
Eight Drachmes containe one Ounce.
Quart signifieth a quart of any thing.
Libra is a Pound.
Semis is the halfe of euery weight.
Manipulus, is a great handfull.
Pugillus is a small handfull.
Ana signifieth of euery one alike much.

THE



THE METHOD OF PHISICK, CONTAINING THE CAUSES, SIGNES AND CVRES

of inward diseases in mans body, from the
head to the foote.

The first Booke.

The first Chapter of Headach.

GALEN the Prince of Phisicians affirmeth, that there are only three sundry paines in the head: whereof the one is called of the greekes *κεφαλαλγια*, *Cephalalgia*, & of the Latines *Capitis dolor*: the barbarous sort of Phisitions call it *Soda*. In English it is called commonly the headach. The second kind is called of the Greeks *ημισφαλια*, and in Latine likewise it is called so *Cephalen*. In English it may be called a long continuing or inveterate headach. The third is called of the Greeks *ημισφαλια*, *Hemicrania* also is the Latin name for it. In English it is called the migraine. Of the two last kinds shall mention be made hereafter, for now we will intreate of the first kind, declaring only in this chapter, what it is, and what be the general causes thereof; and then in the chapters next following, shall the signes & cures of each cause be declared. Understand therefore first, that *Cephalalgia* is nothing else but a laborious and painefull sense & feeling newly begun in the whole head, through some great mutacion thereof: this word newly is added to make it differ from *Cephalen*, which is an old paine that hath long continued: and the whole head is added, to make it differ from *Hemicrania*, which occupieth but the one half of the head. Note also that by the head, we meane so much as is covered with haire, wherein paine is engendred, sometime without the skull, and sometime within, sometime in all the outward parts, and sometime in all the inward parts; sometime not in all, but in one part, as in the Arteries only, or the veynes, or the sinewes, or the filmes, or the skin, or in the braine it selfe; but these differences, as Galen testifieth, be very hard to know. But this may easily be knowen, whether the paine be within the skull or without it, if you consider well the headach: for if the paine be extended to the rootes and bottome of the eyes, the paine is within the skull, for vnto the eyes are certaine branches deriued from the braine, & from the filmes, & other vessels that are about it: so that the paine will quickly

*Differences of
paine in the
head three.*

1

2

3

*What Cepha-
lalgia or Soda
is.*

*The diversitie
of places that
paine is in.
Whether the
headach be
within the skull
or without it.*

*Causes of
headach gene-
rall.*

*Causes of
headach speci-
all.*

*Signes of each
cause of head-
ach generally.*

come from the roots of the eyes, but if the paine that is felt, do not extend to the eye roots, then is the ach without the scull. This paine of the head generally (as also all other paines) is caused of an vnequall distempure coming with humours or without, especially when it is hote or cold, or it is caused by solution of parts coherent, or of both. But as for particular and speciall causes of headach, there be very many: for sometime it commeth only of a simple distempure without any humours, and sometime it commeth through the euill quality of humours, sometime it commeth through great abundance of humours, sometime through humours that stop the passage of the vapours and moisture in the head: sometime through windinesse ingendred in some part of the head, being weake. Also sometime headach is caused of some disease in the stomacke: sometime of an outward cause, as of heate of the Sunne, of great cold, of drunkennes, or of some stripe, or wound. Hereby it appeareth that the headach is engendred of seven sundry causes, which are to be knowne by their proper signes, whereof we will speake more at large in the chapter following, for in this chapter they shall be but briefly touched. Note therefore that the headach, which is caused of a simple distempure without humours, is not easy to be knowne, except a man be well exercised in Phisicke, & by much and diligent looking of the grieve: but that paine of the head is most vehement, which is caused of a simple distempure being hote or cold. The headach that is caused of drinesse, is moderate. As for a moist distempure alone, it doth cause no headach, except it be ioyned with heate or cold, or with abundance of humours, or sharpnesse of them. If paine of the head doth come through abundance of humours, contained in one part of the head, or in two, or in all parts, the paine is more vehement that commeth of hote humours, or of cold: that which commeth of dry things is more moderate, if there be no manifest heate or cold ioyned with them. As for moist things touching their quality, they cause no paine at all, but with their quantity they may fill the passages, & so cause paine. If abundance of all foure humours equally, or of blood alone, do cause headach without obstruction & stopping of the passages, it maketh the head heauy and full, as it were stretched out and swolne, but if the multitude of humours be with obstruction, it causeth moderate paine if the obstruction be but light, but if the obstruction be great, there shall be very great paine. Also if the multitude of humours haue a sharpe and byting quality, according to that qualitie the paine will be pricking and shooting. If with the heauinesse or stretching in the head, there be beating, and as it were a pulse, it betokeneth inflammation in the head: But if the stretching be present without heauines or pulse, it declareth abundance of windy spirits, and in this kind of headach, there will be noise in the eares. Those that haue headach coming of an externall cause, as of heate of the Sunne, cold of the ayre, drunkennes, stripes, or of any hote fauours, can easily tell themselves the cause thereof. Seeke for signes more particular in the Chapters next following.

CHAP. II.

Of Headach caused of heate.

Causes

Vnderstand, that by heate in this chapter, is meant a hote distemper without any kind of humour. It is engendred for the most part of the burning heate

heate of the Sunne in Sommer, when any body hath tarried long in it. Also it is sometime caused of immoderate mouing, or by hot bathes, or by being long nigh the flame of the fire, or through anger, or furiousnes, or last of all through hote diseases, or hote saours of outward things. The signes which declare headach by burning heate of the Sunne, are, that besides vehement paine, you shall feele their head hote as soone as you touch it, and their skinne drier then it was wont to be, their eies do looke redde, and they are delighted with the sprinkling or annointing of cold things; and do feele great ease by them. As for the other causes, they may be knowne by relation of the sicke. For the cure of this kind of headach, you must first provide, that the ayre and the chamber wherein the sicke abideth, be very cold of nature, or else it must be made so by your diligence, as by strewing in the house, flours, & braunches of cold things (as roses, violets, water lillie flowres, and vine leaues, bryer boughes, willow and such like.) Also it will coole the ayre well to sprinkle cold water in the house, or to poure it out of one vessell into another. Great respect must be had to his sleeping, for he must sleepe longer then he was wont to do; he must altogether eschue long watching, and keepe him selfe quiet; he must not retaine his excrements, but auoid them by and by after sleepe; if he can, or let nature be helped to expel the by a lenitiue clister, for their retetion increaseth paine in the head. Let him eschue carnall copulation, exercises, and bathes. Let him eschue all perturbations of the mind, especially anger and furie. Let him haue but litle meate, of good digestion; and let it be cold in operation, as is bread dipped in cold water, iuyce of prisan, lettuce, endiue, purselaine, flesh of chickens, hens, or pigeons, with ver iuyce made of grapes. Fishes are good that come out of stonie riuers, and that are tender. Also almond milke, pomegranates, raisins, and ripe pearces may be giuen to him. He must abstaine from milke, and meates that fume into the head, or that be hard of digestion. For his drinke, let him vse water altogether, if his stomacke will beare it, if not, seeth a litle cynamon in it, or coriander seed prepartate, or mixe with the water, iuyce of sower pomegranates, or syrupe of endiue, or *Syrupus acerosus simplex* or *oxy saccharum*: or if they cannot abide that, you may giue them small wine well allayed with water. The paine of the head caused of heate, is cured with such things as doe doole without manifest restriction, especially if they be of thinne & piercing substance. Therefore in the beginning nothing is better then to poure vpon the head good oyle of roses, made of vnripe oyle, and if a litle vineger be added to it, it will pierce the faster & the deeper. The places that you must powre or annoynt it on, is the fore part of the head, where the feame goeth ouerthwart, for it is the thinnest place of the scull, & the feames haue pores in them; also you must vse it on the toppe of the forehead, where the haire leaueth growing, and on the sides of the temples, where the haire groweth towards the eares. The best thing next oyle of roses, is oyle of camomill to be vsed in like sort, especially in those bodies that we would not coole too much, as women, eunuches, children, and other that haue soft flesh, and are white in colour. If there be need of greater cooling, you may add to the oyle of roses, iuyces of houslike, or purselaine, or knotgrasse, or of vnripe grapes, or nightshade, or sorrell, or psillium, or such like. Vse not iuyce of pop.

Signes.

Cure.
Ayre.

Sleepe.

Meate.

Drinke.

Cure.

Oyle of roses.

Oyle of camomill.

pye, or of mandrag in this cause, for they do hurt: you may make medicines of the former things, or such like, in this sort. *Rx.* oyle of roses $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. rose water. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. strong vinegar. $\mathfrak{z}$ ss. or iuyce of houslike, or purselaine, or lettuce, $\mathfrak{z}$ j. and so commixe them. Or thus, *Rx.* distilled water of houslike, lettuce, & nightshade. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. water of cammomill. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. ss. vinegar. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. commixe the and dip a cloth in it, and lay it all ouer the forehead, and the temples where the haire groweth not. But let not this medicine touch the hinder part of the head, for that part cannot suffer cooling without hurt, because the marrowe of the back bone beginneth there. Those medicines which you will vse for cooling, especially in sommer, must stand a while in very cold water. This also is good for abundance of humors, and vapours, that be lifted vp into the head. In like maner also you may vse other oyles that haue vertue to coole, as oyles of quinces, violets, water lillies, and gourds. Neither will it be vnprofitable to vse a liniment made in this sort. *Rx.* Of the mucilage of the seeds of quinces, and great mallowes, or of Psilium, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ iij. iuyce of purselaine, $\mathfrak{z}$ j. ss. iuyce of nightshade. $\mathfrak{z}$ ss. oyle of roses $\mathfrak{z}$ j. commixe them, and make a liniment: or by putting too waxe and other medicines make an oyntment in this sort. *Rx.* *Vnguenti populeon.* $\mathfrak{z}$ j. oyles of violets and roses, of each $\mathfrak{z}$ iij. drie flowers of white water lillies, & of red roses. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an oyntment, and annoint it vpon the forehead and the temples. It profiteth also to vse embrocations (that is decoctions made of certaine things to powre vpon any member by litle and litle, or to let it drop downe) they may be made of roses, violets, flowres of water lillies, willow leaues, vine leaues, purselaine, barley, & such like. You must not apply stupefactiue things to the grieffe, because they coole not without hurt, & therefore opium, iuyce of popie, and mandragora are to be eschued. Iuyce of nightshade also because of his stupefaction is not to be vsed at all, or very litle of it at once, as we do vse in the liniment aforesaid. Also those things that haue manifest astriction and binding with their cooling, are to be refused, except necessity require it, and therefore the iuyces of sweet pomgranates, quinces, and medlers, are to be auoyded, but iuyce of sower pomgranates is good, because it cooleth more. Hitherto we haue declared what medicines are to be vsed in the beginning of this grieffe. Afterward you may vse to mixe with the medicines that do coole and driue backe, such things as do mitigate and digest. Make therefore an embrocation after this sort. *Rx.* flours of roses and violets. ana. M. ss. leaues of willow, cammomill, and melilot, ana. M. j. seedes of mallowes $\mathfrak{z}$ iij. barley husked $\mathfrak{z}$ j. seeth these in two pound of water, til the third part be consumed, and make an embrocation. Or thus, *Rx.* mallow leaues, violets, roses, ana. pug ss. the flours of water lillies. $\mathfrak{z}$ iij. vine leaues, or the wreathes that they wind about things withall, purselaine, or houslike, of each, M. j. cammomill, melilot, & fenugreek, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ iij. seeth them as is abouesaid, & make an embrocha, adding too a litle vinegar, especially if the paine be within the scull. Last of all, you may vse most of the discusseue medicines, withdrawing the aforesaid repelling things, such be, *Althea*, dill, sothernwood, butter, cammomill, barley meale, fenugreece, linsede, lupines, &c. Of these & such like things you may make quills, or embrocations, or oyntments as you list. For inward medicines (especially

*A Liniment.**Vnguentum.**Embrosche.**Stupefacientia**Note.**Embrosche.**Alia.*

cially if the headach be caused of exercise, anger, or such like) minister Iulep of violets or roses, or their consues, or manus Christi, or giue the sicke ij. or iij. houres before meate in the morning ℥.j. and ℥. of syrupe of infusion of roses, or of syrupe of water lillies with ℥.ij. or iij. of water of borage or cychorie. It is good for the sicke to smell rose water, mixed with a litle vineger: also it is good to snuffe it vp in the nose.

CHAP. III.

Of headach caused of cold.

BY cold is meant in this Chapter, a cold distempere simply without the fluxe of any cold humour. This paine in the head is caused of outward cold, as when the ayre is very cold, especially when any body tarrieth in it long time bare headed, as also it may be caused by the sodaine applying of any cold thing to the head. The signes of headach caused of cold, are contrary to those signes that are caused of hote distempere. For in this, though the paine be vehement, yet the head when it is felt, is not hote, nor the face and eyes do not looke red, nor their face is not drie and shrunke, but contrariwise full and pale, and their eyes are swollen, and swart. Also they neither desire cold things, nor do feele ease by them. Concerning the diet of those that haue this kind of headach, they must eschue cold ayer, & abide altogether in hote ayer. They must sleepe moderately, but not longer then they were wont. They must vse mouing of the whole body, especially walking and riding. Let their bodies be soluble, rather then costive, so that they may each day haue a siege either by nature or by art, as by a suppositarie or a clister. Let them eschue sadnesse, and deepe cogitations, and other immoderate affections of the mind. Let them eschue all meates and drinckes that be cold in operation, as milke, fish, and such like. Let them eate reare egges, and flesh of hennes, chicken, partrich, and feldants, and such like. For their drinke let them vse wine that is thinne of substance, for that doth moderatly extenuate & heate. For the same cause also hote bathes are to be vsed. And generally for the cure hereof, you must vse things that be hote in operation. But yet in applying medicines to the head, you must diligently consider the natural temperature of the braine, for it is such a thing, as cannot suffer medicines vehement hote, nor yet vehement cold. Therefore (as Galen affirmeth) if oyle of rew be powred hote vpon the fore part of the head, it healeth the patient perfectly. But if there be need of greater heating, you may put pepper, or *euphorbium* into the oyle, or you may mixe some oyle of pepper, or oyle of *euphorbium* with the oyle of rew, or in the steed of oyle of rew, you may vse oyles of laurell, yreos, dill, or cammomill, of spiknarde, serpillum, marioram, and such like. Herewith you may annoint the forehead also, & the nostrils, & the holes of the eares. Of the aforesayd medicines you may make an ointment after this sort. *Rx.* Oyles of yreos, & rew, ana. ℥.℥. marioram, betonie, pepper, ana. ℥.j. of *Euphorbium*, gra. v. waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment, and annoint therewith the forehead and the nostrils, or make an ointment thus. *Rx.* of oyle of rew, cammomill, and nardinum. ana. ℥.j. hysope, lauender, and floures of stachas, ana. ℥.℥. masticke and frankensense, of each ℥.j. waxe a litle, & make an ointment. You may sometime adde to it, if you will, *castoreum*. ℥.j. Also embrocations profit much, if they be made

Inward medi-
cines.

Odeurs.

Cause.

Signa.

Virtus ratio.

Cura.

Vnguentum.

Alind.

Embrosche.

Sacculus.

Pomum odoriferum.

of flowers of melilot, and camomill, marioram, organ, betonie, sage, laurell leaues, stachas, and such like, sodden in water. It is good for the sicke to draw vp the vapours of such decoctions by his nostrils. Also a quilt made in this sort profiteth much. R. leaues of laurell, serpillum, and marioram, ana. M. ss. floures of rosemarie. M. j. rew. M. ss. cloues and stachas ana. ʒ. j. peniroyall and calamint, ana. ʒ. j. ss. beate these to powder, & sew them in silke, or fine linnen cloth, & make a quilt, which must be layd to the head warme, & first sprinkled with vinegar. It is good also to vse a pomander made in this sort; R. of storax calamitæ ʒ. ij. cloues, maces, wood of aloes ana. ʒ. ss. lauender ʒ. ij. gallia moschata ʒ. j. ss. of muske and amber, ana. gr. iij. powder them & searse them, and with water of marioram, and storax liquida as much as shall suffice, make pomanders.

CHAP. II. III.

Of headach caused by drinesse or moisture.

Causa.

Signa.

Vtilitas.

Curatio.

BY drinesse is meant in this place a dry distempure of the quality alone, and by moisture, a moist distempure of the bare quality. Neither of these qualities alone, except heate or cold be ioyned with them, do cause any headach at all (as Galen teacheth in the 5. Chap. of his first booke de symptomatum causis.) Therefore we do not make mention here of these distempures, as though headach might be caused of the alone, but that the studious in phisicke might haue store of medicines, when headach commeth of heate & drinesse, or moisture with heate, or whē cold mixed with drines, or moisture causeth headach. Headach through drines is caused through drines of the aire, or by dry medicines, by hunger, exercise, lechery, and perturbations of the minde. And headach of moisture is caused by moistnesse of the ayre, or by moistening medicines, by bathes, hote waters, & other things that moisten ouermuch. Drinesse is known by these signes, if there come few excrements, or none at all out of the nose, if the eyes be hollow, and the patient haue watched much before. These be signes of headach of drinesse: also in it the skinne of the head is drier when it is felt, then it is wonted to be, and some dry diet hath bene vsed. Also in this kind drie medicines do not ease the paine, but rather increase it. Moistnesse is knowne by these signes, much filth commeth out at the nose, the eyes be puffed vp and swolne, & the patient sleepeth much; but of this distempure alone there doth no headach ensue. Those that haue headach caused of drinesse, let them remaine in a moist ayre, and let them eate meates that do moisten, and that be of good iuyce, as the yolkes of egges, cocks stones, and the brothes of them, pheasants, partrich, and such like things that do nourish much and moisten. Let them drinke thinne wine alayed with water. Let them sleepe largely. Let them eschue motion of the body and exercise, and vse quietnesse and rest. Let them eschue carnall copulation, hunger, thirst, and all things that do drie. Let them vse bathes of sweet waters that are warme. Let them be merrie, and eschue all other perturbations of the mind. If headach be caused of moisture, you must vse the contrary diet to this that is before prescribed (that is, all such things as do drie, which you may easily know by that which hath bene sayd before.) For paine of the head caused of drinesse, you must annoint the former seame

seame of the head with oyle of sweet almonds, or with oyle of gourds, or with oyles of violets, and cammomill mixed together. It is also good to drop some of these oyles into the nostrills. You may also mixe very well with the said oiles goose grease, hens grease, calues grease, or fresh butter after this sort; R. oyles of violets, and water lillies, ana. ʒ. iij. calues suit, hennies grease, and fresh butter, ana. ʒ. ij. commixe them, and make a liniment, and therewith annoint the head. Furthermore, embrocations profit not a litle, if they be made of violers, mallowes, & other hearbes that haue vertue to moisten. Against headach caused of moisture, you must vse medicines cleane contrarie to the aforesamed, which must differ according to the heate or cold which is ioyned to the moisture. You may find sufficient store of such remedies out of the former chapters.

Linimentum.

CHAP. V.

Of Headach caused of blond.

Hitherto we haue spoken of the cure of headach, which commeth through alteration and distemper of the bare qualitie, but now we will speake of that which is caused of fulnesse and abundance of blood: we call plenitude in this place that which the Greeks call in their tongue *plethora*, it chanceth whe all the foure humours be increased in their proportion, or when blood alone doth abound. This kind of headach is caused of all such things as do ingender great abundance of humours in the body, as meats and drinkes of great nourishment being plentifully take, as also the neglecting & omitting of exercises, bathes, sweatings, & other naturall & artificiall vacuations be causes of the said plenitude. The signes be these. The face & the eyes be ruddy, the veines are swolne, so that the least & smallest may easily be seene, the pulse is great & vehement, the vrine reddish & thicke, the veines of the temples beat, the paine in the head is a heauinesse. Concerning diet, let the sick be in a cold & dry aire: let him eschue flesh, reare egges, and such things as nourish plentifully: let him vse pisan made of barley, or alica made of barley: let him vse cold herbes, as endiue, scarjoll, purcelaine, lettuce, and such like: let him eschue wine, and let him drinke water wherein a litle cinnamon or barley hath bene sodden: let him vse meane exercise: let him be rubbed: let him also vse bathing often, but so that his body be first emptied, and the patient free from a feuer. Let his sleepe be meane: let him be merrie and ioyfull: and let him abstaine from all other perturbations of the mind. The cure must be begun with bloodletting as soone as can be. You must open the vtermost veine, which in the arme is called *humeralis*, or *Cephalica*, it must be on the arme which is of that side that the griefe is most vehement: for this vetne is so annexed to the head, that not only by it you shall pull backe blood into a contrarie part, but also you shall empty out that blood by it, as *Hippocrates*, and after him *Galen*, and *Rhases* do teach. But if age or weaknesse do prohibite bloodletting, you must vse boxing, not to the head it self, but to the parts adioyning, as the shoulders and breast, to the intent to pull backe the blood. These being done, you must apply to the head, medicines that be cold and astringent, whereof we haue made mention before sufficiently in the second chapter, so that they need not here to be repeated,

What is meant by plenitude.

Cause.

Signa.

Vetus ratio.

Curatio.

Vena sectio.

Cucurbita.

Pentose.

Localia.

*Decoctum pur-
gans.*

Furthermor the Physitiō must haue special regard in this case, that the patient be kept soluble. Therefore if the patient be any thing costive, you may minister this decoctiō, or some such like. *Rx.* flowers of buglosse, borage, roses, & violets, ana. M.℥. the foure great cold seeds husked, ana. ʒ. iij. sebestē, damaske proines, of each in number xij. great raisins, tamarindes, ana. ʒ. j. bakes of mirabolanes, citrinorum, indorum, chebulorum, emblicorum, belluricorum, ana. ʒ. iij. liquo- rice, ʒ. j. fumitorie, maidenhaire, ana. M.℥. tamariscus, harts tongue, ana. ʒ. iij. sene, and polipodie, of each ʒ. ℥. agaricke chosen, ʒ. ij. ℥. ginger ʒ. ℥. Seeth all these in a sufficient quantity of water, vntill halfe be consumed, then straine it and presse it hard. Adde to that decoction suger sufficient to make it sweet, pu- rifie it with the white of egges, and make a potion, whereof the patient shall drinke each morning, ʒ. iij. fasting. And if so be that the patients costiuenesse require a stronger medicine, then you may adde to foure ounces of the afore- said decoction ʒ. j. ℥. offine reubarbe beaten to powder, and spicknard, ʒ. ℥. or you may dissolue it in *casia fistula*, ʒ. j. ℥. newly drawne, or ʒ. j. of manna, or of diaphenicon, ʒ. iij. for the same purpose, also it is good to minister vnto the pa- tient syrupe of violets, and *Acetosus simplex*. After this you must apply such me- dicines to the head, as be able to disperse the remnant of the paine & disease, as is, seeds of mallowes, fenugreeke, cammomill, & melilor floures. Also oyles of camomill, dill, and such like, wherof the Physition may at his choise make liniments, ointments, or emplaisters in maner aforesaid. Note here further, that if much bloud abound after you haue let bloud of the *Cephalica*, you may also strike the veine in the forehead: as also for that purpose it is good to vse clysters sometime very strong, and you may vse frictions and bindings of the neather parts to pull backe the humours. Moreouer, gargarising and sneezing may be vsed in time conuenient, & boxing in the hinder part of the head, with scarification, at the discretion of the Physition, as occasion & time shall serue.

Dysententia.

CHAP. VI.

Of headach caused of choler.

Cause.

Headach comming of cholericke humors is caused of all such things as do heat and drie the whole body, and especially the head vnnaturally, that is, such things as do ingender choler: (to wit, care, anger, paine, labour, exercise, watching, abstinence, famine, and eating of meates that be cholerike, as gar- like, onions, and such like. The signes be these: the paine is like theirs that haue headach caused of burning heat of the sun, but they haue a more sharp and pricking paine, their head is moderately hote, their face is pale & wanne. Sometime there followeth bitternesse of the mouth, driness of the eyes, nose, & tongue. Moreouer, this euill chanceth most of all to flourishing years, a hote complexion, and to them that take ouer much businesse in hand, and such like.

Signa.

Vtilis ratio.

Let the patient abide in a cold and moist aire, which may be the rather pro- cured by arte, as is taught before in the second chap. by sprinkling the floore of the chamber continually with water, or by strewing about of floures & branches that are cold & moist in operatiō. Let his whole diet be moist, let him eat moist meats that be of good iuyce, giue him lettuce, & purslaine, and small fishes of fresh waters, Let his drinke be water alone, or water wherein a litle cynamon hath

hath bin foddren. Let him altogether abstaine from wine. Let him be quiet, & vse long sleepes, bathes that be temperate, vnctions are good for him, let him be merrie, and refraine from all perturbations of the mind. The cure must be begun with purging of the cholerike humour straight way, because choler is thin and moueable, & therefore will easily purge out. But if it chance, that the cholerike humor doth rest quietly in some part of the body, and so doth waxe hore, and burne that part, and by that meanes doth prohibit hore medicines (as purging things be) then before the purgatiō, you must minister such things as do quench and concoct the heate and burning of choler; that is such things as do alter it. For digestion that we speake of now, is nothing else but an alteration of the humour that causeth the disease. Therefore such medicines must be ministred each moining fasting before you do purge, vntill good concoction appeare in the vrine: For by this meanes choler being concoct, and as it were tamed & made mild, is made so obedient vnto nature, that it will soone without any griefe be drawne of the purging medicine to conuenient places, that it should auoid by. You shall therfore for a preparatiue vse this or such like medicines. *Rx.* Syrupe of violets, ℥.j. syrupe of water Lillies, ℥.℥. distilled waters of Endiue, succorie and roses. ana. ℥.j. commixe them, & let them be drunke in the morning fasting. For this purpose also you may minister lulpe of Roses and violets, or *Syrupus acetosus*, or the decoctiō of seeds of cucumbers, gourds, purcelaine, endiue, rootes also of endiue and succorie, roses, violets, water lillies, lettuce, damaske proynes, Sebesten, liliubes, and such like. You may purge the cholerike humour either by infusion of wormewood, or of Aloes, or with *Hierapiera* ministred alone, or a litle scammonie mixed with it, or with pilles made of Aloes. Or you shall not do amisse to take of the purging decoction prescribed in the former chapter ℥.iiij. and to dissolue therein ℥.iiij. of *Electuarium de succo rosarum*, or as much of *Electuarium de Psillio*, & so minister it. It is good also to minister infusion of reubarbe, made after this sort. *Rx.* fine Reubarbe. ℥.ij. Spikenard. ℥.j. cut them small, and infuse them in distilled waters of endiue, doddie, and buglosse, ana. ℥.j. pure ale. ℥.℥. the space of 12. houres, then straine it hard, and put thereto of *Electuaries de succo rosarum* and *Psillio*, ana. ℥.j. ℥. commixe them and make a purging potion. Also you may vse *Pilula auree*, and *Alephangina*, or pilles of reubarbe, or of *Hiera simplex*, and such like, or else *Diacatholicon*, or *Diaprunes solutue*. For them that are delicate, you may vse this bole, *Rx.* of *Diagridium* ℥.℥. of Maces, Cynamon, and Masticke, ana. gr. 2. conferue of violets, and water lillies, ana. ℥.j. sugar as much as sufficeth, and make a bole. Further it profiteth now and then to vse clisters made in this or like sort, *Rx.* Mallowes, Althea, Endiue, Succorie, Violets, ana. M.℥. whole barley, ℥.j. the foure common small cold seedes (that is) Lettuce, purcelaine, endiue, and scarioll, ana. ℥.iiij. Seeth all these in running water to the third part, straine them, take of that decoction ℥.j. of the pulpe of *Cassia fistula* ℥.j. of *Hierapiera* ℥.℥. of oyle of violets ℥.ij. oyle of roses ℥.j. of mel *rosarum* ℥.j. of salt ℥.j. ℥. commixt all together, and make a clister. After purging of the cholerick humour, you must apply medicines outwardly, which can coole and strengthen the head, wherof you shal find store in the second chapter. If the sick cannot sleepe, annoint the fore part of the head with oyle of water

Curatio.

Zulapium.

Purgatio.

Dilutum Rhabbari.

Bolus purgans.

Clyster.

Localia.

Sleepes.

Jillies, and oyle of poppie: to them you may for a neede ad a litle *opium*, that sleepe thereby may be prouoked. Note, that boxing without scarification and frictions of the armes and legges may be well vsed in times conuenient.

CHAP. VII.

Of headach caused of fleume.

- Causa.** **H**eadach coming of fleume, is caused of all such things as ingender fleume in the head, as a cold and moyst ayre, meates that be cold and moist, as fishes, milke, raw herbes, fruite, idlenesse, & sleeping vpon a full stomacke, & such other like. The signes hereot be fulnesse & heauinesse of the head, whitenesse and moistnesse of the face. Moreouer the sicke will easily fall a sleep, he is slow, his senses are dull, and his head aboundeth with excrements, as also the signes declared in the 3. chapter agree with this kind of headach. Let the sick remaine in an ayre that is hot and dry by nature, or if that cannot be had, let the ayre be made such by certaine odoriferous things, as with Cynamon, frankensence, cloues, wood of Aloes, and such like. Let his meate that he eateth for the most part be roasted, and let him eat spices with it. For his drinke let him vse thin and small wine, let his exercise be meane, to be short, let him vse such diet as is prescribed in the third chapter of this booke. The cure must be begun with extenuation & digestion of the flegmatike humour. Therefore you must minister such medicines as are able to extenuate, make thinne, cut and deuide humours, such be *mel rosarum*, *oximel simplex* and *compositum*, and *scilliticum*, syrupe of *stachades*, distilled waters of hysope, betonie, marioram, sage, and such like, minister thereof vnto him a medicine made in this sort. *Rx.* of *oximel scilliticum* ʒ. j. of syrupe of *stachades* ʒ. ʒ. of distilled waters of hysope, parcely and marioram. ana. ʒ. j. commixe them and make a potion. Or if the vsing of syrups and distilled waters do not like you, you may minister this or such like decoction. *Rx.* of the rootes of fenell, parcely & *asparagus*. ana. ʒ. j. rootes of pionic ʒ. ij. seedes of annise, fenell, *siler montanum*. ana. ʒ. iij. *stichados*, *organ*, *serpillum*, marioram, calamint, betonie, sage. ana. M. ss. fine cinamon, maces, ana. ʒ. j. ss. Seeth all these in sufficient quantitie of water vntill halfe be consumed, then straine it, and ad sugar sufficient to make it sweet, clarifie it with the whites of egges, then put thereto syrupe of hysope, & *oximel simplex*, ana. ʒ. iij. commixe them altogether and make a potion. When the humours are extenuate, and made thin and prepared to be purged, then must such medicines be ministred, as are able to purge fleume, for the which cause let the sick haue these pills ministred vnto him. *Rx.* *pilularum coctuarum*. ʒ. i. ʒ. *pilularum à hiera composita*. ʒ. i. *pil. alephanginari*. ʒ. ʒ. *agarike* made into trochisks. ʒ. ii. *mirabolanorum chebularū*. ʒ. i. fine turbith. ʒ. ss. *stichados* and ginger, ana. gr. v. masticke gr. vii. seedes of pionic in number iij. *Castorei*, gr. iij. with lauēder water make pills. It is good for them that are thus affected, to be purged not once only, but twise or thrise, because the grosse & clammy humours will not straight follow a sudden purgation, but they must be drawne out by litle and litle with often purging. Also clisters are good, not only because they empty out such things as are contained in the intestines, but also for that they pull backe such humours and vapours as ascend to the head. For clisters there
- Signa.**
- Picturatio.**
- Curatio.**
- Zalupium.**
- Decoctum extenuans pituitam.**
- Purgatio.**
- Pipula.**
- Clyster.**

fore

fore the decoction before prescribed is good if you take thereof ℥.xij. and dissolve therein *benedicta laxative*. ℥.℞. *Electuarij indi maioris*. ℥.iij. *diaphenicon*. ℥.ij. *mel rosarum*. ℥.j. oyles of laurell and rew. ana. ℥.j. ℞. salgemire. ℥.j. commixe them together and make a clister. After the whole bodie is purged, you must minister such medicines as can purge the head, as be gargarises made in this sort: ℞. long pepper and nutmegs, ana. ℥.℞. seed of stauisacre and pellitorie, *Gargarise*. ana. ℥.ij. mustard seed, origan, ana. ℥.j. beate them to powder, and put thereof in a linnen cloth, and chew it, or with masticke or hony make trochiskes like lupines, and let the sicke chew one of them almost halfe an houre. Also the head may be purged by iuyce of marioram, blitum, colewortes, and such like. You may also for this purpose minister gargarises made of the distilled waters of hysope, betony, origan, with *hierapicra* and *oximel compositum*, or in this sort: ℞. pellitory, long pepper, of each, ℥.j. ℞. seed of stauisacre, ℥.℞. marioram, penirioyall, hysope, origan, betonic, ana. M. ℞. seeth all these in sufficient quantiry of water vnto the third part, straine it, and adde to the licour *mel rosarum*. ℥.j. ℞. *oximel scilliticum*. ℥.℞. commixe all and make a gargarise. Also medicines to prouoke sneesing are good in this case. You may make the after this sort: ℞. marioram ℥.j. nigella, ℥.℞. cloues, white pepper, cubebs, ana. ℥.j. nutmegs, graines, *Gargarismus*. castoreum, *heleborus albus*, ana. ℥.℞. beate them into very fine powder, and prouoke sneesing therewith. For them which are rich you may adde muske and amber, ana. gr. ij. It profiteth also to hold hore and sweet odors to the nose of the patient, or a pomander artificially made, such a one as we prescribed in the end of the third Chapter. Further you may take *nasalia* (as they call them) things to put into the nose, sharpe at one end and great at the other like a Steele, after this sort: ℞. stauisacre, pellitory and white pepper, ana. ℥.℞. nigella, nutmegs, ana. ℥.ij. *heleborus albus*, ℥.℞. powder them, and with rosin & waxe make *nasales*. After the purging of the head, you may vse oynments, embrocations, drie quilts, and such like other medicines to disperse the remnant of the humour remaining in the head, whereof there be examples sufficient in the third Chapter before. You may commodiously minister inwardly, cubebs condite, or d iambra, diamoscha, *aromaticum rosaceum*, diacuminum, dianthos, theriaca, mithridatum, diacorum, conferue of marioram, rosemary, betony, with syrupe of stichados. Or minister these lozenges which are specially good. *Lozenges*. ℞. powder of *Electuarium de gemmis*, dianthos, ana. ℥.j. cubebs, maces, of each, ℥.℞. wood of Aloes, cloues, and fenell seed, ana. ℥.℞. fine cinamon, ℥.ij. stichados, ℥.℞. with suger molten in the distilled waters of pionic flowers & lauender make lozenges. And thus much for the cure of headach caused of slegmaticke humours. But if so be that headach be caused of a melancholy humour, then you must prescribe such diet, and vse such cure as shall be declared in the Chapter of melancholy, or madnesse. And therefore it should be superfluous to intreate hereof in this place: repaire therefore for cure of headach comming of melancholy vnto the 28 Chapter in this booke following.

CHAP. VIII.

Of headach caused of windinesse.

If headach be caused of windinesse, the diet vsed before was such as did ingender wind besides the nature of the body, & other circumstances were such as *Cause*.

Signe.

Vltus ratio.

Cura.

Clyster.

Localia.

were apt to ingender wind. The signes be these, if there be felt distention and stretching in the head without heauinesse & bearing, & if there be a sound and noyse in the eares, then doth it betoken windines in the head. The diet of the patient must altogether be such as doth not ingender windinesse. For the cure, if the windinesse be not only bred in the head, but doth ascend from some part beneath, first of all you must vse such medicines as do repell and driue backe, such be vineger, pomgranate rindes and floures, wormewood, melilot, mints, planraine, walwort, *burfa pastoris*, nutmegges, putcelaine, houslike, lawrell leaues, and such like. Which being moderately vsed a while, you must then adde to those repulsive things, some such medicines as do mitigate, concoct, and digest, as be fenugreece, linseed, cammomill, yolkes of egges, saffron, hennes grease, goose grease, &c. Last of all ad discussive medicines, oyles of dill, & rew, barley meale, lupines, lillie rootes, nigella, &c. It is good therfore first of all to empty the belly with a strong clyster, but that must be made of a decoctio that doth dissolue windines, by seething in water anise seeds, & caraway seeds, fenel seed, comin, dry figges, branne, and such like: herein you must dissolue *benedicta laxativa* ℥.iiij. or *Electuarium nidum* in like quantity, or *Diaphenicon* ℥.iiij. or *Diacatholicon*, or *hierapicra* ℥.vij. Such kind of clysters do not onely purge the intestines, & the parts about the liuer, but do also pull backe such things as ascend to the head. Afterward you must strengthe the affected member, that it do ingender wind no more, whether it be the stomacke, the liuer, the spleene, the intestines, or any other member: which being done, if heat abound in the head together with the windines, then apply oyle of roses, which is both repulsive, digestive, & discussive, & adde to it vineger which is both repulsive and discussive also, & doth extenuat besides. Also rose water or iuice of purcelaine, knotgrasse or nightshade may be vsed & applied with a litle vineger. If there be cold in the head with the windines, the vse oiles of cammomill or dill, mixed with a litle vineger: or if the grief increase, apply the iuice of rew with vineger & oyle mixed together, or apply the iuice of the root of floure de luce with vineger: or iuice of laurel berries & rew mixed with vineger is good to be applied. Likewise bitter almonds beaten with vineger & oyle, & applied to the forehead in a linnen cloth, are very good when the grief doth first begin to increase. And if you had rather vse dry quilts, you may make them at the first of *milium*, roses, willow leaues, knotgreffe, nightshade, & purcelaine, & so apply the to the forehead, & forepart of the head. Afterward you may ad to th' aforesayd marioram, *serpillū*, hysope, rew, tender leaues of lawrell, cipernis & such like. It is good also to vse odors & smels, as *castoreū*, muske, amber, & such like. To prouoke sleeing, & to minister inwardly to the sicke is good, either *Diacuminum*, or *Dianisum* ℥.j. or as much triacle, or *Mithridatum* profiteth. But if the windines be caused through imbecillity of some part of the head it selfe, then you shall not need to vse repulsive medicines, but rather concoctiue and discussive medicines, such as are before declared. As for inward medicins they auaille or profit litle in this case.

CHAP. IX.

Of Headach caused of the stomacke.

Hitherto we haue declared the causes, signes, and cures of headach caused principally in it selfe, now it remaineth that we intreat of paine in the head which

which commeth by consent. And first of that headach which cometh through
 euil affection of the stomacke. And that is caused most commonly when some
 sharpe humour aboundeth in the stomacke, especially in the mouth of it, from
 whence corrupt vapours arising do ascend to the head. It may be knowne by
 the gnawing and biting paine that they feele which haue that headach, and
 by the desire to vomit that the patient hath: especially if the mouth of the sto-
 macke be affected. Moreouer, in this kind of headach, if the sicke fast, & suffer
 hunger long, the paine is more vehement, for through long abstinence the
 malice of the humour increaseth. You must cure those that are thus grieved,
 not by applying remedies to the head, but to the humours in the stomacke,
 which raise vp vapours to trouble the head. Therefore you must with speed
 purge the noysome humors that are in the mouth of the stomacke. They may
 be purged out by drinking of warme water, if so be the patiēt can easily vomit:
 if not, he must thrust his finger or a fether into his throte, and so prouoke the
 stomacke to vomit. Note that yellow, or pale choller, because of his naturall
 lightnes, doth readily ascend to the mouth of the stomacke. But the humors
 that be flegmaticke, or soure, or salt, do rather remaine in the midst of the
 stomacke, then in the mouth of it. It is best when such humours are in the bot-
 tome of the stomacke, for then they will easily auoyd the stomacke & passe in-
 to the guts. It is worst of all when noysome humours do cleaue so fast to the
 filmes and tunicles of the stomacke, & do so furre them, that they can scarce-
 ly be scoured out. Therefore if any humour doth furre the tunicles of the sto-
 mack, minister *Hierapiera*, which is a soueraigne medecine therfore. And after
 purging, let the patient haue good meats easie of digestion, and wholsome for
 the stomacke. And for as much as lacke of good digestion, and weaknesse of
 the mouth of the stomacke, be the greatest causes of increase of noysome hu-
 mours in the stomacke, it must be provided that good digestion be procured,
 and that the mouth of the stomacke may be strengthened by such medicines,
 as be astringent, and haue vertue to strengthen, whereof you shall find plenty
 hereafter in the third booke, and therefore it were superfluous to recite them
 here. As we haue in this Chapter spoken of headach caused of the stomacke,
 and referred the cure to the third booke, so vnderstand likewise, if headach be
 cause of the disease of the liver or spleen, or any other member: for the affects
 of those members being cured, ceaseth the headach.

CHAP. X.

Of headach caused by drunkennesse.

THE causes and signes of drunkennesse are euident enough, chiefly hore
 wines and strong drinks are causes therof, for that they fill the braine with
 vapours, and that so much the more (as Galen sayd) if the braine be hore by
 nature: sometime also hore humours ascending to the head, do cause drun-
 kennesse. The cure of drunkennesse generally consisteth in two points: that is,
 in euacuation, and refrigeration. Therefore if the wine be yet vndigest, and do
 flow in the stomacke, cause him that hath the headach to vomit by drinking
 of hore water. But if the headach do remaine after digestion, you must vse
 medicines that do refrigerate, and driue backe vapours which ascend to the

*Causa.**Signa.**Curatio.**Hierapiera.**Note.**Causa.**Curatio.**Warme water
and a little syr.
acetose com-
mixed, causeth
vomit.*

head, as is oyle of roses alone, or mixed with vineger, or with iuyce of iuice, or coleworts. Also the leaues of coleworts steeped in warme water, and bound about the head, do naturally resist drunkenness. Moreouer, the broth of coleworts being eaten, is good for that purpose. To preserue one from drunkenness (as *Aetius* saith) let him eate v. or viij. bitter almonds fasting, or let him drinke wormewood wine first of all. But to take away drunkenness that is present, giue the decoction of centory the lesse to drinke, or harts horne, or the seed of veruaine boyled in water. You must haue a speciall regard, and procure that the patient do sleepe & rest, which being done all day, at night bath him in a bath of sweet water, & when thou hast washed him, let him eat meats of good iuyce, but not ouer hote. Let therefore his food be pisan broth, supplings made of *alica*, bread dipped in water, reare eggs, & such like. For potherbs lettuce is of good iuyce and cooleth, and coleworts drieth vp vapours. For drinke let him vse water only, if he hath bene accustomed thereto, & can well beare it, otherwise giue him small drinke, or a litle small white wine. After his meat, giue vnto him of a pomegranate, or a pearce, or a quince, or raisins. To conclude, let all his diet be meats of good iuyce, pleasant to the stomacke, & that driue away vapours. Let him abstaine from dates, for their proprietie is to cause headach. And if it chance that of the vapours and humours ascending to the head, there remaine part of them impact and stuffed in the thin pores, and so do cause headach after two or three dayes, then leaue oyle of roses, & vse first in steed of it, oyle of cammoill moderately warme. Afterward apply oyle of iueos. After that, if need require, you may apply things that heat more, commixing with the oyle of iueos, oyle of nard, or *oleum costium*, or other oyles and ointments of that sort.

CHAP. XI.

Of headach caused by feauers.

If headach do molest those that haue a feuer, you must diligently examine and consider, whether the same began at the first beginning of the feuer, or whether it sprong the feuer increasing: for if the headach began not with the first fit of the feuer, but afterward while the feuer increased, and came nigh to the Crisis: then seeke not to remedie it, for it portendeth & foretellet that vomit, or a decretorie fluxe of bloud at the nose will follow shortly, as *Hippocrates* declareth in his booke of predictions, and *Galen* in his third booke *de crisibus* & in his first booke *ad Glauconem* cap. vltimo: if the headach began at the first with the feuer, it commeth of vapours or humours dispersed abroad through the greatnesse of the feuer, & as it were boiling hot, eleuate vp to the head, & partly also through weaknes of the braine. Therefore if the paine do come of abundance of humors, you must let him bloud after the first or second fit (if nothing prohibite it) especially in lustie bodies, & in such as abound with bloud. Also you must draw the humours a contrarie way, and pull them backe by sharpe clisters, such as shal be prescribed in the Chap. of *Apoplexia*, & by often binding and much fication in the neather parts. Moreouer you may set cupping glaises to the hinder part of the head, or to the necke. You must apply to the head irrigations & ointments, that haue vertue to repel & driue backe

backe from it, and afterward you must vse discusseue medicins, last of all such things as do strengthen the braine. To repell & drine backe, vse oyle of roses, & other such like as are rehearsed before in the 2. Chap. vse them in Sommer time, and in hote complexions, cold and mixed with a litle vineger, but in winter season, and in cold complexions, apply them bloud warme. If the feuer be vehement, & ouer much watching do trouble the sicke, vse irrigatiōs made of poppie heads, houselike, and such like medicines as haue vertue to coole and prouoke sleepe in this sort: R. floures of violets, water lillies, & roses, ana. M. j. hulled barley. ʒ. j. heads of poppy. ʒ. ss. houselike. M. ss. seeth all these in sufficiēt quantity of water, vntill the third part be consumed, & make an embrocation. Or if the paine continue vehement, take greene leaues of henbane or poppy, with oyle of roses, a litle vineger, and crummes of bread, commixe them, & apply them to the forepart of the head, & to the forehead. When the braine is sufficiētly cooled, then apply those things which can heate the head againe, and so auoyd and disperse the humors that remaine. And therefore you may vse oyles of camomill, dill, or ireos, or decoctions of camomill, or *Althea*, or such like. And if the humors be grosse & tough, you may boyle with the aforesaid things *Serpillum*, peniroyal, calamint, mints, or such like. Last of al the head must be strengthened by oyle of roses, & such like (that is) betony, camomill, melilot, &c. The rest of the cure of headach caused through the vehemency of the feuer, is to be sought out in the treatise of Feuers.

Embrocation.

Note.

CHAP. XII.

Of inneterate headach.

Cephelea both in Greeke and Latine is the name of headach which is exceeding painfull, continuing long, and hard to cease, which vpon light occasions hath very sharpe and great fittes, so that the patient can neither abide noise, nor loud speech, nor cleare light, nor drinking of wine, nor saours that fill the braine, nor mouing, but he desireth for the greatnes of the paine to sit or lie quiet in the darke, supposing that his head were striken with a hammer. Also some of them do feele those things, that are about their head as though they were brused or racked. In many the paine proceedeth vnto the rootes of the eyes. This disease sometime doth continue painfull alwayes, sometime it hath fittes and intermissions either ordinate or inordinate. For in some there is intermission in the fittes, as is in the falling sicknes, so that for a time they seeme to be perfectly whole. This disease doth vexe women more then men, because of their long haire. In some of them the filmes that couer the braine are pained; but in some, only the filme that couereth the scull is grieved. It is caused of abundance of bloud and other humours, or by the sharpnes of humours or vapours contained within or without the scull, and inflaming the head, or it is caused through weaknes of the head. The paine that inuadeth the sick with grauity and heauinesse, declareth plenitude and abundance of humours: if it come with pricking, gnawing and shooting, it betokeneth sharpnes of humours or vapours: if it beate like the pulses, it betokeneth inflammation: if there be felt distension and bolning in the head without heauinesse or beating, it declareth

Signa.

Causa.

Signa.

Note.

Vicious ratio.

Curatio.

Vene sectio.

Reuulsio.

Locatio.

Note.

Verbenaca
vicia.

windines. But if there be beating with it, there is inflammation in the filmes of the head: & if there be heauinesse with the distension, the it declareth abundance of humours within the filmes. And if the paine be felt superficially, as it were outward, then it betokeneth that the filme which couereth the scull is grieved. But if it be felt deepe within, the filmes of the braine are vexed. Note that those that haue paine within the scull, they feele griefe at the rootes of their eyes, because that the tunicles of the eyes haue their beginning of the filmes of the braine. And if so be that a putrified humour in the head do waxe hotter and hotter, then there is a feuer ioyned with the headach. They also are vexed with a feuer, which haue headach caused by inflammation. As for diet to be vsed in this griefe, you may easily prescribe it out of the former Chapters, according to the diuersity of the causes thereof, and therefore I omit it here willingly, lest I should vse a fond repetition of one thing often. The cure doth differ according to the diuersity of the cause. For if you find abundance of humours or vapours to be the cause, if it be engendred of plenitude of the whole body, you must begin with euacuation of the whole body. And therefore you must let him bloud on the *Cephalica* on the same side, if his strength will suffer it, and no other thing let it. But if the head doth receiue the humours and vapours that do ascend, for that it is weake, then you must pul backe the matter vnto the whole body, and so remedy the part affected. Therefore you must vse very sharpe clysters, and bindings of the armes and legges, and many frictions of the neather parts, & sometime also in this case you may let bloud in the arme. And if after that, bloud do secme still to abound, you may open a veine in the nostrils, and draw bloud from thence, as much as shall be requisite. Shortly after you must purge the body with *Hierapiera*, or other things that are prescribed in the former Chapters. After purging of the whole body, you may safely come to purging of the head, and in the end vse medicines to strengthen it. The head is to be purged with Gargarismes, and with medicines put into the nose, as iuyce of leekes or of *Cyclaminus*, or such like, which be rehearsed before in the seuenth Chapter. To the head it selfe you must first apply things that do repell and driue backe: such be, oyle made of vnripe oliues, and oyle of roses alone, or applied with vineger; also oyle made of poppie heads and of luie berries, and of greene mints, and such like, whereof we haue spoken before. But note, if the humors that abound in the head be cold and crude, then apply the former medicines warme, but if the humours abounding be hote & cholericke, then apply those medicines cold. Afterward you must apply those medicines that do discusse and disperse humours, as be oyles of cammomill and dill, & such like before rehearsed, but if the humors abounding be thicke and tough, boyle *Serpillum*, or peniroyall, or calamint, or mints in oyle, and thou shalt extenuate them by applying therof. Besides, these things do strengthen the part affected, and therefore they are to be vsed vntill the Cure be finished. Aboue all other things veruaine doth disperse humours, and mightily corroborate the head, especially being greene. Also being drie, and boyled in ale, rootes and all together with *Serpillum*, it doth the like, if the head be anointed therewith. Moreouer if you boile veruaine alone in oyle, & do sprinkle the head therewith, it helpeth all paine of the head of long continuance, if it

were

were caused of cold, or of grosse and viscous humors, as *Galen* witnesseth. *Lib. 2. de comp. medicam. secundum locos*. Also for the same it profiteth much to vse oile, wherein sowes, called in Latine *Milipeda* be boyled. And thus much of the cure of *Cephalea* comming of plenitude. As for the cure thereof comming of other causes, you may gather it out of the former Chapter.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Migraine.

H*emicrania* is a painefull euill remaining in one halfe of the head, either on the right halfe or on the left, & is distinguished by the seame that runneth a long in the skull, from the midde forehead to the hinder part of the head, this griefe in English is called the Migraine. This paine commeth often by fits, and in some the griefe is felt without the skull, in some within deepe in the braine, and in some other nigh to the temples in the muscles there. This paine is caused by ascending and flowing of many vapours or humours either hote or cold, either by the veines, or by the arteries, or by both. Sometime they only proceed from the parts contained in the skull, that is, from the braine and his filmes, which thrust out their excrements and superfluities from them, and sometime from the parts of the body beneath the head, which send vp corrupt vapours & humors from themselves to the braine. The signes whereby you should know whether vapours or humors do abound, and whether they be hot, or cold, are to be gathered out of the former chapters. As also to know in what part of the head the griefe is, whether within the skul or without, reade the former chapter of *Cephalea*. Only this I adde here, that if in this disease, the filme that couereth the skull be affected, then is their paine so vehement, that they cannot suffer to be touched with ones hand, so that it seemeth the skinne it selfe is affected in this euill. As for their diet, what they should vse, and what they should eschue, may readily be gathered and prescribed out of the former Chapters, according to the diuersity of causes: but specially let the patient refrain from such things as do send abundance of sharpe vapours vp to the head, as be garlick, onions, mustard, radish rootes and such like. The cure is diuerse according to the diuersity of causes. And therefore when you will cure the migraine, consider diligently first whether the patient needeth bloodletting or purging. For if the griefe come through plenitude & abundance of blood and humors, then cut the *Cephalica* in the arme on the same side that the griefe is: but if the migraine be caused of abundance of one humor, then purge that humor by conuenient medicins, which are prescribed in the former chapters. The whole body being purged, you may come to local & outward medicins, & first cause the patient either with his owne fingers, or with a linnen cloth, to rub and chafe the halfe of his forehead which is griued, and specially about the muscles of his temples, vntill it be red and hore, and this must be done before the fit of paine commeth. After the fit (as *Galen* teacheth in the end of his second booke *De compositione medicamentorum secundum locos*) you must apply medicins which of the old Phisitians were called *Hemicrania*, for that they were vsed for the migraine: noting this alwayes, that if with the paine there were much heat felt, then you ought to apply such things as would somewhat coole. But

Vnguentum.

Oleum.

Note.

Pillule.

if there were no euident heat felt, then vse those things that are very hot. But you must commixe with either of these, somewhat that is restrictive, and hath vertue to corroborate and strengthen. This ointment following is a very good remedy in a cold affect. *R.* of oiles of dill and Ireos. ana. $\mathfrak{z}\text{ss}$. of white pepper, and serpillum. ana. $\mathfrak{d}\text{ jss}$. of *Castoreum*. $\mathfrak{d}\text{ j}$. of *Euphorbium*. $\mathfrak{d}\text{ ss}$. of waxe. q. $\mathfrak{ss}$. and make an ointment to be applied vpon the halfe of the forehead and the muscle of the temples. Also in this case it profiteth much to poure this oyle following into the eare. *R.* Sweete oile oliue. $\mathfrak{z}\text{ j}$. *Euphorbium*. $\mathfrak{d}\text{ j}$. commixe them and drop one droppe into the eare warme. You may put in more *Euphorbium* or else according as the body is quicke or dull in sense: but beware you vse not this medicine in those that haue the migrine engendred of hote vapors or humours. *Aëtius* saith that *Euphorbium* dissolued in vineger, and applied to the left side of the head, if the right side be grieued, or contrariwise on the right side when the paine is on the left side, doth of a certaine hid property helpe the migrine. The same author also saith, that earth-wormes beaten to powder, & applied to the grieffe, as also the flesh of snails bruised and applied doth profite much. The kernels of peaches bruised and applied vpon the grieffe (as report hath bene) doth profite much. *Marcellus* sayth, that the dung of a goat stamped and commixed with vineger squillitricke, if the forehead and temples be annointed therewith, it ceaseth the paine of the migrine for euer. Also his counsell is, if there be suddain paine of the migrine, take frankesence, mirrhe, and an egge, beate them together, and apply that to the forehead and temples. If the migrine be caused of hote humours or vapours, then vse those remedies which we prescribed before in the cure of headach coming of heate or of cholericke humours. Here I thinke it requisite to prescribe certaine pilles, good to be vsed against inueterate headach and the migrine. First if choler abound. *R.* powder of *Hiera simplex Galeni*. $\mathfrak{z}\text{ ij}$. *pilularum arabicarum*. $\mathfrak{z}\text{ iij}$. trochiskes of *mirabolanes ciurine*. $\mathfrak{z}\text{ jss}$. *reubarbe*. $\mathfrak{z}\text{ j}$ *spicknard*. $\mathfrak{d}\text{ j}$. commixe them with sirupe of violets, and referue the composition. When need requireth minister $\mathfrak{z}\text{ j}$. or $\mathfrak{d}\text{ iij}$. siue or sixe houres after supper, and let the patient sleepe vpon it. If his you may do once in ten daies, or once in fiteene dayes at al times (sommer excepted.) But if fleame aboundeth, make your pilles thus. *R.* of *Agaricke trochiscate*. $\mathfrak{z}\text{ iij}$. *pilula arabica*, & *Hiera simplex Gal.* ana. $\mathfrak{z}\text{ jss}$. floures of *stachados*, & trochiskes of *mirabolanes chebuloru*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}\text{ j}$. with sirupe of *stachados* and oximel, commixe them, and when occasion serueth, minister $\mathfrak{z}\text{ j}$. or $\mathfrak{d}\text{ iij}$. at each time in forme abouesayd. But if melancholy be cause of the migrine. *R.* of the aforesayd *Pilula arabica*. $\mathfrak{z}\text{ ij}$. of powder of sene & *Epithimum*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}\text{ ijss}$. of *Hiera simplex Gal.* $\mathfrak{z}\text{ jss}$. of trochiskes of *Mirabolanes indorum*. $\mathfrak{d}\text{ iij}$. with sirupe of fumitory and balme water make pilles, & when need requireth, minister them in forme aforesayd.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Vertigo and swimming in the head.

That which the Latines call *Vertigo*, is a disease, wherein the patient doth imagine that his head is turned round about. There is another disease somewhat like vnto this, which in Latin is called, *Tenebris a Vertigo*, & that is when the

the patient doth thinke that all that he seeth turneth about; & suddenly with it, his sight faileth him, he supposing that he is compassed about with mist & darknesse. It is commonly of the Phisicians called *Scotoma*, *Fuschi*us doth think that they erre greatly, that make a difference betweene the former kinds, but it may be confirmed out of good authors, *Hippocrates*, *Galen* and others. Both the aforesaid kinds be engendred after one sort, and that is through the inordinate mouing of windy vapours and spirites, contained in certaine parts of the braine. This disease is caused either of the braine it selfe being distempred and euill affected, or of the mouth of the stomacke offending the braine. The braine it selfe is affected euill, when a grosse and tough humour is contained in it, from whence a vaporious & windy spirit being resolued by weak heat, is moued inordinatly about in the brain. The mouth of the stomack doth affect the braine, when through corrupt humours being gathered abundantly in it, vapours and windy exhalations are caried vp to the braine, and so turne about the animall spirits contained in it. Those that are troubled with this disease, a darknes and mist appeareth before the eyes vpon euery light occasion, specially if they turne about. For it chaunceth to them by turning once about, as it doth to other when they turne often, & therefore the patient many times fals downe. Also it doth astonie him, if he see another man, or a wheele, or any such thing turne about, also if he see whirle pooles in the water turne about for the visuall spirits beholding a wheele that turneth about, or any such like thing, doth also turne about in like sort, and so the mouing of the humour and the spirites are troubled, vnequall, and inordinate. When this disease doth proceed of the braine being euill affected, then there proceedeth sound of the eares, vehement paine in the head, & heauinesse therein. Also the smelling and the other senses proceeding from the head are hurt. Their fit is then chiefly, when the Sunne doth heare them, or when their head is hote by some other meanes, and so the humours being dissolued, do turne about in the braine. When the disease proceedeth from the mouth of the stomack, then they feeble before it, a gnawing in the stomacke, as it were the hart burne, & a disposition to vomit. This disease may be discerned from the falling sicknesse, for that this doth neither take away the senses from the patient, nor it causeth nor the crampe and writhing of members in the fit. This disease is not to be lightly esteemed, for the *Vertigo* (as *Galen* saith) is nigh to the falling sicknesse and the *Apoplexie*, and therefore it would be well looked to. For the *Vertigo* and *Scotoma* will quickly be changed into pernicious diseases, for that they are very nigh to them, specially to the falling sicknesse and the *Apoplexie*. And if those things that the patient doth imagine to see before his eyes, appeare bloudie & reddish, he is apt to fall into madnes, but those that seeme to see purple colours, are disposed to the falling sicknes. The *Scotoma* or dark *Vertigo* becōmeth most vehement in winter, or in the beginning of the spring. Besides in many it is a signe that the falling sicknesse will follow. And many do vse to call it a litle *Epilepsie*. As concerning diet: let the patient remaine in an ayer that is temperate, pure, bright and cleare, and let him eschue grosse & cloudy ayer. Let him eschue winds, especially South winds: let him also auoyd the beames of the Sunne & the Moone: as also let him not behold things that moue swiftly,

Cause.

Signa.

Prognostica.

Vtilis ratio.

as running waters, or things that turne about, as wheelles, and such like, or to looke into deepe pits is euill for him. Let him eate meates of good iuyce, and of easie digestion, and such as engender no windines, as partrich, capon, pheasant, chicken, veale, scaly fishes, and such like, that be easie of digestion. And let him vse to eate but moderately of them, for satiety, as also long fasting is not good for him. He must eschue all things that cause vapours to ascend into the head, as onions, garlick, leekes and such like. And therefore if he drinke wine, let it not be very old, smal white wine may be permitted him. After meat it is good for him to eate some restrictiue thing to stop the vapours that they ascend not to the head, & that specially if the stomack be cause of this disease. Let his exercise be moderate, let him eschue sleep of the day, neither let him sleepe within two houres after meate. Let not the place be too hote where he sleepe, nor let him nor keepe his head too hote. In his exercises, let him not stir his head much. And therefore it is good for him to vse frictiōs ostē, specially in the morning before he riseth, begin at the vpper parts, & end with the neather. He must refraine from perturbations & affections of the mind, specially from anger, feare, and sadnes, as also from loud crying and singing. Carnall copulation is not good for him. If he hath not a stoole once in a day, you must help nature either by clister or suppositarie. For the cure, if the fit be present, you must reuiue the patient againe with sweet and odoriferous smels, & with frictions and such like. At which time also if need be, you may vse a suppositary or a clister. Afterward if the party be strong, & no other impediment presēt, let him bloud on the *Cephalica* veine, whether it be the beginning of the disease or otherwise. But take heed that you draw not much bloud at once, for the patient will quickly fall through euery light occasion. Therefore you must draw away the bloud at sundrie times vntil you haue sufficiēt. But if any thing do hinder you from bloud letting, first you must purge him with a sharp clister, whereof you shall haue example afterward in the chap. of *Apoplexy*. Afterward minister a purgation according as the humour abounding doth require. But forget not first to vse a preparatiue, when the whole bodie is sufficiently purged, you must vse locall things to the head, and first applie cupping glasses to the hinder part of the head with scarification. Afterward vse to minister gargarismes, and sternutations to draw reume from the head. Poure into the nose iuyce of chickweed, beets, or cyclaminus. Also nitrum beaten with nigella and mixed with old oyle, purgeth well by the nostrils. Also odours made of the decoction of marioram, hysope, & flowers of stachados, a litle *Castoreum*, muske and vineger being added is good. After that let the patient enter into a bath, specially a naturall bath that is of allume, and if his head be ouer hote in the bath, you must coole it often with oyle of roses and vineger applied in clothes to it, specially on the fore part of the head, and about the forehead and the temples. And if the disease do cease by these remedies, then vse no other. But if it continue still, you must cut the arteries that be nigh the temples aboue the eares, specially if the disease come of hore vapours ascending to the braine by the arteries. And this is not onely the precept of *Galen*, but also of *Aetius* and *Paulus Aegineta*. How the arteries should be cut you shall learne of the said *Aegineta* in his 6. booke and 4. chapter. Albeit *Galen* affirmeth that some

Curatio.

Vene sectio.

Localia.

some have not bene helped by cutting of the arteries, partly for that the hote and vaporous spirites do sometime ascend by deeper arteries into the braine, and partly for that a windy spirit may be ingendred by an inequall distemper of the braine. And therefore if the disease be caused by any of these meanes before rehearsed, the patient shall feele small ease or none by cutting of the arteries. And therefore be diligent to enquire of the aforesaid causes, before you cut the arteries. It profiteth much to apply this cautery behind the eares. *Rx.* of *Cauterium*, cantarides, their heads, wings and legs being cast away. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. sharp leauen. $\mathfrak{z}$.ss. with vineger and *aqua vite*, commixe them and apply them. If the *Vertigo* be caused by the consent of the stomak, that is, if humors contained in the mouth of the stomake do send vp vapors to the braine, and so cause the *Vertigo*, it must be cured by vomit, which you shall prouoke in this sort. *Rx.* of dill a handfull, seed of radish and rapes. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. roots of radish $\mathfrak{z}$.ss. boile them in sufficient quantity of water, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it & put thereto *oximel sciluticum*. $\mathfrak{z}$.jss. commixe them and make a potion, and minister it bloud warme after meat immediately: & if this suffice not, it is good to purge him with *Hierapicra Galeni*, or with pilles that be good for the stomacke, called *stomachica* for that cause, or with decoction of mirabolanes citrine, or *chebuli*, or with manna, or sirupe of roses solutiue, according to the diuersity of the humour abounding. Let the patient vse commonly after meat to eat some restrictive thing that will close the mouth of the stomacke, & hinder the ascending of vapors vp to the head, as is *Diacotoneon sine speciebus*, & quinces or restrictive peares, or such like. *Marcellus* saith, the iuyce of blacke beetes annointed vpon the temples helpeth the *Vertigo*. And if fothernwood be boyled in wine, or in oximell, and drunke warme, it is a most effectuell remedy to cure it perfectly.

Cure of the
Vertigo that
commeth of the
stomacke.
Vomitus.

CHAP. XV.

Of the Frenesie.

Frenesis in Greeke and in Latine, is a disease, wherein the mind is hurt, and and doth differ onely from madnesse, which is called in Greeke and Latin *Melancholia*, or *Mania*, for that a feuer is ioyned with the Frenesie, and therefore the Frenesie may be called a continuall madnes and fury ioyned with a sharpe feuer. *Galen* saith that the frenesie is an inflammatio of the braine or of the filmes thereof. *Aetius* saith that it is an inflammation of the filmes of the braine with an acute feuer, causing raging and vexation of the mind. There be three kinds of Frenesies (as *Galen* doth witnesse in his fourth booke *de locis affectu* cap. 40.) according to the internall senses, which be three in number, that is, imagination, cogitation and memory, which may seuerally be hurt. Two of those kinds be simple, and the third is compounded of those two. For some be freneticke, which can iudge rightly of those things that they see as touching common sense and imagination, and yet in cogitation and fantasie they erre from naturall iudgement. Some other being freneticke, are not deceiued in cogitation and reason, but only in imagination they erre. There be other some freneticke, which do erre both in sense and cogitation, that is, both in imagination and reason, and do therewith also loose their memorie. The frenesie is caused either of abundance of bloud, or of choler, occupying the braine or the

Three kinds of
frenesies.

Cause.

Signa.

filmes therof. And if the choler whereof the disease engendreth he burnt, then the frenesie is most vehement and more pernicious then any other. Those that be freneticke haue a continuall feuer, & be madde, for the most part they cannot sleepe. Sometime they haue troublesome sleepes, so that they rise vp, and leape, & cry out furiously, they babble words without order or sense, being asked a question, they answer not directly, or at the least rashly, and that with loud voice, especially if you speake gently to them. Their eyes be bloudshoten and bleared, they rub them often, sometime they are dry and sometime full of sharpe teares. Their tongue is rough, & bloud will often drop out of their nose. Moreover they pull mores & flocks from the bedding & clothes about them. Their pulses be small & weake, and somewhat hard and sinewy, they fetch their breath but seldome. Note that they which haue the frenesie caused of bloud, they laugh in their madnes. But those that be frenetike through choler, do rage furiously, so that they cannot be ruled without bands, and such do vse to forget all things that they do or say, so that some of them, when they require the chamber pot, do forthwith forget to make vrine, or when they haue done it,

Prognostica.

they remember not to restore the vessell againe. As touching the prognostication of this disease, Galen and all other leained Physicians do conesse that it is most sharpe & most perillous, & is indeed vncurable & deadly for the most part. Hippocrates saith in his 72. aphorisme of his fourth booke, that vrine white and cleare in those that do raue, is a very euill and deadly token. Concerning diet let the sicke be vsed in this sort. If it be winter, let him lie in a warme place, if it be somer, let his lodging be in a coole place, let the aire & light be moderate, and let there not be diuerse pictures in the place. And for that some be troubled with the light, and some with darknesse, it is best to try them in both, and to lay him in the light, which is afraid of darknes, and contrary he that is offended at the light, let him be in a darke place. But if the sicke person do find no difference in the places, then, if he be strong, let him haue light, if weake, keepe him in a darke place. Let his dearest friends come to him, & let the sometime speake gently & softly vnto him, & sometime rebuke him sharply. Let his meate at the first be pisan broth, and husked barley boyled, or the crumme of bread often dipped in *aqua mulsa*, that is, water and hony sodden together, or in hony of roses. Boile in his brothes endiue, succory, letuce, mallowes, and such like, which haue vertue to coole and moisten. When the disease decreaseth, you may giue him scaly fishes, such as liue in grauelly riuers. If he be very hote within, you may giue him pomegranates and cherries. Let his drinke be water, wherein a litle Cinamon or barley hath bene boyled: you may commixe with it sirupe of violetes, or of roses, or of water lillies. But beware you giue them not too much at once, nor oftentimes, but seldome, and litle at once. When signes of concoction appeare in the vrine, and the vehemency of the feuer is flaked, if then the sicke do lacke strength: you may giue him small ale. Moreover let the sicke be kept quiet without mouing as much as is possible; if he be rich let seruants hold him, if poore, bind him, for inordinate mouing diminisheth strength. Also a bath of sweet water is good for him, if the body be dry and rimped, but he must vse it bloud warme. For so it cooleth and moisteneth, and by that meanes it cureth the drinnesse & ouermuch watching, but
take

Vtulus ratio.

take heed you vse not bathing before the body be purged. Moreouer, perturbations of the mind do hurt frenetike persons exceedingly, & therefore you must suffer them to vse nothing that will make them sad, or engender choler in the. For the cure, if the strength of the patient will suffer, let him bleed forthwith, for there is none so present a helpe. You must cut the vttermost veine of the arme called *Cephalica*, and if that appeare not, take the middle veine, and draw out as much bloud as strength will suffer. But take heed you let him not bleed vntill he sound, as many rashly do, for it is better to take lesse then you should do, the body being much weakened by vehement motion. You must take good heed, least the sicke do priuily take away the band off his arme, or loose it. Afterward also you may strike the veine in the midst of the forehead. But if age or strength do forbid bloudletting, then vse cupping with scarification, behind in the necke or on the backe bone, which be profitable, for that they draw backe the humours that flow to the braine. For that purpose also clisters are specially to be vsed made in this sort. *Rx.* Mallow leaues, violet leaues, endiue, and lettuce. ana. M. j. of barley decorticate. *℥. j.* sebesten, num. i. seedes of gourds, melons, and cucumbers, ana. *℥. iij.* seeth all these in sufficient quantitie of water, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it and take of the decoction *℥. xij.* of *casta fistula* newly drawn. *℥. j.* of *mel rosarum*. *℥. j.* oyle of violets. *℥. iij.* of salt. *℥. j.* commixe them them all & make a clister. If you will haue it purge more strongly, put to it of *Hierapicra*, or *Electuarium de succo rosarum*. *℥. ℥.* Binding of the extreme parts of the body profit much to diuert the humors from the head. Also *Masticholus* doth greatly commend *subitū* with the conserues of roses, & I my self haue proued it in this order to be most excellent as followeth. *Rx.* g. 12. made in very fine powder, & put it into claret wine. *℥. iij.* & let it stand houres 30. & euery 6 or 7. houre shake it: & at the 30 houres end, powre it from the powder, & let him drinke it with a litle sugar. This doth mightily purge the superfluous humors from the head, as also to rub the feet with salt & vineger & such like. You must sprinkle the head with oile of roses, or vineger of roses being bloud warme. For the braine or his filmes being inflamed, cannot safely abide actually cold, nor vehement heat. For the same purpose also you may vse iuice of nightshade, & of plantaine, or the distilled waters of the, or such like herbs. If the euill be verie vehement, moisten his face continually with oyle of water wherein the tops of poppy haue bin sodden. You may also vse odors to his nose of roses, violets, water lillies, and such like. Also annoint his nostrils within, & his forehead with the iuice of the foresaid herbs: for you must endeuor to astonie & dull the braine (which burneth extremely) by cooling it. If the sicke watch ouermuch, then you must apply such things as do prouoke sleepe, as this ointment following or such like. *Rx.* *unguenti populeon*. *℥. ij.* oyle of violets. *℥. iij.* seed of henbane, & barke of mandrake roots. ana. *℥. ℥.* of *opium*. g. ij. of *saffron* g. iij. vineger a litle, white waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment & annoint the temples therewith. Also this embrocation may be vsed bloud warme to the head, *Rx.* floures of violets, red roses, & water lilles. ana. M. j. barley decorticate. *℥. j.* seeds of white poppy. *℥. ij.* seeds of lettuce. *℥. iij.* seeth the in sufficient quantity of water vnto the third part, & make an embrocation. You shall make the decoction of more force, if you ad to it leaues of henbane, nightshade, poppy heads,

Curatio.

Vena sectio.

Clister.

A purging
potion.

Localia.

Vnguentum.

Embrocatio.

Disensientia.

mandrake apples, or roots, & a litle vineger. You may also lay vnder his pillow, poppie heads, or mandrake apples. You may also for the same purpose, giue him to drinke water wherein poppie or henbane seed hath bin sodden, or some somnoriferous composid, as is regines *Nicolai*, or *Philonium*, or such like, in ministering whereof, you must obserue, that you giue them not in the vehemency of the fit, but in the declining therof. Besides, note that you must eschue continuall vse of stupefactiue medicines, as well inwardly as outwardly also. For in this disease by ouermuch cooling you may turne the frenesie into a lethargie, wherby you may cause him to sleepe so, that you can awake him no more Also if the patient be weake, beware how you minister stupefactiue things to prouoke sleepe, for in such as be weake (as *Tralilius* saith) somnoriferous potions do no small hurt, and somerime they kill. At the last when the disease is swallowed, and waxeth more gentle, which for the most part chanceth the third day: you must apply discussiuue medicins which haue vertue to disperse the remnant of the disease. And for that purpose you may apply the aforesaid embrocation, adding to it before, flowers of cammomil, dill, melilor, marsh mallowes, and such like. There be some that at that time (the disease declining) do apply to the head, hennes or whelpes cut in the midst, or the lungs of a weather hor. But take good heed that no such thing be applyed in the beginning of the disease, or in the vehemency therof, for so you should increase the inflammation & the feuer, & make the sick in more peril. Moreouer, if the euill continue long, you may boyle in the embrocation *serpillum*, that is, wild time, or sauory. Also in the declination of the inflammation (as *Galen* teacheth) you may vse *Castoreum*, for that it is of furtle substance, & will worke his force through the skull. When the franticke person is recovered, let him eschue drunkennesse, idlenessse, variety & corruption of meats, & specially the burning heat of the sun. Hereby you may learne not only the cure of the frensie, but also a remedy against immoderate watching, & rauing in any sort ingendred by feuers, when the patient is vexed by the (although they come by consent, & be but accidents of the feuers) that it is necessary to remedy the, least the braine in time be thereby affected.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Lethargie.

*Abstr.
effus.
Causa.*

Signa.

Lethargus in Greeke and in Latin also, is a disease contrarie to the frenesie, for it causeth sluggishnesse & an inexpugnable desire of sleeping, some call this disease in Latin *Veternus*. They that be taken with this disease, do forget all things, whereupon it hath that name For *Lethe* in Greeke is forgetfulnessse, and *Arges* is slothfull or dull, so that *Lethargus* is nothing else but a dull obliuion, & therefore may be called in Latine *Oblivio iners*. It is caused of fleame, which cooleth the braine ouermuch, and moisteneth it, and thereby prouoketh sleepe. The fleame doth putrify in the brain, & therby causeth a feuer which is alwayes annexed with this disease (as *Galen* testifieth in his 13. booke de *Methodo medendi*). Also they haue alwayes a profound and dead sleep. Their pulse is great, and striketh seldome, and is waterie, that is, it beareth as it were full of water. They fetch their breath seldome and weakly, they are continually sluggish & sleepey, and can scarcely by any meanes be compelled to answer. They will sometime open

open their eyes; if you crie loud to them, and shut them againe forthwith, they are forgetfull and do rane. They gape and gaspe often, and sometime keepe their mouth open still, as though they had forgotten to shut it. Oftentimes being required to make water, & taking the chamber vessel, they forget to make vrine. For the most part their egestions be liquid: but contrariwise many are costiuie. Their vrine is like beasts vrine. Some of them do tremble and sweate all ouer. Let the chamber wherein the sicke doth ly be light & warme. Let his meats be such as do extenuate, cut and drie, and let them be seasoned with *apium*, annise, comin, pepper, cinamon, cloues, and such like. Let the sicke cate birds that liue vpon mountaines, and chickens, partrich, thrush and such like. For pot-herbs let him vse *asparagus*, fenell, parcels, and such like. Also giue him broth made with barley or oatmeale, or *alica*, with oximell or peniroyall. Let his drinke be *hydromel*, that is, water and honey sodden together, meade or waterie thinne white wine being astringent. After he hath eaten, it is not amisse to bind the extreme parts for a certaine space, that the vapours do not ascend to the head. For the cure (if strength permit, and nothing else do let) it is good forthwith to let blood. You must cut the middle veine or the inward veine of the arme, and draw out as much blood as strength will permit. But if you may not safely let blood, then must the bowels be scourd with sharpe clisters, wherof you shall find examples in the chapter of *Apoplexia*. Afterward the humour abounding must be prepared with decoction of hysope in hony & water, or with thime, peniroyall, *mel rosarum*, or oximell commixed with sirupe of borage, or infusion of roses, and waters of hysope, betonie, marioram, & borage. And afterward purge him with some medicine that will expell steame, wherof you shall find examples in the next chapter following. In the meane season apply to the head *oxyrhodism*, that is, vineger of roses, and that in the beginning, for the humour is to be repelled & driuen backe from the head, whatsoeuer it be. For the which purpose also, it is good to vse frictions with pellitory, pepper, salt and vineger, & bindings of the extreme parts. Moreouer, apply to his nostrils odors which wil awake him, as be these, *castoreum*, the snuffe of a candle quenched, tarre, *galbanum*, sulphur, harts horne, sothernwood or goats horne burnt a litle, and holden to the nostrils. You may pricke their legges, and their extreme parts, and pull them by the haire violently to awake them. Also you may boyle thime, peniroyall and organ in vineger, and hold that decoction to the nose of the sicke, that the fume ascending to the braine, may cut & deuide the tough humours. Also annoint the pallat of the mouth with strong and sharpe medicines, as with mustard & honey, *mithridatum*, *theriaca*, powder of pellitorie. And you must endeouour to plucke out the steame that sticketh there with your finger. Sometime also you may prouoke sneesing with *castoreum*, or pepper, or *Eleborus*, and if they can vse it, let them gargarize. And if by this meanes the disease be not dissolued, then shau the head, and apply to it bags of salt, or *milum*, or such like. Or make this decoction following, and let it run on high vpon the fore part of the head. *Rx.* wild thime, hysope and sauory, with a litle *Castoreum*, and boyle them in oile and vineger, & vse it. Moreouer, it profiteth to apply a *sinapismus*, made of figges and mustard seed beaten together with vineger. Afterward you must apply to the hinder part of the head cup-

Vetus ratio.

Curatio.

Locatio.

Castoreum.

ping glasses with great flame, about the first & second ioint of the neck, partly easily, & partly with scarification. Also the head must be annointed with *castoreum*. And (as *Trallianus* saith) *Castoreum* drunk with oximel an houre before the fit, is exceeding good: for (as he saith) he hath knowne many by that one medicine restored to life & health. You may minister. ʒ. j. thereof with ʒ. j. of oximel, or with so much white wine astringēt, or with *aqua mulsa*. Besides, you must often prouoke nature to expell excrements with clisters, and such things as prouoke vrine. You must annoint the share with oile of rew, wherein a litle *castoreum* is mixed: you must giue him in drinke such things as do extenuate & cut grosse & clāmic humors, as be the decoctions of *Apiū*, fennel, maidenhaire, and such like. You must admonish the sicke to swallow downe such potions oftē, & therefore you may drop it into his mouth with a suckling boxe. In the lethargie it continueth long. If strength do permit, you may minister *Hiera* or *colocythide*, & prouoke him to sweate with the medicines afore named. At the last when the disease beginneth to decline, gestation on horseback, or in a litter is profitable, & bathing is exceeding good at that time, but the head of the sicke may not be wet by any means. And if the sicke for lack of strength cannot abide the heat of the bath, at the least let him be washed at home in a vessell of warme water. Let him be scoured in the bath with sharpe sope, as with wine lies burnt, with mustard seed, pellitory, pepper, laurel berries, quicke lime, adding double as much *nitrum*.

CHAP. XVII.

*Of Memorie lost.**Causa.*

Memoria *deperdita*, the losse of memorie chaunceth sometime alone, and sometime reason is hurt with it. It is caused in the lethargie and other soporiferous diseases. It commeth to passe also that the soporiferous diseases being ended, there ensueth forgetfulness: which when it chanceth then a cold distempure is the cause that the memorie is perished or grievously hurt. This coldnesse hath sometimes moistnesse ioyned with it, & sometime drinesse: sometime anie one of the former distempures may cause this disease alone: therefore the Phisition must diligētly discerne the causes. The causes of this disease be either externall or internal: if they be internal, either abundance of fleame, or melancholy is cause of it. If there be no signes of those humors abounding, then must it needs come of some externall cause, especially if it come not through extreame old age. The externall causes you may learne by relation of the sicke, and those that are about him, as if anie disease be newly passed, & so turned into obliuion, or if medicines were ministred inwardly, or applied outwardly to the head, which haue vertue to coole extremely. Or if it came of immoderate labour with studie and watching or such like. If the memorie be but a litle hurt, it betkeneth that the braine is but litle cooled. If reason be lost, together with the memorie, then the affect is called *Fatuitas* or *Stultitia* (that is) foolishnes or doltishnesse, & both these do come of one disposition, but that is more vehement where both are hurt. As touching signes, if only a dry distempure occupying the hinder part of the head do cause this euill, then ouermuch watching troubleth the sicke. If only a moist distemper be cause of it, the they are heauie and enclined to sleepe, and their sleepe be long and troublesome. If cold

Signa.

cold be ioyned with moisture, it engendreth the lethargy & *Carus*, wherof we will intreate in the next Chapter. Therefore in them that haue lost their memory you must obserue their sleeps, whether they be ouer sleepy, or in a mean or sleepe not at all, for so shall you find what distempere doth most abound. Besides you must marke whether they auoid any thing at the nose, or whether any thing distill from the head by their mouth, or whether those parts be altogether dry. For by them you may likewise coniecture the distempere abounding. And if fleame be cause of the euill, you shall perceiue it not only by immoderate sleepe, & abundance of excrements descending from the braine (as is aforesaid) but also by the disposition of the sick, by his age & his complexion, by the time of the yeare, the region, the state of the aire, & the diet that he vsed before. For all those or the most part of them encline to cold & moisture. Likewise if melancholy abounding be cause of the disease, you shall know it, for that the sick is not sleepy at all, neither doth he auoid any excrements at all from the braine: besides the state of his body & all other circumstances about rehearsed incline to cold and driness. His diet must be diuerse according to the diuersity of the causes. But whatsoeuer the cause be, let the aire that the sick remaineth in, be inclining to heat, and let his lodging be light, let not his windows be north nor south, for the one cooleth, and the other filleth the head. Let him eschue much sleepe, specially in the day time, & vpon a full stomack. But note, if the disease be caused of a cold and moist distempere, the whole order of his diet must be hote and dry. But if the cause be cold and dry, then must the diet be altogether such as will heat & moisten. As touching the cure, if losse of memory be caused by vehement purgations, or other immoderate euacuations, or by sounding often, & so ouermuch driness do hurt the memory, then minister no medicines, but only restore the body by good diet. For the body being corroborate, & strength renewed, the memory will come againe. If you require to know what things are requisite for such a diet, you shall find it in the Chapter of the feuer heftike. If the memory be lost by extreme age, then phisick will nothing auaille. But only they must content themselves with diet conuenient: but if the memory faile suddely, the other members of the body being safe, then the falling sicknes is to be feared, or the palsey, or the *Aplexy*. And therefore in such a case you must provide diligently by all meanes, that no such thing chace as is to be feared. You may preuent those diseases by the same remedies that you wold vse in the cure of the being preser. And if the memory faile by means of other diseases, as through the lethargy or pestilence, then medicines for cure therof are to be vsed. The whole scope of curing the disease, if it come only of a cold distemper of the braine consisteth in heating. You must therefore minister medicines that haue vertue to heat aswel inwardly as outwardly. Outwardly you must annoint the head with warm oile, & that in sommer. In winter annoint it with oile of *Trees* comixed with sharp vinegar, & sometime boil wild time, & calamint, & such like in the oile, & so vse it. Some do adde to it pepper, & laurel berries. Also *castoreum* is profitable being comixed with oile, & annointed vpon the hinder part of the head. Also this ointment is very good. *Recipe*. of oile made of tile stones, called *Oleum de lateribus*, & oile of *castoreum*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}\text{ss}$. roots of *accorus*, & *valeriana*, ana. $\mathfrak{d}\text{ij}$. pellitory & reu. of ech $\mathfrak{d}\text{ij}$. ss. with waxe suffi-

*Præsumptio**Curatione**Unguentum*

Sacculus.

cient make an ointment, and annoint the hinder part of the head therewith being shauen, and apply this quilt vpon it. R. floures of Rosemarie, balme, and lauender. ana. M.ß. floures of Elder. M.j. stachas. ʒ. iij. nutmegges, wood of aloes, and maces. ana. ʒ. j. powder them, and stich them in silke, and make a quilt. You may make manie such like medicines by examples in other chapters. You may minister inwardly conserues of the flowers of betony, rosemary, lauender, spicknard & balme, adding to them pepper, cloues, cynamon, & such like adoraments. If memory be lost by cold and moistnesse ioyned together, minister *Hiorapicra*, which will purge out nothing that is good, but onely that which is noysome. Afterwards let him vse gargarises, sternutatioſ, & whatsoeuer doth purge by the mouth and the nose. Also a sinapismus may profitably be applied to the head. If obliuiſ be caused of sleame abounding, the you must first prepare and concoct that humor with *mel rosarum*, oximell, sirupe of infusion of roses, with decoction of betony, marioram, hysope, time & such like: after the administration whereof, the matter being concoct and prepared, you may purge it with decoction of mirabolanes chebulorum, and agaricke trochiscar, to the which you may adde of the sirupe of infusion of roses, or *Diacatholicon*, or *Diaphenicon*. And if the matter through his grossenes, will not sufficiently purge at once, then you must prepare it againe, and after purge it with pills, *arabica*, *aurea*, or *aggregatinae*, commixing some of them with agarick trochiscar, & so make pills with hony of roses, or sirupe of stachados. After you may particularly purge the head with gargarises & sternutatioſ. After purging it is good to minister vnto the *Castoreum* or shauing of iuory. ʒ. j. with *aqua mulsa*, or as much *Confectio anacardina*, or *aurea Alexandrina*, or *Diambra*, *diamoscha* dulce, or *mithridatum*, or *theriaca*, with *aqua mulsa* or white wine. Afterward you may vse outwardly embrocations, & poure them downe first on high vpon the head being shauen, specially nigh to the seame, where the bone is loosest or thinnest. You may make your embrocatio thus. R. of hysope, *serpillum*, & time, ana. M.ß. betony, marioram, & flowers of cammomill, ana. pug.ß. flowers of *stachados*. ʒ. iij. make a decoction, and ad thereto of *Castorei*. ʒ. j. of vineger. ʒ. j. & make an embrocation. It is good also to annoint the first and second spondill in the necke, & the hinder part of the head, with *Oleum nardinum*, oyles of nutmegges, of *Castoreum*, of pepper, or *Oleum costium*. And you may apply therevpon a quilt, made in this sort R. hysope, marioram, and flowers of *stachados*, ana. ʒ. j. *castoreum*, nutmegs, spiknard, maces ana. ʒ. j. the barks of frankensense, masticke, and wood of *Aloes*. ana. ʒ. j.ß. red roses dried the waight of all, beate them to powder, and make a quilt. And if the euill cease not by this meanes, then last of all, vse a sinapismus. If memory be lost by abundance of melancholy, you must first prepare it to expulsion, by sirupe of borage and fumitory mixed together, and adding sirupe of infusion of roses, and waters of betony, hops and balme, and such like. Afterward minister this potion following. R. *Mirabolanorum indorum*. ʒ. iij. sene, and epithimum. ana. ʒ. ij. flowers of hoppelles, fumitory, & borage. ana. ʒ. ij.ß. make a decoction in running water, & hauing strained it, dissolue therein of fine manna ʒ. ij. of *Diacatholicon*. ʒ. vij. or *Diasene*. ʒ. ʒ.ß. & make a potion. As touching outward medicins, let them rather encline to moisture the drinesse. As by adding to the ointments before prescribed, oiles

Embrocha.

Sacculus.

Decoctio.

of

of cammomill, dill, and sweet almonds. Likewise in making embrocations and quilts, you may withdraw such medicines as drie, and ad moist things in their stead. Hereby a circumspect Physician may not only haue a reasonable Method to cure ech kind of obliuion, but also to remedy anie dulnesse or weaknes of the memorie: for that it cometh of the same causes that memorie lost doth come, although they be not so vehement, where the memorie is weakened.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Carus or Subeth.

Carus in Greeke, and Carus in Latine is a disease, in which both sense & mo- *Carus.*
 uing is altogether taken away, & yet their breathing remaineth safe. The
Arabians call this disease *Subeth*. This disease differeth from the lethargie, for *Subeth.*
 that they will answer to a question demanded that haue the lethargie, and do
 not ly altogether downe. But they that haue *Carus*, are occupied with deepe
 sleepe, and if they be stirred or pricked, although they feele, yet they will say
 nothing, nor once open their eyes. Besides as *Paulus Aegineta* noteth, a vehe-
 ment feuer doth vse to go before *Carus*, and in the lethargy it followeth rather.
 Also *carus* vseth to succeed other symptomatics & accidents. For it commeth of-
 ten in the fits of feuers, & in the falling sicknesse, and in pressing of the braine,
 as well when the braine pan is crushed together, as also if the filmes that cover
 the formost ventricle of the braine be thrust downe. But the lethargie hath a
 certaine peculiar consistence of himselfe. Also *Carus* doth differ from the A-
 poplexie, for that in it the breathing is verie straight, so that the sicke can with
 much a do scarce breathe at all. But he that hath *Carus* (as *Galen* witnesseth in
 his fourth booke de locis affectis) hath his breath at libertie. *Carus* is caused of a *Causa.*
 cold, grosse, and viscus fleumaticke humour filling the braine. You may easi-
 ly know the signes by that which hath bene rehearsed before. For in this dis- *Signa.*
 ease they are altogether in a dead sleepe, & their eyes alwayes shut. As for the *Visus.*
 diet & the cure of those that haue *Carus*, it agreeth altogether with theirs that
 haue the lethargie: wherof we spake before in the 16. Chapter, sauing that in
 this disease you must vse things that be of greater force to extenuate, cut, and *Cura.*
 deuide the grosse humours. Also you must apply emplasters and other medi-
 cines to the stomacke which haue vertue to heate and corroborate it, be-
 cause it is stuffed with fleame, which doth coole it and moisten it. Wherof you
 shall find examples in the beginning of the third booke.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Congelation or taking.

Catoche or Catalepsis in Greeke, in Latine may be called *Occupatio*, *Detentio*, *Congelatio*,
 & *deprehensio*. The new writers in physicke do call it *Congelatio*, in English
 it may be called Congelation or taking. It is a sodaine detention and taking
 both of mind and bodie, both sense and mouing being lost, the sicke remaining
 in the same figure of bodie wherein he was taken, whether he sit or lie, or stand,
 or whether his eyes be open or shut. This disease is a meane betweene the le-
 thargie and the frensie, for it commeth of a melancholicke humour for the most
 part, as shall be declared afterward. Therefore in respect of coldnesse it a-
 greeth with the lethargie, and in respect of drinessse with the frensie. Here-

Cause.

upon it cometh that they which haue this disease, are neither like the freneticke altogether, nor like them that haue the lethargie. This disease is caused sometime of abundance of blood flowing to the head and replenishing it. But for the most part (as *Aetius* witnesseth) it is caused of a cold and drie melancholicke humour, troubling the hinder parts of the head and braine. This disease inuadeth a man sodainly, and taketh away speech and sense from him, he heareth nothing, he answereth nothing, his breath is scarcely to be perceiued, but he lyeth as he were dead. His pulse is smal and weake and verie thicke. His egestion and vrine are detained, or else they come forth in small quantity, and that is not in respect of drinnesse, for the sicke sometime doth abound with much moisture, but for lacke of sense. Their face is sometime red, and that is when the euill is engendred of blood: and sometime it is swart, and that is when melancholy causeth the disease. Moreover, the eyes in this disease remaine immouable, as though they were frozen. This euill differeth from *Carus* (as *Galen* saith) for that in it the eye lids are euer shut, but in this disease they sometime remaine open. The diet in this euill must be diuerse according to the diuersity of causes. Let his food be prisan broth, and such like. Let his drinke be *aqua mulsa* well boiled, or thin white wine well alayed, for such wine, seeing it doth not fume into the head, doth much good. It is hurtfull for them to drinke water, for it causeth windinesse, swelleth the spleen, and quencheth not thirst. As concerning the cure, if the face of the sicke be ruddy, and blood seeme to abound, if strength permit and yeares, let him forthwith bleed on the outwardmost veine of the arme, and let him bleed according to his strength. Afterward if the head be hote, apply those things that coole. For that purpose you may boyle the shelles of poppy heads in oyle, and annoint the head therewith. But in other, that haue their face swart, and so haue tokens of melancholy abounding, you must first cleanse the guts with clisters, made of floures of borage, buglosse, fumitorie, time, epithimum, rootes of polipodie, leaues of sene, adding to it oyles of cammomill, and dill, and *casta*, *diacatholicon*, *diasena*, or *confectio hamech* in couenient quantity. Whereof you shal find examples afterward in the chapter of *Melancholia*. And if the belly become not soluble by this meanes, then it is not amisse to boile in the former decoction rootes of *Eleborus niger*. The head must be annointed with oile, wherein wild time is sodden, or with oile of lillies or dill, or such like, and that you must do chiefly when the head seemeth cold. Moreover, if his vrine appeare grosse & thicke, you must giue him to drinke the decoction of dill, apium, calamint, & such like, as haue vertue to extenuate. It profiteth also to annoint all their whole body with oyle of dill, specially in winter. Also they that haue trẽbling with this disease, may haue ʒj of *Castorei* comixed with *aqua mulsa*, & powred into their mouth. The rest that concerne the cure of this disease may be gathered partly out of the chapters of the frensie & lethargie before, & partly out of the chapter of melancholie following.

CHAP. XX.

Of dead sleepe.

Coma in Greeke, *sopor*, or *gravis & profundus somnus* in Latin. It may be called in English dead sleepe. It is a disease wherein the sicke cannot awake, nor

keepe

keepe open his eyes, but doth keepe his eyes continually close shut, and is in a sound sleepe. But there be two kinds hereof, the one whereof we haue already spoken, and that is called simply *coma* or *sopor*, or else *coma somnolentum*. The other is called *Vigilans sopor*, and it is an euill wherein the sicke cannot hold open his eyes, though he be awake, but he winketh in hope to get sleepe, and yet is altogether awake. Therefore you must make a difference betweene these two kinds. The sleeping *coma* (as *Galen* witnesseth) is sometime caused by ouer-
Cause.
much moistening of the braine, as it chaunceth to many drunken persons. Also in feuers only hote and moist vapours ascending from the inferiour parts, & moistening the braine do cause this euill. Moreouer sometime onely cold, occupying the fore part of the braine is cause of this euill. Sometime profound sleepe is caused of coldnes & moistnesse ioyned together. The other euill called *Vigilans sopor*, or *coma* (that is) the watching drowsinesse, is caused of fleame mixed with choler, and for the most part commeth for lacke of strength, that they are not able to keepe open their eyelids. The party that is vexed with the soporiferous and sleepy *Coma*, doth sleepe with his neither iaw open, & as often as he is awaked, he falleth into a new sleepe forthwith. They that haue the
Signa.
watching *Coma*, they speake they wot not what, and they lie with their whole body out of order, and they haue partly such signes as appeare in the frenesie, and partly such as in the lethargy. The cure is of two sorts, according to the di-
Curation.
uersity of the euils. For in the soporiferous & sleepy *Coma*, you must vse those remedies that are prescribed in the Chapters of *Carus*, & the lethargy. And to speake briefly, after the whole is purged, if the euill be caused of moistnesse, then you must apply such things as will dry the braine made with sharpe vinegar and roses, and cammomill commixed, and you may also let the fume thereof go vp into the nostrils. If it be caused of cold, then apply oyle of dill, and cammomill warmed: and if the cold be great, you may sometime boyle in oile, peniroyall and dill and vse it. But if the euill be caused of cold and moisture ioyned together: then must it be cured, as the lethargy. If it come of weaknes and lacke of strength, then you must vse restoratiues to recouer it againe. Suppositaries are very good to be vsed in these kindes of diseases, for that they stirre and prouoke nature. For the watching *Coma*, since it consisteth of mixed and contrary causes, it must be cured by contrary medicins, partly as the frenesie, and partly as the lethargy. And to know which of them you must vse most, you may learne that by the humour most abounding. For if fleame abound more then choler, then you must vse most the remedies against the lethargy: but if contrariwise choler do most abound, then must your remedies be for the most part such as are good against the frenesie. And therefore you may seeke conuenient remedies out of those Chapters, as occasion serueth.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Apoplexie.

A *Poplexia* in Greeke and Latine is a disease wherein the fountaine and originall of all the sinewes being affected, euery part of the body doth sordainely loose both mouing and sense. Or it is a depriuing both of sense and

Cause.

Signa.

Prognostica.

Curatio.

mouing throughout the whole body comming sodainly with let and hurt of all
 voluntarie functions. If this stopping of the braine come in one halfe of the
 body onely, then it is called *Paralysis* in Greeke, in English the Palsey, whereof
 we will speake in the next Chapter. The Apoplexie is caused of a flegmaticke
 humour, that is cold, grosse and tough, which doth at one time adundantly
 fill the principall ventricles of the braine, which humour ouermuch crudities,
 and chiefly diunkenesse doth engender. Also it is caused by a fall or a blow
 which shaketh and bruiseth the braine, and causeth humours to flow thither.
 Also very cold aire which doth thicke and congeale the humidities and ex-
 crements of the braine, doth sometime cause this disease: it may also be cau-
 sed of a grosse melancholy humour. Concerning signes, there goeth before this
 disease a full and sharpe paine of the head, and a swelling of the veines in the
 necke, the *Vertigo*, & brightnesse before the eyes, also cold of the extreme parts
 without cause, paining of the whole body, slownesse to moue, and gnashing of
 the teeth while they sleepe. This vrine is litle in quantity, blacke, like rust and
 canker in mettall, and hath a residence like meale. They that fall into this dis-
 ease, do lacke sense altogether, they lie as they were a sleepe with their eyes
 shut, and do snort. The vehemency and greatnesse of this disease may be dis-
 cerned by the impediment that they haue in breathing: for when it is very
 much differing from naturall order, it betokeneth vehemency of the disease,
 and that it is a great and strong Apoplexy. But when there is a litle impedi-
 ment in the breathing, then you may iudge that there is but litle hurt in the
 braine, and so you may accompt it a small and weake Apoplexie. The worst
 and strongest Apoplexie is, wherein the breathing is so diminished that it can
 very hardly be perceiued; and that is almost as euill, wherein the breath stop-
 peth for a while, and then is fetched with great violence. This disease for the
 most part doth chance to old men, which be of a flegmaticke complexion, and
 which do vse such a diet as encreaseth fleame. But if so be it inuade any yong
 person, and that in sommer season, it is most perillous. This disease is incur-
 able, or at the least is seldome cured. And therefore *Hippocrates* writeth in the 24.
 Apho. of his second booke: It is impossible (saith he) to cure a vehement Apo-
 plexie, and not casie to cure a weake one: for it threatneth speedy death. Be-
 sides if it chance by medicines to be taken away, for the most part it departeth
 leauing the palsey behind it, either in the whole body, or in some part thereof.
 Often also it corrupteth the memory, wherupō we may cōclude, that remedies
 are not to be vsed against a strong Apoplexie, for that is of nature deadly. But
 if it be weake, which you may know by the signes aforesayd, although there be
 small hope to remedy it, yet (as *Galen* testifieth) conuenient remedies being
 ministred, it may perhaps be cured, as experience hath proued in some. Those
 therefore whose cure is not altogether desperate, if there be signes of plenitude
 & fulnes, & strength permit also, must be let bloud on both the *Cephalica* veines.
 But you must foretell the perill, for bloudletting doth either kill the or deliuer
 the: so that if after bloudletting (as *Aetius* sayth) both mouing & sense come not
 vnto him againe, there is no more hope. You must not draw away much bloud
 at once, but rather at sundry times, and you must haue regard to his pulse, the
 colour of his face, & his breathing. Besides you must prouoke him to the stoole
 with

with sharpe clisters in this sort. *R.* sage, organ, betony, and rew. ana. *M.* j. calamint, hysope and peniroyall. ana. *M.* ss. seeds of fenell, fescelis, and ammi. ana. *℥.* iiij. centory the lesse. *M.* j. roots of polipody. *℥.* vj. fine agaricke. *℥.* iiij. pulpe of *Coloquintida*. *℥.* ij. boile these in sufficient quantity of water, vntill halfe be consumed: then take of that decoction. *℥.* xv. of *Hierapicra*, and *Benedicta laxativa*. ana. *℥.* ss. of *Electuarium nidum*. *℥.* iiij. of *Diaphenicon*. *℥.* iiij. of mel *rosarum* clarified. *℥.* j. ss. of oiles of laurell, rew, and *Castoreum*. ana. *℥.* j. or sal gemme. *℥.* j. ss. commix them all and make a clister. Also the vse of suppositaries in this disease is very commendable made of *Coloquintida*, agaricke, blacke hellebore, and such like, after this sort. *R.* of hony boyled to a height, *℥.* ij. of *Coloquintida*, agaricke and hellebore. ana. *℥.* ij. of sal gemme. *℥.* j. beat them into powder, commixe them with the hony, & make suppositaries vj. fingers long, and hang a threed in them, that you may draw them out when you list. You may also put into the suppositaries *Hierapicra* or pills *Cochia*. Afterward annoint the whole body with a good quantity of warme oile, wherein wild time, calamint, dill, & such like haue first bene boyled. Also the extreme parts must be bound strongly, and vehemently chafed with the decoction of the roote of floure de luce, many cupping glasses must be fastned to the shoulers. The head must be shauen, & annointed with oiles of cammomill, dill and rew, or with oile wherein the asorenamed hearbs haue bene boyled. You must apply to the nostrils such things as by their odour can stir and raise vp the sicke, as be opoponax, *castoreum*, *sagapenum*, *galbanum*. Also you may vse medicines to prouoke sneefing made of white hellebore, *castoreum*, and such others rehearsed in the former Chapters. Or it profiteth much to vse embrocations, made of cammomil, melilore, sage, peniroyall, marioram, organ, calamint, sautery, and hysope, boyled in equal portions of wine and water. But yet it is better to vse dry medicins to the head, as be *Sinapismi*, made after this sort. *R.* *Olei castum*. *℥.* ij. oiles of *Castoreum* & *Euphorbium*. ana. *℥.* iiij. mustard seed. *℥.* ij. *Castoreum*. *℥.* j. *sagapenum*. *℥.* j. ss. *Euphorbium*. *℥.* j. vineger. *℥.* ij. with sufficient quantity of wax, make an emplaster. Also you must open their mouth by force, and put into it your finger, or a fether dipped in oile of Ireos to prouoke vomit, and to cause the grosse humors that be in the mouth to be cast out. Also their fundament must be annointed with such medicines as dissolve windines, as be rew, comin, nitrum and hony. When the euill is asswaged, you must giue him meate of easie digestion, for the most part mixed with hony. If his speech come not yet againe, so that his strength permit, you must fasten cupping glasses to the hinder part of the head with scarification. And in like sort vnder the short ribs, if you may. Afterward let the sicke be caried in a wagon or horslitter. Let his drink be mulla, or oximell. Let him drink no wine, After 21. daies be past the sick may enter a bath, but as touching medicins requisite for the rest of the cure, you shall find the abundantly in the Chap. following. And this may suffice for the cure of the Apoplexy, if so be it be curable.

Vomitua.

Vicius.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the Palsey.

*P*aralysis in Greeke, *Resolutio* in Latine: in English the Palsey. It is a disease wherein the one halfe of the body either the right side or the left doth loose

Why in the
palsey some-
time sense a-
lone, sometime
mouing alone,
and sometime
both together
perish.

both sense and mouing. Also sometime the palsey chaunceth in one member onely (as for example) in the hand, the legge, or the tongue. But note here that the palsey which followeth the Apoplexy is particularly called in Greeke Παρεμπληγια. And therefore the word *Paralysis* is a more generall name then *Paraplegia*. But whereas in the palsey, sometime sense onely is lost, and sometime mouing alone, and sometime both sense and mouing: it is specially called resolution of the sinewes or palsey, when mouing is lost. Why sometime feeling is lost only, and sometime mouing alone, and sometime both together, *Galen* declareth at large in his first booke *de symptomatum causis*, cap. 4. & therefore it need not be here rehearsed: notwithstanding it shal not be amisse to answer briefly to that question. First note, that as well the faculty of mouing as of sense floweth from the braine as from a fountaine, and is deriued from thence by and in the sinewes to the instruments of motion and sense, & therefore it must needs be, if that faculty of the braine be hindered or stopped by any cause, that it cannot discend to the instrumēt of mouing or of sense, that they shold loose mouing or sense according as the sinewes be affected. And therefore in those members that participate two kinds of sinewes, as the eyes & the tongue do, the former question is easy to be soluted, for that they haue one kind of sinewes for motiō and another kind for sense, & so the one may be hurt, & the other safe, or they may be both hurt, and so both sense and motion perish. But in members that haue but one kind of sinewe, the question is more obscure to answer. In such members therefore, if (the skin being takē away) the muscle lying naked cannot moue at all, and yet feeling remaineth in it, you may know that the hurt is not great. But if the sinewes be much stopped, then hath it lost both sense and mouing, for it is vnpossible that the sense of a muscle should be lost, & the motion remaine still. The reason is; for that lesse of the animall faculty is requisite for feeling, then for mouing, so that there may come sufficient quantity of that faculty to a muscle to cause feeling in it, and yet not enough to cause it to moue also: & therefore a naked muscle, which hath his faculty both of feeling and mouing of one kind of sinewe, cannot moue and lacke sense; but either it hath sense and lacketh mouing, & then his hurt is but litle, or it hath lost both, and that is when the hurt is great, and the sinewe is altogether stopped. But where there is a member that hath sinewes placed in the muscles to cause mouing, and other sinewes spread in the skinne to cause feeling (for the sinewes that are dispersed in the muscles do not send out branches to the skinne as some suppose) I say it may come to passe in that member, that sometime it may loose feeling alone, and sometime mouing alone, and sometime both together. For it may be that the skin which couereth the muscle may loose his sence of feeling, the sinewe being affected which is dispersed in it, and yet the sinewe that runneth in the muscle may be safe, and therefore the muscle may moue. But if the sinewe which is spread in the muscle be affected, and the sinewe that commeth to the skinne remaine safe, that member cannot moue, & yet it hath sense and feeling left, & that commeth to passe because the sinewe of the one is hurt, and the other hath his sinewe safe: although they spring both from one place, yet they are deuided in the way as they come to the member. And if both the sinewes be affected, as well that that commeth to the muscle, as that

that which commeth to the skin, then both sense offeeling and mouing also perish and are lost, & that is when the common fountaine from whence they do both spring, is affected & hurt. You may discern that, whe you know exactly the commo original & spring of euery sinew, in considering diligently whether the brain it self be affected, or the back boue at the head of it, or in any of his spondils besides. This is to be knowne by the Anotamy offinewes, & therefore it behoueth to be well exercised therein, for in the palsey there is not one certaine place affected, but diuerse places. If the braine it selfe be affected: I meane not the whole braine, for then is the Apoplexy engendred: but if the right halfe or the left be affected, you shall know it, for that the palsey or resolution will be aswell on the right or left side of the face, as on the right or left side of the bodie. But if the face be safe, and one halfe of the body be deprived of sense and mouing, then you may know that the place affected is the vpper end and first spondils of the backe bone, but the one halfe only of the marrow is affected, & that is it that is next to the side taken with the palsey. But if all the inferior members, (the face onely excepted) be resolued and paralitike, then is the back bone affected in the same place, euen in the beginning & vpper end of it, but then is the hurt vehement, for the whole marrow is affected. But if it chaunce one onely part to be resolued and taken with the palsey, you must search from whence, the sinewes come that be contained in it, which you may easily find, if you be well exercised in Anotamy. For if the marrow of the back be not affected aboue where his first beginning is, but lower among the spondils, then if the affect & hurt be great, all the inferior parts beneath those spondils affected, be resolued and taken with the palsey, but if the hurt be but litle, and the marrow but halfe affected, then only the inferior parts of the one side be resolued. Therefore you must first learne by Anotamie to find the place affected, hauing foreknowledge from what part of the backbone the members resolued haue their sinewes. The palsey and resolution of members is engendred of abundance of grosse & clammy humors, which stop the sinewes & hinder the animal faculty that it cannot come fro the fountaine to the members. It may also be caused of immoderat cold in snow or vehement frost. Also it may be caused by an inflammatio, or a Scirrhus (which is a hard swelling without sense) chancing in the backbone, or in parts nigh adioyning, or in other sinewy parts, wherby the sinewes are crushed & pressed, & so stopped that the animal faculty cannot passe. As also the sinewes may be crushed together by some external cause, as by binding with a cord, or such like means, & so cause resolutio: also whe there is luxatio or fracture in any of the spodils of the back, or in other ioints or bones, there may follow resolutio by means of compressio & crushing together of sinews. Also resolution or palsey may be caused by means of a wound, or an vlcer, either in the braine, or in the marrow of the back, or in any particular sinews. There need not many signes to know this disease by: for any may iudge easily, that part or member to haue the palsey which is destitute of mouing: to know of what cause it proceeded, you may partly learn by the relatio of the sick, & partly by the signes rehearsed before in the 7. Chapter fol. 10. where headach caused of fleame is intreated of. The palsey is no acute & sharp disease, but of long continuance, & for the most part curable.

*To know if the
braine be affected.*

*To know if the
marrow of the
backe cause the
palsey.*

*Of members particularly taken
with the palsey.*

Cause.

Prognostica.

*Fictus ratio.**Hippocras.**Curatio.**Vene sectio.**Clister.*

It chanceth for the most part in old folke, and in the winter time. The palsey that commeth by a sinew separate and cut a sunder, is (as *Aegineta* saith) vncurable, and so is that which commeth by ouerthwart incisions of the backe, or by great luxation of it. Moreouer if the member paraliticke do waxe lesse, or change his colour, it is hard to be cured, or rather not cureable. For it declareth those parts not onely to be destitute of the animall faculty, but also of the naturall, and after a sort of the vitall also. Their diet must be altogether extenuating and drying. Let the sicke therefore remaine in an aier, that is hot and dry, and in the first three daies he may vse altogether abstinence, or let him content himselfe with *aqua mulsca*, or a litle ptisan broth. Afterward giue him meats of good iuyce, light of digestion, & let the be roasted, let him eat chiefly birdes of the mountaines, and partrich, reare egges, almondes and pyne nuttes. For pot-herbes let him vse fennell, parcelly, hysop, marioram, sage and sauory. Let him eschue fish, fruite, and all things that be cold and moist. Let him drink but litle, for it is good to sustaine as much thirst as he can possibly. Let him drinke *mulsca*, wherein sage or Cynamon hath bene boyled, or let him vse to drinke that which the barbarous Phisitians at this day call Hippocras, made after this fort. R. of chofen Cynamon. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. of Ginger. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . of long pepper, graines, and Galingale. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. of Cardamomes. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . of nutmegges, and cloues, and mace. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. boyle them all in three quartes of running water, vntill a pinte and a halfe be consumed, then strayne it hard, and with halfe a pound of suger make it pleasant to drinke: he may drinke no wine at all, vntill he be perfectly cured, but if the patient can hardly be kept so long time from wine, giue him but a litle in the declining of the disease, and let it be thinne and alayed. Mouing and exercise if he can vse them, are very good for him. Let him eschue sleepe on the day. Let his night sleepe be in a meane. Let him be mery and fye perturbations of the mind. For the cure, if age, state of the body, time of the year, and such like permit, it is good to beginne with blood letting, specially if there be signes of plenitude. But you must draw away blood moderately, least the bodie be cooled ouermuch, and you must let blood on the whole and sound side. Then a few daies after bloodletting, you may cleanse the intestines with clisters made thus. R. of mallowes, holyhockes, mercury, cammomill, sage and betony. ana. M. j. of starchas $\mathfrak{z}$. β . of rew, and calamint. ana. M. β . of seedes of fennell, and ammeos. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. boile these in sufficient water vntill the third part be consumed, then take of that decoction. $\mathfrak{ss}$. j. of *Benedicta laxativa*. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . of *Electuarium midum*. $\mathfrak{z}$. iiij. of hony roses. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . of oyles of laurell, treos, and rew. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. of salt gemme. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. commixe them together and make a clister. Afterward minister vnto him decoctions and sirupes, which haue vertue to extenuate flegmatike humors, and make them apt to be purged, whereof you shall find examples before in the 7. chapter. The humours being thus prepared, minister medicines which do purge fleame, beginning with gentle ones, and proceeding by litle and litle to stronger. Besides those purgations which are rehearsed in the seuenth Chapter afore said, you may vse *pilule azaret arabicae fatide*, with the which you must alwaies commixe agaricke. Neither doth it suffice to purge the patient once, but you must do it so oft, letting 4. or 5. daies passe between ech purging.

The

The next day after he is purged, it profiteth much to giue vnto him *theriaca*, of *mithridatum*. The body being well purged, you must vse sternutations, garga- *Capitis purga-*
 rismes, odoraments, & such other like, as are rehearsed in the 7. chap. And that *rio.*
 specially when the braine is principally affected: for if the braine be not affe-
 cted, you must rather minister such medicines as may corroborate & strengthe
 it in this sort. R^r. of *dianbra*, *plieis*, *archoticon*, & *diamoschin dulce*. ana. ℥ j. of powder *Lozenges.*
 of swallowes preparat. 3. ℔. of coriander seedes preparate. 3. j. of sugar roset. 3.
 iij. with sugar dissolued in rose water, make lozenges, and let the patient hold a
 litle of one of them in his mouth often. It profiteth also in this disease to take
 3. j. of *Castoreum*, or of *opoponax*, or *sagapenum*, in *agua muls*a. Also *distrion piperion*
 is good for them. If the braine be chiefly affected, you must annoint the head
 with hot medicins, as with *Castoreum*, mints, laurell berries, oyle of Ireos boiled
 with a litle vineger, & such like. Therefore if coldnes of the wether do not let it,
 you may shau the head, & annoint it all ouer the forehead. If the marrow of the
 backe be affected at the vpper end, where he beginneth, then after the former
 purgation you must in the nape of the necke where the marrow of the backe
 springeth forth of the braine, vse oiles & ointments which haue vertue to dis-
 solve & discusse, but you must begin with the weakest, as with oiles of camomil,
 dil, spike, lillies, Ireos, nard, nutmeg, S. Iohns wort, & earth-wormes, wherwith
 you must annoint the nape of the neck, & the resolued side, specially the halfe
 of the ridge bone: and you must wrap the paralitike members in warme linnen
 clothes, or in a foxe skin, to keep them warme: or you may bath them with the
 decoction of sage, marioram, cammomil, S. Iohns wort, stæchas and rosemary.
 Afterward you may proceed to stronger medicins, as be oiles *costium*, *vulpinum*,
 oiles of rew, & bayes, oiles of *Castoreum*, *Euphorbium*, & oile of tile stones, called
Oleum è lateribus, or *Oleum Philosophorum*. To these you may ad these ointments,
unguentum aregon, *unguentum agrippa*, and *unguentum martiaton*: and hot simples
 may be added also if you will, as be betony, sage, rosemary, galingale, couslips,
 rew, calamint, pellitory, pepper, *castoreum* and *euphorbium*. Of these you may
 make an ointment after this sort. R^r. of *unguentum aregon*, and *martiaton*. ana. 3. j. of *unguentum*
agrippa. 3. ℔. of oiles *costium* and *vulpinum*. ana. 3. ℔. of oile of earth *unguentum*
 wormes. 3. ℔. of oyle of *Castor*. 3. j. ℔. of powders of betony, pepper, sage, ana.
 ℥ j. of *Castoreum*, and *euphorbium*. ana. ℥ j. of galingale, or roots of accorus. ℥
 ij. with waxe as much as sufficeth, make an ointment. Or thus, R^r. of *oleum costi-* *Alind*
um. 3. ij. of oile of pepper. 3. j. ℔. oile of *Euphorbium*. 3. ij. of *agua vite*. 3. ij. ℔. of
 iuyce of sage, and couslips. ana. 3. j. ℔. of galingale. 3. iij. of stæchas and rosema-
 ry. ana. 3. ij. of pellitory and pepper. ana. 3. j. of *Euphorbium*. 3. ℔. bruse them &
 boile them, vntill the *agua vite* & iuyces be consumed, then straine out the oile
 & put to the waxe and make a liniment. By example of them you may make a
 Cerote also after this maner. R^r. of bay berries, pellitory & pepper. ana. 3. ij. of *Cerotum*
 galingale. 3. j. of stæchas, betony, and elder. ana. 3. j. ℔. of mustard seed and ni-
 gella. ana. 3. j. of *Euphorbium* and *Castoreum*. ana. ℥ j. of *oleum costium*. 3. j. ℔. of
 oile of pepper. 3. j. of oile of *Euphorbium*. 3. iij. with wax & rosin sufficient make
 a cerote. Also you may make a quilt thus. R^r. hisope, marioram, S. Iohns wort,
 sage, rew, and bay leaues, ana. 3. ij. spike, mastike, *Castoreum*, and stæchas. ana. ℥
 ij. cloues, maces, and nutmegges, ana. ℥ j. ℔. red rose leaues dried. M. ℔. beato

Fomentum.

them all to powder, and make a quilt with them. Also a fomentation may conveniently be made thus. *R.* sage, rosemary, S. Johns wort, couflips, hyssop, marioram, betony, peniroyall & calamint, of ech. M. *℞.* boile them in white wine, & adde to the decoction of *cajoreum*. *℥* ij. of floures of starch, & lauender. ana. *℥* j. *℞.* wherewith you may often bath the members affected, before you vse the afore said ointments or quilt. Moreouer you may set cupping glasses lightly without scarification to the members affected, that they may draw thither bloud, & heat, & spirits: & if the members themselves cannot aptly haue cupping glasses applied to the, apply them at the least to the parts next adioyning. After cupping you may vse the afore said ointments & cerots, so that the members affected be first rubbed & chafed and if the disease relent not by all those means (as *Actius* doth counsell) you may vse sinapismes or cauterizatio by fire where the originall of the effect is. Last of all, a hot house or dry bath will profit much, or if they may conveniently come to the, naturall baths which spring from brimstone, alume, & salt, such as be the baths in Germany called *Badenia*, *Ferina*, *Cellances*, & ours in England at *Bath*. But it is good for them to vse before bathing, to be caried vp & downe in a wagon or horse litter. And this may suffice for the cure of the palsey occupying one whole side But if neither the braine, nor the beginning of the ridge bone be affected, but onely some other part of the marrow of the backe, then you must search out that part of the back that is affected. And apply such remedies to it, as are before rehearsed. And in like sort if any particular sinew be affected, you must find out his originall where he springeth, and there apply the former medicines or their like: yet remember you must neuer altogether neglect the braine, although it be not principally affected. If the palsey be caused of extreame cold without humors abounding in the body, then the place affected being found out, and the medicines before rehearsed being applied vpon it, you shal cure it: but you may not altogether neglect the brain, nor the member that is paraliticke, but vse to them such remedies as are afore taught. Bloudletting, purging, and all other euacuations may be omitted, only vse remedies to alter and strengthen the members. If the palsey be caused by an inflammation or *Scirrh*us of any part, the inflammation or hard swelling being cured, the resolution will be cured also. If any pinching or binding of the sinewes cause resolution, the bond being removed, the cure will soone ensue. If the spondils of the ridge or other bones being out of ioynt or broken do cause resolution, if the resolution be curable, it will be remedied by their cure. Likewise if palsey ensue a wound or vlcer in the head or backe, or in any particular sinew, it will be cured by their Cure, except it be altogether vncurable.

*Balneum.**Gestatio.**Of palsey coming of cold.**Cure of palsey coming of other causes.*

CHAP. XXIII.

Of Palsey in one member

Although any expert man may easily gather out of the former chapter the cure of resolution chancing in any particular member, yet least those that haue lesse skill should stand in doubt in some causes, it shall not be superfluous to make discourse of certaine particular resolutions. There is an affect of the face called in Greeke *Spasmus cinicus* and in Latin *convulsio canina*, or of some

Tortura

Tortura oris. The cure of this is like the cure of the palsey that is rehearsed in the former chapter. For both bloudletting if nothing be against it, and purging, and clisters, and liniments rehearsed in the former chapter be good for this. Furthermore for the particular cure of this disease you must let the patient bloud in the veines vnder the tongue, & fasten cupping glasses to the shutting of the ioynts, & giue him masticatories made after this forme. *Rx.* seeds of stauisacre, masticke, the roote of pellitorie, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. hysope, origan, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. ss. of mustard seed. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. powder them, and commixe them with turpentine & wax, and make trochisks to chewe. Also it is good for the patient to looke often in a glasse, that he seeing the writhing of his face, may with all his power intend to amend it. Also to the grieve of the patient (that is) to the sinewes that be sprung, you must apply the medicins that are in the former Chapter. Also this following is very good. *Rx.* *Olibanum*, masticke, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. *Ligi aloes*. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. cloues, galingale, cynamon, zodoarie, nutmegges, cubibes, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.vj. mirrhe, Aloes, labdanum, sarcocol, *Castoreum*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ss. bay berries, pyne nuttes, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.vj. Ireos, *Aristolochia rotunda*, *dictamnus*, *consolide maioris*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. gumme elemi, *opoponacis*, beniamen, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. the iuyce of *camepitoeos*, and the iuyce of couslips, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.iiij. turpentine. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. powder all that is to be powdred, and put all in a limbeck of glasse, and distil it with a soft fire: and that which commeth first will be like water, which you shall keepe: the next will be thicke like oyle, which keep also, & with this oyle annoint the place, and let him drink of the water three or foure ounces at once with a litle wine, this is very excellent good. But you must note in this place that the cheek is not troubled with the palsey which sheweth peruerse and ouerthwart, but the other. When the tongue hath the palsey, the body being first purged, you must cut the veines vnder it, and apply a cupping glasse to the chin. Also let him vse masticatories, and collutions of mustard seeds and such like. Also let him not neglect exercises of the tongue. And the necke and the hinder part of the head, let them be annointed with sharpe ointments and liniments. Also the Physition may apply cerots and sinapismes and such like as before. When the bladder hath the palsey, sometime the vrine is withholden, and sometime it goeth away against the patient his will. In this case you must apply remedies to the belly and to the priuities, as oyle of rewe, nard, spike, or oyle in the which is sodden the roote of *Eringium*, rewe, comin, or dill, or such like; all are very good, and you may well commixe with them butter, *castoreum*, *Galbanum*, *Opoponax*. And there can be no better remedie, then to put these things into the bladder by the yard with a serenge. First therefore if the patient cannot make water, you must get out the vrine, by a fine pipe made of siluer for that purpose called *catheters*. Afterward take those medicins that are rehearsed a litle before, and poure them into the bladder with a Serenge, this will do maruellous much good. Also medicines prouoking vrine giuen to drinke be good for it, and so is *castoreum* likewise. Also plaisters made of laxatiue things are profitable therefore. The palsey of the yard doth let & hinder the flowing of vrine, & sperme, and carnall copulation, therefore you must vse the same remedies which are rehearsed for the palsy in the bladder: but priuately you must apply to the loins and the ioynts of the huckle bones, things that will heat: & ye must vse those medicins that haue power to erect the yard.

Note.

Palsey of the tongue.

Palsey of the bladder.

Palsey of the yard.

And *Castorei* may effectually be ministred, as well for this as for all other palfies, the sicke must chiefly eschue meats & drinks that be coole. By these exāples you may easily find how to cure other members that be paraliticke.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of the falling sicknesse.

DE EPILEPSIA.

*Morbis comi-
tialis.*

Cause.

1

2

3

Signa.

Propter ratio.

Cure of infants

Epilepsia in Greeke (as Galen saith) is a conuulsion, drawing and stretching of all the whole parts of the body, not continually, but that which chaunceth at sundry times, with hurt of the mind and sense. It is so called because it attacheth both the sense and feeling of the head, & also of the mind. The Latines call this disease, *Morbis comitialis*. There be three differences in this sickness or disease. The first is caused, when this sickness cometh onely of disease in the braine, as it chanceth when grosse and clammy fleame, or sharpe choler doth stop the passage of the spirit in the ventricles of the braine. If this euill cometh of a grosse humour, then the disease cometh sodainly, and it is soone gone againe. Secondly, it is caused through euill affect in the mouth of the stomacke, (that is) when the braine laboureth to driue away the vapours and humours that ascend vp to it from the stomacke. Thirdly, the falling sickness is caused, when as the patient feelth a thing like vnto a cold ayre, coming from some member, and creeping vp to the braine, but this chaunceth very seldome. There goeth before this euill an vnwise state of the bodie & mind, sadnesse, forgetfulness, troublesome dreames, ach of the head, and continual fullnesse in it, specially in anger, palenesse of the face, inordinate mouing of the tongue, & many do bite it. As soone as this euill taketh the, the sicke fall down, & they are plucked vp together, they snort, & sometime they cry out, many do treble & turne round about. But the peculiar signe of this disease is forming at the mouth. This disease chanceth most to children. Galen saith, that if it taketh any person after 25 yeares of age, he shall haue it till he die. The perfume or smoke of *Bitumen* or *Lapugastu*, or of goats horne, wil declare & shew them that haue the Epilepsie. Also the liuer of an he goat eatē, or the fauor of the liuer sodden will do the same. It is profitable for the that haue this disease to vse in their diet, things that will attenuate, cut and deuide. Therefore let the ayre wherein the sicke remaineth be hot & drie, specially if the euill be caused of fleame. He must eschue all flesh, except birds that flie on mountaines: also he must auoid all kind of pulses, fish, and wine, especially if it be old & thicke. Let his drinke be mulsa, or thinne ale: the eating of capers doth maruellously profite. Exercise and frictions are good: but rub the head after all the other members be rubbed. Let him not vse too much lechery: let him sleepe measurably on nights, and let him eschue exceeding sleeping on the day. He must abstaine from garlick, onions, mustard, and such like fumous things. He must eschue drinking straight after a bath. If a child haue this disease you need not much to study for remedies, for with a moderat diet oftentimes the disease endeth by it owne accord: you must appoint a diet for the infant & the nurse. Therefore if the child be not yet weaned, let the nurse vse meats of good iuice, and let her vse exercise before meat, let her eschue carnall copulation, & let her

her vse for her diet things that be hote and drie, that thereby the milke may be hotter and thinner. Anoint the head of the infant continually with oyle of dil and Ireos, putting to them the powders of Cipresse, Ireos, maide haire, mario-ram and such like, but neuer wash the head with water whether it be hote or cold. Also giue the child clarified honey to licke. Also this *Ecligma* is praised of many. *Rx.* fine white sugar $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. oyle of sweet almonds, as much as is sufficient to make it of the substance of a lohoch, and giue it to the child to licke. Also it is good to commixe with it miscle of the oke, and vnicornes horne. Also hang about the childes necke the roote of piony being greene, for it helpeth maruelously. Moreouer, they that fall into this disease after they be past childes age, you must anoint & make straight those members which are writhed, & plucked out of order in the. Afterward you must open the mouth, putting a wedge betweene the teeth, & with a fether dipped in oile of Ireos, prouoke vomite to bring out fleame. Also it is good to quicken the senses with adoramets. Also *peucedanum*, or dog fennel, *rew*, *Bitumen*, and iuyce of *silplinum*. The matter continuing verie sharply, put into their mouth *Castoreum*, or *laserpitium* with *oximel*. Also when they are raised, you must cast in a sharpe clister. They that begin to recouer (their strength being refreshed) purge them with *Hiera Galeni*, or some other conuenient medicine: & this is the cure of a new and sharpe epilepsie: therefore now we wil treat how to help that which is old. The patient must drinke water long time, or verie small ale, & that in the beginning of the cure vnlesse any thing do forbid it. Let blood in the veine of the hamme, or the ring finger, and then three or foure dayes after you must comfort the body; & it is good to minister preparatiues to extenuate, as sirupes of wormewood, of hysope, of *ficados*, *oximell*, *scilliticum*, decoction of hysope, roots of piony and others rehearsed before. Afterward purge with purgations, that is, with *pilula coctia*, *pilula de agarico*, and such as purge fleame. Also I iudge *stibium* to be of great force in this kind, being vsed as is declared before in the xv. Chap. fol. 21. which doth mightily purge the superfluous humors of the head. And also I haue knowne this to helpe many, oyle of exitore, and *oleum de lateribus*: with it anoint the hinder part of the head morning and euening warme. Furthermore, make a quilt with three sheets of gray paper, and baste vpon it cotten wooll, & let the patient weare it day & night vj dayes. Then take two frying pans, make them red hot, & hold one of the ouer his head til it waxeth cold, then take the other and do likewise, do this till the patients head be very hot. And if his griefe take him in thy presence, set the patient on his knees, and let his armes be holden crosse ouer his body as may be, and let his head be thus warmed many dayes together, and euerie morning and euening let him take these things. The first day of the powder of the scull of a man burned, one dramme at once, & the next day of the miscle of the oke, made in powder $\mathfrak{z}$ j. & the third day the powder of piony roots $\mathfrak{z}$ j. and after these iij. dayes, take these powders ech day till the patient be healed, which will be in fortie dayes. But if this euill be ingendred of melancholie, then seeke medicins to purge it in the Chap. of *Melancholia*: howbeit it is lawfull to take the barke of dry blacke hellebore, and beat it into fine powder, and to minister one dram at once with *mulsca*, and a litle pepper to it, also you may make pilles thereof, and giue them.

*Ecligma.**Cure of young folks.**Cure of Epilepsie in old folks.**A purging potion of stibium.*

Hiera Galeni.

And when the sicke is purged enough, bring him to a bath, the third day fasten cupping glasses with scarification to the sides and shoulders, and then many daies after comfort the bodie, and againe purge him with *Hiera Galeni*. After that, fasten cupping glasses to the noddle of the necke. The next day apply to the head like a plaister, bread sodden in *mulla*, adding to it bitter almonds braided, or *serpillum*, or calamints, or mints, or rewe, and do that three daies. Then shave the head, and annoint it with iuyce of *pencedunum*, infused in vineger, in which *serpillum* or Ireos hath bene sodden. Then againe the bodie being refreshed, purge the sicke onely with three drammes of *Hiera*, after those things be done, minister sternutaments, masticatories, & such things as do purge by the nose: then afterwarde if you thinke good minister a clyster. At the last apply ointments, liniments, and emplaisters, which haue vertue to diseuile and driue away, whercof you may find examples plenty in diuerse places.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the Crampe.

DE CONVULSIONE.

Spasmos.

S*pasmos* in Greeke, in Latine *Convulsio*, in English the Crampe, is a disease in the which the sinewes are drawne and pluckt vp against ones will. There be of it three kinds or differences. The first is called in Greeke *τρετασος*, in Latine *Distensio*. It is when the necke remaineth altogether immouable, and cannot be turned any way, but must be holden right forth. The second is called in Latine *Tensio ad anteriora*. In this disease the head and the necke be drawne downe to the breast. The third is called in Latine *Tensio ad posteriora*. In this disease the head is drawne downe backward to the back & the shoulders. For the causes of this disease, you must note that Hippocrates appointeth but onely two, that is, fulnes & emptines of the sinewes in the body, & sometime it commeth with biting or stinging of some venomous beast. If the crampe doth take one, that is, haile, or by & by as soone as the disease commeth or not long after, then is the disease caused of fulnes, but when the convulsion cometh after many sweats,

*Cause.**Vicissitudo.*

vomits, watchings, or drinesse, then it is caused of emptines. The diet of them that haue convulsion which commeth of fulnes, must be hot and drie. But in them which haue the convulsion caused of emptines, the diet must be moist. Therefore the patient must be nourished with suppinges and fat brothes, and flesh that is easie to digest, and that which nourisheth well. For their drinke let them vse wine that is thinne and watery, which may quickly be dispersed into all partes of the bodie, vnlesse a feuer be present: for then iuyce of ptisan is profitable, or in stead of wine minister decoction of Cinamon. Also prouoke sleep. Let them eschue exercises & all things that may emprie the body: to be

*Cure of fulnes.**Bloudletting.**Clyster.*

short, let his diet be like vnto theirs which haue the feuer Ethick. The cure of the cramp caused of fulnes, must straight begin with letting of bloud, if nothing do prohibit it. It is meete to take away much bloud, but it may not be done all at once on heapes, but by litle & litle, you must let bloud on the middle vein on the arme. If after bloudletting it seemeth that the sicke may suffer it, wash the wombe with a sharpe clyster. That part which is drawne must be strongly kept together, and they must altogether eschue inordinate mouings, and the place must be chafed with oyles of rewe, or Ireos, or some other such like, or they must

must be couered with wooll dipped in the said oiles, or you must lay vpon it a broad bladder filled with oyle. And if the conuulsion commeth of fleame, *The crampe then the fleame must first be extenuate, and made thinne, and be prepared, comming of* that it may be apt to be purged: then by and by minister a purgation to purge fleame. Also apply cupping glasse with scarification, for light ones do hurt. If the legges haue the crampe, apply it to the haunches, and to the latter knittings of the ioyntes. If the handes be drawn, apply it to the backe and to the ioyntes of the shoulders. Moreover the head must be purged with Masticatories, gargarises, and such like medicines. Time proceeding it is good to bath him, and therefore euery day twise or thise let him descend into water of brimstone or alume, or salt water, but let him not tarry in them, least strength faile him: or if there cannot be vsing of naturall bathes, it is lawfull to vse a hot house, or drie bath, or water in which are sodden laurell leaues, sothernwood, peniroyall, wormewood, rewe, sage, S. Johns wort, marioram & betony, and the places that are drawn ought to be couered with skins of wolues or foxes: also apply the ointments which are rehearsed in the cure of the palsey comming of cold: and you must not onely beware of the vsing of cold things, but you must minister often hote medicines, such as be *Theriaca* and *mithridatis*, and such as be hote. But the surest and best of all other is the infusion of *Castoreum* ministred the quantity of one dramme: truly not onely the drinking of it but also the annointing of it outwardly is good. Moreover the conuulsion which commeth of emptines & drines, is such an euill disease, as it is almost vncurable. Those which are so drawn, you must nourish with hot oile or *hidraeum*. Also it is good to bring him to a bath, and soft frictions with oile is good, and all their whole cure must alwayes be like the cure of Ethicks, If the conuulsion chaunceth by the stroke of some venimous beast, in the beginning of the cure you must labour to draw out the poyson, which you may do by making the wound wider, and by scauifying the place round about, setting vpon it cupping glasse: also you may annoint it with leeke seed, braied with salt, or garlike, or onions, and after the fall of the scurfe, you shall keepe the wound xl. or lx. dayes from a scarre: to the which if it make much haste, you shall open the fore againe with ashes of vrine or of figge tree: and it is good to annoint it with horehound or leaues of *Amigallus*. Also nourish the place with the decoction of the roote of Sorrell. Also *Theriaca* infused in oile of roses, and layed to the wound is good, because it doth draw out and purge the poyson from the bottome. Therefore they erre much, which say that *Theriaca*, being outwardly applied, doth driue the poyson inwards.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Mare.

DE INCUBONE.

EPhialtes in Greeke, in Latin *Incubus* and *Incubo*. It is a disease, whereas one thinketh himself in the night to be oppressed with a great waight, & beleaueth that something commeth vpon him, & the patient thinketh himselfe strangled in this disease. It is called in English the Mare. This vice is caused of excessse of drinking, & continual raynes of the stomack, from whence do ascend vapors grosse and cold, filling the ventricles of the braine, letting the faculties

*Capitis purgatio.**Balneum.**The crampe comming of emptines and drinesse.**Cura veneni.**Cause.*

Signa.

of the braine to be dispersed by the sinewes. They that haue this disease can scarce moue, being astonied, and feeling in sleepe imagination of strangling, and as it were the holding of some thing that doth violently invade them. In this the voice is suppressed, some haue such vaine imagination, that they beleue they heare the thing that doth oppresse them. At the last with much trouble the vapours being attenuate and driuen away, and the passage of the spirits being opened, the sicke is by & by raised. It is good to remedy this euill at the first: for if it continue, it induceth & sheweth before some grievous disease, as the *Apoplexia*, the falling sicknes, or madnes. Let their diet be thin, and

Vitiatio.

such as will or engender windinesse. Let him vse no wine, but that which is mixed with water, or none at all but ale. Let him eschue sleeping in the day, & let him not go to bed by and by after meat, and to be short, let his whole diet be such as is described & set downe for the falling sicknes. For the cure, if the whole body be full, you must beginne with blood letting, and you must cut the *Cephalica* veine. But if ill iuyce be gathered in the body, for lacke of perfect digestion, then purge the body by purgations: and if fleame abound, you must first minister preparatiues to extenuate the fleame, and then purge it. The whole body being purged, you must apply outward medecins, wherof you may find examples before. Blacke seeds of piony doth chiefly helpe them: you may giue them fiftene seeds braied with water. And nourish the head with oile of dill made hot, and couer the head with a cap, when they go to bed. Minister within the body those things which strengthen the head, as *Aromaticum rosum*, *Diamoschu dulcu*, *Diamber*, *Dianthon*, *Pluriscotion*, and such other like.

Curatio.

Venefectio.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of Madnesse.

DE INSANIA ET FVRORE.

Causa.

Mania in Greeke is a disease which the Latines call *Insania* and *furor*: that is, madnes and furiosnes. They that haue this disease be wood & vnruly like wild beasts. It differeth from the frenesie, because in that there is a feuer, but *Mania* commeth without a feuer. It is caused of much blood, flowing vp to the braine: sometime the blood is temperate, & sometime only the abundance of it doth hurt: sometime of sharpe and hot cholericke humors, or of a hot distemper of the braine. There goeth before madnes, debility of the head, tinkling of the eares, and shinings come before their eyes, great watchings, thoughts and strange things approach the mind, and heauines with trembling of the head. If time proceed, there is raised in them a rauinous appetite, & a readines to holdily lust, the eyes waxe hollow, & they neither winke nor becken. But in madnes caused of blood only, there followeth continuall laughing, there cometh before the sight (as the sicke thinketh) things to laugh at. But when choller is mixed with the blood, the the pricking & feruent mouing of the braine maketh them irerfull, mouing angry and bold. But if the choler wax grosse & doth prick & pull the braine & his other members, it maketh them wood, wild, and furious, & therefore they are the worst to cure. Let their diet be thin souplings liquide, making a good stomacke without fulnes, & such things as do engender no blood, & you must forbid them altogether drinking of wine. Where

Signa.

Vitiatio.

this

this disease is caused of abundance of blood, you must begin the cure with letting of blood, it is good to cut the vitermost veine of the arme, or if that do not appeare, the cut the middle veine. In women cut the veine on the ankles, for that prouoketh menstruis, you must draw out so much blood as strength will suffer. Therefore in letting of blood you must continually feeble the pulses. Moreouer, after the letting of blood, nourish the head with oiles of roses & vinegar, or iuice of *Poligonum*, or *oleum melinum*, or *unguentum infrigidane Galeni*. Then apply moist wooll wet in oyle to the hinder part of the head. After blood-letting, at night prouoke sleepe: for if after bloodletting, watching do still continue, the sicke will appeare to be more outrageous. Therefore minister boldly with iuice of ptisan *Diacodion*, or mingle it with water, for so sleepe is plenteoufly entised. And two dayes after that minister *Trochiscis de hestear* with *Diacodion*. Also oile of violets with womans milk is good. Likewise an Embrocation made of drie violets, water lillies, willow leaues, and roses, leaues of lettuce, seed of poppie, and such like, and other medicines rehearsed in the next chapter. Furthermore, the belly must be made soluble with conuenient food, with clisters. These things being done, if there be need, you must draw blood out of the midst of the forehead, set horse-leaches round about the head, and specially the fore part of the head. For the cure of them which haue madnes caused of choller mixed with blood, you must minister purgations of *Hierapicra*, & other medicines that will purge choller. The iuice of *Eeleborus niger* doth maruellous much profite in this grieve, so that you minister but ten or 12 graines at once. But if they dore and refuse to drinke a purging medicine, then that you may the easilier deceiue them, commixe the purgation with their meates, or with fat figs or dates. Also the only roote of wild fennell helpeth them, & the seed drunke with water. The sicknesse declining, bring the sicke into a bath, & apply discusseue medicines to driue away that which remaineth. He that will haue more, let him seeke the chapter following *de Melancholia*.

Cure if it come
of blood only.
Bloodletting.

Externæ me-
cina.

Embro. hæ.

Cure of it com-
ming of choller
mixed with
blood.

Balneum.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Melancholie.

DE MELANCHOLIA.

Melancholy is an alienation of the mind troubling reason, & waxing foolish, so that one is almost beside himselfe. It cometh without a feuer, & is chiefly engendred of melancholy occupying the mind, and chaunging the temperature of it. It is caused three kind of wayes: for sometime it is caused of the common vice of melancholy, blood being in all the veins of the whole body, which also hurterth the braine. But oftentimes onely the blood which is in the braine is altered, & the blood in all the rest of the body is vnhurt, and that chaunceth two waies: for either it is deriued from other places, & ascendeth vpthither, or else it is engendred in the braine it selfe. Also sometime it is engendred through inflammation, & euill affect about the stomacke & sides: and therefore there be three diuersities of melancholiousnesse, according to the three kinds of causes. The most common signes be fearfulness, sadnes, hatred, & also they that be melancholious, haue strange imaginations, for some thinke themselves brute beasts, & do counterfeite their voice & noise, some thinke themselves

Causæ.

1

2

3

Signa.

vessels of earth, or earthen pots, and therefore they withdraw themselves from them that they meete, least they should knocke together. Moreouer, they desire death, and do verie often behight and determine to kill themselves, and some feare that they should be killed. Manie of them do alwayes laugh, & manie do weepe, some thinke themselves inspired with the holy Ghost, & do prophecy vpon things to come. But these be the peculiar signes of them that haue melancholioufnesse caused through consent of the whole bodie: for in the state of the body is slender, blacke, rough, & altogether melancholious, caused naturally, or through certaine thoughts, or watchings, or eating of wicked meates, or through Emeroids, or suppression of menstruis. But they which haue *Melancholia* caused of vice in the sides, they haue rawnesse and much windinesse, sharpe belkings, burnings, & grieuoufnes of the sides. Also the sides are plucked vpward, and many times are troubled with inflammation, especially about the beginning of the disease. Also there is costiuenesse of the wombe, litle sleepe, troublous and naughtie dreames, swimming of the head, and found in the eares. Let his diet be such, as doth not engender melancholy. Therefore let them tarie in an aire hot and moist, and let them vse meates of good iuice, that be moist and temperate, and let their bread be wel baked and wrought, let their flesh be capons, hennes, partridges, fefants, stonie fishes, and such like. Let the sicke vse wine that is white, thinne, and not verie old, and let them eschue wine that is thicke and blacke, let their exercises be meane, let them ride or walke by places pleasant and Greene, or vse sailing on water. Also a bath of sweet water with a moist diet let the sicke vse often, as one of his remedies: sleepe is wonderfull good for them, as also moderate carnall copulation. Let them be merie as much as may be, & heare muscalle instruments and singing.

Vicius ratio. But when the whole body aboundeth with melancholike bloud, it is best to begin the cure with letting of bloud, & you must cut the liuer veine on the arme.

Balneum. But when the melancholike bloud occupieth only the braine, the sicke needeth no bloudletting, vnlesse there be verie much bloud, and therefore let the sicke vse often bathings, & moist diet of good iuice, which is without windines, and let them vse delectations of the mind, and let them be cured by these without anie stronger remedies, but if the disease hath endured long, it requireth sundry medicines that be strong. Therefore whether the melancholiousnes be caused through vice of the whole body (as is said, the bloud being first drawne out) or through the onely euill affect of the braine, you must minister medicines that will purge downward. And a few dayes after purging and bloudletting, let the sicke drinke daylie in the morning this decoction R^x. floures of borage, buglosse, violets, ana. M. j. great raisons the stones picked out. ℥. j. harts tongue. M. j. Fumitorie. M. ℞. Barke of the root of Capers, *Tamariscus*. ana. ℥. iij. roots of fennell, parcelly, liquorice, ana. ℥. j. Time, *Epithimum*. ana. ℥. ℞. seeth all these in three pounds of water, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it, and make the iuyce of that decoction sweet with sugar, and clarifie it with the white of egges, and adde thereto sirupe of fumitorie, and *Epithimum*, ana. ℥. ij. and make a potion. After that sort at these dayes they minister sirupe of violets, and Buglosse, putting to them the water of harts tongue, hops, endiue and borage. But seeing it appeareth that the stomack cannot beare verie much

Vena sectio.

Cure if it come of melancholy bloud.

Purgatio.

Decoctum preparans.

LIBER. I.

much vsing of distilled waters, it is better to vse decoctions of the aforesayd hearbes, commixed with sirupes after this sort. *Rx.* Sirupe of Borage, $\mathfrak{z}$.j. sirupe of *Epithimum*, $\mathfrak{z}$. β . decoction of harts tongue, fumitory, & endiue, $\mathfrak{z}$.iij. commixe them all and make a porion. After this purge the body with *confectio hamach*, & *diasea*, *pilule inde*, *pilule à lapide armenio*, and such like. Also it is good to vse this purging decoction. *Rx.* floures of Borage, violets, roses ana. *M.j.* Raisons the stones picked out, *Tamarindus*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. *Mirabolanes citrine*, *nidos*, *emblicos*, *belliricos*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . leaues of sene, polipody, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.vj. prunes damascene, numero. x. seeth them in iust quantity of water vnto the third part: then straine it, & make the iuice of that decoction sweet with suger, then minister $\mathfrak{z}$.iij. therof in the morning. If this do not sufficiently purge, you may dissolve therein $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. of *diasea*. Also the infusion of *Epithimum* is maruellously good, being made thus. *Rx.* *Epithimum*, $\mathfrak{z}$. β . infuse in 24 houres in $\mathfrak{z}$.iij. of whay made of goates milke, then straine it & wring it hard, & minister it in the morning. Also the infusion of the leaues of sene is good, which may be thus made. *Rx.* leaues of sene $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. prunes damascene in numero. xij. bray them and infuse them in whay of goats milke 24. houres, then straine it & presse it, and let it be drunke in the morning. Also it is lawfull to vse this powder. *Rx.* *Epithimum* $\mathfrak{z}$. β . *Lapis armenius*, *agarcik*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. scāmony prepare, $\mathfrak{z}$.j. cloues in numero 20. beat them al into powder, & minister euery weeke. $\mathfrak{z}$.or. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. β . Also it is good to mollifie the belly with whay, but let it not be that which is strained out of cheefe: for that is better which is separate from the milke by some decoction, and let them vse it, vntill the belly begin to be soluble, you may commixe it with hony. Also it is good a few dayes after the purgation to vse clisters, and let them be such as this is. *Rx.* fumitory, hoppes, time, ana. *M.j.* *Epithimum*, *M.β* sene, polipody, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.vj. cartami, $\mathfrak{z}$. β . seeds of annise, fennell, ammeos, comin, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. seeth all in water vntill the third part. Take of the iuice of that decoction $\mathfrak{ss}$.j. *Casta fistularis* newly drawne $\mathfrak{z}$.j. *diasea*, $\mathfrak{z}$. β . oiles of violets and cammomill, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. β . common salt, $\mathfrak{z}$.j. β . commixe them all & make a clister. Moreouer if the disease be caused through the stopping of *Emeroides* or menstruis, then we must minister medicines which will driue away the heauines of the mind, restore strength, & ingender gladnesse, as is conserues of Borage, endiue, violets, roses, anthos, *letificans Galeni*, *Dianthon*, and such like. Also by no meanes you may forget the vsing of Bathes of sweete water. Also you must apply strong *Embroche* to moisten the head, as this, *Rx.* mallowes, *althe*, violets, ana. *M.j.β*. canmomill, *stachados*, ana. *M.j.* floures of water lillies. *M.β*. seedes of lettuce, $\mathfrak{z}$.j. seedes of scarioll, $\mathfrak{z}$.j. β . boile them all in iust quantity of water, and sprinkle the head being shauen with the iuyce of that decoction. After that sort it is good to vse vnctions of oiles of violets, water lillies, and such like. Last of all the sicke must labour that the false and wicked imaginations, and great sadnesse may be driuen away by all meanes that can be inuenced. But if the grieve be caused through disease in the sides, they must continually vse to drinke decoction of peniroyall, not onely before purgations, but also after them, and likewise decoction of centory. Afterward also minister continually decoction of wormewood, for it is profitable to the stomach, and it letteth ingendring of wind in the belly, nor it doth not aswage the belly extremely, but prouoketh vrin, & causeth good

Potio.

Decoctum purgans Melancholiam.

Dilutum Epithimi.

Puluis purgatorius.

Clister.

Embroche.

Cure if it come of disease in the sides. Absinthij decoctum.

Diarricea.

digestion, so that many be healed by this onely remedy. Also you must minister those things that prouoke vrine, as anise, *daucus*, *asarum*, *smirinum*, the seede and roote of wild fennell, and germaunder: let the water of the decoction of these be ministred, and minister the powder of them strewed in drinke. Also it is good that the Phisitian looke to the cure of the sides. Therefore nourish the

Fomenta.

with decoction of rew, dill, wormewood, peniroyall, seede of *Agnus castus*, laurell berries, sauey, mugwort and such like. These do ease paine and drie away inflammation, especially if they be sodden in oile and applied to the grieve like a

Cataplasmate.

plaster. Against windines in the stomacke with pricking, nourish the stomacke with comin, peniroyall and vineger sodden together, and make emplasters of annise seeds, *ap. um*, comin, *smirinum*, and such like, sodden in oile, and suffer the plaster to lie still a good while, as well before meate as after it. And when the plaster is taken away, couer the sides largely with wooll, or with a light lambs skin, the place being first annointed with *oleum nardinum*. Also you must apply

Concurbitula.

cupping glasses lightly without scarification. To those with whom this disease hath taried long, purging by vomits is a present remedy. But you may not vse strong vomites, for they be malicious to the stomacke, and cause grieve in the belly. Therefore prouoke vomit with hot water, commixed with *oximell*. But if

Vomitum.

the sicke cannot vomit by this meanes, then prouoke it by putting a fether or their finger into the mouth. Also the onely vomit made with *Eleborus albus* is good for them being made after this sort. *Rx. Eleborus albus. ʒ. j.* cut in small peeces, and put them in a great radish roote, and after three dayes take out the *Eleborus*, and then stampe & wring out the iuyce of the radish, take of that iuyce *ʒ. vj.* hot water. *ʒ. iij.* *oximell. ʒ. j.* commixe them, and minister it all at once to the sicke warme. This hath bene proued to be very good. *Rx. sribium. x. or xij.* graines made in fine powder, and put the powder into foure spoonfull of muscadell, or malmesey, and let it stand two dayes, & let it be shaken three times on the day, and when you will minister it, poure it out softly, leauing the powder still in the bottom of the glasse, and giue but the very wine: which is an excellent thing for this grieve: there be diuerse other which I will omit till time more meete and conuenient.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of trembling and shaking.

DE TREMORE.

Causa.

T*remor* in Latin, in English trembling or shaking, it is a disease which is accomplished with two sundry mouings. One is, while the member is constrained through heauines & grieve to creepe downward. The other is, while the member is caried vpward from his naturall course and faculty. This euill is caused altogether through weaknes of the sinewes, which doth plainly declare old age: but priuately it commeth of other causes, that is, of very cold temperature of nature, cold drinke taken out of time or season, specially in feuers. Moreouer the abundance of a cold, grosse & clammy humour, and much vsing of wine that is vnmixt and cleare, olde age and feare are causes thereof. There neede no signes to know neither the euill nor the causes of it, because it may be knowne partly by sight, and partly by the patients words; and the state

Signa.

of

of the body. Let the diet be so ordained that it may be cleane contrary to the *Victus ratio.* causes of the disease, and let his meate be such as will easily be distributed, first brothes, then birds that flie, & tender fishes. Against abundance of grosse and clammy humours, it is good to vse those things which haue power to deuide, extenuate and cut, but he must wholly eschue all things which do hurt the sinewes, and chiefly the drinking of wine that is vmixt. He must drinke wine allayed with water, or *hydromel*, or ale. For the cure, they which do tremble or shake through some manifest error, they must altogether abstaine from things that be hurtfull. They therefore that tremble through drinking of wine, vntill they be cleane deliuered of the disease, let them drinke in the meane while *hydromel* with the decoction of sage and betonie. If the shaking come of cold and grosse humours, then minister the cure which is ascribed for the palsey, & the crampe comming of fulnesse, (letting of bloud onely excepted.) You must anoint the outward parts of the body with oiles that will heate, & couer it with soft wooll. Then fasten cupping glasses without scarification frō the first shutting of the ioynts, which may be drawne to the ourward part of the skin, and so thereby humours may the easier be discuffed & driuen away. Also it is good for the sicke to drinke dayly five graines of pepper with $\frac{3}{4}$. j. lb. of *Mulsa*. There be moreouer certaine other simple medicins, which being taken do helpe trembling, that is, *Castoreum*, roote of *Althea*, decoction of *Egrimonie*, & the braine of an hare. But what need many words? for the medicines and specially the ointments which are prescribed in the cure of the Palsey are to be vsed as remedies against this disease. *Concurbitula.* *Simplices medicinae.*

CHAP. XXX.

I thought it good in respect of the worthinesse of the member, and the manifold diseases to the which it is subiect, to subiect the discourses of the eye, with the remedies of the infirmities, which by experience I haue found incident vnto it: And the multiplicite of it is so great, that the treatise thereof stretcheth beyond the bounds of other ordinary Chapters. But (as I hope) the Reader will not account it as tedious, because of the pleasantnesse and necessitie of the discourse, though it be somewhat long: for God hath as it were packed and bestowed an infinite variety of manerls in one litle round subiect, which if it be consumed and distributed into his parts, and according to the dignity of euery one sufficiently treated of, (I suppose) it would fill a great volume, and require both an exquisite Philosopher to conceive aright of it, and an excellent Oratour might seeme also necessary to lay abroad at length such secret and wonderfull notions. But the eye which is wont with curious inspection to pry into all other things, and to finde out the nature and order of them, hath bene unable to unfold his owne wonderfull constitution, and hath bene alway blind in iudging of it selfe, and in foreseeing the discommodities which attend vpon it, or in curing them when

they haue layd hold of it. For mine owne part, I will not promise anie absolute worke, but as learned Physitions haue thought of it, and (as I my selfe haue by experience learned) so I will frame and fashion my Treatise. An eye therefore is a member, round, whole, and hard, as the ball of a foote, or as the scoured new bason full of cleare water, set in the well of the head, to minister light to the body, by the influence of the visible spirits, sent from the fantastick Cell by a sinew, that is called Nerus opticus, with the helpe of a greater light minstred from without, & verie fitly is the place where the eye is set, called the Well of the head, for the abundance of waterie humours and teares, which often dissolve out thereof, sometime of sorrow & heavinesse of the hart, sometime of ioy and gladnesse, and sometime of the abundance of watery humours caused of frigiditie & coldnesse: and thus haue the Physitions described the eye. It shal not be vnnessearie also to distribute it into his parts, and therefore (as Iohannicus saith) the eye hath seven coates, which they call Tunica, foure colours, and three humours. But his opinion concerning the tunics, by sundrie Anathomists hath bin enicted, making but only sixe: yea, and some there be, that (swarming from the most receiued opinion) haue made roome for a coniecture of their owne, as they thinke by reason: excluding all those ouer-curious diuisions, (namely Iris, Cornea, Aranea, and Vnea, and the residue) and imagine but onely two coates, the one whereof they terme Saluatric, because it saueeth and keepeth the humours: and the second they terme Discolorata, that is, hauing no colour: and they maintaine, that in the eye it selfe there is no colour, but that which is caused of the Chrystalline humor, which if it be planted verie neare to the tunics, then the eye seemeth of no colour: if it lie deepe within, it deferreth three visible colours vnto the beholder, and (as they say) the diuerse placing of this chrystalline humor begetteth the variety of colours in sundrie eyes, which gaue our Anathomists matter to deuise their distributions, while they referred the colour to the nature of the tunic, which (indeed) is to be imputed to the humours. For mine owne iudgement, if it be lawfull to iudge in so intricate a cause (I thinke) I could verie wel maintaine, that the humours be the causers of the diuersity of the colours, though our blind Anathomists doe impugn it in their common books. But I haue taken vpon me, rather to cure the malady of the eye, then to define the nature of it, although this little Prælium will not seeme altogether vnnessearie.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of a Cataract.

A Cataract is a corrupt water, congealed like a curde, ingendred of the humours of the eye, destempered betwixt the tunicles, & set before the sight of the eye and the Christalline humour. Of these manner of Cataracts eu-
 uen diuers spices or kinds, whereof foure be cureable, and three be vncurable. *Foure kinds of Cataracts be-
 cureable.*

The first kind of the cureable cataract, is light, right bright, like white chalke, or as alabaster well polished, & it is caused by a stroke in the cie, either with a stick or a stone, or any other outward violence. The second kind is somewhat white, and much like vnto a cœlestiall colour, & this proceedeth from the stomake, & is commonly caused of vnwholsome meats, and vnkind nourishment, whereof a grosse fumosity resolueeth, & ascendeth vp into the braine, & from thence falleth downe into the eyes. The third kind is also whitish, but it turneth into the colour of ashes, and is commonly engendred of paine in the head, as of the Migraine, or such like diseases, and it is caused sometime of great sorrow and great heauinesse, whereof commeth immoderate weeping, & sometime of much cold, and much watching, & such other like. The fourth spice is of a Cytrine colour, and is commonly engendred of excessiue meate and drinke indigest, and also of great labour, and sometime of the humour melancholie. These are the foure cureable kinds, but they be neuer healed till they be grown and confirmed, & the signe or token of their full perfectiō is, when the patient seeth right nought, vnlesse it be the brightnesse of the Sun by day light, or the light of the Moon by night. Many ignorant persons, neither knowing the cause nor the properties of these manner of Cataracts, haue assaied to cure them with purgations, powders, & plaisters, but they haue bene deceived: For neither inward medicines, nor outward remedies can any whit preuaile, vnlesse you ioine to them *artem acuariam*, the art of the needle, which because it is vknowne to many of our practitioners, I will insert a discourse of it in this treatise. Neuerthelesse, before you vse the needle, it is requisit that the brain should be purged with *pilule Ierosolymitanæ*, which you shall make thus, R Turbith. ʒ. i. aloes hepaticke ʒ. ʒ. maces, quibibes, mastick, & saffron. ana. ʒ. j. & beat them to powder altogether, & confect them with the iuice of roses, and make pilles thereof: and this purgation must be ministred the day before you trie with the needle. And on the next day, while the diseased partie is fasting, about nine of the clock, cause him to sit ouerthwart a stoole in riding fashion, & plant your selfe likewise on the same stoole face to face against him, and bid him hold his sound eye close shut. Encourage him also, and exhort him to be patient, for the tractability of him maketh much to the conuenient dispatch of your labour. Then with your left hand lift vp the ouer eye-lid, and with your other hand put in the needle made therefore, on the side farthest off from the nose: and subtilly thirle the tunicle saluatrice, writhing alwayes your fingers to and fro, till you touch the corrupt water (which is the cataract) with the point of the needle; and then beginne by litle and litle to remoue that water from before the sight to the corner of the eye, & there keepe it with the point of your needle, the space of three minures of an houre, and then remoue your needle

easily from it. And if it happen that it riseth vp againe, bring it back the second time. But this caution you must be sure to haue, that when the needle hath touched the cataract, you do not writhe it about with your fingers to and fro, till it be set in his place before named, but that you gently draw it thither: and when you haue brought it thither, thirle the needle about, till it hath gathered the water about it, and then pull it out. This done, cause him to shut his eye, & apply thereto a plaister of flaxe and the white of an egge, and cause him to lye in his bed nine dayes together, remouing the plaister three times on the day, and three times on the night, without any other stirring of it. Prouided, that he lye in a verie darke place, and let his diet be thinne, as reere egges, and white bread. And if he be young and lustie, let his drinke be water, but if his body be weake, let him drinke wine well lymphate or small Ale. For truly much nourishment wold preiudice our cure by ingendring much bloud in the eye, which is very hurtfull now in the beginning of the healing of it. The ninth day being passed, let him rise and wash his eye well with faire cold water, and he shall enjoy his sight by the helpe of God, euen as he did before, although some one of the cataracts be fairer healed then the other, as namely the second kind and the fourth kind: but that which is caused by a stripe, (though the water be with more ease extracted) yet the eye neuer recovereth his clearnesse of sight againe, because it is greatly brused and troubled by the force of the stroke. And the third kind also, though it be soone restored to his old perfection, yet it abideth not long therein, vnlesse it be continued as well by good diet, as also by this Electuarie, which is called *Diaolibanum solarimitanum*, which is thus confected. R. cloues, ℥. ij. nutmegs of India, and saffron, ana. ℥. j. ℞. and of good *Cassoreum*, ℥. j. Let all these be beaten into powder and searced, and confect that powder with clarified hony, & let the patient receiue of this Electuarie in the morning fasting, the quantitie of a chestnut, or walnut, and at euening to bedward as much. And let him vse digestiue nourishing meates, which ingender good bloud, but let him beware of biese and goates flesh, and eeles, and raw onions, for they are oftentimes vsed to ripen the cataract, which must be done before you striue with it. In winter, let the patient drinke hot wines, in the which let him infuse sage and rewe. Let him also abstaine from the companie of women, neither let him frequent common bathes, for euerie strong fume hurteth him greatly. The foresaid Electuarie of *Diaolibanum* is good to drie teares. It auaieth also against all maner of paine of the migrame which proceedeth of fleame. After this sort are all the curable cataracts healed, (I meane) by the needle, which must be made of gold, siluer, or of cleane Spanishe latten: for yron or Steele are verie brittle and frangible. And if the cataract should proue hard in drawing downe, the point may easily breake, which if it should abide in the eye, it would in time consume the eye through abundance of teares and greatnesse of paine.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the three kinds of Cataracts vncurable.

THe first of Cataracts vncurable, the Physicians call *Gutta serena*, and the signe of the knowing thereof is this, when the pupill of the eye is black and cleare,

cleare, as though it had no spot, and the eyes are alwayes mouing, and the eyelids do tremble as they were full of quicksilver. This kind of cataract is caused of a corruption in the mothers wombe, & therefore they that haue them, are for the most part borne blind, and therefore they bestow their labor in vaine that assay to cure them, for the Nerues optike be oppilate and mortified, so that no medicines can preuaile, although many that haue this kind, do see the light of the Sunne, and the stature of a man euen to their liues ende: we call it *Gutta serena*, because it is engendred of a water and falleth from the braine, of the which truely one litle droppe corrupteth and dissolueth all the humors of the eyes, and stoppeth the hollow nerues and sinewes, so that the visible spirites may no more passe through them. The second cataract incurable, is that which appeareth in the eye of a greene colour, like water standing in waterie places, not much moued nor remoued: this is the most dangerous kind of all, if there be any degrees in them, and it is procured by the ouermuch coldnesse of the braine, and with great buffeting and bearing about the head, with great fasting, and such other like. The third vncurable cataract is, when the pupill of the eye, is dilated & spread so farre, that no circles may be seene within the tunicles of the eyes, and the eye seemeth all blacke, or else all white. And thus are the three kinds of cataracts vncurable distinguished and knowne: which will forbid the practitioners to deale with them.

CHAP. XXXIII.

*Of diseases which chance to the eyes, by blood, choler, fleame,
or melancholy, and of their cures.*

NOW after the description of cataracts, and the number of them which be curable, and which be not, and the curing, and knowledge of the curable, and the causes of the vncurable, I will speake of other maladies of the eyes caused and occasioned of the foure humors, as blood, fleame, choler, and melancholy. But first I will treat of blood, through the abundance whereof oftentimes there groweth a rednes in the eye, with great burning, and afterward it turneth to great itch: and this disease maketh the haire of the eye lids to fall away, and of many it leaueth not one haire, & if this malady be not cured within one yere, it will make the eye lids to turne vp, & make the patient blear-eyed. But before it commeth to that extremity, it may be cured by this colliry, which they call *Collirium Ierosolymitanum*, which is made in this wise. R^r. Turty of *Alexander*. ℥. j. and beate it into smal powder, and temper it well with two pounds of white wine (that is) a quart, and put thereto. ℥. j. of dry roses, and boile it with a foking fire, till the wine be half waisted, & then clense it through a linnen cloth, to keepe it in a violl glasse, and morning and euening put some of it into the eye, and if it be taken betimes, the patient shall be cured within a weeke or two at the most. Neuer the lesse before you apply this colliry, it shall be good (if the patient be yong) to lech him blood on the veine that is on the midst of the forehead; or, if he be aged to purge the braine with these pills R^r of the best aloes, red Sanders, *Esula*, and reubarbe, ana. ℥. ℞. Turbith, *Cataputia minor* and agerick, ana. ℥. ij. confect them with the iuice of mugwort, and minister to the patient according to his strength. And truely these pilles are not onely good for the

itch of the eyes, but also for all manner of itch or scabbe, of what humour so euer it be caused. There be other diseases also of the eye engendred of bloud, as the ophthalmie and pannicles; And these kindes of infirmities are tyed to the season of the yeare, for they commonly happen about the end of August, and so forth to the end of September, and the rather then, because they proceed of the eating of the variety of fruites. The Ophthalmie is thus described: An Ophthalmie is a corrupt bloud ingengred of hote humours, and commonly it standeth and appeareth in the white of the eyes, and round about the tunicles and blacknes of the eye, and it proceedeth of immoderate sorrow and burning, and of abundance of teares, which causeth the eyes to swell and make them so bolne, that from that time forth, the patient may take no rest nor sleepe, for euer it seemeth to him, that his eyes are full of grauell, or of thornes, or of smoke. In this kind of infirmite it is good to vse this powder, which many (in respect of the notable vertue thereof) do call *Puluis benedictus*, which is thus made. R. white sarcocoll, and beat it to very fine powder, and fill the patients eye with it, and let him lie with it wide open til the powder be consumed, and in the meane time make a plaister of flaxen herds, and wash it well in cold water (which when you haue drained out with your hand) lay it on the patient his eye, which he shall still keepe open, and it will procure him to take his rest very well. Many ignorant practitioners, while they haue endeouored to cure this infirmity with many impertinent medicines, haue added sorrow to sorrow, and haue brought the eye without his lids, and so made it vncurable, which by the aforesaid powder might easily haue bene healed. And note that there be some which by the occasion of the Ophthalmie are greatly troubled in their eyes, and haue them fumous & mistie, which proceedeth of euill keeping, or because they eate contrary meates. Now if such happen, the braine must be purged with these pilles. R. polipody, *Esule*, *Mirabolani citrini*, and *rewbarbe*. ana. ʒj. masticke, Quibibes, Saffron, Spiknard, *nux India*, Cinamon. ana. ʒj. confect them with milke or iuyce of quinces, and minister to the sicke according to his strength, and after this purgation giue him morning and euening of the electuary of *Diabolianis solarimitanum* as before. And moreouer put into his eye a powder called *Puluis Nabeta*, the making whereof we will shew in the cure of the third pannicle. But this must be done only in the morning & euening; put in his eye the powder called *Puluis Alexandrius* as before, and this do till the patient hath recovered his health, keeping him in the meane time from hurtfull meates.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of Pannicles.

Causa.

There be foure
kindes of pan-
nicles.I
a

THE pannicles haue the same cause that the Ophthalmie hath (that is to say) superfluity of bloud. Sometime they are engendred of euill keeping, and sometime by great paines in the head, as the Migma, where the extremity of paine ascending into the temples and so into the browes, maketh the veines to beat, by which painfull bearing the eyes are troubled. There be foure kinds of pannicles: the first is, when vpon the tunicle saluatrice there groweth a little pearle, like the seed or graine of a corne called in Latine *millium*. The second is when it appeareth in the aforesaid tunicle in the liknesse of a spot or freckle

of

of the face, or like the scale of a fish. The third appeareth on the one side of the eye, like as it were a flake of snow when it snoweth. The fourth is wheal the eye appeareth white, & then no blacknes, neither of the tunicle, neither of the light appeareth. The first pannicle is neither cured with laxatiues, nor powders, nor collities, nor electuaries, nor yet with cauteries, for any of these (if they be ministred) do annoy rather then helpe. But you shall make this precious ointment for the cure of it, which of manie practicioners is proued to be of great credit. *R* For tie tender crops of the bramble, and stampe them small, & a good handful of rew, powder of Alabaster, *℞* j. *℞* powder of fennel seed. *℞* *℞* oil of Roses. *℞* j. all these incorporate wel together, put into a new earthen pot with a quart of new white wine, and to all these put. *℞* iij. of drie flowers of cammomill, & of waxe. *℞* j. & then set the pot on the fire, & let it boile with an easie fire till the wine be consumed, so farre forth that it seemeth to frie in, & then put thereto the whites of fixe eggs, and alwayes stirre it well, till it be incorporated together, and then straine it through a faire linnen cloth: with this ointment thus made, annoint the temples of the patient, & the forehead downe to the browes, and it will cure this kind of pannicle. This ointment is not onely tied to this cure, but it hath manie vertues: some of the which I will expresse, though it be impertinēt to this discourse. It is very good against a green wound, for it both purgeth and cleanseth it. It is good against the tooth ach or paine in the gums, if the cheek be annointed therewith. It is good against the paine in the matrice, if it be eaten like an electuarie. It is good for the also who are molested in excess, if their stomack be annointed, & their feet together with their hands. It auaileth against the migraime, & generally for euery paine of the eyes, if the patient be annointed therewith vpon the temples as before. The second pannicle must be cured at the verie beginning, for if it be incarnat & hardened vpon the tunicle, it may not by any subtiltie be remoued (the tunicle saued) & therefore it is not safe to aduenture to cure it, when by continuance of time, it hath vnited it selfe with the saluatrice. But at the first you shal cure it thus: first make a cauterie in the temples with a round cauterie (as shalbe shewed afterward whe I speake of cauteries:) for fire dissolueth & consumeth the pannicle, & so keepeth it from vniting & incarnating with the tunicle, & maketh the eye fit to be clarified with this medicine following. Whe the eye is cauterized, put into the eye some of the powder called *Puluis Nabetus* (which I will teach afterward) & while he lyeth with this powder in his eye, rake foure crabs & rost the ynder the embers very well, & then take them, and being pilled and cored, incorporate them with the white of an egge in maner of an ointment, and lay it vpon a cleane flaxen herd, & bind it to the eye with a linnen band, and so renew this plaister morning and euening till you haue absolued your cure. Like as bloud begetteth manie infirmities of the eye, as namely Ophthalmies and Pannicles: so likewise manie maladies are engendred of fleame, but the most notable are foure: the first is procured by ouer abundance of teares, whereby the ouer eyelids are so softened and mollified, that within there grow haire, which pricke the ball of the eye continually, as though there were hogs bristles: which haire though manie bold Chirurgions haue plucked out, and so for a time eased them, yet afterward (the haire being hardened with plucking out)

Maladies comming of fleame.

I

do gall them farre worse then before, and so in the end the patient being destitute of a nie other aide, leese his sight, (the haire freritng and consuming the substance of his eye.) But indeed the best way, which as yet experience hath found out to cure that maladie is this. Take two needles of the length of the litle finger, and put a thred through the eyes of both of them, and bind the well together at both the ends, then with your fingers lift vp the ouer eyelidde, and with these needles take off the leather where these haire grow, that the patient may shut and open his eye, and let the needles hang till they fall away, together with the leather which was betweene them: which done, you shall put no medicine in the wound, for it will heale of it selfe: But if any pannicle be ingendred in the eye by reason of the vehemencie of the paine, it shall be cured by *Pulus Nabetus* put into the eyerwise a day, till such time as they be clarified and healed. And this powder is made of sugar Candy of *Alexandria*, which powder is verie auailable against manie sicknesses of the eye. The second infirmite which hapneth to the eye by steame, is when the eyes appeare troubled and full of veines, so closed with a pannicle, that the patient cannot well see, nor discerne anie thing, & this sicknesse is called *panniculus vitreum*, which is thus cured: first cause his head to be shaued: & then cauterise him with a rouid cauterie in the soft of the head, & with a long cauterie in his temples (which so done) put into his eyes the powder of Candie once in the day, till that he hath receiued againe his full sight, and wise in the moneth purge him with the pills called *Pillule Ierosolymitane*, and at his going to bed, let him receiue of the electuarie called *Diabolibanum solarimontanum* till he be whole. The third infirmite caused by steame is, when the eye appeareth carnos or fleshy, the which carnositie (if it be waxen hard by the space of a yeare or two) giueth place to no medicine. But in the beginning cauteries (in that maner that I prescribed the before) will heale it, so that after cauterizing you verie warily cut away all the carnositie with a sharpe rasor, without offending the tunicle Saluatrice, which whe you haue done, fill the eye ful of powder of Candy, & then cause the patient to shut his eye, & then lay to it a plaister of flaxe of the white of an egge, & change the plaister twise on the day xv. dayes, & after xv. dayes, make this plaister. R. a handful of *Cardus benedictus*, & stampe it well, & mingle it with half the white of an egge, & so make a plaister with flexen herds, & lay it vpon the eye, remouing it twise on the day, and after three dayes leaue all plaisters, & let the patient lie with his eye open, and euery day in the morning put into his eye the powder called *Pulus benedictus*, & at euening the powder of Candie, till he be perfectly whole: in the meane time let him abstaine from ecles, onions, beefe, & all such meats. The fourth malady caused of steame is, when the eye appeareth all bolne, and alwayes sheddeth teares, so that the patient may not open his eyes by reason of the heauinesse of the eye lids, for there is a fatnes on the ouer eye lid, which troubleth the eye verie much, and this disease is called the scab of the eye, and it proceedeth from superabundance of salt steame, the cure of it is this: you shall first purge the stomack & braine of the patient with this receipt. R. Turbith, of the best Aloes and rewbarbe. ana ʒj, then take of the iuice of the root of walfwort. lb. j. and the aforesaid things being beaten and resolved in the said iuice, let it stand all night, & in the morning cleanse it, & let the patient

patient take thereof a good quantitie, and the next day subtilly with your Rafter pare away the aforesaid farnesse, euen from the one lachrimall to the other (which done) lay on a plaister of herdes and the white of an egge 9. dayes after (euerie day changing the plaister wise) and then let the patient lye with his eye open, and put into it of the Colliry called *Collirium Alexandrinum*, which is taught before in the cure of the third pannicle, and that will heale it verie well. I haue heard that women did rub away that fatnesse with finger, but it returned againe afterward, though for a time they were eased. There is an Electuarie, verie auailable against these teares which is thus made. *R. Olibanum, Castoreum, nutmegs, Nux India, cloues, quibibes, ana. ʒ. i. leaues of laurell, spicknard, Saffron, and Cardamomum ana. ʒ. ii. seedes of dill, smallage, basilicon, Alifander, annise, fennell, foure seeds of henbane, white poppie, muske, & champher. ana. ʒ. j.* all these must be beaten together to powder, sauing the *Olibanum*, which must be boiled with clarified honey till it be molten, and then poure it into a faire large wodden platter together with the powder before made, and incorporate them together by often stirring, and let it abide in the platter still, and when you will minister it, giue as much as a Chestnut at the patients going to bed. It destroyeth the tears, together with the fleame, it warmeth the braine, it driueth away the paine of the migrime, it openeth the eyes, relieueth the eyelids, and clarifieth the sight. It is good for them that haue the gout and the palsey, and for them that haue an impediment in their speech.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the maladies in the eye proceeding of choler.

Two kinds of griefes are incident to the eyes by choler: the first whereof is that which is caused by abundance of choler in the stomacke, from whence ariseth a corrupt fumositie into the braine, which annoyeth the braine, & troubleth the visible spirits, so that the party thus affected, shall imagine an object planted betwene him and the light in maner of a darke shadow. We cannot outwardly iudge of this maladic, for it hath no euident mark either in the eye, or without the eye, but the cause of it abideth in the stomacke, which must be taken away by an electuary mitigatiue, and apparatiue, which will asswage the paine, and open the oppilate nerues and sinewes, whereby the visible spirits may haue free passage: you shall make it thus: *R. rewbarbe, Esula minoris, red saunders, mirabolani citrini, ana. ʒ. i. iij. the rootes of fennell, spinage, banisci, parcelly, Apj, Sicacella, simory, and maiden haire. ana. M. j. polipodie of the Oke. ʒ. ʒ. j.* boile all these rootes in faire water till halfe the water be wasted, and then cleanse it, & take the aforesaid spices well beaten, and put them into the aforesaid licour with two pounds of good sugar, and make thereof a sirupe laxatiue. But you shall boyle it but litle the second time, for the spices will soone loose their vertue, and then cleanse it againe the second time, & let the patient take of this wise in the week. The second infirmitie arising of choler is, when there appeareth before the tunicle as it were a thinne cloud in a cleare aire, & this is brought by an euill diet, but it happeneth but to those that be cholericke. For the cure you shall take a saphire, and breake it in a mortar, and keepe the powder in a vessel of gold, and once in the day put this powder in the patients eye,

and he shall be whole in short time. The same effect hath the gall of a hare dried and beaten into powder, and so put into the eye.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the infirmities of the Eye caused of melancholy.

OF the humour of melancholy be ingendred in sundrie folkes many & diuerse sicknesses by reason of the opilation of the spirits visible, which cometh by the distemperature of the braine which is disquieted by the abundance of melancholy. In these diseases therefore it seemeth to the patient, that there are flies flying in the aire, and that there are three or foure moones, and three or foure faces, when he beholdeth but one: but these infirmities happen most commonly to aged persons, which are melancholy, superfluitie of melancholy dimming their eye-sight. There must not therefore anie medicine be put into the eye of the patient, but make this electuarie mitigatiue and apparatiue which will open the opilations of the nerues, which did before forclose the way to the visible spirits. The electuary is thus confected. *Rx* the iuice of liquorice, eyebright, *Silene montani*. ana. $\mathfrak{ss}$. the seeds of rew, basilicon, nettles that cometh from beyond the sea, or Cecilia, or fenel, of alisander, of *apium*, & caraway seed. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. masticke, cloues, nutmegs, cinamon, Quibibes, gummi, almonds, *Cerachepomigum norum*, *Aragunton*, & saffron. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. $\mathfrak{ss}$. kernels of quince apples, $\mathfrak{z}$. j. all these must be beaten together into small powder well searced, and then you must confect them with good sugar, & make an electuarie of it, and of this let him receiue morning and euening, till he be healed. It auaieth also against that dimnesse of the eyes which cometh by thought & of much heauinesse, & maketh the to see more clearly, and of that effect it hath his name (that is) *clarificatum oculorum*. There is also another infirmite which cometh of melancholy, and that is, when the paine sodainly ascendeth into the eyes, and grieveth so extremely, that it seemeth to the patient that his eyes would start out: they appeare also most commonly verie bolne. Many which are troubled with this kind of maladie do loose their sight altogether, and manie (though there be some which do see) notwithstanding but very feebly. But the seasonable applying of remedies preuenteth either discommodity. After this sort then, you shall encounter with this euill. You shall first purge the stomacke & the braine with these pilles. *Rx* Aloes, *mirabolani citrini*, turbith, saunders citrine, and rew-barbe. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. $\mathfrak{ss}$. scammony, mirthe, saffron, balsamum, masticke, *lignum aloes*, *olibanum*, white agaricks, *nux Indie* iuice of liquorice, seed of *apium*, lettuce, succorie, basilicon. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. Beat all these to powder, and confect them with the iuice of roses, and make pilles of them, and giue the patient after his power. The stomacke & the braine thus purged, lay vpon the eye this plaister. *Rx* foure apples or crabbes, and rost them vnder the embers till they be soft, then core them and pare them, and bruiſe them well in a mortar, & to foure of them put halfe the white of an egge, and so bray them together till they be well incorporate, and so lay them vpon flaxen herds, and morning and euening apply it to the eye, and you shall find that it will do much good: for it both asswageth the swelling, lesseneth the paine, refresheth the sight, and with all these fixeth also the eye in his place. There is another infirmite also which proceedeth

by

by the abundance of melancholy, and that they call *Vngula*: for it is much like the naile of a finger, sometime it breedeth in the corner of the eye to the earward, & so spreadeth ouer the eye if it be not hindred & resisted betime: sometime also it happeneth that another vngle ariseth in the other corner, and if they meet, it maketh the cure more vncertaine; yet by heedfull skill and discretion it may be healed by the hand. Take therefore a twich of siluer, & therewith lift vp subtilly the vngle from the tunicle, proceeding to the lachrimall where it grew, & there cut it away, & then lay the white of an egge & flaxe vpon it x. daies together, remouing it twice on the day, and at the end of x. daies wash his eye with hot water, & put into it *Puluis Nabetus* before named, till the eye be sufficiently cleared. Let him abstaine from such meates as do feed melancholy. It happeneth also sometime, that the superfluous abundance of melancholy, seated in the braine, begetteth a drinesse in the eye lids, which afterward turneth to itching & burning. But this disease is cured by letting the patient blood on the middle veine in the forehead, & after with vsing this colliry. *Rx.* forty tender crops of the bramble, and stamp them smal, then put them in a new earthen vessell together with a quart of good white wine, and so boile them till the halfe be consumed, and then cleanse it and preserue it in a glasse to your vse, & twice in the day put some of it into your patient his eye, till it be whole. Of the like superfluitie of melancholy groweth sometime a corrupt humour without the eye vpon the lidde, the which bolneth all the one side of the face with extreame paine, but with no offence to the sight of the eye. The signes of this disease are these: it maketh the eye lids hard and red, and keepeth the eye so shut, that the patient may not open it. For the cure of it, you shal take fine flour of old wheat, & yolks of eggs ana. ʒ ; of saffron ʒ ; & stamp them well together with womans milke, till it be as an ointment, then make a plaister of it, & apply it, so that none enter into the eye. You may also vse this. *Rx.* a lillie roote and crabs, and rost them in the embers till they be soft, then taking away the core and the pils of the crabs, stampe them both of like quantitie with the whites of egges, and so vse it. On the steppes of the wound, where the sore was, lay this ointment, that it may draw the flesh together, so that no scarre do appeare. *Rx.* *Aloes*, hennes grease, oyle of bitter almonds, and white waxe, and incorporate them together into an ointment and apply it. It is very good in all the diseases of the eyes, to annoint the temples of the patient, and the forehead with *unguentum alabastrum* before named, for it asswageth the paine and helpeth the other medicines in their operation. It happeneth manie times in this infirmitie that the patient his eye liddes for want of prouident skill do reuerse, which is a great blemish. In this case you must subtilly with the Rasour deuide the eye lidde from the wound, and part them with a litle roule made of fine linnen cloth, dipped in the white of an egge, which you shall lay betwixt the lid & the sore xv. daies together, changing it dayly & then make the ointment of hennes grease & white waxe, and lay of it vpon the roule, and it will consume the wound, so that there shall appeare no cicatrice. The like cure you shall vse, when the reuersement of the eye liddes is caused of superfluitie of blood. Of the melancholike humour there is also engendred in many men a sicknes, which groweth betweene the nose and the eye, & it ap-

Signa.
Curatio.

peareth like a peece of lung or light. It is grauelly, and auoideth out alwaies sith. This sore is called *vulgalpus*. For the cure of it, you shal only take a twich, and lift the sore vp subtilly, and with the point of a rasour cut vp the sore by the roore, and cauterize it with a hote iron, and vse the ointment before rehearsed, which they call *unguentum subtile*, that is, hens greafe and white waxe, and annoint the place with it till it be whole.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of diseases happening to the eye by outward causes, as by blowes, with sticks, stanes, or stones.

THe only thing generally, that you shall vse when the eye is smitten, is the white of an egge and flaxen herds, to the which God hath giuen three especiall properties. The first is to assuage the paine. The second to purifie and cleare the sight. The third is to let and keepe away all superfluous humours which otherwise would fall into the eye. You shall remoue it foure times in the day, and twise in the night, by the space of xv. daies together, annointing in the mean time the temples of the patient with ointment of Alabastrer, which as I told you before, was an adiuuant and aid to all medicens. Now after the xv. daies be expired, if you shal perceiue the tunicle saluatrice to be hurt and broken, you shall then take xij. streines of the new laid eggs of white hens, & put them in a mortar, labouring them with a pestill, till they be vnited in maner of an ointment, & so reserue it in a glasse & twise in the day & once in the night put a litle of it into the eye, & it will knit together, & make so nude againe the tunicle if it be broken or hurt: after this maner I haue cured many wounds in the eye, which haue seemed dangerous, and vncureable to the ignorant beholder. But sometime it will happen, that through the force of the blow, there will grow a cataract, and then in the beginning the tunicle must be saued by this forenamed prescript, and the cataract must grow without let to his full perfection, and so be healed by the needle. Some vnskilfull practitioners vse to lay a plaister made of waxe and commin to the eye, if it be smitten, and other some vse *Olbanum* and wormewood, but both those and all such like hote ointments are passing euill, because they consume & wast the substance of the eye. It followeth now that I speak of watery eies and of corrupt humors like teares, which the Phisicians call *fistules*, to discern between the *fistula* and the watery profuence of teares. You shall therefore vse this skill: lay your forefinger betweene the nose and the corner of the eye, and straining the plate a litle, if it be a *fistula*, you shall see the matter of it runne out at the points of the eye liddes: but if none appeare, then iudge it to be a watery humour. Many boisterous fellows, (seeing the place of the issue of the *fistula*) haue vsed to cauterize it with a hot iron, thinking by that meanes to haue dried vp the matter, which indeed they haue done, but they haue destroyed the sight, and deformed also the place. This therefore is the surest way or course that you can take, to cure the *fistula*. First purge the patient his stomacke with pilles of Ierusalem, and then with the point of a rasour you shall make a litle incision betwixt the neather eyelidde and the nose, so directly that the lidde be not touched: & this incision shall be throughout the skinne in a long wise, & into the

same

same put in the graine of a fitch binding it on with a litle pillow of linnen, and so let it lye till the next day: then remouing the fitch, you shall in the hole where it lay, put in a litle of some powder corrasue. After the powder is put in, lay a plaister of flaxen herds, & the white of an egge (the patient alwayes shutting his eye for feare of the powder.) In the morning after, you shall apply nothing but cleane swines grease, till the mortified flesh be raised, and when it is raised and remoued, put in a peece of a sponge as much as the fitch, in the hole which the powder made, and it will purge the driness of the wound, and when you shall perceiue it thoroughly dried, leaue the sponge, and bind nothing to it else but faire drie lint of linnen till the patient be whole. Now concerning the teares, they issue out of the eye-lids both the vpper and the neather: but there is difference betweene the causes of their issuing from both places: for they which proceed from the neather eye-lid, come from the heart, by reason of sorrow, dread, or smart, or they be caused by some manner of violence: but the teares which flow out of the hole of the ouer eye-lid, proceed from the braine, by reason of corruption and abundance of humours, and their course ceaseth not, vnlesse the matter be purged with Eleſtuaries and Cauteries, as I haue shewed before.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the diseases which come by skipping in of stones or chippes by chaunce into the eyes.

THESE diseases happen especially to Masons, Millers, Carpenters, Wrights and Smithes: for if any chiue, chip or dust skip into the eye, and through negligence be left behind, it will incarnate vpon the tunicle saluatrice, & then can you not cure the eye, but by remouing and drawing the sayd chiue, which you shall do with your needle, deuinding it cunningly from the tunicle. And if it happeneth that there be any pit in the place where it lay, by reason that it abode long time therein: then put into the eye the streines of eggs, ordered as I declared before, twise in the day and once in the night, and vpon the eye lay a plaister of flaxe and the white of an egge, and within three dayes it will heale the partie diseased. And after this sort you shall also remoue the hawe in the eye. But you shall in drawing out the hawe, bind two needles fast together at the top, and so take the hawe betweene the two points, and so easily rowling the needles, bring it away. Sometime it happeneth that the eye is stung with a Bee or waspe, or some other venomous thing, or blasted with an infected ayre: and if any of these happen, the eye is much disquieted and grieued, so that the patient may take no rest, and it bolneth vp that he may not see. The onely cure for such and the like accidents is this, as I haue by experience often tryed. Take a handful of *Cardus benedictus*, and stampe it small, and temper it well with halfe the white of an egge, and therewith make a plaister laying it on flaxen herds, binding it hard to the eye, where it shall lie till it be dried, and then apply another: and so consequently vse it till your patient be thoroughly whole. These qualities this herbe hath: it asswageth swelling, and easeth the paine, destroyeth the venime, & putteth away bloud from the eyes. This is also a present remedy for the eyes that are bloudshed, when they burne as though there

were grauell in them. And thus much for the especiall discourses of sundrie diseases, which do most commonly bend to that litle member, the eye, together with their particular cures.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of paine in the eares.

DE AVRIVM DOLORE.

*Cause.**Signa.**Cure of cold.**Of water.**Of heate.*

Paine in the eares is caused of some through cold taken in fornyng by cold winds. Also sometime it is caused of cold bathes and medicinable waters. Also it chanceth to many through hot distempure. Sometime of inflammation. And like as inflammation by stretching out of the partes that be inflamed, engendreth paine, euen so a windie vapour, or a humour grosse and clammy, for lacke of passage causeth paine. Also humours that be byting, and like whay and matter, do cause paine in the eares. Paine in the eares caused of cold, is soone knowne by the patients words, & because there is continuall great paine without heauinesse, or distention, or burning. The paine which is caused of hot distemper is knowne, in that there is felt paine and heate without heauinesse or bolning. But if heauinesse, distention, and beating hear and paine be felt in the head, then the paine in the eare is caused of inflammation. Onely distention without heauinesse declareth a windie vapour which cannot find passage out. If there be heauines in the head & the hearing, the paine is caused of grosse & clammy humours. If the paine be caused onely of cold, it will soone be cured by hote remedies, that is, with oyle of rew, laurell, nard, dill, lillies, of *Euphorbium*, & spike. Also if you seeth rew, or common oyle of pepper, or *Castoreum*, it is a good remedy. Also oyle in which garlick is sodden, or an onion, dropped into the eares is maruellously good. There are some that do cut out the core of a great onion, then they fill it with oyle, and they heate it meanelly in hote embers, and powre it into the eares, when it is strongly strained. Also a very litle *Euphorbium* commixed with much old oyle, is much commended of Galen. Whatsoeuer you do minister, let it be ministred hote. But when some medicinable water is continued in the passage of hearing, you must continually powre in oyle that is very thinne, that it may be washed: then wipe it with soft wooll, and againe powre in more. The white of an egge mitigateth the paine very much. Also womans milke. Also goose grease profiteth much: likewise foxes grease. But to draw out plentie of water, nothing is better then to sucke and to drawe it out with a quill or a hollow pipe holden in the mouth. When paine is caused of hote distemper, then oyle of roses is maruellously good for the head, if it be dropped into the eare, and vineger and oyle of roses is good, or the white of an egge, or womans milke, or iuyce of nightshade, or this; *R.* oyle of roses. *℥. j.* iuyce of nightshade. *℥. ij.* vineger of roses. *℥. j.* commix them. If the paine be caused of inflammation, or grosse and viscus humours, you must vse medicines which doe deuide and take away obstructions and stoppings: as be all bitter things which purge and cleanse without erosion, as is, *Yris Irica*, all kinds of *Aristolochia*, bitter almonds, the roote of *misalaba*, centory the lesse, *polium* & cinnamon. Also oyle of almonds and other which do purge, cleanse, wipe, and vnstop the passages without grieve. Therefore of those you may make medicines, and

and drop thereof into the eares. Among other also the iuyce of leekes dropped into the eare warme is good, or iuyce of leekes mixed with hony. If that the paine be caused of inflammation, you must by and by let blond on the *Cephalica* *Vena* *seclio*.
 veine that is on the same side: and with clifters you must pull backe the humours that do flow. Afterward you must drop in *oxyrhodinum* warme, or goose greafe, or hennes greafe, with oyle of roses. But if the inflammation be vehement, then to cease paine drop warme into the eare the white of an egge with womans milke. Also this medicine is good, *Rx*. iuyce of fenegreene. *℞*. i. oyle of roses. *℞*. *℞*. vinegar. *℞*. *j*. *℞*. commixe them all, and drop it into the sore eare. Apply those things outwardly which cease paine, and do digest the matter heaped together. If the inflammation be very vehement it is necessary to vse those things which do astonie the sense easily, and it is no small daunger, lest that the sinewe by which the vertue of hearing is disperfed in the braine, be hurt thereby. But commixe a litle *Opium* with womans milke and the white of an egge. Also temper *Opium* with *Castoreum*: there must be of each a like quantitie, or double as much *Castoreum*. The liquor in which the aforesaid medicines ought to be tempered (being first finely beaten) must be *Sapa*; for it doth cease paine much more then sweet wine. *Sapa* is new wine sodden till it come to the third part. There be some that commixe *Opium* with oyle of roses, or violets, after this sort; *Rx* of *Opium*. *℞*. *j*. oyle of roses and violets. ana. *℞*. *j*. *℞*. Also the Antidote *Philonium* dissolved in womans milke, & dropped in, is good. Without you must nourish the eare continually with common oyle, or with a hote foment, and you must dip wooll in it, and put it into the eare: but in such wise that it may not touch the places that be troubled with inflammation. But whē the paine waxeth old, & turneth to suppuration and impostumation, you shall drop into the eare a medicine of the iuyce of linsseed onely, with oyle of roses or cammomil mixed with it. *Sapa*.

CHAP. XL.

Of sound or noyse in the eares.

DE SONITU AVRIVM.

Noyse and tinneling in the eare, for the most part is ingendred of a windie vapour, or of grosse and clammy humours. Also many times it is caused through an exquisite rardines of the sense of hearing. It is also caused through weaknesse of the members: when it chaunceth in the recovering of a disease, some humour is taken into the sinews of the eares: also it is caused of outward things, as of cold, heate, or a blow on the head. If the euill chaunce through outward causes, it is soone knowne by the patients wordes. Nowe because the noyse commeth by litle and litle, or at one time, or suddenly on a heape, that is also convenient to know the disease by. For if the sounding do come, and then rest for a certaine space, it is euident that a windie vapour is shut in and cannot get out, and so causeth sounding, and specially when the sicke hath eaten windy meats. But if such sound in the eares do not come suddely, but by litle and litle, and there is felt withall a heauinesse and waight: then it declareth the euill to be caused of grosse and viscous humours. For the cure, if the sound in the eares be caused of grosse and viscous humours, or of vapours: in *Causa*.
Signa.
Of windy vapours.
Of grosse humours.

Cure if it come of grosse humours or vapors. the beginning purge the head with *Pilula Cochiae* & such like. But first minister before them potions and medicins which haue vertue to extenuate & deuide. Then you must vse masticatories and sternutaments. Moreouer you must drop into the eares oyle of bitter almonds, or oyle in which *Cassoreum* is brayed. Also let the eare be inclined to the vapour of the water, in the which *Seechas*, wormwood, marioram, mints and origan haue bene sodden. Iuyce of rew sodden in the rynd of a pomgranate is maruellous good. Also *sacculi* made of betony, *sechados*, cammionill, marioram, and other things a litle before reherfed are very good, if they be applied to the eare warme. If the sound in the eare be caused through sharpnes of the sense of hearing, which is knowne, if when the patient is hungry it increaseth, & when he is full the noise is lesse. Then you must vse those things which do astonie the senses: but you must take good heed thereof, and therefore begin with the easiest, & if need be, proceed afterward to stronger. Oyle of roses is onely commended with a graine or two of *Opium* put to it. Galen in this case praiseth iuyce of *Mandragora* and poppie. But if noise in the eares chaunce in feuers, there need no remedy for it, for commonly it goeth away straight. But if it remaine after a disease or a paine in the head, then you must nourish the eares with decoction of wormwood, powring in vinegar and oyle of roses, or iuyce of radish with oyle of roses, or the best Aloes tempered with *malsa*: and if this helpe it not, vse blacke hellebore brayed with vinegar.

CHAP. XL.

Of Deafnesse and slow hearing.

SVRDITAS ET GRAVIS AUDITVS.

*Cause.**Signa.*

If of cholericke humours.
If of grosse humours.

The eare is so afflicted, that it causeth not onely dulnesse of hearing: but also deafnesse, that one can heare nothing at all. Sometime deafnesse beginneth at ones birth, and sometime it chanceth after we be borne, which doth chance, either through cholericke humours flying vpward, or through crude and grosse humours stopping the hearing. If deafnesse come of cholericke humours, specially after feuers, then it is wont with sudden incurfions to run to the braine. Also the face and all the state of the bodie will shew a cholericke temperature. But if it come of grosse humours, there is heauinesse of the head, and other tokens be present which shew flegmaticke humours. They which remaine deafe from their birth, or also soone after they be borne, being perfectly deafe of a long time, are vncurable, neither doth any of the euer speake. They that be not altogether deafe, yet if it haue long continued, it is very hard to cure. Deafnesse which is caused through cholericke humours flying vpward, is soone driuen away by medicines purging choler. If the deafnesse be engendered of crude and grosse humours, this dull hearing is cured by bloudletting, or onely by purgation of *Hiera* or *Pilula cochiae*, and other such like. But minister before *oxime*, and other medicins that haue power to deuide grosse and clammy humours. The whole bodie being purged, you must draw steame out of the head by Masticatories, sternutaments, and *Errhōis*. Furthermore, they must be dried and by all meanes strengthened. Also he must vse a bath that floweth of it selfe, or salt water. You must put into the eare medicines that deuide and cut grosse and viscoous humours, whereof there be many declared in the Chapter against sound

sound of the eares. But priuately iuyce of reew with hony, or *Castoreum* with oyle of dill is good. Also you must vse fomentes, and leane your eare vpon a quill or reede, hauing one end made fit for the eare, and the other for the hole in the couer of the pot being euery where fast stopped. Let there be in the pot worm-wood, mints, marioram, organ, stæchas, or such like sodden in water, that the vapour that cometh from thence, may passe into the course of hearing. Also this medicine dropped into the eare is good. *Rx.* oyle of *Castoreum*, $\mathfrak{z}$. β . comin seed. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. powder of *Castoreum*, $\mathfrak{z}$. j. a great onion the core taken out, put in the powders of comin and *Castoreum*, and put in the oyle, and wind it vp in wet papers, and put it vnder the hot embers, and when it is roasted, straine it hard, and let it be dropped into the eare. Moreouer the vapour of vineger taken with a reede, as is taught before is maruellously good. Let their diet be altogether *Victus ratio.* thinne, and meates of light digestion.

CHAP. XLII

Of Impostumes breeding in the eares.

DE PAROTIDIBVS.

Parotides in Greek be inflammations which are wont to issue out in the kernels which be by the eares. It is caused of abundant hot blood, which is either mixed with choler, or fleame, or melancholic. And sometime it is caused of humours compact in the head, and sometime of the rest of the body by sickness, and especially by feuers. Parotides which are caused through fulnesse and pientie of hote blood, they do ingender most vehement paine. They which are caused of cholerike blood, they seeme much like *Erisipela*, and they vex the place that is diseased with no griefe. That which is caused of melancholy blood they be not red, nor they vex not with vehement paine, but they be hard. They which be engendred of flegmatike blood, in the swelling they be raised sharpe vpward. Let their diet be such in a maner, as is appointed in other inflammations. The cure (if age and other things will suffer) must be begun by letting of blood: you must cut the *Cephalica* veine on the same side. Furthermore we vse not in Parotides (as we do in other inflammations) to apply in the beginning things that repress, but contrariwise things that do drawe. And if they be not in effect, fasten cupping glasses, or apply continually fomentes. To mitigate the paine, you must chuse those things which haue heate with moderate moistnesse, mitigating and ceasing paine, meere to ripe and digest, as is, decoctions made of wheate or barley, or the meale of linseed with *mulla* or fenugreece, or *althea*, or cammomil: for the same purpose annoint the place continually with butter, putting to it the whites of egges. Also swines grease with butter melted with a litle wax put to it, that it may be a soft cerote, may be wel applied. But in them that be meek, that is, in gentle Parotides, in which there flow not such plenty of humours that they cause vehement paine, nor there is no heate of the humour, such are easily cured with fomentes of brine, and plaisters and medicins altogether discussive, as is *Diastrilon*. If the Parotides can not be dissolued, you must vse medicines to ripe and bring the impostume to matter, as is, wheat meale with the decoction of figs and oile. Also the medicin that is made of meale and floure & leuen. When the Parotides be riped, either

Cause.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Cure of them

that be mecke.

cut the skinne with a knife, that the matter may be let out, or the botch may be broken with a sharpe medicine, as that which is broken with garlick, and such like, or to proue how to dissolue it by medicines which haue vertue to draw and extenuate, remouing it twice dayly, and nourishing it vntill the paine be somewhat released, and the more part of the matter dissolued. And if there be hardnesse, that also must be mollified. Therefore you must make medicines that be of mixt qualities, so that you must commixe drawing things with mollifiers, as is calues suet, goats suet, the marrow of a hart, *bdellium*, *styrax*, *ammuniacum*, and such other like.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of vlcers in the nose.

DE OZAENIS.

*Cause.**Curatio.**Sternutamentum.**Unguentum.*

Ozene in Greeke be vlcers in the nose that be deepe and rotten, out of the which is breathed an vnkind and stinking sauer. Through sharpe & rotten humours which flow to the nostrils, filthinesse is ingendred, which if they be onely sharpe, they ingender vlcers hard to be cured, but yet they stinke not much. Therefore the cure of these vlcers consisteth chiefly in this, that in the beginning the head be dried & strengthened. Because vlcers come through the flowing of corrupt humours, which flow out of the head to the nostrils, the whole head must be strengthened and dried, that no superfluities do flow from the nostrils. You shall adde strength to the head after this sort, first you must clip the head, then straight you must lay on it things that do restraine & bind, as is oyle of roses, alume, vnripe gals, willow leaues, vinegar, & such like: this must be continually layd & annointed on the head ix dayes. When with those things the head is made strong, then go about to cure the nostrils, that you may dry vp the matter with medicines that be repulsive and discussive. Therefore those things that repell & driue backe be things sharpe, & sower, which also are reckened with restrictive things. Discussive things must be hot and dry of vertue. Therefore to our *Ozene* you must drop in the iuyce of calamint, or blow in the powder thereof being dried with a quill, or drop in hony into the nostrils. A while after minister sternutaments to bring them to scurfes, which wil fall off in 3. or foure dayes. Whē they are fallen off, cure it with goose grease & butter, & oyle of roses. The vlcers in the nostrils may be annointed with iuice of a pomgranate boyled in a brasen vessell vnto the half, or a whole pomgranate sodden in sweete wine brayed and dropped in. Also this is good: *Rx.* dry alume. *ʒ. j.* mirrhe. *ʒ. j.* the rind of a pomgranate, sumach, salt gemme, saffron, frakenience, ana. *ʒ. ʒ.* beate them, & blow into the nose of the powder. If that after the vlcers there remaine paine, vse this ointment: *Rx.* oyle of roses, mirtels. ana. *ʒ. j.* burnt lead, litarge. ana. *ʒ. iij.* Ceruse, bolearmenic, *balauustum*. ana. *ʒ. j.* white waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment, and annoint the place.

CHAP. XLIIII.

Of bleeding at the nose.

DE SANGVINIS EX NARIBVS PROFLVIO.

*Cause.**Externa.*

Flux of bloud at the nose it caused partly outwardly, and partly inwardly. Outward causes be falling fro a high place, a stripe, vehement exercise, and tarying

varying in the sunne. Inward causes is plenty of blood, or thinnesse of the same. You may know if it come through plenty of blood by heauy paine in the head, *Interne.* much blood in the face, and rednesse of the eyes. Let the diet be thinne, and *Signa.* such that it may coole and make thick the blood. Therefore let the aire be cold, *Victuatio.* and the meat of good iuyce, and easy to digest. If the blood be verie hot, let the sicke eate lettuce, endiue, peares, quinces, chickens roasted, or boyled with veriuice. Let him drinke thicke red wine mixt with water, or cold water, or decoction of cinamon, by which throughout my booke, I meane water in which a little cinamon is sodden, lest water through his coldnes might hurt a weak stomacke. Let the patient speak litle, and let him eschue mouing, trouble of mind, and chiefly anger. Also it is good to haue the lower parts of the head highest. For the cure you must take heed, that in bleeding at the nose the lower parts lye highest, and the head downward. The cure must be begun with those remedies which turne the blood to other parts of the bodie. First therefore if the bodie be full, and age will suffer it, and if the sicke be not resolved, you must cut the veine in the arme right against the flowing of blood at the nose. When you haue drawn out a litle, then let it alone an houre, then draw out some againe, and afterward againe and againe, as the patients strength will suffer it. Moreover friction and rubbing of the inferiour parts, as the armes, hands, thighs, share, & feete is verie profitable: and it is maruellously good to put the feet into warme water euer rubbing them vp and down. Also strong bindings of the extremities is to be accounted among the remedies that pull back. Also great cupping glasses fastened to the sides doe retaine blood breaking out at the nose. If the blood flow from the right nosethrill, fasten the cupping glasse vpon the liuer: if at the left nosethrill, vpon the splene. If the blood come from both the nosethrilles, fasten cupping glasses to both places. Also fasten them to the shoulders with scarification. Those being done, minister both within the bodie and without, things which coole and reſtraine. Outwardly apply to the forehead an *Epithema* of iuyce of plantaine, lettuce, sorrell, shepheards purse, *Epithema.* knot-grasse, or make it with the waters of them distilled. A linnen cloath wet in cold vineger is marvellous good, being applyed to the forehead and necke againe and againe. Also nourish the forehead with sponges of cold water. Also it is good to vse this *Epithema*, applyed to the forehead & the liuer *R.* *Aliud Epithema.* water of roses, nightshade, sorrell ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ iij. powders of *Diatryon santalon*, *Diatryon.* *rhodon abbatis* ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. bole armenie, yuorie burnt, *lapis hematites* ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ ss. commixe them all, & make an *Epithema*. Also you must put into the nose, medicines to stop blood, for the which this is very good: *R.* frankensence. $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. aloes. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. *An excellent medicine to stop blood.* powder them, & mixe therewith the white of an eg, vntill it be as thicke as honie, then commixe the soft haire of an hare with it, and apply it to the nose. Also you may writh a linnen cloth (dipped therein) in the nosethrills. Also mints brayed, and put into the nosethrills is thought to be exceeding good. Also a sponge wet in strong and sharpe vineger, may be put into the nose that bleedeth. Also this medicine is good *R.* egge shells. $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. vnripe galles. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. being brayed put them in a writhed linnen cloth wet in water or vineger, and put it into the nosethrills. Also it is good to stoppe the eares strongly with linnen & wax, and to hold in the mouth cold raine water. Also iuyce of the leaues.

Optima medicina.

of nettle, having linnen dipt into it, and put into the nose, stoppeth bleeding at the nose: also iuyce of horsetaile, or the leaues braied and applied are good. The flesh of snailles brayed with vineger or with their shelles burnt and braied are good, being applied to the forehead, and nose with vineger. But aboue all, the blood which commeth out at the patients nose is good, if it bee burned in an earthen pot and then beaten; take of it ℥. iij. bole armoniacke. ʒj. champhore. ʒj. with the white of an egge and a litle vineger, make it thicke like honey, and lay it to the forehead, & put it into the nose. Necessitie requiring it is lawfull to put to ij. graines or iij. of *opium*. Asses dounge dried and made into powder is wonderfully good, and also hogges dounge hath the like propertie. Within the body minister those things which doe coole and restraîne, as be sirupes of roses, sorrell and *nymphaea*, trochiskes of *terra lemnia*, or their iuyces, and such like medicins. Moreover if in the meane season any blood flowe into the belly or other places of the body, if it be much and plenteous, you must avoid it by medicines which will dissolue and bring forth the cloddie matter.

CHAP. XLV.

Of distillation, reume, and hoarsonesse.

DE DISTILLATIONE, GRAVEDINE,
ET RAVCITATE.

Diffillatio.
Gravedo.
Raucedo.
Cause.

Cold.
Heat.

*Repletion of
the head.*
Signa.

Calor.

Vicius ratio.

C*atarros* in Greeke, is called *Diffillatio* in Latin, and in English Reume. It is whereas an humour falleth downe to the mouth and the iawes. *Gravedo* is when the humour falleth into the nose, and causeth the pose. *Raucedo* is when the humour chauneth to distill to the sharpe arterie. The cause of flowing of the humour is the braine, the which through cold is brought to a cold temper, which chaunceth specially to them, which go suddenly about in the cold bare headed. But through heate the braine is warmed and stuffed, the coldnes of humours which be in the braine wringing, hard like as a sponge dipped in water is wrong with ones hand: it causeth the flowing of humours to the lower partes. So oftentimes heat going about in the head dissolving the humours in the braine, ingendreth distillation. Moreover all things that replete the head without measure, do cause flowing of humours into the inferior parts: also wine immoderately drunke, and hote bathes, rawe meate remaining in the stomacke, and vaporious things in the head. The signes if the fluxe of humours come of heate are these, the head is hote, and a sharpe and thinne humour distilleth as well by the nose, as by the mouth: also the face and the nose is redde, and for the most part there followeth a fever. Contrariwise, they that have the fluxe caused of cold, their head and their forehead is stretched forth euery where, the passages which be in the bones called *Ethmoidea*, are shut vp, so that the voyce cannot passe downward by the nostrils. Also a stigmaticke and thicke humour distilleth out of the nose. Let them eschue aire that is very hote or verie cold, especially from a bath, and from South, and North windes, and all things that can bind or dissolue humours in the braine. Let him vse meates of good iuyce, easie to be digested. Let him eschue those things that send plentie of vapours to the braine, as be onions, garlike, mustardseed, radish, & very hote odoraments. Moreover they which

which haue the distillation must eate lesse at supper then at dinner : let their drinke be *aqua mulsa*, or decoction of Cinamon or barley : let them eschue sleeping in the day, and lying vpright in the night. For the cure when the head is vexed with a hote distempure, you must vse those remedies, which are good for paine in the head ingendred of such a cause. The most present remedie of the head is to sprinkle and poure vpon the head plentie of hore water: that is able to drie out the hote vapours ingendred in the head. Moreouer such must take comfort of warme bathes of sweete water. They which haue their head vehemently hote and burning, and for that are troubled with continuall distillation, it is best for them, in sommer to be annointed with oyle of roses. If a cold distempure vexes the head, it must be annointed with hore and thinnne oyles, as oyles of Ireos, rewe, and such like. Oyle of Ireos is not onely vsed, as an ointment, but dropped into the nose. Also other things may be applied, which are spoken of in the chapter against paine of the head caused of cold. If a hote humour distill from the head together with a feuer, and if there be fulnesse of the body, you must let bloud out of the *Cephalica* veine. But if any iust cause be against it, wash the bellie with a clister, that it may draw the humours that do abound in the head downward: or minister a medicine purging choler, as is *pilula aurea alexandrina*, *azarum* and such like. Also you must turne the humours from the head, by frictions, ligatures, and fastning of cupping glasses to the shoulders. Minister within the body things that haue vertue to alter and quench the burning heat of choler, as is sirupe of violets, *nymphaea*, of poppie and their conserues. Also *Embroche* and odoraments rehearsed before in the chapter of headach may be applied. Also a plaister of *serra lemmia* or bole armoniacke, and iuyce of plantaine, made and layd vpon the head being shauen is good. If it be a cold humour which distillerh, you shall emptie with those things which purge fleume. For which purpose a strong clister is good: which being done, you must draw and turne away the humour from the head. Then when the humours be digested, purge the head with *Masticatories*, gargarismes, & such like. Moreouer apply to the head *Sacculi* made thus. *Rx.* flowres of camomill, melilot, betonie, organ. ana. *M. ss.* cinamon, cloues. ana. *ʒ. j.* maces. *ʒ. j.* nutmegges. *ʒ. ij.* *galla moschata*. *ʒ. j.* powder them all, and put them in silke, and make a *Sacculus*, and lay it to the crowne of the head. It is verie good also to annoint the head with hote oyles, as are the oyles of Ireos, dill, and rewe. All things do stop distillation, which haue vertue to drie, especially *nigella* parched, and comin burnt or parched put into a linnen cloth, and knit, is a present remedie, if the patient do stuell to it. For the same purpose it is good to minister suffumens, as is this: *Rx.* frankensence, maslicke. ana. *ʒ. j.* wood of Aloes. *ʒ. j.* Cinamon, cloues. ana. *ʒ. ij.* *Galla moschata*. *ʒ. j.* laurell leaues, yellow saunders, ana. *ʒ. j.* muske, amber. ana. *g. j.* being brayed, commixe them with *storax liquida*, as much as sufficeth, and make trochiskes: whereof put one vpon coales. *Rx.* sage, marioram, rosemarie, ana. *ʒ. j.* maces, cloues, cinamon. ana. *ʒ. ij.* wood of aloes. *ʒ. j.* frankensence, *ʒ. j.* beate them all, and commixe them, and make a grosse powder to strew vpon the coales. As for hoarsenesse, it is cured almost with the same medicines, that the cough is.

Curatio.

Vena sellio.

Humor frigida.

Sacculi.

To stop distillation.

Trochiskes of perfume.

LIBER I.
CHAP. XLVI.
Of paine in the teeth.

DE DENTIVM DOLORE.

Toothach (as Galen saith) amongst other paines that are not mortall, is the most cruell & grievous of them all. It is caused sometime of hot or cold distemper. Also many times through flowing of humors out of the head vnto the roots of the teeth, which with their sharpnesse either do gnaw about them, or else with their abundance they ingender like grief in the teeth, as if inflammation were about the fleshie parts. Paine in the teeth is sometime without inflammation of the gums, sometime in the sinew wherein the roots be planted. If the paine come through distemper of the bare qualitie, it will not be grievous. Hot distemper is knowne by the temper of the whole body, because that likewise is hot. Also the face is red, & the diet vsed before was hot. Cold is knowne by the contrary indgements. If the paine be caused of flowing of some humor abundantly, then grievous paine is not only felt in the teeth, but also in other parts which it passeth by. A hot humour ingendreth vchement paine: a cold humour more meeker. Let the diet be such as may defend that the paine come not, and let it be such as is not very hot nor cold. Also eschue all sharpe sower, & viscous things. Also often vsing of milke doth maruellously hurt the teeth: labour diligently to purifie the teeth. The meats must be good of iuyce, & easie to digest. For the cure, if it come of cold, it is good to wash the teeth with warme wine. Let the cheeks be annointed outward with warme oyles, of cammomill, rew, i-reos, & such like. Also to wash the mouth, seeth in vinegar, organ, calamint, hyssop, peniroyall, sauory, the root of veruaine & such like. If the teeth do ake thorough heat, you must seeth in vinegar, purslaine, pellitorie, singreene the lesse, & licorice. But if the heat be intollerable, you must vse the seeds of lettuce, endiue, & poppy sodden in vinegar. Without you must annoint against the grief with cold oiles, as of roses, water lillies, and such like. Moreouer if the paine be caused through flowing of humors, if age, time of the yeare, & other things will suffer it, & if the body also be ful of bloud, it is good to cut the *Cephalica* veine or *media* on the same side that the grief is. That done cut the veine vnder the tong, or fasten cupping glasses to the shoulders. If one only corrupt humor doth abound, the vse conuenient medicins to purge that humor. For the same purpose clisters are very good. The whole body being emptied, you must minister those medicins that do repress & stop, as iuice of plaraine, roses, purslaine, both the endiue: either take the decoctio of the aforesaid things, or their waters distilled & mixed with a litle vinegar. It is only good to wash the aking with hot sharp vinegar, with vnripe gale: or this, *Rx* the root of hebene. *℥*ij pellitorie. *℥*ss staucsaere. *℥*ij galingale. *℥*ss Camphore. *℥*ii. alume. *℥*ij. hony. *℥*ij. let all be bruised, and boile all in vinegar. *℥*ss. j. rose water. *℥*vj. wash the teeth with this each morning & it will preserue the teeth & keepe them fro paine. But if it come of extreme cold, then vse specially medicine: *Rx* pepper, pellitorie, mellor. ana. *℥*j. staucsaere. *℥*ss. bruse them & put the powder into a linné cloth, & lay it on the aking teeth, & keepe it there a quarter of an houre, and it will cease the paine. Also (as is said before) to wash the teeth with warme wine, is very good.

CHAP.

LIBER I.
CHAP. XLVII.

71

Of teeth that be blacke and loose.

DE DENTIBVS DENIGRATIS, LIVENTIBVSQVE
ET MOLLIBVS.

SOMETIME the teeth be swart and blacke throughout their substance, nor vnlike a certaine inflammation of the patients. Through flowing of vicious humours the teeth be loose, sometime through a stripe or fall, sometime through flowing of moistnesse, which looseth the sinewes and ligaments, and maketh the teeth loose, or else gnawing and weaknesse of the gummies in the which the teeth are fet, causeth them to be lose. The cure of vicious humours must be begun with purging. Afterward, if the teeth be swart or rustie, you must deuise the corrupt humours which flow to the teeth, with drying medicines, as is, *licium*, frankensence, mints, gals, masticke, mirthe, *nigella*, and such like. Among many other this is very good: *R. nigella*, mirthe, frankensence, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. masticke, white pepper. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. *pistochia*. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. roch alume. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. beat them into powder, and rub the teeth therewith: or commixe them with Venice Turpentine and annoint them therewith. The corrupt humours being consumed, vse dentrifices which haue vertue to scoure and drie, as is this. *R. mirum roch alume*, harts horne burnt, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. mirthe. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. the roote of Ireos illirice, frankensence, drie mintes, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. common salt burnt, *pistochie*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. pumith, *testarum sepie*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. pepper, pellitorie, drie peniroyall, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. beat them, and searce them all, and with this powder rub the teeth dayly. For teeth that be loose you may apply such medicines, as restraine and strengthen loose gummies, and fasten them. Therefore for collutions of the mouth the decoctions of restrictive things do profit, as is this. *R. red roses*, mintes, plantaine, ana. $\mathfrak{m}$.ss. the barks of Cipresse nuttes. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. feedes of mirtels, sumach. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ss. pomgarnet rindes, gals. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. *acatia*. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. seeth them all in red restrictive wine, and with that often wash the mouth. The mouth being washed, it is lawfull to vse this dentrificium. *R. gals*, the rindes of sweete pomgarnets. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. *balauustum*, sumach, mirthe. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. red roses, *sanguis draconis*, *caliculorum glandium*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. frankensence, harts horne burnt. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. powder all, and searce them, and rub the teeth therewith: or this is marvellous good. *R. Balauustum*, nutmegges, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.iij. roch alume. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. powder them, and mixe them with honic. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. and incorporate them well together: and with this annoint the teeth twise or thirle in the day.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of Vlcers in the mouth.

DE APHTHIS.

THE vlcers which are bredde in the vppermost part of the mouth, and haue a certaine burning heat, in Greeke are called *Apthe*, and of the barbarous sort *acola*: some be whitish, and some reddish, and some blackish, and these be most perillous of all other. They ingender for the most part in infāts and sucking children, when either the nurses milke is naught, or the childe cānot well digest it. Also they chance sometime to the that be of perfect age

Signa.

Curatio infan.

tium.

Cure of them

that be of per-

fect age.

Vilustratio.

Curatio.

aswell through great fluxe of vicious and corrupt humours to the mouth, as also through sharpnesse of those thing; that are eaten and drunke. The tokens are easie, because they be knownen by sight and feeling. If you touch it, the places will seeme hotter then they ought to be, and there is swelling. They which be red, do shew bloud to haue the maisterie. Yealownesse signifieth bitter choler; whitenesse, fleumes; blacknesse, melancholie. They which chance to children may easily be cured by those things that do meanly restraine. And you must giue them chiefly in their meates some quinces, and other sharpe things, peares, and mespilers. vidz. medlers or open arles. Sometime also you must commixe with their meate some lettuce, endiue and purslaine. If there be inflammation of the vlcers, then take the iuyce of purslaine, lettuce and nightshade, the powder of alume, and wash the mouth with a fine cloth, or with a sering; and if the child can take no meate, then the nurse must vse the same kinde of diet. Also the decoction of galles, *balaustrum*, sanders, sumach, *acacia*, & such like, commixed with *Rubderibes* or *Diamoron* applied as before is taught. In them that be of perfect age only the nature of the body is to be considered, whether it be soft or moist, or hard, or drie. For in hard and strong bodies you must minister strong medicins. In weake and soft bodies, gentle medicines. For the diet therefore in such ages, they must eschue all things that be sharpe and salt, and that ingender corrupt iuyce. For the cure in fulnesse of the body, if nothing do let it, first cut the *Cephalyca* veine, and then those veins vnder the tongue. If the body be full of ill iuyce, you must minister a purgation against the corrupt humours. The body being purged, apply medicins which haue vertue to restraine and stop. Moderate remedies against vlcers be these; *sumach*, roses, *Balaustium*, dissolved in wine or *malsa*. But if the exulcerations begin to putrifie, this decoction is verie profitable. *Rx.* fellerd leaues of sage, hisope, rew, penitroyall, camomill, woodbind, knotgrasse, *burcapastoris*, briar leaues. ana. *M. ss.* wash them cleane, and boyle them all in ij. *lb.* ss. of good ale or beere, and put therein three or foure spoonefull of honic, alume. *℥ij.* let it seeth to the consumption of halfe, then straine it, and wash the mouth therewith foure or fve times in a day. But if the vlcers be more running and gnawing, annoint the place with *unguentum Aegyptiacum*. mixt with *mel rosarum* or such like.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of a stinking mouth.

DE FETORE ORIS.

Cause.

Signa.

There is a gricuous and stinking saour of the mouth caused for the most part through putrification of the gummies or teeth, or through meate sticking still in the teeth. Many times it commeth through hote distempure of the skinne of the mouth: sometime also through corrupt and rotten humours sticking in the mouth of the stomacke. It chanceith also many times that exulceration of the mouth or lungs doth hurt the breath of the mouth or lungs. If stinking of the mouth chaunce through putrification either of the gummies, or teeth, or of meate sticking in the teeth: it is soone knownen either by sight, or by the patients tale. If it be caused of a hote distempure of the mouth, then heate

The second Booke.

CHAP. I.

Against the inflammation of the Columella.

DE COLUMELLA INFLAMMATIONE.



HERE chanceth in the throate many dāgerous inflammations (as Hippocrates writeth in his *Prognostica*) and first of this *Columella* appeareth a certaine fleshic peece, hanging in the vpper part of the mouth. If one do gape wide, and hold downe his tongue, it may be seene. In old time it was called *Gurgulio*, now it is called *Columella*. It is often vexed with inflammations, which is caused through bleud, and other humours which descend out of the head. The disease may be knowne by sight: and there chanceth in it difficultie in swallowing, paine, swelling, rednesse of the *Columella*, & feauer. The diet in a maner, must be such as is ordained in other inflammations, and specially, quietnesse, rest, silence, and hunger, are good, and to eate litle or nothing at supper. For the cure, if there be fulnesse of the body, you must begin with bloudletting, and first you must cut the *Cephalica* veine in the arme, and afterward the veine vnder the tongue. Also the belly must be purged by clisters, so that by that meanes, not onely the belly may be soluble, but also that the flowing of humours to the grief, may be taken away. Also for the same purpose you may fasten cupping glasses to the shoulders, neither must we let passe the remedies which are good to repress & stop fluxe of humours. For as they do in all other diseases caused of the fluxe of humours, so in this behalfe, for their first remedie, they stop the fluxe of humours. Therefore such remedies must be of a restrictiue nature & facultie. If that the fluxe of humours be moderate, minister things which restraine moderately, as these be which be called soure. But if it be more vehement, adde to it sharpe things, for both be restrictiue; but soure be weake, and sharpe things strong, as *Galen* doth say in his fourth booke of the vertues of simple medicines, cap. 6. and 7. Therefore vse collutions made of those things, as if they should be moderate, seeth dates sometime in water alone, and sometime with a litle honie put to them. Likewise make decoctions of roses, vine buddes, brambles, cypresse, the first buddes of pomgranete floures, *Sligna*, rootes of mulberie, soure apple, & *sortus*. Those be stronger then these which be made of the decoctio of mirtles, & their berries. Also of sharpe quinces, and young buds of oake, or the maste of oake: also of medlets, & a fruite called *Cornu*. The best collutions are made of galles, *sumach*, *acacia*, and the floures of both the pomgranats, and their shels. Among

Gurgulio.

Signa.

Illustratio.

Curatio.

Vena sectio.

Cocurbitula.

compound

compound medicines this doth helpe wonderfully, *Rx.* the distilled waters of *Gargarismus*, roses, plantaine, sorrel, *prunella*, *solani*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. *Diamoron*, *succi medicati cribes*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . *succi medicati exiochanta*. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. β . vinegar, wherein *sumach* is steeped. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. *Alba*, iuice of pomgranates. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . commixe them together, & with it wash the mouth. Another of the same vertue. *Rx.* red roses, brambles, ana. $\mathcal{M}$.j. pomgranat flowers & the shels, gals, mast of oake ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. *sumach*, *hipocistidis*, *acacia*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. seeds of sorrell & quinces, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. seeth the in $\mathfrak{H}$.j. of wel water, vntill halfe remaine; the decoction being strained, put to it of *Diamoron*. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. *succi medicati cribes*, *diacaron*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. β . vinegar. $\mathfrak{z}$.vj. commixe them all, and make a gargarisme. You must vse these medicines in the beginning of the disease; and especially when the grieue hath not the greatestt cause: nor when the body of the sicke is much stopped with humours, nor when the aggrieued place is weake. through the nature of the impostume. But if it chance so (as it doth often in the beginning, and often somewhat after) that is, the third day, you must commixe some of the discussive medicines, as is, lincseed, fenugreeke, mallowes, roote of *ireos*; & honie. Moreover, of what sort soeuer the medicines be, minister the warme, for those that labour of inflammation, may suffer no cold. After the vigour of it you may safely minister discussives, vnlesse the *Columella* begin to waxe hard: for then you must minister mollifying medicines: that is, lincseed, fenugreeke, mallowes, *althea*, *tragacanthum*, and such like: of the which you may make gargarismes. After that vse discussives, as is, hysope, figs, licorice decoct together. If it draw toward rotting, which may be perceiued by his colour, & doth not breake alone by collusio of *Mulsa* & *Oximet scilliticu*, then open it with some instrument. After the breaking, & bursting out of the matter, let him vse medicines cleansing, abstersiue, & glutinative, especially the iuyce of *enpatorie*, and such like.

CHAP. II.

Of a loose *Columella*.

DE LAXATA COLUMELLA.

Ofentimes it chanceth that a loose *Columella* doth hang vpon the rootes of the tongue and iawes. Of some it is called the *Vula*. Wherefore in the beginning you must vse such kind of cure as the inflammation thereof requireth. In the beginning the body and the head must be purged by medicines spoken of in the former Chapter. Which being done, you must make collusions and gargarismes of such things as do restraine and drie: after this sort; *Rx.* red roses, sorrell, *enpatorie*, ana. $\mathcal{M}$.j. *gallacum*. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. alume. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. mirrhe, *frankensense*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . flaxseed. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . seeth them in water to the third part, and adde to the iuyce of that decoction strained of good hony. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . and make a gargarisme. Also powders do profit, being blown in with an instrument for the purpose: as this is, *Rx.* dry roses, galls, roch alume, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . pepper, ginger, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . mirrhe. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. powder it, & searce it, and put it vp as before. Also take green nuts, & dry them, and date stones burned sufficiently: take of each of them equall portions, powder them, & vse them as the other. Also vnripe galls, *balarmoincke*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. do likewise. If the *Columella* must needs be cut, it is good to empy the belly first, lest the sick be strangled. Whē the *Columella* is cut out, bow his head downward, lest the blood run inward. And afterward wash his mouth with the decoction

of sumach, *ardtia*, galls, putting to it rosewater and vineger. Afterward minister things to heale it vp.

CHAP. III.

Of inflammation of the tonsilles.

DE TONSILLARVM INFLAMMATIONE.

TONSILLAE be inflammations of those things which lye betweene the mouth and the throate; some do call them *Amigdale* (that is) Almondcs

Cause. Those tonsilles oftentimes be inflamed: for their places be hot and moist. They are most vexed with this euill, which haue abondance of bloud: and children and infants which do sucke, through drawing of the milke. Also it chanceth often to men and women through drinking of strong wines, and through much greedy deuouring of meate, specially if they be eager and sharpe. They that be so afflicted haue difficulty in swallowing, and paine, and also sometime a feuer. Therefore the inflammation beginning, you must take away meate, and minister to him water to drinke, or water wherein a litle Cinnamon hath bene sodden, specially if there be a feuer. Let the whole diet be so ordered, as it is in other inflammations. Let his meate be souplings, for otherwise he cannot swallow it. For the cure, if the inflammation be light, you must vse gargarismes, restrictive, such as be taken in the beginning of an inflamed *Columella*. But you must beware in the beginning, that you put no honie to the gargarismes, for it hath a sharpnesse in it. If that the inflammation be vehement, so that he be in perill of choking, you must cut the *Cephalica* veine in the arme on the same side. And if the belly be not soluble enough, cast in a clister. You must prouoke childrens bellies by putting in a suppositarie, and by anointing the tuell. After purging you must vse restrictive medicines, vntill the vigour of the disease be ceased something. All these things (as we admonished before) must be ministered warme. Outwardly it is best to nourish it with sponges, layd gently to it. Also lay to it plaisters made of barley meale, seeds of flaxe, fenugrecke, & such like. The inflammation declining, and waxing lesse, it is good to put honie into your gargarismes, which in the beginning and increasing you may not do, lest the sharpnesse which is in it do increase fluxe. Also at this time hotter gargarismes do profite. Outwardly you must put about the necke, soft wooll dipped in oyle, and if that by vsing of sharpe collutions, or gargarismes, the inflammations be increased, and biting and gnawing come thereby: you must vse gentler, as is iuyce of prisan: also gargarise warme milke. When the inflammation and paine ceaseth, annoint with the aforesayd remedies of the mouth, putting it in with your finger: so that by gentle anointing, the parts of the tonsilles which are swelled, may be thrust, whereby they may put out the matter contained in them. But yet you may not thrust hard, as many vse to do, whereby they cause the inflammation to be augmented. And therefore if by that meanes any hurt do chance, we must be content with ministering gentle gargarismes without any anointing. If that by ministering the remedies aforesayd, the grief be not eased, then looke for rotting of it, which you may know by increasing of the inflammation, and by sharpe exulcerations, exacerbations, and gnawings in the euening when you looke for suppuration & rotting: you must helpe that

Signes of suppuration.

helpe that it may quickly come to passe: therefore then you must minister hotter gargarismes, as is *aqua mulsa*, and decoction of figges, hysope and seed of *Althea*. Outwardly lay plaisters of barley meale and fenugreeke, with decoction of figges, *Althea* and hony. When it is perfectly rotten, the paine will diminish, and the swelling and inflammation will be made softer, so that it will giue place to the finger: then you must minister sharpe collutions, that they may breake the borch. In meates he must take great gobbets of bread steept in water, and likewise his meat must be eaten by lumps: for vehement rolling of it vp and downe about the tonsils will breake the botches, as well as if they were cut. But if the patient will not do it, then open it with some fine instrument for the purpose. And after it is broken, let the sicke bow his head downward, that the matter may the better runne out. And let him gargarise *aqua mulsa* alone, and afterward commixe with it decoction of lentils and roses. And with these you must tarrie, vntill it be healed.

CHAP. IIII.

*Of malignant Vlcers of the tonsils*DE SERPENTIBVS ET MALIGNIS TONSILLARVM
VLCERIBVS.

THERE beginne malignant vlcers of the tonsils, sometime with a fluxe of them going before: sometime they are caused of an accustomed inflammation being augmented. They chance often to children, and also to them of perfect age, especially to those which do abound with vicious humours. They chance to children after the *Apthis* in the mouth. In colour they be like unto scurfs which are burnt with iron. Also there chanceth to the sicke drinesse in swallowing, and often choking, especially when rednesse is vnder the chin. If gnawing and sharpenesse of humours hath gone before, there followeth putrefaction. You must proceed in the cure speedily: and if he be of perfect age, and no other thing forbidding it, it is good to cut the *Cephalica* veine in the arme, or if that appeare not, the middle veine. If they be maydes, whome at perfect age, for lacke of purgation of menstruis, this disease doth often infect: then in them you must cut the *Saphena* veine, letting blood but once onely, and yet at that time, not till the hart faile, least after it, vertue be destroyed by overmuch flux of menstruis. Furthermore the belly must be emptied by clisters, suppositories, and by annointing of the tuell. And you must labour by all meanes to turne the humour from the agriued place: for the which purpose fasten cupping glasses nigh to the loynes, and vse to bind the extremities, as the hands and feet. After ward it is good to vse gargarismes, declared before in the chapter of *Columella*, and in the chapter following. After the beginning of the sickness, minister *Diamoron*, or a collution mixed with *mulsa*, then also decoction of Ireos, and other things rehearsed in the aboue said places. We must take heed that we touch not the vlcerate tonsils with our finger, not so much as to touch it softly. For the vnskillfull, to whom with great errour men do seeke in doubtful matters, they do annoy it vehemently, also they do thrust the agriued place, and pull away the scab or roue, which they ought not to do, before they see the roue lifted vp, and scarce cleauing to the sore. For if we intend to pull

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

Gargarisme.

away the scabbe, whiles it sticketh fast, the vltération will pierce more deepe, and inflammation will follow, and the paine will increase, and they will come to venomous vlters. Therefore it is good to blowe in drie remedies, and to annoint liquid things with a feather. Dogs doung mixed with honie and annointed, taketh away the roues maruellously, which will be the better, if the dog be fedde onely with bones two dayes before: it helpeth greatly, neither hath it any vnflauorinesse being ministred in meats. Also the ashes of swallows burnt, and the ashes of Centorie *minor* burnt, with honie mixed, is good. After the irritations and chafings made by medicines, you must appease it with decoction of lyquorice, and with a gargarisme, which is made of masticke, mirrhe, *Tragacanthum*, *amylum* & saffron, ministring also while the vltér feedeth, milke mixed with *terra lemnia* to gargarise. What neede many wordes? You must be diligent and carefull, specially in clensing and purging the vlters. Many infants do suffer the cramp in purging of the vlters. Some be strangled, because the way of swallowing is dried vp. It is good to apply outward fomentes, and emplasters, with taking heede least he do coole it. For the cure will prosper, if the matter that is holden within, can be drawne outward. Therefore alwayes after the taking of the plaisters away, couer the parts that be about the chinne, by laying vpon it soft wooll sprinkled with *oleum nardinum*. To conclude, when the skurfes are loosened, and the vlters purged, vse this remedie following, *Rx.* floures of red roses. *℥.ij.* saffron. *℥.j.* *℞.* *Balaustie*. *℥.℞.* mirrhe. *℔.j.* pine nuts made cleane, *℥.ij.* *Amyl.* *℥.j.* Sumach, roch alume, ana. *℥.j.* *℞.* beate them, commixe them with honie, and vse to annoint it three times on the day.

CHAP. V.

Of the Squinancie.

DE ANGINA.

Gen. 4.

A Ngina in Latin, Squinancie in English, but in Greeke *Sinanchi*. It is properly an inflammation which is in the throate, or in the iawes. There be foure kinds of squinancies; one is, whē the iawes be inflamed, (by the iawes I meane, the place where the ends of the weland and the *trachea arteria* do agree.) Another is, when neither the iawes nor other parts of the mouth, nor yet the outward parts do seeme to be inflamed: yet the sicke feeleth perill of choking in the throate. The third is, when the partes about the throat bee inflamed both outwardly and inwardly. The fourth is, when the ioynts betweene the bones of the head, and the necke be loosened to the former part of the necke: whereby the place appeareth hollow, and the sicke feeleth paine when it is touched without. The Squinancie is caused through aboundance of hote blood, flowing vnnaturally to the places before rehearsed. It is knowen by these signes: the breath is drawen verie hardly, and not without the necke be holden right, and there is difficultie in swallowing. Also in some, a feuer, rednesse of the face and necke. There chaunceth also in many, swelling: the sicke yauneth with open mouth & draweth breath. Therefore in the beginning euery squinancie requirereth a hastie and speedie remedio. Wherefore you must by and by cut the outward veine on the same side of the shoulders, except some greater perill do let it: but you must take away the blood by litle and litle, at many times, and

Cause.
Signa.Curatio.
Vena humero-
rum sectio.

not

not all at once, for the blood being taken away altogether on heapes, the heart soone faileth, and so the perill of choking commeth vpon him. And moreover also by the refrigeration and fainting of the heart, the matter is quickly caried from the iawes vnto the lungs, and so bringeth ineuitable perill. Take heed also that there be litle deduction of the veine, for thereof commeth much fayling of the minde, and yet it is not good to make a narrow incision of the veine, lest the blood be as it were strained, and the grosser part remaineth within still, which is the cause of this disease. It is profitable to them to haue the blood drawn out again the next day, vnlesse the swelling of the disease let it, or faintnes of the heart. If the sicke be a woman, cut the veine on the anckles, specially if the mēstruis be stopped; and the blood must be drawne out moderately. If by these he be but litle eased, then it is good to cut those veines which be vnder *Venarum Lin-* the tongue, and that by and by, at the first or the second day. And if there be *guae sectio.* any thing that forbiddeth bloodletting, the belly must be emptied with a sharp *Clister.* clister, such as is described in the chap. of *Apoplexia*. After vniuersal euacuatiōs, you must fasten on cupping glasses: and if there be swelling about the cheekes, or vnder the chinne, it is good to fasten cupping glasses to the swelling, & with scarification to draw out much blood: also to strew salt vpon the scarifying, and to rub it. And if there appeare no swelling outward, you must fasten a cup- *Concurbitula.* ping glasse behind in the necke, neare to the shutting of the first ioynt, and you must vse it with constant attraction, pulling away the glasse often. Also the humors must be turned away, lest they flow to the place which is aggrieved & inflamed. For the which purpose you must bath the feete with hote water. Also *Asteris hume-* bind and rub the hands and feere strongly. The necke must be couered with *rum.* wooll that is moyst, or that is dipped in warme oyle: also by and by (at the beginning) you must vse gargarises, which do neither vehemently driue backe, nor yet onely discusse, For those which do altogether repell, and driue backe, they bring perill of choking, by thrusting humours to the lungs. Those which be onely discussive, they draw more then is meet, by reason of their heate. Therefore, when the beginning is with much inflammation, you must minister those things which do restraine gently, as is decoction of roses lintels, and dates, or else restrictiue gargarismes, declared before in the chap. *de Columelle inflammatione,* cōmixing some discussive medicins with it. Of that sort are roses, or sumach sodden with *aqua mulsa*, and decoction of Sebesten. When the disease is at his strength and standeth: you must vse those things which haue discussive vertue only in the, as is decoction of fenugreek, figs, raisons, licorice; or stronger things, as the root of ireos, hisope, *nigella*, sothernwood, with *oximell*. Therefore it shall be lawfull at this time to vse a gargarisme made thus. *Rx.* of licorice scraped. *℥.j.* raisons. *℥.j.* dry figs, in nūber 6. fenugreek *℥.ij.* hisope, sothernwood. *ana. M.℞.* seeth them in one pound of well water, till halfe be consumed: then put into the licour of that decoction being strained, of *mel rosarum*. *℥.j.* *℞. oximell simplex. ℥.j.* cōmixe them all, and make a gargarisme. Also dogs doung, such as is found *Gargarismus.* amongst herbes, and is very white in colour, being beaten and finely searced and mixed with honie, is a most excellent medicine, being ministred like a *loboch*, that they may swallow it verie softly. Likewise the ashes of swallowes burnt, is verie effectuell, being so mixed with honie. Moreover to the necke

without, you must apply those plaisters in them which be vexed with inflammation which can concoct & discusse, as this is, *R.* the meale of linseed, fennegreke, and barley, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. seedes of *althæa*, $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. mallowes, floures of cammomil and melilot, ana. M. j. teeth them in water vntill they waxe soft, then stampe them in a mortar, and make a soft plaister, or put to it oiles of cammomil and lillies, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . and being boyled againe, make an emplaister. Neither shall it be vnprofitable, if the necke be annointed with oiles of cammomil, dill, and lillies, or fomented with decoction of fenugreke, melilot, and cammomil. They which are vexed with the squinancie, let them vse three dayes *aqua mulsa* for their drinke: afterward iuyce of pisan by it selfe or with some sweet portion, for that iuyce hath vertue to extenuate, discusse, nourish, and to coole. When the inflammation is somewhat slaked, and the sicke beginneth to swallow better, giue to him the yolkes of reere egges, and suppings made of *Alica*. To conclude, the eating of the sicke and his meates, must be according to his strength: therefore he must eschue ouermuch feeding. Sleepe must especially be eschued, as wel in the squinancie as in all other inflammations. For in sleep (as Hippocrates saith) the blood creepeth within, and the flowing of humours to the griued place, doth increase more.

CHAP VI.

Of the Cough.

DE TUSSE.

Cause.

1
2
3
4
5
6

Signa.

There be diuerse causes of the Cough. For as *Galen* saith *lib. 1. ca. 2. de sympto. causis*, Cold distemper of the instruments of breathing causeth the cough. Also a humour distilling from the head to the *Trachea arteria*, and shorpnesse onely of the vpper skinne of *trachea arteria* going about within, doth prouoke the cough. Also wormes troubling the stomacke, & raising vp some quality, sending it to the iawes, doth cause the cough. Moreouer, a humour contained in the lungs & the breast, is the cause of inflammation in the lungs, disease in the sides, consumption, and the cough. Those which be outward signes, and may cause the cough, be smoke, dust, and whatsoeuer doth exasperat the *trachea arteria*. The signes of coughing caused onely through cold distemper of the instruments of respiration & breathing are, that those which be so afflicted, they spit out nothing while they cough, nor the cough is not violent nor constringing: but it is so smal, that not only it may be suppressed by holding the breath, but also vnlesse it be verie great, it may be healed, because through stopping of the breath, the parts vexed with cold, do waxe hote. Moreouer they which are vexed with this kind of cough, they are more prouoked to it by often fetching of their breath, because the cold thereby is increased, & made more stronger. Therefore if they breath and fetch their wind easily, and be also in a warme house, they cough litle or nothing at all. They be pale of face, and not thirstie: they are griued with cold things, and are best with hote things. The coughes which chance with tickling of the partes on either side of the palate, they do openly shew a flowing humour, comming from the head to *trachea arteria*, and to the lungs, which you may well know by difficulty of breathing that followeth. And if that they which be thus afflicted do spit out nothing, it declareth it

to

to be a thinne rume, which being cut off by expulsion of breath, it is caried no further by reason of his thinnes, but the flowing of it returneth again. The diet is diuerse, according to the diuersitie of causes: for if the cough be caused of cold distempere, occupying the instruments of breathing: you must eschue ayre, wind, and also cold meate and drinke: but if the cough be caused through humours distilling from the head, let the diet be such as is described before in the Chapter of distillation. But vniuersally they which haue the cough, must eschue salt things, sharpe things, and whatsoeuer would exasperate the *trachea arteria*. The cough that is caused through cold of the instruments of breathing, shall be cured by the remedies that can make them hote. Therefore let the necke be wrapped about with warme woll, and let him breath seldome, because that stopping of the breath (as is said before) doth not onely let the cough, but also oftentimes it healeth it. Therefore it is good to haue the sick conuerted in a hot house, and let him breath very softly. Also let the breast be fomented with hot ointments, as is oyles of *ireos*, lillies & dill. If a humor that is thin and sharpe, flowing out of the head to the *trachea arteria*, and the breast, do cause a cough, then it shall be healed specially by meates of good iuyce, & by medicins which do coole, thicken, temper & stop sharpnes and mordacity. For which purpose it is good to minister sirupes of violets, of *Nimphae*, of poppie, the antidote *Diarragacantha*, *diapenidion sine speciebus*, *pilule bechice*, and such like. *Ecligma*. Among all other this loch is excellent good. *Rx. Diarragacantha, diapenidion sine speciebus*, ana $\mathfrak{z}$.vj. iuyce of licorice. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. *pilule bechice* $\mathfrak{z}$.j. *stora* calamint. $\mathfrak{z}$.ss. mirrhe, drie roses, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. *tragacantha*, pine nuts, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ss. sirupe of violets, as much as shall suffice to commixe them, and make an *Ecligma*. Also for that purpose it is good to minister those medicines which are spoken of before in the chap. of distillations. But if a grieuous & viscous humor be cause of the cough, we shall cure it by those things which do deuide & extenuate. Therefore then we must minister to the sick syrups of licorice, hisope, horehound, calamint, of grosse and such like, or else this decoction, *Rx. roots of ireos*, parcely, licorice, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. roots of *Ella camphana* $\mathfrak{z}$.ss. drie figges in number vij. of raisins the stones picked out, $\mathfrak{z}$.j. seeds of nettle, annise and fennell, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. hysope, maidenhaire, scabios, and horehound ana. $\mathfrak{M}$.j.ss. the best agarick. $\mathfrak{z}$.iiij. Seeth them all in well water of iust quantitie, til the third part be consumed: then straine it, and to the iuyce of that decoction put sirupe of hisope and horehound ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij.ss. and make a potion. Afterward if it seeme conuenient by the state of the patient, you must emptie the bodie with those medicines which do purge grosse and clammy humors. And among other spoken of in the first booke, the infusion of agarick is very good, which is made after this sort, *Rx. of elect agarick* $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. ginger. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. salt gemme. $\mathfrak{z}$.iiij. beate them, and infuse them one night in $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. of odoriferous white wine, water of wormewood and fennell. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. In the morning straine it, and wring it, & put to it *Electuarium Indi maioris*. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij.ss. *Oximel scilliticum*. $\mathfrak{z}$.ss. & make a potion. The body being purged, let him haue a loch sometime commixed with other antidotes, after this sort, *Rx. Loch e pino*, loch *sani & experti*, loch *Esilla*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. *Diareos Salomonis*. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. powder of *Diapenidion cū speciebus*. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. powder of the rootes of *Enula* and *ireos*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij.ss. iuyce of licorice. $\mathfrak{z}$.j.ss. sirupe of horehound, as much as shall suffice to commixe them. Moreover the breast

Unguentum. must be annointed outwardly with hore oiles of lillies, *Ireos* & sweet almonds, putting to them greace and other things, after this sort. R. oiles of lillies and sweete almonds. ana. ℥.iiij. of hens greace. ℥.j.℔. fresh butter. ℥. ij. the muscelage of fenugreeke, and rootes of *Althea*. ana. ℥.j.℔. *Storax*. ℥.℔. powder of the rootes of *Enula* and *Ireos*. ana. ℥.j. saffron. ℥.j. white waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. The residue that is requisite for the cure of the cough, are to be sought in the chapter of distillation.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Asthma.

DE ASTHMAE.

*Cause.**Signa.**Visum ratio.**Curatio.*

THE *Asthma* is caused when as grosse and clammy humors be gotten in abundantly into the gristles or lappets of the lungs, or that there be some swelling in it, like vnto a botch. Also they do breath difficultly, whereby the *Trachea arteria* is repleate and filled with distillations. These euils are easie to be knowne asunder. For distillation doth also chance in haile folke by and by through as manifest a cause in a maner, altogether without a feauer, hauing the tokens of a distillation following it. If there be swelling of the lungs like a botch, there must needs follow a feauer, and so within few dayes after, the inflammation being rotted, the matter of it is cast out with the cough. If there be a crude & raw tubercle & botch ingendred, such do not feele any great grief, neither are they much troubled with difficulty of breathing, but they are much troubled when they eate or drink, because they cannot swallow but with much grieve. Those which be properly *Asthmatickes*, or *Orthopnickes*, they haue no feauer at all, & there chaunceth to them heauinesse of sense, and they do not spit out matter with their spittle. Let their diet be altogether hore and drie, therefore he must eschue ayre cold and moist. He must eate the flesh of partridges, birdes of the mountaines, hennes, capons, and such like. He must eschue, fishes, fruite, pulse, and all other things that can ingender grosse and clammy humours. Let him vse often hysope, parcels and fennell. Vniuersally let him drinke a small quantitie at once which hath a botch risen, but much drinke must be vsed of those, whose gristles and flappes of the lungs are stopped with grosse and clammie humours, which are not easie to be cast out with the spittle because of their thicknes, & therefore they haue need of much moistning, that it may come out the easilier. He must vse exercise before meat, but not sodainly by and by, because many by these meanes are dead. Frictions and rubbings of the breast do profite. Perturbations of the mind, especially wrath and lamentation are to be eschued. But for the cure of the aforesayd euils generally, you must labour that the abundance of that humour, which engendreth these euils, may be abolished and consumed. But before the cure of the euils particularly, if the euill be engendred of grosse and clammie humours, you must cure it by extenuating and cleansing medicines. If it come of swelling like a botch, you must cure it by extenuating & drying medicines. Against grosse and viscous humours, those medicines be good, which do extenuate and scoure without heate vehement; for grosse and viscous humours do waxe more tough & clammy, as well with vehement heat, as they do with cold;

so that afterward they can scarce be deuied and pluckt away. Therefore *Oximeli squilliticum* or *squilla* roasted and braied with hony is especially to be ministred vnto them. Also sirupes of liquorice, horehound, and hysope. Also the decoction reherfed in the last chapter before is good for purging. If necessity require, before al things cut the middle veine in the arme, or the inner veine, & draw out so much blood as strength will suffer. But if the body be not full, (the humor being preparate to purging by the premiffes) you must minister often stronger medicines, which may driue out the grosse & clammy humors. Therefore pilles of Agaricke, and *pilula cochie*, also *Diaturbith* with rewbarbe, *antidotum indi*, and *diaphenicon* are good for this purpose. Also minister the infusion of Agaricke described before in the last chapter. Also the bellie must be washed with strong clisters. Also he must vomit now and then, by taking of radish and other things which prouoke vomite, of the which we haue spoken in the first booke of Melancholiousnes. But in the meane season while purgations be ministred, you must minister medicines which can dissolue and extenuate humours contained in the breast by little & little, & he must take *Aristolochia rotunda*, the rootes of *Enula* and Ireos, nettle seed, hysope, *Nigella*, calamint & such like, wherewith you may make decoctions or loches. For which purpose also those *Ecligmata*, which are reherfed in the chapter of the cough, are good. Also *Trochisci Bucci albi* be most excellēt. Outwardly you must lay to the breast plaisters made of figges, barley meale, or rather meale of fitches, hauing rozin, hony, and waxe commixed with it. Also apply to the breast, of Ireos, dill, rew, and such like, as is this: R. oiles of dill & rew. ana. ʒ. ss. the greafe of hennes & duckes, ana. ʒ. ij. the rootes of Ireos, *Enula*, and *Draconij maioris*. ana. ʒ. j. leede of flaxe ʒ. ij. Storax. ʒ. ij. waxe as much as is sufficient, make an oyntment. But the breast must first of all be rubbed with a rough linnen cloth, that (the pores being opened and vnlocked) the strength of the medicine may more readily pierce to the bottome. Also you must vse those medicines which can exulcerate the skinne, and can drawe out matter and waterie humours, as those be which are named *rubefacientia*. For this purpose the breast must be rubbed with nettles, braied or beaten. The places that are blistered are to be cured with warme oile. But in an inueterate euil, and where all medicines are ministred in vaine, we must flie to burning, as *Aetius* teacheth in lib. 8. cap. 57. how it should be done. For the cure of that which is like a botch, which hath need of medicines to attenuate and drie (as is saied before) you must note that it is cured with Aromaticke things, because they do extenuate, drie, and heate. Therefore then you must giue vnto the Asthmaticks specially Antidotes compounded of these things, as is, *Theriaca*, *Mithridatū*, *Antidotū emoscha dulce*, *Diamber*, *Aromaticum roseum*, *Diamargariton callidum*, and many such other like.

Clist. r.

Pnguentum.

Rubefacientia

Cure of Abscessus.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Plurisie.

DE PLEVRITIDE.

PLEVRISIE, to speake exquisitely & properly, is an inward inflammation of the vpper skinne, girding the ribbes and the sides. In Latine it is called *lateralis dolor*. Neither is it rashly added, to speake exquisitely and properly.

Cause.

for through many torments, and through meats grosse and flegmaticke, there do engender humours that be cold, crude, grosse, and viscous in the bodie, which oftentimes do place themselves by & by in the void place of the breast, or in the lungs it selfe; and by reason of their multitude, they stretch out the vpper skin, girding the sides within, and cause paine: but of this we will speake nothing, because the cure of it doth differ little from the cure of *asthma*, rehearsed in the last chap. The plurisie which is an inflammation of the vpper skin,

Signa.

which girdeth the sides within, is caused of abundance of hot blood, flowing vnnaturally to the afore sayd vpper skinne within. The signes hereof are difficultie of breathing, the cough, a continuall feuer, vehement pricking paine, a hard pulse, and sharpe like a saw. And if his spittle be redde and bloodie, it signifieth blood to haue dominion: if it be yellow and subpale, choller hath the masterie: if it be white and froathie, fleume ruleth: if it be blackish, it berokeneth blacke choller to haue the masterie, or melancholie. The first two dayes

Primum ratio.

the sicke must be content with the iuyce of prisan, for his meate. Afterward make him almond milke with the decoction of prisan, or the crummes of fine bread mixed with the broth of a chicken or cocke, specially if the patient be weak. He must vniuersally eschue all things that be sharpe and restrictive. Let his drink be water wherein cinamon is sodden, and let the patient eschue cold water as a pernicious thing, because it maketh the spittle grosse & thicke.

Curatio.

Also let him eschue wine altogether. Let him lie vpon the side that is grieved. Let him auoide wrath, sorrow, and other perturbations of the minde. In the beginning of the cure, the Physitian must diligently consider, whether the bodie of the sicke be grieved with abundance of humours or no: so that he must knowe at the first, whether the paine doth mitigate and dissolue with heating medicines, and when it doth not. For if the bodie be not full of humours, then in the beginning of the plurisie and inflammation, the paine must be mitigated and discuffed with fomentes and medicines that do heate. But if the bodie do abound with euill humors, or be full of blood, you may not beginne the cure with those things that do heate, for they moue fluxe of humors to the aggrieved place: for the place to the which things that doe heate are layed, draweth more to it then it sendeth out by vapours againe. Therefore

Præsentatio.

then you must not vse hote fomentes which cannot dissolue the paine, but all the bodie must be emptied by blood letting, and you must cutte the inner veine of the arme, which they call the liuer veine, or the splene veine, on that arme which is right against the griefe on the same side. For blood letting on the same side, doth not onely drawe blood away from the aggrieved parte, but also it purgeth it quickly, which is greatly requisite in the pleurisie, and in other inward inflammations. After blood letting, if the wombe do not cast out the excrementes of it selfe, as it ought to do, then cast into the belly this easie clister. R^x. mallowes, leaues of purple violets, mercurie, spinage, of both the garden endiuies. ana. *M. j.* whole barley. *℥. j.* seeth these in iust quantitie of water, vntill the third parte be consumed: then take of the iuyce of that decoction. *℔. j.* of *castia fistula* newly drawn. *℥. j.* of the oyles of cammomill and violets. ana. *℥. j.* fresh butter. *℥. ss.* common salt *℥. j.* and commixe them all, to make a clister. After the bodie is emptied, you must

Clister.

apply

apply outwardly fomentes that do heate and mitigate paine, such as *sacculi*, which are made of the floures of cammomill, dill, melilote, *rapsus barbatus*, seed of flaxe, fenugreeke, *milium*, and bran mixed together, the decoctions of the herbes aforesaid being put into bladders, or some other deuises. Also you may well apply a great soft sponge, being dipt in the aforesaid decoctions, & applied to the griefe warm. You must couer the fomentes with clothes, least their strength do vanish away quickly. Also take an apple, take out the core of it, & fill the hole with *olibanum*, and roste it till it be soft, then take off the skinne of the apple, and mix the soft of the apple and the *olibanum* together, and let the patient make boles of it, & swallow it all at once, which doth remoue the pain very much. This plaister also is good for this purpose. *Rx.* flours of cammomill, *rapsus barbatus*, and dil. ana. M. ss. linefeed, fenugreeke ana. ʒ. iij. annise seede, ʒ. j. barley meale. M. ss. bray them and put them in water, till they be as thick as hony, after put to oiles of dill and cammomill ana. ʒ. i. ss. boile them againe and addeto it the yolkes of two egges, of saffron ʒ. j. and make an emplaster. After the seventh day, if the paine do continue still after, once more faste a cupping glasse to the side, and scarifie the skinne, for a manifest commodity doth enlue to the that haue the pleurisie, by applying of cupping glasses. The cuts of the scarified places must be strewed with salt, if the patient can abide it, if not, lay vpon it a linnen cloth dipped in oyle, and sprinkled with salt. The next day after the scarifying is done, it is good to fasten on a cupping glasse again, that the matterly blood may be drawne out of the litle wounds. This second extraction is better then the first, for at the second time the blood is not drawn away, but the matter. Also the Phisition may not neglect to minister to the sicke such medicins as are good to make the steame come vp easily, as is, *diapenidion*, *diaragacanthi*, couserues of violets, *Trochisci pectorales*, putting to the other loches rehearsed before in the chap. of the cough. Outwardly you must apply medicines that haue vertue to discusse, as is, fenugreeke, dill, melilote, hysope and such like. And if there do appeare tokens that will rot, & turn into matter, you must further it with this or the like ointment. *Rx.* oiles of cammomill, of sweet almonds, and of lillies ana. ʒ. iij. butter without salt, hens grease, ana. ʒ. ij. the muscilage of fenugreeke, linefeed, and the rootes of *Althea* ana. ʒ. j. waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. The borch being broke, you must minister those things that do cleanse and purifie matter and fith, as is, *aquamellis*, or decoction of barley, or sugar roset. The filth being cleansed, you may minister glutinatie medicins, which shal be sufficiently declared in the chapter of the Priske after ward.

Emplastrum.

Concurbilis.

Vnguentum.

CHAP. IX.

Of the inflammation of the lungs.

DE PERIPNEUMONIA.

Peripneumonia is an inflammation of the lungs with a sharpe feuer. This disease for the most part is caused of strong distillations falling to the Cause. lungs, or else of the squinancy, or the *Asphma*, or the pleurisie, or of other diseases. Also sometime onely inflammation is the cause of this disease. They which haue this cuill, haue difficult breathing, the lungs lying vpon the Signa.

heart doth bring choking, they haue a sharpe and burning feuer, and also fullnesse and stretching out of the breast without paine. But if the skins which be ioyned all the length of the brest within be inflammed, then they feeble paine at the breast. All the face, and the aggrieued place looke red, the nose is crooked in the top, the veines of the temples do beare, the eyes do swell, the tong is dry, the appetite is lost, the breath is hot, they couet cold water, and rather cold aire, they haue a dry cough, it is froathy and cholericke, or bloudy and red, which be the worst tokens. If the sicke shall die, he shall watch much, and haue fearefull short sleepes, the hands and feet shall be cold, the nailes shalbe crooked and swart, & he shal die the fourth or the seuenth day at the furthest. But if the sicke shal recover, there will follow bleeding abundantly, or perturbation of the wombe, by passing forth of many cholericke & froathy humors: and sometime the inflammation is changed into matter, and the matter being filthy is driuen out either with egestion or with the vrine, and the sick is deliuered from all the griefe by and by. And if it do flow into the lungs and that abundantly, or do choke him, then it is changed into a Peisicke. For their diet you must minister to them souplings made of the iuice of Peisan, mixed with hony, origan, or hysope. They haue more neede of extenuatiue meates then those that haue the pleurisie. Also *alica*, or *aqua mulsca* is good for the. Let them drink lile, for moistnes hurteth the lungs. You may minister for preferuing of strength (specially if choking constraineth you) *mulsca* alone; and with pine nuts, for *mulsca* wherein hysope is sodden, the powder of dry Ireos, mixed with *aqua mulsca* is good. Generally the diet of those that haue *Peripneumonia* must in a manner be the same, which the pleurisie should haue, specially if they begin to recover. For the cure, you must eschue letting of blood in such as haue falle to this quill out of other diseases, especially if they haue bene long in this case, or if they were let blood before. You must mollifie the belly with clisters, if he be costue, or apply cupping glasses to the breast & sides, if nothing do let it, and that great boxings and many, the skin being cut and scarified. But if the *peripneumonia* began first without any other disease going before, the let him blood if strength and other things wil suffer it; you must cut the inner veine of the arme, and if strength will suffer it, draw blood on both the armes, and first but a litle, in no case vntil his heart faile, so that some strength may be kept for the bloodletting of the next arme. But if any thing doth forbid bloodletting, you may fasten cupping glasses to the whole brest, and the sides: and you must get out as much blood as strength in the wil suffer. Also it is good to mollifie the belly with sharp clisters, made of the decoctions of hysope, Ireos and rew, putting to it the pulpe of *Coloquintida*, *Salgemme*, & other things necessary for such clisters. After this you must labour and see, that the breast and the lungs be purged by much spitting, which must be made swift and easie. For the which purpose you must vse those Ecligmacs, ointments, and emplasters, which are declared before in the chapter against the pleurisy, excepting that in this case you must minister the most strong things, and those that haue much strength and vertue in extenuating. Therefore you must minister both *Esclagloch* & *putmone*, *ulpis*, the decoction of the roote of Ireos and *Enilia*. And you must make a cerote of oile of rew & *nardin*, putting to it the marrow of a hart, of Ireos, hysope,

Pleuris: ratio.

Curatio.

Pneumoniae sectio.

hysope, and horehound beaten very fine, and commixed with Venice turpentine, and lay it all over the breast, and the sides.

CHAP. X.

Of spitting of blood.

DE SANGVINIS REIECTIONE.

Spitting of blood is caused many times of an outward manifest cause, as of *Cause.*
falling from a high place, or a stroke given to one outwardly, or with vehement striking, or leaping, or if any heavy things haue fallen vpon the breast, *Externe.*
either else with great crying, or immoderate cold: for cold (as Hippocrates witnesseth) breaketh veins. Also spitting of blood may be caused through heate. Also sometime spitting of blood is caused of inward and secret causes, as fullnesse and abundance of naughty blood, gnawing a sunder the veins, and bursting open the heads of them. The gnawing a sunder of those veins is caused of sharpe humors, either falling from the head to the lungs, or else engendred in the lungs it selfe. Moreover the blood that is spit out, sometime cometh from the breast and the lungs, or from the *Trachea arteria*, and sometime from other places of the mouth, or gummies, or the iawes, or from the stomake, vnto the which doth fall blood out of the veins and members adioyning, that is to say, from the liuer and the spleene. The outward causes are knownen thus: if the spitting of blood be caused of abundance of blood, then the blood cometh out gushing all at once, & after it is out, the sicke is better & lighter. But if it be caused through bursting of the mouths of the veins, then hote perturbations haue gone before it, as though the patient had vsed many hote baths, & had dwelt in a hot region, vsing hot diet in a hote season. If spitting of blood be caused through gnawing and eating a sunder the veins, then the blood is not spitted forth all on a heape, but by litle and litle with the cough; and they are alwayes worse. Also if the blood which is spitted, be frothy and palish, and cometh forth now and then with the cough without any paine, it is a sure token, that the blood cometh out of the lungs. If flegmatike blood be spitted out with easie coughings & reaching, then the blood cometh from the *Trachea arteria*. If blood be spitted forth being blacke & clodded together, hauing also the cough and paine in the aggrieved place, then it is a token that it cometh from the breast. For the diet, let him vse meates which haue a moderate adstrictio, as be rice, hulled wheate called *Alica*, & such other like, mixing with them the iuices of pomegranates or peares. For first let him eate wild doues, turtles, & partridges, if they be boiled with veruice, or iuice of foure grapes, or with Sumach. Also he must vse quinces, peares, restrictiue apples, medlers, and mulberries, and such like rehearsed before in the chapter against bleeding at the nose. He must drinke thicke redde wine, or in stead of it, water wherein Steele is quenched. He must eschue great noises, often speaking, all mouing of the body, and anger. As for the cure, it differeth according to the diuersity of *Curatio.*
causes: for if the blood come out of the head, it needeth but a simple and easie cure: for restrictiue things applied cold to the palat of the mouth by collations & gargarises do performe the cure. What things they be, you may seeke in the beginning of this second booke, the first chap. But if there do flow much

Pene festio.

blood from the head, then you must let him blood on some veine. Those which spit blood through distillation, you must by and by in the beginning let them blood on some veine, vntlesse a sharpe humour doth distill vehemently. Also afterward minister a sharpe clister, and emptie the wombe. Also rub the hands, the armes, and the legs very much with a medicine that will heat and extenuate, and bind the outward parts. After that, if the disease endure longer, shae the head, and apply thereto a medicine which hath vertue to dry and discusse, as is that which is made of the dung of wild doues, and after three houres space, bring them into a bath, so that the head be annointed with no fat thing. Afterward couer them meanly, and nourish them with sowe soupings. When they go to sleepe, minister to them *Theriaca*. The next day all the whole bodie (the head being excepted onely) being rubbed, keepe him in quiet, and againe at night minister to him *Theriaca*. And if through these the distillation be not stopped, then the third day in the morning minister a litle honie sodden, and rub all the body, and suffer him to rest. The fourth day, after the taking of the *Theriaca*, minister againe much hony, and lay to the head a medicine of doues

Concurbitula.

dung. And if the euill do endure longer, fasten a cupping glasse to the hinder part of the head. Last of all minister those things which are able to purge the humours that are flowen into the lungs. But if it be a verie sharpe humour which distilleth out of the head, you must beware of blood letting, & you must rather vse purgations, and you must vse the nourishments and remedies hereafter declared; and also before in the chapter against distillations. They which do spit blood comming from the lungs, by reason of breaking of some veines in it, or by bursting open of their heads, those you must first of all charge, that they do not breath much and make a noise, and that they speake but litle, and in a manner not at all. Let them sit in open aire hauing a stedfast bed, and of a good height. For such you must by and by cut the inner veine of the arme: and you must draw blood twise or thrise a litle at once, for such haue no neede of

Cure of Spitting of blood from the lungs.

much blood letting. Also for the same purpose, that is to say, that the blood may be drawn another way, you must rubbe the extremities, and vse to bind them hard with broad linnen clothes. These so done, you must minister to him a drinke made of vineger and water infused and warmed, and let him drinke it, so that if any clod of blood do cleaue on the flesh, it may (being thereby dissolved) be cast out, neither doth any thing let, but that you may minister this potion twise or thrise in three houres. After those you may minister both within the bodie and without, medicines which be restrictive, and haue power to stop the pores. For things taken inwardly, it profiteth to eate purslaine, albeit that his iuyce drunken is of more effect, the iuyce of knotgrasse, sharpe grapes, decoction of sumach, gals, the shels of acornes, the roote of bramble, *balauftia*, seed of sorrell, the rootes of horsetaile and such like, which are declared in the chapter against bleeding at the nose. But these are better & of more effect, then the aforesayd things, that is to say, *terra lemnia* beaten into verie fine powder, and ministred with the iuyce of pomegranates, or of knotgrasse, or *lapis hematitis* at once. *℞.* in the like iuyce. Among compounides you must vse this *lehoch*. *℞.* of old conferue of roses, of *ruberibes*. ana. *℥.* of *diatragacanthum frigidum*, and *diacatoneon simplex*. ana. *℥.* of the powders of corall, *lapis hematitis*

*Potio.**Amplastica.**Religms.*

Matia and *terra lemmia*. ana $\mathfrak{D}$ ij. hole armoniack. $\mathfrak{Z}$.j. dragons blood. $\mathfrak{Z}$. $\mathfrak{ss}$. pomgranate floures. $\mathfrak{Z}$.j. frankensence, the roote of *consolida maior*. ana. $\mathfrak{Z}$.j. $\mathfrak{ss}$. sirupe of mirtels, as much as is sufficient to commixe them, and make an *Eclogma*. Afterward you must sprinkle the breast outwardly with restrictiue wine, and the oyles of roses, quinces, and mirtels. But if there be much eruption of blood (especially being sommer) and the spitting thereof comming without a cough, and the sicke nor being weake, but strong and fleshie; then you may take vinegar for wine, & apply it to with sponges. It is good to put to the aforesaid oiles, bolearmoniacke, *terra lemmia*, corall, and such like, and to make an ointment thereof with waxe. Also applie thereunto a soft plaister made of dat. $\mathfrak{ss}$. *acatia*, the roote of *consolida maior*, the barks of pomgranats, and the meale of lintels. Also a cerote made of the meat of pomegranats, frankensence, red corall, *ba. laustia*, bolearmoniacke, *terra lemmia*, & such like is good of effect. But you must specially take heed, that by and by after the rupture of the vessels, it may grow together againe, before it take inflammation: for if there come inflammation before it be growen together, there is but litle hope of the conglutination of the wombe, for it keepeth it stretched out many dayes, and you must wash away aswell the matter, as the waterie blood out of the vlcet, after that the inflammation is gone. But here the reader must be admonished, that he take heed that he do not applie outwardly against that place where the blood runneth out, neither restrictiue things, nor cold things without restriction: vnlesse the matter be first turned another way, and drawn from that place; for else it would driue the blood inward, and stop the veins full that be within. Therefore first alwayes you must draw the blood to the contrarie part, & after that applie restrictiue things outwardly. Those which spit blood through erosion & gnawing of sharpe humours, you must first of all minister those things vnto them which haue vertue to purge sharpe humours distilling into the lungs, such as be spoken of before in the chap. of distillation. After that, minister those things which can alter and make thicke the thinne and sharpe humours, and so haue vertue to stop the distillation, as is, sirupe of violets, roses, mirtels, hidromalon, *diacotomeorum*, and such like. For the same purpose sometime minister sirupes of poppie and other somneriferous medicines. The distillation being ceased, you must restore the gnawen parts with meates of good iuyce, and with medicines that do ingender flesh. Moreouer they which vomit blood must vse the same diet and cure which is before rehearsed, that is, if the blood flow from the liuer, cut the veine on the arme: but if the blood be caried from the splene into the belly, cut the veine on the left hand, which is betweene the litle finger and the ring finger, and minister to them restrictiue meates and drinckes, adding this to the cure, that they do not take meate and drinke often: for they may easily be cured, if the remedies which be receiued in, be applied to those parts that shed blood. And for blood congealed in the stomacke like a hillocke, let him drinke creame, and especially of a hart, or let it be auoyded with sauory mixed with vinegar or with *aloes*. Those which spit blood from the palate of their mouth, they must gargarise with restrictiue things, and applie to the forehead, and to the head those things which are applied vnto the nose when it bleedeth. Furthermore to conclude, after that all things be done, and that the

Note.

Cure of spitting of blood caused of sharpe humours

Cure of vomiting blood.

fluxe of bloud is stopped, then the strength must be cherished and restored againe: and specially he must beware of the often vsing of bathes, of drincking of wine, of wrath, of Venus.

CHAP. XI.

Of spitting of matter.

DE EMPIEMATE.

Causa.

Signa.

vicius ratio.

Curatio.

EMPIEMA in Greeke, significth a mattery spitting: In latin it is called *Suppuratio*. It is caused whe an impostume or botch (being in the vpper skinne of them which girdeth the ribs inwardly, or else in some other vpper skinne of the brest) is broken all at once, & shed and powred into the empty place of the brest, which is betweene the lungs & the vpper skin that girdeth in the ribs. It is caused somtime through bursting out of bloud (an vicer not being brought to his scar, and perfect shutting vp.) Also sometime through fluxe of the head, and other vpper parts falling thither, which is wont often to change into the squancy. The signes be these, heauinesse is felt in the bottome of the brest, a strong cough and a dry without paine, and also sometime with moistnesse, for the which they seem to be eased. In the beginning there chanceth to them feauers, faint, inordinate and hard to be iudged. When the impostume draweth neare to a rupture, then they haue a feauer more vehement with quaking, and they are troubled in their speech. Being broken, there appeareth somewhat to flow into the brests bottome, according to the often chaunging of their lying, and specially when they change lying from one side to another, then surely the multitude of matter is euident, and oftentimes a certain noise of the flowing may perfectly be heard when they turne them. Also the matter that commeth out is sometimes cleare, sometime thicke and dreggy. Some impostumes do burst out vpward, that is, vnto the voide place of the brest, & these be most perillous. Some impostumes do flow out downward vnto the paunch, and the bowels, and also the bladder. They alwayes labour of the feuer ethicke, vntill all things be brought out vpward. Those that be vexed with this disease of spitting of matter, let them remaine in a dry aire, let them vse meates of good iuice easie to digest, brothes of cockes, the flesh of hens, chickens, birds of mountains. Also vse decoctions and brothes of cicers with herbs (as is) hisope, and parcely. Let his drinke be *aqua mulsa*, and thin white wine. For the cure in this disease, except diligent speede be made by and by, the gathering together of matter causeth the puficke, the lungs drawing vlceration. Therefore first you must helpe the concoction of the impostume with fomentes by sponges or bladders, with cataplasmes or emplasters, made of the meales of barley, fenugreeke, and line seeds, of figs, doves dung, mallowes, *Alibea*, and a litle rosia. Also you must apply to it cerots, made of butter, reos, laurell berries, rew and other things, which can ripe and dissolve the impostume, whereof thou shalt find many in the chapter of *Asthma* before: and if the euill be not dissolued, you must apply to it, things that will breake the botch. The breaking of the botch is procured by lying on the whole side, eating of salt meates, and these pills giuen vnto him when he intendeth to sleepe. R. of the powder of *Hierapicra Galeni*. ℥j. of the pulpe of *Coloquintida*. ℥j. with the iuice of worm-wood

wood as much as is sufficient to commixe them, and make pilles, whereof let him hold one at once in his mouth. By this meanes it shall come to passe, that the sicke shall couer to spit often, & so by outermuch spitting the impostume may breake. The rupture being made, you must take diligent heed, whether the matter runneth, and you must helpe his auoiding, for if it creepe into the belly, you must minister most of all mollifications. If it fall to the bladder, you must minister most those things which prouoke vrine. If the matter commeth out by a cough, then nothing is more meet to be ministred then pusan, mixed with good hony. Also absteriue & scouring things do profite, which are partly declared in the chapter against the pleurisie, and part of them shal be spoken of in the next chapter. But you may commodiously cōmixe with their meat, those things which prouoke vrine, howsoeuer the matter intendeth to flowe. As for the purging & driuing out of the matter, *aqua mulsa* decoct with iroes & much licorice is maruellous profitable. Moreover the decoction of hysope, iroes, horehound and such like is good, whereof you may seeke more in the chapter of *Asthma*. The rest that seemeth to be necessary for the cure of this disease shall be spoken of in the next chapter.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Ptesicke.

DE TABE.

PTESIS in Greeke, *Tabes* in Latine, it is properly an exulceration of the lungs till there followeth spitting of bloud withal. It is caused for the most part through a sharpe and gnawing humour, flowing from the head into the lungs. Also it is caused through the bloud & matter that remaineth, after the bursting out of it in the that haue the pleurisie, the *Perepneumonia*, or *Empiema*. They which labour of this disease, they are knowne by wasting the whole body and the flesh. Also their nostrils be sharpe, their temples be slidden down, their eies be hollow, and their shoulders stick out like birds wings. Moreover they cough, and be vexed with the feuer Ethicke, they breath difficultly, their cheeke bals waxe swart, their nailes do crooke and seeme pale. Also the euill ouercomming, the belly is troubled, and thirst doth vex them more, their haire doth shedde, and that which they do spitte out, is of a vehement stinking sauer. As for vlcers of the lungs, they are very hard to be cured, because they cannot be purged and clenfed without the cough, and in them that cough, the vlcir is broken, & so the euill returneth as it were by a certaine circuit. Also the lungs among the other inward members, because of respiration and breathing, are alway in mouing, and also are rent with coughing. But the vlcers, which are to be healed, would require quiet and rest. Moreover the strength of medicins cannot come to the vlcers, before it be altered in the stomacke, in the body, and in the liuer. Neuer thelesse although the causes before rehearsed, make the cure to seeme hard, yet we may go about to cure that vlciration. Therefore in the beginning you must ascribe to those that be ptesicke, a conuenient diet after this sort. Let them dwell in a drie aire temperate between heat & coldnes, let their meat be prisian, almond milk, rene eggs, flesh of the birdes of mountaines, of partrich, of phesants, of owls, of blacke birds,

*Causa.**Signa.*

Looke Hippo-
crates in his
aphorisme. 5.
the 14. of the
13. of the 11.
The causes
why the cure
is hard.
Fictus ratio.

of hennes, of capons, of calues, of sucking kiddes. Also scaly fishes in stony waters, crabs of the fresh riuer. But among all meates, milke is best for them that be ptisicke, specially womā's milke, after that asses milke, & goats milke, which would be sucked out of the dugges, if it might be, or let it be drunke by and by after the milking of it while it is hote. But you must beware, that they take no meate by and by after their milke, and specially no wine, for then it would be corrupted with it in the stomake. But if they be very much feuerous, specially of a rotten feuer, then it is not good to take milke. Among fruits, it is good to eate raisins, sweet almonds, pine nutres, figges, dates, pistax. Let them eschue exercises and mouings that be vehement. It is not vnprofitable to walke easily before meate: and after meate they must altogether rest: let them vlc to sleepe on nights meanly: let them eschue wrath and sadnesse, vnmeasurable watchings, hunger, thirst, lecherie, hot houses, and whatsoeuer may empty the body. Let his drinke be but smal and thin, or if his feuer be vehement, let him drinke water wherein a litle Cinamon hath bene sodden, or the drinke that is called *Hippocras*, whose making is declared in the first booke, in the chapter against the palsey. If the euill be caused through the flowing of a sharpe humor out of the head, you must begin the cure by remouing of the distillation, which we haue taught before in his proper chapter. Therefore now we will shew the exulceration of the lungs, how it is to be cured. And first for the cure thereof, we must minister those things which haue an abstersiue and scouring vertue, and that which will cause that the matter may easily be brought vpward: for the which purpose *Hydromel* is specially good, & also decoction of barley with sugar and hony, also decoction of ireos, figges, maiden haire, hisope, horehound and licorice. If there come a feuer, you may comix with the aforesaid things, the foure great cold seedes. Outwardly you must apply emplasters, and cataplasmes, made of linefeed, fenugreece, & such like declared in the last chapter de *Empiement*. Also for the same purpose you may seeke many remedies in the chap. against the *Asthma*. The lungs being cleansed and purged from matter, you must minister those medicines which will glutinate and heale vp the vicer. For this purpose conserue of roses is commended almost of all Physitions, for this hath not only the vertue to glutinate, but also to cleanse & scour, but the newer it is, the more it scoureth, & the older it is, the more it glutinates. Also these are marvellous good, bole armoniacke, dragons blood, amber, corall, purslaine seede, & such like which haue vertue to scour and ioine together. Also these things are good, *loch de pulmone vulpis*, *loch è pino*, conserues of *consolida maior*, and maidenhaire. Therefore of these you must make this compound medicin. R. conserues of *consolida maior*, and of maiden haire. ana. ʒ. ss. conserues of roses. ʒ. i. *loch è pulmone vulpis*, ʒ. j. ss. *loch è pino*. ʒ. ii. powder of *diatrachacanthi frigidum*. ʒ. iij. bole armoniack. ʒ. j. ss. sirupe of poppy as much as will suffice to commix it, & make a loch. Also this powder daily ministred causeth much ease. R. of the seeds of white poppy. ʒ. ss. gumme arabicke, *amylum* and gumme tragacant. ana. ʒ. j. ss. seedes of cucumbers, citrons, gourdes, melons, quinces. ana. ʒ. iij. burnt luo ry, iuice of licorice. ana. ʒ. j. ss. *penidies*, as much in weight as all the rest, and make a powder of the which minister daily every morning. ʒ. ij. with sirupe of poppy or roses. At that time also, that the vicer

Curaatio.

Religiosa.

Pulvis.

is closed, you must annoint the breast without, with oile of quinces, mirtles or roses, adding thereto sometime sumach, *Hypocisthidos*, pomgranate rinds, *acacia*, galls, and such like. In the end the bodie being extenuate and wasted, it is good to restore with a convenient diet, vsing all those meats which be of good Morali refa-
auyce, easie to digest, and nourish much; at which time also you may minister clory.
this medicine. R. of the pulpe of a capon. ℞. j. cockes stone, pine nuts, pistax, sweete almonds. ana. ℥. ℞. of the powder of the *Antidoti de gemmis*. ℥. ℞. powder of *Diarrhodon abbas*, *dianthon*, & *aromaticum rosarum*. ana. ℥. j. white sanders and cinamon. ana. ℥. ℞. maces. ℥. j. white sugar of the finest. ℔. j. dissolve the sugar in water of buglosse, and roses, and make lozenges, or an electuarie, of the which minister euery day.

CHAP. XIII.

Of panting of the heart.

DE CORDIS PALPITATIONE.

Palpitatione & tremor cordis in Latine, is in English panting and trembling of the heart; it is a corrupt motion of the hart, or a stretching out of it against nature. The new sort of Phisitions do wrongfully call it *Cardiaca*. It is caused of *Causa*,
all such things as do trouble and affect the hart aboue nature; as is, euery distempure, or the multitude of an humour, contained in the outward skin that goeth about the hart; or else of swelling contrarie to nature, and such like. The disease is easily knowne by the words of the patient, who doth easily feele the beating and panting. And also you may know it by the pulse: for in a hot distempure there commeth a feuer, & the pulse is swift & great; in a cold distempure the contrary. If plentie of an humor contained in the vpper skin of the hart do cause beating thereof, then the pulse is soft and feeble. The diet must be ordained diuersely, according to the diuersitie of causes: for in a hot distempure of the hart, the aire ought to be meanely cold, but in a cold distempure it ought to be meanly warme. But vniuersally whatsoever the cause be, you must eschue *Signa*,
any thing that doth trouble or resolute the vitall spirits; as be, ouermuch heat, anger, hunger, watching, lecherie, vniuersally cold, meate of euilliuycce. If abundance of any humour contained in the vpper skin that goeth about the hart, do engender panting of the heart, let their whole diet be extenuatiue; let their drinke in a hote distempure be thinne and small, or a iulep of violets or roses, or decoction of buglosse. In a colde distempure they may drinke pure wine, or other strong drinke. Those that be vexed with beating of the hart *Cure of pāzing*
caused of hot distemper, they must haue remedie by cold medicins, which can of the heart
correct the hot distempure, and adde strength to the heart, as these be among caused by hote
simples; roses, violets, floures of water lillies, saunders, corall, camphire, and distemper.
such like. Among compounds be these, *Diamargariton frigidum*, *diarrhodon abbas*, conferues of roses, of violets, of buglosse, and their plants, iuices and sirupes. Therefore of the aforesaid things there may be made potions, electuaries, and lozenges as you thinke good. Outwardly appoint ointments and emplasters, *Unguentum*,
specially epithemes *saculi*, and other like, whatsoever is able to alter the hot distempure of the liuer. And first among ointments this is good. R. the oyles of roses, violets, and *nimphaea*. ana. ℥. ij. of redde corall, and redde saunders, and

Epithema.

red roses, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. camphire, gr. ij. white wax as much as is sufficient, & make an ointment, wherwith annoint the region of the heart & the back bone. Among epithemes, let this especially be laid to the hart. $\mathcal{R}$. the waters of roses, sorrell, & buglosse, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. water of balme. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. powder of the cordiall medicine. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. red sanders, red corall, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . purcelaine, gr. iij. saffron, gr. iij. commixe all together and make an epitheme. Also among the sorts of drie bags this is best. $\mathcal{R}$. floures of buglosse, violers, red roses, ana. $\mathcal{M}$. β . all the saunders, of ech $\mathfrak{z}$. j. red corall & white, of each $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . of pearles. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. being first powdered, put them

Sacculus.

Cure of distemper of the hart caused through cold, making it to beat & pant. Vnguentum.

But those that be aggrieved with a colde distemper of the heart, to such among simple medicines these be profitable, that is, amber, muske, saffron, wood of aloes, storax, cloues, maces, zedoarie, baulme, and such like. Among compounds these are good, the electuary *plivis arboticon*, *diamber*, *diant hos*, *aromaticum rosarum*, and such like, of the which may be made kinds of medicines, like as we did against hote distemper of the heart. For ointments may be made after this sort; $\mathcal{R}$. the oiles of lillies, of spike, and of saffron, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. β . *gallia moschata*, cloues, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. wood of aloes. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . maces. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. saffron. gr. iij. waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Also you

Epithema.

may make this epitheme thus; $\mathcal{R}$. waters of balme, marioram, buglosse, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. powders of the electuaries, *diamber* and *diamosche*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . maces, wood of aloes, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. amber, gr. j. of the best wine. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. commixe them together, and make an epitheme. An example of *Sacculus* is thus. $\mathcal{R}$. floures of balme, & buglosse, ana. $\mathcal{M}$. j. β . chosen cinamon, cloues, maces, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. wood of aloes. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. barke of the citrine apple. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . saffron. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. amber, gr. j. bray all together, and make a *Sacculus* of silke to lay to the heart. And if there be panting of the

Cure of paiting of the heart, caused of an humor.

heart ingendred through some humor contained in the vpper skin that compasseth the heart, it must be cured (as *Galen* witnesseth) with a diet which will extenuate, & by cutting of a veine in the arme. Therefore you must cut the inner veine of the arme, or the middle veine. And afterward one must minister and apply as well inwardly as outwardly, medicines that haue vertue to extenuate & strengthen the hart, by applying of ointments, and epithemes, and *Sacculi*, and such like. Of the which things to make priuat examples, we think it in vaine, seeing it is easie to any man by examples now declared here, and in other places, to make medicines for this purpose, of whatsoeuer sort he will.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Sounding.

DE SINCOPE.

Cause.

Sincope is a swift falling of the strength (as *Galen* saith) it is caused through much excretion & auoiding of bloud, or through vnmeasurable emptying of the belly, or vehement mouing, or through great paine, or much and often washings. Also through abundant sweates, and all other immoderate vacuations: also feare, dread, and all such like perturbations of the mind. Moreouer through abounding of crude and raw humours, through great inflammation, or through vicious and thinne humours, or else by taking breath in a stinking ayer. The *Sincope* is knowne by these tokens, the pulse is rare and obscure, the extreme parts, as the hands and feete be cold, sweat about the face, the taking away

Signa.

away of the brightnes of the skin that is in it, & as it were a palfey of the whole body. Moreouer to these three commeth desperation, vexation of the mind, and shaking of the bodie. And moreouer there chaunceth sometime with the sownding of the heart, a vice, that is, when the heart is vehemently distempred. Also sometime it chaunceth to the stomake, that is, when humours abound, or heaped together, or crude, either else sharpe and gnawing be in it: that kind of *Sincope* is called *stomachica*. They which fall in a sownd through plenty of raw humours contained in the mouth of the stomach, in such the sides are inflate and puffed vp, and the whole body seemeth to be of a greater bignes then it should naturally be: also their color changeth whiter then it was wont to do: & to conclude, their body is like to them that haue the droply; also in many their colour waxeth swarter & blacker like lead, but the pulses of the sinewes be least of all other; moreouer they be obscure and vnequal. Those which are vexed with sownding through abundance of sharpe humours, they feele continual pulling, twitching and gnawing in the mouth of the stomacke. They which through thin vices (which do swiftly exhalate and flie vp) do suffer sownding, in them their face appeareth by and by as though it were dead, their nose is sharpe, their eyes be hollow, and such like. The other causes of *Sincope* are knowne by the talke of them that stand by without any great busynesse. It is easie to know, that the cure must be diuerse, according to the diuersitie of the causes. If sownding do inuade one through excretion and auoiding of blood, or through any other vneasurable or suddenn emptying, you must sprinkle their face with cold things, or with rose water, which hath a marvellous good effect in this case. The extreme parts of the body must be bound vehemently with bands, and must be rubbed a litle with sharpe linnen clothes. If the emptying be vpward, you must rubbe the legges: if it be downeward, rubbe and bind the hands. Also cupping glasses are to be fastened lightly, diuersly, according to the places where the euacuations, or where the blood bursteth out. Moreouer the mouth must be opened, by putting in your fingers, or a wedge, or some other thing; but the passage of hearing, and of the nose-thrills would be thrust together, that the aire that is breathed in, might stirre and comfort the spirits. Also it is good by and by for to comfort the spirits with sundry odoraments. For as *Hippocrates* saith in his booke *de Alimentis*, there is nothing that calleth the strength againe sooner then odours. Therefore it is good to apply to the nose of the sicke, chickens roasted & parted asunder in the midst. Also roses, violets, quinces, citrons, and such like be good. You must minister wine to him that is thinne and alayed. Let the aire of the chamber be cold, but let not the chamber be very full of light: let their counter points be taken away that lie vpon them, and let the couerings wherewith they be covered be soft, and strew the floores with leaues of mirtles, vines, okes, briars, and roses themselves, and sprinkle it with water. In vneasurable sweats annoint the sweating parts with oyle of mirtles, roses & quinces, but specially the neck, the breast, the places vnder the arme holes, & the share. For this purpose also it is good to annoint with *Amilum*, and powders of frankensence, mixed with the white of an egge, and other restrictiue medicins. Also you must hold to his nose diuerse odoraments, as roses, sanders, quinces, floures of water lillies, and

*Sincope cordis.**Sincope stomachica.**Cure of sownding through vneasurable emptying.**Stoppers of great sweats.*

*Cure of found-
ing caused
of paine.*

*Cure of found-
ing by affe-
ctions of the
mind.*

*Cure of found-
ing through
abundance of
crude humors.*

camphir, but you may not then bind the extreme parts of the body. If sounding be caused through paine, you must diligently enquire the cause: for if it come of an outward cause, the ceasing of the paine cureth the sounding. But if the paine be caused of no outward cause, you must find out some inward cause which causeth paine. If fulnesse with retching and stretching out do cause the paine, by and by, if strength will suffer it, let him bloud on the veine that is nighest to the aggrieued part, but if strength be feeble, then you must only pull it back, or you must driue it vpward, or downeward, or both wayes, or vse frictions. But whereas the paine is caused of vicious humours, you must rather purge it. If both the foresaid causes come together, then you must vse euacuations both wayes: but bloud letting must first be vsed before any of them. Afterward if the corrupt humours be fastened, and do sticke fast in some onely place, you must begin your cure with dissoluing and discussive medicines. As for curing of other paines, they may be sought in their owne proper chapters, and especially in the chapter against the cholicke. Those which do sound through great sorrow, feare, and other perturbations of the mind, they are fully cured by vsing of their contraries. Neither let passe to minister vnto them that do sound for great sorrow, odoriferous things, and other things which being taken inwardly may comfort the spirits. They which be troubled with sounding through plenty of crude humors, they may neither suffer letting of bloud nor purging: therefore you must cure such by frictions. And you must by and by in the beginning of the euill begin, & you must rub the legges first from the vpper part, and so downward with linnen clothes not very soft, but somewhat sharpe: afterward likewise the armes from the shoulders to the fingers. And when all the arteries and veines be sufficiently heat, & that ye doubt that some wearinesse will come to the senses through ouer much rubbing, you must vse oyle solutiue and loosening, as is oyle of dill, and cammonill: and you must beware especially of restrictiue things. And when you haue annointed the parts of the body, and rubbed them well, then you must come to the backe, and that you must likewise first rub with a linnen cloth, and then with oyle: from that you must go againe to the legs, and then to the armes, & so againe to the backe, and so you must do all, and that in a bright chamber without moisture, whose aire must be temperat. Moreouer *mulsa*, wherein hisope is sodden is most meet for them: and you must beware, that you minister not to them, neither meate nor brothes, nor water, nor to suffer him to drinke liberally, but onely *mulsa* the three first dayes, and to rub him by course continually, granting him onely but time to sleepe, which must be in a meane. But if their pulse be very small and feeble, or also besides that, wonderfull inequall, you may know that there is extreme perill: but yet you must do as it is taught before, and go about none other thing. But if the pulse be indifferently strong and great, and be not cut off, nor thrust together, then you must consider the state of the belly, & if it auoyd not ordure sufficiently of it selfe, you may boldly powre in somewhat beneath. For it chanceth after the taking of *aqua mulsa*, that the superfluities which are wont to be gathered in the principall veines; that is, they which be about the liuer, & the bowell which ioyneth with the midriffe vnto the backe, by that thing they are well cast out. And if a heape of superfluities do violently prouoke the bellie a-

boue

boue reason, first you must seeth your *mulsa* more higher, for so it doth make
 the belly lesse soluble, and it nourisheth more. After this, if the superfluities
 do defend more largely, the belly may not be stopped so, but you must mini-
 ster for *aqua mulsa*, the iuice of ptisan. And if they continue still to flow, nourish
 him with soupings of *alica*, taking heede to the working of the pulses in the
 meane season: for sometime they are changed to imbecilitie, or vnequalnes, or
 smalnes: at which time it is good to minister bread infused in wine, & that, if
 neither the belly nor the liuer be troubled with an impostume; for if they be
 vexed with it (the body being stuffed with crude and raw iuices) the sicke is
 desperat of all health. Therfore in such a case of the sicke, thou shewest thy self
 without blame, if thou say before that he will die, and vse no better medicines.
 But if there be at any time found abundance of clammy humors, by & by mini-
 ster *Oximel* in stead of *mulsa*. Therefore if it be sommer, and the sicke vsed to
 cold porcions, giue him the *Oximel* cold, but if it be winter minister it hore. Al-
 so these things are very euill for them, as well bathings, as also the open aire,
 as often as it is ouer hore or ouer cold. But if thou art called to them which be
 presently vexed with swowning, where the belly and the liuer be without im-
 postumation, thou shalt minister a litle bread, and that with some wine, be-
 cause it causeth swift distribution into the other parts of the body: and thou
 shalt come straight to frictions and rubbings, and thou shalt do according to
 the order before prescribed. But if it be sommer, or the region naturally hot &
 burning, or the state of the heauen vehemently hot: then let them drinke no
 wine but small ale cold. But the drinke that shalbe giuen the second and third
 time, thou shalt minister it altogether hot. For in the whole cure, where we vse
 frictions, heate is best, as a helper of the concoction of crude humours. But to
 those that haue swowning caused of choler, which troubleth the mouth of the
 stomacke, to them you must minister cold potions. But yet it is good to mini-
 ster to all that haue the *syncope*, wine that is hot by nature, yellowish in colour,
 thin in substance, cold, and that which prouoketh distribution in the body: for
 we would haue the food that is receiued, to be distributed about the body, and
 not to tarrie in the stomack. They that are vexed with swowning through vice
 of thin humours, those you must emptie by litle and litle, and continually, be-
 cause they cannot suffer much emptying at once: those also must we nourish
 by litle & litle, and often. The outward part of the skin must be thickned: and
 you must make the aire of the chamber cold and restrictiue. Also you must an-
 noint them with restrictiue medicins and ointments, and you must giue them
 meats that do not readily disperse and flow: therefore giue neither *aqua mulsa*,
 nor ptisan, but bread and soupings of *alica*, and foure frutes which will not ea-
 sily be corrupted. You shal also giue sometimes to them egges, specially their
 yolkes, for their whites be hard to digest. Moreouer the stones of cocks which
 be nourished with milke. Also swines braine, but let it either be diligently ro-
 sted, or well sodden in water with leeks and dill. To conclude, you must labour
 by all meanes, that you may make the substance of the iuices more thick, and
 thicken the skinne, and to stop the exhalations. Watery wine is necessary to
 them after meat in the beginning of sicknesse, if they haue bene vsed onely to
 wine, but if they haue not vsed themselues to wine, then ale is best for them, or

Phlegmon.

Cure of swow-
ning now pre-
sent.Cure of syncope
caused of thin
humours.

*Cure of swow-
ning through
inflammation.*

*Cure of swow-
ning through
humours in the
stomack.*

beere. And if all follow your mind, you may also after other things giue them nourishment by flesh, specially after the fourth day, (the iuices comming now to concoction.) If swowning come through vehement inflammation, the members and parts of the body are to be rubbed and nourished, and the hands & feet must be bound. You must commaund him to watch, because the blood in sleep creepeth to the inward members. You must driue them cleane fro meat and drinke. Whosoeuer hath the *sincope*, through vicious humors gnawing the mouth of the stomacke, they must be cured by prouoking of vomit: or if that take no place to moue the belly, do other things which are expounded in the chapter of paine in the stomacke. They that begin to swown in a bath, you must bring them quickly out, nor you must not moisten them with much powring in of water. They that be already in a swowne, must be caried out verie quickly, & the rest of the bodie must be couered with a light couering. Let the face be wet with a sponge dipped in cold water, or sprinkle it with rose water: also the face, the stomacke, & feet must be rubbed. Also the mouth must be opened by putting in of quilles, or ones finger. And you must go about by all meanes that the humors that cause the swowning may be vomited out, by powring in of warme water at the mouth. They that be of perfect age, pull of their haire, and the loud calling of one is profitable, but of many at once is hurtfull.

CHAP. XV.

Of lacke of milke.

DE LACTIS DEFECTV.

Cause.

Signa.

*Cure of lacke of
milke in a dry
d. Stemper.*

Little blood.

Virtus ratio.

THE want of milke, doth chance through dry distemper of the pappes, or of the whole body. Also through small quantity of good blood, or because the child is so weak, that he cannot sucke well of the paps: for looke the more that he draweth out by sucking of the, the more draweth to them againe. The tokens whereby the diuersities of causes are knowne, are euident enough by things before spokē, but yet I will rehearse the againe. A dry distemper is known by the disposition of the whole body, and by leanness & driness of the body, & pappes & such like. Small quantity of good blood is knowne by the ill state of the body, & by the euill colour of it. Also vnmeasurable euacuations coming out of the body before, (that is to say) by menstruis, by fluxes, by extreame exercises, by hunger & such like. For the cure of lacking of milk, which is caused of a dry distemper, we will teach nothing in this place, because it may easily be cured by that which is declared before in other chapters, and shall also be declared afterward in the Ch. against the feuer Ethick. Therefore here we will only treat of the cure of lack of milk, caused of the little quantity of good blood. In this cure first you must behold the blood, for either there is lesse then there ought to be, or it is worse then it should be. Therefore when there is lesse then there should be, a diet must be assigned with moist and heate meanely: for whatsoeuer doth heate more then is conuenient, either else doo dry or coole, those partly by corrupting the blood that remaineth, & partly by diminishing of it, they do forbid the milke to come. Therefore it is good to giue them pure bread, milke, veale, chickens, partridges, birds, reare eggs, fishes scaly, & raisins the stones taken out, sweet almonds, lettuce, buglosse, balme, gourdes, & such like.

like. They must drinke wine that is thinne and waterie, they must eschue immoderate exercises, anger, sorrow, and all things that may diminish the blood. But if the blood be worse, (as if it be cholericke) first purging of the cholerick humours is requisite, and then use the diet before prescribed: but if it be flegmaticke blood, it requireth medicines that do heate in the first or second degree, but they may not drie vp, for such by heating of the flegmaticke humours do turne them into blood: but among such (which are not onely medicines, but also nourishments) the strongest are, rocket, fennell, dill, parcelly, and those things Greene before they be dried, for being dried, they do heat and drie more then they ought to do: and those things which do drie, they make the humour which seedeth the blood, the more grosse, and more small in quantity. The blood ought to be meanelly hot and not grosse, that the milke may be engendred thereof. Moreouer those things that do meanelly heat, and haue no great drinesse ioyned with them, they haue vertue to engender milke among which, besides those which are spoken of before, is *Sesamum* boiled in wine. Also fresh butter, the weight of one ounce drunke with wine. Also sweet almonds *pistax*, pine nuttes beaten and eaten with butter. Also this thing is specially praised. *R.* Rice ten times washed and dried againe, and beate it to powder, then seeth it in good milk vpon burning coales: while it doth seeth, put to as much of white sugar as is sufficient, and make a porage. It is made the better, if you adde to it sweet almonds, *pistax*, pine nuttes, barley meale, cyccers, and such like: but you must labour also, that by gentle rubbing of the breast, and by hot medicines, which haue an attractiue vertue, the milke may be drawne, and entised to the pappes.

Euill blood.

CHAP. XVI.

Of abundance of milke.

DE LACTIS REDVNDANTIA.

IT chaunceth sometime that through abundance of milke, the pappes are so filled and swollen, and so stretched out with it, that they are scarce able to hold the abundance of it. It is caused through abundance of good blood.

Cause.

The euill is knowne by sight and feeling. You must helpe this by and by, for else it is to be feared, least the paps be taken with inflammation. Therefore at the beginning cut the veine of the arme, or the middle veine which is in the arme. After that, use those things which do lightly repress and drie backe,

Signa.

lest that the blood be thrust into the lungs by a certain violence. For this purpose it is good to apply a soft sponge dipped in warme *Posca*, & to bind it with bands to the pappes, or apply dates brayed with bread & *Posca*. Also it is good to apply an emplaister made of oyle of roses, of saunders, corianders, *Psillium*,

Curatio.

purcelaine, beane meale, lintels, iuice of plantaine, and of vineger, after this sort. *R.* of beane meale and of lintels, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. seede of purcelaine. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. seedes of flaxe and *Althaa*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. β . of plantaine. M. j. seed of Coriander. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. boile them together in water, vntill it come to the thicknes of hony, after that, put to it oile of roses. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . boile them againe, and ad thereto the yolkes of two egges, and make an emplaister: or make a cerote after this sort. *R.* of the oyle of roses and mirtelles, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . the meales of beanes and lintels, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β .

Posca is vineger and water mixed together and wine and water.

Emplastrum.

Ceratum.

of mints and rew. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . with waxe and Venice turpentine, as much as is sufficient, and make a cerot to apply to the pappes. Also wild rapes do profit maruellously being annointed with water and hony. Moreouer, it is verie profitable to annoint the place with the iuyce of Cherua and greene parcels. Likewise the stone *pyrites* powdred and applied with oyle of roses and vinegar, doth shew a marvellous effect against abundance of milke. And let their whole diet be such, that thereby but litle bloud may be engendred. Therefore hunger in this euill about other things is maruellous good

CHAP. XVII.

Of milke that is curded.

DE LACTE IN GRVMOS CONVERSO.

Causa.

MANY times the milke curdeth in the paps, and turneth into the forme of cheese curds. It is caused through abundance of milke, that is, when it is kept long time together on heapes in the pappes, and is not sucked out. It is caused also of a hot distemper, when that through ouermuch heate, the thinne part of the milke is digested and dissolued, and the rest groweth together, and turneth into curds. Also the like may chaunce of cold, which may cause milke to curd and congeale as well as other licours. Also sometime milke of his owne nature is grosse and clammie inough, and for that cause doth easily turne to curds. There need no tokens to know this euill: for it is knowne by and by, both by touching & by the patients words. The diet in this euill is diuerse according to the diuersitie of causes. For in a hote distemper of the pappes, let the diet decline to cold things, but in a cold distemper contrariwise to hote things. If this euill come through grossenesse of the milke, the must vse altogether an extenuate diet. For the cure, if there be abundance of milke, not being as yet curded in the pappes of them that be of lawfull age, and being skilfull women, let it be easily sucked out by litle and litle. Let the pappes be outwardly annointed with iuyce of greene parcels, mints, fenugreke, & other things rehearsed before in the chapter of abundance of milke. Also the creame of a hare beaten with water, if it be annointed is good against all swellings of the paps, especially caused of the corrupt abundance of milke. Also lintels sodden in brine is marvellous good, if the pappes be washed with the decoction, & annointed with the lintels being stamped. Also the decoction of fenugreke and *althæa* doth great pleasure. But if ouermuch heat doth cause the milke to curd in the paps, then annoint them with iuyce of purche, laine, and garden nightshade. Also apply oyle of roses with vinegar. Also mous-eare annointed is of good effect. Also the earth called *cimolia* annointed with vinegar or with water & oile of roses doth good. Moreouer lintels sodden in vinegar, & applied as is aforesaid, is good against cold distemper of the paps. Vse decoctions of cammomill, fenell, dill, linseed, and fenugreke, & therewith foment the paps. Also annoint them with oiles of cammomill, dill, lillies, and such like, but beware they touch not the nipple. Oxes gall annointed is good. Crummes of bread are good with vinegar annointed, but you may put to it mints or parcels, and make the medicine the stronger. This plaister is excellent good. $\mathfrak{R}$. of hony. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . of *stora calamita*. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. of oxes gall. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. of oile of cammomill.

*Signa.**Prædictus ratio.**Curatio.*

cammomill. ʒ. ij. mirrhe and frankensence. ana. ʒ. ij. ʒ. commixe them together, and make an emplaister to lay on the pappes.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of inflammation of the pappes.

DE INFLAMMATIONE MAMMARVM.

IT is caused sometime, (as other inflammations be) of plenty of hot blood *Cause.* flowing to the pappes. Also sometime through milke (that is) when it turneth to supuration and matter. The aforesaid causes are easie to discerne a sunder. For the first cause of inflammation chanceth to them that be not with child, nor brought in bed: the other cause chaunceth onely to such. For the cure in the first cause, you must see blood drawne from the inward veine of the arme, or the middle veine on the same side, vnlesse the menstruis be stopped: for then it were better to cut the veine of the hamme or ankle. After this you must come to restrictiue medicines, which may not be strong, least that the humours do violently thrust inwardly to the noble parts of the body: or else you may mixe with them some discussiue things. Therefore for that purpose it is verie good to take oile of roses, with the iuice of water of nightshade, vineger, and the decoction of cammomill: in this dip and wet linnen clothes, and apply it to the pappes. Also an emplaister made of barley meale, linseed, saunders, bolearmoniake, grease and oile of roses are good. And if the Phistion doth see that repercussiue medicins do not much good, he must streight proceed to my booke of the cure of impostumes in the breasts. But if inflammation be caused of curded milke, in the beginning you must apply a seft sponge dipped in warme *posca*, and bind it to it. Also apply dates brayed with bread and *posca*. Also apply crummes of bread with mirrhe, saffron, and mints, and such like. But if the inflammation endure still, proceed to the chapter of impostumes in the breasts, as hereafter shall proceed. *Curatio. Veneseccio. Emplastrum.*



The third booke.

CHAP. I.

Of weakenesse of the stomach.

DE IMBECILLITATE VENTRICVLI.



EAKNES of the stomake is sometime caused through distemper of the effectrix and working qualities without any flowing of humours. For as *Galen* saith in lib. 3. de simp. causis. cap. 10. *Cause.* All vehement distemper doth ouerthrowe and cast downe the strength. Also sometime it is caused of an humour, being contained in the bosome and large space of the stomacke,

Signa.

which hath power and vertue either to heat, or coole, or to moisten or dry, or two of these qualities mixed together: sometime it is caused of an humour stuffed and drowned in the filmes and cores of the stomake. Vehement thirst, abhorring of meat, and vsauorie belkings, do betoken distemper onely of a hote quality. Contrariwise litle thirst, vnmeasurable appetite, and soure belkings, betoken distemper of a cold quality. And to be short, if the stomake be grieved with hote or cold distemper, it changeth the meates that be eatē into the nature of the distemper: so that the meates may be perceiued to be chaunged into the sauour of roasting or sowerneesse, without the commixing of any humor. Moreouer if the distemper be hote, you shall see the patient by and by eased with taking of medicines, or meates or drinckes that be cold. But if the distemper be cold, the patient feeleth ease in hote meates or medicines, but he feeleth hurt with cold things. In a moist distemper, the patient feeleth no thirst, or verie litle; he hath abundance of spittle, and doth desire moist meates. In a drie distemper there is drinesse of the tongue, extenuation of the body, litle spittle, and vehement thirst. Moreouer vomiting and desire thereto, heauinesse of the stomacke, and belking, specially after meat, betokeneth abundance of naughtie and corrupt humours. And if yellow choler do abound, there followeth bitterneesse of the mouth, vomiting vp of choler, thirst, belkings, with sauour roasted, and gnawing of the stomacke; but if fleame do abound, it doth cause no gnawing in the stomacke, vnlesse it be salt fleame: there are present lowre belkings, no thirst and stretching out of the stomake. If melancholy abound, it causeth sadnesse and feare, stinking belkings, and spittings, and sauour of fish, sleepe with fits of strange imaginations, contraction and paine of the hammes and calves of the legs. Euery distemper is corrected and amended by his contrary. Therefore you must coole a hot distemper, and heate a cold distemper; also moisten a dry, and dry a moist distemper: likewise must you do in compound distempers, either heat and dry, or heate and moisten, or else coole and moisten, or coole and drie. Those that be vexed with hot distemper of the stomake, are cured with a cooling diet, but specially if they take cold things with vineger. Therefore let their bread be mixed or dipped in *posca*. For flesh, let him vse chickē, partrich, veale sodden with vineger or veriuice. For pot-herbs, lettuse and pureclaine are verie good. Also apples and sharpe peares. The sicke must drinke small ale or beere, if he hath bene vsed to it, but if not, let him drinke the decoction of cinamon, or wine that is thin and watery. You must apply and lay vpon the stomacke outwardly such medicines as do meanely restraine and coole. They which be vexed with a cold distemper of the stomacke, must be healed with the contraries to the aforesayd things, as with the decoction of annise seede, rew, and parcelly seede. Let the meates which they eate be condite and dressed with cinamon, *calamus aromaticus*, cloues, pepper, and such like odoraments. Also giue vnto them *Diatrion piperis*, *diacalamimber*, and *theriaca*. Anoint the stomake outwardly with those ointments which haue power to heate, and let them vse to drinke wine that is old and somewhat astrigent. A moist distemper is helped with meates that do dry without any strong heat or coldnesse. Moreouer, vsing of lesse drinke then he is accustomed to do. A drie distem-

*Curatio.**Cure of hote distemper.**Posca is a sauce made with vineger and water.**Cold distemper.**Moist distemper.**Drie distemper.*

per

per must be cured as the feuer Ethick is cured, of which we will treat in the fourth booke. But if some humour hauing power to heate or coole, do cause weakenesse of the stomack, you must marke and consider diligently whether that humor do swim in the bosome and largeness of the stomack, or whether it be stuffed in the filmes and cores of the stomack. If the humor be contained in the bosome of the stomack, and be a cholericke humour, it must be purged straight by vomite: warme water or thinne *malsa* drunke doth cause an easie vomit. It wilbe better if you minister before it things that do moisten, as is the broth of ptisan, or else the yolke of an egge. But if the cholericke humour be stuffed in the filmes of the stomack, purge him with *hierapicra*, for as *Gale* saith, there can no better medicine be found against vicious humors, being stuffed in the filmes of the stomack. The humor being purged, let them vse the same diet, that they do which are vexed with a hot distemper, as is taught before. Minister within the body conserues, which haue vertue to coole and moisten. Also minister electuaries hauing like vertues. Apply outwardly to the stomack things that do coole, and meapely restraine, as is oile of roses, oile of quinces, putting to sanders, balaustie, corall and purcelaine; but yet vse things that do coole in a meane, according to the contrariety of the distemper. For ouermuch vse of cold things doth not only not profit, but also oftentimes it causeth an incurable disease, because of the great heat that is requisite for concoction and digestion. If humors being flegmaticke, grosse and tough, do swim in the breadth of the stomack, he must vse *oximel*, wherein hath bin sodden medicins which haue vertue to extenuate and cut, as is, bisop, the root of *ireos*, origan, sauiory and horehound. But if the flegmaticke humors be drowned in the filmes and cores of the stomack, then first you must minister those things which do cut and deuide clamy humors & grosse fleame, but afterward you must purge him. If you will know what medicines do purge rough fleame, looke before in the first booke, chap. 12. Also *Hierapicra* is good to purge grosse humours. Let him also vse a diet which doth extenuate; and let him vse electuaries that do heate, as *diatrion*, *pipeiron*, *diagalanges*, *diacinnomum*, *diember*, ginger condit, *diacorus*, & such like. Apply outwardly to the stomack such things as do heat, as is, oile of *nardinum*, oile of mints, oile of wormewood, & oile of mastick, & other things hauing the like vertue. For this purpose also cerotes are commended, which the Physicians commonly call, *scutum stomachale*, such as is this. R. chose cinamon, cloues, long pepper, ana. ʒ. j. *gallie moschate*, maces, ana. ʒ. ʒ. *calamus aromaticus*, frankensence, ana. ʒ. j. wood of aloes. ʒ. j. sowne mints. ʒ. ij. masticke, *lapdanum*, ana. ʒ. ij. oiles of masticke and nard. ana. ʒ. ʒ. with waxe and turpentine as much as wil suffice, make a cerot to lay vpon the stomack, and couer it with purple silke, or vse this medicine. R. mastick beaten to powder. ʒ. j. then strew it vpon lether being cut like a buckler, and poure vpon it *oleum nardinum*, then hold it to the fire till it be molten together, & strew vpon it chose cinamon, nutmegs, and cloues. ana. ʒ. j. beaten into powder, and apply it to the stomack. To be short, these & other things which do strengthen and heat the stomack, are to be applied, as is, mints, wormewood, frankensence, masticke, cinamon, galingale, ginger, maces, wood of aloes, *calamus odoratus*, and such like rehearsed in our seuen th booke of making medicines, of which one may make diuerse kinds of remedies as he seeth cause.

Cure of weak-
ness of the sto-
mack caused of
an humour.

Choler.

Vicious ratio.

Fleame.

Diet.

Scutum stoma-
chi.

Alind.

Medicines
which streng-
then and heats
the stomacke.

Of yelking and vomiting.

DE NAVSEA ET VOMITV.

*Cause Nauſea**Signa.**Curatio Nauſea.*

Disposition to vomit (called *Nauſea*) which is a naughty and wicked motion of the expulsive vertue of the stomake, is caused of a vicious humour contained in the stomach, being either hot or cold, which humor either swimmeth in the concavity and hollownesse of the stomacke, or it is stuffed in the filmes of the stomach, cleaving like birdlime, & can scarce be drawne away: or the humor being more watery, it is drowned in the cotes of the stomach, like water in a sponge. And such humors are oftentimes engendred through distemper of the stomach, as well hot as cold: sometimes such humors do flow from the whole bodie, as frō other parts (being first euil affected) into the stomach, as it were the excrements: as frō the liuer or the splene, or the head, or frō the whole body. If those humours be engendred through the distemper, you may easily perceiue it by the signes declared in the last chapter before this. But whether that humor swim in the hollownesse of the stomach, or be stuffed in his cotes, thus shalt thou know it. If the vicious humor do swim in the stomach, & cause *Nauſea*, that is, disposition to vomit, the for the most part vomiting followeth, & the stomach corrupting the meates, it doth manifestly infect it with that humor, and changeth it into his nature, but if a tough humor be drowned in the cotes of the stomach, it causeth disposition to vomit, but yet such a disposition as bringeth forth nothing, although the patient do prouoke and straine himselfe as though he could vomit; but if that humor be watery and wheyish, then it causeth vomiting, not only before meat, but also after meat, and especially if that humor swim in the breadth of the stomach: for if it be stuffed and cleave to the top of the stomach, it doth moue vomiting without bringing any thing vp before meate. But when other parts (from which do flow excrements into the stomach) be euil affected, the sicke himselfe doth first feeble the griefe of the member that is diseased: for either he feeleth heat, or cold, or heauinesse nigh about the place that is diseased, or also he cannot suffer to let the place be touched hard. But if the whole body be full of vicious humours, you may know that by the colour, & by breaking out of wheales & pushes in the skin, and also by the vrine you may discern it. For the cure, you must diligently consider which griefe it is, whether it be a disease caused only of the stomach or of the whole body, or of some other member. For if humors do flow into the stomach from some other member, or frō the whole body, you must first take care for the whole body, or for that member that is diseased, but yet you may not neglect the stomach altogether: for vnlesse the whole body be first purged of vicious humors, he laboureth in vain that goeth about to resist the flowing of humors into some one place. So also he that doth cure the member that is first diseased, he cutteth off as it were the fountain of all flowings into the stomach. If you will know how those members are cured that do send excrements into the stomach, you must learne that in their proper chapters before or after. But if humors be engendred in the stomach causing disposition to vomit, you must marke whether those humors be thin, cholerick, and wheyish, and being contained in the hollownes of the stomach: for then you must giue him

him verie thinne iuice of prisan, or hot water, and the sicke must prouoke vomit with his finger, or with a feather being put downe into his throate. But if the humors be stuffed within vpon the top of the stomacke, you must minister one dram of aloes to drinke being dissolued in water. For against hot humors which be in the stomacke Aloes is the best medicine, so that often it hath healed euill stomacks in one day. After the humors be purged, and other medicines ministred, which do stop or make temperate the sharpnesse of choler, then you must cure the hote distemper of the stomacke, as is taught in the last Chapter before this. If they be flegmaticke, grosse and tough humours, which do swim in the breadth of the stomacke, you must cure them after that sort that is taught of vs in the former chapter, & then you must get away the cold distemper of the stomacke, as is afore taught. Now, for vomiting you must note that in the beginning it ought not to be stopped, if the sick be the better for it, according to *Hippocrates* sayings; In vomiting which commeth by it self, if such things be purged as ought to be, it is good, and may be suffered: but if not, then contrariwise it is euill. Therefore you may not stoppe that vomit which is decretory, or where humours do flow from the whole body into the stomacke, or when humours be engendred in the stomacke through distemper. But then you must rather helpe the motion of the expulsive vertue in a hot cause, by ministring hot water with oile of violets to drinke: but in a cold cause, minister oximell & other things before rehearsed. But if the vomiting be immoderate, & do begin to weaken the strength of the sicke, then you must goe about to stop and restraine it. Therefore first let the sicke ly vppward in a conuenient house, and contrary to the disease; that is, let the house be cold if the disease be hot: and contrariwise let it be hote if the disease be cold, let the extreme parts of the body be rubbed, & let the be felt with warme hands, and also bind them strongly with bands: also put the feet and hands in luke warme water. Also hold odoraments of good sauour to the nose for to smell, as roses, quinces, peniroiall, mintes, fennell, spikenard. Anoint the stomacke outwardly with oyles of wormewood and roses. Emplasters made of dates, quinces, and wormewood be good. Also Cerotes made of them and such like, as mints, darnell meale, frankensence, masticke, be good being laid vpon the stomack. Also you must stampe well dates that haue bin steeped in old wine, afterward you must putto it mastick & frankensence, ech of them finely poudered by it selfe afore, & then bray them together. To this place also you must call the remedies that are spoken of hereafter, partly in the chapter of *Cholera*, and partly in the chapter of fluxe *dysenteria*. Furthermore that euill continuing long, if the meate cannot tarry in the stomack, you must fasten a cupping glasse to the mouth of the stomack with great flame, vntill the place wax red, and you must giue the patient meate while the glasse hangeth on still.

CHAP. III.

Of immoderate thirst.

DE SITI IMMENSA.

THirst, as *Galen* witneseth in lib. I. de simpl. med. facultate, cap. 30. is caused two Cause. manner of waies: partly through want of moisture, and partly through abundance of heat. The stomacke is heat many & sundry waies, that is, either

*Signa.**Curatio.**Pilles to be held
vnder the tōg.**Oxiratum
feu poscha.*

through hot distemper of the bare quality simple or compound, or through hot and cholerick humours engendred in the stomack, or else flowing to it. Also through abundant drinking of old wine. The stomacke is dried either through the dry distemper that is in it, or through salt humours, or drinking of salt water. Also oftentimes it is dried through consent of the whole body, as it chanceth in burning feuers, and feuer Ethicks. The diuersity of causes may easily be knowne by the patients wordes, and by those signes which we haue spoken of in the second chap. next before. Therefore the cause being known, you must remedy each of them according to their causes diuersly. Therefore you must remedy thirst cōming of heate, by ministring things that do coole. Therefore both the drawing in of cold aire, and water, or watery wine being drunken are good. Also cucumberseed chewed, or if it be hulled & beaten, and drunke with water, it helpeth greatly against thirst engendred through heate of the stomacke. Likewise lettuce seed chewed & drunk profiteth. Also purcelaine seed likewise. The best thing to quench thirst is this. *Rx.* of the seeds of sowne cucumbers husked. *℥. j.* diatragacanthē. *℥. β.* gumme tragacantham beaten to powder, & searced. *℥. ij.* and beat the seeds, & put those powders to the whites of eggs being raw, and beating them altogether, make pills, and dry the in the shadow. Of these pills minister one at once to be hold. n vnder the tōg, that it may dissolue by litle and litle, and so be swallowed. They that haue had burning and heate in the stomacke long time, the iuice of the sweet root being drunke, doth help them, and also the roote it selfe with water & the iuice of purcelain. But those which are vexed with thirst caused of heat & driness, as it chanceth in all burning and very dry feuers, and to those which labor in sommer, or in great heat, such are best healed with *oxiratum*, that is, a drinke made with vineger and water sodden together. For vineger doth coole mightily, and doth pierce euery place quickly, and the water (besides the coolenesse that it hath) is moistest of any thing: for nothing (as *Galen* saith in the place before rehearsed) is moister then water. Also the thirst which engendreth in feuers, may be mitigated in sprinkling the head with the coldest oiles, as oile of roses being sprinkled aloft on the fore part of the head. Also the best remedy for driness is sleepe, where heat and moysture are commixt together, as it chanceth in that kind of dropie, in which plenty of salt humors be heaped in the stomacke and belly, or in those which haue their stomack stuffed with salt fleame, then vineger is the best remedy. It is also good for them to soupe the iuice of quinces or pearces, or veriutce with water. If humors cholerick or salt swimming in the stomack, or drowned and stuffed in it do prouoke thirst, then you must minister medicines which can purge out those humors. Afterward you must vse medicines which doe restraine and comfort the stomacke and strengthen it. Examples whereof you must seeke before. They which thirst through drinking of much old wine, are holpen with drinking of cold water & other things rehearsed in *lib. i. cap. 14.*

CHAP. IIII.

*Of paine in the stomacke.**Doloris stomachici cause.
Καρδιαλγία.*

PAine of the stomacke is caused when naughty, venomous, & gnawing humors be kept in the stomack, whereby it chanceth that through intollerable

ble gnawing, they cause swowning, which they call *stomachica*. This disease is known by the continuall pricking & gnawing of the mouth of the stomake. In this euill you must giue him meates that do coole, and which may bring strength to the stomake, as is, lettuce and purcelaine taken with vinegar. Also pomegranates, and oranges, peares, sharpe grapes, and such like. Also bread being steeped in very cold water is good. Also let his other meates be such as will easily digest, and yet not easie to corrupt, as be, chickens, partrich, birds of mountaines, & such like sodden with veriuice. Also fishes bred among stones, sodden with vinegar, limons, and the sharpe iuice of Cytrons. Likewise let the sicke drinke water wherein hath bene sodden a litle cynamon, or giue him thin watery wine. For the cure, in the beginning you must prouoke vomit by the remedies aforesaid. Then after that also he must purge downward, by taking *Hierapitra*. Which things being done, you must vse remedies to strengthen the stomacke both inwardly and outwardly, as is taught in the second chapter, and in other places also.

Signa.

Diet.

Curatio.

CHAP. V.

Of inflammation of the Stomacke.

DE INFLAMMATIONE VENTRICULI.

Inflammation of the stomake is caused no otherwise then the inflammation of other parts of the body: that is to say, through the flowing together of abundance of hot blood. Signes hereof, is exceeding great paine continually, which cannot be mitigated with any medicines that be applied to it. Moreover there is swelling and burning which you may feele. Also a feuer, heavinesse, and appetite to meate. The diet (like as it is in other inflammations) must be thinne, small, and exquisite. Therefore he must vse iuice of ptisan and he must abstaine from flesh and wine, and from other hot meates. Let the sicke drinke water, wherein hath bene sodden a litle cinamon, or iuice of foure pomegranats, or of some other fruit that is cold and restringēt. Let him sleepe litle, and let him not talke much. Let him eschue sadnesse as much as he can, and let him remaine in an aire meanelly cold. You must beginne the cure with letting of blood, if there be fulnesse of the whole body, & strength of the sicke. You must cut the inward veine of the arme, and you must draw blood according to the strength of the patient. After this you must apply outwardly those things that do repress & restraine, specially vpon the place where the paine & swelling do most appeare. For the stomake (specially the mouth of it) hath euer neede of the commixing of those things that do restraine, but most of all when it hath an inflammation. Therefore those which do attempt the cure with loosening remedies onely, without the commixing of those things that do strengthen the stomacke, they cause perill of death: therefore alwaies whether it be an oile that the inflamed member be nourished withall, or a soft plaister laid vpon that member, you must commixe some restringent thing with the. Therefore for this purpose it is good to apply to it oile wherein wormwood or quinces hath bene sodden, commixed together with mastick. Also the iuice of quinces, or peares, putting to it red roses, barley meale, sanders, boleamoniak, & such like. Also you may vse this cerot. R. barley meale. 3. B. white

Causa.

Signa.

Vicius ratio.

Curatio.

Ceratum.

sanders, and red roses. ana. ℥.ij. bole armoniacke. ℥.j.℔ aloes, masticke. ana. ℥.j. wormwood, nutmegs, *balaustie*. ana. ℥.℔. oiles of masticke, and roses. ana. ℥.j.℔. with waxe and turpentine as much as is sufficient, make a cerote to lay vpon the stomake. But if there be need of great restriction (as it chanceth then, when the stomake is so weake that he cannot hold & retaine meate) you may commixe with the said things veriuice or iuice of wormwood, or *hypocischidos*, and *sumach*, and such like. All these things (if the inflammation be vehement) must be applied to the grieve cold. And if the belly doth send forth nothing, you must prouoke it with easie clisters. Nor he worketh not vnwisely, that doth minister. ℥.℔. of *cassia fistula* dissolued in endiue water, after that the burning heate is somewhat abated. Also at that time you may commix with the restrictive medicines, which you apply outwardly, many things that do discusse and dissolue, as is, fenugreeke meale, floures of cammomill, and *Althaa*, and line-seed; you must neuer (as we warned you before, no not at that time when there floweth no more to the grieve, and that cannot be driuen backe which is contained in the diseased member) you must not I say at that time, neither vse onely loosening medicines, or only dissoluing medicines: but alwayes you must commix with them restrictive things, which haue power to preserue and keepe the strength of the stomake; therefore at that time you must vse this emplaster. *Rx.* the meale of linefeed and fenugreeke. ana. ℥.℔. seed of dill. ℥.ij. flowers of cammomill and melilot. ana. ℥.℔. wormwood, *balaustie*, red roses. ana. ℥.ij. *hypocischidos*. ℥.ij. oiles of cammomill, lillies, roses, masticke. ana. ℥.℔. hennes grease, and goose grease. ana. ℥.ij. commixe them altogether, & make an emplaster: but before it be applied, it is not in vaine to annoint the stomake with this ointment. *Rx.* oiles of cammomill, dill, and quinces. ana. ℥.iiij. powder of the roote of *Althaa*, wormewood, linefeed. ana. ℥.j. waxe sufficient, and make an ointment.

Emplastrum.

Unguentum.

CHAP. VI.

Of abhorring of meate.

DE CIBI FASTIDIO.

Cause.

Abhorring of meat, or loosing of appetite, doth chance either through loosing of the sense of sucking of the veines, which is naturall hunger, as *Galen* witnesseth, *libro primo, de sympt. causis, cap. 7.* or because there is no sucking out, or because the body is not emptied. Also sometime it chanceth through some hote distemper, specially of the stomacke, which distemper doth dissolue the hard and sound members by loosing of them, and maketh them weaker in drawing; but the moist members, it stretcheth out vnmeasurably by shedding. Sometime it is caused through abundance of vicious humours contained in the stomacke, and through immoderate fluxe of the belly and bowels: also through ouer much blood letting. Also the sicke doth abhorre meate in continuall and vehement feuers, also in inflammations of the stomacke, the liuer & the marris, and for many other causes which need not to be reherfed here. The signes which betoken a hote distemper, are reherfed before in the first Chapter. Those which abhorre meat, through the vice of cholerike humours, are troubled with gnawing of the stomacke, & with appetite to vomite, & with thirst,

Signa.

thirst. Those that haue humours that be rotten, they haue sometime a feuer: but those which haue loathing of meat through grosse and clammy humours, they neither feelee gnawing of the stomacke, nor thirst, but commonly to all there commeth disposition to vomit. If loathing of meat doth come about the beginning of this disease, or about the vigour & strength of it, which the patients strength may yet suffer, it causeth no perill; for the sicke need but little nourishment. But if losse of appetite do come in the declination of the whole disease, or in long weaknesse, or in lacke of strength, or of vnmeasurable purging, it is not without perill and daunger. This euill is increased of age: for children are vnluckily troubled with this disease: that is to say, such as are deuourers by nature, and haue neede of continuall nourishment; therefore if children haue this disease, great excesse about nature is signified by it. For cure of this disease, if the losse of appetite be caused through weaknesse of the stomach, you must marke what distemper doth weaken the strength, and you must cure it by contraries to that distemper, as is before taught. If the presence of virious humours do cause loathing of meate, if those humours be thin and gnawing, you must first begin before any other thing be ministred, to purge the humours contained in the stomacke, by vomit. And if the patient doth vomite vneasily, minister vnto him souplings, and other nourishments which do moisten, teat they may driue those humours downe into the bellie, and driue them out beneath; or purge the womb with *hierapicra*. Then we must bring the bodie to a good temper, with such things as be meete for that purpose. Those that do abhorre meat through grosse and clammy humours, you shall cure them by extenuating and cutting the humours, as well with *Oximele*, as also with those medicines that are made of this and other sawces, as with capers, oliues, musterd seed, and such like declared in the first chapter. If loathing of meate happen through inflammation, or stopping of any other part of the body, then you must go about the curing of that member or part. And you must go about to prouoke appetite againe, onely by odoraments, either by odour and smelling of wine infused, or decoction of quinces, or peares. Also you shall go about the same thing with soft annointings with oiles, as oiles of roses, masticke, and such like, and moderate frictions and rubbings of the bodie: also inunctions to be applied to the loines and share. Also let meates be prepared of diuerse and sundrie kinds, and after the daintiest fashion, that besides their sweetnesse, they may entice and prouoke their appetite: first of the best kind of corne, and such as doth nourish much, as is *Alica* washed with the decoction of dates and damascene prunes, reere egges, birds of the mountaines that be leane and of no strong sauour, and swines feete much consumed in seething. For if he onely tast such meates, they nourish the body sufficiently. Whatsoever you minister, ought to be of such sort, that it may easily be deuoured and swallowed: for those things that require much chewing do cause vnpleasantnesse, and put away appetite. Nor you may not neglect to apply outwardly vnto the stomake besides the ointments, emplaisters made of dates, quinces, wormewood, and such like. Also cerotes made of the same things, examples whereof you must seeke before.

Curatio.

Alica is made of wheate steeped in water beate & dried in the sun, & then broken grossely.

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

Cure if it be of
sharpe humours.

Viciatio.

A Doglike appetite is contrary to losse of appetite. For they that are thus diseased, they desire much meat: and when they cannot reframe their appetite, they deuoure in meate without measure; then they being heauie with the multitude of meate, and their stomake not being able to beare the meates that are in it without hurt, they turne to vomiting. Then afterward they fill themselves with meate, and againe they returne to vomiting like dogges. It is caused through cold distemper of the stomake, or through vicious & sharpe humours which do gnaw and pricke the mouth of the stomake: for cold vicious humours do cause a gnawing much like the proportion of sucking, and do raise appetite of meat. Also sometime it chanceth through vnmeasurable dissipation and spreading abroad of the whole body, which do follow either the violence of heat, or the weaknesse of the vertue retentive. Cold distemper of the stomake is knowne by euill digestion, windinesse, rombling, and many egestions of seiges, and by other tokens declared before in the first Chapter. Sharpe humours are knowne by soure belkings, and much egestion, and very thinne. If it be caused of vnmeasurable dissipation and spreading abroad, and that through heate which consumeth the meate like fire, and rarefieth the skinne, then the egestions sent out by the bellie, be lesse in quantity then the meate that is eaten, and also the egestions be drier. But if that dissipation come through weakenesse of the retentive vertue, which cannot master the meates, then there is much deiection and casting out of those things that are eaten. For the cure, cold distemper must be healed as is taught in the first chap. of this booke. If doglike and vnmeasurable appetite be caused of sharpe humours stuffed in the mouth of the stomake, and as it were water soked into a sponge, you must minister in the beginning *Hierapiera Galeni*: for this doth not onely heat, but also doth cut off and make cleane, and draw out from the depth of the mouth of the stomake, humours that be stuffed in it, and it causeth them to auoid downwards, and yet it addeth strength to the stomake, that afterward it will not easily receiue any hurtfull humour: therefore that is the best remedie for vicious humours stuffed in the stomake, to bring them forth, it is ministred the weight of $\mathfrak{z} . i i i j$. with wine infused with warme water. If a child doth labor of this disease, which cannot drinke the medicin for bitterness, make $\mathfrak{z} . j$. or $i j$ of it in pilles, & annoint it outwardly with hony, & let the swallow them downe, seeing that for the most part, this euill chanceth of sharpe and sowre fleame, you must vse such meates and medicines, as haue power to cut, deuide, scour, and heate: as be garlick, leekes, time, sauorie, organ, peniroiall, and such like. Therefore the humours that be vicious being purged in the beginning, you must let the vse this diet. Let not their bread be new, nor well leauened, with the which also you must mixe things that prouoke vrine, as is, annise seed, caraway seed, comin, parsley, & such like. Let his meates be fat & oily. Also soupings are good, that do destroy appetite, as be pottage made with much hony, and much oile, or goose grease, hennes grease,

or

or swines greafe. Let his pot herbes be mallowes. Also giue him the braines & fattest partes of birds, and of fishes likewise, and those things that do altogether destroy appetite, and causefulnesse, and that do nourish but little, although they be eaten in great quantity. You may well giue them great plenty of wine, euen as much as they can drinke, and such wine as doth heat greatly, as those doe that be yellow in colour, thinne in substance, sweete in smelling, and without restriction. For this doth heate the stomacke, and destroy the sharpnesse of humours, so that often such wine with oyle and fat meates, sufficeth for the perfect cure. As *Hippocrates* saith, drinking of wine ceaseth hunger: and you must giue wine, as well to them that be fasting, as to them also which haue eaten meate, although they be not as yet a thirst. But you must giue it to them that be fasting hote, or warme at the least. He must abstaine from all fower and restrictiue meates and drinckes, but specially from fruite. Let their banquetting meates be *psittacium*, almonds, pine nuttes, and oliues, with hony. Minister also vnto them milke, as well alone, as also with wine called *Passum*, or with hony: so that neuer helesse you must take heed that you giue it not to those, that are wont to haue it waxe soure in their stomacke, for to those it doth more hurt then good. But if it be wel digested, it doth not onely stop the appetite, but it softeneth the belly being stopped, and stoppeth his fluxes. Also you must make porions and fine cakes with milke, and giue them to him, as be, marchpaines, and rice sodden with milke. Also hee must wash now and then, and make fat their skinn largely. This kind of cure you must vse as long as the sicke is diseased, and till he be cleane whole. If the dog-like appetite come through vnmeasurable scattering abroad, opening, & dissipation, then in such a disease it is good to thicken the skinn, & make it grosser with oile made with vnripe oliues, or oiles of roses, or of mirtles, or any other wherein any restrictiue thing hath bene sodden with a soft fire. Let the sicke remaine in an ayre, that is cold and perspirable. Let him eschue hot ayre and hot bathes. Also let him eschue wine, and all things as well outwardly as inwardly that doe heate. Let his drinke be cold water, or decoction of Cinamon. Put the sicke in a cold bath, if nothing do let it, or slendernesse & leanenesse of the body, or the coldnesse of some member of the body, as the brest or some other. You must giue vnto them meats that be stable, durable, & hard to corrupt, as be periwinkles, and all kinds of shel fish, if they be sodden with water twice changed. Also swines flesh being in full strength, and specially the belly. Also fat beefe, and all things that be all fat, and that do swim in the stomack, and be hard to be digested and distributed. For there be some that haue this disease, which by reason of a sharpe and biting heate, and as it were a feuerous heate in them, which do digest and consume beefe and other things hard of digestion, with lesse labour then fishes of stony places, and such like things which be easie of digestion. Of eggs those are good for them, which be sodden till they be hard, or fried in a frying pan. Giue them manchet made of fat brothe without hony. Also rice soddé with butter, and vnleavened bread. Looke how much the euill is abated, & so much you must abate of the grosse meats that you are wont to giue, & you must minish the restrictiue things also that you lay without. For sometime the vehemency of the appetite being abated,

2. *Ap. 21.*

Cure of it come
of immoderate
dissipation.

*Unguentum.
adstringens.*

when the bodie is filled with crude and grosse humours, it turneth into some other worse disease. Among restrictive medicines besides those things which are aforesaid, you must vse this ointment. R. oiles of mirtles, and quinces, ana 3 ℥. oile of roses, 3 j. iuice of plantaine, 3 ij. red sanders, masticke, bistorta, red roses, ana 3 j. bole armoniacke, 3 ij. *Hipocischidos*, *acacia*, *sanguis draconis*, ana 3 j. waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment.

CHAP VIII.

Of great Famine.

DE BVLIMO.

*Bvlimos.
Causa.*

Signa.

Curatio.

B*vlimos* in Greeke, is nothing else but great and vehement famine or hunger. It is caused through coldnesse of the stomacke, & for want and weaknes of strength, and in a man it taketh his beginning altogether of outward cold: for long iourneies (especially whe there is snow) causeth this disease. It is knowne thus. In the beginning there is felt much hunger, which for all that, doth not long endure: for afterward the heart of the patient beginneth to faile him, with coldnesse of the extreame parts, and want of spirit and breath. You must apply remedies for this disease by and by, because there be that in desert places, or in bathes, being suddenly takē with this disease, do perish for lacke of helpe. Therefore they that are troubled with great hunger, in a iourney without a feuer, or any other waies, you must recomfort them with vineger, or penitroial, giuen them to smell vnto, or earth, whatsoeuer it be, sprinkled with vineger, or apples, or pearces or such other like fruite which is next hand. Also new bread holden to the nose doth helpe, and cheefe of good sauour. Also porke roasted or sodden, and vniuersally all that doth nourish much: but especially that which hath sauour of roasted meate, and is well seasoned, & hath a sufficient sauour: for by such odours and sauours, they that haue this disease, are for the most part refreshed, seeing there is nothing (as we said before in the second booke, the fourteenth chapter) that doth refresh & renew the strength sooner then odours. Moreouer you must bind the extreme parts of them with bands, and you must put the tippes of their hands and feete in verie hote water, and you must raise them and stirre them, as well by pricking of the cheekes, as also by pulling of the haire and eares. And when he is soniwhat come againe to him selfe, you shall minister vnto him bread infused in wine, or some such thing, which doth restore strength very quickly, as be, reare egges, *Alica* with wine. The next remedy they must looke for by meat, which if they cannot take when it is offred them, you must put it into the mouth violently, and compell them to swallow it, for by and by after that, they are deliuered from their great hunger, and from their fainting, and are raised quickly. For this purpose are good also the Antidotes, which are compounded of diuerse sweete odours, as is, *Aromaticum rosarum*, *Diamber*, *Dianthon*, *diamoschi*, *Alipta moschata*, and such other like. And if this disease chance to come in feuers (which is seldome seene) and if it doth rush in suddenly about the declination of fits belonging to feuers, you may minister meat without feare. But if it chance in the beginning of the augmentation, or in the vigour and strength of the feuer, the sick must be refreshed by the odoraments aforesaid,

a forsaide, and specially by those things which haue come in them, as is *Polenta*, *Polenta is bar*
 wet with water, or hot bread that sedeth forth a burning sauor. Also you must *ly steeped in*
 vse frictions and rubbings of the extreme partes, and apply plaisters made of *water one*
 dates, or quinces sodden in wine; and this must you do vntill the declining of *night, then*
 the fit, that you may safely giue him meat. And if the sicke be neuer the bet- *aryed, then*
 ter through these things, you must venture to helpe him by giuing of meate. *fryed and then*
 Therefore minister iuce of prisan, or one morfel or other wet in wine that is *ground.*
 white and thin: for they being refreshed, and as it were suddenly called back,
 they afterward come to the declining of the fit. We must eschue altogether in
 them that haue this disease, long delay from meate and hunger: for you shal
 giue him euery houre very litle meate, for it taketh away great famine and
 the fainting, whereby the sicke is eased. And that it is lawfull to nourish and
 giue meate to the sicke in a fit, *Galen* teacheth, *Lib. 10. method. cap. 3.*

CHAP. IX.

Of euill digestion.

DE CRUDITATE.

Rawnesse of the stomack or ill digestion is, when as the meat is not alto-
 gether changed. The causes of it, is distemper in the stomack, inflamma- *Causa.*
 tions, hardnesse, impostumes, and such other like. Sometime the meates re-
 maine rawe and vndigested, although the stomacke be not diseased: either
 through immoderate deuouring of meats and drinks at one time, or through
 the euill and vicious qualities of the meates themselves, or through heating
 of them out of due time, or through inordinate taking of them: or through
 some vicious superfluitie growing: or through short sleeping, as *Galen* saith,
Libro tertio de symptomatum causis, capite primo. The diuersity of causes be knowne *Signa.*
 partly by the tale of the patient, and them that be about him: and partly by
 certaine tokens. By the tale of the sicke, and of them that be about him, you
 may know whether meates and drinks haue bene taken immoderately, or
 out of due season, or inordinatly. Also you may know of them the shortnes of
 sleeping: you may know if the meates themselves were of euill qualities by
 his belkings and sauours, like things roasted or burned. For in them that be
 hot and cholericke, the belkings or corruptions sauour like meat roasted or
 burned: but in them that be of a cold nature and more flegmaticke, the cor-
 ruptions are sowre or sharpe. Likewise you must iudge of excrements that be
 flegmaticke and cold, they cause sowre corruptions: but those that be hote
 and mixed with bitter choler, do cause sauour like burned meate. Likewise
 iudge of the stomack being any otherwise euill at ease: for if the disease be
 cold, it causeth sharpe and soure permutations, but if it be hote, it causeth
 a burning sauour. When perfect crudity and rawnesse is engendred with-
 out corruption, in such sort, that the meates do remaine altogether euen as
 they were eaten: by this you may know that the stomacke is ouercome, ei-
 ther through great quantitie of meates, or through vehement cold taken in
 a hote thirst. Therefore if you would not haue this cruditie and euill dige-
 stion, you must beware of all the aforesaid things, that is, that you neither *Visus ratio.*
 offend in the quantitie, nor quality, nor order, nor due season of the taking

of your meate: and that you eate those things onely, which you are able to digest, and not that which appetite requireth. Therefore you must especially take diligent heed to the measure and quantity of your meate, and you must refraine your appetite, and eate no more then your strength is able to suffer. Also you must beware of euill order, that is, that you do not first eate quinces or pomgranaates, or some such like thing, and afterward to eate pot-herbes out of oile or sauce made with salted fish, or other things which does soften the belly. Also you must eschue eating out of due season, that is, that you do not eate before some moderate exercise, or before yesterdaies meate be well descended, and also not before your accustomed heure. Also you must eschue all things that be hard by nature to digest, as is flesh that is hard by nature, that is, biese and harts flesh: also eschue all old flesh. Also you must beware of meates that be fat, or that be powdered in salt, and stale kept. Among pot-herbes, those that be very hote or very cold, or also those that engender wind, be hurtfull. Eschue fishes which are hard, & dried by long keeping. Also abstaine from meates that be corrupt, or that do stinke, or smell ill sauouredly. Refraine from sweete fruite, or that which doth engender windinesse, or that which is corrupt. Also eschue iunkates which be hard of digestion. Also you must eschue meates that be straunge and vnaccustomed, and that haue the power of a medicine, as people vse to commixe in their tartes and fine cakes, but you must eate your meat in due time, not greedily nor in gobbets: not swallow it not without chewing. Neither let your drinke interrupt and disturbe your meate, for that doth hinder the vniting and knitting together of the meate, and causeth each peece to swimme from other. After meate eaten, you must eschue vnequall and troublous motions. Also eschue heate & cold, for those things do stop the digestion of meat. But calefaction and chafing of the sides, and rubbing of the feete, do helpe digestion. And if there be heauinesse about the stomack, so that through it a certaine painefulnesse be spread thoroughout the whole body, then lay your hand being stretched forth, vpon the mouth of the stomacke, or applie to it a fleshie infant, for as *Galen* saith, it is much better and more naturall: then the heate which is procured by fomentis. For which cause, some do lay litle whelpes while they rest vpon their stomacke, which doth encrease the abundance of heate, that digesteth the meate. Also you must procure sleepe in the night equall and without disturbance. For this, you must prepare to lye straight, and let your head be bolstered vphigh, and in your lying you must incline towards the left side. And if you cannot sleepe, you must ly without turning or stirring of your body, and keepe it still in one forme of lying, for often stirrings and tossings do disturbe the meates, and make the body windie and the bowels likewise. The cure must be diuerse, according to the diuersitie of the causes: for hote distemper of the stomacke requireth one kind of curing, and cold distemper requireth another. Also inflammation of the stomacke requireth another kind of cure, and hardnesse or impostumations another kind, and all those cures you shall seeke out in the proper chapters: for here it sufficeth to say thus much. When there commeth an vnpleasant belking, declaring manifestly that there is corruption of meates,

with-

Curaatio.

without prolonging, you must prouoke vomite, and by drinking of warme water, you must constraîne all that is corrupt to come forth. For if they remaine in the stomacke, they cause tormenting, and wrestling, and heauinesse of the head: and sometimes they send forth choler vpward and downward, or they cause fluxe of the wombe, or feauers. Therefore such as cannot digest but hardly, we must accustome them long time before, that they may vomit easily, for that is best in many perils. And if any be hard to vomit by nature, and be ill disposed to drink cold things, in any cause it is not inconuenient to giue him a cuppe of pure cold water to drinke: for the stomacke being strengthened, it soone thrusteth out those things that sticke in it, and sendeth them downe to the lower parts. Then the next day let the sicke be kept in quiet and rest, and vse rubbings of his feete, and chafing of his sides, vntill the rumbling and windinesse breake out beneath, and vntill the belkings do come forth with a gentler quality. And then it is good to rise vp, that first the belly may send out the corrupt things by siege, and afterward let the sicke walke moderately, and let him be idle, because of the troubled vapours which be ascended into the head through corruption. After this he must apply his mind to daily businesse without perturbation and indignation. Then againe the belly must be prouoked to auoid those things that remaine yet. Afterward you must bidde him rest, and you must powre vppon and nourish the feete with warme water: and the face being washed with pure colde water, let him rest in his bedde, and procure him to sleepe by all meanes. After which let him vse a litle walking, and then a bath. After bathing let him take meate moderately, and that which the body is able to digest. But yet you may not ouerpasse medicines that do helpe digestion, as is, pepper, especially long pepper, which doth onely helpe digestion. But if you haue it not at that present, you may vse white pepper, and if you haue not that neither, take blacke pepper. Also for the same, *Diacotoneon* is good, and *diopolicum*. Also there be other things to be applied aswell idwardly as outwardly, both simples and compounds, to strengthen the stomacke, which are rehearsed in the former chapters. But all these medicines (especially such as do peirce quickly, as is Caraway feedes, fennell seeds, *Apium*, louage seed, parcelly seed, *anmeos*, pepper, ginger, and such like) must be giuen two houres before meate: but after meate you must neuer take them: for then there is dispersed together with them some of the crude meates, and causeth obstructions. Therefore let them be vsed most before meate after the rubbings in the morning, and two houres before exercise.

Vomitus.

*Long pepper
helpeth digestion.*

CHAP. X.

Of windinesse of the stomacke.

DE INFLATIONE VENTRICULI.

THE stomake is windy, through the windinesse that is engendred in it. Windinesse is engendred through flegmaticke humours in the stomacke, or else through meates dissolued into vapours through want & debilitie of heat. For cold onely doth cause no windinesse, because it can neither extenuate nor

Causa.

dissolue meate. Vehement heat for the most part (ouercomming those things
 that it comprehenderh) extenuateth and maketh thinne the meate, so that
 no vapours can engender thereof, vnlesse it be easie to turne into windines of
 the owne nature: but the windinesse that is so engendred is troublous and
 cloudy: and also it is but little, and endureth but a little while, so that at one
 belking or other it vanisheth away straight. The heate that worketh in the
 meates, if it be but of little force and strength, that is, doth somewhat dissolue
 them, but not altogether consume them, thereof must needes engender win-
 dines, as *Galen* teacheth *lib. 30 de sympto. causis. 70*. They that are thus diseased,
 haue stretching our & heauinesse of the stomacke: also sometime swelling,
 and a certaine bowing out of the mouth of the stomacke, and of the stomacke
 it selfe: also empty belkings do come, sometimes lightning a little, and a
 stopping of the windinesse which is wont to breake downward. Also this euill
 sometimes is al ouer the breast, and sometime behind, about the backbone and
 backe, and rusheth among the ioiutes, and often it occupieth both places. Be-
 sides these things there is vehement pain in drawing of breath, because of the
 pressing downe together of the midriffe, so that some do feele like as though
 they were choked. They are eased by the meate going downeward, and by
 windinesse breaking out either by belking, or by the belly. Also rumbling and
 noise is heard within. Therefore if the windinesse of the stomacke be caused
 of flegmaticke meates: you must minister an extenuating diet, and such me-
 dicins as do deuide and purge steame, which we taught in the first chapter of
 this booke. But if the windinesse be engendred through want and weaknes of
 heat, he must vse meats easie of digestion, and of good iuice. Also he must eat
 but litle: for fasting is very good for this disease. After all the meat, you must
 minister wine that is pure and vnmixed: but yet he must eschue much drinke
 as a deadly enimie. Also let him eschue fruite, and eating of moist oiles. Also
 let him vse hote bathes in great vessels, for those do mitigate, soften, and dis-
 solue windinesse whatsoeuer it be, & prouoke sleepe: and when sleepe com-
 meth, it easeth the patient much, because it helpeth digestion maruellously.
 And as for medicines, let them vse this decoction. *Rx.* Calamint, mints, wilde
 mints, cammouill, origan, peniroidall, ana. *M. j.* wormewood, *M. ss.* seeds of an-
 nise, apium, comin, daucus, parcelly, fennell, ana. *℥. iij.* seedes of nettles, cara-
 wayes, ana. *℥. ij.* of the roote of *Enula compans*. *℥. ij.* seeth these in a iust quanti-
 tie of water, till the third part be consumed: then straine them, and put to suf-
 ficient sugar to make the iuice of that decoction sweet, and put to that liquor,
 of sirrups of Calamint, *℥. iij.* and make a porion, wherof let the sicke drinke e-
 uery day in the morning *℥. iij.* Or let him vse this powder. *Rx.* the powders of
diarysum, *diacuminum*, *diacalaminthes*, ana. *℥. ij.* seedes of annise, daucus, and fen-
 nell, ana. *℥. j.* quibibes, cloues, ana. *℥. ij.* ginger, *℥. j.* pepper, *℥. j.* sugar. *℔ ss.* com-
 mixe them together and make a powder. They which haue taken meate but
 a little before, must first vomite. Also you must minister suppositaries made
 of things that entice windinesse, after this sort. *Rx.* honny sodden. *℥. ij.* seedes
 of rewe, comin, and fennell, ana. *℥. j.* seedes of Carawayes and annise. ana.
℥. ss. salt. *℥. ij.* commixe them together and make suppositaries. If the
 wombe be verie costive, you must cast in a clister made thus. *Rx.* of the de-
 coction

Signa.

Curatio.

Decoctum.

Tritura.

Glandes.

cotion aboue taught. ℞. j. of *benedicta laxativa*. ℥. vij. oiles of wormwood, rew, *Chylor*.
and dill. ana. ℥. j. goose greafe and hennes greafe without salt. ana. ℥. ij. ℞. com-
mon salt. ℥. j. commix all together, and make a clifter. In this disease you must
annoint the stomack outwardly with the oiles aforesaid, or make a litle bunch
of wooll, and wette it in the aforesaid oiles being warmed, and apply it to the
stomacke. And vpon the bunch of wooll being wound vp together, strew com-
min beaten, or seed of Apium or dill. If the disease endure long, apply to it
plaisters made of linefeed, barley meale, darnell meale, commin, dill seed, or
Apium, or fennell beaten, the toppes of Centorie, and such other like: or ap-
ply this cerote. ℞. oiles of rew, dill, nard, and laurell, ana. ℥. j. meale of linefeed, *Ceratum*.
and fenugreeke. ana. ℥. j. ℞. seedes of Apium, carawaies, and *Nigella Romana*.
ana. ℥. j. laurell berries, and Centorie. ana. ℥. j. ℞. gumme ammoniacke, and *opo-*
ponax. ana. ℥. ij. waxe and rosin as much as is sufficient, make a Cerote. Also a
great cupping glasse comprehending the nauell euery where, being applied
with great flame, is a remedie in this disease. Also *Castoreum* drūke with *Posca*,
and applied outwardly with oile of dill, is good.

CHAP. XI.

Of yelking or hicket.

DE SINGVLTV.

YElking is a motion of the stomack, and it is as it were a crampe of the sto-
mak, raised of the expulsive vertue, which goeth about to thrust forth euil
and hurtfull things. This disease is caused for the most part, either of fulnesse *Causa*.
or of emptinesse, as *Hippocrates* witnesseth. Also sometime it is caused through *6. Aphor. 32*
the biting and gnawing of sharpe humors. Also the meate being turned into a
gnawing qualitie, and so corrupted causeth some to yelke. Also coldnes of the
mouth of the stomack, and corruption of the food causeth yelking, which cau-
seth children specially to haue the hicket often. Also yelking engendreth in
feuers, specially when the stomack or some other bowell is enflamed. The out- *Signa*.
ward causes are easily knowen by the telling of the sicke, and them that be a-
bout him. Fulnesse is knowen by heauinesse; & emptines of those things that
went before. You must know if the meate be corrupt by the burnt saueur of it:
but you shall know sharpnesse by gnawing, pricking, and pulling. Therefore
when yelking is engendered of coldnesse, you must lay vpō the stomack, wooll *Cure of yelking*
dipped in the oile wherein hath bene sodden rew, comin, & wormewood. Also *of cold*.
oile of masticke, and of *Castoreum* being annointed doth profite. To children
warne linnen clothes being applied to, do helpe often. They that be of full
age, minister to them to drinke wine, or Apium sodden in *aquamulsa*, or com-
min beatē, or Alarum, or penairoall, each of these by himselfe or else mixt with
other. Also squilliticke vineger is good to soupe. Also giue them. ℥. j. of *Castore-*
um with *posca*, as well against yelking caused of cold, as also if it be caused
through multitude of humours. Also if it be applied outwardly to the stomack
with old oile, it is good for both the said griefes. Moreouer holding of the
breath which doth encrease heat, is a present remedie for them that do yelke
through cold. When yelking is caused of fulnesse, vomiting is the best reme-

Cure of yelking
of fulnesse.
Auerſion.

6. Aphor. 13.

Cure of hicket
caused of em-
ptinesse.

Cure of yelking
through inor-
dinacie.
Pillule de cyn-
gloſia.

Paffillus.

die. If there be grosse humours, they must be extenuate and cut with *Oximel scillicum*, and calamint, and horehound their decoction, and such like before rehearsed. Afterward you must apply those things which may draw the abundance of humours a contrary way, and turne them cleane aside. For which purpose those things are good which do purge downward, and specially clisters, bindings, and rubbings of the extreame parts, and cupping glasses with much flume, fastened to the breast, to the stomake, & to the backe. Also these things are good for them, long and quick walking, bearings about, and chiefly riding. Also it is good for them to sleepe, as *Hippocrates* saith. For when the yelking is caused of fulnes, there is need of violent mouing. Also handsome calling loud, with much clamor, & withholding of the breath, is good for them. Moreover, the stomacke must be strengthened by medicines ministred as well inwardly as outwardly. Inwardly by comforting Electuaries, and outwardly by applying of ointments, emplasters and cerots before taught. Yelking that is caused of emptinesse, is cured by giuing to the patient conuenient fooode, and by those things that do fill his wanting: which partly be afore taught, and abundantly spoken of hereafter in the cure of the feauer Ethicke. It doth much good in this kind of yelking, to annoint the ioints of the necke & the backe with moistening oile, as is, oiles of violets, and of sweet almonds. But if yelking be caused of gnawing things, first we find that vomiting is a sufficient remedy for it: then also stupefaction of feeling, and such things as do alter the gnawing. The senses be astonied and stupefact by cooling things, for which purpose you must minister *philonum*, or pilles of hounds tongue, which do profite maruellously in this disease, you must vse them thus. You must make of one dram, fixe pilles, whereof let the sicke take one before he go to bed. The mordacitie and gnawing is altered and driuen away by medicines which doe stoppe, attenuate, and drie. Stoppers of gnawing be these, iuice of endiue drunke, cucumber seeds husked and beaten being drunke, lettruce seede likewise taken. Also iuice of purselaine drunke, and purselaine it selfe raken in meate. Also Sebesten decoction taken in drinke, but specially about all, Asses milk is good. Or if you haue not that, cowes milke newly milked is good being drunke. For the same purpose minister conserve of roses, or of violets, or of water lillies, *diarrhodon*, *diatrion santalon*, Iulep of violets, of *Nimphaea*, that is, water lillies, and such like. These Trochiskes do stop, extenuate, and drie vp. *R. Costus*, saffion, spikenard, greene roses, masticke. ana $\mathfrak{z}$ ss. *asarum*, aloes. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. *opium*. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. with iuice of *psillium*, make trochiskes, of the which giue. $\mathfrak{z}$ ss. or. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. Note that *opium*, and the roses, and the iuice of *psillium* be of a cold operation: the spikenard doth discusse, dissolve, and corroborate: the *asarum* doth bring out the vicious humours by vrine: the aloes do purge out the vicious humours, and driue them out beneath at the seige: the saffion digesterh and strengtheneth the parts, for by his temperament of heat he causeth digestion, & by his restrictiue vertue which he hath, he addeth strength: the *costus* doth sufficiently heate, and moderately restraine, which you may perceiue by his taste. *Galen* commendeth this medicine very much, *Lib. 8. de Comp. Med. secundum* *toros. cap. 3.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Of Cholera.

DE CHOLERA.

Cholera in Latin is an immoderate perturbation of the stomack, caused by vomit both vpward and downward. The barbarous sort call this disease *Cholerica passio*; they that haue this disease be called of the Latines *cholericis*. It is caused through much cruditie and rawnesse of the stomacke, and il digestion, which many times engendreth of great wickednesse of the meates, and sometime through abundance of vicious humours also. The signes whereby this euill is knowne be very manifest: for they auoid both vpward and downward; also there followeth thirst and swet, and short pulse, and drawing vp, and stretching out of the muscles of the hands and feet, and specially of the calfe of the legges. Therefore seeing this euill is most sharpe and doth cause verie grievous swoynings, if it endure long, you must do your diligence that you helpe it by and by without any tarying. No Phisition if he see this disease to be engendred through abundance of vicious humours, will in the beginning all at once goe about to stop that which is sent forth, for seeing they be vnprofitable & hurtfull, they haue need of purging. Therefore if the patient haue disposition to vomit, and be troubled with vndigested meates remaining in the stomack, you must giue him warm water, & then he must vomit by his finger or a feather put into his mouth. But you may not prouoke vomit by ministring of *Aqua mulsa*, nor with water mixed with oile: because these things do increase the fluxes, and cause mordacity and writhings: also you must helpe the matter that purgeth downward: for a strange poison as it were being within doth gnaw the stomacke and guts, and draweth the humours from the whole bodie: you must minister vnto him the easiest purging medicines, as is, aloes, *Cassa fistularis*, decoction of *Mirabolanes* and such like. After that the superfluous things be brought forth, then he must rest, and it is good to nourish the sides with oiles of masticke, or nard, or wormewood, and to cause sleepe. You must commixe sometime with the aforesaid, other things which can strengthen the stomack, which be afore taught, & with them you must make ointments. When there appeareth exact and perfect concoction & digestio, vse bathes of sweet water, and meates of good iuice, among which is broth of chickens with veriuike, the flesh of small birdes of mountaines, reere egges and such like. In drinke let him vse iuice of pomegranates, or sirupe of roses, or water wherein burning Steele hath bene quenched three or foure times. But when the euill hath endured long, and hath caused slendernes, and leanenes throughout the bodie, and specially if the belly or stomacke do rest after the remouing from his place, and that the pulse be lesse, and thicker, the you must bind the extreme and vntermost parts with bands, and you must make them fast by much oile. Also apply to the stomacke Caraplasmes, and emplaisters made of restrictive and strengthening things, as those be which are made of dates, *hypocistidos*, *scatia*, *Sumach*, bolearmoniacke, frankensence, *Balsafia*, roses, and fruit of mirtels. Also it is an effectuous remedie, if a linnen cloth wet in the iuice of crabbes be layd vpon the stomacke, or this

*Cholerica Causa.**Signa.**Caratio.*

Scutum stomachi.

A cyathe is 3 j. B.

Constriction of vomits.

Against constriction in the muscles.

cerote. R^x. of the oiles of roses, mirtels, and quinces. ana. 3 j. masticke, frankensense, acatia, ana. 3 ij. *hypocistidis*. 3 j. ss. saunders white and redde, ana. 3 j. *balauſtie*, dragons bloud, ana. 3. B. bolearmoniacke. 3. i. waxe and rosin as much as is sufficient, make a cerote to lay vpon the stomacke couered with silk. In drinking giue him the measure of one *Cyathe* of cold water to soupe off, that is, 3 j. B. but you must beware that it be not ouer-cold, for that being giuen suddenly is vomited vp againe, and sometime with his stupor and coldnesse, it hurteth verie extremely the naturall heat, or it causeth inflammation of the stomack, or of some of the bowels. And you may sometime droppe into the water a litle of the iuice of sharpe pomegranates, or of roses, or of the decoction of vine branches. And if those things that be voided forth be verie sharpe, and that thirst and burning do trouble the patient, then minister cucumberseeds with three *Cyathes* of water. Also you may giue it commodiously with *Amylum*. Then also minister endiue or lettuce, or both sodden in posca. Afterward procure sleepe and rest by all meanes: but if the fluxe wil not be stopped, and the pulse decay betweene this and that, and that cold and sweet do take him, and also sometime yelking, you must come to wine that is meanely restrictiue, which is not very strong, but yet sweete and not odoriferous, and put into it, warme if it may be, or else cold, crummes of bread or *Alica*, and so by litle and litle at sundrie times let them soupe it vp. But yet they must eschue much quantity of wine, and by all meanes you must go about to bring them to sleepe, by strewing the pauement of the house with roses, vine leaues, brier, and such like afore taught. Also apply odoraments to the nose, as roses, quinces and such like: also annoint soporiferous and sleepe ointments about the temples and forehead. If he go to the stoole still, cast in by a clister *Amylum* with decoction of poppie heads, for it doth both restrain and coole, and cause sleepe. To stop vomits: it is good to eate and deuour the iuice of medlers, quiaes, pomegranates and pearces. If with these remedies and others that be taught before in the second chapter of this booke, the sick cannot keepe and brooke his meate, you must apply without vpon the stomack a very great cupping glasse lightly. Against the contraction and drawing vp of the muscles, you must winde about the muscles, linnen clothes soaked in warme oile, and apply moist cerotes and ointments wherein is put some *Castoreum* and oile of *ireos*. You shall find examples enough of those in the chapter of the Palsey before in the first booke. When the disease decreaseth, you must refresh and restore the patient againe with good meates, as chickens, doves, hennes, partrich, wood-culuer, and oufils, or black-birdes, and such like.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the fluxe Diarrhea.

DE DIARRHAEA.

Causa.

Diarrhea in Latine, is a copious & great fluxe of the wombe without exulceration and inflammation. It is caused through weaknesse of the instruments that belong and do serue to digestion also through abundance of nourishment & meat that is moist and viscous, and through corrupting of the same meate.

meat. Moreover, gnawing & biting of those things that are contained in the belly: also flowing of some things from above to the belly, and also weaknesse of the retentive vertue. The signes whereby the causes are knowne are verie *Signa.* manifest. For if this fluxe *diarrhea* be caused through the weakenesse of the instruments that serue for digestion, as is the stomacke, the bowels, the liver, and the spleen: you must seeke the signes of these out of their own chapters. But if it be caused through much deuouring of euill meates and drinckes, you may know it partly by the patients tale, and partly also by those things that come forth by siege. For if they be cholericke, they be yellow of colour, and they be not cast out without feeling of gnawing and heat: also the patient feelth bitternesse of the mouth, thirst, thin state of the bodie, and other tokens which signifie choler. If it be flegmaticke, those things which come out with the siege shall be contrarie to that which is said before of choler. And if humors do flow from the head to the belly, the egestions will appeare frothy, & the temper of the braine will be verie moist. If the fluxe be engendred through fulnesse of the whole bodie, or if it be indicatorie, the signes are rehearsed in another place, and of *Galen lib. de plenitudine & crisi bus.* And if this fluxe of the wombe be caused through weakenesse of the instruments, the distemper *Curatio.* which is cause of this, must be cured and corrected by his contraries, as is taught in the first chapter of this booke. If this fluxe of the wombe be caused through other causes, and that nature doth labour to driue out of the body *Nota.* superfluous and hurtfull matter by this meanes, and that you can easily suffer it which be troubled with it, then you must suffer & watch, till nature hath bestowed all her care and charge: or else also it is good to help natures motion, but for to go about to striue with it, and to stop the fluxe, it causeth a worse & greater disease: for those humors which are stopped being caried vppward, do cause paine in the head, or frensie, or lethargie, or impostumation behind the eares not without danger. Therefore in the beginning you may not stop the fluxe which floweth profitably for the health of the bodie, but after that the fluxe hath endured long, not only carrying forth superfluities, but also melting as it were the state of the bodie, & consuming the strength, then you must labour to stop it, as well by things giuen in at the mouth, as also cast in at the fundament, and also by things applied outwardly vpon the belly. Therefore if there come forth excrements of cleane choler, you must change it into a better and a more healthfull state, but yet you may not cure them by stopping of it straight wayes. For the cholericke matter that is gathered together, and heaped in the stomacke, & in the bowell called *iejunum*, if it be with- *Cure of a diarr-* holden and kept there still, it hurteth greatly: for it both ouerturneth the sto- *rhoea of choler.* macke, and causeth inflammations of the bowels, it kindleth thirst, and restoreth feauers, and causeth the euils aforesaid, and generally causeth a worse disease. Therefore if there be abundance of cholericke humors in the body, nature must be expelled with easie purging medicines, as is infusion of *rew-barb, cassia fistularia*, the barks of mirabolanes citrine, or manna. After that giue cowes milke, or goates milke warme, being new milked, or seeth it at the fire and stirre it continually til it be consumed vnto the third part: which you may do by quenching of red hot iron, or Steele gads in the milke often, but while it

doth seeth you must take the scum or some off it: for surely you can find no quicker remedie against fluxes of choler. And because the milke that is eaten of one that hath a feuer, is wont to turne into a burning sauour, or also sharpe or soure, and so causeth more hurt then good; therefore if the patient hath a feauer together with this fluxe, you shall eschue ministring of milke to him dressed after that sort. But you must powre the fourth part of water to the milke, and seeth it vntill halfe be consumed, and then minister it vnto him. If the choler be heaped vp together in the bowels, you must cast in clisters made of the decoction of barley, with sugar roset, oile of roses, yolkes of egges and such like. At the length, when the cholericke humours be voided out, you must minister inwardly such medicines as do restraine and strengthen, as be, conferue of roses, *diacotoneon* without spices, *diatrios santalon*, trochiskes of *spodium*, *Hidromelon* and such like. And what kind of medicines they must be that ought to be applied outwardly, we will shew you a litle hereafter. Also the fundament must be fomented and nourished with a decoction made of some restrictive things. If the flux *Diarrhea* be engendred through flegmaticke humors that be grosse and tough, or through corruption of them, then you must beginne your cure, as you did before with easie purging. Therefore then you must minister the infusion of Agaricke with *Mirabellans imbelici*, or some such like medicine, which is able to bring forth the aforesaid humours. Also clisters are good, specially if there be abundance of clammy humours heaped vp in the bowels: let them be made of the decoction of centorie, and oile of rew, and such like. Minister within the bellie *Diacotoneon* with spices, greene ginger, and other medicines which haue power to heate and dry. Also apply outwardly those things which do ad strength. If the fluxe *Diarrhea* be caused through the weaknesse of the vertue recreative, you must minister & apply those medicins, which are applied against other vnmeasurable fluxes of the wombe. Therefore apply irrigations & sprinklings of oile *omphacine*, or oile of roses, or oile of the blossomes of apples, with some soure or sharpe wine, but oile of mirtels is of more effect, if there be need of vehement restriction, hauing the third or fourth part of wine added to it. And if their bodies be strong, you may seeth in that irrigation gals, pomgranate rindes, and *Balaustie*. If the fluxe endure still, apply cataplasmes, emplasters and cerotes, made of restrictive & drying things, wherof we wil make mention in the next chapter. Also this cerote is effectuous to be made. Take seuen mulberries, or black-berries which be soure and whitish for lacke of ripenesse, bray them wel and adde to it oile of roses, $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. waxe. $\mathfrak{z}$ i. and make a cerote. After the voiding of superfluous and hurtfull humours, these things heale the fluxe of the wombe being ministred in drink, that is, comin, decoction of maidenhaire, the roote of white thorne, likewise one, $\mathfrak{z}$ weight of the seed of *apium* ministred: for it prouoketh vrine, and turneth the fluxes that be in the bowels thither. Also vnripe mulberries being yet soure, if they be dried many dayes in the sun and so kept, if they be bearen and drunke when need requireth, they restrain and stop the wombe maruellously. Also they may be brayed & mixed with his meates, as they are wont to vse *Sumach*, which sometime is sodden, the quantitie of an ounce weight with a chickē: but yet blackberries of the brier being vnripe

Cure of *Diarrhea* of flegmaticke humors

Cure of *Diarrhea* of the weaknesse of the vertue recreative.

vine and sharpe, do bind the belly more if they be dried as is aforesaid, and ministred in drink. Among compound medicines these are martellous good, that is, trochiskes of *Spodium*, of *terra lemnia*, *diacitoneon*, *diatrion santalon*, triacle: and this compound made in Lozenges is good *Rx.* the powders of *diatrion santalon*, *diarrhodon abbatis* ana. *℥.ij.* red coral, chosen frankensence, red roses. ana. *℥.ss.* *Spodium*. *℥.j.* seeds of sorrel, *sumach*. ana. *℥.j.* *balaustie*, *acatie*. ana. *℥.ss.* *maficke*. *℥.ss.* *bole armoniacke*. *℥.j.* fine white sugar *℥℥ss.* dissolve it in the distilled waters of plantaine and roses, and make lozenges. Also this loch is good. *Rx.* of old cōserues of roses, of *diacitoneon* with spices, *rob de ribes*, *rob de barberries*. ana. *℥ss.* *hydromel*. *℥.ij.* *diamoron*. *℥.v.* the powder of *diatrion santalon*. *℥.ij.* red coral, *℥.j.* *Spodium*, *balaustie*. ana. *℥ss.* *bole armoniacke*. *℥.j.* sirupe of mirtles as much as shall suffice, and make a loch. Moreover you shall euer have this water ready made. *Rx.* *sumach*, one quarter, raine water. *℥℥.ij.* in which steepe the *sumach* a day and a night, then boyle them, and straine the *sumach* well and strongly: and in that water seeth rice, or milke, or other meats, or at least way poure some portion of this water to them. If the fluxe *Diarrhea* be caused through flowing of humors from some other member of the body, you must seeke the cure out of their proper chapters. As for exāple, if the humors flow from the head into the stomacke, you must returne to those things which are spoken of before in the chapters against distillation or rcume, and so do likewise with other parts of the bodie.

Morfu

Eclisma

A precious water.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the fluxe Lienteria.

DE LIENTERIA.

LIENTERIA in Greeke, is a certaine lightnesse, or smoothnes of the bowels, euen like as there chance of a scarre without on the skin of the body. In this disease the bowels do not hold the meat, but they let it slide away before it be changed and perfectly digested, euen in the same forme and likenes that it was eaten. Therefore in Latine it may wel be called *leuitas*, or *leuor intestinorum*, and in English, lightnesse or smoothnes of the bowels. It is caused oftentimes through a grieuous fluxe *disenteria* by name going before, which causeth deepe exulceration of the bowels; then scarres that be hard closed together and smooth do follow: which scarres by reason of the hard closing, will not suffer the meats to be distributed about the bodie, because the mouths of the veines which are wont to draw nourishment from the bowels to the scles are now stopped. And because of the smoothnesse (as is aforesaid) the bowels suffer the meats to slide out before they be perfectly digested. Also this disease is caused many times through weakenesse & debilitie of the vertue that shold keepe and hold the meats in the stomacke. For this vertue being weak and sickly, the food or meats be neither digested nor distributed: but they are cast forth crude, moist, and nothing changed, (the belly being alwayes soluble.) Also sometime it ingendred after long fluxe of the wombe. Also sometime whē dropse water auoydeth by the belly, this fluxe *Lienteria* followeth. Therefore of what cause soeuer this fluxe is engendred, the sicke doth taste or feelee no meat, and it causeth euill state or plight of the bodie. Therefore there

Cause

Signa

6. Aphor. I.

Videtur ratio.

Cure of Lienteria of weaknes of the vertue of the stomacke.

Pungentum.

Ceratum.

If Lienteria be caused of a scarre.

chanceth to the patient continuall seiges, crude & raw, in colour pale or whitish, vnequall & very watery, without any commixing of bloud and choler. Also he feeleth a burning which spreadeth all ouer the sides, loathing of meat followeth it. It is a good and friendly signe in them that haue had this fluxe long, if there chance vnto them sharpe & sowre belkings for it betokeneth that the meate doth abide some while in the stomacke vntill it begin to be changed. When this disease chanceth, it is easie to perceiue, that you must refresh and recreate the vertues retentive and digestive, aswell of the stomacke as of the bowels by all means, and that may chiefly be done by ministring of conuenient meats, and ordaining of a diet meet to restore and refresh strength. Therefore the flesh of birds of mountaines are good, also chickens rested, in whose bellies also must be put *sumach* or *masticke*, and other things which shall be rehearsed in the next chapter. Let the meate which you giue him be litle in quantity and easie of digestion. And if his seiges be sharpe & cholericke, make him meate with rice and *alica* and such like, with the which seeth some restrictive things, as peares, quinces, medlars, and such other like. Also milke sodden is good for them, but if their seige be flegmaticke, you must minister vnto them contrary meate. Also commixe somewhat that is pleasant and acceptable to the stomack, as is annise seed, commin or *dancus*. In cholericke seiges let their drinke be ale; but in flegmaticke let it be wine that is old and hot. And generally let him drinke but litle, for much drinke is not onely in this flux *Lienteria*, but also in all other fluxes of the wombe, most hurtfull. For curing of this disease, if the fluxe *Lienteria* be engendred through weaknesse of the vertue of the stomack, you must turne to the chapter of weaknes of the stomack, and there seeke the cure. But to be short, you must minister both within and without to the body those things that do restrain, and that can strengthen aswell the stomack as also the bowels. Therefore minister sirupes of wormewood, and mints, and other electuaries which do strengthen the stomack. And you must apply those things outwardly, which be rehearsed before in the chapter of *Diarrhaea*, and shalbe taught in the next chap. following. But this medicine is specially good. R. oiles of masticke, wormewood, mints, and mirtels. ana. ʒ. ij. powders of cinamon chosen, cloues and galingale. ana. ʒ. j. *Balaustia* and red roses. ana. ʒ. ʒ. waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment: or vse this cerote R. oiles of masticke, wormewood and of quinces. ana. ʒ. j. oile of mints. ʒ. ʒ. *calamus aromaticus*, cloues, frankensence. ana. ʒ. j. wood of aloës. ʒ. ʒ. red roses, white saunders and red. ana. ʒ. ʒ. masticke, commin. ana. ʒ. j. *hypocistidos*, *acatia*, *sumach*. ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. *Gallia moschata*. ʒ. j. with waxe and turpentine as much as is sufficient, make a cerote. Moreouer to those that you coniecture haue a scarre, to those the eating of sharpe things is profitable, for it causeth a certaine refection and rubbing open againe of the scarre: also it reuiueth againe the natural heate, and doth somewhat refresh the digestive vertue. Therefore in this case (as *Galen* witnesseth in cap. 95. *Artis Medicae*) they be good which do scoure and wipe away sufficiently, and restrain a litle: therefore alwayes commixe scouring things with restrictive medicins. In all other causes of this fluxe *Lienteria*, you must vse the same kind of cure, which you do vse to them that be afflicted with the fluxes *Diarrhaea*, or *Dysenteria*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

Of the fluxe *Dysenteria*.

DE DYSENTERIA.

DYSENTERIA in Greeke properly is nothing else then exulceration of the bowels. The Latines call this disease *tormina*, because through it, the bowels are tormented and fretted very much with paine. We said before properly, because the Greeks reckē foure kinds of bloody *Dysenteria*, as witnesseth *Galen lib. 30. de symptomatum causis*. The first is, when blood is sent forth by circuite through some part of the body being cut off, or through some exercise of the former life, being let passe for a time. The second is, when watery blood like vnto the water wherein bloody flesh being new killed, hath beene washed and soaked, is sent out: which chanceth through weaknes of the liuer. The third is, when there is sent forth an humour more shining and blacker then that which is natural, being commixt of blood and melancholy. And of these, we do not speake here, but we speake only of the fourth kind, in the which many times by litle & litle, & betweene whiles sometimes is cast out of pure blood; also sometime clodded blood, or shauing of the bowels, commeth out with pure blood. Also many times is cast out thicke dung sprinkled with drops of blood. This fourth kind, as it is said, is caused through exulceratiō of the bowels, which sometime chanceth through outward causes, as of cold, heate, and moistnesse. Also through drinking of pernicious and naughty medicins, as is, *scammony* and such like. Also through eating of fruite, through crudity and rawnesse, or through eating of sharpe or soure meates, or through sharpe and gnawing humours flowing from the whole body to the belly, or engendred in the belly it selfe. And this beginneth after *Tenesmus* sometime, and sometime by it selfe. The excrements first are cholericke, diuerse, and fatty, by reason of the fat that cleaueth within in the bowels being melted. But when the superficies of the bowels is altogether bare, and exulceration doth abide about it, then the excrements that come forth, be full of dregs and bloody. And when the exulceration hath peirced deeper, the also is sent forth filthines, hauing as it were litle peeces of parchment commixed with it. And if it be not stopped, it eateth and feederh in short time the places nigh vnto it, and it sendeth forth mattery excrements, such as are wont to run from dead bodies. When the small guttes are exulcerate, there abideth paine about the nauell, the excrements are cholericke hauing the colour of a leeke, and altogether garnished with sundry colours, commixed with much ordure or dung. The patient feeleth grieue and frettings, and gnawing and loosing, so that the sicke is not farre from fainting and failing of heart. Also they are troubled with thirst and be seauerous, and the ordure commeth forth crude and rawe, and the bowell called *seium* is exulcerate, but that is very seldome: but if it do chance, the egestions do appeare more crude & raw, hauing blacke blood wrapped with it vehemently, and yellow of choler, and much thirst, and also disposition to vomit do trouble the sicke. And sometime they vomite and abhorre meates. Also there remaineth vehement paine about the nauill, & sometime also malignant feauers do engender. And they that are so diseased be waxen ill colour.

4 Kinds of
Dysenteria.

1

2

3

4

Cause.

Signes of ex-
ulceration
of the small
bowels.

Signes of exul-
ceration of the
great bowels.

Diet.

Lenticule.

Potus.

Curatio.
Adstringentia

red, and do sweat out euen till fainting and failing of hart. Their strength doth quickly faile them, and they be not farre from death. But if the vlceration be engendred in the great bowels, then the ordure that commeth forth is pure, and much, and heaped together, and commeth out with windinesse, and frothinesse sometime. Also farneffe is commixed with it, and bloud swimmeth aloft: as Galen sheweth largely in *libro. 60. de male affectis locus.* For it helpeth greatly to the cure to know this thing. For if the exulceration be in the vpper and small bowels, you must go about the cure by medicines giuen in at the mouth, but if it be in the great and lower bowels, it is more conuenient to throw in clifters. The beginning of the cure of them that haue the fluxe *Dysenteria*, from whence soeuer the fluxe proceedeth, must be with quiet & rest, and litle meate. Therefore if a feuer do not let it, let him eate milke new milked, while it is yet warme: or in stead of it minister milke sodden, as we taught before in the chapter of *Diarrhea*. For this first cleanseeth and purgeth downward, and tempereth together those things which be in the body, & last of all, it stoppeth & bindeth the wombe. But you must giue him moreouer wet bread after the taking of the milk. Also porrage prepared of milke, hath both the nature of medicines, and also they cause good nourishment, as is rice with milke, *amylum* and egges mixed with milke. Also soupings or potage made of *alica*, and *miliun*, *sumach* being added to it, is good. Also you must prepare meates of dry bread, powring to it *Posca*, or iuice of dates or quinces, or of pearces, or of *sumach*. Also minister chittes well roasted with plantaine, or sodden with quinces braided: the vsing of oiles is not necessary nor needfull, but you shall minister to tast vpon endiue, both wilde and tame sodden, and plantaine, and coleworts twise sodden. Giue him also the yolks of eggs roasted. Flesh is not good to be giuen to them that haue the fluxe *dysenteria*, because they be of a stronger nourishment, & do strue against digestio: but yet you must giue it to them that be troubled with this disease long. Among all kind of flesh, you must specially choose birds, as is partrich, and wood culuers, & birds of mountaines. Among foure footed beasts, goats flesh and hares flesh are good. But you must forbid him the flesh of cattell that draw, and of all other foure footed beastes. From the beginning let him vse for his drinke raine water which is not fallen from houes couered with lead: for such water being drunke, euen of them that be whole, engendreth the *dysenteria*: and if good raine water be not present, you must vse running water, wherein burning steele hath bene quenched. But if the stomacke be diseased, or if his strength be cast downe, giue him wine, also let it be restraining, and not very old. Sleepe is the best remedy for them that haue the *dysenteria*. For this cure you must vse such remedies as do restrain, stop, dry vp, and prouoke vrine, and that do cary the fluxe some other way. Restrictiue things be these: forell seed, *sumach*, gauls, pomgranat rinds dried, brier root, *labdanum*, *acatis*, *hypocistis*, *balauftium*, willow leaues, comfery roots, leaues and seed, *rheum ponticum*, if it may be gotten, root of *alibea*, horsetaile, coral, masticke, hares creame, dragons bloud, the barke of frankensence, *terra lemnia*, roote of *reb arseus*, plantaine seed, white daisies, a kind of mallowes called *alcea*, *oxis*, *sanicula*, *ophrys*, *ophioglossum*, knotgrasse, shepheards purse, walwort, *pedalion*, *numularia*, dragons the male, sharpe mulberries, kernels of grapes, the barke

barke of maces, and such like. These things do stop and make temperate the biting, gnawing, and sharpnesse of humours, as is *amylum*, gum tragacanth, talow of goats, kids, swine, geese and hens. These do drie vp: hares creame, harts-horne burnt, the shels of crabs of running water, and sage. Things to prouoke vrine, you shall find in his owne place. Therefore if the exulceration be in the great bowels, you must minister clisters first, such as haue power to scour and cleanse, as this is: *R.* of the decoction of whole barley. *℞* *j. mel rosarum* strayed. *℥* *j.* sugar roset. *℥* *ss.* yolkes of eggs in number *ij.* oyle of roses. *℥* *iiij.* commixe all together and make a clister. Absterfion and cleansing being first done, cast in those things that do glutinate and ioine together, as this is: *R.* red roses, plantaine, leaues of comfery, knorgrasse, primroses, ana. *M. ss.* *balaustia* *℥* *j.* rice burned. *℥* *j.* roote of comfery. *℥* *ss.* seeth all together in water wherein Steele hath bene quenched, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it, and take of the iuyce of that decoction, *℥* *xij.* iuyce of plantaine. *℥* *ij.* *acatia*, *hypocischidis*, ana. *℥* *ij.* bolearmoniacke, *sanguis draconis*, ana. *℥* *j.* goats tallow. *℥* *j.* oyles of roses, mirtels, quinces, ana. *℥* *j.* commixe all together, and make a clister. Sometime it doth not only require things to stop the vehemencie of the paine, but also medicines that be stupefactiue. Therefore then it is good to vse this clister. *R.* of goats milke, or of cowes milke. *℞* *j.* fresh butter. *℥* *j.* goats greafe, *℥* *j.* *ss.* gumme tragacanth, ana. *℥* *j.* yolkes of eggs in number *iiij.* pilles of hounds tongue. *℥* *j.* oyle of roses. *℥* *iiij.* commixe all together and make a clister. If there be need of more vehement stupefaction, you must augment the waight of the pilles, or else you must adde to the aforesaid waight of pilles three or foure graines of *opium*, or more or lesse, according to the vehemencie of the paine, and the state of the body. If the exulceration be in the small and thin bowels, then it rather requireth medicines that are giuen in at the mouth. Therefore the decoction of restrictiue things which is afore taught, is good, if you commixe with it sirupe of roses, and mirtels, and so minister it, and also other medicines which are taught in the chap. of *diarrhaea*, are good. Also you may conveniently minister this potion. *R.* of the decoction of the roote of comfery, or of some other restrictiue thing. *℥* *iiij.* sirupe of roses. *℥* *j.* sirupe of mirtels, *℥* *ss.* powder of the trochiskes of *spodium*, plantaine seed, bolearmoniacke, ana. *℥* *ij.* commixe all together and make a potion. Besides those things that are rehearsed in the chapters of *Diarrhaea* and *Lienteria*, you must apply outwardly vpon the belly this cerote. *R.* of the oyles of masticke, roses, mirtels and quinces, ana. *℥* *j.* meale of barley and fenugreeke, ana. *℥* *j.* of red roses, plantaine, ana. *℥* *j.* *balaustia*, *sanguis draconis*, ana. *℥* *ss.* bolearmoniacke. *℥* *j.* *hypocischidis*, *acatia*, masticke, ana. *℥* *ii.* with waxe and rosin, as much as is sufficient, make a cerote. By the examples aforesaid you may make manie other remedies, which we ouerpasse here.

Obtundentia.
Resecantia.

Cure if it be in the great bowels.
Clister adstringens.
Clister glutinans.

Clister dolo-rem leniens.

Potio.

Optimum cerotum.

CHAP. XVI.

Of *Tenasmus*.

DE TENASMO.

TENASMVS, is a cōtinual desire to go to the stoole or siege, which the patient cānot defer nor eschue, & yet he auoydeth nothing, except it be a li-

Signa.

Curatio.

Tenasmus of cold.

Tenasmus of cholericke humours.
Clister abster-
gens.

Tenasmus of flegmaticke humours.

Tenasmus of inflammation.
Clister.

Fomentum.

Discussines.

Cure of Tenas-
mus caused
of an vicer.

the blood, or filthy matter like sneuel. It is caused oftentimes through outward cold, or through humours sharpe and cholerick, or of salt steame, or impostumation, or of inflammation engendred in the straight gut. Also many times, the stopping of hard dung in the blind gut, may cause *Tenasmus*. The Phisition may easily know if it be caused of outward cold, by the tale of the sicke, because either he hath sitten vpon cold things, or he hath taken much cold in winter, or he hath taried long in cold water: you may know the humours by that which he auoideth, which either be cholericke or flegmaticke. In a botch or bile his egestion is matter and corruption, & he feeleth pricking in the fundament. Inflammation causeth swelling of the right bowell, & grievous paine together with a feuer: abundance of dung causeth feeling of grievous distention, and stretching out about the bottome of the belly. The cure is diuers according to the diuersity of causes. Therefore if the *Tenasmus* be caused of cold, you must minister pure and vnmixed wine, hore, and you must sprinckle, foment, & nourish the share & the parts about the priuy members with hot oils and foment, as are, oiles of rew and lillies: also bran sodden in wine, & put in a bag, may wel be applied to the fundament. Also it is good to throw in clisters made of the decoction of wild mints, origan, calamint, cammomill, fothernewood, seed of annise, fennell, & such like, putting to it oiles of dil, cammomil, and lillies. Also it is marvellous good if you take a very old tile which is black with smoke, & bray it with the gere that is contained in it, then commix it together with seething vineger, and bind it vp in a cloth, and apply it to the fundament by and by after he hath auoided any thing. But if the *Tenasmus* be caused through cholericke humours withholden and remaining in the bowels and fundament, you must cast in clisters which haue vertue and power to scour, wash and cleanse, as this is: *Rx.* of the liquor of the decoction of barley. *℥j.* sugar roset. *℥j.* *℞.* *mel rosarum.* *℥j.* yolkes of egges. *ij.* oile of roses. *℥iij.* commixe them and make a clister: he must eschue all sharpe things, and he must vse things meanly cold and moist, and all those things which do stop and temperate the sharpenesse of choler. If *Tenasmus* be caused of flegmaticke humours, it shall be healed like that which is caused of cold, only adding to & commixing with the clisters, such medicines as haue vertue to purge steame, as is *Eleuatrium nidum* or *diaphanicon*, or *benedicta laxatiua*. And if *Tenasmus* be engendred of inflammation, cast in broth of prisan, wherein hath bene sodden a few red roses, or if vehement inflammation do trouble him, minister this clister. *Rx.* of the licour of the decoction of plantain. *℥v.* oile of roses. *℥ij.* the white of one egge, commix them together & make a clister. Outwardly you must sprinckle and annoint the place between the priuy members, and the fundament with oile of rew, and mirtels: or apply this foment. *Rx.* red roses, plantaine. ana. *M. j.* *balaustie.* *℥iij.* *sidiorum.* *℥j.* mirtel berries. *℥ij.* leaues of briar. *℥j.* seeth all together in sufficient water, vntill the third part be consumed, then wette a sponge in the licour of that decoction, and apply it to the fundament. Moreover when there is need of suppuration, rotting or dissolving, apply foment made of the decoction of the root of *Althea*, of fenugreeke, cammomill, melilot and branne. If the *Tenasmus* be caused of an vicer or botch, first cast in the things which haue an absterfue and cleansing vertue: and then afterward

that

things that do glutinate and ioyne together must be vsed, *even as you did in the flux Dysenteria*. Also this ointment put into the fundament is good, *Rx. oile of roses. ʒ. i. ʒ. the mulcilage of gumme Tragacantha. ana. ʒ. iij. ceruse, burnt lead. ana. ʒ. ʒ. Aloes, frankensence. ana. ʒ. j. waxe, as much as is sufficient,* make an ointment, wherein dippe linnen clothes, and put them into the ruell. If the paine be wonderfull great, you may adde to the aforesaid things, *opium ʒ. j.* If the *Tenasmus* be caused through multitude and abundance of dung, *Tenasmus of multitude of dung. Clister leuittus* then in the beginning the dung must be brought out by little and little with soluble and gentle clisters, as this is, *Rx. mallowes, Althea, mercurie, beetes, leaues of blacke violets. ana. M. j. seedes of fenugreke and linseed. ana. ʒ. ʒ. boile them all in sufficient quantity of water to the third part: then take of the licour of that decoction. lb. j. medulla castia fistularis. ʒ. j. ʒ. common oile. ʒ. iij. salt beaten ʒ. j. and make a clister.* But of this one thing you must specially beware, that in this case you do minister no purgation at the mouth, for that would bring great perill and destruction to the patient, by reason of drawing of noe excrements from the whole body thither.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the Chollicke.

DE COLI DOLORIBVS.

THe Chollick, or paine which is bred in the gut called *Colon* of the Greeks, is caused many wayes; but it hath foure speciall causes. For sometime it is engendred through grosse and flegmaticke humours fallen downe within the thin skinne of the gut *Colon*. Also sometime through windinesse, which hath no roome to get out. Also it is caused through inflammation of the grosse & thicke gut stretching out and troubling or vexing. Also it is wont to engender through sharpe and gnawing humours, which do afflict and vexe the aforesaid bowell vehemently. Those that haue the chollicke engendred of a grosse and flegmaticke humour, they be griued and vexed aloft, all ouer the *Abdomen*, that is, the place which is vnder the mouth of the stomacke: specially they are griued where the gut *Colon* lieth: for there they feele paine, as though the gut were braied or bored through. Also they be fretted & haue disposition to vomit, belkings, sundry & strange vomitings and specially of fleame. Also the wombe is letted and stopped, and sendeth forth nothing, not so much as wind. Also the dung which sometime commeth forth, doth looke like oxes dung, and it is light & full of wind. And there goeth before these things continuall vsing of meates that be very cold and of a grosse iuyce, also filling with meats, ill digestion, & crudity, idleness, & such as be adioyning to these. Those that haue the chollicke caused of windinesse, they feele extensio, stretching forth & bolning. They that haue the chollicke caused through inflammation, they feele inward burning and heat, & no small feuer: also retention both of the vrine & ordure. Also they are troubled with thirst, burning heat, disposid to vomit & vomiting specially of choler without any ceasing of the euill at all. And this is the most grievous & worst kind of chollicke, which doth threaten to turne into the paine of the *thia passio*. They that haue the chollicke engendred of sharp & gnawing humours, they be troubled & vexed with burning thirst & watching.

Signes of a
grosse humour

Signes of wind
diness.

Signes of in-
flammation.

Signes of sharp
and gnawing
humours.

*Diet for the
cholicke caused
of flegmaticke
and rough hu-
mours.*

*Cure of cholick
caused of grosse
humours.*

Clyster.

*Clam.
Vomitus.*

*Infection.
Vinum absyn-
thys.*

yea and small feuers, the vrine is made sharpe, and cholericke humours are throwen out oftentimes, going to the stoole doth raise greater paine and torment. Also meats & drinckes that be hote, being receiued do prouoke it grievously. The diet and cure of this disease is diuers according to the diuersitie of the causes. Therefore when grosse and clammy humors do cause the cholicke, the whole diet must be extenuate and made thinne. Therefore let the bread which the sick shal eat be new & well baked in an oven or furnace. Fleish is good specially of birdes, as hens, partrich, wood culuers, turtles, blackbirds, and doves: he must eschue all kind of foules which do swim or lue in waters, all those things which do abound with many superfluities. Among foure footed beast the flesh of calves & kids are good. He must eschue all kind of pulse, which do marvellous hurt in this disease. For potherbes you must vse fennell *apium*, *asperage* & such like. Also it will not hurt to take garlike & oinions raw. To be short let his food be easie of digestion and ingendring good iuice. Let him eschue fulnesse & cruditie: he must drinke wine that is somewhat restrictive, white, thinne, shining, of meane age, temperately alayed, and let him drinke but litle. For the cure of the cholicke caused of grosse humours: you must cure it so, that you do not heat vehemently with no medicines, for such remedies do spread abroad, pufte vp, and make windie all cold and grosse humours, which puffing vp and spreading in the bowels doth cause more vehement paine. Therefore it is good to deuide, cut, and digest those humors without vehement paine or heate, and by vsing of those things which do not pufte vp and make windie. Therefore in his sharpe and extreame paine make irrigations of the oiles of rew, cammomill, & dill. Also make fomentis and *sacculi* of the flowers of cammomill, dill, and melilote, seedes of flaxe, or fenugreeke, of *Althea*, of mill and branne. Also clisters made with the oiles aforesaid, & with the decoction of the aforesaid herbes are marvellous good, or with the decoction of the roote of wild cucumbers, putting to it comin, or rew, with goose grease, or hennies grease after this sort. *Rx.* mallowes, *Althea* cammomill, mercurie, dill. ana. *M. j.* origan, calamint, peniroidall. ana. *M. ss.* seedes of flaxe, fenugreeke, comin, louage. ana. *ʒ. iij.* seeth al together with wel-water of iust quantity, vntill the third part. Then take of the licour of that decoction being strained. *℞. i.* *Hierapicra*. *ʒ. ss.* *benedicta laxatina*. *ʒ. v.* of *Electarium nidu*. *ʒ. j.* *ss.* of *melrosarum* strained. *ʒ. ss.* oiles of cammomill, dill, and rew. ana. *ʒ. j.* the yolkes of egges in number two, common salt. *ʒ. j.* commixe all together and make a clister. Also the putting in of suppositaries, and annointing of the fundament made by iuice of *Ciclamini*, with hony and salt-peter, or centorie with honic and salt-peter do profit. Example of a suppositarie is this. *Rx.* of hony sodden. *ʒ. j.* *ss.* powder of *Hierapicra*. *ʒ. j.* *colocinthid*. *ʒ. j.* salt gemme. *ʒ. ss.* commixe them and make long suppositaries. Also vomiting before supper, if the patient can vomit easly, doth helpe aboue all other things. Moreouer after the purging, if the paine hath bin prolonged for many dayes, let him go into a great vessell of hot oile if it may be had. Also it is good to sit in the decoction of *Althea*, peniroidall, laurell leaues, fenugreeke, camomill, motherwort, dill, & such like. The most couenient medicine against the cholick, is wine wherein wormwood hath bene infused or sodden, if they neede drinking after a bath:

it is also verie profitable for them that they thirst not. Also decoction of the herbe it selfe, when it hath once boiled being commixed with wine, may commodiously be ministred after a bath. Also *Castoreum* continually drunke, doth destroy the disease viterly: and it is better then all medicines. It is ministred to the sicke $\mathfrak{z}$ in three *Cyathes* of *aqua mulsa*. And if the paine do not cease & rest, you must minister *diatriuin piperion*, or *theriaca*. If that the pain be vchement it is good to vse medicines that do meanely ease, make soluble, and mitigate, as well put in beneath as also given to drink. For you must eschue those things that do stupefact and astonie strongly, because they do somewhat ease and mitigate, but they make the disease longer by making the humours more grosse, and thickning of the passages of the bowels. If the cholicke be caused of windiness, you must cast in clisters that do dissolue wind, as this is. *R. sothern wood, origan, peniroiall, calamint, cammomill, ana. M. j. rew, mints, wild mints, ana. M. ss. feedes of annise, fennell, carawayes, comin, dill, louage, and daucus, ana. 3. ij. seeth all together vnto the third part: then take of the licour of that decoction strained. ʒ. j. hierapicra, benedicta laxatiua, ana. 3. ss. Castoreum. 3. j. powder of diacuminum 3. ij. oiles of rew and dill. ana. 3. j. ss. common salt. 3. j. ss. comix them a' together and make a clister.* Also there may be added to the aforesaid things the confectio of bay berries: for there is nothing of more effect to dissolue and driue away windines. Also it is good to minister daily the quantity of one hazell nut of the said decoction or electuary of laurell berries in the decoction of some cutting and extenuating medicine. Apply outwardly vpon the belly aloft, fomentes and irrigations of such things as do disperse and scatter windinesse, as these be, besides the aforesaid things, *ingella aminilum*, parcels, bitter almondes, blacke pepper, wild mints, bay berries, wormewood, nettle seed, gladon, marioram, cinamon and others: of these therefore you may make Cataplasmes, fomentes, and bagges. But that which farre excelleth all the rest (as Galen witnesseth) is a great cupping glasse fastened lightly with abundant flame to the whole belly aloft, which doth marvellously as it were by enchantment. Let the sicke beware of and eschue wine that is alayed, and drinking of cold water, and also from vsing of milke and other things that doe coole, and from meates and drincks which engender windinesse. And let him rather vse to drinke wine that is vnmixed and pure, and let him vse a diet which doth heate and cutte or deuide. If the cholicke be caused of inflammation of the bowels, you must open the veine in the arme. But if difficultie and hardnesse of making water, do rule and beare a sway, you must draw bloud from the veines of the ankle. Also you must vse the aforesaid remedies, excepting sharpe things and vehement purgers. And you must rather vse clisters mitigating and easing paine, also cataplasmes and irrigations, and going downe into oile. Also fasten to them cupping glasses. Let the diet be thinnke, almost the diet of feuers, vntil the inflammation be slaked. And if the cholicke be caused through sharpe and gnawing or fretting humors, it is good to poure in at the fundament those things that can wash out and purge those humors without any mordacity and gnawing: as is broth of pusan, or the decoction of fenugreece, linseed, cammomil, and althea, with fresh goose-grease, or hens greale and oile of roses. This clister is

*Castoreum.**Asodina.**Cure of the cholicke caused of windinesse. Clister.**Compositio ex bacchi lauri.**Note.**Diet.**Cure of cholicke caused of inflammation.**Diet.**Cure of cholicke caused of sharpe and gnawing humours. Clister.*

specially good. *R.* leaues of violets, both the tame endiuies, leaues of *Althaa*,
 cammomill. ana. *M. j* ss. seeds of fenugreeke, *℞. ana* *℥. ss.* boyle these in iust
 quantitie of water, vntill the third part be consumed. Then take of the licour
 of that decoction being strained. *℥. xiiij.* *caffa* *ss.* *℥. j.* *Hierapiera*. *℥. vj.* oyle of
 roses. *℥. ij.* oyle of dill. *℥. j.* goose greafe, and hens greafe. ana. *℥. iij.* yolkes of eggs
 in number two, commixe them all and make a clister. Moreouer you must
 not only purge the hurtfull and corrupt humours, but also you must temper
 and moderate them. Therefore he must vse bathes of sweet water, for they do
 mitigate and also prouoke sleepe: for which purpose minister sirupe of vio-
 lets, and roses, and such like, which are able to temperate and stop the vio-
 lence of the gnawing humours. Also he must vse souping meates, as ptisans
 and brothes of fishes of stony places. He must abstaine from all hote and
 sharpe things, whether they be meates, or medicines, or cataplasmes, or fo-
 ments, or irrigations that be hote: as also he must abstaine from drinking of
 wine, especially from old wine. And to be short, let his whole diet be cold and
 moist. If the paine be not a whit released, but do rage more vehemently, then
 you must come to the vsing of stupefactiue things. For in this disease they do
 not only pleasure and profite by a stonying of the sense and feeling, but also be-
 cause they make the thin humors more thicke and grosse, and do quench the
 intollerable heat. Among stupefactiue things *Philonium* is special good, of the
 which you may minister for the most part one whole dram. Also pils of houeds
 tongue are maruellous good, if, as is afore taught you do make fixe pils of *℥. j.*
 and minister one of them to be swallowed before they go to bed. But there be
 verie manie things which do helpe the cholicke with their whole vertue and
 substance: among the which white dung of a wolfe taken with water or thin
 white wine is not the worst. That dung is better which hangeth on hearbs or
 bushes, then that which toucheth the ground. Also the said dung of the wolfe
 easeth the cholicke being bound to the llions. Greene mints as *Aetius* affir-
 meth, sodden awhile and drunke three dayes, healeth cholicke.

Pictus ratio.

Stupefactiua.

Philonium.

*Pilula de cy-
neglossa.*

Lib. 9. cap. 31.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Iliacapassio.

DE ILIO.

THE *Iliacapassio*, is a disease causing most grievous & deadly paine in the
 small guts. The Latines do call this disease *volvulus* & *convolvulus*. The bar-
 barous do call it *Iliacapassio*. This disease is caused through continuall corrup-
 tion & crudity of meates, but specially of fat meates, which, if they be without
 corruption, & being withhol'den, they engender obstructions in the smal guts:
 Also it is engendred of certain stripes & blowes in certaine places in which the
 smal guts do ly. Also through vehement cold, restraining & withholding of the
 excrements. Moreouer through abundant drinking of cold things, specially
 if much be taken when they sweate. Also it chanceth to them whose bowels
 be fallen into the cods together with the dung: and being violently thrust
 backe from thence againe, and through that it is enflamed. Also it is caused
 through drinking of deadly medicines, & through hard dung being impact a-
 bout the thin bowel. For the most part this disease is engendred either through
 inflam.

Causa.

inflammation, or through obstruction of the drie dung. This disease is common to children, but yet they escape it through helpe of naturall humiditie. It is not wont to chance verie often to old men: but if they chance to haue it, they almost be neuer rid of it. They that haue this disease haue most vehement paine, & some swelling of the thin and small guts sticketh out, that it seemeth wounden together like a string called *Chorda*, whereupon many do call this disease *Chordapson*: also there is ouermuch moistnesse of the stomack, losenesse, vaine and emptie belkings, and doing no ease, rumbling and noise of the bowels, perfect stopping and letting of the dung and of windinesse. If the euill do increase and waxe greater, he auoideth all vpward, and therefore he vomiteth vp fleame and choler, he hath coldnesse of the whole bodie, and paine. Also to many there chanceth difficulty & hardnesse of breathing. Moreover to them that shall die, there chanceth cold sweat, difficultie and hardnes of making water, yea the fundament is so bound & close, that no small instrument will enter in: and sometime dung is cast vp by vomiting. For the cure of this disease, you must cure children with irrigations, cataplasmes, clysters, suppositaries, and fomentes, as is declared in the chapter of the Collicke. But the cure of them that be of age must differ according to the diuersitie of causes. Therefore if *liaca passio* be caused of cruditie and ill digestion, & through decouring and eating of many and diuerse meates which yet remaine in the stomack, you must prouoke vomit with things aforesaid. But if there do remain no raw and vndigest meates in the stomack, you must go about by all meanes to draw out beneath aswell windinesse as also the dung: and that must be done by clysters, suppositaries, and annointings with great diligence in each of them. Therefore you must cast in this clister. *R.* mercurie, rew, leaues of *Althea*, centorie. ana. *M. j.* hyssop, calamint, wormewood. ana. *M. j.* *℞.* root of *Althea*. *℥. j.* roore of wilde cucumber. *℥. j.* *℞.* seedes of flaxe and fenugreeke. ana. *℥. iij.* seedes of commin. *℥. ij.* boile them in iust quantitie of water, vntill the third part be consumed, then take of the liquor of that decoction being strained *℥. xiiij.* of *Benedicta laxatiua*. *℥. j.* fresh butter, *mel rosarum* strained. ana. *℥. ℞.* oyles of rew and dill. ana. *℥. j.* *℞.* common salt. *℥. j.* commixe them together and make a clister, and cast it in before meate: but if the euill be vehement, cast it in also after meate: and you must warne the patient, that he do hold it as long as he can. Also you must make suppositaries, as you do for the chollicke, putting to them seedes of rew, commin, and stalkes of coleworts. And you must make them the longer, that they may pierce the deeper. Also you must annoint the fundament with iuice of *Scilaminum*, or hony with mercur or saltpeter. The fomentes and cataplasmes wherewith this euill is cured, be almost such as are spoken of in the chapter of the chollicke. Also fomentes made of wooll wet in oile, wherein commin, dill, rew, and cresses haue bene sod, be very good. Also emplaisters made of linefeed, fenugreeke barly meale, darnell meale, rew, commin, seedes of dill, and *apium*, are good. Also it is good to descend into a vessell filled with water and oile: but seeth in the water *Althea*, rew, and dill. After these, fasten on cupping glasses, first lightly to places somewhat farre off & then also to the places that are grieved, making deep scarification. Also it is good to minister purgations, specially if the dung be

Curatio.

Cure if it come of cruditie.

Clysters.

Glandes.

Illutions.

Fomenta.

Cataplasma.

Cucurbitula.

Purgatio.

Cure of Iliaca
passio caused of
poison.

Cure if it be of
inflammation.

Cure if it be of
the falling of
the bowels into
the coddies.

drawn out first by such things as are before rehearsed. It is marvellous good if they vomit by drinking dill sodden. After drinking, cast bread into scalding water, and minister peeces of it to eate by and by hote. They that haue the *Iliacapassio* engendred through taking of some venomous medicine, you must giue them much warme water, and let them drinke it, and constraîne them to vomit. After that you must giue them hot oile in drinke, or fat broth, that they may vomite againe. After within a few dayes giue him *theriaca* dissolued in wine, and let him eate meates of good iuyce. And if the obstruction do continue still, emptie the belly with milke, with a litle scammonie, or *Aloes*, or some other purging medicine. If the *Iliacapassio* be engendred through inflammation, you must beginne with blood letting: then you must fasten cupping glasses about the inflamed parts scarifying them. Also cast in clisters made of the decoction of mallowes, fenugreeke, linsseed, with oile & butter. Also apply outwardly those things that are good against inflammations, and do ease paine: you must prescribe vnto them a most thinne diet. If the *Iliacapassio* be caused through falling of the bowels into the coddies, you must by and by labour (the patient lying vpright) to thrust backe againe the bowels that are fallen downe to the state, and keepe it vp easily without violence or pressing of it together, with bands and trusses applied, conuenient for it.

CHAP. XIX.

Of wormes.

DE LUMBRI C I S.

Teretes.

Lati.

Ascarides.

Causa.

*Signes of round
wormes, teretes.*

THERE be three kinds of worms. The first be round and long, named *Teretes*. The second be broad, called therefore *Lati*. The third, those be called *Ascarides*. The first kind of wormes called *Teretes*, according to their thicknesse they be round and a hand breadth in length, and sometime longer, and they be commoner then other. They be often in the slender and small guts, & they go into the stomacke, and therefore they are voided often by the mouth, and to some also they come out at the nosegthrills. And this kind of worms is peculiar to infants, and children, and boies, and girles. The second kind of wormes called *Lati*, be broad & long like a gard or band. They be of incredible length, as *Plinie* witnesseth lib. 2. cap. 33. Sometime they are seene three hundred foote long, and sometime more. This kind of worme (as *Paulus* and *Aetius* witnesse) is nothing else but a permutation and changing of the thinne filmes going about the small guttes within, into a certaine living bodie, that will moue and stirre. The third kind of worms called *Ascarides*, be thinne and short like small wormes. They be found most commonly in the right gut, & in the end of the fundament. All the aforesaid kinds be engendred and caused of crude, raw, grosse, & flegmaticke matter, and through inconuenient rottennesse, such as is gathered specially in children, and in other great eaters. They that haue round wormes do feele incredible gnawing of the bowels, & of the stomack, thinne and small conghs, and oftentimes prouoking and drie. In many there followeth yelking and sleepe with mouing of the stomacke: and also they do arise vp vnreasonably. Many do awake and leape vp with noise, and crying out, and fall a sleepe againe: but some do both put forth their tongue, and shut their

their eyes and be quiet, and keepe silence, & do fret & fume with them which raise them, because they cannot watch they be so weak. Some haue their eyes sprinkled with bloud, & a pulse that is vnequall, obscure, sayling and running backe. Also to many there chanceth losse of appetite. Children while they do sleepe chew their tongue, and also fashioning of their mouth as though they sucked or receiued meat. Also to some there chanceth gnashing of the teeth. But these things are done by litle and litle and between whiles. To some they run forth into the stomacke, and do cause gnawing and disposition to vomit, and the patients refuse meat; and if they be compelled to eat, they scarce can swallow that which they take, or they vomit it vp againe. In many the belly doth throw out corrupt meats, and is puffed vp like as it were a timpany. The rest of the body it doth consume and make leane without reason, neither fasting going before, nor vneasurable purging being made. Also it chaunceth sometime the face to be made verrie redde, specially about the bals of the cheekes; but this colour turneth againe into swartnesse. Some do speake foolish things in their sleepe like franticke persons. Some change the place that they lye downe in, and tumble and cast them selues from place to place: they increase feuers in them without order, with vehement coldnes of the extreme partes, hauing fits the third or fourth day without order. But also these signes & tokens altogether which we haue now reherfed, must not euery one of the be looked for in euery body: but the chiefest of them & sometime many. Broad wormes do bring continual gnawing of the stomack, & an impotent & incorrigible appetite to meat. For the worme that is in the guttes, deuoureth the meat that is eaten, so that he hath need of more straight way, & except he eat straightway, the bowels are gnawn: they that are thus diseased there followeth slendernes & weaknes of the body with inequality. The most sure & infallible signe is, if certain things like cucuber seeds be auoided out with the egestion of excrements. *Ascarides* do raise a vehement itch in the fundamet, & do prouoke the patient to go to the stooles continually. They that be troubled with this disease for the most part be the better after egestion & easing themselves. Let their diet be hot & dry, specially if the patient lack a feuer, & let them vse meates of good iuice, and which wilbe soone disperfed throughout the whole body: & such as do not increase the cause that engedreth worms. Therefore all meates are to be eschued, which can ingender flegmatick humors. Moreover they that are troubled with worms, must be nourished and fed liberally, and may not suffer hunger, because the worms except they haue meate to feed on, they then by & by gnaw the hard parts of the body: but giue them meat at that time, specially when they are not altogether empty. Let them drinke no strong drink. For the cure, it is not to be spared: & sometime if there be a feuer with it, you must haue respect to that, & to the worms also: & sometime you need to be careful but a litle for the feuer, and you must be diligent notwithstanding to get the worms out of the bodie. Therefore when many haue not spied and known this, it cometh to passe for lack of heed taken to auoid the worms, that they be gnawn and eaten, of them, and so being pulled & gnawn, they dy. The cure as well of the round wormes as of the flat wormes consisteth in this point, that you may driue them out of the body, being first killed.

Signes of brode wormes, Lati.

Signes of Ascarides.

Curatio.

*Simples to kill
wormes.*

Aloes.

Composita.

Pulvis.

Inguentum.

Cerotum.

Ruffi.

Pillule.

*Cure if fluxe of
the wombe be
ioyned with
wormes.*

They are killed specially with bitter medicins, among which (if a feuer be not present) these simples are good: wormewood, *Setyphium*, which is a kind of wormewood growing in the sea, sothernwood, calamint, horehound, dittanie, hysope, reu, leaues of persica, coriander seedes, harts horne, lupines, mintes, peniroidall, organ, sentorie, ferne, gentian, *aristolochia rotunda*, garlike, seed of colewortes, and roote of *Enula campana*. To these, if a feuer be present, you must adioyne the seeds of both the endiuies, and also the iuice of their herbes. Among all other, the most commendable remedie is aloes. Therefore if infants will hardly take aloes, because it is so bitter, you must keep them vpright with bands, and their mouth being opened and separated, you must cast it in against their walles, with a certayne pipe strengthened with a long splent. Of these aforesaid simples now rehearsed, there may be made diuers compounds, as decoctions, powders, cataplasmes, emplasters, & ointments. Among other things this powder is chely good. *Rx.* of wormseed. *℥.ij.* of centory, wormewood, harts horne burnt, ana. *℥.j.* calamint, peniroidall, organ ana. *℥.℥.* sothernwood, mintes, lupines, leaues of *aristolochia rotunda*, ana. *℥.j.* aloes. *℥.ij.* com-mix them altogether, and make a powder, of the which minister the weight of one drachme, or halfe a drachme, according to the age and state of the bodie of the sicke, in milke or hony, or sirupe of squorice, for those things which do kill the wormes must be ministered with sweet liquors, that thereby the wormis may tast of the medicine the sooner, being allured by the sweetnesse of it that is ministered with it. You must anoint the navel outwardly with buls gall or with this ointment. *Rx.* oiles of bitter almonds, and of wormewood, ana. *℥.j.* bulles gall, *℥.℥.* centory, wormewood, lupines, ana. *℥.ij.* leaues of persica, harts horne burnt, aloes, sothernwood, ana. *℥.j.* waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Or apply all ouer the stomack this cerote. *Rx.* aloes, wormewood, meale of lupines, ana. *℥.ij.* *nigella*, mintes, organ, peniroidall, horehound, ana. *℥.j.* centory, calamint, ana. *℥.℥.* oiles of wormewood, and bitter almonds, ana. *℥.ij.* *oleum costium*, *℥.j.* bulles gall, *℥.℥.* with waxe and resin, as much as shall suffice, make a cerot. By examples of these you may easily make emplasters and cataplasmes, so that I need not to rehearse here any example of ech of them. Moreover it is good to cast in beneath abundance of *mulla*, that thereby the wormes being allured by the sweetnesse of the hony, may creepe, downeward. But when the wormes are killed with the aforesaid medicins, you must driue them out without delay: for there proceedeth a vicious exhalation from them, which both destroyeth appetite and hurteth digestion, and being lifted vpward, it causeth swemmings, and other euils. The wormes being killed are driuen oue for the most part by suppositaries and purgations, but specially by *hierapiera* and *pillule pestilentialis*, or *ruffi*, which haue a maruelous efficacy in killing and bringing out of wormes. But those that are troubled with wormes and with fluxe of the wombe also: those you must cure by thickning of the fluxe, & by changing the digestion into a better state, as well with meats, as also with cataplasmes, for the more that the fluxe preuaileth, so much the more the engendring of wormes is increased, and againe the fluxe ceasing, the wormes do rest and pause. Therefore you must diligently labour to stop & restraine the wombe, & to ad fastnesse and strength to it. Therefore minister

minister iuice of plantaine, or else let him take dried plantaine; for both haue like efficacy as well against the fluxe, as also against wormes. Also make cataplasmes, cerotes and ointments of raw barley meale, pomgranate rinds, *hypocistidos*, & such like restrictive things; but adde vnto them those things which be good to kill wormes. Restrictiue medicines are good to be applied outwardly for this caule, because they do corroborate and strengthen againe the stomacke, being hurt through often vsing of bitter medicines. Also it is lawfull in this case to minister earth wormes being dried, and beaten to powder with *hydromel*. The wormes called *Ascarides*, being in children that be infants, they must be brought out with suppositaries made of hony and salt. In them that be elder, they must be brought out with clisters, made either with sharpe brine, or with decoction of wormwood, centorie, calamint, lupines, penitroyall, and other aboue rehearsed, putting to oyles. After ministration of clisters, annoint the straight gut, or fundament with these simples; that is, *Asatir*, *hypocistidos*, iuice of *Sumach*, or some other restrictive medicine. For the flesh being constrained by restrictive things, it looseth the abilitie that ingendreth wormes, and it excludeth and shutteth out the *ascarides*. But this that followeth is good both for children, and for those that be of greater age, and is most effectuouse. Take old flesh that is powdred, cut off the fat, and fashion it long and round, like a suppositary fit for the fundament, and thrust it into the tuell, applying a ligament or band, and let it alone within as long as they can suffer it; then loosen it, and draw it out together with the wormes that sticke on it. After that you shall powre in the things aforesaid, and also annoint it as aforesayd.

CHAP. XX.

Of the Hemorrhoides.

DE HEMMORHOIDIBVS.

THe Hemorrhoides is an vnfoling and spreading abroad of the veines in the tuell. Of these some be blind, which do smell, and do send out none, or very little bloud: some be open, which be set wide open abroad certaine times, and do send forth bloud. The hemorrhoides are caused through dregie and melancholie bloud, when there is abundance thereof, which the liuer sendeth to those veines. The signes whereby this euill is knowne, need not to be required. For the blind hemorrhoids may be seene with eies, & they cause vehement paine, specially in auoiding the dung. But the open hemorrhoids do bleed, therefore the patient cannot be ignorant what they be. Therefore when blind hemorrhoids appeare, and do raise great tormenting in the fundament, if the bodie be full of humours, cut the veine of the hamme or of the ankle bones. Also you must make the belly soluble abundantly, lest the drie dung, while it is sent forth, do engender paine. Also you must apply where vehement paine is, those things that can and will mitigate. Among which are crummes of bread steeped in milke, and sodden with yolkes of egges, and applied like a plaister. Also it profiteth to sit in a bath made of the decoction of mallows, violet leaues, melilot, fenugreeke, cammomill, leaues of *Althea*, linseed, flowers of rose campion, and such like. And if the patient cannot vse that, wet wooll or a sponge in the said decoction, & apply it to the grieve. And

Cure of wormes

des.

Cec.

Aperte.

Causa.

Signa.

Curatio cecum

rum.

To open the
hemorrhoides.

Emplastrum.

Glandes.

Curatio aper-
tarum.

6. Epid. par. 3
aph. 19.

Diet.

Curatio.

if these afore said things do no good, you must get bloud out of them. There-
fore put into the tuell wooll annointed with iuice of *cyclaminum*, or with oni-
ons, or with oxe gall. The same effect also hath the iuice of centory, douds
dung, stauesacre, figge leaues, if they be rubbed with it, and also the pulpe of
colocynthis steeped in oile of bitter almonds. Among many other, this emplai-
ster is very good. R. of douds dung ʒ. β. seed of stauesacre, lupines. ana. ʒ. j.
β. bitter almonds ʒ. j. pulpe of *coloquintida*. ʒ. β. iuices of *cyclaminum*, & onions
ana. ʒ. j. commixe them all together, and make it like a plaister, putting to it if
need be, oile of bitter almonds. But to take away the paine presently, vse this
following R. elder leaues. M. j. boile them in water vntill they be very ten-
der, then take a peece of scarlet, as much as a mans hand or greater, and wet
it in the decoction, and lay it to the place as warme as may be suffred, & whē
it is cold lay it too again, being wet in the same decoction as before. Do thus
fue or sixe times together, then lay the herbes vpon the same scarlet, lay the
herbes very hote also, this doth mollifie the hemorrhoides, & ceaseth the
paines very quickly, which my self haue often proued. Also you may put long
suppositaries in the fundament, made of the roote of *cyclaminum*. Also bloud-
suckers, or horse leaches, being included in a reed, so that they can put forth
but onely their head, are wont to be put to the hemorrhoides to open the:
and if you cannot pull them away easily, strew ashes or salt vpon their heads,
and you shall make them to fall off alone. But if the hemorrhoides be open,
and do auoid out bloud meanelly at certaine times, they may not be stopped,
for the bursting out of such bloud doth cause men that haue this disease, to
be free from many other diseases: which thing *Hippocrates* witnesseth, where
he saith in *Epidemijs* these words; they which haue the hemorrhoids, neither
be vexed with paine of the sides, nor inflammation of the lungs, nor a fee-
ding vlcere, nor with felons, or cattles haire, nor with *terniuitis*, nor with le-
prius, nor with morpheus. But if the hemorrhoids do throw out bloud im-
moderately, or longer then they should do, so that the patient do consume and
wast away with this euil, and their strength decayed and throwne down, they
must be stopped by and by: but otherwise there is perill in stopping them: but
in this case it is to doubt, lest the drop sicke shold follow, the liuer being cooled
through immoderate vacuation and purging. Therefore let those that be so
emptied and purged out of measure, vse meates that haue but litle bloud, and
that do engender but litle superfluities or excrements, and which also do dry
and restraine, as is *Alia* and rice. Of potherbes, endiue, succorie, purslaine,
and such like. Commix his meat with *sumach*, and iuice of vnripe grapes. If his
strength be much weakned, you must nourish and feed the sicke with meate
thus; you must straine out the iuice that is in the meate, and commix with it
iuice of quinces, and let him soupe that vp: he must drinke wine that is restri-
ctiue. For the cure, if there be abundance of humors in the body, it profiteth to
cut the inner veine of the right hand in the arme: but if there be not, you must
studie to auert and turne away the bloud by fastning of cupping glasses to the
sides, & to the liuer. For the which purpose it is good to bind the hands & the
feete with bands, & to vse sharp and hard frictions and rubbings. Moreover
you must minister within the bodie those things which do restraine, as are si-
rupes

rupes of roses, of mirtels, of quinces, red corall, bolearmoniacke, trochiskes of amber, of *spodium*, of *terra lemnia*, and other which be rehearsed in the Ch. of spitting of blood. Also apply those things outwardly, which can stop bloud that floweth. Among which as *Aetius* witnesseth. lib. 14. cap. 5. is aloes laied on with posca. The same effect also hath scales of iron or burnt lead. This medicine is notable good wch is described of *Galen* lib 5. *therap. method.* Rx. of frankensence one part, of aloes one part and a half, commix them with the white of an egge, vntill all come to the thicknesse of hony, and lay it vpon the soft haire of an hare, and apply it to the place that bleedeth, being bound outwardly with bands of fine linnen. Also ointments, baths, iniections, fomentes, and other such like medicines, made of things hauing a restrictiue vertue do profite, whereof you shall find many examples before in the chapters of *Diarrhea*, *Lieberia*, *Dysenteria* & *Tenasmus*. And if you shall vse litle bags, it is best before you apply them, to boile them in wine that is red and restrictiue, or at the least to sprinkle them with it. Examples of other medicines seeke before.

Medicamentū Galeni.

Sacculi.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the falling out of the tuell.

DE PROCIDENTIA ANI.

IT chanceth sometime, that resolution or weaknesse of the ouerthwart muscles which do plucke the fundament vpward, doth cause the tuell to fall out, *Cause.* Wherefore seeing it cannot be drawne backward againe, nor pulled vpward of the aforesaid muscles, it hath need of hands or medicines to put it vp againe. When the tuell is fallen out, you must diligently consider whether it be free from inflammation or no; for if it be not inflamed at all, it must by and by be thrust and put to his former place by compulsion: and because it must not fall out againe, after that it is thrust in, and put vp into his owne place, you must apply restrictiue medicines outward to it. Therefore first you must annoint it about with oile of roses being warmed, or scour the tuell with restrictiue wine, *Curatio.* and then being put vp againe into his place, you must bind him vp. And that you must do by and by, as soone as the sicke hath bene at the stoole, least that when necessitie constraineth them to go to the stoole againe, the tuell should fall out againe. You must apply a liniment of *acatia* and *hypocischidos* with wine. Also you must seeth in water till it be red, galles, *balaustie*, shels of mast, pomgranate rindes, daisies, sumach, shales of quinces, and such like, and after ward of that decoction make iniections and washing. But after that the tuell is washed with wine or with some restrictiue decoction, then it is lawfull to strew vpō it & to apply to it dry medicins. For which purpose you must apply bolearmoniacke, frankensence, *sanguis draconis*, gals, *acatia*, mirrhe, *hypocischidos*, hartshorne, & such other restrictiue medicins, as we haue rehearsed often before. But if the tuell through inflammation be so swollen that it cannot be thrust vp againe, if the bodie be full of humours, you must first cut a veine, and prouoke vomit. And also you must apply to the tuell by and by in the beginning, those things that do restrain & stop or appease: but if there be no abundance of humors in the body, let the sick vse iniections of the decoction of cammomil, mallowes, *althea*, linseed, fenugreek, & such like, or let him descend into ho-

water, and carrie in it for a time. Also it is lawfull to apply a sponge or wooll wer in the decoction. Moreouer you must annoint the tuell with oiles of camomill, and dill, vntill it may be put vp: for they becaufe of their dissolving vertue, do readily take away the swelling, and do also cause that it may be put vp againe, without any difficultie or paine. But after it is put vp againe, then you must vse the aforesaid restrictive medicines, that it fall not out againe.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the clefts of the fundament.

DE RIMIS ANI.

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

Vnguentum.

Aliud.

Clefts of the fundamēt, be chaps which are made in the muscle that shutteth the fundament, or in the circle round about the fundament: they be like the chaps which are made through a North wind on the lips. They are caused through flowing of sharpe humors, or through inflammation, or through extention of the swelling of the tuell. This euill is apparant to the eyes, and therefore we need to shew no signes to declare it by. For the cure, if the clefts of the fundament be ingendred of sharpe humors, then they first of all must be purged and rempered. But if it be caused through swelling of the fundament caused of inflammation, you must likewise vse at the beginning purging medicines. Also the bellie all the time of the cure must be kept soluble with meates that do moisten, and fat meates, lest drie dung should hinder, and tarie the conglutination. Of such qualities be mallowes, spinach, milke of sweete Almonds, soft egges, fat broth, and such other like. But to the chaps themselues you must vse this ointment. R. of the oiles of roses and mirles. ana. ʒ. j. frankensence, masticke, litarge, *sanguis draconis*. ana. ʒ. j. aloes, burnt lead, ceruse, *ba-laustia*, bole armoniacke, ana. ʒ. ʒ. white waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Or thus, R. oile of roses. ʒ. j. ʒ. galles, mirrhe, *terra lemnia*, ana. ʒ. j. roote of comferie, roch alume, burnt lead, ana. ʒ. ʒ. the yolke of an egge being roasted, waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. With these ointments you must annoint the cleftes thrise on a day, but wash them first with decoction of roses, galles & *fidiorum*. And if burning and inflammation do vex the diseased place, you must annoint it with *vnguentum album camphoratum*.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the weakenesse of the liuer.

DE IMBECILLITATE IECINORIS.

Cause.

Signa.

Weakenesse of the liuer is caused of distemper, either hot, cold, moist, or drie. Hot distemper doth roste, and as it were burne vp as well the humours which were before in the liuer, as also those humours which are caried to the liuer by the veines *mesenterij*. But cold distemper doth make the flegmaticke and raw humor, which is already contained in the liuer, grosse & rough, and hard to be moued, and the humours that be caried to the liuer, it leaueth them halfe digested. Drie distemper doth make the humors drier and thicker, Moist distemper doth make the humours thin & more watery. Therefore they which haue weake facultie and strength of the liuer, they are called *hepatici*, as Galen saith. Hot distemper vexing the liuer, there are *colliquations*, first

first of the humors, and after that of the liuer it selfe: also choler that is stinking and grosse is auoided by the belly, and is abundantly coloured: also a feuer vexeth him, he abhorreth meate and casteth vp choler. Moreouer thirst doth trouble them, their vrine is rough, & the pulse is swift. Whe there is cold distemper, they make not many excretions, nor much in quantity, the euill endureth long, and the belly floweth certaine daies abundantly. But the egestions be lesse stinking then those which be melted through heate, neither haue they colour also nor thickenesse, but are like putrifacted bloud which is curded. And if you do diligently marke it, it is neither curded bloud, nor blacke bloud, but as it were certaine slime and dregs of grosse bloud comming nigh to melancholy. And also diuers and many colours of the excrements do signify cold distemper. Also in it there appeareth a faint feuer: the face doth not fall, and he hath greater appetite of meates. To either of these distempers, if there come drinesse, the excrements will be drier and lesse, and the sicke wil be more thirstie. But if moistnesse come to either of them, the egestions wil be more liquide and more abundant, and they shall be lesse troubled with thirst. For the cure, the chiefe point is to amend the grief by contraries. Therefore you must coole a hot distemper, & heat a cold distemper. Likewise you must moisten a drie distemper, & dry a moisture. But in the cure, this must also be considered, that in all medicines for the liuer, as well those which be taken by the mouth inward, as also those that be applied to it outwardly, commixe some restrictiue things with them, whereby the strength and stabilitie of the liuer may be conserued and kept. Therefore in a hote distemper, for his diet, let him vse broth of Ptisan, and other meates that do meanely coole, as lettuce, endiue, succorie, sowthistle, and water and bread mixed together, or bread dipped in water. Also chickens, partrich, birdes of mountaines, and veale, these being sodden in veruein or limons. Of fruits let the sick eat raisins, limons, and sweet almonds. He must eschue wine altogether, except some other cause let it, as weakenes of the stomacke, for then you must minister thinne and wannie wine. Let them drinke for wine, iuice of pomegranates, and *syrupus acetosus simplex*. Also *oxisaccarum*, with decoction of barley or endiue. Also they must eschue all meates and drinks dressed with hony, and that be very hot, and haue verue to cut and deuide. For the cure minister vnto him by the mouth, conserue of roses, *diarrhodon abbatis*, *diatrion santalon*, and other such like antidotes. Also these lozenges profit. R the pouders of *Diarrhodon abbatis*, and of *diatrion santalon*. ana. ʒ. i. ʒ seeds of both the tame endiues, red roses. ana. ʒ. i. j. raisins ʒ. j. white sanders, withwind, floures of squinant. ana. ʒ. j. sugar. ʒ. v. dissolue it in the stilled waters of withwind & endiue that hath the brode leaues, and make lozenges. And also the antidote *Philonium* only once ministred, sometime hath maruellously healed all hot distemper of the liuer. Apply outwardly fomentis made of roses, cammomill and quinces, or seeth wormwood or dates in the aforelaid oiles of roses, cammomill and quinces, & then wet wool or a sponge in them, and lay that right against the liuer. Also you may vse this ointment. R oiles of roses, of quinces, and of water lillies. ana. ʒ. j. white sanders and red, red roses. ana. ʒ. j. scraping of iuory. ʒ. j. ʒ seeds of both the tame endiues. ana. ʒ. j. vineger. ʒ. j. ʒ purslain

Curatio.

Note.

Diet in a hote distemper.

Cure of a hote distemper. Orbiculi.

Pnguentum.

Epithema.

Seed, gr. ij. waxe as much as is sufficient and make an ointment. Also Epithemes in this disease are wont to profit not a litle; which may be made thus, or after this sort. *Rx.* the distilled waters of sowen Endiue with the broad leaues of lettuce, of sorrel, of roses, of water lillies. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ iij. iuice of fengreene $\mathfrak{z}$ j. vineger $\mathfrak{z}$ j. red roses, red sanders, shauing of iuoric. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. pouders of *Diarrhodon abbatis*, *diatrion santalon*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ ss. seed of purslaine. $\mathfrak{D}$ ss. commixe them all and make an Epitheme. You must apply Epithemes in sommer cold,

Cure of cold distemper.

and in winter warme. When there is cold distemper of the liuer, you must vse medicines that doe heate, and adde strength and stabilitie to the liuer. In his diet he must vse meats easie of digestion, and hearing. For potherbes, let him take sauerie, hisope, fennel, parsley, sothernwood, sage and such like. And let his meates be dressed with Aromaticke things, as cinamon, cloues, and such others. He must drinke wine that is thinne, yellow and odoriferous. He must eschue eating of fish, and cold fruites, and idleness, and in conclusion what so euer doth make cold. Within the bodie he must take this decoction. *Rx.* roots of *Apium*, of fennel, and of parsley. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. agrimonic, hisope, mintes, worme-

Decoction.

wood, succorie, withwind, organ, calamint, *Asarum*. ana. $\mathfrak{M}$ j. seedes of annise, fennell, *daucus*, comin, carawayes. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. squinant. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. ss. masticke. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. floures of cammomill, redde roses. ana. $\mathfrak{M}$ j. cinamon chosen. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. ss. seeth all these in a pound and halfe of wine, and one pound of running water vnto the third part, then straine it, & put too the liquor of sirupe of agrimonic. $\mathfrak{z}$ iij. sirupe of wormewood. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. Commixe all together and make a potion: of the which let him drinke in the morning and after dinner. $\mathfrak{z}$ iij. ss. at a time, for the same purpose you may minister hot antidotes, as *diacynamomum*, *dianisum*, conferue of sage, galingale condite, rootes of pimpermell covered with sugar, and such like. You must annoint him outwardly with hot oiles, as be oiles of Narde, Cammomill, wormewood, and such like. Also it is very good to vse this ointment. *Rx.* of the oiles of wormewood, and narde, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. ss. iuice of agrimonic. $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. Cinamon, Cloues, woad of *Aloes*. ana. $\mathfrak{D}$ ij. spicknard, squinant and masticke. ana. $\mathfrak{D}$ j. waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. You may also apply this Cerote. *Rx.* of the meale of fenugreeke, and of lupines. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. roote of *Ireos*, and *Asarum*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. of agrimonic, wormewood, melilote, and squinant. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ ss. gallia moschata $\mathfrak{D}$ j. seede of annise and fennell. ana. $\mathfrak{D}$ ss. masticke. $\mathfrak{D}$ ij. mirrhe and frankensence. ana. $\mathfrak{D}$ j. oiles of masticke, nard, roses, and dill. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. waxe and rosin as much as is sufficient, and make a Cerote to apply to the liuer. Also the vsing of this Epitheme is good. *Rx.* seedes of annise, fennell, ammeos. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. ss. cinamon, cloues, squinant, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. seeth all in a pound and halfe of malmesey, til halfe be consumed, then straine it and commixe with the liquor of that decoction, waters of wormewood and agrimonic. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. pouders of *diacynamomum*, and *diagalanges*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. withwind $\mathfrak{D}$ ij. vineger. $\mathfrak{z}$ iij. ss. commixe all together and

Pungentum.

Ceratum.

Epithema.

Cure of a moist distemper.

make an Epitheme. In a moist distemper of the liuer, let him vse a diet that doth drie, as flesh of birdes roasted, thinne wine: those things that do prouoke sweat, as drie bathes, or hot houes, and also bathes comming of their own accord: generally he must eate and drinke but little. He must eschue all kind of fishes, and fruites that haue power to moisten. You must minister within the

the body, sirope of wormewood, *dialaccha* and *diacurcuma*. You must apply outwardly those things which do drie without any great heate: of the which we will speake afterward in the chapter of the drop sic *anasarca*. Drie distemper of the liuer must be cured like the other by his contraries. Therefore that we may comprehend the matter in few words: it is good for him to vse a diet that doth moisten, and bathes of sweete water, and other things which doe moysten, whereof we will speake abundantly in their places. But this must not be forgotten, which we also admonished you of before, to commixe alway with your moistning things, those things which adde strength to the liuer. But among those things which seeme to be good, by the property of their whole substance, the best is wolues liuer, if it be diligently dried and beaten, and .ʒ. j. thereof minisfred with sweete wine alayed with water. For this by often prooffe is knowne to be good against all distempers of the liuer. For as we said, by the properties of his whole substance, he hath his efficacie, and not by heating or cooling.

Cure of a drie distemper.

Lupinū lecur.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of obstructions of the liuer.

DE OBSTRUCTIONE IECINORIS.

Obstuctions of the liuer are caused of vapours, windinesse, and grosse and hard to digest. But sometime it is caused of grosse and viscous humors in the ends of the veines, springing from the flat part of the liuer, by the which veines nourishment is sent to the liuer from the stomacke and the bowels. If abundance of grosse and vaporous windinesse be heaped vp together, which cannot find free passage out, and so doth ingender obstruction, there ariseth then not only grieffe & heauinesse about the right side, but also feeling & perceiving of distension and stretching out. If obstruction be engendred through grosse & viscous humors, there followeth heauinesse which feeling of paine, sometime easie, and sometime vehement: also sometime without a feuer, and sometime with a feuer. For grosse and viscous humors, being many, do cause obstruction and stopping more then other, & specially when the patient doth vse vehement mouing after meate. And if they be sharpe and much in quantitie, which be taken in meates, the paine of the obstruction is made more vehement: when the body is stopped, they suffer both stretching out, and also pricking. You must giue vnto them which haue this disease hotte meates, and that haue verue to take away obstruction and stopping, as be leekes with *oximel*, *sperage*, *fennell*, *parsley*, *capers*, and other like things, either sodden in portage & meat, or taken with some heating sauce which taketh away obstructions. You must eschue all meates & nourishments engendering grosse iuice. Also refraine bathes and exercises after meates. He must vse for drinke, wine that is thin & old. Besides his diet it is requisite for to vse very quickly medicines that do attenuate & take away obstructions: for obstructions waxing old do not only ingender putrefaction in the liuer, but also in all the whole body, & kindleth a feuer. Among simple medicines these that follow do take away obstructions notably & without grieffe, that is, wolues liuer, fumitorie, agrimony, camomill, galingale, dragons roote, *asarum*, annise, *apium*, wormewood, *casia*, *ireos*, *liuer*.

Cause.

Signa.

Vitius ratio.

Curatio.

Simplex taking

away obstructions

of the

licorice, *rhaponticum*, lupines, capars, *aluni*, with wind paffley, *pistacium*, bitter almonds, spikenard, *stichados*, gentian, roote of plantaine, also the seede and leaues dried, iuice of *Anagallis* the female, *succorie*, *alkakengi*, both the endiues, sperage & bruscus. Of these also you may make diuerse compound medicines, and specially decoctions, putting to it *Oximel simplex*, *scilliticum*, *syrupus*, *acetosus compositus*; syrups of wormewood, of hysope, of calamint, of horehound, and such other like. For the same purpose it is lawfull to minister trochiskes of *Agrimonie*, of wormewood, of rubarbe and such like. Also these Antidotes, *diacaccha*, *diacurcuma* are good, and such other like. Among other simples before rehearsed *pistacium* is notable good to take away obstructions. Therefore it will not onely be profitable but also pleasant, if you steepe *pistacia* tenne or twelue houres by night in malnesey, & minister them in the morning, the digestions being ended. You must apply outwardly, Epithemes, ointments, emplaisters, and cerotes, which be declared in the former chapter, of the cure of cold distemper of the liuer. And these aforesayd medicines do suffice, if the euill be not yet inueterate and growne old: for when the euill is inueterate, you must vse both blood letting and purgations, if nothing do forbid it. You must purge him with pilles of Rubarbe and of agaricke, and with other antidotes, which do purge grosse and thin humours by the belly. You must purge them specially by the belly, whē the hollow part of the liuer is vexed. But you must purge by vrine, when the round embossed part of the liuer is vexed. The body being purged by blood letting and purgations, then you must minister those medicines, which are before rehearsed. And specially this Electuarie. *Rx.* of the roote of ireos, *chama piteos*, of seeds of annise and *apium*. ana. *℥. iij.* of *asarum*. *℥. ij. ℔.* of cinamon, ginger, carawayes, cammomill. ana. *℥. j.* of *stichados*, gentian, and horehound. ana. *℥. ij.* with *Oximel scilliticum* as much as is sufficient, make an electuarie. This doth maruellously take away obstructions, not so much those that be in the hollow part of the liuer, as those that sticke in the out side of the liuer. For it purgeth out vehemently by vrine.

*Antidotum
liquidum.*

CHAP. XXV.

Of inflammation of the liuer.

DE INFLAMMATIONE IECINORIS.

There is inflammation ingendred in the liuer as well as in other members, and through the same causes that they be ingendred of. If the liuer be vexed with inflammation, there is felt paine and heauinesse all ouer the right side comming vp to the necke, and downe to the bastard ribbes. Also there is swelling of the right side, specially, if the outward part of the liuer be inflamed. He hath a sharp feuer, a small and dry cough, an insatiable thirst, abhorring of meate, hardnesse and difficultie of breathing, the colour of the tongue first redde and afterward blacke. Vomits as well of pure choler as also like yolkes of egges, and afterward also rustie, the bellie is collicue. Also the colour of the bodie is changed, like as in the yellow iauundise: also he hath the hicket. In the time of their fit they are taken with a certaine raving, & do void forth sharpe vrine. The inflammation that chaunceth through causes in the crooked and hollow parts of the liuer, do cause abhorring of meate, disposition to vomire

vomits

*Cause.
Signa.*

vomits of choller, & vnquenchable thirst. The inflammation that engendreth in the outward and round parts of the liuer, causeth the patient to haue greater paine in drawing of breath then the other, and doth raise a greater cough, and it doth stretch out paine vnto the right part of the neck, so that it seemeth to plucke it off. Also it chaunceth sometime, that the muscles leaning vpon the liuer be enflamed: therefore many being deceiued, doe thinke it to be an inflammation of the liuer. Therefore it is necessary to tell the differences betweene these. For if the liuer be inflamed, there followeth a round swelling, fashioned like the liuer, which will also be fashioned according to the laying of the bodie. For it appeareth greater, when the bodie is turned downe on the left side, and againe lesser, when it is turned to the right side. For the liuer going vnder the bastard ribbes, it neither appeareth to the sight, nor to the feeling. Againe the thin skin, inclining to the inflammation of the liuer, it appeareth to haue a natural fashion. If the muscles be inflamed, the skin is stretched out round about, so that if one wold pul it vp with his fingers, he cannot easily. Moreover there appeareth a swelling according to the placing of the muscles that lie vpon the liuer, long in fashion and manifest to sight and feeling. For the cure, when the liuer beginneth to be enflamed, you must by and by let him blood, if age and strength will permit it. Therefore as *Galen* witnesseth you must both pull backe and purge the blood that floweth to the liuer, by cutting the inward veine of the arme: because the veine in the right arme is right against the liuer, and hath a large passage: hauing societie with the veine which is called *Vena cava*. If this veine doth not appeare, you must cut the middle veine. And if that doth not appeare neither, you must cut the vpper veine, you must draw out abundant, and sufficient blood, if his strength will suffer it. After bloodletting within a litle space, make the belly soluble, with a simple and easie clister, specially if it do not void by it selfe. The next day after the bloodletting, fasten on a cupping glasse, with scarification, and againe likewise fasten it on within a day after, for many haue felt more ease the second time of the applying, then at the first time. Also you must vse fomentes of wooll wet in oile, cataplasmes, cerotes, and epithemes. In the applying of the which, this only is to be obserued, that to the other medicines that be mollificatiue & discussiue, you alwaies commix some restrictiue medicins. Therefore make a fomet of oiles of quinces, or of masticke, or roses, or mirtles, putting to it odoriferous wine, or apply a sponge wet in the decoctiō of wormwood, melilot, red roses, cammomill, dill, plantaine, raine endiue, and other like. Also make cataplasmes or emplaisters of linseed and fenugreeke, barley meale, quinces, melilote, floures of wormwood and such like. Or this emplaister. *R.* barley meale. $\mathfrak{z}$ ss. meate of quinces beaten. $\mathfrak{z}$ iij. wormewood, floures of melilot, squinant. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. linseede. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. oiles of roses, quinces, cammomill, wormewood, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ ss. vineger. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. Commixe all together, and make an emplaister. Also this cerote is good *R.* of the meate of dates. $\mathfrak{z}$ iij. of mirrhe, steeped in old restrictiue wine, storax, & masticke. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. floures of melilot, wormewood, cammomill, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. ss. saffron. $\mathfrak{z}$ ss. oiles of quinces, of masticke, & of roses. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. with waxe and rosin as much as is sufficient, and make a cerote to apply to the liuer. For the same purpose, you may

*Curatio.
Vene sectio.*

Clyster.

Fomenta.

*Cataplasmes.
Emplastrum.*

Cerotum.

*Epithemata.**Note.**Fistula ratio.**Cure of inflammation turning
to suppuration.**Cataplasmata.**Emplastrum.**Ruptura.*

make Epithemes of the decoction of Roses, plantaine, wormewood, camomill, or of their waters distilled. And in making of all these things, you must take heede, that when there is vehement inflammation, the restrictive things may preuaile, and exceede the things that mollifie and loosen. And contrariwise, when the vehemencie of the heate is somewhat slaked, the mollifying things must exceed restrictive things. Moreover you must beware, that you do not apply the aforesaid things when they are cold, but first warm the a little. Moreover in inflammation of the liuer, when there is great & vehement paine, you must also minister drink medicins, that do ease paine: but so, that you do eschue continuall vse of them: you must vse drinking of simples most. Therefore minister groundswell sodden, as a thing very profitable, or iuice of liquorice with hore water. Also iuice of endiues doth profit no lesse then the other, putting to them a little honie for besides that it cooleth, and addeth strength to the liuer, it also purgeth the mouches of the veins of the liuer. But the belly must also be prouoked by eating of nettles or mercury sodden. Also in the declination of the disease, the belly must be emptied by clisters, for which purpose polipody & *Epithimum* with *mulsa* are put in: & that especially, if the inflammation be in the hollow part of the liuer. For the hollow part of the liuer (as we said before) must be purged by the guts. But the round & outward part of the liuer, must be purged by vrine. Moreover in inflammation of the liuer there is need of an exquisit diet (as Galen witnesseth *lib. 13. Therap. method.* The liuer it selfe requireth meat chiefly that can withstand obstructions. Such be all those that be of thin substance, and which do scour without gnawing, as is *prysan*, *mulsa*, and such like. Therefore the best foode for them that are thus diseased, is *prysan* broth, wherein *apium* hath bene sodden. Also you may minister broth of a chicken, wherein parcels hath bin sodde, but drink *mulsa* or barley broth, or decoction of the tame endiues. And if that inflammation do begin to chaunge to suppuration and rotting, then all the aforesaid signes will encrease, as paines, feuers, rauings, careflesse, and abhorring of meate. Then you must helpe the permutation, & rotting, that it may quickly be done, lest other members in continuance of time do rot with it also. Therefore you shall helpe it to rot with this cataplasme. *Rx.* of the root of *Althea*. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . *sænugreek*, and linscede, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. leaues of *Althea* and mallows, ana. M. ij. dry figges in number vj. boile these in water till they wax soft, then bruse them, and make a cataplasme. Neither shall you do amisse, if you apply an emplaister, that can helpe it to change into matter. As this is. *Rx.* of barley meale, and *sænugreek*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. of the root of *Althea*. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . of the root of white lillies. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . linscede. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. floures of cammomil, & melilot. ana. M. β . boile all in water vnto a iust thicknes, then commixe of oile of cammomil. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. of oile of lilies. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . boile them againe, and make an emplaister. Of these said things you may also make a cerote, by putting to them butter, *labdanum*, rosin and waxe. When the suppuration and rotting is fully come to a perfectio, then the paines do cease, & al the fits do appeare gettler and meeker. In the time of the rupture or breaking, the paine doth increase more againe, therefore then also you must helpe the rupture or breaking of it, by vsing of goats dung & doves dung, nettle seed, mustard seed, and other things

things that do draw to the superficies. And by heating potions, as is decoction of poley, fumitory, root of *Chamedrion*, and such like. When it is broken, you must minister water of hony, or decoction of cicers, and other like things which haue an abstersiue & scouring vertue. And if the matter doth auoid by the veins, you must commix things that do prouoke vrine: as be *sum, asarum, casta* and cinamon. But if it auoid by the belly, comix those things which do purge gently, as be goats whey, *amarindes*, and *casta fistularis*. Also it is lawfull then to vse clisters made of the decoction of barley. When clensing & scouring of it is done, minister medicines, which can glutinate and ioyne it vp.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of distemper of the Spleene.

DE INTEMPERIE LIENIS.

Like as other parts of the body haue eight kinds of distempers, so many hath the spleene, and most often it suffereth cold and moist distemper.

Ech particular cause is not to be declared here: for there be some causes, that be in other distempers of other members of the body, therefore you shall seeke them in Galen *ex capitibus primi, 2. & 3. lib. de morborum causis*. The surest and shortest signes of distemper of of the spleene is knowne by those signes that be eaten and drunken, and by those signes which are applied outwardly vpon the skin, nigh to the skin, nigh to the left side. For if cold distemper doth vex the spleene, all meats and drinks which do coole notably, do soone and manifestly hurt the spleene. Also all cold things applied outwardly do hurt it: and therefore they signifie cold distemper of it: but contrariwise al hot things do ease it. And if the distemper of the spleene be hot, it is not vexed with cold meats or drinks, or with cold things being applied outwardly. And if the heat encrease, there is not only no swelling in it, but also it suffereth contraction, and shrinking vp, specially if a feuer be present. But meats and drinks that be hot, and those things that adde heate being applied outwardly, doe encrease hot distempers, and make them outrageous. Also all cooling things be ioyfull vnto them. Likewise also you may gather the signes of drie distemper specially when it is not euident by the proper nature of it for lack of greatness. Also those things that be applied outwardly to the body, and that be receiued inwardly, if they haue vertue and power of drying, they do dry vp the spleene. When the spleene is vexed with moist distemper, and so continuing a while, it causeth it to encrease so much, that it toucheth both the stomack & the liuer. Also the kind of paine together with these aforesaid signes do declare the distemper that vexeth. For in a hore and cold distemper, they haue small paine or none at all, neither haue they any also a moist distemper: but least of all in a dry distemper. By these aforesaid signes, you may make coniecture of compound distempers of the spleene. For in a maner altogether, when a hot distemper is vehement, a dry distemper followeth. But in so much as humors flowing into the spleen do cause swelling: you must haue diligent consideration to them. For if choler do flow thither, the whole body appeareth hotter, althogh there be no feuer present. Also the eyes & the vrine

*Cause.**Signes of distemper of the spleene in bare qualities.**Cold distemper.**Hot distemper.**Dry distemper.**Moist distemper.**Signes of distemper of the spleen through humors.*

Choller.

be coloured by choller. The sicke shall alwaies accuse drines, and complaine of thirst, and choller troubling his mouth. He abhorreth meate, and is troubled with watching, and desireth cold things, and withall these his tongue is yelowished. He hath tertian fits, and the manners of the sicke be wrathfull,

Melancholic.

and they will chafe out of measure. If melancholie doth flow, his colour doth appeare as well on the tongue, as in all the rest of the body, and he hath vn-naturall appetite to meat, the patient is sad and heauie, and other signes of choller be present with these. Also fits do vex him the fourth day. When a

Fleame.

flegmaticke humour floweth into the spleene, his choller shall be like fleame. The sicke doth not thirst, he desireth meate, vnlesse the humor be salt fleame: for then the sicke abhorre meate, & be more desirous of drinke, for they are thirstie. Also fits do vex them euery day. And their vrines are white, and they themselues be slow and sluggish. Some of them that haue cold distemper

Bloud.

with it, haue a great and a hard spleene. And if it be a sanguine humor that floweth into the spleene, it is possible for it to change the colour both of the tongue, and of the skin. As for the appetite or abhorring of meates, the sicke is in a meane betweene both, and they be more sicke then the rest, although they haue not like swelling of the spleene. The veines of the whole body do

Note.

appeare full of bloud, and the vrine is yellow. These signes we haue declared at large out of *Ælius*, because they are common, and may almost be applied to all distempers of other medicines, caused through flowing of humours. Generally distemper of the bare qualitie of the spleene is almost without

Cure of distemper of the bare quality of the spleene.
Hot.

swelling. You must cure and correct them both by meats and dringes, as also by simple medicines and fomentes, oiles and ointmentes and such other like, which be contrarie to the distemper. Therefore, you shall heale hot distemper of the spleene (as you did of the liuer) by meates & dringes that do coole, and by annointings with oiles of roses and *oleum molinum*, and other things which be rehearsed before in the 23. chapter of this booke. Likewise cold

Cold.
Moist.

distemper of the liuer, by those things which do moderately heat. In a moist distemper of the spleene, besides those things which are rehearsed before in the 23. chapter, these things do profit: roote of siue leaued grassie, drie plantaine, the floure and some of salt, *ammoniacum*, iuice of willow and such like, if you make of them an ointment or cerot by putting to sufficient vineger, such as we wil a litle after describe. Also frisks are most conuenient for this,

Drie.

which haue a discusseive vertue. Drie distemper of the spleene is cured by sweete bathes and hote waters, also annointings with sweete oile, and meates

Cure of distemper by flowing of a humour.

moisting without coldnesse, as is Prisan iuice. If distemper of the spleene be caused through flowing of an humour, then if the humour be sanguine, you must let bloud of the inner veine of the left arme, called *lienaris vena*, or if that cannot be found, let bloud of the veine which is betweene the ring finger, and the eare finger, then apply both inwardly and outwardly medicines which do adde strength to the spleene, as is the barke of the roote of capers, of hartes tongue, *ceterach*, maidenhaire, *Trees*, calamint and such like, which also are able to adde strength and stabilitie to the liuer: of which we will speake abundantly in the chapters following. If other humours flowe to the spleene, first you must auoide the superfluous humours by purging them

them with medicines: then all the rest of the time, you must correct the distemper that is left, and also apply things that strengthen the spleene.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of inflammation of the Spleene.

DE LIENIS INFLAMMATIONE.

THE Spleene, like as other members is vexed with inflammation as oft as *Cause.*
 hot blood doth flow thither vnnaturally: It is knowne by heauinesse and *Signa.*
 swelling of the left side, which wil not giue place to the feeling: also by pain &
 stretching out of the place, by feuers and by burning heat. But if abundance
 of humors do rush in thither, it is known by the greatnesse & swiftnesse of the
 ingendring of the inflammation. Let the diet of them that be vexed with in- *Diet.*
 flammation of the spleene be simple, & giue them those things that will easi-
 ly digest for their meat, as is pisan iuice, bread wet in other things which be
 often rehearsed of vs before in the inflammation of other members. And if the
 inflammation indure long, you may also giue them birds flesh, & fishes taken
 in grauelly places. Let the drinke of the patient be decoction of Cinamon *Potus.*
 or watery wine. Let the cure be begun by cutting of the veine of the spleen, *Curatio.*
 or that veine which is betweene the little finger and the ring finger, if there
 be no cause to forbid it. Let the belly be often washed with clisters, but speci- *Vene sectio.*
 ally if you may not let him blood. Then lay vpon the spleene restrictive medi- *Clyster.*
 cines, which can appease the fury of that that floweth, & keepe the strength
 of the liuer and spleene, but yet you may not only apply restrictive things,
 but you must commixe with them those things which do extenuate, cut, and
 loosen without euident heate, least grosse matter be stopped in it, & do waxe
 more vehemently hard. Therefore if there be moderate inflammation, you
 must apply moist wooll wet in wine that is old, sharp and thinne, and mixed
 with sweet oile. But if there be greater heate, take oile of roses, or *oleum meli-*
num, or oile of cammomil with vinegar: you may comixe them together after
 this sort. *Rx.* oile of roses and quinces. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. oile of cammomill. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. the
 best vinegar. $\mathfrak{z}$ ss. commixe them all together for a foment & irrigation. And
 if the aforesaid oyles be not at hand, seeth brier leaues & quinces in oile, & *Fomenta.*
 ad too also some extenuating things, as is wormewood and peniroidall. And
 you must beware also that you apply nothing vpon the spleene cold, but what *Nota.*
 soeuer medicine you apply to it outwardly, let it be warmed. After fomentis
 and irrigations, you must passe to cataplasmes: in the making of which you
 may adde the meale of darnell and barley, with drie figges, linsseed and oile
 wherein wormewood and peniroidall be sodden. But you must beware that the
 place be not kept bare after irrigations & cataplasmes, but as soone as those
 be taken away, by and by applye such cerots or emplasters as be described in
 the chapter of inflammation of the liuer. For both the liuer and the spleene
 require one kind of medicines, but the spleene requireth so much the stron-
 ger medicines, as it is of grosser nourishment. Therefore you shal seeke examples
 of medicines meete for this place out of the chapter of inflammation of the
 liuer: obseruing only this thing, that you alway commixe vinegar, and some-
 what that is acceptable to the spleene, and that doth peculiarly defend his

strength. And if the inflammation of the spleene tendeth toward suppuration and rotting, which do seldome chaunce, you must helpe to further the suppuration, least other members putrifie, by cataplasmes that bring it to matter, whereof we haue spoken in the inflammation of the liuer.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of hardnesse of the Spleene.

DE LIENIS SCHIRRO.

Cause.

Signa.

Vltus ratio.

Curatio.

Fomentum.

Pnguentum.

INflammation of the spleen, if it be not rightly cured, it draweth together a hard swelling of the spleen. The cause of this disease is a certaine humour, which cleaueth stubburnly to the spleen: but it is when hardnes engendreth without inflammation into ouermuch swelling. The euill is easily knowne by touching, of what cause soeuer it be. His diet must be extenuating: therefore he must eate meate which is easie of digestion, and doth engender good iuice and thinne. He must eschue all hard flesh, which doth engender grosse iuice, and which do strue against digestion. He must drink wine that is thin in substance, yellowish in colour, not very old, and being without all restriction. Also he must put much trust in exercises, which it is good to vse before meate, the bodie not abounding with superfluities. Also it is manifest that vociferation, and crying out, oportunatly done and in time, doth greatly helpe in this euill. For the cure, you must vse very strong things aswel outwardly as also inwardly. Therefore within the bodie minister most strong potions, for those they may suffer without grieve. Among the which, the chiefe be the barks of the rootes of capers, harts-tongue, the roote and herbe of *Tamariscus* sodden in vineger or *Oximell*. Also iuice of centorie drunke, and decoction of bitter lupines taken with rew and pepper. *Anagallis* the female. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. with *Posca* or *Oximell* profiteeth maruellously to drink it. Also the most conuenient remedie for the hardnes of the spleene, is, iron quenched often in water or wine, or *Posca*. For that water or wine or *posca* ministred in the beginning is pleasant, & most profitable, and is giuen many daies orderly. Therefore to them that haue the feuer, minister water or *Posca*: but to them that haue tender flesh, and lacke a feuer, minister wine. Let the iron that is quenched in them be some instrument that is layd with Steele. Also the scales of iron may profitably be ministred to strong and rude men. For this doth melt the spleene notably, for it hath a consuming vertue. But yet least it shold hurt the stomach, it is good to commixe with it some strengthening medicines, as is harts tongue, toppes of wormwood, *castia*, annise seed, *serpillum montanum*, or such other like. Apply outwardly this foment. $\mathcal{R}$. centorie, harts-tongue, rew. ana. $\mathfrak{m}$ j. barke of the roote of capers. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. seeth all in vineger, and when they be sodden, wet a sponge in the decoction, and apply it hot to the spleene. Moreouer this ointment sheweth a maruellous effect. $\mathcal{R}$. of the oiles of capers, lillies and *Ireos*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. marrow of oxes shankes $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. muscilage of the roote of *Althea*, fenugreeke, and linsced. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. badgers grease, hens grease, goose grease. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. the barke of the roote of capers, *Tamariscus*, *costus*, centory, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. gumme ammoniack, *bdellium*, *galbanum*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ ss. the gummies being first dissolved in vineger, with waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Also emplaisters and cerots

do profit much being made after this sort. R^x of the oiles of lillies, *treos*, and of capers. ana. ʒ. j. barley meale, fenugreeke, linseed. ana. ʒ. j. the barke of the roote of capers, harts-tongue. ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. root of *Althaa*. ʒ. j. *bdellium*, ammoniacke, *galbanum*. ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. *opoponax*, mirrhe, frankensence. ana. ʒ. ʒ. with rosin, turpentine and waxe, as much as is sufficient, make a cerote. Moreouer the Phisitian must looke diligently to the disease, as he seeth cause, sometime ad and sometime take away those things which do either mollifie, or attenuate and dissolue, or which addeth strength. In conclusion cupping glasses fastened with scarification, is not a litle profitable.

Cerote.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of obstruction of the Spleene.

DE LIENIS OBSTRUCTIONE.

IT chanceth sometime not onely through weakenesse of attractive vertue which is in the spleene; but also through stopping of the passage, by which the dreggie humour of melancholie is deriued fro the liuer vnto the spleene there followeth obstruction. Afterward that vnpure & naughtie blood is distributed all ouer the whole bodie, which if it chance, then the colour of the bodie is corrupt, & enclineth to blacknesse. Also sometime they that are thus diseased haue incurable vlcers. The causes may easily be known by those causes, which we spake of in the chapter of the obstruction of the liuer. This euill is knowne by heauines, which is about the left side. If the whole body be corrupted with it besides, it is easy to know, specially by the colour of the face, difficulty of breathing, troublesome dreames, and other such like aforesaid. This disease is cured with an extenuating diet, and by medicines which take away obstructions, whereof you may find great plentie rehearsed in the chapter of obstructions of the liuer: for both these members haue need of like medicines. But yet the spleene hath neede of stronger medicines, so much as it is nourished with grosser food. Therefore against grosse humors, that they may obey readily to be purged, there behoueth preparatiues, which preparatiues shall be the same that are for obstructions of the liuer, this onely obserued, that here all things be stronger, and that they haue things commixed with them that doe adde strength to the spleene, (the humour being preparate) then they must be purged by such medicines as do purge grosse and dreggie humors, whereof we haue spoken often before. After this apply such medicines both inwardly and outwardly, as are contained in the former chapter, and in the chapter of obstruction of the liuer. Therefore those places will shew you medicines abundantly.

Cause.

Signa.

Diet.

Cure.

Preparatio humorum.

CHAP. XXX.

Of the Iaundeis.

DE ICTERO.

THE Iaundeis is nothing else but a shedding either of yellow choler, or of *Icterus aurigo* melancholy all ouer the body. Sometimes there chanceth shedding of choler to the skinne, the liuer being safe, as in the *Crisis* of diseases. Many times *Icterus* the Iaundeis is caused, & doth chance when the blood is corrupted without Cause.

Signa.

Blacke humors.

a feuer of some outward occasion, and is made cholerick, as it chaunceth by biting of venimous beasts. So a certaine man, when he was stung of a viper, had all his bodie spotted like the colour of leekes. Also it may chaunce that through inflammatio, or changing of the naturall temperament of the liuer, such corruption of humour may happen, that sometime all the bodie shall be manifestly like herbes that be whitish with palenesse. Also sometime it shalbe like the colour of lead, as also such colours be blacker if they happen through disease of the spleene. Also it is caused many times through weaknesse of the bladder that receiveth the choler, which doth not draw as it was wont to do the cholericke humor from the liuer vnto him, & therefore leaueth the blood vnure. Also sometime it is caused through obstruction and debilitie of the vessels, whose mouthes are deuied from the gall to the liuer, & do not therefore draw the cholerick humor. Also many times through obstruction of the passages, which goeth to the bowels. But that we may discerne well the causes of the iaundeis, you must of necessitie consider the figure of the excrements, and the colour: seeing in some they appeare much coloured by yellow choler, as also in some the vrine doth appeare. Therefore in them that haue choler burst out vnto the skinne, by reason of a good *crisis* in feuers, their excrements and vrine shall seeme to be of naturall colour. But if with the feuer cholerick defections do invade, & there be heauinesse in the right side, it signifieth burning inflammation in the liuer: by whose violence the blood is changed into choler, & carried all ouer the body. But if there be burning without heauinesse & griefe, the euill is ingendred onely through hot distemper of the liuer. But if without a feuer, together with feeling of some heauinesse about the right side, white excrements be auoided: in them you may iudge that there is obstruction of the passages of the bladder that receiue the choler. If such egestions come forth without that heauinesse, you may iudge their strength to be weak, either the attraiue vertue which fetcheth out the cholerick humor from the liuer, or weaknesse of the expulsive vertue, which driueth out to the bowels. Also by and by after, most cholericke humors be sent out with the vrine abundantly. Those that haue melancholie sent to the skinne together with the blood, they be vexed together grievously: for there followeth it sadnes without reason, & gnawing of those things which be about the belly, difficultie of breathing, abhorring of meate, and they auoid blacke vrine, but their dung is like the colour of coperous or shoemakers bleach, & their wombe is much costive. But those that haue the iaundeis caused of yellow choler, haue no gnawing about the belly, nor also they do not so much abhorre meates, they auoide white egestions, their vrines be coloured like saffron: and they remaine troubled: but commonly to all that haue the iaundeis, there chanceth sluggishnes to moue, & a contrary mind to sweet meates. Also itch of the whole bodie followeth. The whites of the eyes and the parts of the face nigh the temples, and the balles of the cheekes do betoken it by their pale colour. Also the veines vnder the tongue are found full, and signifye an abundant humour. The iaundeis that is caused by reason of a good *crisis* when the feuer is perfectly ended, they are soone cured, if they vse bathes of sweete water, and frictions or chafings with discussive oiles, & all things

things that rarifie the skinne, as be, oiles of cammomill, of dill, of yreos, or such like. Also rolemay sodden in oyle doth discusse and dissolue much. Let their whole diet be moist, and extenuating grosse humours. They that haue the iaundeis caused through biting of a venimous beast, they are to be cured almost as those be which be bitten with a mad dog, of the which we wil speak in another place. To those that haue the iaundeis through hot distemper of the liuer, or through inflammation of it, you must minister the cures which are rehearsed before in the diseases of the liuer: therefore that which we haue rehearsed there, must be referred hither. But if the iaundeis be caused through obstruction of the bladder that receiue the choler, then two speciall remedies must be vsed; bloodletting & purging. In them therefore that blood doth much abound, together with choler all ouer the body, & that be troubled with heavines or stretching out about the liuer or the splene, nothing can be done more profitably, then to let him blood, so there be no cause that letteth it. You must cut the innermost veine of the right arme, & that if the liuer be affected euill; but if the spleene be diseased, cut the veine in the left arme, you must draw out the blood now and then, least if you should draw it out on heapes, the strength of the sicke should faile him. And if we be prohibited frō bloodletting, we may conueniently minister a clister. For a clister may wel be cast in after bloodletting, for by the auoiding out of the dūg, it maketh easy breath, and by prouoking and gnawing of the bowels it draweth and pulleth back to it the humours that are sent out to the skinne. Make it after this sort. R. both the endiues, horehound, agrimonie, maidenhaire, origan, wormewood. ana. M. j. seedes of annise, fennell, parcelly, sperage. ana. ℥ ij. ℥ licorice, apium, fennell, the rootes of them. ana. ℥ j. boile them in sufficient water vntill the third part: then straine them, and take of the licour of that decoction. ℥ xiiij. cassia fistula. ℥ j. hierapicra. ℥ j. electuarium de succo rosarum. ℥ ij. oyles of dill & yreos. ana. ℥ j. ℥ iale. ℥ j. commixe them all and make a clister. But purgation is be most proper & familiar for this disease: yet so, that the humours be first attenuated, and made thin by brothes, potions, and also medicines. Therefore he must vse meates of easie digestion and extenuating, birdes of mountaines, fishes of grauelly places, & potherbs prouoking vrine: specially endiue sperage, louage, fenell, & such like. Flesh of wild beasts being tamed are best, specially of goats. For his sauce vineger is good, wherein *Aristolochia* hath bin steeped. He must abstaine from fruits, but let his banquet be almonds, a few at once, and cicer a litle tosted. Also the decoction of it continually drunke profiteth not a litle. Wine white and thin, and not very old, is good. For medicines let him haue those, that be taught in the chapter of obstructiō of the liuer, and also in the first booke the xi. chapr. Aboue other specially apium, parcelly, maidenhaire, calamint, veruaine, root of chickweed, or mather, *Aristolochia*, *serpillum*, S. Johns wort, being decoct, are good. The humours being preparate & extenuate, at length you must minister a medicin that purgeth choler. You must giue strong purgations to them that haue the iaundeis for through the drinelle of their stomach, the medicins seeme weaker & lesse in effect in them. The best purgation in this case, is infusion of rubarbe described in the first booke the ii. chapter. Also *hierapicra*, *electuarium de succo ro-*

Cure of iau-
deis comming
through crisi
of a fever.

Of venimous
byung.

Cure of iau-
deis of hote di-
stemper of the
liuer or infla-
mation.

Cure of the
iaundeis
through ob-
struction.
Vene sectio.

Clyster.

Vicissitudo.

Purgatio.

farum, de psillo & diaphanicon. And if you profit him nothing with the first purgation, you must returne againe to those things which haue vertue to take away obstructions and stopping: & after three daies you must purge him more vehemently again. If the iaundeis be engendred through disease of the spleene, you must turne to the chapter of melancholioufnesse, and the chapter of obstruction of the liuer. The bellie being purged, you must againe minister medicines which do purge the intrals. For which purpose the roote of *cyclaminum* beaten and drunke is onely good, for this doth not only purge againe the intrals, but also it is most meete to shut out the choler by sweate in the whole skin all ouer. Therefore after it is drunk, you must helpe the exclusion of the sweate by couerings, and warmings in bed. You may giue of it $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. or iij. with *aqua malsa*. Also iuice of the barke of radish doth notably well, if it be mixed with sweet wine vnalaied, or *vinu mulsu*, so that $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. of the iuice be tempered with $\mathfrak{z}$. j. of wine. Also earthwormes drie giuen three daies with *vinu mulsu*, do send out the iaundeis by the vrine. Also you may giue very profitably iuice of endiue and succorie to them that haue feuers, by it selfe, and to them that lacke feuers, with wine. Also iuice of *cuscuta* profiteth maruellously. Also cammomill is most profitable, which is called *leucanthemus*, and also *bupthalmum*. But all the medicines ministred in drinke, let them be ministred in a bath, if it can be, when the patient sitteth in a great hot vessell. Also you must be much diligent at this time to giue him a diet, that recōforteth & refresheth strength by the which the vertue expulsue may be repaired: and if anie member be hurt, let it be strengthened, & let the corruptiō of his colour be purged away. Also it is good for him to vse exercises, gestations, annointings and sweating out. For this purpose drie hot houses are good: in the which annoint the body with oile, wherein *serpillum* or rosemary hath beene sodden. And if any of the iaundeis be left about the face and the eies, if the vrine appeare pure, and the belly auoyding after his accustomed manner, you must vse infusions into the nose: for which purpose iuice of *cyclaminum* is poured in, also *nigella* with vinegar, iuice of the roote of beetes and *anagallis*. Also let the sicke sitting in a bath draw into his nostrils verie sharpe vinegar, and let him keepe it a while, pressing his nostrils together, and it will purge maruellously.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of euill state of the bodie.

DE MALO CORPORIS HABITU.

noted.

Cause.

Signs.

C*Achexia* in Greeke is nothing else but an euill and naughtie state & disposition of the bodie. For it is in such case that it is spread abroad in waterinesse, and all the whole bodie is loose and waxeth soft. This disease for the most part is ingendred of a long sicknes. Also it followeth when some intraille is hardened, specially after the hardnesse of the liuer and the speene. Also it chanceth often in a continuall *Dysenteria*, & the disease called *Calicius morbus*. Also through letting of some accustomed excretiō. The whole bodie is made whitish and weake, so that his legges are scarce able to beare him: and in the beginning his digestions be letted, his appetite remaining still: but afterward there followeth abhorring of meate, and their breathing is seldome and weak.

weake. Also their belly sendeth out vnequall excrements. Old men and children are specially taken with this disease, which do soone perish through weaknesse of the vitall facultie, and because the iuice doth breath out of the readily through thinnesse of the skin. But they that be of full age, do seldome fall into this disease, and do soone get it away againe. If this disease do indure long, it turneth into the dropsie, therefore his cure may not be deferred. *Diet.* Let his diet altogether be thinne and drie: therefore let their meates be simple, and which will easily digest, and that can ingender the best blood. Let them eschue all fruites also that ingender grosse and viscous humours, and that be hard to digest. Wine is good for them which is white, thin and odoriferous. For the cure, if the disease happen by letting of accustomed excretion, you must stirre vp and prouoke the excretion. Therefore you must vse blood letting, if nothing do let it, which you must draw out by litle and litle at sundrie times vnto the third or fourth day in them that fell into this disease through retention of the hemorrhoids or menstruis. But in them that haue it through abundance of vicious humors, bloodletting is hurtfull. Therefore rather purge them with some conuenient purgation. The bodie being purged, let him vse chiefly waters that spring by themselves of alume & salt peter, & afterwards sulphurous waters. Also let them exercise diuerse deambulations, gestations, vociferations, frictions with linnen, and other moderate exercises. After let them vse annointings with oyle, wherein is put somewhat that drieth vp humours, as be, *nitrum* and salts. To cure the wearinesse, apply certain bathes betweene whiles. Also portion of wormewood helpeth them maruellously, and *dropaces* applied. Also if the liuer be affected, or some other of the inward members, it is good to cure them by their owne remedies before prescribed. If the euill turne into the Dropsie, you shall find it next.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the Dropsie.

DE AQUA INTER CVTEM.

There be three kinds of Dropsie. The first is called in Greeke *Ascites*. The second *Tympanites*, & the third *Anasarca*, *Xposarca*, *Sarcites*, and *Lemophlegmatia*. *Ascites*, is when much waterie humour is heaped vp betweene the skin or filme called *peritoneum*, & the bowels. *Tympanites*, is when much windinesse & superfluous breath is gathered in the aforesaid places of the belly. *Anasarca*, is when the humour is disperfed throughout the whole bodie, that all the flesh appeareth altogether moist and wet like a sponge or paper. The Dropsie is caused through great coldnes of the liuer, or through other parts verie notably cooled, which can bring the liuer into the same affect. The liuer is affected by the spleene being cold, and by the stomacke and the bowelles, also by the longues, the reynes and the midriffe. Also it chaunceth through vnmeasurable auoyding of the hemorrhoides, or through womans fluxe, or through retention of menstruis, or through some other great affection of the wombe. For in all these the liuer hath no vnnaturall swelling: and yet the bodie is taken with the Dropsie, onely through refrigeration of the liuer, *Ascites.*
Tympanites.
Anasarca.
Cause.

affected in the beginning. But afterward sometime it also waxeth hard, which is euident to be seene in them, which through vntimely drinking of cold water haue their liuer cooled on heapes, so that the dropsie followeth by and by, before the liuer be lifted vp into a knotty swelling. Many haue fallen into the dropsie after the gout, and through the vexing pain of the huckle bones. Most commonly those which feele not their meate, and haue euill state of the bodie, and also that be troubled with the iaundeis, the dropsie followeth it. And it followeth *Callicus morbus*, and *Dysenteria*. Commonly euerie dropsie causeth difficultie of breathing, and swelling, and heauinesse, and naughtrie colour. Also they abhorre meat, and desire drinke largely, specially they that haue *Ascites*. For the humour that is holden and kept in the aforesaid places, is salt and rotten: therefore also after for the most part there is wont to follow a feuer. Women are lesse troubled with the dropsie then men. Children for the most part are taken with the dropsie *Anasarca*. Among the said three kinds of dropsies, *Timpanites* is the most perillous: *Ascites* lesse perillous then it, and then *Anasarca*. One diet is common to all these kinds of dropsies: that their meat be easie of digestion, and sufficiently coact and dry. For that meat that is loose & moist, is apt to be turned into watrines. Therefore let his bread be very well baked, & let it haue salt, *ammi*, fennel, annise, or comin comixed with it. Also it ought to be well leauened, for it restraineth and stoppeth the lesse. Of birds the driest are good, as partridges, turtles, blackebirds, thrushes, and such like. Of foure footed beasts, goats & hares. Also chickens, their extreme partes, when they are roasted. Of fishes, crabs of flouds. Also egges roasted are good. Let him vse potherbes but seldome. Let those things that be ministred vnto them be somewhat sharp, and that haue vertue to attenuate and heat: as is *Apium*, parcely, *daucus*, rocket, penirolall, coleworts, garlicke sodden, onions and leeks. He must altogether abtain from pulses. For sauce, let him vse vineger with pepper, cinamon and such like. Let their salt be compound with fennell, hysope, rosemary and *apium*. You must giue the so much drinke only as shall suffice somewhat to break their thirst: for ouer much drinke doth dammage the that be sick of the dropsie without measure. They must drinke thinne wine, and that doth prouoke vrine. But they must eschue sweet wines & *mulsun*: vineger doth maruellously quench their thirst. Moreover let them take the greatest portion of meate at supper. Let them eschue much fruites and second tables: yet nuts, almonds, pomegranates, pearres sodden, and drie figs are to be giuen vnto them, but let them take all those moderately and not euery day. Let not their bed be very soft, specially those that haue *Anasarca*. Strew vnder them dry herbes, as be penirolall, calamint, origan and such like. For it is marvellous, how much those do drie vp while they sleepe: so that it hath bene proued, that some being wrapped and hidden in a heape of wheat, to haue risen againe after sleep strong and safe. And let them vse exercises in the Sunne, if it be sommer and a faire day, but let their head be couered: but if it be cold, let them vse it in houses being warmed, & nigh a fire, or at a fire. Riding is expedient at the first, & to be caried hither & thither in a chaire. But if the strength of the patient may suffer it, it is better to walke much on his feet, and sometime to run, then to be borne. Also the

Signa.

Diet.

Panis.

Potus.

Exercitatio.

the patient must be wrapped in skinnes dried with the Sunne, or digged into hot sand. After exercises wipe off the sweate with sharpe linnen clothes. Also it is verie good if you vse daily thrice or foure times frictions: for this doth open the passages that are shutte, and drieth vp, extenuateth and casteth asunder humors. Therefore it doth very quickly prouoke forth much sweat and constraineth the flesh. They must be rubbed with drie handes, or with salt beaten in water or hot oile. After this they must be washed with alume water, or sulphure water, or salt water. For many which haue bene taken with the dropisie *Anasarca*, and haue vsed such kind of bathes, they haue sufficed to weare out the disease, and also to make a stronger state of the bodie. And hitherto, we haue rehearsed a common diet for all kind of dropxies. For the cure, the remedie that is common for all dropxies, is that by and by in the beginning, you must purge the humour that doth abound. That you may do both by bloodletting, and by purgations, and by those medicins that prouoke yrine. That which is good particularly for this or that kinde, we will reach in the chapters following, in which we will followe the cures of them euerie one particularly.

Curatio.

CHAP. XXXIIL

Of the Dropisie *Anasarca*.

DE ANASARCA.

IN the dropisie *Anasarca*, all the whole bodie, and the flesh appeareth loose, and wet like a sponge as it is said: so that all the whole bodie swelleth vp, and is like a dead bodie. In this disease you must beginne the cure with letting of blood, specially if the euill be engendred of suppression of hemmorrhoides or menstruis, and if age and strength will suffer it. For by this meanes the abundance of humours that doe hurt, are drawne out, and the feeble nature being vnloaden is swifter, and the cause of the disease is minished, and also health commeth againe with lesse labour. The naughtie humours being drawne out & purged by bloodletting, you must come to the remedie of purging medicins. But if there be neede of extenuation and preparation of the humors before their expulsion, you shall minister decoctions & other things which be rehearsed before in the chapters of weakenesse of the liuer, and obstruction of the liuer. For which purpose minister also sirupes of wormwood, of tame endiue with the brode leaues, of agrimonie and *bizantijs*. Let the purging medicins be of simples, rubarbe and agaricke, of compounds, pilles of rubarbe, *pilule de hiera simplici*, and pilles of agaricke, and such like. Also *hierapicra* is good in the beginning, because it taketh away obstruction, and addeth strength to the intralles. Therefore you must onely beware that you minister not purging medicins that be strong, and which ad no strength to the liuer: but you must bring forth the hurtfull humour with easie medicins by litle & litle. For if you purge but once, and on heapes, you destroy the strength maruellously, and coole the liuer. Therefore euery weeke you must make the wombe soluble, and you must alwayes passe from gentle remedies by litle & litle to the stronger. Therefore in this kind of dropisie the antidotes *diaphenicon*, and *Ectliuarium nidum* be good. Also the roote of Elder sodden in wine.

Signa.

Curatio.

Purgatio.

Tritura.

Alia.

Cataplasmata.

Fraguentum.

doth purge notably. Also the roote of walwort profiteth, for they be both of one vertue. Moreover the rest of the time of the cure, while he abstaineth from purging medicines, you must minister those things that adde strength to the liver, whereof many be recited before, where we taught the cure of obstructio & weaknes of the liver. Also minister those things which prouoke urine. For which purpose, you may well minister *diarrhodon abbatis*, *aromaticum rosarum*, *dialacca diuicurcuma*, trochisks of agrimony, of rubarbe, of wormewood, *theriaca* & such like. And this medicine profiteth notably. R. the pouders of *diuicurcuma*, ana. ʒ. j. pouders of *diatrion santalon*, and of *diarrhodon abbatis*, ana. ʒ. ʒ. pouders of *aromaticum rosarum*, ʒ. j. rubarbe chosen ʒ. ʒ. seedes of endiue, with the broad leaues of melons, and of fennell, ana. ʒ. ij. of wormewood, cammomill, and withwind, ana. ʒ. j. of nutmegs, squinant and spikenard, ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. of very white sugar. ʒ. j. commixe them together, and make a powder. Also this profiteth maruellously. R. seeds of caraway, fennell, & annise, ana. ʒ. ij. seeds of comin and S. Johns wort, ana. ʒ. j. seeds of *ammeos*, parcely, daucus, and louage, ana. ʒ. ʒ. the rootes of *yreos* and of *asarum*, ana. ʒ. j. wormewood. ʒ. j. of licorice. ʒ. j. sugar the weight of all the rest, commixe them all and make a powder. And you must do your diligence, that in *Anasarca*, the medicines be more dry then moist, because the whole state of the body is so watery. Moreover you must apply those medicines outwardly, which can dry up humours, as be cataplasmes, emplasters, ointmentes, and other like things that haue drying vertue in them. Therefore a cataplasme is good made of barley and beane meale, of fenugreek, of the roote of walwort, of laurell berries, of wormewood, and of origin sodden in wine, & laid ouer all the whole body. Also oxes dung conveniently dried, may well be applied with *posca* or *oximell*, hauing the fourth part of brimstone put to it. Also fresh cheefe hauing much creame being laid to, maketh well against all swelling parts. Moreover doves dung, and goats dung, may weed, and cammomill, by euen portions bruised, sodden in vinegar, and hony may be applied. Moreover you must vse emplasters of leauen, dry figges, *nitrum*, *yreos*, melilote, sage, peniroiall, *cardimomum*, *sulphur viuum*, laurell berries, stauesacre, salt armoniacke, masticke, frankensence, sothernwood, *prissolochia rotunda*, doves dung, make it vp with *oximel*. But you must altogether elchue fat and rozenny cerots, for they engender windinesse and cause swellings. But yet the legges and the hands, and other partes of the body being swollen, may often be annointed with this ointment in the Sunne or by a fire. R. of *unguentum asrippe*. ʒ. j. of the meales of linseedes, fenugreokes, beanes, and barley, ana. ʒ. ij. seedes of *Althea*, *nigella*, *daucus*, ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. *Sulphur viuum*. ʒ. iij. bole armoniacke. ʒ. ij. roote of *yreos*. ʒ. ij. ʒ. roch alome, frankensence, ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. *Euphorbium*. ʒ. j. oyles of *yreos*, white lillies and cammomill, ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. with waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment, wherewith annoint the swollen partes very often, it being melted on the coales. For his diet, you must seeke it in the former chapter of the drop sicke.

Of the dropſie Aſcites.

DE ASCITE.

IN the dropſie *Aſcites*, all the whole belly is ſwollen vp; and if it be ſtricken, *Signa.*
there is heard ſuch a ſound, as a bottle doth make that is not full of water;
but the other partes of the bodie, ſpecially the vpper partes, are not puffed
vp nor ſwollen. Let his diet be that hath this dropſie, of birdes of mountaines *Diet.*
and other meates eaſie of digeſtion, and which do engender good iuice, as
is ſaied before in the thirtiſe two chapter. The cure muſt be begunne by vſing *Cure.*
of purging medicines. Let them be ſuch as were rehearſed in the former chap-
ter. Coleworts of the ſea called *ſoldana*, and *ſoldanella* taken in drinke excel-
leth all the reſt: for this ſheweth a maruellous effect in bringing forth the hi-
dropicke water, ſo that many by the onely vſing of it, haue bene reſtored to
health. Giue of it in wine or wheye. *ʒ. i.* or more or leſſe according to the
diuerſitie of the bodie. Alſo pilles of *ſagepenum* are verie good: and two drach-
mes or three of the iuice of the roote *yreos*, putting to it. *ʒ. j.* of ſugar. Alſo you
muſt miniſter ſharpe cliſters, vnleſſe the belly be ſoluble of it ſelfe: for then
it is more conuenient to drie vp. Among other this cliſter is ſpecially com-
mended. *R.* ſlours of laurell. *ʒ. iij.* roote of polipodie, agaricke. ana. *ʒ. j.* *Clyſter.*
dodder or *euſcutha*. *ʒ. iij.* ſeeth them in wine or water vntill the third part be
conſumed. Then take of the liquor of that decoction being ſtrained. lib. i. of
benedicta laxativa. *ʒ. β.* of *Electuarium nidum*. *ʒ. ij.* *β.* *mel roſarum*. *ʒ. j.* oiles of
rew, cammomill and *yreos*. ana. *ʒ. j.* ſalt gemme. *ʒ. j.* *β.* commixe them all,
and make a cliſter. For the ſame purpoſe, if you thinke good, you may ſeeth
colocynthis, *cartanum*, laurell berries, anniſe ſeede, ammi, and caraway ſeedes,
rewe, roote of wilde cucumber, and other like things put to them. After the
aforeſaie remedies you muſt lay vpon the whole belly, ſome of the preſcri-
bed cataplaſmes and emplaſters. Alſo applie ointments and remedies that
prouoke vrine and ſweet: and let him vſe exerciſes of the which we haue ſpo-
ken abundantly before.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the dropſie Tympanites.

DE TYMPANITE.

IN this kind of dropſie, the bellie is puffed vp and ſtretched out: and being *Signa.*
ſtricken, it maketh a noiſe like a tabour or timbrell, but the other partes
of the bodie waxe leane. It requireth like diet, that the other kinds of dropſie. *Velut ratio.*
ſies haue: but in this all windie things are ſpecially to be avoided. Alſo let
their exerciſes be much, and great thirſt do helpe and ſuccour the patient
ſtrongly. Let the cure be begun with purging medicine, wherof you ſhall find *Curatio.*
exāples before. Alſo it is good to caſt in cliſters, which haue vertue to diſſolue
and diſcuſſe wind, as this is. *R.* roots of *apium*, and fennel. ana. *ʒ. j.* ſeedes of an-
niſe, fennell, daucus, louage, parcelly and comini. ana. *ʒ. ij.* caraway ſeede.
Clyſter.

Sacculi.
cerotum.

Lozenges.

℞. iij. rew, *asarum*, leaues of wall-wort, melilot, ana. M. j. boile the in water vnto the third part, and then take of the liquor of that decoction being strained ℞. xij. *hierapicra*, *benedicta laxatiua*, ana. ℞. ss. *Electuarium de baccis lauri*, ℞. iij. oiles of rew and dill. ana. ℞. j. ss. salt. ℞. j. ss. commixe them together & make a clyster. You must giue also vnto them things that do prouoke vrine, and you must vse as well inwardly as outwardly, chole things that dissolue and discusse windinesse, whereof you find plentie in the chapter of the cholicke. The belly must dayly be nourished with *Panicum milium*, salt, branne, leaues of rew, cammionill floures, hot ashes sewed in bagges. Also you may apply to it this cerote. ℞. floures of cammionill and melilot. ana. ℞. j. ss. mintes, saurie, *asarum*. ana. ℞. j. seeds of annise, fennell, rew, comin, daucus, ana. ℞. j. *cardamomum*, ℞. ss. mirthe, *castoreum*, ana. ℞. j. oile of rew. ℞. iij. oyle of dill. ℞. j. ss. rosin and waxe as much as is sufficient, make a Cerote. Moreouer, cupping glasses fastened often to the whole belly lightly & with much flame, do maruellously profite. Afterward the belly must be rubbed with a sharpe linnen cloth, so long till it be red. inwardly he must vse the antidotes *dianisum*, *diacuminum*, and *electuarium de baccis lauri*, or these lozenges. ℞. of the powder of *dianisum* and *diacuminum*, ana. ℞. j. the powders of the antidote of laurell berries, ℞. j. the powder of *diagalange*. ℞. ss. seeds of annise, carawayes, daucus, and fennell, ana. ℞. ss. leaues of rew, seedes of *Apium* and louage. ana. ℞. j. suger, ℞. vj. d. dissolue it in the distilled waters of fennell and *Apium*, and make lozenges. The other remedies are to be sought in the chapter of the cholicke.

CHAP XXXVI.

Of reines that send forth bloudie vrine.

DE RENIBVS CRVENTAM VRINAM EXCERNENTIBVS.

Cause.

Many times there happeneth a disease of the reines, through the which M^{thin} wheyish bloud is pissed. It is caused through weaknes of the reines, which be not therefore able to deuide the vrine: or it is caused through amplitude of the reines, which straine out the vrine from *vena caua* vnto the reines. For when the passages are wider and stronger, they also send out some of the bloud to the reines, and other grosse matter. Also oftentimes the reins do send out bloud likewise as it is wont to do in the hemorhoides. Moreover some do void our bloud from the reines through breaking of a veine in the reines: as it chanceth to those which haue lift vp a great waight, or haue leapt greatly, or haue fallen out of an high place, or haue suffered some such other violent thing. Sometime it chanceth through gnawing of the veins of sharp humours flowing from aboue. If this disease be caused through weaknesse of the reines, the bloud is sent out very wheyish: but if it be through amplitude & largenes of the veins, then they feele no paine. If the excretion of bloud be by certaine circuits, then either there is fulnesse of the whole bodie, or neglecting of accustomed exercises, or refection of some member that went before. And if it chance through breaking of a veine, then the bloud is pissed forth most abundantly: but if it be of gnawing, then bloud is sent forth by litle and litle, and paine doth vex the reines. Therefore you shall cure that excretion of bloudie vrine which is caused through weaknesse of the reines, or amplitude

Signa.
Cure of bloudy
vrine by weak-
nesse of the
reines.

amplitude of the vessels that straine out vrine to the reines, by quiet and restrictive meates, drinking of blacke wine, & other things which are rehearsed in the chap. of spitting of blood. You must abstaine from those things specially which prouoke vrine, and from carnall copulation. In drinke besides those things that are rehearsed in the chap. aforesaid, minister decoction of the root of comferie, and *tragacantha* ministred that is steeped in blacke wine, is good. Also $\mathfrak{z}$.j. of harts horne with wine, iuice of marigolds doth stop bruising out of blood fro the reins. Likewise leaues of willow brayed with wine, *lapis hematitis* $\mathfrak{z}$.j. root of white thorne and decoction of knotgrasse. Moreover. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. of bole armoniacke ministred is good. Sirupes of roses and mirtles, trochisks of amber, of *terra lemnia* and of *spodium*. Moreover sheeps milk is only praised, being ministred fasting. $\mathfrak{z}$.iiij. with $\mathfrak{z}$.j. of bole armoniacke commixed with it. Apply outwardly to the reins and the loins those things which be described against spitting of blood, and in the chap. of *Dysenteria*, and other eruptions of blood. And whatsoever can together with his restraining & drying, adde strength also: as be leaues of brier and oke, mast, mirtle berries, pomgranate rinds, *ba-laustie*, and such like. After this the state of the bodie must be refreshed & restored with meates of good iuice, with milk and flesh of birds, also with swines flesh that is leane; that therby the whole body may be brought to his former strength, and the reins being strengthned also they may fulfill their own proper office, and that they may deuide, and straine out the wheyish humor from the blood. But if the reins do send out blood according to the circuites, or through breaking of a veine, or through gnawing of sharpe humours flowing from aboue, then by and by you must cut a veine of the same side in the arme. To those that send out by circuites blood, let them blood a litle before the circuit, but let the other blood by and by in the beginning: but it is better to part the drawing out of the blood, that his pulling backe & auersion may be done by litle and litle. Let the places about the reins be couered with sponges wet in *Posea*, or moist wooll, with oile of roses and vineger. After this apply ointments, emplaisters and cerotes described in the places before rehearsed. Also a cupping glasse may commodiously be applied, specially if you suspect inflammation to be present in them which pisse blood through breaking of a veine. Also potions are good rehearsed before in the chap. of spitting of blood. In the meane season also, the sicke must be driuen from all salt and sharp things. But when excretion of blood ceaseth, he must vse a diet that doth not engender much blood, specially in those that voide our blood by circuit. Also the vpper partes of the body must continually be exercised. In those which pisse blood through breaking of a veine, if the exulceration be left in the places, you shall cure them after the blood is stopped by those things that are spoken of in the chapter of exulceration of the reins.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of inflammation of the Reines.

DE RENVM INFLAMMATIONE.

THE reins are vexed with inflammation for diuerse causes. For both corrupt humors, and stripes, and rubbings together, and drinking of medi-

Signa.

cines do engender inflammation of the reines, and specially continuall and vehement ridings. There commeth to the sicke a bearing paine behind about the first ioint of the backe, a litle about the bastard ribs: but the paine stretcheth vpward, euen vnto the liuer, specially the right side reine being vexed, but downward vnto the bladder and priuie members and the loins and hips, and also to the share and thighs. Also there followeth astonishment of the leg that is neare, that it can neither be stretched out right, nor he cannot go on his feet. And whether sneeling or any other concussion do chaunce, they are vexed with most vehement paine, their extreame parts be cold, and most the calves of the legs, and the feet. There is present difficulty in making of water, and they pisse continually & painfully. In the beginning their vrine is thin & waterie, hauing no residée in it: but the inflammation waxing worse, it is more rubicund. Also afterward it is grosse & filthy, & there be vehement feuers present. And if the inflammation encrease still, all these signes wax more vehement. To these commeth disposition to vomit, & gnawing of the stomacke, & vomiting of choler. Many of them are vexed, & sweate vntill their hearts faile them: their belly is stopped, so that they are puffed vp with wind, & do send out belkings continually. There followeth vehement abhorring of meat, and to some there are continuall exacerbations, but to some between whiles. And generally egestion of the wombe, & much excretion of vrine do go before those paines. The sicke must lie in a very soft bed: & the first day he must abstaine from meat, but you may not extend his fasting to many dayes. For the vrines being made more pure & sharpe by fasting, do vex with most vehement biring & gnawing. Therefore in the beginning you must nourish them with thin soupings, that do ease and cease gnawing and biting, as is, broth of prisan or *alica* of barley. Also mallowes for his pot herbs doth much profit. Let his drinke be water, wherein a litle cinamon hath bin sodde. To be short, let his diet be thin, & such as is in other inflammations. For the cure, in the beginning you must by and by let him blood, & you must cut the veine that is in the ham or in the ankles, and that must be done on the leg that is right against the reine that is vexed. Also sometime (as *Galen* saith) you must let blood of the arme (that is) when the inflammation is new, and abundance of blood is present. After blood letting you must come to outward medicines, as cataplasmes, fomentes, liniments, emplasters, and such like, which haue vertue to coole meanly, & to ease paine, made of the oiles of roses, quinces and cammomill, of barley meale, beane meale, fennugreece, linsseed, and such like, which be rehearsed in the chapters of inflammation of the liuer & the spleene. And if the paine be not eased by those things that be applied outwardly, apply a cupping glasse to the loines, and the guts, and scarification being made, you must draw out much blood. Then you must vse nourishment of sponges, and other things which can ease paine. You must only beware all this time, that you giue not such medicines to drinke as prouoke vrine, for they hurt vehemently by bringing in gnawing & biring humors to the inflamed parts. This medicin I haue proued to be singularly good, R^t the iuice of clary, & the iuice of nightshade, ana. ʒij . drunke in ʒij . of stale ale, morning & euening vj . daies together. Also you must beware in the beginning of the inflammation of purging medicins. But yet you may vse soft clisters

(specially

Viliuratio.

Curatio.

Resolucio.

Note.

(specially if the belly be costive) made of the decoctiō of mallows, or linefeed, and fenugreek, or prisan broth, putting to it oile of violets, or cammomil oile. But you must beware you put not in great abundance of it, for then the bowels being filled & stretched out with it, wil presse together the reins. But when the inflammation is perfectly ceased & concoct, which you may know by the ceasing of the paine, the also you may purge him by medicines that prouoke vrine. For after inflammations cōcoct & digest, the vrine cōmeth forth much in quātitie & grosse. And in those that haue residence, it is good, & so iudged the best altogether. What medicines prouoke vrine, we haue taught in the se- uēth book of making of medicins the 7. chap. specially among pot herbs, fen- nell, *apium*, and parcels well sodden, are good. And if by the aforesaid medi- cines, the inflammation be not driuen away, and if neither the paine, nor the feuer, nor the heauinesse do rest by vsing of the aforesaid things, & also if dis- ficultie of pissing, and often dropping downe of the vrine, do vex the patient, these betoken matter to be gathered in that part. Therefore as swiftly as you can, you must helpe the suppuration, and breaking out of the matter. For the which purpose, a sponge continually wet in water and oile applied in stead of a fomet profiteth. For the same purpose also vse cataplasmes which are made of barley meale, bran, figs, *althæa*, & such like, rehearsed before in the chapter of inflāmatiō of the liuer. Also it profiteth greatly to discēd into a bath made of mollifying herbs, as mallows, *althæa*, linefeed, fenugreek. And if after perfect suppuration, the rupture & breaking be delaid & taried (which you may know if the feuers & pains wax lesse, & sense of heauinesse remaine about the reine that is affected) minister those things in drinke, which prouoke vrine, as is decoction of fennell, peniroiall, organ, & such like. For these sometime do breake the suppuratiō, & purge out the matter with the vrine. And if the vsing of the do profit nothing, you must wash the belly with sharpe clisters: as with root of wild cucumber sodden and alaid, or decoction of garlike or radish. You must steepe those in brine & cōmix a litle oile, whereby they may be made slippery to be powred in. These must be throwen in with a clister pipe. & the sick must be biddē to hold it long time: for they are wont often to breake that suppuratiō, together with that, that they mollifie the belly. Also if the rupture & breaking tary, commin with wine called *passum* helpeth, & crew with *vinum mulsum*. Moreouer the rupture being made, litle peeces of flesh being lōg, are sent out with the vrine. And if the vlcers be malignant, there be sent out humors stin- king, swart, and slimy, but if they be benigne & gentle, the matter that is piss'd forth, is white, equall, light, & without grievous saour, & litle in quātitie. Af- ter the eruption and breaking out of the matter, minister milk, with hony and other things which shall be rehearsed in the Chapter of vlcers of the reines.

*Signa suppu-
rationis.*

*Signa perfecta
suppurationis.*

*Signa rupturæ
factæ.*

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the stone in the reines.

DE CALCULO RENVM.

THE stone of the reines happeneth oftener to men of perfect age, then to children. The cause of ingendring of such stones is continuall cruditie & rawnesse of the stomacke, whereby abundance of grosse and earthy humours is heaped vp together, and burning of fierie heate about the reines parcheth

Cause.

Differences of
stones.
Signa.

the humours, and knits them together, and hardneth them into a stone. The stones be in the reins, nigh their ventricles either litle or great, & sometime smaller, sometime many, differing among themselves in greatnes, figure, colour, & sharpnes, for they are found black, whitish and pale. There chanceth to the sicke grievous pain in the reins, and he feeleth like as it were a bodkin thrust in, and yet there appeareth no swelling without. He can turne his back-bone hardly. The leg that is right against the reine that is diseased, is astonied, there is present abhorring of meate & vomiting. About the beginning of obstruction and stopping, the vrine is pissed forth litle in quantity and watry. Afterward there followeth perfect suppression of the vrine, & the wombe auoideth nothing, but it maketh many proffers to go to the stoole. Sometime there is auoided forth blood, through the violence of the stones, specially if they be sharp stones. Also the vrine hath grauelly residence, specially when the stone is removed from the reins, which signes afore said Hippocrates declareth in *lib. 6. Epid. par. 1. Aphor. 5.* Moreover things that be light and round, are easily sent out: but not so, if they be of any other forme or fashion: but specially if they be long and sharpe, they are hard to be sent out. When the stone, stopped in the reins, doth cause most vehement pains, lest abundance of blood through the greatnesse of the paine should come down together to the member diseased, in a bodie that is full of humor and strong, you must by and by cut the veine in the ham of that leg that is astonied, & is right against the reine that is diseased. But in those that labor of ill digestion or vicious humors, purging of the abundant humor is good for them. Neither may this caution be omitted, except some other thing do forbid them: which also Hippocrates biddeth, while he teacheth that yong men shold be purged with *belshere*. Also if it be not lawful to let blood, nor to minister purgatio, you must wash the womb by ministring of clisters, which you must do at that time specially, when there is great plentie of excrements in the bowels. But you must onely beware that they be not strong clisters, and that they do not draw plenty of humors from other places to the bowels, lest the passages of the vrine should be streightned & pressed together. But let them be such as are only able to auoid the excrements contained in the bowels, as is this clister. *Rx. mallowes, alibea, mercury, maidenhaire, perietary ana M. j. water cresses. M. i. ss. seeds of paricely, apium, fennel, & flax. ana. ʒ. iij. root of gladon. ʒ. j. ss. bran. ʒ. j. boile them in iust quantity of water vnto the third part, & then take of the licour of that decoctio being strained. ʒ. xj. of cassia siliula. ʒ. j. of hierapicra. ʒ. ss. mel rosarum strained. ʒ. i. ss. oiles of dill, ew, and cammomill. ana. ʒ. j. salt, ʒ. ij. commixe them all and make a clister. But we may in no case vse continuall clisters, and neglect almost all other remedies, as many Phisitions do now adaies, but vse them twise or thrise, & so, that they be not kept aboute their accustomed time. For if they be holden longer then they ought to be, they cause pressing together, and streightnes of the reins, and the conduits of the vrine. When the belly is purged and emptied of excrements, you must minister those medicins, which can loosen the conduits and passages. For which purpose the region of the reins, and the loines must be annointed with this medicine. *Rx. oiles of dill, and of sweete almonds. ana. ʒ. ij. oile of cammomill. ʒ. j. ss. hens greafe, and goose greafe. ana. ʒ. ij. butter without**

Curatio.

Vene sectio.

Purgatio.

Clister.

Note.

Vnguentum.

without salt ʒj. waxe as much as is sufficient, make a soft ointment. Also he must vse incellions of the decoctions of calamint, origan, water cresses, colowortes, leaues of *althæa*, mallowes and such like, or the sicke must often be let downe into a great vessell of warme sweete water. Also fomentes of bran, with leaues of *althæa* sodden, being applied to the grieved place be very good. Also cataplasmes made of wheat meale, of linseed & fenugrecke, of lupines, of the roote of dog fennell beaten very small, and of cammomill. Also it is good to lay bread sodden in wine called *passum* about the loynes and the belly. Neither shall he do rashly which applieth cataplasmes, and other things before rehearsed to the bladder and the thare. But you must bring on heapes one plaister after another, before the first do coole: for cold doth draw together & bind, and so doth hold still the stone in the reines, and in the conduies of the vrine. And if you list not to vse so many cataplasmes, you may couer it with some heating thing vpon it, that it coole not; for these sometimes, and that not seldome, are wont to suffice for to cast out the stone by the vrine. And if these driue not away the disease, you must minister in drinke those things which prouoke vrine. These that follow draw much vrine: gladon, S. Johns wort, parsley, or *cofelinum*, grommell, *ammi*, seede of *daucus* & fennell, *asarum*, roote of brionie and mather, barke of the roote of capers, sperage and such like. With these commixe those things that bring downe vrine vnto the reines: as is roote of pencedane, or dog fennell, briony, *apium* and *radicula*. Also commix with them those things that breake and teare the stone in the reines, as is, *sim*, maidenhaire, *bdellium*, tuslan seed, *bruscus* roote, saxifrage, betonie, roote of *damosonium*, broth of cicers, roote of cypresse, grommell, *lapis iudaicus*, *xanthium*, the seede and roote of *althæa*, gumme of plumbe tree, earth wormes sodden, and stones and sponges of the sea. Euery one of these part of them sodden, & part of them very finely powdred, minister them to drinke. But it is best to minister those things which prouoke vrine and breake the stone, at that time, when the vehement paines be released, which chanceth when the stone is remooued, and stirred out of his place. But if the stones be established fast, and be vehemently compact in the reines, he must eschue much drinke, and also those things that prouoke vrine: for seeing they bring with them to the reines a great abundance of excrements, they cause the passages of the vrine to be stopped, and let the passing of the stones out of the reines. You must release and losen the reines, & the conduits of the vrine, with fomentes, cataplasmes and incellions, as is aforesaid. Also the belly must be voided with light clysters, lest the passages of the vrine be stopped. After that paine is a litle released, you may also apply profitably to them a cupping glasse, specially subuilly fastened to, if inflammation do not let it: for often times cupping glasses do so remoue on heapes those stones, that they cease the paines by and by (that is) the stones being caried into the amplitude of the bladder. Wherefore in the beginning fasten a cupping glasse aboue from the reine, and then to the part about the priue members, ouerthwartly according to the placing of the conduies of the vrine. Moreouer stones being brought from the reines to the bladder, and for their greatnesse being holden still about the necke of the bladder, they do often bring the sicke into extreme peril, as well through their pricking paine,

as also because they will not suffer the vrine to come out. You must go about to let the sick lie in such a fashion, that he may lie vpright, and haue the ioints of his huckle bones lie very high. Then you must stirre them many wayes, that by all the meanes that you can inuent, you may make the stone to fall out of the passage of the bladder. Afterward you must bid the sicke to put out the vrine quickly; but when the stone is not cast out, you must moue him againe, and vse it againe and againe often. And if you do profit nothing by thus doing, you must put in an instrument called *catheter*, which is apt to draw out vrine, and with that you must draw the stone from the necke of the bladder, and bring out the vrine. Afterward you must labour to breake the stone being in the bredth of the bladder, with conuenient medicines by potions: but if the stone falling out of the bladder, do stay about the middle passage of the yerd, and by wounding it bringeth perill of exulceration: then you must poure hore water by litle and litle, from the furthest parts of the yerd, or you must put the yerd in hore oile, that hath dissolving vertue in it. Also you must minister much of some decoction made of those things that prouoke vrine, and you must bid the sicke gather much vrine, and after ward to put it out, and to expell it diligently: for so the stone withdrawen is wont to fall out. But when you cannot drawe him out this way neither, you must cut the yerd aboue with a litle wound, about the bignesse of an acorne: for it is not good to cut it vnder the yerd; for almost alwayes it turneth into a *fishula*, and afterward the vrine cometh out by the cleft. The stone being at the last removed away, you must preserue the man, that the reines be no more troubled with the stone. The greatest thing to auoid engendring of the stone, is to vse meates of good iuice, easie of digestion, & moderate. Therefore it is good for him to beware of all meates of hard substance, and which are hard to be broken in peeces with chewing. Also let their exercises be meane, and let them vse but litle all kind of pulse, and of corne: also cheefe, milke, & the meates that are made of them. Moreouer blacke wine, and plenty of flesh, and generally all things of grosse iuice, and that be ouer hore and sharpe. You must admonish them, whom the stone hath afflicted, that they vomit often after supper, and that they drinke wormewood continually. And at certaine times, if bloud seeme to abound, let them cut a veine, or if vicious humors be gathered on a heape, let them vse a purging medicine, agreeing to their temperament. Also, their water throughout all their diet, must be most pure and strained. Also let their wine be thin and white, and not very old; for that is meete to prouoke vrine. Also they must vse as well meates as medicines that prouoke vrine. Therefore they must eate daily parsneps very well sodden, fennell, *Sium*, peniroidall, and such like. Among medicins this powder is of much effect. R. of the roores of fennell, sperage, & *filipendula*. ana. ʒ. j. rootes of marher. ʒ. j. rootes of *Aristolochia rotunda*, & *Althaa*. ana. ʒ. j. licorice scraped. ʒ. ij. the stones off sea sponges, & *lapis indaicus*. ana. ʒ. j. seeds of *ammeos*, *daucus*, parsey, saxifrage, fennell, annise, grommell. ana. ʒ. ʒ. seeds of melons, and citrons pilled. ana. ʒ. ʒ. seed of *alkahengi*. ʒ. ʒ. pellitory of the wall, mallowes. ana. ʒ. j. puliall mountain, maidenhaire, peniroidall, *asarum*. ana. ʒ. ʒ. of the bloud of a male goat dried & preparat. ʒ. j. *bdellium*, *ammoniac*. ana. ʒ. ʒ. of crabbes eyes, cinnamon chosen, and squinant. ana. ʒ. ij. beate all & bring

Preseruation
from the stone.

Powder
against the stone
of the reines.

bring them into a most fine powder, whereof giue the weight of one drachme euery fourth day, or once a weeke in the morning with thin wine. Moreouer the preparing of the goates blood aforesaid is taught of *Aetius lib. 11. cap. 12.* Other remedies we will speake of in the chapter of the stone in the bladder.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of vnmeasurable pissing.

DE DIABETE.

DIABETES is a continuall disease about the reines, causing much thirst: *Diabetes quid.* And also whatsoeuer is drunke, euen as it is taken, it is pissed out againe. This disease is ingendred of weaknes of the reitue vertue of the reines: but *Cause.* there is such strength of the attractive vertue, that it sucketh the whole body through immoderate heate. There followeth to the sick a stubburne thirst, neither are they filled by ministring any kind of licour. Therefore they are constrained to drinke continually, because that which is drunke, goeth on so swiftly by the vrine againe. Also the bowels of the sicke seeme to burne, the loynes swell vp, and the stones and hanches also. And if yet more gnawing heate be increased in the bowels, the stomacke is wrinkled, and the veines in it are lifted vp, all the state of the body is leane, and there chanceth grievous consuming of the body. The effect of the cure consisteth in that, to stop the sharpnes *Curatio.* of the humor, and the blood, & with that to make the wheyish humour which is commixt with it, of slow mouing, and to correct the distemper of the reines. Therefore by and by, when the euill beginneth, being not yet come to his perfection, it is best to cut the veine on the arme, and to draw out blood moderately. Also you must giue him things that prouoke vrine meanely, which may purge out the vicious humors that be settled in the reines. But if the euill be inueterate and old, you must neither vse blood letting, nor minister any thing that prouoketh vrine: for these do further the colligation and consuming of the body, which doth chance also by it selfe. For in them that the euill is inueterate, their strength faileth them, & through bloodletting the whole body is made sharper, and things that prouoke vrine, do multiply and increase the euill in them. The greatest and chiefe remedy of this disease, is to reuomite that vp againe, that is drunke. Let his drinke be very cold, and also let the rest of his diet be cooling. Therefore giue him meats of good iuyce, and which *Diet.* can difficultly be changed, and do lacke mordacity and gnawing: or which is able to stop mordacity and sharpnesse, as be, rene egges, *alica* made like a souping, and leane swines flesh much sodden. Also you may well giue them new cheese well compact, and without salt: and milke wherein flint stones, or red hote Steele hath bene quenched, the whey taken away. Also for souping, cold Pisan broth is good. For potherbs, take endiue, lettuce, & purslaine. Offruits, peares, apples, and pomegranates. Also fishes of grauelly places be good. He must drinke wine that is red and thicke, wel allayed with water, for to wash the salt humors, which cause the thirst: for wine changeth the temperature of the body to sweetnesse. In drinke also you must minister vnto him iuyce of pomgranates, *rob de ribes*, or *rob de barbaries*. For medicines, minister vnto him *Medic. minima.* the iuyce of knotgrasse, or of sanguinarie with blacke wine. Also decoction of

Localis.

comfery and of dates, & of mirtle berries, or peares. Likewise sirupes of roses, and mirtles, and such like. Also Trochiskes of *spodium* may be ministred with iuyce of knotgrasse, or blacke wine. Outwardly you must apply to the sides, the loynes, and the share, ointments, cataplasmes, and cerotes that do coole: as be those which are made of rose vineger, *tolenta*, lettuce, duckes meate, pellitory of the wall, vine leaues, purslaine, and such like. For which purpose also, ointments do profit, made of oiles of roses and mirtles, or annointings with the iuyce of nightshade, or of vine buds. Also you must lay to the *Hypochonders* or sides in forme of a cataplasme, barley meale, wrought vp with vineger & oyle of roses. Also vse this emplaister; R. barley meale. ℞. vine buds, tops of willow, *bursapastoris*, ana. M. ss. he rind of pomegranates. ℞. ij. ss. purslaine. M. j. seeds of quinces. ℞. j. red roses. M. j. ss. boile the all in water vnto the thicknes of honny, the adde to it oyle of roses. ℞. ij. oile of mirtles. ℞. j. boile the againe, & make a plaister. Of these aforesayd things you may make a Cerote, by putting to *hypocistidos*, *acacia*, bole armoniack, rosin and wax. Also you must prouoke them to sweate, that the vicious humors may be turned to sweating out. The best euaporation and sweating is in a tunne, made with herbes and other hot things to prouoke sweate after such sort, that the head may be without the tunne. Or else apply a vessell full of hote water to the patients feetes, lying in his bed, & prouoke sweat. Also wash the conduit with plantaine water, and burnt alum.

*Emplastrum.**Sudorificatio.*

CHAP. XL.

*Against vlcers of the reines.**Causa.**Reuma vlcera.**Signa.**Diet.*

Vlcers or byles of the reynes be caused through rupture, and breaking of the veines in the reines. Also it is caused through rotting of inflammatio, and through sharpe and gnawing humors, caried into the reines. When the reines are exulcerate, there is a paine felt in the loines, with heauinesse, & the vrine is pissed forth without any impediment, which chanceth not so in the vlcers of the bladder. Also there is attre commixed in the vrine with litle peeces of flesh, or haire swimming in them, according to *Hippocrates* saying. 4. *Aphor.* 75. who saith, if bloud or attre be pissed out, it signifieth exulceration, either of the reines, or of the ladder. And by and by after he saith, if in a grosse and thicke vrine there appeareth litle peeces of flesh, or as it were haire, they are sent from the reines. Therefore when these appeare, let the sicke eschue crudities, and saciety or fulnesse. And let him eate no rawe things in his meates, neither that which is hard of digestion, or that will easily corrupt, or ingender inflammation or windinesse. Let him chiefly abstaine from those things, which do soone waxe soure or sharpe. Also from all sharpe and burning things, and whatsoever dooth breed and ingender choler: as is, much thirst, abstinence, hunger, labour, wrath, solitarinesse, exercise, watching, and immoderate sawces. He must eschue about all things immoderat riding, & all vehement mouing and stirring: also he must auoyd perpetuall idlenesse, & continuall bathing. He must vse new bread well wrought, & giue him flesh of birds of the mountaines, and kids flesh, and such like tender flesh. Also giue him scaly fishes of graueilly places, roasted on a grediron. Moreouer, riuer crabs, souplings of Pusan, and *amylum* sodden with milke, be marvellous good. Giue him

also

also milke mixed with eggs, and the fat broth of a hen. Also reere eggs ministered alone, are good. Of pot herbes, mallowes, endiue, sorrell, purslaine, and lettuce are good: but all these must be sodden, for the sicke must eat nothing that is raw, as is aforesayd. Of fruites, raisins are not hurtfull, and pine nuts. Also almonds wel blanchd are good. Much drinke & strong must be eschued. And he must altogether refraine from cold drinke: for cold, as *Hippocrates* saith, 5. *Aphor.* 20. is an enemy to vlcers. For his drinke let him vse wine that is a-layed, and somewhat restrictive: or let him drinke goates milke, or sheepes milke, or almond milke. Carnall copulation is marvellous euill, not onely for vlcers, but also for all other diseases of the reines, specially in old men, and in them that be weake of nature. Such things must be eschued as prouoke vrine. Also let bathing be seldome vsed, as is aforesayd. It is not vnprofitable to vse naturall baths, and waters sprong of themselves, and specially allume waters, and brimstone waters, for it is commodious to wash eold places: it destroyeth vlcers that be hard to cure, as wel outwardly as also inwardly. Also natural waters drunke after the morning walke are good. The cure of vlcers of the reines, *Curatio.* when as they are caused through sharpe and gnawing humors, must be begun with purging of vicious & gnawing humors. They that are thus affected, you must also purge them by vomite: for vomite is good not onely to auoide *Vomite.* vicious humors, but also if any man do vomite boldly euery moneth, he shall dissolve the vlcet of the reines, and what euill soeuer may chaunce there: for it turneth the mouing of the humors into a contrary part. Also in the meane season you must minister medicines which do stop the gnawing of the sharpe humors, as is, mallowes, endiue, sorrell, purslaine, seed of melons, cucumbers, and gourds, syrups of violets, roses, and water lillies, and the conferues of them. But when the vicious humors be purged, he must drinke *aqua malsa*, or the decoction of fenugreeke with hony, or of cucumbers, or of mallowes, or of melons seed with *hydromel*. Also minister milke with hony newly milked, and *Purging of* note: for it is good to purge the vlcers. Also goates whey, decoction of barley, *the vlcers.* raisins and licorice, is marvellous good, and the iuyce likewise. When that the vlcers be purged and cleansed, which you may know, if there appeare in the vrine, neither peeces of the couer of the vlcet, nor yet dreggie and filthy matter, but matter that is whitish, light, equall, and litle in quantity: then minister such medicines, as do dry vp and conglutinate. For which purpose giue him bolearmoniacke, gumme tragacanth, *amylum*, *terra lemnia*, and such like *Glutinatives,* before rehearsed. But among other things, this powder is marvellous good; *Puluis.* *Rx. terra lemnie*, bolearmoniacke. ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. *Tragacanthæ*, *spodium* burnt. ana. ʒ. j. *amylum*, pine nuts toasted. ana. ʒ. ʒ. l. linseed, cucumber seed blanchd, melons seede. ana. ʒ. ij. seed of *Apium*. ʒ. ij. dragons blood. ʒ. j. beate them all together, and make a very fine powder, of the which giue the sicke dayly ʒ. ij. with milke newly milked. Moreouer, outwardly you must apply such things *To drie and* as can dry & strengthen the reines. Therefore minister emplasters & cerotes, *strengthen the* or ointments made of oyles of roses, and of mirtles, of barley meale, frankensence, masticke, red roses, and such like. Examples whereof you may seeke before. As for other remedies, we will rehearse hereafter in the Chapter of vlcers of the bladder.

*Of the stone in the bladder.**Calculus ve-
fica.**Cause.**Signa.**Curatio.**To breake the
stone in the
bladder.*

STones in the bladder do ingender oftener in children, then in older folke. When that vrine grosse and very thicke is caried into the largenesse of the bladder, it setleth and stayeth there, like dregs of wine, or muddie water, and afterward through the heate that is in children, being dried and compact together, it breedeth a stone. Therefore there be two speciall causes of the ingendring of the stone in the bladder: that is, thicknesse of the vrine, & heate of children. They that haue the stone in the bladder, they itch often, and do handle their priuy members, which also are swollen, and they are constrained to make water continually, & they are vexed with the strangury, or dropping out of vrine. The cure of this disease is almost the same that the cure of the stone in the reines is. But they differ in this thing, because the stones of the bladder require stronger medicins, and you must apply the medicins in another place then you did in the cure of the reines. The stones that are ingendred in the bladder, are broken chiefly with these medicins (that is) the seed and roote of fennell, of slouage, blacke pionie seeds, motherwort, cammomill, the roote and seed of *althea, sum*, maidenhaire, sorrell rootes, the stones of sponges, the stone of *tecolithus*, grommell, *brusum* roote and seede, the stones which come out of men with their vrine, brayed and drunke, the seed of litle burres, the barke of capers, sothernwood seed, iacinth, white violets, smalach, parcels, and other such like, which do prouoke vrine, and which be rehearsed in the chapter of the stone in the reines. To these you must conioyne the most laudable remedy (that is) a hedge sparow being dressed in salt, and taken raw in meat, doth heale the disease perfectly. For it expelleth the stones that are already ingendred by the vrine, & it letteth the from ingendring any more. Also goates bloud is a present remedy, alwell for the stone of the reines, as of the bladder: for it dissolueth those that be ingendred, and driueth them out with the vrine, and prohibitech other to ingender any more, & ceaseth paine. Furthermore, if the stones of the bladder cannot come out by the passage of the vrine, but that they be there stopped, and compact together: & so do cause suppression of vrine, then the sicke must be vpward, so that his hips must lye vpward and highest, and then you must moue him hither and thither many wayes, that thereby the stone may fall out of the passage, and afterward bid him pisse euen as he lyeth yet vpward. But if he cannot make water so neither, prouoke the vrine by a cyring, & after that you must minister those medicins which haue vertue to breake the stone in the bladder. And if the cure come not to passe by this meanes, you must come to cutting. The stone therefore being consumed by any of the meanes aforesaid, such an order of diet must be appointed to the patient, that the stone may not ingender againe, which we haue prescribed in the Chapter of the stone in the reines.

CHAP. XLII.

*Of bloud broken out of the bladder, or curded in it.**Causa.*

IT chanceth sometimes that a veine breaketh in the bladder, & then some of the bloud is sent out, and some waxeth thick and curdeth within. When the bloud

blood is thickened and curded within, the patients heart faileth him, and he *Signa.*
 waxeth pale, his pulses be small, darke and thicke, he is sorowfull, he is cold,
 and his strength decayeth. And sometime when a clod of blood chanceth to
 fall into the passage of the vrine, then it stoppeth the going out of the vrine.
 You must in this case, as also in other burstings out of blood, cause a very quick *Curation.*
 and speedy remedy. Therefore if nothing forbid, it is good to cut the veine
 in the arme, drawing out the blood by times, that by this meanes the blood
 may be drawne backe often, and by litle and litle. Let the patient in his lying
 be layd vppward, and the share must be couered with sponges dipped in *posca*,
 that is, water & vineger sodden together, to coole him. Also the extreme parts
 must be bound, and the share must be couered with sponges dipped in *posca*. If
 the euill increase, cupping glasses fastened to the ilions, & to the loynes profit
 much. After irrigations with the sponges dipped in *posca*, you must vse cata-
 plasmes of knotgrasse, bramble, plaintaine and pomgranate floures. Also vse
 cerotes made of *hypocischia*, *acatia*, bolearmoniacke, and such like rehearsed be-
 fore in the Chapters of spitting of blood, and of the fluxe *dysenteria*. You must
 poure into the bladder, iuice of knotgrasse, plantaine, or millesoly, commixing
 with it *acatia*, bolearmoniacke, trochiskes of *spodium*, and such like. Also inces-
 sions of such like things are good; for both *posca* and decoction of *Lentiscus*, &
 also of brambles and such like are good. Also you must minister in drinke, me-
 dicines apt to pring out blood, as be, *rhaponticum* finely beaten, & xij. red seeds
 of piony, *terra lemnia*, horsetaile, the roote of centory the great, the barke of
 frankensence, and such like. But in them that blood is congealed and curded
 in the bladder, first you must go about to dissolue & disperse that blood with
 conuenient medicines. Therefore you must minister in drinke motherwort,
richados, citrine, wormewood, sothernwood, shauing of a vine, radish seede,
 hares or goates creame, each of them with *oximel*. And *oximel* ministrd by it
 selfe doth profit maruellously, for it dissolue the curds, that afterward they
 may come forth by litle and litle with the vrine. Apply outwardly bathes, oint-
 ments, irrigations, and other things that haue vertue to loosen and release,
 which you must seeke out of the Chapter of the stone in the reines. Aboue o-
 ther things this Cerote is very good. *R.* of the oyles of roses and cammomill, *Cerotum.*
 ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . calamint, comin, leaues of elder, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. *bitumen Iudaicum*, gum
 ammoniacke, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. hares creame, $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. sothernwood, meale of fenugreke,
 ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . spermacety, $\mathfrak{z}$. j. with rosin and waxe as much as is sufficient, make
 a cerot to apply to the share. And if you profit nothing by doing thus, but the
 vrine is still stopped, you must of necessity vse a cyring: by the which when
 you haue brought out the vrine, you must againe minister the things aforesaid
 in drinke, & apply those things outwardly, which do dissolue congealed blood.
 And if the clods of blood will not yet be dissolued, you must come to the cu-
 ring of it likewise as you did in the stone of the bladder.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of inflammation of the bladder.

OF diseases that be in the bladder, and ingender there, the most grievous
 and deadly is the inflammation thereof. The sicke haue these tokens fol-

Signa.

lowing. They are vexed with a sharpe feuer, they watch, they raue, and speake they wot not what: they vomit pure choler, and they cannot make water, the share becometh hard, & hath vehement paine, they haue desire to the stoole, as is wont in the disease called *Tenasmus*; the ordure that cometh forth is thin and hath no residence: also sometime inflations follow, and the wombe is costive, the right gut being pressed together of the inflammation of the bladder. To them that haue this disease, if nothing let it, cut the veine of the ham

Curatio.

without any tarying, or draw bloud at the ankles. Also minister to him a thin kind of diet, as is prescribed in other inflammations. He must also abstaine from wine, and he must vse water, wherein a litle cinnamon hath bene sodden. Outwardly you must apply those things that haue power to cease and mitigate paine. Therefore the place of the bladder must be nourished with oile,

Diet.

wherein hath bene sodden dill, linseed, and sometime rew and *althea*. Medicines that be cold and restrictiue must altogether be forborne: & that chiefly because the bladder is full of sinewes: for cold as *Hippocrates* witnesseth *5. Aphor. 28.* is an enemy to sinewes. Moreouer because cold things do shut vp & bind, and so do stop the vrine (which thing chancing in this euill by it selfe) it increaseth it. And last of all because cold things do prohibite and let that the humors causing inflammation, may be dissolued, consumed & digested: therefore medicines meanely hote are rather to be applied, which haue vertue to

Elyser.

cease paine, to losen the pipe and passage of the vrine, and to dissolue the inflammation. Also let the guts be washed with soft and easie clisters, and after the dung is come forth, cast in oile of dill, or such like thing to ease and cease the paine. It is good to seeth poppie shels, together with oile, and to poure in goose grease, or fresh hens grease sodden together in the same oile. In most vehement paine you must poure in $\mathfrak{z}$.j. of pilles of hounds tongue dissolued in oyle of dill: or take *opium* with mirthe and saffron, and annoint it vpon wooll, and put it vp into the fundament. Also let the sicke sit in the decoction of linseed, fenugreeke, roote of *althea*, *dautus* seede, and such like, and bid the sicke pisse as he sitteth in the water of the decoction: for the bladder is not strong enough to receiue and expell out the vrine: therefore the patient or some that be about him, must thrust & presse the share easily & softly; and that must not be done out of measure, lest that paine should be augmented therby. Also after

Fomenta.

Sacculi.

clisters and inceptions vse fomentis by hote water, and apply oyle in oxe bladders or other vessels, halfe full, or litle bags as is shewed in the chapter of the pleurisie. And if for all these things, the euill cease not, fasten a cupping glasse with scarification to the grieved places. Moreouer he must abstaine fro those things which prouoke vrine vehemently, and he must eschue much drinke. When there appeareth euident declination of the disease, you must come to the vse of those things that haue vertue to dissolue and mollifie, whereof we have spoken often before. The putting in of a Cyring into him that is diseased with inflammation of the bladder is, not easie to vse, and specially in men: for seeing it cannot be put into them without paine, it sharpeneth the paine and increaseth the inflammation: but in women it is no great hurt to vse it. For the passage of the vrine in the is short and straight, so that they may suffer the doing of it without paine. But if the perill through the stopping of vrine do

Catheter.

rie

ry much constraîne you, then you must of necessitie vse a ciring in men also, not because it taketh away the anguish of the disease, but rather because it should amend the great suppression of vrine, & deliuer the patient frō deadly perill. After that you haue entised out the vrine, you must come againe to the remedies which do ease paine, vntill the inflammation be dissolued & rotted. Oftentimes the inflammation is wont to be dissolued by and by through the meanes of an *Erysipela*, rising outwardly vpon the skin, & remaining there and not returning againe inward. Yea and oftentimes much vrine being cast out, doth iudge the euill. Yet neuertheles although these things appeare, you must still vse the remedies aforesaid: in as much as for the most part, perfect tension and stretching out being risen, continuall exacerbations and fits are caused, and long constitution of the euill. But when the perillous fits are ceased, and the constitution of the disease is now waxen old, you must come to the vsing of ointments, which do call out and bring forth the humours from within: and likewise emplasters, which do rubifie and blister the skin are to be applied, which you may find after.

CHAP. XLIIII.

Of vlcers of the Bladder and his necke.

THe bladder is exulcerate either through some bile, or botch, or swelling which hath bene before, or through some rupture, or by eating, & gnawing of a fluxe, or through some such like cause. There followeth this sicknesse sharpe pain of the bladder, at all times pissing and auoyding out matter. And when the vlcers be foule and filthy, therē commeth forth dreggie and slimie matter, and such as hath a grosse residue like bran. And sometime thin skins like leaues and wool are sent out with the vrine. If the vlcers do spread abroad and feed deepe, there is sent out vrine that is bloody, attery and stinking. To these signs may be added, difficulty of making water, and rising vp of the yard. There is paine not only when the passage of the vrine is exulcerate, but also when the exulceration is in the bottom or depth. You may know whether the exulceration be in the bottom of the bladder, or nigh the pipe and passage of the vrine by this: for if it be in the depth of the bladder, there followeth paine about the state: but if the vlcers be nigh the neck of the bladder, there is paine felt only at such time as he maketh water, and specially at the beginning and ending of his pissing & also his pain is the greater if the vrine be sharpe. They that are vexed with this euill, they either sit continually, or they cannot stand vp right; nor rest lying along, & through great and continuall paine they are killed with fetters, watchings, and consumings, some sooner & some later. But the vlcers of the bladder be incurable, or at the least waies very hard to cure: as well because the bladder is sinewy, as also because the vrine which is of nature sharpe doth continually touch the vlcers, and so gnaweth them; and will not suffer them to conglutinate and ioine together. For although much vrine be sent out, yet all the bladder cannot be cleane emptied, but alwaies some of the vrine is left in it, which doth continually touch the vlcers, yea whē the abundance of vrine is sent out, then the bladder shrinketh vp and falleth together, so that the vrine that is left in it, although it be very litle, yet it toucheth

*Vlcera vesicæ.**Signa.**Why the vlcers of the bladder be incurable.*

Curation.

Restrictive
medicines.

Note.

every part therof. But seeing that oftentimes some things chance besides our expectatioⁿ, you shall go about the cure, by the which if you bring nothing else to passe, yet you shall diminish the paines of the fits. First therefore, you must perswade the patient to lie downe & to rest in his bed: and that specially when that he hath a feuer. Theⁿ you must minister remedies for intermitting fevers. The chiefe thing in this case hath bin drinking of milke, and this is to be compared about all other medicines: for it maketh smooth roughnes, & watheth vlcérations, and scoureth the euill. Let the rest of his diet be such, as that is which is ministred in the exulceration of the reins. Also you must comfort the sicke by medicins, that will let the ingédring of that pe vrine, which doth gnaw and fret the vlcers. And if there be inflammation with the exulceration, cataplasmes of linsseed, and fenugreeke, & other things, which are rehearsed before in the chapter of inflammatioⁿ of the bladder, are apt and meet to be applied. Moreouer, if the exulceratioⁿ do spread broder & eat deep, you must apply outwardly medicins somewhat restrictiue, and that such as be hot whē they are applied, that by their heat they may helpe the painefull places round about by mollifying them, & that through their vertue, they may prohibite the places nigh adioyning to feed & eat. Restrictiue medicins be the fegals, pomegranat rinds, alume, *acatia*, *hypocistis*, & such like often rehearsed of vs before. Also you must vse to minister to the^m, medicins cast in with a ciring. You must cast into the exulcerate places, milke newly milked, or very good oile of roses warme. And if none of these be at hād, you must cast in continually most sweet water warmed, specially at such time as the gnawing is present. Also you must driue in by the fundamēt the iuice of pisan, or the decoction of linsseed, cucūbet seed husked, fenugreeke, mallows, or milke with oile of roses. Moreouer when thou wilt minister a clister to him which is diseased in the bladder, he may not lie vpward, for the bladder theⁿ will not suffer the infusion to enter in, because it lieth vpon the streight bowell: but the patient must lie groueling vpon his knees, and so you must cast in your infusion. Also let the sicke sit often in hot water, and in dissoluing decoctions, for these do cease paine somewhat. And whē the vlcers do spread abroad and feed, you must cast into the bladder by a ciring such things as can stop the feeding: as be, *acatia*, *hypocistis*, *serralemma*, bolearmoniack, & other rehearsed a litle before. But if the vlcers be foule & filthie, you must powre in medicins, which haue vertue to scoure and cleanse them, as is *mulsā* much watered, or milke with a litle hony, or with the seed of cucumbers cleansed. But if there follow sharpnesse and gnawing, cast in milke newly milked, mixed with good *amylum*, or turtly washed and dried with many waters, and then mixed with the milke. When the vlcers be scoured and purged cleane, you must procure to bring them to a scar, and to heale them. And that must be done by restrictiue incessions, and by emplasters, fomentes, & irrigations, that be of like facultie & vertue. But if the exulceration do endure long time, as it chanceth for the most part, then the patient hath exacerbations and fits sometime, and intermission and space from them at other times. Therefore in the painfull fits apply emplasters and irrigations, hauing power to cease & ease the paine: & in the time of the intermissioⁿ between the fits, vse such things as haue vertue to destroy the euill. Therefore apply to the share,

Synapismes,

Synapismes, and such things as will rubifie & blister. And let the sick vse a diet that is good to restore strength. And if the euil doth not wax gentler, you must make burne scurfes about the share, either by medicines or with iron, and to suffer the vlcers to purge and cleanse them selues long time with matter flowing out. You may also minister medicines to cease paine in drinke, if vehement paines vex him. For this purpose, about other things which we haue rehearsed in other places, the pills *Alkakengi* with *opiū* are good. Also these things following do much mitigate the paines of exulceration, that is, cucumber seed, mallows, white poppy, *tragacanthē*, *amylum*, pine nuts and almonds. Therefore this medicine may be ministred. *Rx.* cōserue of violets. *℥.ij.* seed of mallows. *℥.ij.* of the foure great cold seeds. ana. *℥.j.* liquorice scraped *℥.j.* *β* gumme *℥.ij.* bole armoniacke. *℥.β* trochiskes of *terra lemmia* *℥.j.* make them vp altogether with sirupe of liquorice. Minister of it daily in the morning the quantitie of an hāsell nur. Moreouer you must throw into the bladder medicines that can cease paine, and heale the exulceration.

To cease paine.

CHAP. XLV.

Of the Strangurie.

DE STILLICIDIO VRINAE.

Stranguria in Greeke, *stillicidiū* vrine in Latin, is a disease whereas the vrine distilleth downe by drops, or by litle and litle, and causeth a continuall prouoking & desire to pisse. This disease is caused through the sharpnesse of the vrine, or by exulceration of the bladder, or by an impostume of the liuer, or the reines, which being broken & sending the filth & attē to the bladder, through the sharpnesse thereof, it causeth cōtinuall desire to pisse. You shall iudge that sharpnes is the cause, if his vrines be cholericke, & also all the state of the body, if the rest of the signes betoken choler, & that gnawing do chaunce about the bladder. You may know the exulceration of the bladder, as also an impostume or bile of the liuer & the reines, by the signes afore rehearsed in their own proper chapters. If therefore the strangurie be caused through sharpnes of the vrine, then you must purge the vicious and naughtie humor that doth abound, with all speed. For the which purpose, besides those things which are oftē spoken of before, whey with *cassia fistula* is maruellous good, or some other medicine that bringeth out choler. The cholerick humor being auoided & purged, the patient must vse meats that be temperat, & that can stop the sharpnesse: as is iuice of prisan, mallows, purslaine, violets, cucūber seed, & such like. He must abstaine from all things that be sharpe or salt. Also let him eschue wine, exercises, wrath, & slow eating: for all these things do heape vp choler in the body. Let him vse stony fishes, & baths of sweet water, which is wōt to make tēperat vicious humors maruellously. In drinke you must minister much sweet water hot, or the decoctiō of barley with sirupe of violets, & roses. But you may not giue him wine, as is said, except it be sweet and alaid with water. Also milke drunke hote, is the best thing that cā be. To cōclude, for the order of his diet, he must vse meats that do moisten, & broths that do make the wombe soluble. But the sicke must be cōpelled to pisse cōtinuall: for if the sharp dregs do tarry lōg in the bladder, it gnaweth & exulcerateth it. Also to stop the sharpnes of the humors, minister the medicin which we described in the end of the former

σπαραγγία.

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

Victim.

Pulvis.

Terebinthina
resina.

Clister.

chapter. For the same purpose minister decoction of licorice, or this powder following. *Rx.* of the seeds of melons husked, citrons, and cucumbers, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.iij. seeds of gourds, purslaine, & lettuce, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. of red roses, $\mathfrak{z}$.j. iuyce of licorice and of mast, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. β . beat them all and make a fine powder: whereof giue daily the weight of $\mathfrak{z}$.j. β in the morning with sirupe of licorice, or iuleps of violets or roses. Also venice turpentine washed in rose water or endiue water, & minister the quãtity of a nut, or somtime two or three is marvellous good: for this (as Galen witnesseth *lib. 5 de tuenda sanitate*) doth not onely loosen the belly without hurt, and so by that meanes turneth away the sharpe humours from the passages of the vrine: but also it scoureth and cleanseth the inward parts, and specially the reines. And there haue bin some, that haue recovered health only by the vse of this. Also clisters made of the decoctiõ of mallowes, violets, *althæa*, leaues of willow, water lillies, & other afore rehearsed, putting to them *cassia fistula*, suger, and oile of violets and roses do profit much. But if the sharpe sicke do still encrease, you must also cast in by the yard into the bladder milke with *amylum*. Also for the same purpose, you may cast in the decoction of white poppy, and you must annoint outwardly vpon the share & therabouts, oiles of violets, & water lillies, putting to them a very litle of the iuice of purslaine. But if the strangurie doth chaunce through exulceration of the bladder, or through some other part of the bodie being euill affected, and so purging it selfe out by the vrine, then it is manifest that those members ought first to be cured, but yet so that this present euill be not neglected. The cures of euerie part you may seeke out in their proper places and chapters.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of difficultie of pissing.

DE DIFFICULTATE VRINÆ.

Dysuria.
Causa.

Signa.

Cure of a cold
distempere.

Fomenta.

DYSURIA in Greeke, *vrinæ difficultatis*, it is a disease wherein the vrine is pissed hardly and difficultly. It is caused through weaknes of the bladder, and through cold distempere of it which hurteth his actions. Also sometime it is caused of grosse & fleugmaticke humors which stop the necke of the bladder. You may know cold distempere if it come of an outward cause, by the patients telling, and by the thinnes & whitenesse of the vrine. But if besides the whitenesse there appeare grossnesse in the vrine, you may iudge it a fleugmatick humor, which hath stopped the necke of the bladder, as is aforesaid. Cold distempere is cured by those things that do heat. Therefore he must vse heating meats, and wine that is hote and condite. Also he must vse medicines which prouoke vrine, as are parseneps well sodden, fennel, *apium*, sperage, smalach, & such like. Also crabs and hedgehogs do prouoke vrine very well: you must drie their flesh & minister the weight of one $\mathfrak{z}$.j. in drinke. Also minister in drinke the decoctions of aromatique things, or electuaries made of them, and so named of them. Aboue other things the antidotes of *diacalamintus*, *dialactia*, and *diacurcuma*, are very good. Also triacle giue in drinke is marvellous good. You must nourish the share without, with hote oiles, as is, oiles of rew, dill, lillies, scorpions, & of *castoreum*. Also you must apply fomentes, and litle bags made of cammomill, fothernwood, betonie, mugwort, rew, calamint, saucine, and such like

oyles into the fundament. If a cold and flegmatike humour do cause difficultie of pissing, then the patient must vse *oximell*, and decoctions of hylope, penioriall, origan, time, and such like often before rehearsed. Also let him vse fomentens, irrigations, and little bagges made of hot things, whereof we spake a litle before, and in the former chapters. Morcouer whether a grosse humour, or the stone, or a clod of blood, or any other thing of that kind through stopping do let the passage of the vrine, it is good to put in a Cyring, vntill inflammation of the members do let it, whereof also we haue admonished before.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of stopping of the vrine.

DE SUPPRESSIONE VRINAE.

ISCURT A in Greeke, *suppressio vrine* in Latin, it is a disease, in the which the vrine of the patient is altogether letted & stopped. This disease is caused sometime through weaknes of the bladder, not being able to thrust out that which is contained in it. Also sometime it chanceth through stopping of the neather passage of the bladder, or of grosse humours, or of a stone congealed. Also it is wont to come either of an inflammation, or of hardnesse, or some swelling against nature, which maketh the passage streighter, or stoppeth it altogether. Also sometime it cometh by a litle peece of flesh, or a hard knob ingendred in the passage of the vrine. Also blood congealed into clods in the bladder, is cause of the suppression & stopping of vrine. Also utter sent downe to the bladder fro the reins, or the liuer, or from some other ypper part, causeth stopping of the vrine, euen like as a grosse and clammy humour doth. Also it chaunceth sometime, through the dull sense of the bladder, that the vrine is not made, & yet it is without hurt of the vertue expulsive, whe as his proper sinews be euill affected: so in haile folk whe the vrine is holdē long time, the bladder is stretched out, and the vrine is stopped. If the stopping of the vrine be caused thorough weaknes of the bladder, it is knowne by those signes which declare the cold distempere of the bladder. If it be caused of grosse humors, it is knowne by the diet that went before. As if one that liueth idely, hath vsed much meats which do ingender grosse and clammy humours. If it be caused of the stone, you may know it by the signes which are rehearsed before in the Chapter of the stone. If it be caused of inflammation, or of any other swelling, it is knowne by paine, by feuer, and by sight. When suppression of the vrine is caused thorough some peece of flesh, or some knob, it may be knowne by the signes of vlcers aforesaid: and also because that a cyring being put in, the vrine cometh out. Also a cyring being put into that part of the conduite or passage, where you coniectured the byle to be before, it moueth paine, and the flesh being broken with the cyring, there followeth out with the pissing of the vrine, both blood and fragments of flesh. If clodded blood cause stopping of the vrine, there went before it excretion & pissing of blood, or flux therof. When as utter hath stopped the vrine, you may know it by things that chance before, for either the bladder or the reins laboured of some euill before, whereby such, & so much utter might gather: or there hath bene an impostume in some member about the reins, which being broken the utter is sent down into the

Cure of flegmaticke humor that stoppeth the vrine.

*Is x^{pla}.
Causa.*

Signa.

Curatio.

*Cure if it be of
weaknes of the
bladder.*

*Cure if it be of
grosse humors.*

Vnguentum.

*Cure if it be of
the stone or
clodded blood.*

*Cure if it be of
a peece of flesh
or knobbe.*

*Cure if it be of
the obtuse sense
of the bladder.*

*Cure if it come
in haile folle.*

reines, & so into the bladder: the rest of the causes may be knowne by the patients telling. The cure is diuers according to the diuersity of causes. For if the stopping of vrine be caused through imbecillitie & weaknesse of the bladder, you must minister and apply thole things which do heat, as is said in the former chapter. For you must altogether remoue cold distempere, which letteth the actions of the bladder. If the withholding of vrine be ingendred of grosse and clammie humours, he must be cured by fomentis, incellions, and catarrhismes made of herbes that be hot, and that haue vertue to cut & deuide the humours, and with a diet of such like things. Besides those things which we haue rehearsed in the former chapter of difficultie of pissing, this oyntment following is notably good, to take away the disease. R. of the oyle of scorpions, oyle of nard, and of lillies. ana. ʒ. iij. gumme ferapine, bdellium, and opopanax, ana. ʒ. goose grease, duckes grease, ana. ʒ. ʒ. roote of *Enula campana*. ʒ. iij. peni-roiall, calamint. ana. ʒ. ʒ. dissolue the gummes in wine, & with waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Also you must throw into the bladder with a cyring, oyle of scorpions, or lillies, or some other thing that can dissolue, cut, & diuide clammie humours. If the vrine be stopped through the stone or clodded blood: you must seeke the cure out of their proper Chapter. For the stone which hath stopped the passage of the vrine must be removed out of his place as is taught before in the 41. chap. but the clodded blood must be dissolued, as is taught in the 42. chap. If the vrine be stopped through inflammation, or some other swelling against nature, the cure must also be sought out of their owne proper chap. And if the vrine be stopped through some litle peece of flesh or hard knob, apply bathings and other dissoluing & loosening medicines, & such as do open and spread abroad the pipe and conduit of the vrine: examples whereof you may seeke out of the chapter of the stone in the reins. And if the vrine do not come out so, you must come to the vning of a cyring, and by putting in of the instrumēt you must entice out the vrine. If the vrine be suppressed through the dull sence of the bladder, you must raise vp his action, by prouoking vrine, & you must helpe it, by incellions, fomentis, and other hot medicines, which can take away his sleeping & dulnesse. But you must only elchue those things which prouoke vrine, least that through plentie of it, the bladder be stretched out, and so the contractiue vertue of it should be hurt. Moreover you must entice out vrine with *nitrum*, or salt peter, or with a quicke louse, or with some other thing, that can stirre vp the vertue expulsive of the bladder. In healthfull folke, when through some great busshesse the vrine is holden too long, and so hath made the bladder feeble, that it cannot expell it out, then he must helpe himselfe thus. He must stand, so that the necke of the bladder may leane downward, and must lay both his hands about his thare, and he must presse it and thrust out the vrine by litle and litle, and thus he may do also in the dull sence of the bladder aforesaid.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of exulceration of the priuie members.

De Exulceratione PVDENDI.

Vlcers ingendred in the priuie members without inflammation haue neede of medicines, which do sicke vp vehemently, such as these be.

paper

paper burned, dry dill burnt, and drie *Aloes* made into pouder, for you can scarcely find a more present remedie. Also the roote of *Aristolochia rotunda* doth bring present remedie to the exulceration of the priuie members. Also among compound medicines, this is the most effectuous and profitable. *R. Aloes epicurum. ʒ. ij. galls. ʒ. ij. dragons blood, bolearmoniacke, turcie. ana. ʒ. i.* rootes of *Aristolochia rotunda. ʒ. ʒ. mirrhe. ʒ. ʒ.* of gumme arabicke *ʒ. ij.* alum burnt. *ʒ. ʒ.* let all these be beaten, and make a fine pouder, and strew it vpon the exulcerate parts. But if the vlcers be very moyst and foule, first scoure them and cleanse them with *mussa* well alayed, and then after with goats milke, which thing being done, vse the aforesaid pouder, or *lapis hamatites*, or frankensense, or pomegranate rindes, or *terra lennia*, or such like beaten into pouder. If there chance inflammation together with the exulceration, you must first remoue the inflammation with linnen clothes wet in rosewater, or nightshade, or purslaine water, or housleeke water, putting to it the white of an egge, and applying it to the diseased place. The rest of the remedies, seeke out of other Chapters.

Absterion of
the vlcers.

to scoure out
the vlcers.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of the continuall standing of the yard.

DE PRIAPISMO.

PRIAPISMVS (as Galen witnesseth in *Lib. 6. de male affectu loci. Cap. 6.*) is Priapismus. when the yard is stretched out in length and in breadth, nothing prouoking the patient to lust and desire, nor no heat gotten. And if there chance to the yard panting or heaving, then the euill is called *Satyriasis*. This euill is *Satyriasis.* caused (as Galen doth witness in the place aforesaid) either through immoderate opening of the mouth of the arteries, or of some vaporous spirit ingendred in the hollow and fistulous sinew. But it followeth often after the gaping and opening of the mouthes of the arteries. For it is easier for them to stretch out wide, then for a fluuius and windie aire to ingender in the hollow sinew. For the loines being heat, it is reason that the arteries are made hotter, & that also their mouthes should be wider opened. Therefore at that time, they send out no small substance of spirite or aire into the hollow sinew, which being a litle filled, it stretcheth out the yard, so that all his power doth seeme to consist in the hollow sinew. Sometime this euill chanceth to them which haue abstained long time fro carnall copulatio contrary to their custome. And this thing chaunceth specially to them, that do abound with much blood, and do not studie to disperse the abundance of blood with much exercise. They that labour of this disease be grieved, as those be, which be taken with distention & stretching out of the sinews: for the yard being puffed vp, and stretched out, suffereth as it were a crampe. They that haue this conuulsion or crampe, do quickly perish, vnlesse helpe be ysed to them by and by: and when they die their belly is puffed vp, and their sweat is cold. The cure is diuerse according to the diuersitie of causes: for if the disease do chance through gaping of the mouthes of the arteries, & so through the heat of them, by and by it is good to let blood by cutting of a veine, which thing also you shall do, when this euill taketh them which abound with blood, & haue abstained long time from car-

Curatio.

Clyster.

The summe of
the cure.

naill copulation, contrary to their custome And you must cut the blacke veine which is called *media* or *mediana*, the middle veine of the armes: Also he must vse a thinne dyer, and abstaine from wine. Giue him but hille meate made of corne, and that which doth ingender no winde at all, and that causeth thirst; and it is good for him to vse to drinke water: exercises & frictions or rubbings are well applied and vsed to dissolue and disperse the spirits or ayre. Also it is good to goe about emptying by vomiting. Also if the wombe be costiuie and bound, you must make it soluble with a clyster that is not very sharpe, as that is which is made of the decoction of beetes, mallowes and mercury. You must altogether abstaine from purging medicines, least that the humors should be drawne downward. For the same cause also, he must eschue those things which haue vertue to prouoke vrine. To conclude, you must altogether labor & study to minister those medicines which can void & empty the abundance, and draw vpward, and so turne the humors from the priuie members. And if the euill endure long, fasten cupping glasses with scarification. And if there be fulnes apply horse leeches. But you must lay vpo the loines those things which do euidently coole, as is, nightshade, purslaine, henbane, & singreene. Also you must of necessity annoint the yard, and the space betweene the fundament & the yard, with some iuyce or water of herbes that do coole gently. If a cerate made of fine oyle of roses, washed often in cold water, be applied as well to the yard as also to the loynes, it doth notably well. The making of this cerate which is called *ceratum liquidum*, is taught of Galen. lib. 1. *de simplicium medicamentorum facultate. cap. 8.* Also this cerat is good: R. white waxe washed ten times in cold water. *quar.* j. purslaine. *3.ij.* commixe them together and being them into the forme of a terate. To be short, apply and also minister in drinke those medicines which can extinguish and quench seede: of the which we will speake abundantly in the next chapter. Moreouer it is hurtfull for him to rest, lying vpright, but he must lye on his side. He must altogether be kept from fights and stories, and rehearsing of those things which pertaine vnto lechery. If this disease chance of a vaporous and windie spirit, or aire ingendred in the hollow sinew, all your whole cure must be turned to the dispersing and dissolving of it. Therefore you must turne backe to the chapters of curing of inflammation and windinesse of the stomacke, and to the cure of the windie cholike: for there you shall find plenty of remedies.

CHAP. L.

Of shedding of sperme.

DE SEMINIS PROFLUVIO.

Toropposita

Causa.

GONORRHEA in Greeke, *seminis profluvium* in Latin, it is excretion and shedding of seed or sperme against the patients will, and without sicknes of the yard. It is caused through imbecillitie and weaknesse of the retentiuie vertue in the vessels conteyning the sperme, or through some other disease that moueth the parts of the vessels of sperme, after that sort, as the expulsive vertue doth, according to nature, as in the falling sicknesse it chaunceth sometime, and in other violent conuulsions and crampes. Also sometime it is caused through fluxe of the spermaticke vessels. The seede that sheddeth out

is watery thinne without appetite of carnall copulation: and for the most part without feeling of it, but sometime it cometh out with certaine pleasure. They that haue this disease, their whole hody corrupteth by litle and litle, and waxeth leane, specially about the loynes, and there followeth much weaknesse, not for the multitude of seede, but for the principalitie of the places. And if it come out (the yard not standing) there followeth imbecilitie and weaknes of the retenuue vertue in the spermaticke vessels. But if it commeth out (the yard standing) the grieve is somewhat like a conuulsion, or cramp. This disease chanceth not only to mē, but also to women, & in womē it is hard to cure. The cure of this disease is comon with those cures that are ministred in euery flux. First therefore you must keepe the sicke in quietnesse, with litle meat, & with drinking of water. Then also you must couer the places about the share and priuities, and the loynes with wooll wet in oyle of roses and in wine, or in oyle of blossomes of apples, or of quinces. Also sponges wet in *Posca* applied are not hurtfull. The dayes following you must vse cataplasmes, emplasters, and ointments, made of vine branches, quinces, *acacia*, *hypocisthus*, sumach, and such like afore rehearsed. Also he must vse restrictiue inceptions made of decoctions of bryer, plantaine, mirtles and such other like. These things must be sodden in austere and sharpe wine, or also in water. Let him vse meats which are hard to corrupt, and that are difficultly chaunged, and that haue power to drie vp. Also you must giue him with his meates and drinke, the seede of *Agnus castus*, and of hempe, specially roasted. Also the feedes and leaues of rew, the seede and stalke of lettuce, and the roote of water lillies. In drinke minister daily, in steed of common water, the water wherein yron hath often bene quenched. To be short, he must eschue the vsing of sharpe things, and drinking of much wine, and eating of pottage, and all his whole diet much be appointed of such things, and do dry vp & restraîne. And you must minister such medicines as do extinguishe and quench seede, as is tutsan seede roasted and rubbed: also the leaues and floures of it are sayd to restraine lecherie, not only when they are eaten, but also when they are taken in drinke, or strewed vnder one. Purslaine eaten, and lettuce seede drunke, and the roote and seede of water lillies taken in meat, do extinguishe the seede by cooling of it. But rew eaten corrupteth and destroyeth the seede with his heate. They which eate calamint continually, do loose the power of generation, and likewise the seede of white violets doth the same. But smithes water, in which iron is often quenched, being continually drunke, doth diminish the seede without any grieve. Moreover of these simples before rehearsed, you may compound and make diuers remedies. And specially this powder is good. R. of the powders of *diacuminum*, *diacalamintines*. ana. ʒ. i. ʒ. seede of tutsan and rew. ana. ʒ. j. calamint. ʒ. ii. seede of lettuce and purslaine. ana. ʒ. j. sugar, the weight of them all: commix them together and make a fine powder, whereof minister. ʒ. j. or ʒ. j. ʒ. infused in foure wine. Also it is counted notable, to lay a plate of lead vpon the loynes, for it is wont to coole much. To those that can not suffer hardnesse of lead, you must giue counsell, that they strew vnder them some of the afore said herbes dried: for the which purpose aboue other things, vine leaues, rew, calamint, & roses are prayed: for these profit, & besides that they hurt not the reines. For vehem

Signa.

Curatio.

To extinguishe
seede.

Tritura.

Lamina
Plumbea.

ment cold things being applied to the loines, do hurt the reines. Also let nor his bed be soft, and let him lie for the most part vpon his side, eschuing vpright lying, lest thereby the arteries of the loynes should wax hot. After that the disease hath dured a while, you must commit the sicke to exercises, whereby the whole body, and specially the diseased parts, may be confirmed and strengthened. Also it shall be good, if nothing else do let it, to vse cold bathing and washings, which is wont to driue away all the griefe ingendred of flux: and that specially if the water be indued with any medicinable quality. Also it is good at certaine times to vse those things that do rubifie and blister, & that can fetch out from the depth and bottome, vnto the top of the skinne. Moreouer the patient must exclude all thought belonging to carnall copulation.

CHAP. LI.

Of the losse of carnall copulation.

DE HIS QUI RE VENEREA VTI NON POSSVNT.

Causa.

Diet.

Curatio.

Pnguentum.

Simples to provoke carnall lust.

Antidotum liquidum.

THEX which be maried, and cannot vse the act of generation, because of the sluggish impotency and weaknesse of their members, comming of a cold distempere wherewith they be vexed, or of some other cause: such ought to exercise the neather parts, and to vse meates that do heat and engender good humours: as is the flesh of hennes, capons, partrich, seasantes, young doves, birdes of mountaines, and specially sparrows, cockes stones, and such like. Not onely good nourishing meates, but also windie meates are good for him, as be chiche peason, beanes, scalions, leekes, the roote and seed of parsneps, pine nuts, sweete almondes, rape rootes, and such other like. Also the egges of partriches do stirre vp carnall lust. Let the patient sleep in a soft bed, and let him read things that do stirre vp lust, or let him heare them read. Let his priuy members be continually chafed and rubbed with oyles, ointments and other heating medicines. For which purpose vse this ointment following. R^e. oyle of lillies. ℥. j. oyle of castoreum. ℥. ss. pepper, nigella, pellitorie. ana. ℥. j. mirrhe, ℥. ss. Euphorbium, gran. iij. wax as much as is sufficient, & make an ointment. And also he must vse medicines which do engender plentie of sperme, and can heat. Among simple medicines, these that follow do chiefly stirre vp carnall lust, as be rocket, mustard seede, garden cresses, nettle seede, roote of Aron, & pepper, satyrion, orminum, annise, squill, orchis, called also testicularis canis, whose greatest round root drunke with milke doth provoke stiffnesse of the yard, but the lesse roote thereof drunke with water doth slake the stiffnesse thereof: also fennell & dill are good. The stones of a Fox dried, bearen to powder and drunke, do cause a stiffnesse of the member, not hurtfull nor vaine. Also the parts of scinces which embrace the reines, are drunke to raise a stiffnesse of the yard. Moreouer burne the dry pissell of an hart and minister ℥. j. of it with pure wine. Among compounds it is good to vse this medicine. R^e. Dianthos, lilii, arcticon, diaglange, ana. ℥. iij. dissatyrion ℥. vj. pine nuts, sweete almondes, pissell, ana. ℥. iij. satyrion, ℥. i. roote of Aron. ℥. j. seedes of rocket, nettles, and garden cresses. ana. ℥. j. ss. scincus ℥. ss. nux indica. ℥. j. of long pepper and ginger, ana. ℥. j. ss. powder of harts pissell. ℥. j. sirupe of mintes, and sugar as much as is sufficient, and make an electuarie, wherof minister before supper

or fasting the quantitie of one drachme or two, alone or in good wine.

CHAP. LII.

Of bursting or ruptures.

DE RAMICE.

CEL in Greeke, *ramex* & *hernia* in Latin, the barbarous writers, call it *ruptura*. It is caused diuers waies, and thereupon it hath diuers names: For if the *Peritonaeum* do breake, and the bowelles fall downe into the coddles, it is called in Latin, *ramex intestinorum*; that is, the rupture of the bowels. But when the bowels do cleaue or stay about the priuie members, it is called in Latin *ramex inguinis*; that is, the rupture about the priuie members. And if any quiet and waterie humour be gathered in any part of the filmes, or skinnies of the cods, it is called in Latin *ramex aquosus*; that is, a waterie rupture. When there groweth hard flesh within the coates and tunicles of the stones, it is called in Latin *ramex carnosus*, that is a fleshie rupture. To be short, the kinds of ruptures euer take their names of the things that do fill vp the coddles. As if the call or filme that lappes in the bowels, do fall downe into the coddles, it is called in Latin *ramex armentis*; that is the rupture of the filme. And if the bowels do slip downe also with it, it is called in Latin *ramex armentis & intestinorum*; that is, the rupture of the filme and the bowels. So when the veines which nourish the stones be spread abroad and swollen out of measure on heapes, it is called *ramex varicosus*; that is the rupture of the swollen veines. The rupture of the bowels, and of the parts about the priuie members, are caused either because the *Peritonaeum* is stretched out more then it ought to be, or because it is broken: Both these do chauce through some violent occasion going before, as a stroke, or leaping, or crying, or by taking vp of a great waight. A waterie rupture is caused sometime of a secret cause, and sometime of a manifest cause. Of a secret cause, as when the vessels that are ioyned together be increased in the coddles, & then a waterie humour mixed with bloud is driuen downe to those parts, and resteth there. Of a manifest cause, as when through some blow or stroke, the vessels breake and slide downe: and then bloud flowing downe thither to nourish them, it is changed into a waterie and wheyish substance. A fleshie rupture is ingendred of a secret cause, as through the stone, being without fluxe & waxing hard, of a stripe, or by ill curing after the cutting of a rupture. The causes of the other ruptures are euident by their descriptions. The signes both of the rupture of the bowels, & the rupture about the priuie members are common: for there is a manifest swelling in the cods, or about the priuie members, which appeareth greater, then it did before in exercises, iourneys, holding of the breath & such like occasions: being thrust together, it goeth backe againe slowly, and it rouleth downe againe quickly. The particular signs whereby ruptures that come when the *Peritonaeum* is but stretched out, be these: that the bowels fall downe not for a long time together, but for a short space & for very litle cause, the swelling appeareth equall & deepe, the bowels that fall down being staied with the *Peritonaeum*. The proper signes of a rupture that cometh when the *Peritonaeum* is broken, are, that the bowels fall downe vniuersally from the beginning of the rupture, and that onely through violent

Rōla.

Ruptura.

Ramex intesti-
norum.Ramex ingui-
nis.Ramex aquo-
sus.Ramex carno-
sus.

Ramex armentis.

Ramex armen-
ti intestinorum.Ramex vari-
cosus.

Causa.

Signa.

causes: the swelling is of a wonderfull greatnesse, inequall, and it sheweth streight way sticking out in the skinne, because the bowelles are fallen out of the *Peritoneum*. The common signes of a waterie rupture be these: swelling that is without paine, and firme, & permanent in the coddess, not vanishing by any occasion; but in them that haue but a litle of the humour it giueth place, and in them that haue not so much of it, not so. And when there is a waterie humour in the coddess, the swelling shineth of the same colour that the humour is, as like dregges, or bloud, or rubicund, or swart. And when these signes appeare in both sides of the coddess, it betokeneth that there is a double rupture. There followeth after a fleshie rupture, hardnesse, and a colour alwaies like vnto it. But if the swelling do encrease into a hardnesse or kernell, then there is neither colour, nor sense, nor feeling. But if the humour be of a wicked nature, then pricking paine doth vex him. The rupture of the bowels, & of the parts about the priuie members, be cured in this wise. You must lay the patient vpright, and separate his legges, and then put vp the bowels by litle and litle: and when they are put vp, you must keepe them vp with conuenient trusses, and ligaments. But if the places adioyning to the coddess, or to the place about the priuie members, be grieved with inflammation and most grievous paines, and that there come with it frettings & windinesse, and so thereby the bowels be made disobedient to go vp againe, then you must vse and apply fomentes, liniments and bathes, which haue vertue to mollifie and to cease paine and inflammation, & to disperse windinesse as those things be which be made of mallowes, cammomill, dill, lincseede, fenugreece, carawayseede, anniseede, comin, and such like. Also nourish the places that be vexed with paine, with wooll that is moyst, dipped in wine and oyle. When the bowels are put vp againe into their places, you must go about, that they may be kept vp still with conuenient trusses and bands: applying to it first, restrictive or glutinatie cerates, or emplasters, as this is. *R.* ship pitch, masticke. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. frankensence. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. *hypocistis*, *sarcocoll*, *acatia*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . *lapis hematit*, dragons bloud. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. bole armoniacke, rootes of comfery, galles, pomegranate rindes. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. misle of the oake. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . of either *Aristolochia*. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. sumache, pomegranate floures. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. goates tallow. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. turpentine and waxe as much as is sufficient: dissolue the gummies first in vineger or wine, & make a cerate, and put it in a weathers skinne, and apply it binding it fast, and do not loose it before the seuenth day. Also in the meane season let the sicketarie thirtie daies in his bed, and let him abstaine from windie meates, and from much drinking of wine, from vehement mouing, running, leaping, crying loude and such other like. And in the meane season let him drinke this decoction. *R.* both the kinds of *Sanicula*, of *Solidago saracenic*, or *consolida saracenic*, *ophio glossum*, pedelion, agrimonie, *numularia*. ana. M. j. knotgrasse, *lematis daphnoides*, great plantaine, burnet. ana. M. β . roote of comferie, hounds tounge. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . roote of the sixth kind of *geranium*. $\mathfrak{z}$. vi. seede of mirtles. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. pomegranate floures. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. leaues of laurell. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . boile these in red wine & water of iust quantitie till the third part be consumed. Then straine it, and by putting to it sugar, make the liquor of the decoction sweete, and purifie it, and make a sweete potion, whereof minister dayly in the morning $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. Also you must

Cure of the ruptures of the bowels and of the inguen.

Ceratum.

Diet.

A glutinative decoction.
Prunella.

take

take very good heed, that the belly waxe not costive: for if he be constrained to labour much. when he should go to the stoole, the bowels will slide downe againe: Also he must vse apt and conuenient deligatures and trusses, as we admonished before. And he must vse them specially at such time as occasion and necessity of mouing requireth it. A watery rupture must be cured by such medicines as do heate and dry vp, as be beane meale, laurell berries, linscede, *To cure a watery rupture.* *daucus, althaea, nigella,* and such other like, which we haue rehearsed in the chapter of the drop sic *Afcites*, and other drop sies. To conclude, as for the cure of these ruptures, or any other by surgerie, let it be sought out of *Paulus Aegineta libro sexto*, chapter 26. where he treateth of it abundantly: for it is not our intent to treat thereof in these bookes: therefore we will proceed to the diseases of the wombe.

CHAP. LIII.

Of stopping of mensruis.

DE SUPPRESSIS MENSIBVS.

THE mensruis of women are suppressed and stopped in them either naturally or against nature. If they be naturally stopped you shall know it chiefly by this: because the woman thereby is vexed with no grieffe of the whole body, nor yet of the wombe. Also you shall haue a respect to the age, for in many the floures begin to flow the fourteenth yeare, & in very few before the thirteenth or twelfth yeare. And to most women they burst out after the fourteenth yeare. For the most part, the purging endureth for two or three daies, to many five daies, in some it endureth vnto the seuenth day. The mensruis also do stoppe in some the fiftieth yere, or the fiftie five yeare, and they flow not vntill the sixtieth yeare but in few women. Also barraine women and dauncers, are not naturally purged: for whatsoeuer excrement is in them, it is consumed by the vehemencie of exercises. And to be short, women of a hote temperature, that be wild, and do vse strong exercise, they purge out little or nothing. But many times the mensruis are wont to be suppressed and stopped against nature, either through ouermuch grossnesse, or slendernesse. For fat folke are more without blood, then other folke, and they haue lesse and streighter veines, and that litle blood which is in them, turneth almost all into fat. But they that are leane & slender, which be wasted with some continuall sicknesse, they haue no superfluous blood in them. Moreouer the mensruis do not flow in them whose blood is either grosse or clammy, or if it be sent to some other part of the body, and purged out: as for example, if it goe out at the nose, or at the fundament. Also in some that haue cast out much blood from the breast, the mensruis are stopped, and in some, because much blood hath gone out of a veine being cut. Also other kind of emptyings haue often done the same thing, as abundant sweating, continuall vomiting, fluxes of the belly, and all kinds of pustules and wheales which budde out of the skinne. Besides the causes now rehearsed, oftentimes the mensruis are withholden through great and sharpe sickneses, and through abundance or scarcitie of foode. For of litle foode, that litle doth expire and breath out streight, and of much foode the passages are stopped, and the excretion

*Cause.**In whom the floures are naturally stopped.**In whom the floures are stopped against nature.*

and voyding out of the menstruis is prevented and letted. And for those causes the menstruis are specially suppressed and stopped, the whole body being euill affected. Also they are in like manner withhelden and stopped, when the wombe it selfe is afflicted with a particular disease or vice: which thing chaunceth to the wombe sometime through hote or cold distempure of the same. Also many times the purgation of the menstruis is letted thorough hardnesse ingendred in the mouth of the matrice, or through some excrecence and growing vp of a peece of flesh, or also through abundant fatnesse. Also to some by and by in the beginning, certaine filmes or thinne skinnies ingender about the necke or entrie of the matrice. To other some the scarres of vlcers which haue beene before in the wombe, haue stopped the mouthes of the vesselles which caried bloud into the wombe. To some after the aborsion of the wombe, (the mouth of it being exulcerate, and afterward healed and brought to a scarre) there commeth conioyning and compaction of it, which besides that it letteth all other transpirations of the wombe, it also stoppeth the excretion and voyding out of bloud. Moreouer stubburne carefullnesse, immoderate feare and great sorrow do stop the menstruis. There followeth suppression and stopping of the menstruis, heauinesse of the whole bodie, desire to vomit, abhorring of meate, and certaine terrible discursions, such as chance to those that haue conceived. Moreouer there be paines about the loynes, thighes, necke, the hinder part of the eyes, and the fore part of the head. Also there follow continuall feauers, and blackish vrine, with certaine red atters, and filth in them, euen like as one should mixe soote with the water wherein new killed flesh hath lately beene washed. Also to many either the vrine doth come forth difficultly, or else it is stopped altogether. The diuersitie of causes is knowne partly by the dispositiō of the whole bodie, and partly also and for the most part, by the telling of the patient. Women may know a cold distempure in themselves, by these signes specially, because they be more sleepe and slower to all kinde of mouing, and whiter of colour, and as it were of a leadie colour. Moreouer their vrine is waterie & such like signes appeare, which are often rehearsed before. The tokens of hote distempure are cleane contrarie to these signes of a cold distempure before rehearsed. Signes of fulnesse, besides those that may be gathered out of the former chapters, are wont specially to be these: that womē that are vexed therewith, are griued most in the time of the menstruis; and they feele vehement paine about the loynes and the priuie members, and their veines are swolne vp very great. The cure is diuers according to the diuersitie of causes. For if a cold distempure of the liuer or wombe do stoppe the flowing of menstruis, it must be cured and driuen away with contraries: that is, with meates and medicines that do heate. Therefore you must giue vnto them hote meates, and wine that is yellow, odoriferous and old. Also you must prescribe to them exercises, and you must minister other things which can helpe the bodie. Aboue other, these things that follow are good, penitroiall, time, calamint, sothernewood, diptaine, roore of yreor, cassia, gladon, asarum, and saueine: of which you may make decoctions and fomentis. Also you must minister vnto them fasting, after a bath, pure wine hote, Also the meer and conuenient times to take these

medic

*Signa.**Cold distemper**Hot distemper.
Plenitudo.**Curatio.
Cure of a cold
distemper.*

medicines be, first, if the patient drinke straight way, when the time of purgation is at hand: secondarily, if she drinke straight after a bath, fomentation, or annoynting, that the medicine helping the body being yet hore and loose, may shew his strength and effect the more easily and effectually. Women that be too hore and vse much exercise haue no need of curing: for it were better to the safeguard of their proper health, to prescribe them such a diet, whereby their bodies should be so dried, that the menstruis should not need to be purged: but this were against conception: for they do not conceiue which be not purged. Therefore for conceptions sake, and for because that almost all women keepe an vndiscreete dyet, purgations be necessary. Therefore it is good also to adioyne the cure, whereby the menstruis that are stopped thorough hore distemper, may be brought out. Women therefore, that be hore, and vse many exercises, must chiefly be made moyster by moyst meates and drinckes taken in good quantity, as be soups of ptysans, and of *Alica*, and meates that are made of lambes flesh, kiddes flesh, and fishes that be tender, birds of mountaines, & milke. Let their pot herbes be lettuce and gourdies, & their fruite, new figes. They must vse white wine, that is not very old, and let it be alaycd. Also bathes of sweere water are good, and to conclude, that diet ascribed to them that haue the feauer Ethicke, is to be prescribed to these. If the menstruis be withholden and stopped by reason of the fulnes that vexeth the woman, and if nothing else do let it, you must begin the cure with letting of blood. And you must cut the veines of the ankles or of the hammes: and that not before the accustomed time of the menstruis. Neither will it be vnprofitable, if cupping glasses be fastened to the legges. The blood being emptied, minister potions which can prouoke menstruis, and apply fomentations, bathes, and annoyntings of other things which we will describe hereafter. But if there be no fulnesse, but onely grosse and flegmaticke humours do stop the flowing of the menstruis, first you must minister medicines which can cut and diuide the aforesayd humours, and prepare them, and make them easier to be expelled and purged out: as is this decoction *Rx* the rootes of gladdon, yreos, parsley and sperage. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. of the seedes of apium, fennell, *bruscus*, annise, *dancus*, ammi, and nettles. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. calamint, wormwood. ana. *M. ss*. origan, sothernwood, mugwort, penitroiall, *asarum*. ana. *M. j*. hysope. *M. j. ss*. chosen cinnamon. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. fetch all these in a conuenient quantity of water, vntill the third part be consumed: then streine it and make the licour of that decoction sweete with sugar, & clarifie it with the white of an egge, putting into it of the sirups of calamint, of hysope, and of horehound. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . & make a potion, wherof minister daily in the morning the weight of $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. When that decoction is drunke vp, minister some purging medicine: as is, *hierapicra*, *diaphanicon*, and *electuarium nidum*, pilles of agaricke, of *benedicta*, or such like. After purging, the patient must vse exercises, and frictions of the neather partes, and specially walkings. Moreouer apply fomentations, and bathings made of camomill, motherwort, mintes, and other things rehearsed in the decoction a-boue said. Also annoint the patient with this ointment, *Rx* of the oyles of lilies, and reu. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. motherwort with the thinnleauces, penitroiall, calamint, and $\mathfrak{z}$. j. root of yreos. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. hysope, origan, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. with wax as much as is suffi-

Cure of hore
distemper.

Cure of fulnes.

Purgatio.

Exercise.

Foment.

Vnguentum.

disease of the wombe, must be sought out of their proper places.

CHAP. LIII.

Of flowing of mensstruis.

DE REDVNDANTIBVS. MENSIBVS.

WE say, that mensstruis do redound and overflow in women, when that great plentie of them do flow out longer then the accustomed time of their purgation. There is no iust or certaine time of their purgation: for to most women they flow two or three dayes, to many five dayes, & to some leu-
 uen dayes. The mensstruis do chance to flow out of measure, through great
 Cause. or small vessels opened wide, or broken. Also immoderate purgations do in-
 gender in women, sometime through grievous trauell in childbirth, which also
 do cease oftentimes of themselves. Oftentimes after abortion, they labour
 of a vehement abortion & fluxe of mensstruis, & sometime it bringeth the in-
 to a dangerous perill. If the greater vessels be broken or open, the blood flow-
 Signa. eth out gushing on heapes: but if the lesser be open, it floweth out by litle
 and litle, and not in great quantitie. If it be caused through eating or gnawing, it
 doth not only flow by litle and litle, but also it floweth with very great paine.
 Moreover when the mensstruis flow immoderately, there followeth a filthie
 colour, the feet are puffed vp with a light swelling, the strength of the body is
 decayed, both the digestion & appetite of meat is corrupted: and in all points
 such signes, as are wont to follow immoderate voiding of blood, either by the
 hemorroides, or by any other fluxe of blood, do follow in this disease. First
 therefore in the beginning of the cure, you must bind the places between the
 Curatio. joints and the extreme parts of the body with bands, beginning at the arme-
 holes and the shaires. Also you must fasten great cupping glasses lightly vnder
 the paps, as Hippocrates teacheth, 5. Aphor. 50. Also they must vse meates and
 drinckes that be sharpe and restrictive, as is rice and such like: and let the sick
 rather eate roasted meates, then sodden: and specially such flesh, as is of na-
 ture able to drie vp, as be birds that liue on mountaines, and wilde beastes.
 They must abstaine from mowing, and wine, and in steed of it they must vse
 some restrictive potion, or posca, not cold but warme. Moreover you must mi-
 nister restrictive medicins in drinke, as these simples be following R. pome-
 To restrain
 mensstruis. granate floures, hypocisthu, acatia, corall, lycium, terra lemmia, galles, knotgrasse,
 both the Consolidaes, the stone hematites, shels of mast, plantaine, barberries and
 such like. Compound medicins be these following, as syrups of roses, mirtles,
 trochiskes of amber, & of terra lemmia. Also these pilles following are maruel-
 lous good to stop and restrain the mensstruis. R. terra lemmia, bole armoniack,
 Catapouie. frankensence, masticke, galles, ana. ʒ. ij. dragons blood, the stone hematites,
 ana. ʒ. i. harts tongue burne. ʒ. i. hypocisthu, acatia, red corall, ana. ʒ. ʒ. ʒ. pom-
 granate floures, red roses, ana. ʒ. ij. amber. ʒ. i. comix them with syrup of mirtles,
 and make pilles, wherof minister the weight of one drachme or ʒ. ʒ. Also fo-
 ment the place outwardly with the piles of roses, mirtles, quinces, and sharpe
 wine. And apply ointments, emplasters, and cerotes, and restrictive Epi-
 themes, wherof you shall find many before in the chapters of the fluxes, Dy-
 senteria, Diarria, and Lienetia. Also incessions made of the decoctions of the
 Incessio.

aforesaid medicines be good. Also you must vse such medicines as are cast into the wombe with an instrument, For the which purpose iuice of plantine is maruellously commended, wherewith Galen saith, in foure daies, he stopped a fluxe of the wombe, that could be stopped with no other medicine. The quantitie that must be throwne in, should be the measure of one cyath. Of the same effect be the iuice of knotgrasse, or nightshade, or *hypocistis*, or *acasia*, or such like cast in. Also the vsing of Pessaries is not to be despised: among which this is specially praised. R. of frankensense, pomegranate floures, and gales. ana. ʒ. j. of gumme arabicke, *acasia*, ambre, hartshorne burnt. ana. ʒ. ij. bole armoniacke. ʒ. ij. beate all these to fine powder, and mixe it with wooll dipped in oyle of roses, and put it into the wombe.

Pessulus.

CHAP. LV.

Of womans fluxe.

DE FLVORE VULIERI.

VTERI *fluor* in Latin, fluxe of the matrice in English, is a continuall distillation, and flowing out for a long time, of the whole body, purging it selfe. That which is voided out, doth represent such forme and colour as the humour that doth abound in the bodie. For some is red, as blood purrified, or atted: some white, which commeth of fleume: some is pale, which signifieth choler: and some is watterie, which is of a wheyish matter. And if pure blood come forth, as in the cutting of a veine, you must take good heede, that some erosion and gnawing be not ingendred in the wombe. By these signes following the fluxe is knowne. The places are continually moist with the humours, being diuers in colours. The patient is ill coloured, she saoureth no meat but abhorreth it, in walking she breatheth difficultie, her eyes be swollen, sometime with paine, and sometime without paine, or with ulceration or without it, and either with an inflammation, that is with the vicer, or else it is filthie or pure. The diuersitie of causes you may know by the colour of that that floweth forth as is aforesaid. And if a woman be vexed with a red fluxe, in the beginning, if age and other things will suffer it, you must come to letting of blood. For many incommodities would follow, if you should first go about to repress and stop the rage and violence of the blood that floweth, as the dropie, vice of the sinewes, or of the mouth of the stomach, or of the head. You may part the times of your bloodletting, as you do in them that spitte blood, so that thereby the auersion and turning away of the blood may be the longer a litle. You must cut a veine in the arme. After this you must bind the extreme partes of the body with bandes, and you must vse and apply all such things, as can turne the fluxe of the humour another way. Therefore all those remedies that be rehearsed of vs in the former chapters be good. Let her whole diet be restrictiue, and such as doth ingender grossnesse and thicknesse. Let her drinke be water, or if she be weake, wine that is grosse and restrictiue. But if the fluxe that is white or wheyish do vexe a woman, it may not be stopped at the beginning, that euill humors may be purged out of the bodie. Nor also it is not against reason, seeing that that which is flowe out, is ingendred of fleume if you do minister a medicine

Cause.

Signa.

Cure of the red fluxe.

P'ictus ratio.

Cure of a fluxe that is white and atted.

to her, which doth purge fleume. And you must minister and apply to the whole body, medicines and remedies which do dry vp, seeing that the disease it selfe is moyst. Therefore exercises specially of the vpper parts, and frictions are good. Also they must eat flesh which hath vertue in it to drye, as birdes of the mountaines, and wild beastes. Also in the beginning of the euill, such medicines may be ministred, as do extenuate grosse humors, and after that do bring them out with the vrine, as be *asarum*, fennell, *apium*, and such like, often rehearsed before. The beginning being past, you must apply to the wombe things that be moderately restrictive, as be oyles of roses and quinces, and other rehearsed in the former chapter. Also you must vse abstersiue and scouring medicines, least that vlceration be made with the humour that floweth: wherefore the wheyish humour must continually be washed with hote water. After the scouring and cleansing of the filth, you must annoynt oyle of roses, or of quinces, or of mirrles. Likewise, when a woman is diseased with pale fluxe, it may not be stopped at the beginning, but the body must be purged with a medicine that purgeth choler. Then you must studie how to pull backe, and turne away the humour, and you must vse other restrictive medicines, not neglecting abstersiue and scouring things, whereof you shall haue speciall neede, because of the sharpenesse of the humour. Moreouer to conclude, when the fluxe ceaseth, they must long abstaine from swift goings and walkings, from much frictions and rubbings of the belly and the loynes, also from eating of sharpe things, from things that heat, and from such things as do prouoke vrine.

*Cure of a pale
and cholericke
fluxe.*

CHAP. LVI.

Of strangling of the wombe.

DE VTERI SUFFOCATIONE.

SUFFOCATION or strangling of the wombe, is nothing else, but a drawing backe of it vp to the vpper parts. It is caused through stretching out of it, which is ingendred of fulnes, that followeth after the retention and stopping of menstruis. For in women the wombe when it is retched and stretched out, it runneth not to another place like a wandring beast, but is drawne backe through the extension. Also it chaunceth oftentimes through the seede that is restrained. Also many times it chaunceth through cold, which happened to the wombe, at the time that the purgation of the menstruis is ministred. Also sometime it commeth through some hard abortion, or when as any hath hastened to stoppe suddenly a fluxe of bloud flowing from the wombe. They that are vexed with this disease, when he sit is nigh, there followeth heavinesse of mind, slownesse, weaknesse of the legges, palenesse of face, and a sorrowfull countenance. But when the suffocation and strangling is now present, there followeth disposition to sleepe, doting, a withholding of the instruments of the senses, the voyce doth waxe dumbe, and the legges are drawne vp together. The pulles are small and weake. Also oftentimes they are altogether stopped. Also in many the breath that should come out at the mouth and nostrilles is stopped altogether, and yet that which is in the arteries, doth remaine still. When the euill doth cease, the balls of the cheekes begin to waxe

Cause.

Signa.

red, and the eyes be lifted vp and opened. Also a certaine humidity and moistnesse, that one may by feeling perceiue to runne out of the wombe of women, and the bowels do make a noyse: and also the wombe it selfe is a little loofened, and so their mind, senses, and mouing commeth to them againe. This disease commeth by causes at certaine times as the falling sicknesse doth, and that chaunceth when the matrice (as is aforesaid) is filled with seede, or with some other matter that putrifieth and rotteth in it. When the wombe it selfe is diseased with the quantity & quality of any thing, then menstruis, or seede of other kind of *symptomates* are ingendred. If that which is able to coole the whole body, do cause this disease, the body is so vehemently cooled, that both breathing and arteries beating, cannot be perceived by the senses. Which humour, if it be either grosse or sharpe, it causeth conuulsions and cramps: but if it haue the nature of melancholy, it causeth sorrow and sadnesse, and dejection of the mind, refrigeration and paine of the stomach. This kind of disease ingendreth in all seasons, but specially in winter and autume: and most commonly youbg folke, and such as be prone to lecherie, & barren, specially if they be made so by medicines be most taken with this disease. Many do recouer from this disease, and many againe do perish sodainely in the very fit, or at the least way within few houres after. That chaunceth, when the pulses be swift and inordinate, and then do leave off & vanish cleaue away. At the last a cold humour in litle quantity doth bedew and moisten the skinne aloft. In the fits therefore you must bind the extreme parts, and besides the bindings, you must rubbe the legs and all the whole bodie, and do euen as you would recouer one that is sounded. And you must place the sick with her necke and shoulders bending, and rising vpward, and with her thighs and share leaning downward. You must apply to her nostrilles stinking things, as the snuffe of a candle newly put out, feathers specially of partridges burnt, or wooll burnt, or soalee of shoes, or shales of garlicke or onions: also haire burnt, and specially if they be the haire of the sick, or gores horne burnt. Also pitch melted vpon the coales, *gallbanum* or *castoreum*, or such like. Also you may hold a chamber vessell with old vrine to their nose, or old linnen clothes dipped in Brimstone and burned. And you must perfume the priuies beneath with odoriferous things, as be *storax*, wood of *Aloes*, cinamon, cloues, and such like. And it is good to fasten cupping glasses with much flame, and lightly to the partes aboue the priuie members, and to the bottome of the belly. As soone as the fit doth come, you must apply fomentes, and lile bagges warmed, to the bottome of the belly and share, for you shall scarcely find a more present remedie in the coming of the fit of this disease. And you shall make them of both the motherworts, & with origan, betony, camomill, calimint, wormewood, pennyroyall, lile seede, louage seede and such like. And if the fit be prolonged, you must also ad too, such things as are good to dissolue and bring out windinesse: whereof you shall find example and names out of the Chapters of windinesse of the stomach, and paine of the cholicke. Also then you must poure into the wombe both oynments & oiles, that be very odoriferous, as is, oiles of spike, and yreos, and such like. Also let a midwife dippe her fingers in these oyles, and then put the into the mouth of the matrice, rubbing it long & easily, that the

rough

Curatio.
How to do in
the fit.

Sacculi.

through that prouoking, the grosse and clammy humour may be auoided out. Also let the woman be raised with loud callings, & call her loud by her proper name. Also at this time you must minister those things that cause incesing, as be pepper, *castoreum*, *struthium*, and such like. There be some that thinke it good to vse incesions made of the decoction of laurell berries, and leaues, peniroyall, calamint, motherwort, horehound, sauine, *althaa*, cammomill, *serpilum*, yreos, *aristolochia*, and fenugreeke. But in the time of the incesions, we may not omit the cure of the braine, but you must irrigate and sprinkle the head with oile of roses and vinegre. But I iudge, that you must rather vse fomentes and litle bagges, then incesions, specially when as for the most part, although thou wouldst neuer so faine, thou canst not vse incesions in this euill. When the fit resteth and is ceased, compell the patient to vomit, for all vomites do lighten, but specially such as are vexed with meate. The third day after, you must applie cupping glasses with scarification to the loynes, and the ilions. After the seuenth day minister the purgation of *hiera colocynthide*, or pilles of agaricke, & by and by come to the drinking of *castoreum*, which being continually drunke, it deliuereth the patient straight way from this euill. Also you must minister euerie day thereof ℥.j. sometime with *mulsu*, sometime with the decoction of motherwort, and sometime minister it with thinne wine. Therefore at this time, rather then in the time of the fit (as is said) it is lawfull for you to vse incesions and pessaries that do mollifie, made of goose greafe, *storax*, masticke, gumme armoniacke, and such like. Also the wombe must be perfumed beneath with such things as do heate, and haue vertue to bring out wind. Therefore vse this perfume specially. R. of the Trochiskes of *galia* and *alptamoshina*, ana. ℥.j. *storax*. ℥.iij. cloues, maces, ana. ℥.j. wood of *aloes*. ℥.ij. cinnamon chosen, leaues of laurell. ana. ℥.ij. *lapdanum*. ℥.ij. beat them into powder, and commix them with *storax liquida*, and make trochiskes for perfumes. In the meane season, let the woman be content with a verie litle meat & drinke, and let all her diet be excicatorie and drying vp. This cure following is to be vsed in the fits of this disease. In restoring and recreating the whole bodie, specially if that the disease hath endured long, you must beginne oftentimes with bloudletting, specially if the menstruis haue bene stopped, and letted of their purging. Then you must come to purging with *hierapicra*. The purging being done, you must fasten on cupping glasses lightly, but with much flame, and you must draw them off violently. Also sometime the places may be scarified, and strew vpon the scarification, salt, then you must heale it with conuenient medicines. Also you may apply verie well *Synapismes*, and dropaces made of *Euphorbium*, pellitorie, pepper, and mustard seed. Also a good diet doth helpe much, as deambulations in the morning, gestations, and caryings in a cart, or in a ship, or on a beast, be good. Also, after they be moued with carying about, crying out loud, distinct and apt reading is conuenient. Also anointing and frictions vsed now and then are good. Bathes of sweet water are seldome to be admitted, and not, but because it should scoure and cleanse the filth. It is verie good to vse naturall bathes, which flow by nature, and this, as it were the verie last refuge. Aboue others those bathes are good which be in *Badenia* in the base Germanie in *Marchia*. And our Bathes at Bathe and at

What must be
done straight
after the fit.

Trechiskes of
perfumes.

Diet.
Cure of the
whole bodie.

Diet.

Buxtons in Darbeshire, and there is a bath neare Newmarket in Suffolke at a towne called Exning, they be all verie good, but if they go to anie of these bathes, they must take heed of cold.

CHAP. LVII.

Of the falling out of the wombe.

DE VTERI PROCIDENTIA.

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

WE say, that the matrice falleth out, when it is so turned downeward, that it sticketh out outwardly. And yet the whole matrice rolleth not downe, being loosened from the bands & ligaments, as many vnwise folke do thinke, for if it should fall downe so, it could not be restored againe. Although the vvombe do fall out but seldome, yet there be many causes of the falling out of it. For a vvoman falling frō a high place, if she fall on her haunches, the pannicles & filmes, that hold vp the wombe and the members adioyning do breake & cause this disease. Also it chaunceth manie times that in a sore trauelell of child birth, the wombe falleth out, because of the drawing out of the secundine, which the wombe that ioyneth to it doth follow. Also many times it chaunceth through negligent and vnskilfull drawing out of the child, specially if it be dead. Moreouer it chaunceth sometimes through a stripe, or lifting vp of a great vvaight, or through vehement perturbation of the mind, as death of children, or comming of enemies, or through perillous sailing, or through some such like cause, all the bodie being loosened, the wombe falleth out. Also sometime this euill chanceth (all the whole being loosened) through resolution or weaknesse of the pannicle & muscles, which thing chāceth specially to them that be old. Oftentimes the wombe falleth out through the flowing downe of an humour much in quantiiy and clammye. It falleth out most commonly by the mouth of it, & that which falleth out, is like to the eggs of an Ostrich, differing only in that, that it is bigger, or lesse in quantitie. There is no need of manie signes, because the diuersitie of causes may partly be knowne by the constitution and state of the body, & partly also by the telling of the sicke, & them that be with them dayly: when this disease is but newly begun, you must endeuour to put vp the wombe againe, & to restore him into his owne place, for in the beginning it will be obedient to be put vp readily, and being in his owne place, it will tarie so still, specially if age agree vnto it. For in the that are well stricken in age, the wombe being put againe, it slideth out againe through euerie light cause. It is good therefore, if there be hard dung in the right gut, to bring it out with a clister. Likewise if vrine be gathered in the bladder, let it be brought out with a cyring, that the matrice may be at free liberty on ech side. For otherwise if it chanceth by their stretching out, that the matrice, which is in the middest betweene them is pressed together and pent in a strait place, & so when he is fallen out, they let it and stop it, that it cannot be put vp againe into his owne place. When you haue thus done, you must lay the sicke vpright so that her haunches may lye highest, her hammes bowed, & her legs spread abroad: then you must bath and nourish abundantly that part of the matrice which is fallen out, with warme oile or butter, or mallowes sodden, or with the decoction of *althea*, *fenugreeke*, *linseed*, or such like: and you must prepare

wooll

wooll together on a heape, in figure and thicknesse, according to the proportion of the member, and wind it about aloft with a fine and pure linnen cloth: then dippe it in the iuices of *Acatia* or *hypocistis* infused in wine, and put it into the wombe, and you shall wrest & writh vpward all that which is fallen down by litle and litle, and without violence, vntill the matrice be put vp into his owne proper place. Outwardly you must couer the parts about the priuy members with a sponge wrong out of *Pesca*. The woman shall lie with her legges stretched out & ioyned together, that the one may leane vpon the other. But it is more safegard to bind the feete together, bringing the band vp to the knees. But if that part of the matrice which is fallen out, be swollen through continuance of time, and be stuffed vp with plenty of humours, so that the swelling do let the putting vp of it, you shall nourish it with decoction of beets, and then you must cleanse it and wash it with vineger, and strew in it salt finely powdered, and when it leaueth swelling, then put it vp as is afore sayd. Then fasten cupping glasses with much flame to the nauell, & both the ilions or small guts: and apply continually to the nose odoriferous things. The third day (the wooll being as yet still in the wombe) let the woman sit in blacke soure wine a litle warmed, or in the decoction of mirtles, brable leaues, pomegranate rinds & such like. This being done, let her lie vpright again with her haunches highest, then take the former wooll out, and put in such another in the stead of the first, dipped in the same medicine. Also apply cataplasmes & emplasters outwardly to the bottome of the belly, made of dares, pomegranate rindes, lentils and such like. Also Cerotes that are made of mastick, wood of *aloes*, *lapdanum*, frankensence, squinant, *acorus*, nutmegs, gumme *tragacathe*, and such like, are good to be applied. But let these things be changed euery third day, vntill the cure be ended perfectly. Also during the whole time of the cure, let the woman eschew mouing, & such things as prouoke sneezing. And the womb must be perfumed beneth with stinking things, but to the nose you must apply most odoriferous things, for because the matrice flieth from stinking things, and it followeth & embraceth odoriferous things. Let her meates be such as ingender good iuice, & giue her odoriferous wines. Also the belly must be made soft & soluble, least if she should go to the stoole difficultly, the matrice should also fall out again. But yet you must take good heed, that the belly be not too much loosened, for then the parts adioyning are loosened, & so the matrice will fall out againe. Moreouer if that part of the worab which is fallen out, hath through cōtinuance of time by negligence bin putrified & rotten, & through continual wetting of it with yrine, & filthinesse sticking in it, it be exulcerated: you must cut off and seare that which is vnprofitable, or burne it without any feare of danger: for it hath bene knowne (as *Paulus* testifierh) that the whole matrice, because it was rotted, hath bene taken away, and the woman liued still.

Pictus ratio.

CHAP. LVIII.

Of the mole of the matrice.

DE MOLA.

MOLA in Latine is called *Ætius* & *Paulus*, a swelling that is hardened, sometime in the mouth & entry of the matrice, & sometime it sticketh out in all the matrice, & in feeling it is almost like a stone. Galen in li. 14. *ther. met.*

Causa.

Signa.

Curatio.

Vnguentum.

Pessus.

Morsili.

Pessus.

defineth *Mola* to be a peoce of flesh without shape. This disease is caused of womans seede, and much menstruous blood flowing into the matrice, and there kept, retained and stopped, which immoderate heate doth ioyne together, and changeth it into the forme and fashion of flesh. There followeth this euill, a hard swelling, with contraction and drawing vp of the sides, tendernes of the bodie, euill colour, losse of appetite, & suppression of the menstruis. Also in this euill the pappes do swell, so that at the first it causeth some to suspect that the woman is conceiued with child, but in proceffe of time it may be discerned. For paine followeth the *Mola*, causing pricking, neither is there any mouing perceiued in this disease, as is in conception. Many of the do make a suspicion of the dropsie, but yet there is a difference between the two: because the swelling is hard, and doth not giue place to the thrusting of the hand and finger, as the dropsie doth, nor maketh a noise as the tympany doth. But yet often in proceffe of time, the liuer is cooled, and the dropsie ingendreth. This euill for the most part is incurable, except remedies be applied in the beginning. But howsoeuer it chaunceth, the cure may not be neglected, but you must applie and minister all things that seeme to be good for it. But first of all you must giue her meates that ingender good iuyce, and let her vse moderate drinking of wine. Let not the woman vse vehement mouing, for that will cause the fluxe to the disease, but let her vse gestations, & carryings, and deambulations and bathes, and in her lying let her feete be highest. In the meane season if fulnesse be present, you must cut a veine of the arme, & then you must purge her by *pilule scditæ*. When the bodie is purged and emptied, apply cataplasms, fomentes, inceptions, pessaries, ointments and cerotes, which haue vertue and power to dissolue and loosen, as they be that are made of *Althea*, mallowes, cammomill, melilot, fenugreeke, linseed, and such like. For this purpose also it is good to apply *unguentum dialthea* or *emplastrum diachilon simplex*, or apply this ointment: R^x of the oyle of sweet almonds. ʒ. iij. oile of sillies. ʒ. ij. ʒ. goose grease and hens grease. ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. musculage of linseed and fenugreeke. ana. ʒ. j. of the gummes *ammoniacum* & *bdellium*. ana. ʒ. ij. roote of *althea*, *nigella* seedes, and *daucus*. ana. ʒ. ij. dissolue the gummes in wine, & with wax as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Also you must put in Pessaries made with butter, swines grease, harts marrow, raisins, fat figs, linseed and fenugreeke. After this you must minister such medicines as can prouoke menstruis: for which purpose besides those things that we rehearsed in the chapter of stopping of menstruis, this medicine is good. R^x the powders of *diacinnamomum*, *diagalangæ*, *diacuminum*. ana. ʒ. ʒ. powder of *diamber*. ʒ. j. powder of *dialacha*. ʒ. ʒ. Cinamon chosen, *S. Johns wort*, *calamus aromaticus*, *asarum*, roote of *gladon*, anise seede. ana. ʒ. j. seede of *rew*, ginger, motherwort, horehound, *dictamnus*, sage. ana. ʒ. ʒ. suger dissolved in the waters of motherwort, and *S. Johns wort*, as much as is sufficient, and make lozenges, whereof minister dayly the weight of two or three ʒ. Also it is good to put in this pessarie. R^x of the roote of *Asarum*, *gladon*, and *wadder*. ana. ʒ. ij. seede of *rew*, *nigella*. ana. ʒ. ʒ. *marioram*, nutmegs, cloues, laurell berries. ana. ʒ. j. saucine. ʒ. j. *castoreum*, *euphorbium*. ana. ʒ. ʒ. powder them and searce them that haue neede, & with turpentine make a Pessarie. To conclude, you must

must vse medicines that can dissolue and loosen congealed blood: for so there will follow excretion, and voyding out of much blacke blood and clodded. Also it profiteth maruellously to the taking away of this disease, specially if the euill haue continued long, to vse naturall bathes, and such as do ingender by themselves, which haue vertue to dissolue and discusse. Moreover, many other remedies rehearsed in the Chapters of the Drop sic, may be vsed in this.

CHAP. LIX.

Of inflammation of the wombe.

DE INFLAMMATIONE VTERI.

TH a wombe is inflamed through many causes: as through a stripe or retention, and stopping of menstruis: also by abortion, exulceration, vnmisable lecherie, sitting on a very hard stoole, very long and swift deambulation and walking. Also oftentimes it chaunceth through cold, prohibition and letting the transpiration and breathing out. The companions to inflammation of the matrice be these: an acute feuer, paine of the head, the share, the loines, & the rootes of the eyes: conuulsion and crampe of the armes, the fingers, and the necke, and declining of them contrary. Also paine of the stomacke, & shutting vp of the mouth of the matrice, and pulses that be small and often. If the inflammation be feeble and small, the aforesayd signes will not be great and strong, and the wombe will be vexed with greater paine. But if the inflammation be vehement, then the whole wombe is vexed with a panting paine, and all the signes will be the more vehement. If all the wombe be inflamed, it will be painfull all ouer, but if some part of it be vexed with an inflammation, then the paine is greatest in that part. For if the hinder parts of it be vexed with inflammation, the paine will afflict the loynes most, & hard dung is withholden and stopped, because then the right gut is pressed together very much. If the former part be inflamed, then there is paine about the priuities, and the strangury or difficulty in pissing is engendred, because the bladder is pressed together. If the sides of it be inflamed, the partes aboue the priuie members are stretched out, and the leggs are grieued, and difficultly moued. When inflammation afflicteth the mouth of the matrice, there is paine in the *Abdomen*, and if you put in your finger, you shall feele the mouth hard, vnpleasant, shut vp, and burning hote. In the beginning therefore of the cure, if neither age, nor state of the body, nor time of the yeare do let it, you must cut the veine of the ham or of the ankles (if the inflammation came not after abortion, or great voiding of blood.) Afterward you shall place the sicke in a darke house, which is moderately warme, bidding her to be quiet, and prohibiting all mouing from her legges. Then you must rub the space betweene the ioynes, and also the extreame parts, that you may turne away the course of the flux from the wombe. For her meate, which must be litle in quantity, you must vse ptisan broth and rere egges: but there must be a day betweene: she must abstaine from drinking of wine, and for that she must vse the decoction of cinamon, or hote water. Also the belly if it be not soluble inough of it selfe, must be washed & emptied by easie and mollifying clysters. Outwardly you must apply vpon the loynes and about the share, wooll wet in vineger, wherein roses haue bin sodden. Also

*Cause.**Signa.**Curatio.**Diet.**Localia.*

dates or quinces sodden in wine, and commixed with oyle of roses, is good to be applied. Also you must apply cataplasmes made with the meale of linsseed, fenugreeke, & with melilot, plantain, lintels, knorgrasse, purslaine, singreene, and such like: and that specially if the inflammation be of the nature of an *erysipela*. Moreover you must put into the matrice, wooll moistened with oyle of roses, or quinces, or in the iuyce of purslaine, or singreene. When the inflammation beginneth to decline and cease, you must come to the vsing of those things which haue vertue to release, dissolue and discusse. Therefore you shall bid the patient sit vp to the loynes in fenugreeke sodden, or in the decoction of *althea*, linsseed, mallowes, and sometime also motherwort, horehound and sage. Also you shall annoint about the priuities, and the loynes, barley meale with fenugreeke and linsseed sodden in *mulsu*, or the decoction of drie figges. Also put in pessaries made of butter, harts-marrow, goose grease, hens grease, and such like. When the cure hath proceeded, sundry meats and light will be much profitable. And when the declination of it is manifest, bring the sicke to bathes, and giue her wine that is wateric and thinne.

CHAP. LX.

Of windinesse in the wombe.

DE INFLATIONE VTERI.

*Causa.**Signa.**Curatio.*

THE wombe is puffed vp through cold or humors corrupt in it, or through laborion or sore trauel in childbirth, the dore of it being shut, or a clod of bloud being in it and stopping it. Oftentimes the windinesse ingendreth in the hollow bought and space of it, sometime in the bosome of it, which is euident to the senses, and sometime in the thinner parts of the substance of the womb, not appearing to the senses. There followeth this euill, swelling of the bottome of the belly, with hardnes and paine that pricketh, which goeth vp to the midriffe and the stomach: and yet neuerthelesse it is stretched out on both sides, sometime to the share, and sometime the paine is in the loynes, and at the nauell, to whom also the head agreeeth. Also many times wind breaketh out of the priuities that the sicke may feele it. If therefore windinesse be gathered in the hollownesse of the matrice, there is heard a certaine rumbling & noise in the body, such as chanceth to the guts which are vexed with gripings: also if you beat your fingers on it, it maketh a noise like a timpanie. But when the windinesse is contained in the thinne and slender passages of the matrice, then they are vexed with more vehement paine, and harder to cure. This euill is cured first if age, the region and time of the yeare do not let it, by bloud letting, fasting, and purging with *hierapicra Galeni*: which being done, you must vse fomentes, and annointings with oile of rew, or with oile wherein dill hath bene sodden. Also let her vse incessions made of the decoction of rew, peniroyall, calamint, horehound, motherwort, *althea*, & such like. Also apply cataplasmes made of the seeds of *apium*, fenell, caraway, commin, louage, *daucus*, annise, fitches or darnell meale, and such like. Also you must powre into the womb such things as haue power to loosen and dissolue windinesse, as is, oile of rew, *ammon*, organ, and the decoction of things before rehearsed. And if windinesse be included & stopped through the meanes of a clod of bloud, after the vsing

of

of the aforesaid things, and specially incessions, let the midwife put her finger being first annointed, into the womans priuities, and dissolue, and bring forth the clod easily and by litle and litle. And if the euill hath continued long, you must come to more effectuous remedies. Therefore you must vse liniments, emplasters, and cerates that be stronger, as this is. *Rx.* sothernwood, origan, & calamint, ana. ʒ. ij. seed of tutsan. ʒ. ij. of centorie the lesse. ʒ. j. Caraway seeds, ammi. ana. ʒ. ʒ. *ʒ. cassia*, ʒ. j. *ʒ. bellum*, armoniacke, ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. oyle of rew and dill, ana. ʒ. j. with wax and turpentine as much as is sufficient, make a cerate and apply it to the womb: also sometime you must proceed to the vse of Synapismes and Dropaces. Also cupping glasses may be fastened to the places lightly in a circuite, and must be pulled away violently, for these do helpe as it were a charme. Also sometime scarification must be made: and you must vse such things altogether as haue power to draw out, and call forth from the bottome to the top. Also, for her diet you must minister foode that doth attenuate and dissolue windinesse, and minister medicines also that haue the same vertue, as *diamsan*, and *diacrinum*, and *diacalamint*hes, and such like.

Ceratū.

CHAP. LXI.

Of exulceration of the wombe.

DE VTERI EXVLGERATIONE.

THE matrice sometime is exulcerate, because of hard child birth, or drawing out of the childe, or through corrupting of the matrice, or through sharpe medicines, or fluxes, or through impostumes or botches broken. They that haue this disease do feele a pricking paine in the aggrieved part: and at certaine times stinking and atterie humours are sent out frō the filthie vlcer. And other signes proper to the diseases of the wombe do follow, as headach; and specially of the fore part of the head, of the great sinewes in the necke, & of the rootes of the eyes is felt paine, which also extendeth vnto the fingers ends, and other tokens declared before in the chapters of inflammation of it. Therefore if the vlcer may be seene, it may be known by an instrument called *specillum oricularium*: but if it be deepe within and hidden, those things which come from it will declare it: for a diuerse humour is sent forth. If the vlcer be inflamed, the humour is litle in quantitie, bloudie or dreggie with great pain. If the vlcer be foule and filthie, the humor commeth forth in more great abundance, & is matter with lesse grieve. If the vlcer doth eate and feed, the humor is stinking, blacke, and with vehement paine. For the cure, when the bile or vlcer is enflamed, you must vse bloudletting and other medicines that are good against inflammation, as is afore taught. In other causes you must vse purging medicines, especially if the bodie doth abound with vicious and corrupt humors. Also apply such medicines, as do repress & stop the flowing of humors, and correct their hote distemper, as is, the iuices or waters of purslaine, plantaine, *bursa pastoris*, and such like before rehearsed. Then if the vlcer be filthy, you must vse scouring and cleansing medicins, as is, *ptisan* with hony, *mulsā* with the decoction of the root of *greos*, *aristolochia*, wormwood or agrimony. Those vlcers which do eate and feede, must be washed with mares milke, or Asses milke newly milked: you must mixe with milke, hony and roote of *greos*. These

Causa.

Signa.

Curatio.

Ceratū.

things, if the vlcers may be seene, may be annoynted: but if they be deepe within, cast the in with an instrument called *metrenchina*. When the vlcers be wel purged and cleansed, you must vse such things, as will close the vp: first gentle things, & then those that be of more effect. The Cerate of *Ætius* doth especially please me, which is this. R. of white waxe. ℥ j. of fine oyle of roses. ℥. iij. & melt them together vpon the coales, & when it is cooled, then put it into a morter, & put therein womans milke, or asses milke, or goats milke newly milked, and worke them together with a pestle, vntill it be white, then poure out the aforesaid milke, and put in new milke, and then worke them againe, & then put to it about ℥ j. of saffron. And if thou wouldest haue it to mitigate paine more, adde to it oyle of roses. ℥ ij. the grease and marrow of a goose. ana. ℥ ss. Also you must put to oile of quinces, in steed of oile of roses. You must apply this cerate to the belly and the haunches: for the vertue of it is sent into the wombe by secret and hidden passages. Also you may cast into the matrice of that facultie: as be, the decoction of pomegranate rinds, roses, quinces, brāble, mirtles, sumach, *acacia*, *hypocisthida*, with restrictive wine. To this place you may transerre and bring medicines out of the former bookes, and out of the chapters of vlcers of the reines, the bladder, and the yard.

CHAP. LXII.

Of straintesse of the matrice.

DE PHINOSI VTERI.

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

PHINOSIS in Greek, *obturatio* or *coarctatio vteri* in Latin, it is a stopping or straightening in the mouth or neck of the matrice, wherby those places are made so streight, that it will not admit nor suffer any seede: or if they do receiue it, they cannot hold it; for because of their knobbie hardnesse it cannot shut together. Sometime it receiueh seede, and it is kept and retained in the streight mouth of the wombe, & thereof is a child conceived, but the conception bringeth occasion of death to the woman: seeing because of the great streightnesse of the places, it cannot be brought forth. This disease is caused in the mouth of the matrice, either of exulceration going before, or of an inflammation there hardened. There is no neede of signes to know this disease by: for by the telling of the sicke, and by touching of it, you may easily know it. The cure of it must be wrought with fomentations, that can release, dissolue, and mollifie. Also with cataplasmes and iniections, that be of like power & vertue. Therefore you must apply fomentations made of the decoction of fenugreeke, and *hydreleon*. Also you must vse pessaries, that can mollifie and dissolue, as that is which is made of *esspi*, that is, oyle tried out of wool in sheeps flanks or necks, salt peter, and turpentine. To be short, to the cure of this disease you must vse mollifying medicines, as is mallowes, *althea*, *nigella*, fenugreeke, linseede, *ammoniacke*, *bellium*, rozin, greafe, and such like, of the which you may make cerats, emplasters, and all kind of outward medicines. And if the euill be waxed old, you must vse suffumigations, & euaporations made of aromaticke things. And when the places do seeme to be softer to the feeling, then you must put a dry sponge, that hath a cord hanged at it, into the streight place, to the intent to make it wider: which if it fal out, you must put in another that is thicker. There

fore

fore you must haue many and sundry drie sponges readie. Afterward you must annoint vpon the sponges that you will put in, some medicine made of alume, and elaterium, mixed with hony, that thereby the place may be made wider. And if after the sponges be taken away, the place do not seem open and wide enough, and inflammation be present through the eating and gnawing of the medicines that were applied, then annoint vpon the sponge that you will put in this ointment. *Rx.* oyle of yreos. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. of fine turpentine. $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. of goose grease, *Vnguentum.* $\mathfrak{z}$ j. roote of yreos and frankensence. ana $\mathfrak{z}$ ss. wax as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. But if the inflammation be vehement, take oyle of roses or violets in steed of oyle of yreos. When the inflammation is ceased, & the place is open, annoint vpon a sponge a cerat made of oyle of roses and goose grease, and vse that vntill it be healed, making the place a litle sounder: but yet you must alwaies put in sponges vntill the end of the cure, lest that the mouth of the wombe do gather together againe.

CHAP. LXIII.

To take away barrennesse.

DE STERILITATE REMOVENDA.

STERILITAS in Latin, barrennesse in English. It is caused of the womans part, or of the mans part. It is of the mans part, when his seed is either hot, *Cause.* and as it were burned, or else cold, thinne, watery, and feeble, as is the seed of old and feeble men: or when it is sent forth thicker then it ought to be: or because the men be halfe geldings, and haue a very short yard, so that they cannot cast their seed into the innermost place of the matrice, which also sometime chaunceth through much fatnesse: for fat men haue such great bellies, that they cannot cast the seede into the deepest partes of the body. Also women of their part cannot conceiue, that haue their matrice either hot & fiery or cold and moist, or foule, filthie and dry. For (as *Hippocrates* saith *5. Apho. 62.*) the seed is corrupted or quenched in such. Also women that be very grosse & fat, do not conceiue (as *Hippocrates* witnesseth *5. Aph. 46.* Moreouer womē that be leane and slender do not conceiue, or if they do conceiue, they do suffer abortion straight way, which also *Hippocrates* witnesseth *5. Apho. 44.* Also some do not conceiue, because their wombe is weake, or streight, or short: or because the vessels of it be stopped or shut vp, or blinded and couered, by reason of a scarre, or because the necke of the wombe is drawne crooked, or because the mouth of the matrice is too streight or too wide open. Also vnwilling carnall copulation for the most part is vaine and barren: for loue causeth conception, and therefore louing women do conceiue often. Also age too great or too little, doth let conception. Therefore you must separate them that be young from carnall copulation, so that the man may be 30. yeares old, and the woman 18. But specially an vncomely and foolish shape and forme of the womans body, doth giue an occasion to barrennesse. For a womā that is fertile, ought to haue a moderate stature and height of the body, breadth of the loines & the share, buttockes sticking out, a handsome and conuenient greatnesse of the belly, a straight breast and large pappes. The signes whereby the diuersitie of causes *Signa.* be known be these. The hot distemper of a man, is easily knowne by the abun- *Hot distemper.*

*Cold tempera-
ture.*

*Cure of both to
man and wo-
man common.*

*Cure of a wo-
man full of
corrupt humors*

dance of haire, specially blacke haire vpon the genitalles, and the places ad-
ioyning, from aboue vnto the middle thighes. Also this distemperature is lasciu-
uious and readie to carnall lust, but it is soone satiate and filled. A temperment
thar is too cold, is declared by the parts being about the stoness being bald &
without haire. Also they that be of this temperature, be not desirous & prone to
carnall lust. Heate of the matrice is knowne by the heate in the rest of the bo-
die, and because few menstruis are sent out and that with paine, so that some-
time the womans priuities are exulcerate with it, and that which is sent out is
blackish. Also there followeth this temperature, an instinctio or tickling to
lecherie, and driness of the whole body. A temperature of the matrice which
is cold, is knowne by suppression and stopping of the menstruis. Also they that
haue this temperament, do despise vse of carnall lust, and haue the mouth of
the matrice drawn together. If through too much moistnesse, barrenesse be
engendred, then in the act of generation, they are very much bedewed with
moistnesse, and the menstruis floweth much in quantitie, and thinne. Driness
is knowne by the contrarie signes to moistnesse. The rest of the causes may be
knowne, partly by sight, and partly by the telling of the partie or other about
her. For the cure common to both, as well the man as the woman, it is con-
uenient for them to keepe the whole bodie very temperate, and to keepe a
mean and measure in labouring, eating, drinking and bathing, and in all other
exercises. Men therefore that haue their seede corrupted through naughtie
and euill kind of dyet, if they vse a more ordinate diet and healthfull, their ge-
nitors will haue fecunditie and fertilitie. Let the woman neither wearie her
selfe with too much labour, nor let her be altogether idle: for idlenesse doth
fill and stuffe the whole bodie with superfluous humours and excrements: but
great labour dryeth vp the blood, and consumeth the menstruis. Let her vse
meates and drinks easie of digestion, and such as the stomach may well com-
prehend and consume. And you must specially obserue in their order of good
diet, that neither the man nor the woman be made fat: for they that be fat, are
vnapt to procreate and beget children, because their genitors cannot touch
together, and also because they send out little seed. Moreouer it is conuenient
that you giue vnto such as desire to get children, some accustomed and plea-
sant thing to eat or drinke before meate, which be most apt to prouoke carnal
lust, and to engender seed: as those be that do heate measurably, and puffe vp
with wind. Therefore wine in this case measurably drunke, is to be preferred
before water. For as the prouerbe is: *Sine Cerere & Baccho friget Venus* (that is).
If you haue not bread and wine, carnall lust will coole and pine. For potherbs
they must vse rocket, *orminum*, it is an herbe like vnto horehound, *erisymo*, and
other such like which we haue rehearsed of them that cannot vse carnal copu-
lation. Rew, calamint, and mintes must be eschewed altogether: for calamint
and mints, although they engender much seed, yet that which they engender,
is feeble and weake: but rewe doth altogether corrupt and destroy seed. If a
woman do not conceiue, through the vice & corruption of certaine humors,
it is good to emptie her with a purging medicine, & to amend her with a good
diet. Particularly for women, it is good for them to take as good heed as can
be to those things that chance to the matrice, and that their menstruis may
flow

flow without any impediment. Therefore when the purgatiō of their mēstruis is nigh at hand, let them keep a measure in eating and drinking with al their diligence. And let them take some of those things that can prouoke & stir vp the purgation of the mēstruis, as be herbs that be odoriferous and sharpe, as is, *Cerefolium*, fennell, *apium*, louage, and such like, whereof you shall find plenty in the chapter of the stopping of the mēstruis. After the purging of the mēstruis, both the right side and the left side of the matrice is open. If cold distēpure doth cause barrennesse, you must correct and amend it by fomentes, cataplasmes, and suffumigations, and other medicines that haue vertue to heat: as those be that are made of motherwort, peniroyall, sage, rewe, annise seede, commin, gladon, and such like. Also it profiteth her to drinke *castoreum*, and odoriferous seeds, commin, annise seed, and iuniper fruit, and other things that be rehearsed in the chapter of stopping of mēstruis. You must amend & correct a hote distēpure of the matrice causing barrennesse, with such things as do coole and moisten: as these herbes be, lettuce, mallowes, gourds, purslaine, and orach with such like. Also she must drinke wine that is thinne, white and alayed. Also it profiteth her to sleepe, and to bath in sweet water. Also you must apply to the loynes and about the priuities such things as do coole, as iuice of nightshade mixed with oile of roses, which also being layd vpon wooll, may be put well into the matrice. They which cannot conceiue through moistnesse of the matrice, it is good for them to vse a drier diet. Also they must exercise themselves much, and they must be rubbed in the vpper part of the body. Also to the intent to purge out, and turne away humors, let them vomit sometime after dinner, and sometime fasting, and you must dry them with scarcie of meat, and let them eate flesh of middle aged beasts roasted, & giue them pure wine, that is mighty to drinke, but giue it them seldome. Also it profiteth to apply restrictiue things to the matrice, as be, roses, leaues of brier, galles, *jnnach*, mirtles, knotgrasse, pomgranat rindes, and such like sodden. But you may not do this, vnlesse the whole body be first purged. A dry matrice must be cured by the contrary to that which is aforesaid, as with bathes of sweet water, annoin- rings, and meates that do moisten. Let her vse wine that is alayed, being not very old. And if a womans conception be impeded and stopped through grosse humours, if they be gnawing, it is good to purge the woman well with *hierapicra* in whey: and she must vse a most exquisite diet, and meates that do engender good iuyce: but you must consume the flegmaticke humours with much labour, with sweating, vomiting, or by purging by the neather parts: & all other things which be rehearsed in the chapter of stopping of mēstruis, which it behoueth not to rehearse here particularly. Also windines engēdred in the womb, doth let the fertility of conception, & causeth barrennesse. Such women therefore as haue this, must first be amēded with a straighter diet. Thē you must minister both outwardly & inwardly to them, such medicines as can dissolve, disperse, & consume windinesse, as is commin, rew, dill, seede of *apium* and such like, which be rehearsed in the chapter of windinesse of the matrice, and in other places. If shutting vp of the matrice doth cause barrennesse, you shall open it by casting in of odoriferous clisters, and by vsing of fomentes and iniections made of fenugreece, linefeed, mallowes, and such like rehearsed in *trice* shut vp.

*Cure of a cold
temperature of
the wombe.*

*Cure of a hote
distēpure.*

*Cure of a moist
distēpure.*

*Cure of a drie
distēpure.*

*Cure of grosse
humours.*

*Cure of windi-
nesse.*

*Cure of a ma-
trice shut vp.*

*Cure of an open
matrice.
Cure of a wri-
thed matrice.*

the chapter of straightnesse of the wombe. And afterward you must proceede to stronger medicines, as motherwort, calamint, peniroyall, and marioram. They which haue the mouth of the matrice gaping much, it is good for them to vse a drying dyet, and drying fomentis. And it is good also to vse restrictive medicines, as be the decoction of galles, bramble roores, mirtles, and such like rehearsed before in the cure of a moist distemper. Last of all, if crookednesse of the matrice do cause barrennesse, you shall direct and make straight the matrice with mollifying fomentis; for fomentis can do that best: but yet you may conueniently put in mollifying pessaries. But specially the decoction of peniroyall, and motherwort, and *castoreum* drunke with posca, are wont to be good for a writhed matrice. *Paulus* sayth, that then carnall lust vsed backward is good to conceiue. We here haue generally comprehended the cures onely by other chapters: for the particular cure of each cause, must be sought out of his proper chapter.

CHAP. LXIII.

Of sore trauaile in child-birth.

DE DIFFICULTATE PARTVS.

*Difficilis par-
tus.*

SORE trauaile in child-birth doth chauce either through default of the parent, or of the child, or of the secundine, or through some outward cause. Of the parent, if she be grosse & fat, faint harted, and vnskillful of paine, or if the whole matrice be small, or if there be inflammation of the whole womb, or of some part of it, or that it be vexed with some other diseases, or if she be naturally weake, so that she cannot driue out the child: or if that she do labour before time. Also if the necke of the mouth of the matrice be crooked, or if there be some peece of flesh ingendred there, by reason of a bile or vlcer going before. But default of the child is, if it be of an vnaccustomed greatnes, or small and of a litle weight, or if it hath a great head, or if it be monstrous, as hauing two heads, or three feete, or if it be dead, and so doth not labour to come forth, or if it swell: or being alieue, if it be weake, so that it cannot proceed forth: or if they be two or mo, & do all rush suddenly together into the neck of the matrice, or if the child be fashioned contrary to nature. For the naturall forme of a child comming forth is, first with his head (his hands being stretched out vpon the thighes) & with his head declining to the nether parts, but straightly directed to the mouth of the matrice: the best form in coming forth next vnto this, is, first with his feete, hauing the hands stretched vpon both thighes, and so descending straight vp. All other formes in coming forth, except these two, are contrary and abhorring to nature. The trauaile is made difficile through the Secundine: if it be not pulled away, because of the grosse-nesse or thicknes of it, or if it break before it should do because of the thinnes of it. For then the humor that is gathered together in the matrice, is sent out before the conuenient time. Therefore the priuities be without moisture, & be dry at the time of the trauaile, when moistnesse were necessary, which should make a slippery and easie going out of the child, and so through drinesse the child slideth out hardly. Also difficulty in child birth is engendred of outward causes: as of cold, which thickneth the matrice, and maketh the passages straighter, or through a great heate, which dissolueth and weakeneth the

Signs.

strenght

strength, But outward causes are knowne by the telling of the patient, or of *Signs.* them that sit by her. Weaknesse of the woman that laboureth, as farnesse, may be knowne by the state of the body. Also by diseases that she hath had before, you may readily come to the knowledge of weaknesse, and of many other evils. Weaknesse of the child is knowne by feeble and slow mouing of it. Which if it be dead, it moueth not, and there is coldnesse of the belly, and great paine about the nauell. Also a stinking breath is breathed out, & a naughty colour of the face. Greatnesse of the child may be coniectured by the constitution of the parents body, and by greatnesse of the womans belly. Grossenesse & thicknesse of the secundine may be gathered & knowne thus: if none of the aforesayd signes be present, and the woman strong and lusty, and the child moueth quickly & easily. As for the cure, it varieth according to the diuersitie of causes. Therefore you must place a fat woman downward in a litle bed, that is, hanging downward with her head, and her face towards the ground, bending and enclining her knees to her thighs, that her wombe stretching to the *Abdomen*, may be right with his mouth. You must with your fingers annoint the mouth of the matrice, with butter, oyle, ducks grease, hens greace, and such like, and you must spread it abroad, and open it wider by litle and litle. You must comfort and encourage a fearefull woman. And if she be vnskilfull of paines in trauaile, admonish her to hold and stop her breath strongly, and let her thrust it out to the ilions with all her might. If sore trauell in childbirth be caused of adstriction, and binding, or astonishment, or, as it were, adarctation and penning in of the child, you must helpe it with dissoluing and releasing, by pouring in largely sweete wine and hore. Also the decoction of fenugreke or mallowes, or linsfeed, or also eggs are good, because they are of a loosening and mollifying vertue. Afterward you must nourish the parts about the priuy members, and the belly and loines with the aforesayd decoction, or with some other loosening and mollifying medicine. Also it profiteth to vse hore incessions and euaporations, and to haue the aire of the house enclining to heate. Also it is good to vse infusions and annointings, with oyles that be hore in touching and vertue, and conuenient cataplasmes be good. And if neither a feuer, nor any thing else do let it, she must vse releasing and dissoluing bathes, & you must moue her, with bearing her in a chaire, in an aire that is meanelly hore. Many do vse to such violent shaking of the body. And if any woman be weake, and haue sore trauaile in childbirth through resolution of the body, you must comfort and refresh the body with medicines that do thicken, and draw together, and with such meates and drinkes as do recreate, restore and adde strength to the body: as be incessions and sprinklings with mirtles, vine leaves, pomegranates, roses, smelling to vineger, and annointings with wine mixt with cold oyle of roses. When the infant is ouer great, you must applie those things which can make wider, stretch out, and loosen the mouth of the matrice. If sore trauaile do chauce through an innaturall forme of the child in coming forth, you must bring him to a naturall forme and figure, as much as is possible, partly by putting backe, partly by drawing to you, partly by turning, and partly by making it straight. And if the head or *fore*, be sent out first, you may not draw out the child taking hold by that member: but put

Cure of a fat woman.

Cure of a fearefull woman.

your fingers to the shoulders or haunches of the child, & thrust vp that againe which is come forth into the conuenient place, if there be two or three, or mo children, & do thrust altogether into the necke of the matrice, you must drie backe the rest into the bottome of the wombe, & bring that out first, which seemeth to be most readie: but if it do not come forth, because the infant is dead, or hath a very great head, or through some other cause, you must come to drawing out of the child, or to cutting, which is taught abundantly of *Aetius*, li. 16. cap. 23. and of *Paulus* lib. 6. cap. 74. For it is not our purpose to teach handie cure here. Moreouer if the tunicle or secundine of the child be thicker and stronger, then that it may be broken, you must cut it. Those that haue the humour, which is contained in the tunicles or secundine, flowing & running out before the conuenient time, so that the places be dried vp, you shall wash it all about with whites of eggs, with the decoction of mallowes, & fenugreeke strained, or with iuyce of Prisan warmed. A medecine that doth vniuersally helpe all that haue sore trauell in child birth, is this that followeth. R^r. Cinamon chosen. ʒ. ij. mirrhe, *Cassa lignea*. ana ʒ. j. white amber. ʒ. j. ʒ. beate them together, and make a fine powder, wherof minister in wine that is odoriferous, the weight of one drachme. Moreouer the child being borne, oftentimes it chan- ceth that the secundine doth sticke fast in the wombe, which if it chanceth, then sometime the mouth of the matrice is found open, & sometime shut, and the secundine many times is still ioyned to the bottom of the wombe, & many times it is separate. If therefore the mouth of the matrice be open, & the secundine which is left therin do cleave to some part of the womb, being wound vp together like a ball, it may easily be drawne out. You must draw out the secundine with your left hand being warmed, & annointed with some fat thing, & put into the wombe. If the secundine be fastened & knit to the bottome of the wombe, you shall likewise put in your hand, warmed and annointed with grease, and take hold of the secundine & draw it out: but you may not draw it straight forth, least the matrice come out with it: nor pull it very vehemently, but softly & easily, first pulling it crooked, bringing it this way & that way: then after that, you may draw it somewhat harder, for by this meanes you shall loosen it from the fastening. But if the mouth of the matrice be shut, you shall vse persufions, & with the fingers of your left hand you shal labour to open it easily, and to make it wider by litle and litle. Which if you cannot bring to passe, it is good to apply about the priuities, fomentes, persufions & oyntments that can mollifie, dissolve & release. If she be strong, you must put into her nostrils at that time also sneezing powder, made of *Castoreum*, pepper & such like. For *Hippocrates* in 5. *Aph* 49. writeth thus; that the secundine may come out, giue her sneezing powder, and let her stop her nose and mouth. Also you must minister vnto her potions that can prouoke menstruis: which things aforesaid, you must do the first and second day. Moreouer she must vse suffumigations, seething in a pot, motherwort, *greos*, saueine, peniroidall, calamint, *diffennus* and such like. Then put the pot vnder a close chaire, vpon the which let the woman sit, being compassed in round about with clothes. After that, if you find the mouth of the matrice opened, put in your hand and labour to pull out the secundine as is aforesaid, but if it will not obey to come forth, you may nor rent it, for within

*Pulsio opti-
mus.*

*To draw out
the secundine.*

within a few dayes after being rotten and turned into atter, it will fall out. But because through the euill saueur & smell, when it is rotted, it filth the head and marreth the stomach. They that are troubled with this euill, must be continuallie perfumed. For which purpose these things are good: *Cardamones*, *bdellium*, with saueine, frankensence, *serax*, *lapidum*, wood of *Aloes*, and such like. Also a perfuming with icare by a pipe, which is put into the mouth of the matrice, doth profite meruellously. Also simples, such as prouoke menstruis, be good: as decoction of motherwort, and laurell berries, with *vinum musum*. Also make Pessaries of mirrhe and *Cydammium* commixed with oyle.

CHAP. LXV.

Of the Sciatica.

DE ISCHIADE.

ISCHIAS in Greeke, properly is called a most grieuous paine, which is *torax*
I wont to chance about the ioint, which the Greekes do call *Ischi-n*, the La-
tines *Coxa*, in English the huckle bone. The Latines call this disease *Ischias*, and
they that are afflicted with this disease, are called *Ischiadici*. The barbarous
sort call this disease *Sciatica*, and they call them that be diseased with it *Sci-*
atici. It is caused through a grosse and flegmarike humour, which being congea-
led, abideth in the ioint of the huckle bones. Therefore continuall crudities &
rawnesse, and vnmeasurable vsing of venerious acts do not a litle helpe the in-
gending of a *Sciatica*. Also sometime swift deambulations, & walkings, & sup-
pression or stopping of the hemmorhoids, & custome of vomiting being omit-
ted, & purgation of menstruis, or also other familiar & accustomed emptyings
being impeditred and stopped, & neglecting of exercises. For each of these do
ingender abundance of flegmatike humors. There goeth before this euil some-
time paine of the muscles that be nigh vnto it, & especially of the loynes, some-
time the beginning is in the huckle bone itselfe. Also sometime it chaunceth
(that the paine of the huckle bone being taken away) there remaineth griefe
only about the hammes: and to some about the ankles, but in some all the leg
is equally vexed with pain. Also in many, there is paine about the priuy mem-
bers, & then also the bladder being vexed, doth ingender difficulty in pissing:
and then chiefly the whole legge, from the haunches to the heeles suffereth
paine. Let the cure be begun with voyding & purging of the humor that doth
afflict the patient. And if the body do equally abound with all humors, before
all other remedies, cut a veine in the hamme, or the outward ankle, or also in
the arme, on that side that is diseased. For sometime the *Sciatica* is cured in
one day, by this emptying out of the legges. But if the body be stuffed with
a flegmatike and grosse humour, you must beginne the cure with purging of
that humour. For the which purpose, you must minister Clusters often,
made after this sort, or in like maner. *Rx.* of Centorie, sage, *Verbasculi odorati*,
rewes, *chamepityos*, ana. *M.* j. rootes of gladon *℥. j.* *seichados*, *℥. iij.* seedes of annise
and fennell ana. *℥. ij.* *℔.* agaricke of the best *℥. ij.* roote of polipodie. *℥. v.* seeth
these in sufficient quantitie of water, vntill the third part. Then take of the li-
cour of that decoction. *℥. xij.* of *hierapicta*. *℥. ℔.* of *electuarium nidum mavis*.

Causa.

Signa.

Curatio.

Clyster.

Vomitua.

℞. ij. of oyle of lillies. ℞. ij. oyle of rew. ℞. j. the yolkes of two egges, salt, ℞. j. ss. commixe them all and make a Clister. Also vomiting doth helpe them that haue the *Sciatica*, much more then the purging downward by the belly, for that doth repell and put backe the humour downward sodainly. Therefore you must prouoke vomites in the beginning by and by after meat. But afterward you must minister vomiting medicines, beginning first with them that be easie. They that haue humours vehemently compact and thickened together, which can difficultly be dissolued & loosened, caused through Physitions vsing sharpe medicines out of time, such be holpen by fastening on of a verie great cupping glasse with scarifications. But in the *Sciatica* we do not vse such medicines as can repressse and stoppe the fluxe. For seeing the diseafe is placed in the bottome of the huckle bone, bloud is expelled from the veines and muscles thar be nigh adioyning to it, and is sent thither. Therefore in the beginning of this diseafe, there is need of medicines that can mitigate and aswage, which neither do coole much, nor that do heate vehemently. For as those things which do coole, do thrust the humours violently to the ankle bone, so those things that do vehemently heate, do draw more matter out of the members adioyning. Moreouer, you may not come to the vsing of sharpe medicines, till after bloudletting or emptying by purgations. For if any man apply sharpe medicines to the diseased member, before the body be emptied or purged he shall make the diseafe hard to cure, because of a multitude of humours so thickened there, that they cannot be dissolued. For besides other things, it is made grosse and viscous, and through the heate and driness of the sharpe medicines, it suffereth as it were roasting or burning. First therefore you must irrigate and sprinkle the aggriued place with oyle of rew. After you must apply more effectuous medicines, which do heate and can draw humours from the bottome to the toppe, as be *oleum vulpinum*, oyle of pepper, *oleum costium*, oyle of iuniper, *unguentum aragon*, *martiatum*, and *agrippa*. Also sage, rew, laurell leaues, elder, roote of walwort, peniroyall, sauine, *opoponax*, *hidellum*, *ammoniacum*, and such like: of the which you may make fomentes, ointments, emplaisters and cerotes. But if the grieve be extremely painfull, then vse this which followeth, for it is most excellent against this euill. *R.* rosin of the pine tree ℞. j. ss. *Galbanum*. ℞. v. melt them with a soft fire, and then streine it through a cloath, and put vnto it of the powder of masticke. ℞. j. and then spread it warme vpon dogs leather, or lambes leather, & stricke it a good thicknesse, and before you apply this plaister to the pained place, annoint the place with this ointment following. *R.* fresh hogs greace, ℞. j. ss. and take

When sharpe medicines may be used.

*Simples.**Emplastrum.**Unguentum.**Electuarium.*

sowes or monkes peason in number twentie, and beate them both well in a mortar, till they be well incorporate, and therewith annoint the place & the plaister, and warme the plaister against the fire, till it be soft, and lay it to the agriued place, and let it lie nine dayes. If there be haire vpon the place, you must shauie them off first, and rolle it well, least it slippeth away, then euerie day, morning and euening at each time let the patient take ℞. j. of this electuarie, *R.* of the rootes of *Acarus* or *gladian*, being made cleane. ℞. j. stampe them verie small, (as possible you may do) then take of clarified honey. ℞. iij. and put in the rootes by litle and litle, euer stirring it, and when it is well sodden,

put

put into it of cinamon. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. made in very fine powder, which being well incorporate, keepe it to your vse, and at the end of the nine dayes, if the paine be not cleane gone, lay to the forenamed plaisters other nine dayes, vsing the same electuarie, and procure vomit, as before, euery sixth or seventh day, for that doth greatly reuert the humor. But in the beginning of the grieve, apply to the aggruiued place againe and againe, sponges wet in the decoction of iuniper, or sage, or elder leaues. Afterward vse this ointment. *Rx. of unguentum martiaton.* $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. oyle of yreast, and lillies. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . iuyce of rew, and chamapiteos. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. hony. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . sage, peniroyall, pepper. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . pellitory, stauesacre. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. wax as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Also the vsing of this cerote profiteth. *Rx. oleum costium, & vulpinum.* ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. β . oile of pepper. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . opoponax, bdellium, storax. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. roote of briony, salt peter, leaues of elder. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. arisfologo, hia rotunda, rew. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . Euphorbium. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. dissolue the gums in very sharpe vinegar, and with turpentine and waxe as much as is sufficient, make a cerote. And if the euill do remaine still, you must vse clisters againe: and then fasten a very great cupping glasse with much flame to the huckle bone, making good deepe gashes with scarification. And if that the disease be not ended so, you must vse againe purging vomits, and the other remedies aforesaid; which being done, you must come to the vsing of Dropaces & Synapismes and so to the vse of burning medicines: amongst which, the roote of the herbe called *Iberis*, is not the worst, being new digged vp in sommer, and diligently braied, and mixed with a little old swines grease, being laied and bound to the ioynt of the huckle bone, or to the whole shanke or leg. Also the leaues of it will do the same thing. And being so applyed, let it lye not past 2. houres to women, but let it lye foure houres to men, if it be possible for the to suffer it: for it raiseth swelling with burning and rednesse, as a Synapisme is wont to do. Afterward bring the sicke into a bath, in the which, when he hath swet a litle, bid him sit downe in the vessell, because of the biting heate, and compell him to suffer it strongly. For in the beginning, it is wont to bring biting and gnawing with burning heat, then bring him out: from which alwaies almost (as *Aetius* witneseth) although they be caried in of other, they will go out alone vpon their feet. After the bathing, commixe much oile with a very litle wine, and shake them together, and annoint it: then wipe off the humor with a sharpe cloath, and couer the leg it selfe with very soft wooll. And truly (this being done) it hath bene wont to need no other remedy for the cure. But if sometime it chaunce any part or remembrance of the euill to be left still, within a few daies after, you may vse againe the same remedie. And certaine daies after, you may lay on the cerote, which is a litle before deseribed. Moreover, among burning and blistring medicines, this is good. *Rx. Melanacardinu, Causicum.* leauen. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. *cantharides*, (the wings cast away) $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. vineger, as much as is sufficient, and commixe them together. Or this is good. *Rx. Euphorbium, salt peter.* ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. sope, quicke lime. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. mel anacardinum, as much as is sufficient, so that all being mixed together, may be of the thicknesse of hony. Let his diet be such, that his meat may be meanelly thin, and easie of digestion. Let his exercise be walkings, continuall wrichings, leapings, or dancings and running. It is good alwaies to haue the bodie soluble. And if the disease hath en-

ured long, and cannot be driuen away with the aforesaide medicines, you must vse burning in three or foure places, after that sort as *Paulus* teacheth in lib. 6. cap. 76. and *Aetius* lib. 12. cap. 30.

CHAP. LXVI.

Of the goute in the feete and ioynts.

DE PODAGRA ET ARTHRITIDE.

Podagra.
Arthritis.

Cause.

Signa.

*Signes if blood
do flow.*

PODAGRA & *Arthritis* in Latine, be diseases of one kind. And therefore they differ not but in places diseased. For in both of them there is weakness of the ioynts, and an vnnaturall humour floweth to them. And if that the fluxe of the humour do flow to the feete, that is called *Podagra* in Latine. But if the humour flow to other ioynts, it is called in Greeke *Arthritis*, in Latine, *articularis morbus*, the ioynt sicknesse. Sometime this euill doth rush in sodainely, being equally dispersed throughout all the ioyntes. But for the most part, the fluxe is woont to fall in priuily, and by litle and litle. For in some, paine doth inuade the ioynt of the great toe, but in some the end of the heele is afflicted. Againe in some other, the hollownesse of the foote is grieued, either through chafing of the shoe, or some such like thing. The gout taketh his beginning at the feete, whereupon it taketh the name, and it proceedeth vpward by litle and litle to the knees, and also to the ioynts of the huckle bones, and the thighes. Afterward to the hands, euery ioynt particularly being grieued. They that are taken extreemely with this disease, they haue paine in the backe bone ioynts, and in the ioynts of the ribs, and eye lids, and to some paine in the throte also: neither is there any connexion or knitting of bones, which is free from this euill. This disease is engendred of continuall crudities and drunkenness, and of immoderat vsing of slechery, through vehement and swift deambulations and walkings, through long standing, or often riding, by suppression and stopping of accustomed excretions & fluxes, and through intermission of familiar exercises. Sorrowes, cares, watchings, and other perturbations of the mind do not only engender this euill, but also do breed hurtfull and corrupt humors. Also many times the cholick being naughtily cured, is woont to be a cause why the ioynt sicknesse should follow. But for the most part, a disposition to this kind of disease proceedeth from the parents to the children, and their posterity. Also vniuersally abundance of all raw humours is the cause of this disease. The humours that do abound, and do fasten themselves in the ioynts, either be sanguine, or cholericke, or stegmaticke, or melancholious. Also sometime this euill is engendred of commixtion of humors. The outward causes may easily be knowne by the telling of the sicke, or them that be about him. The difference of humors you shal know by the signes following. The humour of blood, if it be much in quantity, it causeth fulnesse, and great swelling, not only of the veines, but about the skin of the whole member that is grieued, and maketh it red in colour. They which are afflicted with this euill, cannot suffer remedies to be applyed that be very cold, or very hote, and they are continually vexed with paine, because the flowing of the blood doth chauce continually and equally. Their vrines are yellow and meane of substance. Also their veines do abound with blood, and are

are puffed vp and swollen. The conuenient age for this euill, is youth. Also meats that engender good iuice, and nourish abundantly were eaten before, and exercises were neglected. The time of the yeare in the which the patient is most afflicted is spring time. If the humour that floweth into the ioynts, be cholerick, you may know it by the yellowish colour of the skin. Sometime rednes is mixed with the yellow colour, that is whe choler is comixed with blood. Also there is sensible heate and sharpe paine like launcing. Also moistnes so dainely bursteth out of the skinne, without euident swelling. The patient is eased with cooling medicines, and reioyceth; but with hot things his paines augment. In the state and strength of the fit, a seauer taketh him, and a very great thirst. His vrine is cytrine, and sometime also it is sharpe. There is wont to go before this disease, great cares, and wrath, watchings, & wearines. and a diet that was apt to engender choler. The age, complexion, and time of the yeare that is hot and dry, be apt to cause this cholericke fluxe. And if the humour that floweth into the ioynts be flegmaticke, the swelling will giue place to the thrusting of the finger, and it is loose and moderat. The colour of the mēber afflicted, is white. Old age is most afflicted with this humour, and a complexion cold and moist, and it chanceth in the winter time. His vrine is thinne and watery. There went before it idlenes, rest, and a diet that engendreth flegmaticke humours. If it be salt fleame, great itch, and gnawing, or byting doth trouble the diseased members. If the fluxe to the ioynts be of melancholy, which chanceth but seldome, the colour of the swelling is blackish. The age, which doth most engender this flux, is the declination of middle age. Also the complexion is cold and dry, and the time of the yeare, haruest, a countrey that is cold and dry, and like state of the aire, and a diet that engendreth melancholy. When the humour that floweth into the ioynts is blood, by and by you must let blood, not once onely, but often, taking it away by litle and litle: for if you do omit blood letting, and do vse repercussive medicines, you shall be an author of great euill. For the blood being driuen back from the vnnoble members, it rusheth vp to the principal members, and that be necessary to life. Therefore in fluxes of blood, letting of blood is very necessary, specially in them that abound with blood. You must cut a veine in the arme beneath, right against the leg that is vexed with the fluxe. And if the right hand be vexed with paine of this disease, cut a veine in the right legge, about the hamme, or the ankle, or the sole of the fete: for a veine being cut right against the member that is afflicted, it is of great efficacy and strength. Then specially must blood letting be vsed, when this euill beginneth first to inuade any man. For they that be vexed often with this flux of blood, do feeble more hurt then helpe of blood letting, specially if their body be weak & cold. After blood letting, you must apply remedies to the agriued mēber, which do neither coole greatly, least they should driue together and thicken the humors, nor heat vehemently, lest they should draw mo humors vnto the diseased mēber. Therefore you must sprinkle the griued place with old vineger, & oile of roses mixed together, specially if the cause of the paine do seeme to be deep within. For vineger of his own proper thinnes, going into the depth, maketh a way for the oile of roses, which naturally can ease pains. But if the pain be aloft

Signes of cholericke fluxe.

Signes of flegmaticke fluxe.

Signes of melancholy fluxe.

Cure of blood letting.

Localia.

*Cataplasmata.**Ratio.**Why few be
cured of the
gouts at these
dayes.**Cure of the cho-
lericke fluxe.**Stupeficientia.**Note.*

nigh the skinne, you shall helpe it greatly with oyle and wine, applying it in sommer warme, in winter hot. Afterward also you must vse cataplasmes, which can ease and cease paine, without any prouoking of fluxes, made of the meale of fennegreke, barley, beans, lupines, cammomill, and such like: and you must see that those things be euer hot, which may well be, if they be continually changed, and couered ouer aloft with wooll. Also this medicine profiteth not a little. *R.* goates milke. *℥. v.* the yolkes of two eggs, oyle of roses. *℥. j.* saffron. *℥. ℔.* crumbs of bread as much as is sufficient, that it may haue the forme of a cataplasme: stampe these till they be well commixed together, and then apply thereof to the member that is grieued. Also you may make an emplaister or cerote of oyle of roses, vineger, rosin, waxe, *galbanum*, gum ammoniacke, frankensence, saffron, and such like. You must giue him meates, which do extenuate, and that do nourish but little, as be pot herbes. Let him abstaine altogether from flesh, except it be birds of mountains. Let him vse fishes that breede in stony waters. Wine if the intemperance of the sicke may suffer it, must altogether be taken away: for it is almost the only reason, wherby health should follow: which, seeing among a thousand, scarce one doth obserue, it is not maruaile, though there be very few which be deliuered from this disease at these dayes. In steed of wine let him vse water, wherein cinnamon, anniseeedes, or such like hath bin sodden: or that drinke, which is called foolishly now a dayes *ypocras*: the making wherof you may find before in the chapter of the Palsey. Let the sicke diligently auoide fruite and carnall lust. Also he ought to haue a soluble belly alwayes, that can auoide out the ordure readily alone: which, if it do not well, wash it with some easie clister. If through flowing of choller, the disease in the iointes be caused, then your labour must be to voide and purge out the humour that doth vex the patient, which you must do, as well by vomiting, as by the belly downeward. Therefore you must surely purge them that be thus afflicted, by medicines that draw out choler. After that, vntill the full state of it, you must apply medicines that haue vertue to coole & restraine, as be those that are made of singreene, green roses, sharpe sorrell, nightshade, plantaine, and such like, often before rehearsed. In this kind of fluxe, many times, because of the vehemency of the paine, you must vse such medicine, as can cause astonishment. For the which purpose, it is good to apply the medicine which we described before, of goates milke, crummes of bread, saffron and yolks of egges, with the which you must commixe poppy seeds. *℥. iij.* or *opium*, *℥. ℔.* or more, or lesse according to the paine. Also, for the same purpose, leaues of hemlocke and henbane do profit, being applied and layd on. But you must note, and take heed, that, when you be compelled to vse stupefactive things in feruent and vehement paines, that afterward you do recreate and nourish those members by such things as do heate. For vlesse you do so, you shall make those members weake and intemperate, and so they shall be subiect to a perpetuall fluxe, and shall soone catch hurt in their actions. Heating medicines, be organ, sauory, mustard seede, pepper, and such like. Also you must helpe to prouoke sweating with heating and rubbing of the body: but so, that you touch not the aggrieved member. Moreouer, you must minister in drinke those things that do prouoke vrine: for such do voide out choler by the vrine. Also

Also such things ministred as do cause sleepe, are woont to do good, because the fluxe is stopped and dried vp by them, specially if they be ministred after a purgation. You must giue them meats that do coole, but not that do moisten: *Diet.* for moistnes encreaseth the flux. Let them not suffer hunger, for that maketh choler sharper. Of fruits, let them vse restrictive apples & medlars, and other that do coole and stop or let the fluxe. Let them abstaine altogether fro wine, as is aforesayd. They which are diseased through flowing of fleame, you must begin the cure of them with purging of fleame. The flegmaticke humour is auoided by vomiting, but neuertheless also downeward by the belly. But the best purging in this euill, is downward by the belly, whether the disease sticke about the hands or the feet: and so much the more, if the fluxe be in all the ioyntes of the body. For the way that is most familiar, and least perillous for fleame, is to go out by the guttes. For if it were drawne by violence vpward to the stomacke, and not purged out, it causeth perill. Therefore it is more safe and healthfull to purge it downeward. But before you minister purging medicines, you must minister those things that haue vertue to cut, extenuate & deuide, that by this meanes the grosse humours may be preparate, and made apt to purge. If emptying may not be done by purging, then they must vse hunger and famine many dayes, for they that be flegmaticke of nature, can suffer hunger easily and without hurt. Hereupon *Hippocrates* saith 7. *Aphor. 6.* It is good for the bodies that haue moist flesh to vse hunger: for the hunger drieth the bodies. Also they must vse discussiue and dissoluing frictions, and strong elixirs and medicins that prouoke vrine: but you must apply outwardly such medicins as can ease and cease paine, and which can dissolue and dry moderately, of which we spake a litle before. But in the beginning of the disease, you must mixe with them some things that haue vertue to restrain and bind. After the beginning, you must vse onely dissoluing and discussiue things. The gentlest is this: leaues of *Althea*, sodden and beaten alone, or with flour, or barley meale applied to it. Also the roote of it sodden in *aqua mulsca*, and stamped and applyed is good. And this ointment is good. *Rx.* of the oiles of laurell, and yreos. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. old swines grease, butter, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. the marrow of a hart, $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. fine turpentine. $\mathfrak{z}$.v. *galbanum* dissolued in vineger. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. hysope, roote of *althea*, fenugreeke seede, ana. $\mathfrak{d}$.ij. waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an oyntment. Moreouer let the meates that you giue to nourish him, be drie of nature, and small of nourishing, as is iuice of rice rootes, and such like: but yett flesh of the birds of the mountaines roasted is not hurtfull for them. Capers with *acetum mulsum*, doth maruellously profite. Giue vnto him wine, in very litle quantitie at certaine times, and let it be thinne, yellow and old. They that are diseased through flowing of melancholy, they must be emptied either with bloudletting or by purgation. Vse bloudletting, when the bloud is infected with melancholy. And vse purgations, when the patient declineth to melancholie: but if both these abound together, it is not sufficient for you to vse one of the aforesaid things. But first cutte a veine, and then vse a purging medicine: which thing you must also do in other euils that haue neede of double purging. In the beginning of the disease, and in the very time of emptying & purging, you must vse such things as can repress, stop, and also heat sensibly.

Cure of a flegmaticke fluxe.

Flegmaticke folke can suffer hunger easily.

Unguentum.

Uiclus ratio.

Cure of a melancholy fluxe.

Cure of knobs.

Bathes.

A defence for
the goute.

After purging, vse those things that can gently heate, attenuate and dissolue or discusse, as is afore taught. But because knobbes and hard swellings do engender afterward in the ioynts, aswell because of the grossenesse, and earthie hardnes of the humors that hath flowed thither, and also through the vsing of immoderate discussive and drying medicines, without mixing of such with them as haue a mollifying vertue. Therefore to take those knobs away, you must vse those medicines, which be declared of vs before in the Chapter of hardnes of the spleene. But specially very old and sharpe cheefe, traied in the decoction of very fatte and old swines flesh is good to be applied. Also, for this euill, figges brayd and laid on are good. Also *Althea* twise sodden, oates, nettles, bryony roore, round rootes, dill, sothernwood, mayweede, horehound leaues, mixed with pitch, sulphure and wine. Also you must commixe fat and greases of swine, goates, calues, and geefe. Also all marrowes and other things that haue vertue to mollifie and soften. And also bathings, after the inflammation is ceased, is most commodious and profitable to all that haue the gout. While they wash them, put sponges wet in vineger & salt mixt together, round about the diseased places, that they may remaine safe from humours flowing to it. They must wash themselues, not once onely, but often, in an aire that is altogether meane and moderate. But they may not tatic long in hote water. It is best therefore that they be sprinkled and wet with hote water, poured on them. Also it is profitable that all the bodie be rubbed with dry linnen clothes. Moreouer, they that be cured of the goute, shall defend themselues afterward from it, by this means: First, twise in a yeare, that is, at spring time and autumn, if nothing do let it, let him bloud largely. Also about those times, and oftener, let him vse purging medicines. Also it is necessarie for him to eate little meate, and to abstaine from fulnesse. Also he must vse meates that be easie of digestion, and which readily be distributed into the members of the bodie, and be without excrements. Let him abstaine altogether from wine, or let him vse it very scarcely. Let him vse exercise very often, and that before meate: for labour (as *Hippocrates* saith) must go before meate. And to conclude, they that desire to be free from the goute, let them remember this short and most wholesome precept of *Hippocrates*: the way to help & preserue health, is not to be filled with meates, and to be vnslouthfull in labouring. Also let his sleepes and venerous actes be in a meane. As for remedies in this case, let salt be brayed small in oile, and the ioynts rubbed therewith, for it helpeth greatly all those that will be free from this euill, except they be of a wonderful dry temperature. And he must vse annointing with that, morning and euening all the dayes of his life.

The end of the shird Booke.



THE FOVRTH BOOKE TEACHING THE CVRE OF FEAVERS.

CHAP. I.

An exposition of feauers.

FEBRIVM EXPLICATIO.



FEBRIS in Latine, a feauer in English, it is an vnnaturall heat, which taking his beginning at the heart, is spread by the arteries and veins into the whole body, and doth hurt, and let the operation of it. For although a man be hotter now then he was before, it followeth not, that he hath a feauer, vnlesse the heate being immoderately increased, do offend the man, and hurt his operations & actions. Moreover, as there be three things (*Hippocrates* witnesseth) which do ordaine and constitute our body (that is to say) things contained, things containing, and things that flow about violently (that is) the hard and sound members in the body, the humour and the spirit or aire: so also there be three kinds of simple feauers. For if immoderate heat be kindled in the spirits and aire of mans body, it is called in Greeke, *Ephemera*, and in Latine *Diaria febris*, and in English it may be called one day feauer. This feuer is like to hote aire or wind, included in a bladder or bottle: for, like as the aire heateth the bottle that it is in, euen so, the spirits of a mans body, being heat more then they should be, do heat all the whole body. There chanceth in this kind of feauer but one fit, and for the most part it endureth but one day of his owne proper nature, whereupon, it is called *Diaria febris* (that is) the one day feauer. For they cease after the first fit, if they be rightly handled. But you must note, that there be feauers called *Diaria*, which last vntill the third day, as those be which are engendred of thickening and stopping of the conduites and passages. For although that this word, *Diaria*, be not of the very substance of such feuers, yet because they lacke a convenient name, to the intent that our teaching should be briebe and euident, notwithstanding that the word repugn against it, seeing that they be of the same nature that true *Diarie* be of, they may most rightly be called *Diaria* (as *Galen* sheweth abundantly in *lib. 9. therapeutices cap. 1.*) Hereupon it is euident, that there be two kinds of *Diarie*. One, which is named *Diaria* simply and without adiection or putting too of any word, which feuer doth not extend aboue the space of a naturall day (that is) 24. houres. An other kind there is,

Febris quid.

Three principles of simple feauers. Ephemera. Diaria.

Note.

Diaria simplex. Diaria plurimum dierum.

which is called *Diaria plurimum dierum* (that is) a diary of many dayes. It is called by another name of *Galen* (that is) *Synochus non putrida*. The second kind of simple feauers is, when as immoderate heate is kindled in the humours, and it is called *putrida* (that is) rotted, onely because the humours in this kind of feauers do putrifie and rot. It is like vnto hote water: for as that doth heat a cold vessell, that it is poured into: so also humours, hore about nature, do heate the body. The humours do putrifie and rot, either within the vessells or without. If they rot within the vessells, then either all the humours do putrifie together, or esse one alone. If all the humours do putrifie equally and a like within all the vessells or veines, or specially within the greatest, it causeth a feuer called *Synocha putrida*, which, to the intent you may perceiue what it meaneth, you must note first that the Phisitions of Greece do call that feauer *Synochus*, in the which one fit remaining still continually from the beginning to the ending, extendeth and continueth many dayes. Or, it is a feauer which is without any great mutation vntill the end of it. This feauer may be called of the Latines *contmens febris*, and is in English a constant or continuall feuer. But although there be one forme and likelihood of such feuers, whereupon they name them *Synochus*, yet their nature is not all one. For some of them haue manifest signes and tokens of rottenness: and some againe haue none at all, which (as we said a litle before) be of the kinds of *Diaria*. We to the intent that our doctrine may be the more euidēt, do call the first *Synochus putrida*, and the last we call, *Synochus non putrida*. And in this place you may not follow the barbarous sort, which call the last the *Synocha*, and the first *Synochus*: seeing the Greekes (as *Galen* witnesseth) conraine them both vnder the name of *Synochus*. Of those feuers, which are named *Synochi*, there be three sundry sorts or differences: for some of them do endure of an equall vehemency and force from the beginning vntill the ending: those the Greekes call *homotomos*, and *acmaestic*. (that is) remaining still in the same force and vigour. Some alwayes encrease and augment by litle and litle, those the Greekes do call *anabaticos*, and *epacmaesticos* (that is) encreasing and augmenting more and more. Some do decrease and diminish by litle and litle, those the Greekes call *paracmaesticos* (that is) decreasing. Moreover, if one onely humour do putrifie and rot within the vessells, it kindleth a feauer, which the Greekes do call *Synechis*, and the Latins, *continua febris*, in English a continuall feuer, which is, when the feauer doth not leaue the patient, but it hath a certaine remission and slaking of euery fit. Whereby it is euident that the feuer *Synochus* and *Synechis* (that is) a constant feauer and a continuall feauer do differ much a sunder. For in a feauer *Synochus*, there is no remission or slaking of the heate, but in the feuer *Synechis*, there is sensible remission and slaking in euery fit. Also the feauer *Synochus*, hath but one onely fit: but in *Synechis* there be many fits. And they two agree in this, that neither of them doth leaue the patient sometime. Of feauers that are called *Synochi*, or esse *continua febris*, there be three kinds: for if choler do putrifie and rot within the vessells, it causeth a continuall tertian, or a burning feauer, which is called of the Greekes *canfor*. If sleame do putrifie or rot within the vessells, there engendreth a continuall quotidian. But if melancholy do putrifie and rot within the vessells, there engendreth

2
Putrida.

Συνος.

Two kinds of
Synochus.
Synochus putrida, & non
putrida.

1
Three sorts of
Synochus.

2

3

συνος.
What a continuall feuer is.

Difference betweene
Synochus, and
συνος.

Three kinds
of continuall
feauers.

Tertiana continua.

gendreth a continuall quartane. And these continuall feauers be somewhat like to the intermitting feauers, of the which we will speake straight way. For a continuall tertian, agreeth with a true intermitting tertian, in that, that it hath a fit, as well as it euery third day. And a continuall quotidian agreeth with an intermitting quotidian, because each of them hath a fit euery day. Also a continuall quartane agreeth with an intermitting quartane, because both of them causeth a fit euery fourth day. But yet these feauers do differ two wayes, notwithstanding that they agree in the humor that causeth them. First they differ, because in continuall feauers the putrified humor is contained within the veines, but in intermitting feauers, that humor is dispersed into all the members of the body: whereupon it chaunceth through violence of spreading of humors, the feauers are purged out by themselves. Hereby also they differ another way (that is) the intermitting feauers slake betwene the fits, but the continuall feauers do not cease at all betwene the fits. Hitherto we haue rehearsed what kinds of feauers humors putrified within the vessels do cause and engender: now we will expound, what feauers humors putrified without the vessels do conceiue, engender, and kindle. If therefore an humor do putrifie and rot without the vessels, it causeth an intermitting feauer, which is so called, because the fit doth not endure continually, but it hath a slaking or ceasing, and leaueth off betwene the fits. It may most aptly be called in Latine *febris interpe'ata*, because the fits come and renew at their times: some call it *deficiens febris*. Of this feauer there be three kinds, (that is) a Tertian, a Quotidian, and a Quartane. A pure and exquisite Tertian is caused when choler doth putrifie and rot without the vessels. It is so called because it ceaseth one day, and commeth againe the third day. An exquisite Quotidian, which in Greeke is called *Amphimeron*, is caused of sweet steame being putrified and rotten without the vessels, and it is so called because it returneth euery day. We did not rashly say sweet steame; for if glasen steame do putrifie and rot a litle, it causeth a feauer called *Epiolos*. And this *Epiolos* is a feauer, in which the patient is both feuerous, and feruently cold, and doth feele both heat and cold in moderatin all parts of his body, both at one time together. To the aforesayd feauer doth belong a feauer, in Greeke called *Lypiria*. In this feauer there is heate felt within, and in the bowels and entrals: but in all the outward parts, there is cold felt. An intermitting Quartane is engendered of Melancholy putrified and rotted without the vessels. It is so named because it ceaseth two dayes, & returneth againe the fourth day. The third kind of simple feauers in generall is caused, when heate is kindled, in the sound, hard, and fleshy parts of mans body, & it is called both in Greeke and Latine, *Hellica febris*, and in English the feauer Ethicke. This feuer is like to a hore vessel, for as the vessel doth heate the water that is poured into it, so also the feauer Ethicke, which sticketh in the sound and fleshy parts of the body, and is infixed in them, is able to heate all the humors of the body. And if this feuer doth not encrease, that it doth melt and consume the whole body, and all the hard and sound parts of it: then it is called *Hellica marasmodis*, and *marasmus*. And this (at Galen witnesseth) is incurable. For although you might quench the heate, yet the grinesse which is left, being proper to old age, will

Quotidiana continua.

Quartana continua.

Likenesse betwene continuall and intermitting feauers.

Difference betwene continuall and intermitting feauers.

Intermittens febris.

Interpelata.

Tertiana intermittens. Quotidiana exquisita.

Epiolos.

Lypiria. Quartana intermittens.

3

Hellica febris.

Marasmus.

*Pestilent fea-
uer.*

*Feuers engen-
dred by inflā-
mation of some
member.*

*The kinds of
compound fea-
uers.*

*Complications
of Quotidians
and Tertian.*

Hemitritæus.

kill the patient. Besides the feauers now of vs rehearsed, there is another fe-
uer which is caused of breathing in of pestilent aire. But seeing this feauer (as
Galen witnesseth *libro primo de differentijs febrium, Capite quinto*) is engendred of
rottenesse, for the aire about vs being corrupted with a putrifying and rot-
ting euaporation, causeth also the humours of the body to rot. Therefore it
may be contained vnder the second principall kind of feauer called *Putrida*.
Moreouer in this place, we may not let passe to tell, that some feauers be en-
gendred without disease or griefe in any member of the body, and some fea-
uers be kindled through the inflammation of some member. Therefore, as the
former feauers haue their names: so also each of these that follow haue their
proper names. For the feauer which is engendred through inflammation of
the filme or cal that girdeth in the ribs, it is called, *Pleurctica febris*. That which
engendred through inflammation of the lungs, is called *Peripneumonica febris*.
That which chanceth through inflammation of the stomacke, the liuer, or the
lungs, is called in Greeke *typhodes* (that is) inflaming or burning. Likewise all o-
ther feuers, which engender through inflammation of any member, haue di-
uerse names, according to the diuersity of the member. Therefore in euery
sicke person you must diligently discerne feauers which come without disease
of other members, from those feauers which engender through inflammati-
on of some member. Of the aforesayd feuers, some be *Typica* (that is) certaine
and ordinate: and some be, *Erraticæ* (that is) vncertaine and vnordinate. *Typi-
cæ* be such feuers, whose fits and slakings from them do come iustly at their
appointed time. *Erraticæ* are such feuers as be contrary to these, for they keepe
no certaine and iust time, nor any order of fits, nor the intermission betweene
them, as be those feauers which engender of melancholy, which is moued in
certaine members, and in some it remaineth vnmoveable, in other members
it putrifieth, or beginneth to boile. Hitherto we haue rehearsed the kinds of
simple feauers: it remaineth therefore, that we declare briefly the kinds of
compound and mixt feauers. Therefore compound feauers are caused two
wayes: first, because these feauers aforesayd (that is) a Tertian, Quotidian, and
Quartaine, may be mixed together without the disease of any member. Se-
condarily, because these feauers, which be engendred through inflammation
of some member, may commixe together. The feauers that come without in-
flammation of any member, are sometime complicate and ioyned together,
and sometime they are altogether confounded. Complication (as *Galen* wit-
nesseth) is when the feauers inuade the patient at diuerse houres. And confu-
sion is, when they begin at one time. There is foure complications or ioyning
together of the feuer Tertian and Quotidian (as *Galen* witnesseth.) One, when
a Tertian and Quotidian are mixed together being both intermitting feuers.
Another is, when an intermitting Tertian is ioyned with a continuall Quoti-
dian. This is called by a peculiar name of the Greekes *Hemitritæus*, because all
his nature hath the halfe part of each of the sayd feauers. The third is when
an intermitting Quotidian is mixed with a continuall Tertian. The fourth is
when a continuall Quotidian is ioyned with a continuall Tertian. To be short,
feauers of one kind are complicate and ioyned with feuers of the same kind,
as continuall with continuall, and intermitting with intermitting feuers, and

Tertians

Tertians with other Tertians, and one Quartane with another Quartane. Also it chanceth many times, that feuers of diuers kinds are coupled together, as Quoridians with Tertians, and each of them with Quartanes, and sometime intermitting feauers are mixed with continuall feauers. Moreover after the same sort, feauers which are engendred with inflammation of some members, are sometime mixed together, as if diuerse members do each of them kindle a feauer proper to them selues, or the affection where they engender be mixed. Seeing therefore, that feauers are compounded and mixed manie sundry waies: first the kinds of simple feuers must be with great diligence perfectly learned of them that studie Physicke: for vnlesse they know them very perfectly, it cannot be that euer they should know well compound feauers. Therefore seeing the knowledge of them is very hard, in so much that oftentimes cunning Physicians are deceiued in iudging of them, you must seeke the signes and tokens, whereby you may know them diligently out of *Galen*, who hath taught this thing more exactly then any man. We, to helpe the memory of the studious haue comprehended all the kinds of simple feauers in this Table following.

TABVLA FEBRIVM.

Of simple feauers there be three principall kindes. For vnnatural heat is kindled and engendred either in the, &c.	Spirites or breath, and doth cause <i>Ephemer</i> , or <i>Diaria</i> , whereof bee two kindes, that is to say		{ <i>Ephemer simpliciter</i> or <i>Diaria</i> , one day feuer. And <i>Diaria</i> , plurium dierum. Otherwise called <i>Synochus non putrida</i> , enduring three or four daies.	
	{ All the humors do putrify and rot equally, and cause a feuer called <i>Synochus putrida</i> :		{	
	{ Within the vessels, & that two waies, for either		{ Or one only humour putrifieth, and so causeth a continuall feuer: and if there be putrefaction of	
	{ Or in the humours, and causeth <i>putrida febris</i> , a rotten feuer, they do rot in two places, either		{ Choler, it causeth a continuall Tertian or a burning feuer. If fleume do putrifie, it causeth a continuall quotidian. If melancholy do putrifie, it causeth a continuall quartane.	
	{ Or they putrify without the vessels, and cause an intermitting feauer. For if there be putrefaction of		{ Choler, it causeth an intermitting Tertian. Sweet do rot it causeth an intermitting quotidian, pure. Glasse: it causeth Epialos	
	{ &c.		{ If fleume that is	
	{ &c.		{ If melancholy do rot, it causeth an intermitting feauer quartane.	
	{ Or in the fleshy parts, and causeth either,		{ <i>Hectica febris</i> , or <i>Marasmus</i> .	

CHAP. II.

Of one day Feauer.

DE DIARIA.

Ephemer
a quid.

Cause.

Signa.

Common signs
fixe.

1

2

A naturall
vrine.

3

4

5

6

Particular
signs of diariesSignes of
watchings.

DIARIA Febris in Latine, *Ephemer*a in Greeke, in English one day feauer. It is that which bath one only fit, finishing for the most part in one day, at the most, of his owne nature. For it endeth after the first fitte, and doth not excede nor passe a naturall day, if it be rightly vsed. And that, because of the matter wherein it is, (that is) the spirite of breath which is easily dissolued and disperfed. Therefore *Galen* doth most worthily call this, the most simple feauer, because it is the shortest, and the most gentle feuer, being nothing malignant. Therefore if any thing in this feauer be committed either by ignorance of the Phisitions, or through intemperance of the sick, or by errors of the ministers and assistants, whereby it turneth into another kind of feauer, that doth not chaunce through the nature of this feauer. *Diaria febris* is caused, when as the spirite or breath is inflamed and heat aboue nature without any putrefaction or rottenesse. And that chaunceth many waies: Somtime through consumption, binding, or thickning of the skinne, which stoppeth and keepeth in the vapours or spirites which were wont to flow out by the pores, which because they be hote and sharpe, therefore they engender a feauer. Sometime it is caused through wearinesse & vehement defatigation. Also through watchings, crudities, and lacke of digestion, sadnesse, feare, ire, vehement care of the mind, burning of the Sunne, cold, hunger, drunkennesse, and swelling of the kernels in the throte, and such like, which can heate the spirites and inflame them. The signes whereby *Diaries* are knowne, are of two sorts: for some signes be common to all *Diaries*, and some be proper and peculiar to each cause. The common signes be fixe in number, whereof the first is the pulse. For all the *Diaries*, as much as in them is, do chaunge the pulse in greatnesse, swiftnesse & ofttnesse. But it keepeth exquisitely that order, softnesse and equality, which is according with nature. The second common signe is the vrine, which in *Diaries* is altogether according to nature, or doth little turne from a naturall state. An vrine that accordeth with nature, is subruse in colour, meane in substance, hauing in it a residence white, light, and equall. The third token is the equality of heat which in all *Diary* feuers is gentle, pleasant & easy. The fourth signe is the maner of ending of it: for all *Diaries* are loosened and ended by a breath or vapor which cannot be perceined, or by abundant vapours or moistures, or sweet sweats. The fift is the wanting of euill symptomatics, & accidets: as be vehement paine of the head, and stomack, and other parts, abhorring of meats, vnquietnes, vnstable thirst, and such other like. The sixt and common sign is, that all *Diary* feuers be engendred of an outward cause, which the Phisitions at these daies call a primitive cause. But the particular signes, whereby each *Diaria* doth differ from other, be these that follow. They which haue a *Diaria* feauer, caused through watching, there chaunceth to them a naughty colour, and swelling of the face, heauie motion of the eyes, for they scant lift vp the eye liddes, there is moistnes of the haies of the eye liddes, and small pulses. For watching (as *Hippocrates* saith) seeing interpreteth digestion, it engendreth

abun.

abundance of crude and raw humours and vapours, it diminisheth the natural heate, and vnlooseth the body, whereupon there followeth the tokens afore sayd. To be short, watchings do reuoke and pull backe nature from digesting: therefore they cause great crudity and rawnesse, as well in the braine, as in the rest of the body, whereupon also doth chance the tokens afore sayd. The signes of a diary, caused of care and sorrow be these, leannes of the body. If sorrow be the cause, it is clearer, if care, it is darker. Also hollownesse, and driness of the eyes doth signifie both the sayd effects: but in thoughts and cogitations it is least, because the spirites and humours are lesse consumed. And it is most euident in sorrow. Also there follow these effects, a certaine vnaccustomed palenesse or swartnesse, so that the skinne is destitute of her natural colour. They which haue a diary through wrath or furious anger, they haue neither hollownesse of eyes, nor euill colour of the face, but rather their eyes seeme to sticke out further, and their face is red, and there is a loftines of the pulses. So also the signs of the rest of the diaries being engendred through perturbation of the mind, may chiefly be knowne by the pulses. For in sadness the spirits are caried inward, and therefore the pulses be small, feeble, and rare. In feare new begun, the blood and spirits runne inward, as it were to the spring head, and the mind is troubled. For nature being vexed, driueth the spirites hither and thither, which through mouing are inflamed, whereby the pulses are made swift, necessity compelling them, and the mind being chafed maketh them vnequall and sharpe. In old feare (the spirits being dispersed and vertue being feeble) it causeth such pulses, as we spake of before in sadness. They which haue a *Diaria* feuer, through burning and heat of the Sunne, their skiane is hot and dry, their head seemeth to them to burne, because of the spirites inflamed in it. Their eyes waxe redder, and sometimes the veines in their eyes, temples & forehead, and in all their whole face are stretched and puffed vp. They that haue this feuer through cold, they are taken with heavy distillations, and reumes, because cold bindeth, and withholdeth and keepeth the fumes excrements within the skin. Moreover the skinne is lesse hote, and all the body sheweth to haue a greater moysture, because the wonted fluxe is restrained and stopped through cold. Moreover there is no filthinesse in the face for the same cause. They which haue this feauer caused of wearinesse, their skin is made drier then it is in other diaries, because exercise drieth vp the body, and draweth out the moisture of it: also their pulses be vnlike: for they that haue vsed great exercises, and be wearied about measure, they haue small pulses, because of imbecility and weakenesse of strength, but they that haue vsed but small labours, their pulses be great, because their strength is not diminished yet. They which be taken with a *Diaria* feuer through drunkenness or hunger, they need no signes to know the cause, for such causes may be knowne by telling the sicke. They which haue this feauer through kernels, swellings or impostumations about the throte or mouth, or other where, they haue very great pulses, and because of the feuerous heate, they be swift and often. Also there is equalitie of their pulses, because the instrument of mouing is not letted neither by obstruction, nor through abundance of humours, nor of sharpe vapours, nor by pressing together, vn-

*Signes of care
and sorrow.*

Signes of anger.

Signes of sadness.

Signes of feare.

*Signes of Sun-
burning.*

Signes of cold.

*Signes of wear-
inesse.*

*Signes of drink-
kenesse and
hunger.*

*Signes of swell-
ings about
the throte.*

*Pistius ratio.**Wine good for
diarries.**Curatio.*

lesse the inflammation be very great. Their face is altogether red and swollen, because of the abundance of heat. And their vrine appeareth pale, because the choler that should colour the vrine is transferred to the botch or impostumation. The cure of all diary feauers is brought to passe by diet, whose chiefe point in all diaries that be simple consists in this, that you minister vnto them meates that engender good humours, and that be easie of digestion, and apt to be distributed about the body. Giue vnto the that are burnt in the Sun, and to them that be angered, a diet which doth coole and moist. And vnto them that are cold, giue a diet that nourisheth lesse, and that doth heat moderately. Against watchings or sadness, or consuming with ouermuch care, vse a diet which can both moisten, and prouoke sleepe, that it may deliuer them from the driness that those euils haue caused, and also that it may recreate and refresh their strength. They that haue a feuer of wearines, you must allow them to eate as much meat as they can digest: for you must alwaies eschue crudity and rawnes of the stomach. For the substance of the body being dissolved and dispersed with labour, must be repaired with much meate being easie of digestion. You must measure the quantity of taking of meate, by the patients strength, age, naturall temperament, and custome of the sicke. Moreover by the time of the yeare, the region, & such other like. But those whose temperature of the body is very hot and dry, those you must feede with meat by & by at the first beginning of the fit. For in them the diary feauers will change very swiftly into an acute and rotten feuer. Chiefly aboue other, they may be fed with a thin diet, which haue a diary caused of a botch or impostumation, for in them the substance of the body is not diminished. Wine that is white and thin is good almost for all diary feuers, those which be properly named so, & do endure but twenty foure houres. For besides that it helpeth digestion, it also prouoketh vrine and sweate (as Galen sayth.) But you may grant it more abundantly to the feauerous through watchings, forow, or care, because great abundance of spirits is spent and consumed in them, which wine will easily and quickly restore in them againe. But to those that haue headach, whether they haue watched, or be feuerous by any other occasion, they must refraine from wine, because it pierceth the head quickly. And they that haue this feauer engendred of great anger and fury, vnlesse they be altogether quiet from that perturbation, they may haue no wine giuen to them, for the spirits and bloud is maruellously chased, and boileth sore. Also you must driue from wine those that be feuerous through the swelling of botches or kernels in the throte vntill it be loosened: not, that it is so vnprofitable for the feuer, but that it hindreth the cure of the botch. For it encreaseth the flowing of the humors into the grieued places, and so causeth inflammation, and thereby augmenteth the feauer. You must cure all simple feauers that be diaries (as Galen witnesseth) with bathes. Therefore whosoeuer hath this feauer, in the declination of the first fit, you must bring them into a bath. But yet all may not be bathed alike, nor all must vse the same parts of a bath. For they that haue this feuer caused of botches, or impostumations, they may profitably tarry in the aire or fume of the bath, because it both rarifieth and maketh thinne the skinne, and also is prouoketh and enticeth sweate out of the body. Neither doth it hurt those

those patients with drinesse as it would do those that haue this feauer engendred of wearinesse, watchings, cares, and other perturbations of the mind. For seeing their body is dried vp altogether by those causes, they must be kept from the aire of the bath, least it augment their griefe. Therefore such may tarry the longer in a bath of sweete water being made hote, that through the moysture of it, they may recouer the humidity that is lost, and is decayed in them. Afterward soft handes must rubbe them gently, with plentie of warme oyles, wherein there is no manner of restriction or binding. For this friction and rubbing doth moisten, loosen, and soften the hard and fleshie partes, and it dissolueth and disperseth those things which are contained in the pores and conduites of the body. They that haue this feauer caused through burning of the Sunne, you must cure them by and by in the beginning with cooling, and with many bathings of sweete water, and onely with pouring on a little oyle without friction or rubbing of it, for it raiseth heate. Things that do coole the head being applied to it, be oyle of roses, and of vnripe oliues, and other which be rehearsed in *libro primo*. These being first made cold, and then receiued with wooll, and holden vp aloft, you must presse it with your hand, and let it droppe downe vpon the forepart of the heade, and that continually, while the feauer doth decline: then afterward bring the sicke into a bath. If any person haue this feauer through cold, he must also be brought to a bath in the remission of his fire, and his head must be nourished both before and after the bathing with oyle of *yroos* and *oleum nardinum*, and such like. For they that haue a feauer through this cause, haue neede of medicines that can heate, and remoue constipation and binding. They that labour of a *Diaria* feauer through hunger, in the inclination of the fit, you must bring them straight vnto a bath, and pouring vpon them much sweete oyle warmed, rubb them softly, and you must keepe them long in the water of the warme bath, that thereby the drinesse which hunger hath caused in the body, may be corrected and amended by the oile and the bath. When they be come out of the bathe, you must recreate and refresh the strength with conuenient meates, and then you must bring them againe to a bathe, and when they come out againe, (the perturbation with their bathing being ceased) you must giue them hote water to drinke, and by and by you must minister iuyce of pisan, and sometime they may take lettuce, and they may eate fishes taken out of grauelly places, and being light meate sodden in a white broath; which, what it was in old time, *Galen* sheweth in his fourth booke, *De sanitate tuenda*. If the feauer *Diaria* do chaunce through crudity or rawnesse of the stomacke, you must first consider, whether the wombe be soluble, or else costive. If it be soluble, and those things only which be corrupt, do seeme to voide soorth, then you must wash him and nourish him in the remission of the feauer. But not vnlesse first you diligently behold and foresee all things chauncing to the stomacke. For if such abundant emptying hath beene already, or doth now continue, so that the vertue and strength of the sicke is wearied, it is better to giue him meate, and wash him both together. But you must diligently behold first those things that be about the stomacke. You must vse about the sicke, if the emptying

Note.

do endure no longer, irrigations and sprinklings of the stomacke with oyle of wormewood, and other things which are rehearsed before in the third booke in the Chapter of weaknesse of the stomacke. But those things that be applied to the stomack, let them be well heat. For those things that be applied bloud warme do dissolue and loosen the strength of the stomacke. If the belly be altogether costive, handle and feeble the sides, & then the whole body, and consider whether the meate is descended into the small guts, or into the colon. And if the meate abide yet still in the stomacke, let the sicke drink much warme water, or put his finger or a feather downe into his throte, and vomite vp all that vexeth and troubleth him. Then you must foment and nourish his hypochonders and sides, and let him rest. But when the food is descended already into the bowels, you must bid them lie with their face & stomack downward, and you must nourish the belly and prouoke sleepe, for that digesteth crudity maruellously. After sleepe to bring out excrements from the wombe, you must put in a suppositarie, or cast an easie clister to loosen the wombe, they which haue a feuer caused through swelling of the kernelles of the throte, in them you must first cure the bile or botch that caused the inflammation, after that sort that *Galen* teacheth in his bookes *de medendi ratione*. When the fit declineth, they must be washed. Also they must be nourished with a thinne and scarce diet, because in them the substance of their bodie is not lost. Also they must be kept from wine, for the causes aforesaid. And this sufficeth for the curing of a *Diaria* Feuer, being so called *simpliciter*, without any addition.

CHAP. II.

Of a Dyarie lasting moe dayes

DE DIARIA PLVRIVM DIERVM.

Diaria plurimorum dierum.
Synochus non putrida.

Cause.

Signa.

THERE is an other kind of Diaries, which is named *Diaria plurimum dierum*, for no other cause but because it extendeth & continueth vnto the third day. It is otherwise called *Synochus non putrida*. The auncient authors haue called this feuer *Diaria*, because it is of the same nature that right Diaries are of. For it endeth after the first fit, if it be rightly and well handled. This feuer is caused of thickning or stopping of the pores and passages of the skinne. That thickning (as *Galen* witnesseth) doth chaunce either because the small pores are stopped vp, or because they waxe narrower, or also because the body it selfe is moderately thicked, which is wont to chance through cold, or after a bath, or by a medicine that is very sharpe and restrictiue: or through burning of the sunne, and other such like which can dry the skinne. This feauer may be knowne first by touching: for in them that haue it, the skin is felt harder, and more compact together, then it is wont to be: Secondly you may know this feuer by mouing of the heat, for at the first touching it seemeth gentle, and easie, but afterward, if you hold still your hand longer, the heat is sharper. Thirdly you may know this feuer by the vrine, which is not much altered from his naturall substance and colour: for the bloud doth not boyle very much, neither is there much choler ingendred, whereby the vrine should be made higher coloured. Fourthly, you may know it by the bignesse of the body, which keepeth one state, and doth not fall away, because the thicknesse

of

of the skin doth let the dissolving of the vapours and moysture, and therefore also the eyes are not hollow, nor dry, but more swollen and full of moysture, then they should be naturally. Fifthly, you may know it by the pulse, which is equall, great, swift, frequent and vehement. They that be taken with this feauer, if you will cure them rightly and truly, you must let them blood, and you must draw out so much blood, as the strength of the patient will suffer. And know this for a surety, that vnlesse you vse this remedy to those which by nature haue their body vnapt to breath out vabours because of abundance, it will come to passe that either they shall be choked, or be in daunger of often swooning, vnlesse great strength or much sweating, or large fluxe of blood do deliuer them from death. The body being emptied by blood letting, strdly after minister meats and medicines which can cleanse and scoure. The meats which can do this in feauers (as *Galen* witnesseth) be *ptysan* and *mulsa*. The medicines be *ptysan*, *eximell*, and things sodden in *mulsa*, as be *calamint*, *hylope*, or *rigan*, *serpillum*, *greos*, and *apium*. But all these be hotter then they ought to be, and therefore they enflame and kindle feuers, as also wine doth. *Oximell* doth only scoure and cleanse strongly, and doth not enflame and kindle feauers, so that it doth dissolue those things that be glutinous, clammy, tough and grosse, and it deliuereth the conduits, pores and passages from obstructions & stoppings. Obserue and watch how much of the feauerous heate is diminished by this diet: For if the third day in the morning, you see very little of the feauer left, and if there be no signes of rottennes of humors in the pulse, nor crudity or rawnesse in the vrine: if the suspectt houre wherein the feuer tooke the patient the first day be after noone, you may boldly wash the patient quickly log before six of the clocke, but it is sufficient if you end the washing three houres before. Likewise if you suspectt the tenth houre, you may wash him vntill the seuenh houre, for three houres or foure is space enough between the bathing and the fit. When the body hath bene heat in the bath, being first annointed with sweet oile warmed, and rubbed very moderately and easily, then by and by it must be wiped without and washed. These things following do scoure and cleanse most moderately, that is, meale of *Eruum*, and of barley, and also of beanes. Moreouer *mulsa* which is watery doth the same. Stronger things be *greos*, roote of *panax*, and *aristolachia*, and *mulsa* which is of a meane commixtion, but that *mulsa* scoureth most of all, that is pure, which is, when there is but a little water mixed with the hony, so that the melted hony may easily enter into the small pores of the skin. Stronger scourers then these, be the frosh of salt peter, the salt peter it selfe, and then *aphonitrum*, sope is one of them that is able to scoute most of all. Moreover after a bath, you must giue the patient nothing but water, which hath had a little *apium* sodden in it, although there be three houres space betweene the bathing and the suspected houres. But if the fit doth invade the patient in the euening, or two houres sooner, then you may wash him in the morning, and giue him meate, but you must giue him onely iuyce of *ptysan*. Then if the suspected houres bring nothing with them, you may wash him againe, if you will, and giue him meate, but you must haue respect to the vrine and the pulse. But if there chaunce any thing in the suspected houres, you must conferre it with the fit, which you had the first day, and

Curaus.

Absterfue
medicines.

Oximell

then you must consider the urine, & also the pulses. For all these will appeare to be in a meane temperatue, when there is left but a little obstruction. Wherefore you shall wash him the fourth day, and give him meate, having respect to the aforesayd considerations: and you shall hope that nothing will be left the fift day. But if there be great obstruction caused, that feauer is not of the kind of *Diary* feauers.

CHAR. II.

Of a rotten Feuer called Synochus.

Synochus.

Continens febris.

Causa.

Signa.

SYNOCCHUS in Greeke is a Feauer, wherein one fit continuing perpetually from the beginning to the ending, remaineth many dayes, or else it is a feauer which is without all great mutation vntill the end of it. Hereupon it is called in Latine *continens febris*, and in English it may be called a constant & stable feuer. There be three sundry differences of these constant feuers, as appeareth before in the exposition of feauers. This feauer *Synochus putrida* or *continens febris*, is caused when all the humours do putrifie and rot equally together within all the vessels, and specially in the great vessels, which be about the armerholes, and the share, which is wont to chance, when a feuerous heate is retained and kept in of a vehement binding and stopping, which is within the body. For whatsoever things be hot and moist, and may hardly breath or fume out, they putrifie and rot quickly and readily. Therefore this kind of feauer is not engendred nor kindled in folke that be leane & slender, nor in them that haue a thin and rare state of their body, nor in a cold temperament of the body, nor in a cold age, but for the most part it engendreth in them which do abound with blood, and in those that be hot, as well by their age and nature, as by exercises & diet, and specially it kinderth in them that be fleshy, grosse, and thick bodied, or else in them that be stuffed with hot excrements. They which haue this feuer, their pulse is very great, vehement, quicke, frequent & equal. The constitution or substance of the arteries is neither harder nor softer, then it should be by nature. But the quicknesse and frequency of it, is according to the greatnes of the feuer, and these signes are common with the signes of the *Diaria plurium dierum*. But particularly in this feuer, there is signs of rottennes, and that aswell in the urine, as in the pulse, and by the quality of vnkind heat. The cure of this feuer must be begun with letting of blood. And if vertue and nature be strong, and no other notable thing do stop it or let it, you must draw blood till he do faint and swoone. For if the patient be strong, this is the chiefest remedy for this kind of feuer (as *Galen* saith.) For first the body is turned into a contrary state, for it is cooled quickly through the fainting and swooning. As for cooling of the body, nothing can be found that is more pleasant, nor more profitable, either for the sicke, or for nature. Moreouer in such bodies, there chanceith of necessity, loosenes of the belly, or a laske, and oftentimes also vomiting of choler: which things, moisture or sweates do gather from the whole body. Therefore you shall do best by and by in these feauers, not to make the number of daies past, but only to consider the strength of the patient. For if that he be safe and strong, you may let blood not only the 6. or 7. day, but also in the dayes

daies following. But, and if you are compelled at any time to cure a patient, to whom not onely the remedy of bloudletting hath bene pretermitted and kept back, but now also either through ignorance of Physicians, or through feare of the sick or his assistants, in process of time, you are forbidden to let bloud, you must come to the ministring of cold things. But you must diligently discern & consider before, how much hurt may chance by it. For if the hurt will be small or none, minister very cold drink, as much as the sick will drink. And you may be the more bold to do it, if the patient hath bin vsed to drink cold drinks. But if you feare that great discommodity would arise through it, you shal abstaine from it: and vse other remedies whereby obstructions may be taken away, and abundance auoided, & that the burning heate of the feauer may be cooled & eased. The discommodities and hurts which do follow cold drinks ministr'd immoderatly and out of time, be these: first because it prohibiteth and letteth grosse & clammy humours to be attenuated and digested, whether they haue engendred obstructions or rottennes, or inflammatio, or impostume, or knobby hardnes, or such like effects. As often therefore as a feuer is kindled of such humors, cold things are not good for their auoiding: but to this feuer it bringeth much ease, because it quencherh the feuer that is already kindled. Buryet seeing the cause of the feuer remaineth stil, of necessity another feuer must be kindled new againe, and many times a worse then that which went before, because that the body is thickened through cold. And this is one discommoditie not to be neglected. Another is, that cold things hurt many weake members of the patient, whether they be weake by naturall distemperature, or by some vice that they haue gotten. So in some, it hath bin found that their throte hath bin so hurt, that they could not swallow, in some the stomacke, that they could scarce digest, in some the mouth of the stomack, or the liuer, or the gut colon, or the lungs, or the midriffe, or the reins, or the bladder, or som other such like member is so stricken with cold, that it is made weak & vnable to do his proper action and office. Many by immoderat drinking of it out of time, haue by & by bin taken with difficulty of breathing, & with cramp and trembling, and haue had hurt in all their sinewes. Therefore to be short, in them that haue any swelling of fleame or bloud, or any knobby hardnes, you may not giue cold water vnto them, nor yet to them that a raw humor doth hurt with obstruction or rottennes. But if there be no such swelling as is aforesaid, and then you do perceiue euident signes of digestion and concoction in the vrine, and if there be no member so giuen to a cold temperature, that it might take hurt, then you may boldly giue cold water. Also if the sick haue vsed to drinke cold water, you may the more boldly minister it, for all the members haue learned before by experience to suffer it familiarly without hurt. The drinking of cold water is perillous in them, that haue but litle bloud & flesh. Therefore by these things before rehearsed, it is euident to all men, that the chiefe remedies of these kinds of feuers called *Synochus putrida*, be these 2. bloudletting, & drinking of cold water: but bloudletting may be vsed at any time, if the strength of the patient will suffer it, & drinking of cold water must be vsed when euident signes of concoction are seene in the vrine, when the feauer is greatest, & when you are compelled to leaue bloudletting. You must note well the time, when you should let

When cold things should be ministr'd.

Discommodities of cold drinks.

Of cold water.

Continent febris hath two remedies chiefly.

You may not
let blood on a
full stomacke.

Diet.

When the sicke
should be fed.

blood, and marke what went before, and what followeth. For if cruditie and indigestion of meates do go before, you must reſtaine ſo long time from blood letting, as will ſuffice as well to digeſt the meate, as that the excrements may deſcend downe. But if there will follow of neceſſity any fluxe or emptying, you muſt leaue ſo much blood ſtill, as will void by that fluxe. Therefore if at the time of blood letting, the menſtruis do chaunce to flow, or alſo that the hemorrhoids do open and burſt out, if you beholding the vehemencie of the flux, ſhall thinke it to be ſufficient to purge and empty out that which you require without any helpe, then you ſhall let nature worke alone. But if you thinke it contrary, draw out ſo much blood, that thereby vnder them both conioyned together, you may bring to paſſe your requeſt and expectation. Let the diet in theſe feaues be chiefly this that followeth. In them that haue bene let blood, miniſter to them two houres after blood letting, iuice of *pyſan*, and commaund quiet and reſt. And when they are awaked out of ſleepe, miniſter againe *pyſan* broth. In this diet the patient muſt perſiſt & continue vntill the third day. You muſt note, that in theſe feuers called *Synochi*, the patients muſt be fed at ſuch time as haile folke are wont to eat, and when they feele moſt eaſe, for ſo they ſhall the eaſilier ſuffer and beare their foode. And if they be ſtrong and luſty, and you looke for the vigour and ſtate of the feauer ſtraight way, the patient muſt vſe a moſt thinne and ſcarce diet. But contrariwiſe if he be weake and feeble, you cannot miniſter a thinne diet to him without perill. Therefore in giuing of meate to the patient, you muſt diligently foreſee, and ponder his ſtrength and ability. He that deſireth to know more of this kind of feauer as touching the cure of it, let him reade *Galen in lib. 7. ſherapew. meth. cap. 5.*

CHAP. IIII.

Against continuall Feaues.

DE CONTINVIS FEBRIBVS.

Febris con-
tinua.
Cause.

Three differ-
ences of con-
tinuall feaues.

Signa.

FEBRIS *continua* in Latine, *Synochis* in Greeke, in Engliſh it is called a continuall feuer. It is a feuer that leaueth not off altogether betweene the fits, but it hath a certaine ſenſible ſlaking of heate betweene the fits. A continuall feuer is cauſed, when one onely humor doth putriſie & rot within the veſſels. And there be three differences of this feuer, according to the diuerſity of the humor that putriſieth in the veines: for if choler do putriſie within the veſſels, it engendreth a continuall Tertian, which the Greekes call *cauſos*, in Latine it is called *ardens febris*, in Engliſh a burning feuer. If ſeaime do putriſie and rot within the veines, it engendreth a continuall Quotidian: but if melancholy do putriſie within the veines, it kindleth a continuall Quartane. There is not a more certaine ſigne of a continuall feuer, then that none of them do come to intermiſſion and ſlaking altogether betweene the fits, vntill the feuer be quite ended and quenched. Their other ſignes are common with the intermitting feaues: for an exquisite burning feuer, or continuall Tertian, hath all the other ſignes of an exquisite intermitting Tertian: differing only in this, that it doth not inuade and begin with vehement cold and ſtiffeneſſe, neither doth it end in quiet and reſt. Likewiſe a continual Quotidian hath all the ſignes of an exquisite intermitting Quotidian, but it only differeth from it, becauſe it doth

not Intermit and flake betweene the fits. In like manner the continuall Quartanes haue the signes of intermitting Quartanes, but that they come not to quiet and rest betweene fits. Seeing it is euident by that which we haue said, that continuall feauers be of the kind of rotten feauers, it is necessary for him that will cure them commodiously and rightly, first to stop and let the putrifying & totting. Therefore two things must be taken heed of at the first, whereof one is the feuer, another is the rottennesse. And in the feuer you must also regard two things, the one, that the portion of the feuer, which is now kindled and enflamed, may be cured and quenched: the other is, that the portion of the feuer which is not yet kindled may be letted and stopped. Also two things must be considered concerning the rottennesse: one is, that the rottennesse already engendered, may be healed: the other is, to let & stop that which is ready to engender putrifaction. That which is ready to engender, is caused through perspiration and breathing out, if it be impedit and letted. So that of this other two considerations do spring: first that the humor which is withholden, may be purged and emptied out: secondarily to prohibe and keepe in that which is to be withholden and kept backe: it will be prohibited with those remedies which do heale obstructions. Againe note, that the obstructions which are engendred must be cured, and they which are to come must be letted & driuen backe away. You must cure that obstruction which is already engendred, by those things that do loosen, deliuer and open obstructions. And you shall driue away & stop the obstructions which are to come, if you bridle and stop the fluxe of obstructiue and stopping humors: whereby it appeareth euidently, that the last thing which we haue found in this *Compendium* of curing, that must be done first in the working of the cure. Seeing therefore that (when we haue examined the matter particularly) there be five things in continuall feauers from the which considerations in curing be gathered, that is, the feauer, rottennesse, perspiration impedit and letted, obstruction and abundance of obstructiue humors, you must begin the cure with the last consideration. Therefore seeing that the abundance of humors that cause obstructions, doth require purging and emptying out in the beginning, if vertue be strong in the patient, and if time of the yeare, and his age, and other things do agree, you must let him blood. You must then specially let him blood, when the whole body swelleth more then it was wont to do, or when the veines be swollen vp, or stretched out, for that doth signifie abundance of blood. When the multitude of humours are voided and emptied out, you must next come to the curing of obstructions, and you must minister medicines, whereby obstructions may be taken away. But because most of those medicines be hore, it is to be feared, least they should increase both their rottennesse, and also the feauer. Therefore you must vse to minister those things that can deliuer the patient from obstructions without heate. What those things be, we haue declared before in the second Chapter of this booke. When those humours that caused the obstructions be deuicd, cut, and scoured, you must assay to voide & empty them out by the wombe or guts, by the vrine, and by sweats. But seeing those things which should bring this to passe, be hore, of necessity the rottennesse and the feauer must be increased by them. Therefore, as much as we may, we must

A compendium of curing in feauers.

There be five things to consider in feuers.

Curation.

Blood letting.

How obstructions should be healed.

Bathing doth
coole.

Cure of putri-
faction.

Cure of the
feuer.

Diet.

labour to choose such a thing as doth heate but litle, or if we can find any that doth not heate at all (as in this case a bath) you must vse that. *Galen* teacheth in *libro tertio de tuenda sanitate, cap. 3.* that a bath can do this. For he sayth, that the strength of sweet waters made hot, if they be temperat, be hote and moist, but if they be warmed, they be cold and moist. And a litle after he sayth, a bath if it be discreetly vsed, it mollifieth the hard and stretched parts, and it bringeth forth excrements or moltings, if any sticke within the skinne. These things being done, and those humors being scoured out, which were compact together in the skin, so that the obstruction and perspiration impedit be taken away, you must come to the cure of the rottenesse. Therefore at this time you must first corroborate and restore the strength, whereby it may exuberate and ouercome the rottenesse, and be able to digest the humours. And you shall heale the putrifaction and rottenesse, if you do void and empty out by all meanes, that which is corrupted & putrified. That which is left still within, you must bring it to an exquisite meane by moderate motions, & coole breathings: and you shall worke the emptying out of your humors by vrine, egestions, vomiting and sweats. Last of all, you must proceed to the curing of the feuer, which must be done by cooling things. For euery feuer, inasmuch as it is a feuer, must be remedied by cooling and moistening things. But to know how each of these things should be rightly done, it is partly rehearsed before, and partly it shall follow hereafter. In continuall feuers, whose state or vigour of the disease will come at the farthest within seven dayes, if their strength be losse, and their age agreeing to it, you must ordaine them a very exquisite and thinne diet. But in the continuall feuers, whose vigour, force, and state is longer then seven dayes after the beginning, or if vertue be weake and feeble, at the first you must feed them liberally: when the vigour and state draweth neare, their diet must be more scarce. But in the state and vigor of the disease, you must feed them most thinly and scarcely. Afterward againe, augment his diet, & feed him most, increasing his diet in like case as the vigor & state of the feuer doth diminish, as *Hippocrates* sayth in the first section of his Aphorismes.

CHAP. VI.

Of a burning feuer.

DE ARDENTE FEBRE.

Continua Ter-
tiana.

Difference be-
tweene a bur-
ning feuer and
a Tertian.

ARDENS Febris in Latine, *Causos* in Greeke, in English it is called a continuall Tertian, or a burning feuer. It is of the kind of continuall feuers, as is declared in the former Chapter. And it is caused when choler putrifieth and rotteth within the veines. Therefore it agreeth with an exquisite intermitting Tertian, because it is engendred of the same humor that the other is. But yet it differeth from it in that, that in an intermitting Tertian the choler is carried all ouer the body: but in a burning feuer the choler is contained in the vessels together with the blood. Hereupon it commeth that the fits in a burning feuer do not intermit nor slake. But when the choler in them is stirred most vehemently, and is driven about by nature waxing strong, then there is wont to come vehement cold and rigour, and the feuer endeth. Which *Hippocrates* declareth 4. *Aphorif. 38.* saying, he that is taken with a burning feauer,

if it be vehement cold, and rigor come vpon it to him, he is deliuered from the disease. A burning feuer is knowne by these signes: their tongue that haue this feuer is drie, grosse, rough, and blacke: there is gnawing of the stomacke, intolerable thirst, watchings, and also many times raving, and egestions of the wombe be liquide and pale: which signes *Hippocrates* rehearseth in lib. 4. *Vlt. Acutorum*. They which haue this feauer, let them lye in a cold place, and in a sweete aire, from whence pure wind commeth. Also let him lye in a soft featherbed, which must be made often, let the couerings be very thin & cleane: which must be continually changed, & let his bed be of a great wideneffe, that he may easily moue his members that be hote to other cold places of the bed. And if the aire be quiet, stirre it with a fanne, or such like. You must giue him meates that haue vertue to coole and moisten, as is, lettuce, gourds, sorrel, ptisan broth, and such like. Let his drinke be water, wherein a litle cinamon hath bene sodden, or veruice. If the sicke haue vsed it, or if no other thing do let it, after meate giue him cold water a spoon-full or two, or mixe Iulep of violets, or some Iulep of roses, or such like with decoction of barley. Moreover the stomack must be refreshed with iuice of roses: and other cooling things must be vsed, as strewing of the floore with greene vine leaues, and with the leaues and floures of roses, water lillies, and violets, and by sprinckling and pouring often of cold water on the floore vp and downe. For the cure, in the beginning straightway, you must cut a veine, if age, time, vertue and strength do permit it. Hereupon *Hippocrates* saith in his Aphorismes thus: In great burning feuers, if bloud be drawne till the heart faint, by and by the state of the whole body is cooled, and the feauer is quenched. In many also a laxe is caused, and sweats flow forth. Afterward let the breast and stomacke be nourished with dates brayed with oile of roses, or of quinces, or of water lillies. Also other cooling medicins be good, as be vine buddes brayed, endiue, succorie, knotgrasse, lettuce, sorrell, vine leaues, and such like. Also a fine napkin folded together & dipped in oile and water made hote, and applyed to the brest and stomack, it ceaseth the burning of feuers maruellously. Also a handfull of wbooll soaked in water and oile of roses het greatly, and being holden vp aloft to drop vpon the breast, doth easily quench the vehemencie of the burning heate. These things must be hote, for warme things do dissolue the strength & vigor of the members. Neither shall you rashly also commixe vineger against vehement burning feuers. You may not apply epithemes nor other cooling medicines in the beginning and increasing of the fit: for at that time the affect of the body is driuen about, and the heat is in the inward members: therefore cold things applied do driue the heat to the innermost parts, and be an occasion of greater hurt, for fiery heat being oppressed and stopped within, it raiseth a more vehement and burning heate againe. Therefore in the force, strength, & vigor of the fites, when the heat is alreadie spread ouer all the bodie, these cold things may be wel applyed: for then the residue of the vnnaturall heate which remaineth about the inward members may readily be quenched. Hereupon the patient will begin to breath better, & shall be troubled with an easer thirst. Also some by breathing out of a dewie vapor do fall on sleepe. The epitheme which you must vse in this feuer is this. *Rx.* of rose water, and lettuce water,

Signa.

Diet.

Curatio.

Outward cause.

Epithema.

When cold
water may be
ministered.

Nota.

To whom a
bath is good.

Functions.

ana ℥ iij. ℞. waters of endiue and succory. ana. ℥ j. ℞. good vineger. ℥ j. all the three standers, of each. ℥ ℞. seed of purslaine. gra. iij. commixe all together and make an epitheme. Moreouer when the vigour and strength of the sicknesse is at hand, you may safely minister pure cold water, if none of those things which be rehearsed in the third chapter do let it. And if feare of any hurt, although it be very litle, do let it, you shall minister the first draught restrained after this sort. Take one cupfull of temperate water, and commixe fve cupfuls of pure cold water with it, and so minister it to suspect bodies. To conclude, in the curing of burning feauers, you must needs bring to passe one of these things, that either the choletick humors may be voided and empried out, or else that they may be quenched within. They may be voided and empried out by sweats, vomits and egestions. They may be quenched by drinking of cold water, where-with very often great burning feuers haue bene cured quite and cleane. A bath of sweet water is good only to them which haue a burning feuer without any swelling, tending to the nature of an inflammation or *Erisipela*: but if signes of concoction do appeare in the vrine, it is much more convenient for the patient. Let the sicke which in a vehement burning feauer desireth to vse a cold bath, be young, and of a moderate state of the bodie, as also *Hippocrates* witnesseth and monisheth. Neither let it be done to him in sommer time, and in hot times of the yeare, and in the vigour and strength of the feauer, & let it be one that hath vsed to wash in cold water in his health. But when the feuer waxeth more moderat, and vertue is stronger, and if there be signes of concoction together with it, a bath of sweet and temperate water is sufficient & doth good. For annointings, oile of cammomill doth good, specially if the weather be cold. But the abundance of matter whereon you should make competent remedies against burning feauers, you shall find in the chapters following.

CHAP. VII.

Of a pure intermitting Tertian.

DE EXQUISITA TERTIANA INTERMITTENTE.

Cause.

Signs.

Differences of
coldnesse in a
tertian and
quartane.

EXQUISITA tertiana febris intermitiens in Latine, an exquisite and pure intermitting tertian feauer in English. It is caused of choler caried by the sensible parts of the body, and by the proper nature of it, it remaineth pure, sincere, & vnmixed. Therefore seeing it is engendred of choler that is sincere and pure, and not commixed with any other humor, it is called of the Phisitions exquisite. This feuer engendreth in persons that be cholericke by nature, & in their flourishing age, in sommer time, in hote and drie regions, and when the weather is hote and dry, and in bodies oppressed with labours, watchings, cares, deepe thoughts, and burning of the sunne. Also this feauer by and by in the beginning, and in euery fit causeth a vehement cold, rigour and stiffenesse, and by this meanes it differeth from a burning feauer, as is before rehearsed. And the cold in this feauer differeth from the cold in a quartane feauer, thus, because in this feauer the patient thinketh his body were pricked, and as it were vlcerated. But in a quartane the cold seemeth to the patient, like the cold that haile folke feelee in winter time. Therefore a tertian feuer doth not chaunce without vehement rigour and cold, pricking and wounding in the flesh: but a quartane

quartane feuer doth not by and by the first day inuade the patient with vehement rigor and cold. For as it proceedeth forward and increaseth: so also the rigor and cold increaseth, and the patient doth not feele prickling, but rather feeleth great cold, and as it were nipped to the bone with it. There is in a tertian feuer, an exact & perfect order and equality of the pulses: but yet in the increasing of the fits, the pulses are raised & prouoked to vehemencie, greatnes, and frequency. Moreouer in the vigour & force of the feuer, it causeth thirst, and burneth vp the patient, so that he casteth off the cloths, to make him bare & naked, and he breatheth largely and often, and he bloweth out as it were a flame of fire, and requireth to drinke cold water. Afterward the heare spreadeth equally al ouer the body, so that the breast is no hotter then the extreme parts and members. And when you lay your hand vpon him, at the first touching you shall feele much gnawing and biting heate, bursting out as it were with a certaine vapour and moisture: but not long after your hand wil vanquish it, if you do hold it still. Moreouer there followeth this feuer vomiting of choler, and the belly is laxatiue, and they pisse vrine that is cholerick, subruise, and somewhat yellow, and moderately thicke. Also their vrine hath by & by a white cloude, or a laudable sublation in the middes. If the vrine be redder, and if in the first fit there do appeare neither sublation in the mids, nor cloude, the feuer will extend and remaine seuen fits. Moreouer this feauer leaueth off till another fit, when the fit hath endured the space of xij. houres at the most. For this is the longest time of a fit in true and pure tertians. But sometime the fit is shorter then the aforesaid space of time, hauing difference more or lesse according to the quantity and qualitie of choler within, or because of the strength of the patient, or through the present affect of the patients body at that present time. Therefore we name that an exact and pure tertian feuer, which endeth his fit within twelue houres: but that which hath a longer fit, that is not called an exquisit tertian, but an extended & stretched out tertian. And if the feuer doth inuade the patient daily with vehement rigor and cold, & with the signes aforesaid of the vrine and pulses, as also of other things afore rehearsed, then it is called *duplex tertiana*, a double tertian. But as for an exquisit tertian, because it is engendred of pure choler moued about, you must moisten it, and coole it, as much as you may possibly by all meanes. For this humor (as Galen witnesseth) is the hottest & driest among all the other that be in the body. Let the sicke lie therefore in a cold place against a sweet and pleasant aire. Also you may not suffer many to be in the house, because they should make it hote with their breath. Let the floore be sprinkled often with cold water, & with rose water, violet water and such like. And strew on the floore willow leaues, flours of roses, violets, water lillies and such like. Let the patient vse meates that haue vertue and power to coole and moisten. And you must giue him so much of the as he can very well digest. Let his potherbes be orach, beets, spinach, mallows, lettuce, gourds, sorrell, endiue, succory & such like. Also giue him *prysan* broth, and souplings made with Alica. Of fishes, let him eate such as liue in grauelly places: for such, besides that they do coole & moisten, they engeder good iuice, and are easie to digest. Of foules, let him eate that be of soft flesh, as be chickens & partrich, doves, young sparrowes, sea-fants, & such like: but of those that

*Signes of a
double tertian.*

Pictus vari.

haue not soft flesh, let him eate their wings, which are without excrements, because of their often exercises. Also he may eate cocks stones, & lowes feete, for they be without excrements, because they are exercised: and their braines, specially if they be well sodden. Also if you minister the flesh of pigges wel sodden, you shall not hurt, for so it may the easlier be consumed of the stomacke. Also reere egges, which be but onely hot through, may be suffred, specially the yolkes of them: for they be easier to digest than the whites, and they do coole meancly. You may suffer him to eate fruites, which be not verie hard to digest, as be, cherries, proines, mulberies. He must abstaine from honie, because it will easily turne into choler, and from mustard, salt meats, and all sharp things. Also you must keepe the sicke altogether from wine, vntill the disease be digested, and let him drinke in the meane season water wherein a litle cinamon hath bene sodden. Or let him vse to drinke this. *R.* Lulep of violets. *℥* iij. water wherein a litle cinamon hath bene sodden. *℥* j. commixe them together, and powre them out of one vessell into another, often. But when the disease biginneth to digest, you must giue him in the biginning a litle wine, that is thin and alayed with water, and giue him more liberally of it, when the end of the disease is at hand. This is the order of dyet for many, but not of all men: for they that are not daintily brought vp, but do liue hardly, and are strong of nature, you must ordeine for them a thinner diet (that is) let them be contented with ptisan broth vntill the iudgement of the seauer. As for sleeping, they may not sleepe in their fits, but rather let them watch, that thereby the bloud and spirites, and naturall heat may be letted and stopped from creeping to the inward members, and contrariwise may thereby be drawn to the outward parts: for otherwise the feuers will scarfe be dissolued, and they will come very slowly to their state, and fluxes will increase and be multiplied: when the fit is ended, sleepe is not hurtfull. The patient must eschue exercises, and all other vehement motions. Also let him refraine perturbations of the minde, specially anger, feare, sorrow, and such like. But you may not onely vse the diet before prescribed, but also you must minister medicins to the patient which can coole and moisten. In the beginning to quench the boiling of choler, and to mitigate the cholorous heate, let him vse this decoction. *R.* of floures of violets, borage, and red roses. ana. *M.* j. floures of water lillies, *M.* ss. endiue, succorie, lettuce, ana. *M.* j. *℥* of raisins picked. *℥* j. damascene proines nuber ij. seeds of endiue, succorie, lettuce, purcelaine, gourds. ana. *℥* iij. of the roote of succorie, *℥* vj. seeth all together in *℥* lxx. of well water, vntill the third part be consumed, then straine it, and make the liquor of that decoction sweet with sugar, and purifie it with the white of an egge, then adde to it sirupe of endiue with the broad leaues, and lulep of violets, ana. *℥* ij. *℥* commixe them together and make a potion, and let the sicke drinke thereof euery morning fasting *℥* iij. *℥*. But and if the sicke be more delicate, and do abhorre potions, let him take daily of this medicine. *R.* of conserues of violets, borage, roses, water lillies and succorie. ana. *℥* ss. electuarium de prunis damascenis without diareddii. *℥* vj. diarrhodon abbatin. *℥* j. diatrion santalon in powder. *℥* ij. of lulep of violets as much as is sufficient to commixe them, and make a loch. Moreouer you must remoue the cause of the seauer: which you shall do, if you emptie out the cholericke humor. Therefore

*Potus.**No sleepe in fits.**Cumatio.**A decoction to digest choler.**Misura.**Vacuation.*

fore you must empty out the choler which is crept into the stomacke, by prouoking vomite. By what meanes you may prouoke vomite it is declared in the former books. The choler which is caried downward, it is best to empty it out by a laske of the wombe, which also is wont to come sometime of it selfe in an exquisite tertian. Vomiting should be prouoked chiefly in the beginning of the fit, for at that time nature is wont to thrust in choler thither: as in the declination and slaking of the fit, nature thrusteth it to the neather parts and to the skin. Therefore at that time you must cast in an easy and soft clister, that it may both bring out the choler easily, and that also by his gentleness, the sharpnes of the choler which is wont to vexe and gnaw the guts, may be stopped and broken. Make therefore such a clister. *Rx.* of mallowes, leaues of purple violets, mercury, endiue, and succorie. ana. *M. j.* seed of purslaine and of melons. ana. *ʒ. iij. ss.* seeth them all in sufficient quantity of water, till the third part be consumed: straine it, and adde to the liquor of decoction, of the marrow of *castia fistula* newly drawne. *ʒ. j.* oile of violets. *ʒ. iij.* common salt. *ʒ. j. ss.* commix them and make a clister. Also you must empty out choler by prouoking of vrine and sweats, specially if it be caried thither by nature. This thing you may well do by medicines that prouoke vrine, but not by all such, but by those that can do it without drying. Therefore you must prouoke vrine with potions wherein *apium* or dill hath bene infused or wet. And if signes of concoction do appeare, then you may minister wormwood safely, which is a speciall remedy for the stomack, when it is vexed with choler: specially if you take of the tops of it as much as is sufficient, and infuse it in *meliceratum*, that is, wine and hony sodden together: for it purgeth choler out of the wombe and stomacke by egestion, and out of the veines it purgeth it by vrine. You shall prouoke sweating with this and such like medicines. *Rx.* roots of *apium*, sperage and succory. ana. *ʒ. ss.* of the seedes of parsley, fennell, *bruscus*, and louage. ana. *ʒ. ij.* black cicers. *ʒ. iij.* dill. *M. ss.* seeth all in sufficient quantitie of water that runneth vnto the third part: then let it be strained, and make it sweete with sugar, adding to it *oximel compositum*. *ʒ. ij. &* make a potion. Or beate all the aforesaid things into powder, and minister of it euery time *ʒ. j.* or *ʒ. j. ss.* with *ʒ. iij.* of *oximel simplex*. These medicines which prouoke sweate, must be ministred in the declination of the fit, or on that day that the sicke hath not his feauer. For this purpose also annoyntings with oiles of cammomill, dill, and such like, are not a little profitable. Moreouer hote bathes of sweet and potable water do profit two waies, both because they prouoke out some of the choler, as also because of their qualities, they do much good: for such bathes do moisten and coole. But bathes of sea water, salt water, saltpeter water, and brimstone water, they bring out more choler, but they profit much lesse then potable waters. Therefore it is best not to call them profitable, seeing they do more hurt by drying, then they do good by emptying and voyding: for the remedies must haue contrarie qualities to the humours that haue inuaded against nature: for that doth more commoditie then the emptying by any means (as *Galen* witnesseth *ad Glauconem*) by the which words it is euident that emptyings and purgings in an exquisite tertian, do but little please *Galen*. Specially those emptyings that are done by blood letting, and by a vehement purging medicine, for all such kind of purging medicines be of a

*Vomit.**Clister.**Prouokers of vrine.**Absinthium.**To prouoke sweate.**Bathes of sweet waters.*

hore faculty and quality. But seeing this feuer is the hottest of all other, therefore it rather desireth to be cooled & moistened, then to be vehemently purged. It rather permitteeth and requireth emptyings by other meanes, and specially when nature laboureth and assayeth to drue out the humour. Also nature must be holpen, if of her selfe she be not able to performe her intent. As for a bath this is the effect and scope of it, thereby to haue the body wet and moistened. Therefore you must strew in, neither salt peter, nor salt, nor mustard seede, but it is good to poure much oile, being made hot, vpon the patient, and to bring him into the bath, and to wash him. And if he will swimme in it, you may suffer him to do it as long as he can. And they that are deliced in bathing, if you suffer them to wash twise in a day, you shall not do amisse. But you must haue this in memory, that it be oportunatly, & done in due time, for if signes of concoction do now appeare, then if you wash him oftner, you shall not erre from *Galen* doctrine.

Balncum.

CHAP. VIII.

Against the bastardly Tertian.

DE TERTIANA NOTHA.

Causa.

Signa.

Diet.

Potus.

A Bastardly Tertian is caused, when choler is mixed for the most part with fleame. Hereupon it commeth that all the signes of this feauer do not declare the nature of pure and sincere choler, as in an exquisite tertian they do. In this feauer also the time of the fits doth exceede 12. houres, neither is this iudged in seven fits, as an exquisite Tertian is. Moreouer in this bastardly Tertian, the signs of concoction do appeare more slowly, neither is there such great heate in the vigour and state of this feauer, as in the exquisite Tertian. Besides all these, it doth not end with abundance of sweat, as an exquisite Tertian doth. Therefore the diet in this feauer must not be altogether cooling and moistening, as it is in an exquisite Tertian: but let it haue some power & vertue to heate, cut and deuide: for the choler in this feauer is grosser, neither is it so hore. They therefore that haue this feauer, may profitably take broth of prisan, wherein some pepper is put, and you must giue them *malsa* to drinke, wherein hath bene sodden, hysope, origan, and spiknard. Also you must giue them soupings and brothes easie to digest. Moreouer seeing the time of the fit is long, and so endureth a whole day, you may not giue him meat daily, but each other day: for by this meanes we shall beware and take heede, that nature be not called away from her office and worke, and so the disease should be increased: for you must onely take heed that the disease doth not increase, and that the strength of the sicke, which must strue and fight a great while, be not weakened, debilitate and cast down. But it is hard to keepe and saue both, because hunger looke how much it profiteth to the digestion of the disease, and so much the more it hurteth & debilitateth the strength. And meats, looke how much they increase the patients strength, and so much they hinder and let concoction and digestion. To conclude therefore, you must vse hunger to them that be strong and lusty, & their disease hard to digest. And you must feede them more largely, whose strength is debilitate and weake, and their disease not stubborne for to digest. Let their drinke be water, in which a litle cinamon, and some hysope or origan hath bene sodden. Quiet and rest is good

for

for them, but exercises do hurt them: for this doth cal forth outwardly nature, and naturall heate, which could concoct and digest crude matter within. For the cure, if you may let the patient bloud, you may not faile to do it, but by & by in the beginning, if the age, time, and region, and state of the body will permit it, you must draw out so much bloud, as the present state of the body requireth and will suffer. By the present state, vnderstand the state aswell of the patient as of the disease: for the sicke, if he be strong, may suffer bloudletting, if not, the contrary: if the disease remaine, and be caused through abundance of humours, it requireth bloud letting, not a meane quantity, but according to the abundance of them. But when the disease will endure long through crudity and lacke of digestion, you must draw out but a meane quantitie of bloud, that the strength of the patient may be kept and endure vntill the end of the disease. Also you must cast into the belly not very easie clisters, that they may bring forth the sluggish and hurtfull matter, & make them thus. *Rx.* mallowes, mercury, leaues of violets, organ, and hysope, ana. M. j. seed of *cardamum*. *℥. iij.* seeth all together in sufficient quantitie of water, and ad to the liquor of that decoction, *benedicta laxatiua*, *hierapicra*, ana. *℥. iij.* *mel rosarum*. *℥. vj.* oils of violets and cammomill, ana. *℥. j.* *℥. j.* common salt, *℥. ij.* and make a clister. Also you must minister to the patient, decoctions made of such things as can cut, & diuide, & also prouoke vrine without any great heating & drying. As this is. *Rx.* roots of *apium*, fennell, and succory, ana. *℥. j.* endiue, succory, organ and hysope, ana. M. j. lettuce. M. j. *℥. j.* the foure common cold seeds, ana. *℥. j.* seeds of fennell and *apium*, ana. *℥. j.* seeth all these in two pounds of water, vntill the third part be consumed. Then straine it, and make the licour sweet with sugar, and purifie with whites of egges the strained licour. Then adde to it *sirupus acetosus simplex*, *mel rosarum* clarified, *oximel simpl.* ana. *℥. j.* *℥. j.* and make a potion, whereof minister daily euery morning *℥. iij.* After these you must minister such medicines, as do empty the belly gently, as is infusion of rubarbe, *electuarium epillio*, and *diaphenicon*, and such like, which are able by themselves, or mixed with other, to bring and purge out choler together with fleame. Whereof we haue rehearsed many in our former bookes. After the seuenth day, you may minister continually decoction of wormewood: also *oximel* drunke alone helpeth many. Also vomiting after meate is so healthfull and profitable to these old and inveterate feuers, that many (as *Galen* witnesseth in *lib. 1. ad Glauconem*) haue bene cured with this one remedie. For a feuer which hath continued long, doth engender and breed many segmatick excrements in the stomacke, which being cast out by vomiting, the patient is deliuered fro the feuer. Also the sides must be nourished with hote medicines, that thereby the winds and bolning which stretcheth them out, may be dissolued & dispersed. Among other this foment is very good. *Rx.* floures of cammomill, melilote, and dill, ana. M. j. wormewood. M. j. red roses. M. j. linefeede, and fenugreeke, ana. *℥. iij.* boile these in sufficient quantitie of water, vnto the third part, then dippe a sponge in it, and nourish the sides therewith. Also it profiteth to annoint the stomacke, with this or such like ointment. *Rx.* oiles of masticke, roses and cammomill. ana. *℥. iij.* of cloues. *℥. j.* wax as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Moreover bathing in this feauer is not healthfull, before that signes of concoction

Curatio.

Bloudletting.

Clister.

Decoctum.

Purgatio.

Absinthium.

oximel.

Vomitus.

Fomentum.

Vnguentum.

Balneum.

do appeare, because crude and raw humors, which should be digested within, are brought out by it to the skin, and so it doth encrease obstructions.

CHAP. VIII.

Of a quartane feauer.

DE QUARTANA FEBRE.

*Causa.**Signa.**Cause of long
intermission
in quartane
fits.**Curatio.**Bloud letting.*

AN exquisite quartane is another kind of the intermitting feuers, which is engendred only of a melancholy humor, putrifying and rotting without the vessels. This feuer doth not by and by in the beginning invade the patient with vehement rigour and cold the first day, but it is like to them that are cold in winter through vehement frost: but when the feuer hath continued & proceeded forward and is encreased, then also the rigour & cold encreaseth with it, and waxeth greater and stronger daily, till the whole disease be come to his full encrease and force. And the cold doth not seeme to the patient as it were pricking and vexing the skin, as it doth in an exquisite tertian, but there is caused vehement cold, & as it would breake the bones. Their pulses are very rare and slow in the beginning of the fits, but when the feauer is in his full force, or also when it is encreased, then of necessitie the pulses are swift & often: but yet they do keepe their naturall slowness and rarity, if you consider the swiftnesse and frequentie coming in the fits. But the moving of the heart, the increasing and the vigour and force of this feauer is clean contrary to that in tertian feuers. For in this feuer the melancholy humor is kindled and enflamed by little & little, & as it were a stone, or a shell, or a bone, or some other such cold & dry body. And when that any flame or heat is kindled in it, then in the fit it leaueth nothing fumous or smoaky, but it burneth & consumeth it. And therefore there is longer ceasing and intermission of this humor betweene the fits, then there is in fleame. And the intermission and ceasing betweene the fits seemeth to be exquisite & pure without any griefe at all: because in this feuer, look how much melancholy is kindled and enflamed, and so much in the time of the fit is dispersed, consumed and drawn out cleane. Moreover in a quartane feauer there followeth not vomiting vp of choler. Their vrines are thin, white and watery, and as it were strained from a grosse matter. Also this feuer beginneth specially in Autumne and Haruest, coming after erraticke feauers. But you must behold both the nature of the patient, & his temperament, also his diet vsed before, his age, the region, and other such like. For if those things be cold & dry, then you may looke more surely, that a quartane feuer will ensue, specially if at any time, quartans be rise among the people. They that haue a quartane feuer, in the beginning they must be handled & ordered moderately and gently, neither may they be vexed with any vehement medicin, or by vehement emptying and purging: for the humor which causeth the quartane, is stubburne to be drawne and handled. Therefore in the beginning, and before it be digested, it will hardly and scarcely follow the medecine that draweth it. & that because of his grossenes and coldnesse, & also because it stoppeth the narrow waies, by the which it should passe out. Yet if bloud do seeme to abound much, then you must take away that. And if when you haue stricken a vein, the bloud that cometh out do appeare blacke and grosse, as for the most part it doth in diseases of the spleene, you may then boldly draw it out. For great abundance of such bloud

bloud being drawn out, nature will get the vpper hand in digesting the rest of the humor, and will make the feuer shorter. You must cut the innermost veine of the left arme, which is called *linearu vena*, the splene veine, or *mediana*: for this veine emptieth out the melancholy humor, specially from the splene, which is wont to be diseased in a quartane feuer: but if, when the veine is stricken, the bloud doth appeare thin, and yellowish, you must stop it by and by: for such an humor is not vnprofitable in a quartane, but it correcteth and amendeth the grosse and cold humor, as well because of his substance, as also with his quality. You must ordain for the patient a very good diet, such one as is not windy, and engendreth good iuice. Therefore you must keepe the sicke from swines flesh, and from all other meates that be grosse, tough and clammy, and slow of digestion. Moreover, let him abstain from all things which do coole & dry the body. He must eat birds that liue vpon mountains, & do engender good iuice: for those that do liue in fens & marshes, they be vnwholesome and full of excrements, and do engender a grosse humor. He must vse fishes of grauelly waters, which be soft and without roughnes, but in this feuer salt things and mustard must be ministred in meates, that they may extenuate, cut, and deuide the grosse and clammy humors, and that they may consume & feed vp the superfluous humidity & moisture. They must vse wine that is white, thin, & meanly hot: for that by the thinnesse it doth extenuate the grossenes of the melancholy humor, and by the mean heate that it hath, it heareth the body by litle and litle, which is cooled with the melancholious humor; and it helpeth digestion, and also prouoketh vrine. They may not altogether be kept and refraine from frictions, deambulations, and other accustomed exercises (that is to say) you must suffer the ro vse exercises, but not so much as they did in their health. Neither may they vse frictions, deambulations, and other exercises of the body so often nor so vehemently as they did in their health: for that would cause perill and danger of obstruction. But if exercises be vsed moderately, & that in the time of intermission betwene the fisses, they will void out excrements and bring other commodities, which *Galen* rehearseth in *lib. 2. de tuenda sanitate*. They must altogether abstaine from bathing if they can, and be content only with frictions and rubbings: for although bathing, because it doth heate, doth profite, yet, because it calleth forth humors outwardly, it bringeth perill of obstruction, specially when the body doth abound with excrements. And if the quartane be short, and not violent, it is not hurtfull in the intermission betwene the fisses, when the patients haile dayes be, if he vse his wonted exercises. As for the belly, if it can be by any meanes, it must be kept soluble, either with his accustomed meates, or with medicines mixed with them, or with clisters: first gentle and easie, and after sharper: for you must encrease the strength and sharpenesse by litle and litle, as the matter of the feuer doth concoct and digest by litle and litle: for at the beginning (as is sayd before) you must handle and order these feauers gently and easily. You may seeke examples of easie clisters out of the former chapters. A clister somewhat sharper, is this that followeth. *R.* mallowes, camomill, mercury, leaues of blacke violers, ana. *M.* leaues of fenie, the rootes of polipody, ana. *℥* v. harts tongue. *M.* i. Sect all these in sufficient quantity of water vntill the third part.

Diet.

Vinum.

Balneum.

Clister.

Piper.

Prouision for
the intrailles.

Vnguentum.

Prouokers of
vrine.Purgation of
melancholie.

Vomitus.

Vomite.

Then straine it and commixe with the licour of that decoction, the marrow of *cassia fistula*. $\mathfrak{z}$. *j. diascena laxatiua*. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . common oil. $\mathfrak{z}$. *iiij. mel rosarum*. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . salt gem. $\mathfrak{z}$. j and make a clister. Within certain dayes, giue to the patient *diatrion piperi* on; but because it doth heat vehemently, you may not minister it daily, whose making and vertue you must seeke out of *Galen in lib. 4. de sanitate tuenda*. Also (as *Galen* saith) the patient shall do rightly, if he drinke daily, onely pepper with water: for it heateth and dissolueth the grossenesse of windie spirites and vapours, and it extenuateth and digesteth the crude and raw humors, which are heaped and gathered vp together in the *hipochonders* and *sides*. And these things must be done from the beginning of the feauer, vntill it come to the vigour, force, and state. And if the sicke see me now to be in the vigour and state of the disease, then he must vse a thinner *digest* then he did before, or must do afterward, and you must command long quiet & rest to the patient, least nature being occupied about digesting of the matter of the disease, should be called from her office and worke. Afterward you must prouide and foresee the intrailles, which are wont to be swollen and stretched out, with viscos, rough and grosse humours, and also with abundance of windie spirites and vapours, which being dissolued and emptied out, the bowels wax soft and are loosened. Therefore you must annoint them with those things which can mollifie and loosen, as be ointments which are made of barley meale, seed of *apium*, rootes of *ireos*, rew, and such like. Among other annoint the left side with this ointment. *Rx* of oile of capers. $\mathfrak{z}$. *iiij*. oile of *ireos*, & of sweet almonds, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. *iiij*. seeds of *apium*, and of comin, rootes of *ireos*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j . waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. After these thiugs you must minister medicines which haue vertue and power to prouoke vrine, and not before this time: for if you minister such things before the inward members be free from obstructions, because those medicins be hote, they carie the humors downe with them, and do increase the obstructions. Fur to prouoke vrine, you must minister *musca*, wherein *dils*, or rew, or else *apium* hath bene sodden. If signes of concoction do appeare, the you must straight way vse purging medicins which can purge out melancholy: and you may not purge him once onely, but oftner, if the matter seeme to require it: for that melancholy cannot be brought out all at once, seeing the bodie is not able to suffer and beare so strong a purgation, as should purge out all that stubborne humour at once. You may seeke examples of such medicines as do purge out melancholy, out of the first, booke in the Chapter of Melancholioufnesse. But yer aboue other things, *Aetius* praiseth sweet wine infused in the inward part of *coloquintida*, but so that you commixe with it some *apium*, or *daucus*, to make it pleasaunt. After meate, you must prouoke vomite (if nothing let it) with white hellebore first comixed with radish, as is declared in the other bookes, which if it worke little or nothing, you must minister hellebore by it selfe. And if any man abhor from hellebore, let him vse this or such like medicine. *Rx* iuice of radish, or distilled water of it. $\mathfrak{z}$. *iiij*. *oximel simplex*. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij . commixe them and make them warme to drinke, but they which cannot vomite, must be purged downward, such be they that haue a straight and slender breast. After purging you must giue them *theriacas*, or somewhat that is of like vertue, as this is. *Rx*. *Liquoris cyrenaiici*, fine mirthe, pepper, of each like

like much, beat them by themselves, and commix them with the iuice of rew, and make pilles thereof, and minister the weight of ℥.ss. They that minister any of these medicines at the beginning of the sicknesse, or at all before the vigour, state, and force thereof, they make of a simple quartaine oftentimes a double quartaine, or without doubt they make the simple quartaine greater and more vehement: and of a double quartaine they make a triple quartaine, or else the double one is made greater.

CHAP. X.

Of a Quotidian Feauer.

DE QVOTIDIANA FEBRE.

QVOTIDIANA *febris intermitens*, that is, an intermitting quotidian fe- *Causa.*
 uer. It is engendred of putrified and rotten fleame being thrust of nature
 to the sensible parts of the body. It is called of the Greekes *amphimerina*, be- *amphimerina*
 cause it causeth a fit every day. But if glasse fleame which is the coldest of all
 other fleames, doth putrifie by it selfe the one halfe of it, that is, if the whole
 substance of it do not putrifie equally, but some parts of it do putrifie and some
 do not; then it engendreth a feuer called *Epialos febris*: in which the patient is *Epialos febris.*
 feuerous, and vehemently cold together, & at one present time he feeleth im-
 moderate heate and immoderate cold in all the parts of the body together.
 For part of that humor which is not putrified nor rotten as yet, being spread
 by all the veines, or in the rest of the body, engendreth the rigour and cold, but *Signa.*
 the other rotten parts of the humor engendreth the feuer. A quotidian feuer
 doth not inuade the patient with rigour and vehement cold by and by the first
 day, but in proceffe of time, it commeth rather like a cooling, then like a ri-
 gor. The pulse when the fit beginneth is inordinate and vnequall, slow, litle &
 weake. Neither also in the augmenting and increasing of the quotidian is
 there swiftnesse of mouing of the pulses, nor greatnesse, nor vehemency. The
 heate in this feauer is not so sharpe and vehement as it is in a tertian: for it
 neither burneth them, neither are they compelled to make naked their bodies,
 and to throw off their clothes, neither doth it compell them to breath much &
 oftē, & to blow out of their mouthes as it were a flame; nor to desire to drinke
 cold water, but it is moist and smokie, and commixed with much vapor. Also
 it is hardly kindled, and it consumeth a long time, vntill that by increasing it
 come to the force and state. Moreover, they that haue this feuer do not thirst,
 because not only the tounge, but also the whole body in this feuer is most moist.
 The vrines in quotidian feuers either be white, and thinne, and watery: or
 thicke, and troubled. There bursteth out no sweat at all in the first dayes, nei-
 ther is there any exact and perfect rest from being feuerous. For the feuer re-
 maineth each time almost the space of 18. houres. There chanceth also to the
 vomiting of fleame: and those things which are sent out by egestion, are col-
 der, moister, cruder, more watery, and more flegmatike. Also a quotidian fe-
 uer doth chiefly vex them that be moist and flegmatike of nature. Also it chan-
 ceth in a moist season, specially in winter that is cold and moist, and in old
 folke and children. Hereupon *Galen* writeth, that he neuer saw a young man
 that was cholericke and dry by nature, taken with this feuer: but they that be

*Potus ratio.**Curatio.**Unguentum.*

and most flegmarick, hauing a grosse substance of the body, and do liue an idle life, seruing their belly and giuen to dunkennesse, vsing bathing often, and specially after meat, they are soone taken with this quotidian feuer. Let the dyet in this feuer be altogether extenuating, cutting, and diuiding. Therefore you must now seeke such places, wherein we haue declared abundantly what kind of diet it should be. In the first daies, that is, when signes of cruditie and indigestion do yet appeare, the fleame must be diuided and cut, and the pores and passages that be stopped, must be scoured and clenfed. And therefore you must minister *oximel* because it doth scoure mightily, it cutteth and diuideth the glutinous and clammy humors, & it dilueth the pores from obstructions. And you must minister those things which prouoke vrine, that the fleame (being already extenuated and diuided) may the more readily passe by the conduites, and be emptied out. Therefore it is good to minister decoction of the roote of *apium*, parcely, *treos*, fennell, and such other like often rehearsed before, with *sirupus acetosus compositus*, and *mel rosarum*, and *sirupus è duabus radicibus*, and other that haue the vertue and power to extenuate, cut, and deuide. About the vigor and force of the feuer, you must take heed and haue regard to the stomacke, and specially to the mouth of it. Therefore you must prepare those things which being applied outwardly, may ad strength to the stomack, such as be, masticke, spikenard, wormewood, and such other like. Therefore before meate, vse this ointment. *Rx.* oiles of masticke, wormewood & nard, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. β masticke, cloues, and wood of aloes, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ v. cinnamon. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. with waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment, wherewith annoint the region of the stomacke. The stomacke being strengthened, you must compell vomiting, first by ministring of radish, then after, meates must be eaten, for so it lifteth vp the meates, and causeth the easier vomite. After he must vse medicines that do purge out fleame: for fleame when it is digest, may conveniently be purged. What medicines those be that can purge out fleame, it is euident in our other bookes: & this here sufficeth to cure a quotidian feuer.

CHAP. XI.

Of a Feauer Ethicke.

DE HECTICA FEBRE.

Hectica febris.

HECTICA febris in Latin, the feuer ethicke in English. It is a feuer wherin now also it is kindled in the massie, sound, and fleshy parts, and members. This feuer knoweth no paine, & they that haue it, do thinke that they haue no feuer, neither do they perceiue or feel any heat, seeing all the members of their body be equally heat (as *Galen* declareth abundantly in his booke *De inæquali intemperie*.) The feuer ethicke is ingendred and caused two waies. First for the most part, of burning feuers which haue continued so long, that in processe of time they consume the humidity and moisture that is contained in the body of the heart, or also if it resist more abundantly, then those feuers are not only ethickes, but also *marasmodos*; that is, consuming and melting feuers: for feuers being ingendred (the humidity yet still remaining) when they haue caught and occupied the body of the heart, hereupon they are specially kindled

led and inflamed like the flame of a candle with a match. And this is one way of ingedring of the feuer ethick. Another way of ingendring of them of, is this, when they begin of themselves by and by, being ingendred as diarie feuers be either of sorrow, or anger, or ouermuch wearinesse, together with burning of the heate of the Sunne. The feuers that be thus engendred, be not very hard to cure; but such feauers of these as be turned into consuming and wasting, which the Greekes do call *marasmos*, through the negligence and ignorance of Phisitions, if those feuers, be in their force and strength, and not as it were beginning still, it is not onely hard to cure these, but it is also impossible to remedy them. For the nature of them is hote and drie, so that the heart is in like case as the snuffe of a candle when it is very much burnt: for when it is much burnt, it will breake and dissolue, and through drinesse fall asunder, so that although you poure abundance of oile to it, yet you cannot cause a greater flame to be kindled: for the flame being small & weake, panteth alwaies vp & downe in it, and waxeth continually lesse and lesse, till it be altogether quenched out. Euen such is the feuer which is altogether *marasmodus* (that is) consuming. The feuer ethicke which turneth into *marasmus* or a consumption, is very ready & easie to know: for before you do consider the pulses & heat by touching them, you may see the eyes wonderful hollow, as though they were hid in some ditches, or furrowes, for then all the moist substance of them is exhaust and consumed so that you may see the bones of the eye-browes sticke out. Also there hangeth on the haire of the eye lids, dry gumme and filth, and vncleane affects, as is seene in them specially that go a long iourney in the dust, when the Sunne burneth hote. Also the vitall floure in them perisheth, and the skin of their forehead is dry and retched out, and their eye lids winke often as though they were sleepey, but their disease is not to sleepe, but is rather impotency and debilitie to watch. Also the flesh of their temples is consumed, so that they seeme hollow places, for what other things haue they but skin and bone? For, if you looke vpon their bare belly, it shall appeare to you, that neither bowell nor filme is left. The hypochonders and sides are pulled vpward to the breast. And if you touch their skinne, it is very dry, which if you take hold on it with your fingers and pul it vp, it is like the hide of a beast. The pulses be thin, hard, weake and often. The heate when you lay your hand first on him doth seeme weake: but a litle after it bursteth out sharpe, & gnawing more & more, if you hold your hand long vpon him. Also this shall be a great and vndubitate signe to you, when you do giue him meate, the heate is inflamed and increased, and the pulses are augmented in greatnesse & swiftnesse. It is called a feuer ethick, so long as naturall humidity and moisture is kept and reserued: but when it is to be doubted that there is left no more humidity and moisture in the body, then it is an absolute & perfect consumption, which is called in Greeke *marasmus*. For the cure of a feuer ethick before it come vnto a consumption, you must by all meanes coole it. And therefore the effect and summe of the whole cure doth consist in these points, that is, to coole and moisten, as well with those things that be outwardly applied, as also by them that are ministred inwardly. Therefore let the aire that the patient doth breath in, be cold and moist. And if it be not so by nature, make it so by art, as is taught before in the 6. Chapin

*Marasmus.**Signa.**Hectica febris.**Marasmus. Curatio.**Aer. Diet.*

Lac. j.

Potus.

Note.

Balneum.

the cure of the tertian. He must also vse meates that do coole and moisten, as broth of prisan, bread steeped a litle in cold water, the flesh of kids, sea-fants, birds of the mountaines, cocks stones, capons flesh, reare eggs, new cheefe without salt, and fishes of grauelly waters, lettuce, endiue, succorie, gourds, spinach, mallowes, and such like: cherries, proines, pomegranates, melons, figs and such like. He must also take milke, for that profiteth him maruellously, so that this feuer be not compounded and mixed with another feuer that is engendred of rottennesse of humors. Let his drinke be cold water, but specially if the sicke haue bene vsed to it before. Let him drink thereof moderately, or let him drink water wherein a litle cinamon hath bene sodden, or wine that is watered and thin. Moreouer it is good to them that haue this feauer to eate meat often in a day, that by that meanes they may beware & take heed that they eat not great abundance of meat at one meale, which vertue being weak should not be able to ouercome and digest. They must eschue moderate mouing, and all things that can resolue and weaken the strength. You may not minister any purging medicines to them that haue a feuer thicke, for purgations are hotter & vehementer then they are able well to suffer: but if the belly be more bound then it ought to be, you must loosen it with easie clisters that can coole and moisten, adding to them maitrow of *castia fistula*. You must minister such things within the body as haue power & vertue to coole & moisten. As among the cōpound medicines be these, sirupe of violets, of water lillies, and of tame endiue, *sirapus acetosus*, and such like. Also *diarrhodon abbatu*, *diatragacanthum frigidum*, *diapapauer* & such like. Of simples these be good, the iuices & distilled waters of lettuce, purslaine, tame endiue, and poppy. Among those things that are to be applied outwardly, bathes at all times are conuenient and profitable to them that haue this feuer: I meane bathes of sweete waters, to the which the sicke must be caried in a bed, or in a fine sheete, and let there be foure to cary the sheete at each corner one. The water of the bath must be most temperate: and also the patient must not tarie in it long, least any of his moisture within him should be drawne out by it: therefore in no case must he sweate in it. There be some that vse to seeth in the water of the bathe hearbes, as violets, mallowes, lettuce, floures of water lillies and such like: some other do seeth calues feet, or lambes heads vntill the flesh be sodden from the bones. Also you must beware, least any thing be powred on his head, seeing it is sufficient for it to be dipped twise or thrise in the water with the whole body, the sheete being let downe easily, and then againe lifted vp by foure young men which must carie him. Straight when he is brought from thence, he must be dipped al ouer once in cold water, and he may not tarie in it any time at all. They that haue this feuer and be brought into a bath, vnlesse they be dipped in cold water, it helpeth them nothing (as *Galen* saith.) By and by, as soone as he is drawne out of the water, let another sheet be readie, and cast him into that, and then into another. Then lay him in his bed, & first wipe him with sponges, and after with soft linnen clothes. And let them not handle him violently that do wipe him, but as easily as they can possibly. To conclude, after this he must be annointed with cold oiles, and with other moistning things. Among other, this liniment is good. *Rx* oile of violets. $\mathfrak{z}$ ss. oile of gourds. $\mathfrak{z}$ iij. new butter without salt,

swines

swines greafe, ana. ℥. j. ℔. commix the m, and make a liniment, wherewith annoint the whole body. Or adde to it muscilage of *tragacantha* ℥. ij. marrow of calves shankes. ℥. iij. waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Also oyle of water lillies, and of poppy, are good, and specially oyle of roses, which (as *Galen* sayth) doth maruellously moisten dried bodies. When he is annointed and clothed, you must bring him againe vpon a bed, or a sheete, into the place where he is fed, and you must nourish him with meates. Also it profiteth him to haue his hart cooled, and moistened with epithemes: as is this, R. waters of violets, water lillies, and lettuce, ana. ℥. iij. strong vinegar. ℥. ℔. red roses, all the saunders, ana. ℥. j. pouder of *diamargariton*. ℥. ℔. seed of purslaine. G. iij. saffron. ℔. ℔. commixe them and make an epitheme, and apply it to the region of the hart cold. Likewise it is good to coole & moisten the liuer thus. R. water of lettuce. ℥. ij. vinegar. ℥. j. *diarrhodon abbat*is. ℥. j. ℔. scraping of iuorie. ℥. ℔. purslaine. ℔. ℔. commixe them and make an epitheme, and apply it to the liuer. Also for them that haue the feuer ethicke, medicines are good which can coole and moisten, with their odour and sauour, as be flowers of water lillies, purslaine, violets, roses, and such like. Also you may find mo things that are good for the cure of the feuer ethicke, in the second booke, in the chap. of the ptiicke or consumption. And in curing of the feuer ethicke this onely must be your study and labour, that the body may not only be cooled and moistened with those things which be ministred inwardly, but also by things that be applied outwardly, and specially by annointing with oile. How much oile applied and annointed outwardly, specially doth helpe to the conseruation of the body, and to the restoring of strength, we are taught by the notable example of *Pellio Romulus*, who being aboute an C. yeares old (as *Pliny* telleth) *Diuus Augustus* his host asked him, by what meanes he kept that vigour, force, and strength of body and mind: he answered thus: *Intus mulsu, foris oleo*, that is, I keepe me moist with *mulsu* within, and oile I annoint vpon my skin.

Epithema cordis.

Epithema iecinis.

Odoramentum

Pellio Romulus.

CHAP. XII.

Of an Hemitric feuer.

DE HAEMITRITAE O SEV SEMITERTIANA.

Although there be diuerse kinds of compound feuers, as is declared in the beginning of this booke, in the explication of feuers: yet in this place we will only speake of, that feuer which is compounded of an intermitting tertian, and a continuall quotidian. And it is called in Greeke *hemitriticus*, & in Latine *Hemitriticus semitertiana*, in English halfe a tertian. It is so called because the whole feuer hath halfe the nature of the sayd feuers, each of them: by this example of this compound feuer, you may learne to cure all other compound feuers. Therefore an hemitric feuer is caused, whe putrified steame is commixed with rotten choler. It is declared before that a tertian in uaderth the patient with rigor and vehement cold, and a quotidian commeth with cooling of the extreame parts. Therefore the feuer which is compounded of them both causeth horroure and shaking for cold, which is lesse then the rigour of a tertian, and greater & more vehement then the cooling of a quotidian: so that it is a meane between them both. It is engendred two sundry wayes: for either two fits are ioyned

Causa

Signa,

R iij

together by and by at the beginning, and do invade the patient together both at once, or els each of them cometh separate from the other. Therefore when the tertian doth exceede the other, it causeth a more horrible feuer, and is full hath much rigour and vehement cold in the augmenting of the fit, & there is present greater heate and more burning, and choler is driven out either by vomiting, or by egestion, or it breatheth out a moist vapor, but when the quotidian exceedeth the tertian, then cold is in the extreme parts, and but a little shaking, and neither burning nor this fit doth vex him. But when the intermitting tertian, and the continuall quotidian be equal and of like force & greatness, the fit doth come with horour and shaking for cold. And when the quotidian is of greatest force, the pulses and horour waxe lesse and gentler: but if the tertian preuaile, by and by the pulses and horour increase and waxe greater. Note therefore, when a feuer is ingendred of an intermitting tertian and a continuall quotidian, being equal, of like force, greatness and strength, then it is called an exquisite *hemitriticus* ague: but if one feuer do exceede the other, then it is called an vnpure hemitritice. You may vnderstand by the former Chapters, how this feuer should be cured. For seeing an exquisite hemitritice feuer is ingendred of two feuers equally commixed, that is, a tertian and a quotidian, you must also vse a cure conuenient & agreeing equally to a tertian & a quotidian. But in an vnpure hemitritice, where there is most of choler, or most of fleame, you must also vary and change the cure, according to the humour and feuer that aboundeth. For if choler haue the vpper hand, you must chiefly vse the remedies which we haue declared in the cure of the tertian. But if fleame abound most, vse the things most that be declared in the cure of the quotidian. To conclude, you must most couet the cure of that which hath most need, and doth most abound, but so, that you do not altogether neglect the other. Therefore we need not in this place rehearse the remedies whereby this feuer should be destroyed and cured, seeing every man may learne the cure of them more readily according to the diuersity and nature of the humours, out of the Chapters of curing of the tertian and quotidian. Therefore if any man do first learne to know exactly & perfectly the curing of simple feuers, he shall also know how to cure compound feuers without any more labour: for the cures of simple feuers being knowne and considered, it is most ready to any man to cure compound feuers, so that here we shall not need to write severally of the curing of compound feuers.

CAHP. XIII.

Of the Pestilence.

DE PESTILENTIA.

Seeing that at this present time and day, there be euery where treatises of the pestilence made of diuerse new Authors, I neede not now long dispute here of it: but it shal be sufficient, if we do briefly declare the causes, signes, and curing of it, as we haue done in other diseases before. There be two especiall causes of the pestilence (as Galen writeth in *lib. 1. De differentiis febrium, Cap. 5.*) The one is, an infected, corrupted and rotten ayre. The other be humors gathered through naughty and corrupt diet of the body, which humors

Exquisitus hemitriticeus.
Non exquisitus hemitriticeus.
Curatio.

Causæ.

1

2

be

be ready to putrifie and rot, when a man taketh any light occasion to kindle a feuer of the corrupted aire. Therefore the chiefest cause why men are infected with the Pestilence, is breathing in of aire, without which no breathing thing doth prolong their life. For it beginneth for the most part of breathing in of aire which is corrupted of a putrifying and rotting euaporation. The beginning of corrupted aire, and of the rotten euaporation, is either a multitude of dead bodies not burned or buried, as it chaunceth in warres, or the euaporation of some pooles, fennes, or marshes in the sommer time. It chaunceth also sometime to come before immoderate heate of the aire; when the temperature of the aire is chaunged from his naturall state to immoderate heat, and moisture, of necessity the pestilence must follow. Hereupon Galen saith; that of all temperaments of the ayre, the worst is that which is hot and moist. Also oftentimes (as is aforesaid) naughtie and corrupt diet engendreth humors in the bodie that be easie and readie to putrifie and rotte, and so is the cause why such bodies are infected with the Pestilence. And then truly they specially haue the Pestilence, which vse a naughtie and corrupt diet, and so be full of all kinds of superfluities. Therefore it need not seeme maruellous, if sometime some one among many (which yet doth very seldome chaunce) be infected with this disease, the ayre yet not being pestilent and corrupt. For they that keepe a good & healthfull diet, and be without superfluities in their bodies, they take no hurt at all, or else very little hurt, although they be in the corrupt and pestilent aire, and may easily returne and be brought to their naturall habite and state. Hereby it is easie to answer them that aske, how it chaunceth that all men are not taken equally with the Pestilence, seeing euery one is constrained to breath in the pestilent aire. The first cause why some remaine vnhurt, is because they be not full of superfluous humiditie and moisture, but do vse moderate diet & exercises, & haue their bodie easie to breath out vapours. Another cause is, because all mens bodies be not of like disposition & affect. For dispositions of mens bodies are of many fundry formes, for some bodies are quickly overcome and infected, and do most readily suffer any cause: but some againe be insuperable, and cannot be overcome, nor will at all suffer the infection, or else very hardly. And therefore the greatest portion of ingendring of diseases, is the disposition of the bodie of him that suffereth the disease. For else all men, that taried long in the burning heat of the Sunne, or that vsed ouermuch mouing, or that were loden with wine, or inflamed with anger, or affected with sadnesse, should fall into a feuer. Also we do not deny, but that sometime great plagues & pestilence be sent of God for the grievous finnes and horrible offences of men, wherewith he punisheth the great offences of vs: whereof there be many euident testimonies in the Prophets, and specially in *Ezechiel cap. 5.* The time of the yeare in the which chiefly by nature the pestilence is rise and flourisheth, is the end of sommer, and the beginning of harvest or autumpe; for the both the aire & mens bodies are most apt to putrifie, corrupt & rot, for many causes. There be many & diuerse signes of the Pestilence, to come rehearsed of the new authors: among which signes, the first is the chaunging of the times of the yeare. The second is often Phenomina in the aire, specially in Autumne. The third is, when pushes, and

Whercon rottenesse beginneth.

Nota.

Plagues fram God.

The time of the Plague.

Signes of the aire corrupted.

1 2

3

Pocks, and measles do not only vex children, but also young folke of perfect age. The fourth is, when the winds are often in the South and in the West in Autumne. The fifth is a darke and troubled aire in Autumne threatening rain. but yet it doth not raine at all. The sixth is, if women conceiued with child, do suffer abortion for euery light cause. The seventh is, when in sommer after raine suddenly a great abundance of frogs of diuerse colours do gather together on a heape. The eight is, a great multitude of flies, wormes, and creeping things. The ninth is the dying of foure footed beastes and fishes. The tenth is flying of birdes from their neasts, leauing their egges there still. The eleuenth is the dearth of victuals and corne. The twelfth, (which is the most certaine signe) is a hot and moist temperature of the yeare. There be many signes, that declare whe one is already infected with the pestilence. The first is, if the outward members be cold, & the inward members burning hot. The second is heauinesse, wearinesse, & slouth of the whole body, & difficultie in breathing. The third is paine & heauinesse in the head. The fourth is carefulnesse of the mind & sadnesse. The fift is a maruellous inclination for the most part to sleepe, for sometime watching and raving do vex him. The sixt is a diuerse & frowning looke of the eyes. The seventh is losse of appetite. The eight is immoderate thirst & often vomiting. The ninth is bitternesse & driness of the mouth. The tenth is a pulse, frequent, smal, & deepe. The eleuenth is the vrine, for the most part troublous, thicke, and stinking like beastes vrine. Although sometime the vrine of them seemeth to differ little from the vrine of healthfull men, therefore by such an vrine, they that are vnskilfull of the other signes be quickly deceiued, suspecting no hurt, because of the good colour of the vrine. The twelfth, which is the most surest token of all, is, if there do arise and engender botches, behind the eares, or vnder the arme holes, or about the share, without any manifest cause, or also if carbuncles do suddenly arise in any member: for when they appeare, they betoken strength of nature, which being strong and mightie doth labour to driue the poison out of the bodie. Also they do declare, which members of the bodie being affected aboue other, do thrust out from them the venomous humors. For if they do appeare in the neck, they do declare that the veines be chiefly vexed: if vnder the armeholes, the hart, but if they appeare in the share, the liuer is most affected. But seeing that botches do not alwaies appeare, (which is most petillous and daungerous, for it betokeneth that nature is weake and feeble, and is not able to expell and driue out the venomous humors) you must haue respect to other signes & tokens, which be rehearsed a litle before. As for the cure, if the aforesaid signes do appeare, then if nothing do let it, by and by you must cut a veine on that side in which the pestilent botch doth appeare. If the botch doth appeare behind the eares, or about the chinne, or in other parts of the face and necke, you must let blood out of the *Cephalica* veine on the same side. If it appeare and come out vnder the armeholes, you must cut the innermost veine of the arme on the same side, it is commonly called *Basilica*: or if that veine will not appeare, take the middle veine. If the botch doth appeare in the share, you must draw out blood from the ankles of the same side. But if there doth appeare no botch outwardly, you must draw out blood from the same side where

there

Signes of one
infected.

1 2

3 4

5

6

7 8

9

10 11

12

Signifying
of botches.

Curatio.
Vene sectio.

there is felt greatest paine and heauinesse. But out of which veine you must let blood, the paine and grief of the members afflicted will declare to you well enough: for if the members aboue the brest be griued and afflicted most, cut the *Cephalica* veine. But if the parts beneath the necke be most griued and afflicted, cut the *basilica* or the middle veine: and if the neather parts be most vexed, you must cut the veine of the ham or anckles. And if nature be strong, and other things not letting, you must draw our blood abundantly. But if through age, or for other causes, you may not vse bloodletting, you must fasten cupping glasses to the necke and the shoulders, or to the backe, or to the legges. And if the Pestilence do inuade any man at his dinner time or supper time, when the stomacke is filled with meate, then he must vomite straight way. At the last, when the bodie and stomach is emptied, you must by and by minister some medicine that can resist poyson, that it may draw the poyson to it, and call it backe from the heart, for that is the propertie of such medicines. Among a great number of the which, this is prayse worthie, which is called *Electuarium de ouo*, which once a good and wise Emperour called *Maximilianus* did vse. Why I do preferre this almost before all other, is, because of his maruellous effectes and vertues which haue appeared often in diuerse sicke persons: and because it is easie to make, except the roote of white diptaine, which cannot well be gotten, for the which it is better to vse, the leaues of true diptaine, which may well be come by; minister of the aforesayd *Electuarie* to them that be of perfect age. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. and to them that be younger sometime. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. will suffice, you must dissolue it in water of roses, or endiue, or scabious: Also this medicine vsed is good to preserue a man from the Pestilence, if he take thereof daily the weight of a graine or two of barley, or the quantitie of a pease. Also the taking of this potion doth helpe much. *R. Theriaca Andromachi*. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. *Mithridatum*. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. *Bolearmoniacke* prepare. *Potio*. waters of Roses, scabious and buglosse. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. Commixe them. What powre and strength is in bolearmoniacke to driue away the Pestilence, *Galen* tea- *Bolus armo-* *macus*. cheth abundantly in *libro nono, de simplicium Medicamentorum facultatibus*. Where he writeth that in a great Plague that was in Rome, as many as drunke this medicine were quickly healed. Wherefore this medicine ought chiefly to be vsed in the time of the Pestilence. Moreouer this powder doth profite verie much. *R. the leaues of true diptaine, the roote of turmentill, the roote of pimpermell, zedoarie, gentian, roote of Betonica alsilia, commonly called tunica*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. $\mathfrak{ss}$. bolearmoniacke prepare. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. *terra lemmis*. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. *Aloes epatike, mirhe*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. $\mathfrak{ss}$. *saffron*. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. *masticke*. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. and beate them all to verie fine powder, and make a *Tritura*, whereof minister to the sicke. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. in rose water or sorrell water. When the patient hath taken some of the aforesayd medicines, lay him in a warmed bed being made with soft sheetes, and well couered with clothes, that he may there sweate foure or fise houres, or longer, according to his strength. But if by this meanes you can scarcely prouoke him to sweate, you must lay tyles being heate at the fire, to the feete of the patient, for these by reason of their heate will readily prouoke sweate. And in all the time that the sicke doth sweate, you must onely take heede, that he do neither sleepe, eate, nor drinke. After sweating, you must diligently wipe

*Aeris correctio**When meate
should be mini-
fred.**Of slepe.**Potio.**Comfortatives.**Electuarium.**Epithema.**Sacculus.*

off the sweate with verie cleane and fine linnen clothes. Then afterward let the sicke rise from his bed, if he wil, or if he can, and let him eschue the open ayre. Let the ayre of the chamber in which the sicke doth lye, be corrected, amended and purified with odoriferous things, and with sweete smelling perfumes; daily foure or five times. It is best for the sicke to chaunge from one chamber to another. Because the ayre of one chamber by the continuall taryng of the sicke in it, is much corrupted, and cannot easily be corrected and amended. Let the ayre of the chamber into the which the sicke shall remoue, be first corrected and purged with perfumes. What those things should be, we will declare afterward. Two or three houres after the patient hath sweate, giue vnto him the broath of a chicken, and that you must do often afterward, according to his strength: for the sicke must be nourished and refrested by little and little. Therefore it is good for him to eate often, and but verie little at once: for they that are thus fed, will sooner recouer againe then other. Also he may vse to eate the flesh of chickens, sodden with sorrell, or with iuyce of lymons, or else veriuice. Also the sicke must be kept altogether from sleepe the first day, by talke of the assistants, by rubbing of the extreame parts, by pulling of their eares, nose, and haire. For the which purpose it is not vnprofitable to dippe a sponge in verie sharpe vinegar, and hold it to the nose. If the patient haue vehement thirst, he may vse this potion. *R.* Iulep of violets. *℥. iij.* sirupe of the sharpe iuyce of Cytrons. *℥. j.* syrupe of sowen endiue. *℥. ij.* of the decoction of sorrell, scabious, and floures of buglosse, ten ounces, or so much of their distilled waters, conmixe them and make a potion. Also you must take the water wherein barley hath bene sodden a litle, and commixe with it iuyce of roses, or sorrell, or lymons, or of vnripe grapes, and minister it in steede of drinke. And you must minister medicines (specially if the strength be feeble) which can strengthen and comfort the heart, and other principall members of the bodie, as this is. *R.* conserues of violets, roses and buglosse. *ana. ℥. j.* Bolearmoniacke prepareate. *℥. j.* redde corall. *℥. j.* barks of Cytron apple. *℥. j.* Camphire. *℥. v.* with syrupe of the iuyce of sharpe Cytrons, as much as is sufficient, make an Electuarie or liquide antidore. Also you must lay vpon the region of the heart, (specially if the sicke do yet feeble heate about the breast) this Epitheme. *R.* waters of roses, buglosse and sorrell, *ana. ℥. iij.* powder of *Electuarium de gemmis*. *℥. j.* wood of *Aloes*, red saunders, the barks of a Cytron apple beaten to powder, the bone of the Harts heart, *ana. ℥. v.* saffron, sixe graines: commixe them all and make an Epitheme. But you must note that the Epithemes may not be applied, except they be made hote: and as soone as they are cooled, you must take them away straight way: for then they constrain and shut vp the pores, and so do bring vn- to the patient no small grieve. Therefore it is better to vse cordiall bagges, as this is. *R.* floures of red roses, water lillies, and of violets. *ana. ℥. ij.* of all the saunders, corall white and red, *spodium*, pearles. *ana. ℥. iij.* cinamon, cloves, the bone of the Harts heart, wood of *Aloes*, barks of the Cytron apple, saffron. *ana. ℥. j.* seede of sorrell. *℥. ij.* seede of purslaine, graine. *℥. iij.* beate all these into fine powder, and make two square bagges of silke, and apply

apply each after other being heat. Moreover you must altogether couet and labour, that the venimous humours may be entiled and drawne to the place where the botches appeare and burst out, and you must do it by letting too of cupping glasses, or by medicines applyed, that haue vertue and power to draw those humours, as this is. *R.* fat figges in number sixe, great raisins. $\mathfrak{z}$ ssale gemme. $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. honic. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. with oyle of cammomill, make it into the forme of an emplaister, and apply it hot to the botch. Or apply this plaister, which is much commended of all men. *R.* a great onion, and cut off the head of it, and picke out all the core within, then fill it with *Theriaca Andromachi*, adding to it iuyce of rew or sage, which done, stoppe the hole fast that is in the toppe of the onion with lute, and set the onion in the imbers to roast. And when you do thinke that it is roasted enough, pull off the barks of it, and then bray it in a mortar, vntill it be thicke like an emplaister, and apply it hot to the botch. You neede not to be afraid to apply *theriaca* to the botches, because of the authority of *Gentili* and *Palescus* and some other authors: for *theriaca*, and such like medicines against poison do not worke their operation by driuing the poison from them (as they being in a wonderfull errour do affirm) but rather they worke by drawing the poison to them (as *Galen* teacheth, in his booke *de theriaca ad Pisonem*.) Also this emplaister is good, for it helpeth much to the rotting of the botch. *R.* meale of fenugreeke, and linseed, of floures of cammomill. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ ss. rootes of *althea* and white lillies. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ ss. figges in number sixe, leaues of true diptaine. $\mathfrak{z}$ iij. rootes of valerian. $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. mustard seede. $\mathfrak{z}$ j ss. doves dung. $\mathfrak{z}$ ss. oyles of cammomill and lillies. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ j ss. make them into the forme of an emplaister or pultise. Also this is practised. *R.* of *emplastrum diachylon simplex*. $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. of gumme armoniacke, and *galbanum*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. bray them together, and bring them to the forme of an emplaister. But if the botch will not breake of himselfe by applying the aforesayd things, you must then lay vpon it goose dung dissolued in common oyle, or in oyle of cammomill. And this is sufficient to speake of here as touching the cure of them which be taken with the pestilence.

Now we will briefly expound, by what meanes a man may preferue and defend himselfe from the infection of the pestilence, which vexeth and infecteth in some certaine place or region. And seeing (as we haue declared in the beginning of this Chapter) it is euident that the pestilence is not caused, but through the breathing in of the pestilent and corrupt aire, there can not be a more present remedy to preferue one, then flying from the corrupt aire: for there is no other meanes to auoide the pestilent aire, because whether we will or no, we must draw in such aire, vnlesse we get vs away into some other place, where the aire is not corrupted nor infected, but pure and good. Which you must the rather and more quickly do, if the euill be greatly infectious. And you must flie farre off into such a place whereas the aire is knowne to be pure and good, and destitute of corruption: neither must you returne home againe from that place verie soone. Hereupon it is not rashly sayd of the common sort, that these three Aduerbes *Cito*, *longe*, and *tardè*, in the time of the pestilence, do more pleasure and profite then three shops very well furnished. Therefore they that may conveniently for their businesse fly away,

Outward medicines.

Emplaistrum.

Error of Gentili and Palescus.

Emplaistrum suppuratorium.

Alind.

A preservation from the pestilence.

Flight is the best remedy.

let them not suffer themselves to be perswaded by any meanes to tary in the pestilent aire: which if they do, they shall foolishly put themselves in daunger of pestilent death: but if you may not flie for vrgent businesse, and iust causes, then let your first care be, that the house in which you must tarye, be without all kind of stinke, and kept cleane from all filthinesse & sturtinesse. Let the windowes of it be iust shut, specially in cloudy and rainie dayes, that the pestilent aire enter not in. But if you will open them, see that they open vpon the East or North quarters, and do it when the Sunne is risen aboue the earth some houres. You must come abroad but seldome, and not except the element be cleare and bright: neither come then, vnlesse you haue first taken some medicine which is able to preserue you fro the infection. You must make fires daily in your houses, with oken wood, iuniper, *tamariscus*, laurell, or such like, that thereby the corrupt aire that is in the house, may be corrected and purged. For there is a matuellous vertue and strength in fire to amend and correct the rottennesse and corruption of the aire. Also you must strew vpon coales this powder following. *R. rosemarie. M. ss. sage, betonie, wormewood, marioram, organ. ana. M. j.* bray all finely, and make a powder. Or vse this powder. *R. of iuniper berries 3 j. mirrhe. 3. iij. frankensence and masticke, ana. 3. iij. ss. roote of benedicta, 3. j. rew. 3. ss. cipresse barks. 3. j. ss. roote of Angelica, lauender, ana. 3. ij.* beate all together, and make a powder. Let poore folke lay vpon quicke coales, iuniper cleft in small stickes, or powder of *Gallia moschata*, cloues, and such like. When necessity constraineth you to go abroad, carry this or such a like pomander with you. *R. Lapdanum. 3. iij. storax calamita. 3. ij. cinamon, mace, cloues, nutmegges. ana. 3. j.* wood of Aloes. *D. j.* spikenard. *D. ss. mirrhe, masticke, frankensence, ana. 3. ss.* muske and amber, ana. *gr. ij.* powder them and searce them, and with *storax liquida* and water of marioram, as much as is sufficient, commixe them, and make a *ponum odoratum*. In sommer time, let the aire be purified & corrected with cold things, as with floures of roses, violets, water lillies, vine leaues and branches, willow leaues, & such other like. Also sprinkle the pauement with water of roses, sorrell, and such like, or with cold water wherewith some vineger is commixed. Also it profiteth to smell roses, vineger, camphire, saunders, & such other like: or to smell to this pomander. *R. Lapdanum. 3. ss. storax calamita. 3. iij.* floures of water lillies, roses, and violets. ana. *3. j.* barks of the citron apple. *3. j. ss.* all the saunders, ana. *3. ss.* of maces and cinamon. ana. *D. j.* masticke. *3. j.* white poppie. *3. ss.* Camphire. *D. ss.* amber, muske, ana. *gr. ij.* bray and commixe them with *storax liquida* and rose water, and make a pomander. But seeing *Galen* saith, that one of the chiefest things which they that would be preferred from the pestilence ought to regard and take heede of, is that their bodie be for the most part without superfluities and excrements, and may well breath out the vapours. Truly there is nothing more to be eschued at such a time, then ouermuch deuouring and swallowing in gluttonnously of meat and drink. Therefore let their meates be altogether easie of digestion, and such as engender good bloud, and be not readie to putrifie and rot. And alwaies commixe with the meates that be eaten at that time, some vineger, or some other sharpe iuyce

Suffimenta.

A pomander.

Pila odorata.

Diet.

iuyce, as veriuycce, or iuyce of citron apples, or of lymons, or orenge. In sommer time he must vse for potherbes, buglosse, endiue, succorie, and lettuce: and in winter let him vse sage, parcelly, *apium*, marioram, balme, and hysope. He must abstaine from all fruits, vnlesse they be sharpe, as be pomgranates, citrons, lymons, orenge and such like, which are good for him to vse. Let his drinke be wine that is thinne and watery. Let euery man beware of strong wine that is vnalayed and new. To conclude, let his diet be altogether cooling and drying. Therefore he may not vse exercises but in a meane and in a temperate place, and in an aire being first purified, amended and corrected by medicines and perfumes. Therefore you must eschue common daunces openly, and also turnings, leaping, and whatsoeuer such like exercise there be that requireth often breathing in of aire. Therefore because of this also in the time of the pestilence he must eschue companies gathered together by magistrates by some open commandement for matters of the common wealth, as courts, sessions and such like. Let his sleepe, watchings, and all other things be moderate and in a meane. But he must sleepe in a chamber that is close, well stopped and shut, lest the pestilent aire should enter into it: the aire of which chamber may be purified and corrected with some perfume aforesayd morning and euening. He must vse sheetes that be pure and cleane, and that haue bene layed vp a while with odoriferous things. When he is awaked from sleepe let this be his first care and worke, to empty the body of superfluities and excrements. And you must onely take heede and beware, that the body be not costue at any time. Therefore if it do not of it selfe void out excrements daily, you shall prouoke them out with *pilule rufi*, or with a soft clyster, or with a suppositarie made for the purpose. When the body is emptied from superfluities and excrements, as well by the guttes as by the bladder, he must take some medicine that can preserue him from the infection of the pestilence, for the which there be many things before rehearsed. And if necessarie businesse do constrain you to go abroad openly, you may chew zedoarie, or root of angelica, or pimperl, or you shall smel to rew, for the sauour of it doth marvellously resist the pestilent aire. He must eschue all carnall lust, specially immoderate vsing thereof. After copulation, he must keepe him out of the open and infectiue aire. Bathes must altogether be abhorred, as a most present poison, specially common bathes, because when the pores of the body are opened by the heate of it, the pestilent aire doth readily creepe into the bodie. They that will vse a priuate bath, let them preserue and defend themselves most diligently from the corrupted aire, when they go out of the bath. But it is better and more wholesome to vse frictions at home in a rectified aire, and let bathes alone, but yet you may wash the head weakely with lie wherein hath bene sodden *asarum*, marioram, lauender, rose marie, betony, sage, cammomill, and such other like, but young men and such as abound with bloud, must in the time of the pestilence vse bloudletting: and that not onely once, but, (if nothing let to the contrary) bloudletting often doth profite much to preserue them in health, because it doth much coole the state of the bodie, and bringeth it to a moderate heate. Also you must purge the bodie (if need require) with purging medicines, and that specially in the spring time and autumn. As for per-

*Exercitium.**Excretion.**Venus.**Balneum.**Bloudletting.**Purgatio.*

- Preseruatines.* turbations of the mind, he must eschue sadnesse, anger, hatred, feare, great cares, and heauie thoughts, and he must vse ioy and mirth in a meane. Now it remaineth, that we describe medicines which can keepe and preserue vs safe from the infection of the pestilence: among which the pilles that are called *pilule nisi* or *pestilenciales*, or else *communes*, are principall and chiefe. *Rx* aloës epaticke two parts, saffron oriental, mirrhe. ana. part i. with white wine, or with water of scabious, make pilles, of which minister daily. *℞* j. and more or lesse according to the age and strength of the patient. These pilles because of the aloës and mirrhe in them, which do most resist putrefaction, they haue a maruellous efficacie & vertue against the infecting of pestilent aire. Also you may vse these pilles following. *Rx* aloes epaticke. *℥* iij. mirrhe *℥* j. *℞* agaricke prepare. *℥* j. saffron oriental. *℥* *℞* bolearmoniacke prepare. *℞* j. seede of Citron apples. *℞* iij. masticke. *℞* *℞* roote of pimperl. *℥* *℞* with rose water make 13. pilles of *℥* j of which minister one or two. Also you may vse that medicine that is commonly called *electuarium de nucibus*. *Rx* of walnuts in number 20. of fat figges in number 13. rew *M* iij of wormwood, *cotula foetida* & scabious. ana. *M* j. roote of *aristolochia longa*. *℥* *℞* roote of *aristolochia rotunda* *℥* j. *℞* of turmentill, *petasitū*, and pimperl. ana. *℥* iij. *℞* leaues of true diptaine. *M* j. of laurell berries. *℥* iij. of harts-horne burnt. *℥* iij. *℞* maces, mirrhe, bolearmoniack, true *terra lemnia*, ana. *℥* iij. salt of the sea. *℥* j. *℞* *nux vomica*. *℥* iij. floures of buglosse, *M* j. beate them all, and commixe them with *℔* ij. of clarified hony, and make a liquide medicine like a Loch. Also this powder is very good. *Rx* leaues of true diptaine. *℥* *℞* of the rootes of zedoarie, *tunica*, pimperl, and turmentill. ana. *℥* *℞* barks of the citron apple. *℥* iij. *terra lemnia* *℥* vj. bolearmoniack, *℥* j. mirrhe chosen, aloes epaticke. ana. *℥* *℞* saffron. *℥* *℞* mastick. *℥* j. *℞* liquorice, *℥* j. scabious and sorrell. ana. *℥* iij. red saunders. *℥* j. scraping of suorie, and *authera*. ana. *℥* *℞* the bone of the Harts heart, red corall. ana. *℞* j. seed of purslaine, gran. *℥* bray all finely and make a powder. If you will, you may make of these, lozenges, with sugar, and water of roses, and scabious, and minister daily of them. *℥* j. or more, or lesse according to age and strength. Also onely bolearmoniacke taken with vineger, is notably praised. Likewise *theriaca*, *mithridatum*, and such other are good, whereof there is plentie named of them that haue written of the Plague. We therefore here will make an end of speaking of this kind of euill.

The end of the fourth Booke.

THE FIFT BOOKE, CONTAINING THE CVRING OF TVMOVRS WHICH HAPPEN ABOVE NATVRE.

CHAP. I.

What that is swelling which happeneth besides nature, which commonly is called by this generall name Apostema: and the sifting out of the true definition, and of the division of the same, according to the opinion of the Neoterickes.

THES E Tumours which haue their being besides nature, the later sort both of Phisitions and Chyrurgians, and not they onely, but almost the vniforme consent of old writers, haue comprehended vnder this name *Apostema*: whereas indeede *Apostema*, both by *Galen* and all other Grecians, hath bene reputed but as one kinde of those swelling tumours, which commonly are sayd to chaunce besides nature, which the Latines haue verie fitly termed *Abcessus*, and the crew of younger Phisitions do call it *exitura*, deriuing the originall of the word from the interpreter of *Auicene*: of the which, as also of all other kindes we will intreate particularly in his seuerall Chapter. Althoug indeed it hath pleased some of the later sort to make *Apostema* as the *species* or *differentia* of those tumours besides nature, appointing it to be diuerse from that which they call *exitura*, and also from that other kinde *pustula*. For vnder the name of *Apostemes*, they will conclude and place those tumours onely which being lifted vp into a great bignesse, do fetch their procreation from the influence of naturall humours (as they terme them) whereupon they call them *vera Apostemata*. Therefore when *Apostema* is taken for the *genus*, comprehending vnder it all the tumours besides nature, by *Auicene* and his followers it is thus commonly defined: An *Apostema* is a disease compounded of three kindes of maladies, all aggregated into one bignesse, which definition they do affirme to be essentiall, consisting (as they say) of *genus* and *differentia*, which do verie sufficiently explaine the nature of that which is defined, appointing this word disease to be the *genus*, & the other words which are annexed, do stand to manifest the difference of other the like infirmities,

Apostema.
The common definition of, Apostema.

Three kinds of
diseases appoin-
ting the essence
of tumors be-
sides nature.

Accidentall
definitions.

Definitio pri-
ma.
Secunda.
Tertia.

A perfect defi-
nition besides
nature, taken
out of the wri-
tings of Galen.
The diuision of
a tumor besides
nature into his
species after
the opinion of
the later sort.

which do happen by the composition and construction of the instruments: All which distinctions and diuersities, *Galen* doth recite in his booke intituled *de morbo & symptomate*. But these three kinds of sores, which in that swelling besides nature, commonly called *Apoſtēma*, do concur establishing the essence of one onely disease, are these: intemperature, which they also call an euill complexion, immoderation, whereby they intend a sinister composition, and the solution of that agreeing vnitie which nature affordeth to euerie bodie. To which three kinds, the Greekes haue assigned three opposite and fit termes, calling the first *δυσκρασία*, the second *ἀσυνεχία*, the third *συνεχέας ἁρμῶν*: but they bring also many other descriptions rather then definitions of this *Apoſtēma*: for definitions I dare not terme them, when as they do not concur with that which is defined, neither do they serue either to the sufficient explication of his nature, or the constitution of his essence: which they very well knowing, are content to let them go vnder the name of accidentall definitions. One of them they haue desumed and taken out of *Galen* his booke which he wrote *de tumoribus præter naturam*. An *Apoſtēma* or tumor besides nature is one of those things which happening vnto the bodie, doth inflate that part which it occupieth, to the extremeſt dimension. This definition they haue extorted out of *Galen* his wordes, which he set not downe as an exquisite definition, but as an ordinarie assertion. You may fashion (if you please) manie such definitions; as this for one: An *Apoſtēma* is an increment exceeding naturall constitution: or this: an *Apoſtēma* is a tumor, in the which the parts haue departed from their naturall state & habite in quantitie and bignesse. Whereas *Galen* in lib. 13. *Therap. method.* hath these wordes: In this thirtieth part of our whole worke, we will begin to discourse of those tumours happening besides nature, in which the parts haue forsaken their naturall constitution by becoming more big. So that you seeing the slender weight of these definitions, must annexe this particle, *actiones lædens*, hurting the duties of the bodie, or thus, inducing an euident detriment to the actions, or else they will not be absolute or essentiall. for euerie tumor making distention or swelling in length, breadth or profunditie, beyond the ordinarie constitution of nature, either in all the bodie, or in any part thereof, for euerie excrement or greatnesse exceeding nature, must not according to the vulgar acception be named, either *Apoſtēma*, or a swelling besides nature. For (as *Galen* sayth in his booke *de tumoribus præter naturam*) such like augmentations may befall not only to the diseased, but also to the healthfull, as well in the whole bodie, as in any member of the same. For grosse men, although they be enlarged, and as it were distended both in breadth and profunditie, yet they haue not this distention besides nature, but (as he saith) onely not naturally: for they haue not yet passed the bounds of nature, neither are the actions and duties of their part maimed or annoyed, which is the border of those increments which are besides nature: and those tumours which abide in those parts which are yet sound and without the taste of griefe, may well be said to be aboue and beyond nature, but not besides nature, as for example: if both the teats, or one of them onely be maruellously increased or inflated, yet so that his substance be free from all annoyance, this cannot appositively be said to be besides nature, but onely beyond

yond nature. Therefore if you desire an absolute definition of this tumour which happeneth besides nature, collected out of the writings of *Galen*, you shall thus define it. A swelling besides nature is an increment surpassing the ordinarie habite of nature, bringing with it a maime to the actions thereof. But such like tumours besides nature are wont to be diuided into three kinds by *Guido* and those of his age, into impostumes, abscessions, or pushes or vlcers. Impostumes they call great tumours, in which the matter whereof it springeth, doth offend in plenty or quantity: pushes are those little tumours (which they call *Bothor*) in which, the substance whereof they arise is troublesome rather in qualitie then in quantitie yea and in them there lurketh a poysonous venim (as they say:) but the abscessions are those tumors which the *Laines* call *Abscessus*, and of the Greekes may well be named *ἀποστήματα*, as we prooued before: but let it be lawfull for euerie man to impose what titles or names they will, so that (as *Galen* sayeth) they do not swarue or stray from the naturall meaning of the things themselves: but leauing all the scrupulous and Scholerlike contentions, which some do vse in the intreatie of this subiect, as impertinent to our purpose, I will orderly set downe the branches of all the tumours or impostumes (if so you will terme them) which happen besides nature: and first we will begin with inflammation.

Apostemata.
Pushes.

Exitura.

CHAP. II.

*Of the differences of those tumours which
happen besides nature.*

DE DIFFERENTIIS TUMORVM QVI PRÆTER
NATVRAM INCIDVNT.

THERE be many and sundry differences of tumors besides nature, which are commonly called by this generall name *Apostumes*: the differences whereof, of the later Chyrurgians are obserued, to proceed either from the substance of the sore, or from the matter thereof, or from the accidents, or from the affected parts, or else from the efficient causes. The differences, which they desume from the substance, are supposed by *Avicene* and his sect to be two, either the greatnesse of the swelling, or the littlenesse thereof. Amongest the bigge tumours, they do reckon *Phlegmone* (which appeare commonly in fleshy places, which are fit to be distended) and *edema, erysipelas*, and *scirrhus*, which all do grow vp to a great bignesse and quantity. Little tumours are called of them little eminences or appearings, or breakings out called pushes, which are commonly seene in the skin, and the vttermost parts of the body, as the Greekes leprosie, the scabbe, the ringworme, and such other like, of the which we will speake more at large hereafter. The matter of the aforesayd tumours are the foure humours, as well naturall, as not naturall (that is to say) fleame, melancholy, choler, and those humours which are altogether besides nature, sometime the soundnesse of certaine bodies, and sometime a yelow or pale humour; the handling of all which differences we will referre

*The diuision of
a tumour into
his differences.
From whence
the difference
of tumours be-
sides nature
are taken of
the later
sort.*

Substantie.

Materia.

Accid entia.

Part affecta.

*Causa efficien-
tes.*

*From whence
the difference
of tumours a-
bout nature do
come & arise.*

Emphysema.

*Calidi humo-
res.*

*Tumoris fri-
gidi.*

*Tumores se-
rosi.*

*Tumores
complicati.
One euill see-
meth to haue
affinitie with
the other.*

vnto another place. The symptomes or accidents, which are commonly incident to these tumors are, griefe, heat, softnesse, hardnesse and such like: from the which they will deriue some differences: but those which they take from the members and from the affected parts, are *ophthalmia*, the inflammation of the eye, the squince, the inflammation of the throat, *phyma*, *phrygellum*, and those inflammations which we terme *glandula* and *bubones*. But the efficient causes from the which certaine differences be borrowed, are congestion and fluxe, and *crisis* (that is to say) iudgement thereof, which happeneth in diseases: there be also certaine other causes both internall and externall, whereof we will dispute more copiously & earnestly in that which followeth. But yet truly all diuersities and differences of these kinds of swellings chancing about nature, haue their beginning from the nature & substance (which prouoketh the swelling) of that which floweth (as witnesseth *Galen* in his booke which he wrote of tumors hapning about nature.) Likewise in his 2. booke that he wrote *ad Glaucon. cap. 13. meth. med.* in which places he declareth that the variety of all swellings which are about nature, doth arise of the nature of that which floweth: for when, sayth he, a flatuous matter hath more free access, then also the tumors are made more flatuous: but they are more like vnto *phlegmone*, whe as blood aboundeth: as likewise *Erysipelas*, when melancholy hath his course: and they be also more vexed with *adema*, when fleame or reume descēding frō the head doth raigne. Also they be grieved with the disease *Scirrhus*, when either a thicke or too cold humor is settled in some part thereof. Therefore all tumors do chance (as *Galen* affirmeth) besides nature, which proceede either of humors, or of a flatuous and windie spirit, which is gathered sometime vnder the skin, sometime vnder the thin filmes, that cover the bones, sometime in the belly, sometime in the intrailes, oftentimes in the midst of these, and of the *peritonaeum*. The Greeks call it *Emphysema*, and *Auicē* termeth it a windie *apostema*. If such swellings happen of humors, then they are either hot or cold, or mingled together. Hote tumors come of the best blood (that is to say) which is perfectly ruddy, & of a meane soundnesse, & moderat quality, & then the Greeks call it *phlegmone*, the Latins *inflammatio*: or they proceed of yellow choler, or of burning & thin blood, or else of those things which be hotter the blood or choler. They terme this euill *Erysipelas*, but these name it *Sacer ignis*. But cold swellings are prouoked either through thin fleame, & then the Greeks call it *adema*, but our Physicians terme it *laxus tumor* the interpreter of *Auicē* *indimia*; or also it is caused through the humour of choler, or through thicke, cold and clammy fleame. They call this *Scirrhus*, the Latins *durities*, the Arabians *sephirum*. Also swellings sometimes do chance by reason of a late taking away superfluous blood, as hereafter shall be declared. Tumors are said to be mingled when such kind of humors tempered together, & if one maisteth the other, frō that which exceedeth in the mixture, is the name giue to the swelling, as in blud ruling choler, we will call *phlegmone* the principall to be *Erysipelatode*, and also because melancholy gouerneth, *Erysipelas* is said to be *phlegmonades*. Now of other mixtures there is the like interpretatio, both *Scirrhus phlegmonosus* with *phlegmone scirrhosa*: & *adema phlegmonosum* with *phlegmone adematosa*. And after this example you shal name the other tumors, although there chaeceth comixtion together of 3. or foure

four humors at once. Moreouer if the humors be of like force, & equally incorporated, so that the one cannot ouercome the other, then we will name the tumors by the coupling together of those humors which they stirre or raise vp. As if blood be equally mingled with choler, that euill may be called, by reason of their ioyning together *phlegmone* & *erysipelas*, or (as *Galen* hath it) it may be termed a meane in the kind and nature of *phlegmone* & *erysipelas*. These truly be the chiefe swellings & tumors which are recited in *Galen* by the flowing of humors (that is to say) *phlegmone*, *erysipelas*, *adema*, *schirrhus*: vnto the which innumerable other tumors exceeding the measure and bounds of nature, are reduced & comprehended vnder them, although they haue chose to themselues diuers names according to their sundry causes. Therefore there pertaineth vnto a kind of *phlegmone*, *phlygethon*, which is called *parvus* (*Celsus* being the author) but of our men *phyma* & *tuberculum*: also it is named of the same *Celsus* *terminthion*, or *Oribatium*, the kinds or species of *phyma*; but of *Aetius*, *phigethlion*: also they be called *dothienae*, which *Celsus* doth call *furunculi*, *felons*. Likewise *gangrena* of some member, *regio* (that is to say) *mortificatio*, but not absolute, & also *sphacelus*, which is called of the Latins *syderatio*, and of *Auicenna* *astachilos*. *Carbunculus* also is called of the Greekes *Anthrax*, whereof *Auicenna* writeth in the chapter *de pruna & igne persico*. But vnto *erysipelas* are referred *herpeter*, which in kind be two manner of wayes (that is to say) *miliars* and *exedentes*, biting and gnawing, which the Greekes do call *ερυσιπelas*. He which expoundeth *Auicenna* hath called both the kinds *formica*, & he being deceived with the likenesse of the name, hath mixed them in the same Chapter by great oversight, which those verruce which the Greekes call *myrmecia*, the Latines *formica*: *Celsus* seemeth to haue comprehended those *herpetes* vnder the name of *ignis sacer*: but the Chyrurgians of later time haue numbered them among the cholericke pustules (as they terme them.) There commeth also of choler almost all those diseases called of the Greekes *phlyctene*, and therefore they belong vnto *erysipelas*, whereof *Auicenna* doth intreat in his chap. *de vesicis & inflammationibus*. Vnto the tumors caused of fleame (that is to say) vnto *ademata*, are referred certain tumors comprehended of the Greekes vnder the name of *apostema*, which be called of *Auicenna*, *modi*, of *Haly Abbas*, *sela*, and *dubeleta phlegmatica*, of the Latines *abscessus*: whereof there be diuerse kinds according to the diuers matters contained in them. Moreouer in *Galen* there be three kinds of *abscessus* chauncing very often, whereof euery one hath borrowed his proper name of the Greeks: those be *atheromata*, *stratomata*, *melicerides*, which indeed be called after the likenesse of bodies contained in them, as we will declare hereafter more at large. There also is a kind of *apostema*, that is, of *abscessus*, wherein are other things contained, which do represent not only the properties of humours, but also of certain sound bodies: but these (saith *Galen*) chance very seldome. And of these also we will speak hereafter when we shall intreat of abscessions. But now vnto the said kinds of *abscessus*, there appertaine certaine name of tumors being deuised of the later sort, & neuer as yet found out amongst ancient writers, as *testudo*, which is a soft swelling cleauing to the whole head of a man, and *talpa*: the one seemeth to belong vnto the latter sort *atheroma*, the other vnto *melicerides*. But vnto *stratomata* doth belong a certaine swelling without paine, which they call *nata*, or *napta*, whereof we will speake

The chiefe tumors that are caused of flowing humors.

What tumors do associate phlegmone.

Erysipelas of tumors.

Edematous tumors.

Certaine new names of tumors given of Physicians.

- Testudo.* in his place. Hitherto also do pertaine the euils called of the Greekes *Ganglia*, of Auicene *glandule*, which do differ from the aforesaid *nodis*. There cometh also of fleame that which the common sort call *Scrofula*, and therefore they are reduced vnto *adematata*. These be called of the Greekes *cherades*, of the Latines, *strume*. Notwithstanding Galene in a certaine place amongst the diseases nam'd *sirghi*, doth take it for *durities*. Also vnto *edema* is referred in Galen that kinde of *Hydrops*, which is named of the Greekes, *leucophlegmatia*, and *hypsarca*. But the swellings or tumors which pertain vnto choler, and which be comprehended vnder the sayd *Scirrhus*, are *Cancer*, which of the Greekes be called *carnici*, and *carcinomata*: Notwithstanding Celsus maketh a difference betweene *cancer*, and *carcinoma*, that he might say, that it did come and proceede by little and little of those things which do chaunce outwardly, and that it is engendred within (some member being corrupted.) The same Celsus deuident *cancer* into many partes or kindes (that is to say) into *erysipelas*, *gangrena* & *ulcus nigrum*: of this kind also is *elephantus*, or *elephantia*, or *elephantiasis*, called of the common sort of Phisitians *lepra*, and of some *sancti Lazari morbus*. Therefore the name of *lepra* significth with Auicene and with the vnllearned company, a most grieuous and deadly disease, when yet with *Gal. Paul. Ægineta*, & with other Græcians it is counted but a light grieffe, not much differing from that which we call *scabies*, which is called of the same writers *Psora*. Among this hard swelling kind of tumors, are accounted the diseases called in the Latin tongue of the interpreter of Auicene, *verruce*, which be swellings like vnto little hillocks appearing in the skinne, whereof they haue this name, being called of the common sort *porra*. To this kind also may be referred *myrmecia*, as if one should call the *formicule*, and *acrocordones*, which of our countrymen are termed *penfiles verruce*, and *clauus* also, which in forme is like to a hard round pillar called of the Greekes *ἄκρος*, of Auicene they are called *almismar*, *Thymion*, or *thymon* representing the knobby tops of the herbe thyme. Auicene seemeth also to haue giuen it this name *tuſum*, or (as another translation hath it) *tarsesū*. Also among the diuerse kinds of *verruce*, there be euils called of Auicene *cornua*, so called, because they being very long, are turned again crooked like vnto hornes. In like case also there be *calli* which the Greekes call *καλλοί*, these are engēdred by means of the skin being obdurated & hardened through much labour. Vnto choler also there seemeth to pertaine this euill, which the Græcians call *draconion*, the Latines *dracunculus*: according to the liuely similitude or likenesse of that name, Auicene calleth it *vena medeni*, Haly Abbas, *vena sanioſe*. Whereof *Paulus Ægineta* intreateth *cap. ultimo. Lib. 4.* This disease is not very rise with vs. Besides these tumors which we now haue rehearsed, there chaunce other also, affecting oftentimes the superficial parts of the body (that is to say) certain smal appearings, which they call *pustula*, and *bothor*. Which although they differ both among theſelues, & also from those tumors which we haue aboue recited, yet they are caused of the same humors, of the which also they are now called great tumors. Therefore they onely seeme to differ frō the in respect of their greatnesse and smalnesse. But that such litle tumors (which truly a Chirurgion ought not to be ignoraunt of) might appeare most manifest, and easie to be conceiued of euery man, I haue thought it expedient and

and a thing worthy the labour, to set downe in this place the names of them both in Greeke and Latine, and also their barbarous title, with a certaine rude description thereof, as we haue already done in the greater. Therefore that we may enter into the matter it selfe, there are of the kind of pustules or pushes, *Lepra*, so called of the Greekes, and retaining the same title amongst the Latines, and *Psora*, called of the same writers *scabies*, being truely diseases verie neare of affinitie among themselues: for there is roughnesse and sharpenesse of the skin, with itching and pricking in the body, coming of the same humour (that is to say) of choler. Notwithstanding they differ in this, because *Lepra* doth consume the skinne with manifest scales some- *Lepra*. what deepe, as it were in a circle: but *Psora* doth onely hurt the outward *Psora*. part with diuerse formes, and doth vnloose a certaine scurfe of the body. Hitherto also doth pertainethat light infection of the skinne, called of the Greekes *Lychene*, of the Latines *Impetigo*, in English the ring-worme, and *Lychene*. commonly of some (as *Manardus* reporteth) they be called *volatica*. This chaunceth by reason of the mingled putrifaction of wild blood being thinne and sharpe, with other that is thicke: and very often and easilie it doth turne it selfe (as *Galen* affirmeth the same) into the aforesayd euils (that is to say) into *Lepra* and *scabies*, which they call *Psora*. Yet there are some which thinke, that that which the Greekes call *Lepra*, is called of *Celsus*, *Impetigo*. But truely seeing he doth write specially of *Impetigo*, appointing foure kinds *Foure kinds of* thereof, lib. 5. *sua medicina*, it is evidently apparant, that he meant some o- *Impetigo*. ther thing by this word *Impetigo*, then *Lychene* amongst the Greekes, seeing that truely we neuer reade in any Greeke Authour, that there were so many kindes of *Lychene* euer agreed off or acknowledged. Therefore if we will with *Galene* speake properly, *Lepra* and *Lychene* or *Impetigo*, cannot be one & the *Impetigo*. same euill: other wise the same should be chaunged into it selfe. That I may therefore draw the whole matter into few words: when the skinne is lightly infected with an onely roughnesse and itching, that is called in Greeke *Lychene*, but in Latine *Impetigo*. But when the grieue waxeth worse, it changeth the name together with the forme. But if *Lychene* doth cause manifest scales, and doth pierce the skinne somewhat deeply, it is properly called *Lepra*. But *Lepra*. if it be stretched out onely by the outward *superficies*, and doth cause brannie or scalie bodie, it is called *Psora* of the Greekes, of vs it is called properly *Psora*. *scabies*. Although this word *scabies* doth extend very farre, commonly also a- *Scabies*. mongst the Phisitions of late time, who do name all the euils of the skinne to be *scabies*. But they speake very improperly, for the pure and true *scabies*, so called of the Latines, is without all doubt that disease which is called of the Greekes *Psora*, of *Auicene* also *Albura* and *morphea*, cleane contrarie to the opinion of some. For that which is said of him and almost of all the Phisitions of Affricke to be *Albura*, is named of the Greekes and of *Celsus* also *Leuce*. *Albura*. But amongst them it is called *Morphea*, among the Greekes *Alphon*, in which *Leuce*. disease the whole flesh is not affected, but onely the externall parts of the bodie, euen as though (as *Galene* saith) it were set about with certaine scales. But these *Alphi* (as it is in *Galen*) in their kind are of two sorts, that is to say, *Alphon* is of white, which come of fleame: and blacke, which proceede from a melanchol- two sorts.

Vitiligo.

like humour. But these things we now haue spoken of, being led by the consequence of things. For neither *Lence*, nor *Alphi* themselves are accounted amongst the tumours besides nature, but rather among the evils of the skinne. Which things although they hurt very litle, yet because they do dishonest and bring shame, they are wont to be for the most part a greater heauinesse and wearinesse (especially vnto women) then many other diseases which truly do hurt, but yet they be secret. Both these evils (that is to say) *Lence* & *Alphon*, *Celsus* hath comprehended vnder the name of *vitiligo* (making three kinds thereof) although our students of phisick, turning Greeke into Latin, do conuert *Lence* in all places into *Vitiligo*, which would more aptly agree, if it were put with his epithete or addition, as to say *alba vitiligo*. *Vitiligo* therefore, if we will comprehend it vnder any certaine head or kind, is a filthy colour of the skin, proceeding from an euill habit of some part of the body, which could not well receiue any nourishment to it selfe. For this euill chancreth through the default of the nourishing facultie, whereof some do constitute two kinds, the one which doth infect the skin onely with certaine markes, which do cleaue fast vnto it like vnto litle scales: the other which goeth in somewhat deeper, so that it toucheth the very flesh, and colour in the haire: for in it there ariseth gray haire, like vnto a certaine kind of mossinesse: this is gathered together of vicious and glutinatie fleame, but both of them do defile & staine, either with their white, or especially with their black colour. The first species, which is aloft & superficial, whether they be white or black, it is called of the Greekes *Alphas*, by the same name (as before) because it changeth the colour of the skin, for *ἀλφει* (whereof *ἀλφει* is deriued) signifieth amongst the ancient Greekes to change. *Auicenna* calleth it *Morphea*. But the other kind, which we haue declared to pierce somewhat deeper, is called of the Greekes, and of *Celsus* also *Lence*, and of the rest of the Latines *alba vitiligo*, & *Auicenna* *albara*. *Haly Abbas* onely among the Arabians calleth *lepra*, a filthy disease which is hard to be cured, yet he doth not declare it to be pernicious and deadly, who hath not accounted it altogether as a light thing (as the Greekes affirme it) and litle differing from a scabbe: neither (as *Auicenna* thought) pernicious and grievous, but onely lothsome and filthy. Whereby we may coniecture, that litle credite is to be attributed to words or names, vnlesse the matter be thoroughly discovered. For one and the selfe same word by varietie of Authors, hath enforced to uphold many diuerse and different significations, as in their Commentaries doth euery where appeare. But we haue spoken by the way of the evils and defecations of the skinne, onely that the confusion of things might be eschued, which happeneth by wordes misvnderstood. Therefore omitting these things, we will returne to our purpose, and with as much breuitie as we can, we wil dispatch the discourse of the residue of swelling sores, among which, besides those which we haue rehearsed and touched already, are reckened by the Greekes, *Ionthi*, *Epinyctides*, *Hydroa*, *Psidracas*, *Exanthemata*, *Celsi papule*, and *Plinij mentagra*. *Ionthi* are litle swellings and those hard which arise in the outward skinne and superficies of the face (as *Paulus* and *Galen* thought) proceeding from a grosse humour, which are either resolu'd, or else ripened by a litle matter which springeth with it. The Latines call them *vari*: *Galen*

*Small credit to
be giuen to
words or
names.*

Ionthi.

len maketh mention, libro 5. De medicam. secundum locos, of an affect which he calleth *Iomthosus affectus*, which he saith is the foundation and beginning of *Elephantiasis*, vnder the which disease he seemeth to comprehend the third and fourth kinde of that which *Celsus* nameth *Impetigo*. *Epinyctides*, (as *Celsus* supposeth) are pestilent pushes either of pale colour, or of a blacke colour, or of a white hew, not exceeding the bignesse of a beane, arising either in the legges or in the fecte. About them there is alwaies a very vehement inflammation; and when they are opened, there is found a very thicke and clammy exulceration within: his colour is like vnto his humour, but the grieve greatly surpasseth the bignesse of the sore, which in quantitie surmounteth not a beane. They borrowed their title from the night, either (as *Celsus* why they be thought) because that in the night time they pricked and molested more grievously, or because they most commonly arise in the night. *Plinie* termeth them *Epinyctides*. *Plinie* termeth them *Epinyctides*. The Arabians cal them *essere, sere, or faire*, which words explaine the forenamed nature of the sore. Those which are called of the Greeks *hidroa*, the Latines *sudamina*, & *Plinie* *papule sudorum*, *Auicene* *planta noctis*, & *almanforus*, & *alhasaphum*: whereby it commeth to passe, that *Epinyctis* doth much differ from *Auicene* his *planta noctis*, although the Greeke word *Epinyctis* doth draw his originall from the night. But these *sudamina* (as *Galen* saith libro. 4. *Aphor.* 21.) are reckened among those kinds *Planta noctis*. of pushes or whelkes which sticking in the very superficies of the body do pricke and shoote, not much vnlike to our common vlcers, and they come (as their name doth declare) by many bilious sweates, which biteth the skinne and maketh it to itch and pricke like vlcers. But this affect is common to boyes and young men, and to those which are cholericke, but in the time of heate: but it is so easie to be cured, that of it selfe without any ayde it will heale, ripening with a white toppe. But *Auicene* thinketh that these *desudations*, by their description, agree rather with *Celsus* his *exanthemata*, the with *Galen* his *sudamina*. But he who will obserue the nature of the wordes, will think that *Auicene* his *desudations* may well be the Greeks *hidroa*, which the Latins call *sudamina*. But we must not follow the names so much among the Barbarian & Arabian writers, but the genuine & sincere descriptions of the things themselves. *Psydaces* or *psydacis*, are pushes, which abiding in the very vttermost part of the skin, are resembled to bladders excited by fire, which are called *phliclene*. These rise specially in the head. *Psyclacion* is not truly read in *Celsus* for *Psydacis*. Those pushes which grow in the skin first comming by thicke humors stuffed in the skinne, which are commonly called *morbili* and *variola* of *Galen*, because they *Morbili*. swell and waxe bigge, as it were the bud of a floure, they are called *exanthemata*. *Variola*. but of *Hippocrates*, because they doe breake out of themselves, they are termed *effthymata*. For *αἰδος* wherof *exanthema* is deriued, signifieth a floure, and *εἰς ὕδωρ* wherof *effthyma* commeth, signifieth to burst out. *Plinie* calleth such pushes, whelkes, and the eruptions of fleame. But these are of two kinds: for some of them are steepe, and some go out into breadth: those which are steepe, do grow of a more thinne and hote humour, and do excite itch. But those which are broad, do flow and proceede from a more colde and thicke humour, and doe not a whit procure itch. The first sort of the common *Phistions* are knowne by the name *morbili*: the second by this name *variola*.

But the Frenchmen preposterously abusing the names, haue called the low and broad kind *rubele*, but the higher sort *variole*. *Hippocrates Lib. 3. Epid.* doth deuide these kindes of pusshes into little and great *ethymata*, in calling the steeper kind *magni herpete*, either because (as *Galen* saith) they occupie a great place, or else because they happen with a vehement gnawing. For indeede these sometimes appeare great in height onely, sometimes both in height and breadth. *Cornelius Celsus Libro 5. medicine sue*, in his Treatise of *Impetigo* remembreth two kindes of whelkes: the one somewhat small, which if it be daily rubbed with salting spittle, it waxeth whole, the other somewhat greater, wherein the skinne is made more sharpe, and is exulcerate, and groweth verie vehemently, and looketh red, and is hardly cured. He sayeth, that this is termed of the Greekes *αγρια*, in Latine *fera*. But in both these kindes he confesseth that there is lesse impediment or corruption then in *Impetigo*, so that he affirmeth, that euill whose cure is hard, except it be taken away, doth chaunge and turne into *Impetigo*. The Frenchmen (if I may iudge thereof,) do call both these kindes, but especially the first, *Dartre*. For that euill beginneth to be very round, and after the same manner it commeth (as it were) into a circle, and creepeth slowly. Which whelkes or pusshes do agree in all things to be those which are sayed of *Celsus* to be of the first kinde. Some doe constantly affirme that those whelkes so named of *Celsus* doe nothing differ from *Lychene* among the Grecians, or the *Impetigo* among the Latines. And we haue read, that the onely Authour amongst the Latines hath turned *Lychene* into *Papule*. *Mentagra* a Latine word vsed of *Plinie*, wherein he seemed in the beginning of his 26. booke to haue altogether meant another thing from *Impetigo*, and that it was farre aboue a worse euill then that which the Greekes comprehend vnder the name of *Lychene*, although in his Philosophie he hath interpreted sometime *Lychene* among the Greekes to be *Impetigo*, and the like disease called *Mentagra* he rearmeth also in the same place *Lychene*. Furthermore, the same *Plinie* reporteth, that this euill crept first into Italie in the raigne of *Tiberius Caesar*, which grieve in all the time before was vnknowne to all Europe, much lesse vnto Italie. It was of so great filthinesse and corruption, that any death was to be preferred or wished before it, and also of so great infection, that by the swift passage thereof onely by kissing one another it infected the people, but chiefly those that were gouernours and rulers among them. This euill began almost at the chinne, for that it did chiefly affect and annoy, whereupon it tooke this name *mentagra*. This perhappes is that scabbe, which certaine of the Frenchmen call *ma-la dartre*. *Galen* also seemeth to acknowledge this disease: for in his first booke, *de medicam. compos. secundum locos*, he remembreth a most vile kind of *Impetigo* of the chin, which (as he rehearseth out of *Crito*), prouoketh itching, it afflicteth also the patients, and bringeth them into no small danger. For sometime (saith he) it runneth ouer the whole face, and goeth vp to the very eyes, and it causeth the greatest deformitie of the body almost that can be, which descriptio of *Impetigo*, doth consent in all things with the *mentagra* of *Plinie*. But they do greatly erre, which do thinke that this most contagious *Lychene* called of *Plinie* *mentagra*, is that disease which at this day commonly some do call *Gal-*

licum

Papule Celsi.

Dartre gallica

Mentagra.

Plin. lib. 26.

Galen acknowledgeth Mentagra.

licum malum, some *Neapolitanum*, other some not bearing any hate or iniurie to their countreys, do call it *venereum*. For this infection was altogether unknowne to the ancient Physicians, and also of the former age, and first of all it crept into Neapolis, in the yeare after the incarnation of Christ 1493. At which time Charles the eight, that most invincible king of Fraunce did overcome and winne the Alpes, going about also to invade Italie: although not long before it had spread it selfe abroad through the countreys of Spaine (as some report.) Wherefore hauing as it were the originall and beginning from thence, it began to be called *Hispanica lues*, the Spanish Pestilence, which plague being sent vpon the earth as it were by the iust reuengement of God (as we may thinke) for their filthy and abhominable whoredome forbidden of God, hath corrupted and ouerthrowne with the contagion thereof a great part of humane kind. For the same sickenesse the Magistrats and officers tasted of, the prisoners and captiues felt, the heads of their countreys sustained, and the common people also were infected withall: so swift was the passage thereof from one to another, and now also it strayeth and wandreth through the countreys of Spaine, France, Italie, and all Europe, to the great annoyance of the people. There are certaine also pustles besides these, rehearsed euen out of *Auicene Pustule glandulose*, Lib. 4. called *glandose*, which do seeme to differ nothing from the disease called *ganglion*; but in respect onely of the lesier or the greater. There is mention also made by the same *Auicene*, Lib. 3. of certaine wheelkes, which he calleth in the same place, *bothores iuncturarum*, and in lib. 4. he calleth them *almatim*, which because he sheweth that they be blacke, and resembling greene corne, they must doubtlesse be those which the Greekes call *terminthi*, which a little before we accounted among the *species of phyma*. These *Celsus* seemeth to compare vnto *vari*, which be spots in the face, who also iudgeth them to be called of the Greekes *helcodes*, that is, *ulcerose*, full of scabbes or sores. These white and milkie pustles, so called of *Rasis* and *Serapion*, and of *Auicene leuis borbor*, if their description be thoroughly considered, they will seeme to pertaine vnto the wheelkes called of the Greekes *Ionthi*, which we in Latine haue named *vari*: although the selfe same remedies which *Auicene* hath set downe for them, be taught of *Dioscorides* for the disease *ephelide* (that is to say) for the roughnesse and swartnesse of the face, being caused by the heate of the Sunne. Hitherto haue we intreated of the differences of tumours about nature, which chiefly haue their residence outwardly about the bodie. Now let vs proceede to declare the causes of them.

CHAP. III.

Of the causes of tumours about nature appearing vniuersally on the out side of the body.

THERE are two causes of tumours chauncing besides nature, agreed of among the latter sort of Physicians and Chyrurgians: that is to say, generall and speciall causes. Generall causes are these, the flux, which the Greekes call *pituita*, and the congestion of heaping together of humours. Again by the same writers there are appointed to be fixe causes in number of this fluxe, *The causes of tumours besides nature. Fluxionis causae.*

*Partes propellens.
Particula expulsi-
cipiens.
Humor fluens.*

Spatium.

*Causes of con-
gestion.
How a hote de-
fluxion prouo-
keth a tumour.*

that is to say. 1. the strength of the repulsive member. 2. the weaknesse of the retentive. 3. the abundance and plentie of matter. 4. the loosenesse or fulnes of the pores of the bodie, through the which the fluxe happeneth. 5. the straightnesse of the repulsive parts. 6. and the lower situation of the place retaining the fluxe. But these may be reduced vnto foure heads, as vnto the repulsive member, the part that retaineth, the state of the humour that floweth, and the place or course, through the which the flowing chaunceth. But the fluxe is prouoked either by the meanes of the expulsive member, or because of the fortitude of the expulsive vertue, or by reason of the naturall knitting together that it hath with the retentive member, or because of the straitnes of the particular pores, but some part receiueth the fluxe, because it is either painfull, or hot, or somewhat weake, or seldome, and base, or settled in the neather roome. Furthermore by meanes of the humour, there is a defluxion or flowing down into some part of the bodie, because it is in abundance superfluous, of nature troublesome, & of substance thin. But the space or place is a cause of the fluxe by reason of the largenesse of the passages, as of the veines, arteries, and pores. But of congestion, which is the other generall cause of tumours which chance aboue nature, there are assigned two causes: that is to say, the fault of the vertue nutritiue, & the imbecilitie of the vertue expulsive. By which things we gather, that hot tumours happen for the most part through the defluxion of humours, but cold tumours are rather prouoked by their congestion. But after what manner a hote fluxe excireth the tumor, *Galen* doth declare plainly and wittily, in that little booke which he intituled *inequalis intemperies*, writing after this manner; A hote descending of a fluxe (sayth he) as soone as it hath once placed it selfe in the muscle, first the greater arteries and veines are filled and stretched out, then by their meanes the lesser are distended, and so it proceedeth vntill it commeth to the least of all. In them, when a fluxe is strongly compact together, and can no longer be contained, part thereof issueth cut through the extreame parts of them, and part is strained out through the holes of the tunicles, and is speedily sent forth, and then those void places are filled with the fluxe, which are betweene the best and chiefest bodies. Thus all things proceeding of the humour do waxe hote in euerie place, and also are still pcwred forth. And these are the sinewes, the bindings or ligaments, the small filmes, the very flesh, and besides these, the arteries and veines, which truly being the principall are diuersly & many wayes afflicted aboue the rest. For inwardly by reason of the fluxe they are both made hote, and also are stretched out, and torne and pulled asunder. And outwardly also, they are not onely made hot, but also are suppressed and made heauie. But the other partes of the bodie, some truly are onely made hote or kept downe, and some are affected with both. And this disease is called *phlegmone*. Hitherto *Galen*. Therefore in such kind of tumors chancing besides nature, which are caused of the flowing of humours, something alreadie (at the least way at the beginning, and before the fluxe did begin to striue) is made & ingendred, and something is yet to come, and resteth in the generation. That which doth happen as yet, is the matter which went before, which as yet abideth in the fluxe: but that which is ingendred alreadie, is the ioyned matter, which hath alreadie flowed, and is compact

part in the aggricued place. Hereupon therefore there must be vsed a diligent
 care of the Phisition in such kinds of *phlegmone* which as yet remaine in gene-
 ration (as in all other tumors also and diseases which are yet in begetting, nei-
 ther as yet haue obtained perfection) as *Galen Lib. 13. meth. med.* doth declare
 them to be knowne and perceiued, both by that which foresheweth, & that which
 cureth: but these things pertain to another kind of study. But it is conuenient,
 that we set downe the speciall causes of tumours which are about nature, to
 the which these three are commonly appointed: Primatiue causes, which we
 call both *pregresse* and *euidentes*, and causes antecedent, which we name *antece-*
dentes: and ioyned causes, which we tearme *coniuncte* or *continentes*. These be cal-
 led of the Greeks, *προκαταρτιστικαι προσημειωτικαι συνεισθητικαι*. The primatiue causes are
 said to be these, which while they do worke any disease, are separated, as a fall,
 a stripe, a blow, a bruse, a tumor, or a solution, or that euill which is committed
 by admitting a dissolute diet. Antecedent causes are those which of theselues
 are fit and materiall to beget any disease or affect, as are foure humours both
 naturall and not naturall. Naturall humours are those which serue to nourish
 the bodie, and haue their being with the blood, and are comprehended vnder
 the name of blood Which if they be sent out from the veines and arteries,
 they do suddely congele & gather together, whether they flow without the bodie,
 or do remaine still in the place where in they be contained. But they call
 those vnnaturall humours, which are found seuered from the blood with the which
 the body is nourished, & by reason of their corruption & naughtines by their
 owne nature are not nutritiue, the which do sometimes grow, although they re-
 maine in the aire which compasseth vs. And these as it were by a certain kind
 of providence of nature, being destined and ordained for some vse, are demit-
 ted and sent into certaine receptacles, either into the innermost parts of the
 body, and so engender vnkind swellings called *abscessus*, or welkes, scabbes,
 defedations and alterations of the skinn, and vnnaturall sweats: or sometime
 by an insensible aire inwardly infused they do excite sweatings. Sometime
 also they putrifie within, and beget feauers. But such like (say they) are
 improperly termed humors, assuming to themselves the names of naturall hu-
 mors. For they hold this opinion, that onely those iuyces which come from
 the liuer in the generation of blood, and of nutrition and moisture, are pro-
 perly to be termed naturall humours. Such are sincere and pure blood, cho-
 lericke also, flegmaticke, and melancholike, by the which foure kinds all the
 parts of the body are generally nourished and maintained: some parts with
 a more pure, and (as I may say) a more bloody humour: other with a humour
 more cholericke, other with a flegmaticke, and other with a melancholike,
 as the nature of euery part requireth. Therefore all the humours are con-
 tained in the veines and arteries, the which may appeare by their varietie
 of colour and consistencie (as *Galen* hath expressed in *libro de atra bile*.) Fur-
 thermore of those foure humours which are called naturall, foure especiall
 tumors are engendred, which are commonly called *apostemata*. In the which
 the swelling is very bigge, and the matter doth offend rather in quantitie
 then in quality. They are called by their proper names, *Phlegmone*, *erysipelas*, and speciall
adema, *sicrhus*. Of tumors not naturall (as it pleaseth the later Phisitions)

There is a two
 fold declarati-
 on of all those
 euils which are
 yet in begetting
 Speciall causes
 of tumors a-
 boue nature.
 Pregresse.
 Antecedents,
 which are said
 to be naturall
 humors.

Which are said
 to be vnnatu-
 rall humors.

What iuyces
 are properly
 termed natu-
 rall humors.

Of the four na-
 turall humors
 are engendred
 foure lawfull
 tumors.

What tumours
do come of vn-
naturall hu-
mours.

Coniuncta cau-
sa tumorum
præter natu-
ram.

What it is
which is called
continens cau-
sa.

Some thinke
that coniuncta
causa nothing
differeth from
the maladie it
selfe.

What abscessus
Galen thinketh
to be.

do proceed *abscessus*, which they also call *exitura* and *pustula*, which they thinke cannot well be called apostemes. To the which they will adde and reduce two other kinds also, flatus and watery, which proceede of a fluible substance, and are commonly called *apostemata ventosa* & *aqueosa*, that is, windy and watery apostemes. There be therefore six titles attributed vnto simple tumours, that is, *phlegmonosi*, *erysipelatosi*, *edematosi*, *scirrholi*, *flatusi*, & *aqueosi*. But the compound tumours are not all called according to the concourse of humours (because a great many may happen in one disease) but they are named by the predominant humor, especially as we haue manifested heretofore, and will hereafter more plentifully in his owne place. But *coniuncta causa* or *continens* of those tumours besides nature, which they commonly call *apostemata*, *pustula*, & *exitura*, are matters and seuerall substances, which are found to be aggregated and stuffed together in the affected part, and which do yet remaine after they haue excited the swelling: and while they increase, the tumours also do greatly augment, and when they decrease, the tumours are diminished, and when their substance is viterly spent and extinguished, the tumours also of themselves do fall away. And this cause called *coniuncta* or *continens causa*, of all the maladies and sundry dispositions of the body, is after this manner by Auicene defined, that, when it is present, his disease alwayes accompanieth him, and also when it is taken away, his disease also vanisheth. But for all this, some Physicians of our age, and those very well learned, do contend that Galen would admit but two causes (that is to say) an externall, and an internall, or (as they say now) a primitive and an antecedent. Of the which, that (he sayth) doth happen to the body outwardly, which altereth and changeth the same greatly, the which alwayes is separated, vntill it hath established his maladie, as heate, cold, the biting of a Scorpion. But the internall hath his being within the body, and doth presently procreate the maladie, as are humours affected besides nature. But they do constantly affirme, that he neuer so much as dreamed of that, which they terme *causa coniuncta*, when as according to his opinion, euery affect which letteth and hindreth the actions and duties of the body, is a maladie it selfe, and not the cause of a maladie, and that *coniuncta causa*, which Auicene and his sect haue inuented, according to their owne description which they assigne vnto it, is nothing but a certaine kind of affect letting the execution of those duties pertaining to the body: which is the very definition of a maladie it selfe. And therefore they proue that it nothing differeth from a disease it selfe, which is wont to preiudice those actions which agree with nature. But because one & the selfe same opinion hath occupied all mens minds of this later age, concerning this triple kind of the causes of all such diseases, it shall not seeme altogether absurd, if that I throughout all this treatise of mine, for plainnesse sake, shall diuide and distinguish these three causes, into these three kinds and titles: I meane *primatiua*, *antecedens* and *coniuncta*. And thus much for the causes of tumors happening besides nature. Now the course of our treatise doth exact, that we should adde the signes and tokens of the same, if that before we shall intreate somewhat of the nature & generation of the *abscessus*. *Abscessus* therefore, called of the Greeks *apostemata*, and of the common Physicians *exitura*, are called of Galen (*libro de tumoribus præter*

præter naturam, & secundum ad Glauconem) dispositions, in which the parts of the body do depart one from another, which before did touch and meete: for the matter which doth excite these tumors, being thrust out without the flesh of the muscle, doth bring the parts out of their places, and maketh them part and seuer. Therefore saith *Galen*, there must of necessitie be a place void in the middest, which borroweth either some flatuous, moist, or tempered, or mixed substance from the partes, which in length of time is altered into many and sundry substances. But there is a double kind of these *abscessus*, one is, when as the inflammation being turned into matter, the matter it self is packed vp together in a corner or hole: the other is, when as no inflammation proceeding or going before a certaine humour either vaporious, or else a substance mixed of both parts, is in some part collected together, which also happeneth two waies: for either in the space lying betweene the seuered partes, such like substance is engendred, or else it runneth into the parts themselves, and that either in the beginning, or else that way by the which those diseases happen, called *ἀποκρίματα*; which (saith *Galen*) then do chauce, when as humours which before haue infested and grieved some one part, do thence remove, and are enforced into another. And this substance which begetteth this *abscessus*, worketh himselfe a place betweene the skinne and the flesh. And in time it doth fley off all the skinne, either because it is very vehement, or else because the plentie of matter doth putrifie, and so breake the skinne. But if those humors, with the which the space situated betweene the seuered partes is filled, do continue any time, they haue (as I said before) many alterations, and are chaunged into many substances, which do represent the properties not onely of humours, but euen of solide and hard bodies. For you shall finde sundry matters within these spaces, some like vnto stones, some to grauell & sand, some to wood, some to coales, some to dirt, some to the foame of oils, some to the dregs of wine: the varietie of substances some ignorant men haue thought to proceede from the force of incantation.

Two kinds of abscessus Gal. lib. 14. Theriaca. & lib. 2. ad Glauconem.

ἀποκρίματα.

What things may be found in abscessus.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the signes of tumours besides nature generally appearing, together with the iudgements thereof.

Tumours besides nature, being resiant in the extreamest partes of the body (the examining and speculation whereof doth appertaine to the Chirurgion) being surueyed by the iudgement of the senses, and the affected parts being touched and felt with the hands, are easily descried and knowne. For in euery part of the body there appeareth a certaine kinde of increasing exceeding the natural state, and distending aboue the measure of nature, that part which it affecteth, and it letteth the duties or actions thereof, because either some humour, or some such substance proceeding of the humour, or which do saour somewhat of the nature of the humour, or a vaporious spirite hath excited it, there also must needs happen a tumor besides nature. But the tumors which they call true Apostemes, are discerned by their swelling, by their paine, and by their heat, being stretched out more or lesse. But they are

Generall signes of tumors a-boue nature.

Particular
signes.

I
Iudicia.

Lib. de differ.
morborum.

Four times of
tumors besides
nature.

I
Principium.

2
Augmentum.

3
Status.

not counted to be true Apostemes in deed, which we haue termed *pustule* and *abscessus*, besides that tumor: which maladie the Grecians call *cacoethia*, & also in the greater or lesser sequestration, *determinata*. But the signes of euery particular difference, and of their matters whereof they be ingendred, shall be declared in their due place, in that which followeth. In the meane time we will handle the simple differences of those tumors which are about nature, by the which the compound differences shall also be easily knowne. But we must not come vnto particular things, before we haue thoroughly discoursed of vniuersall, for that order is wont to be obserued in the institutions of the Artes, neither truly vnworthily, or without cause. For those vniuersall and common things are more manifest vnto vs then particular, because these particular things are more confused and more mixed one with another (as Aristotle teacheth *lib. 1. Physicorum. cap. 1.*) Let no man therefore maruell, though euery where in this treatise of Chyrurgerie, we alwaies begin of more common things, and of those which comprehend many things vnder them. But let vs return to our purpose, and let vs prosecute the iudgements of tumours consisting about nature. In the which first of all we must note, that all those tumors which they call true Apostemes (if we will credit Galen and Auicene) are greatly complicate and folded together, neither can any of them be easily iudged or found out to be pure and sincere: for (as Galen saith) with *phlegmone*, that is, with an inflammation coming of blood, there is something chiefly mingled which doth preserue the nature either of *erysipelas*, or *edema*, or *scirrhus*, but *erysipelas*, because it representeth a kind of *phlegmone*, or *edema*, or *scirrhus*: & so likewise consider & marke in all the rest of the tumors. But truly those tumours besides nature, which they terme not true Apostemes, are very often found sincere and pure. But we will handle the cures of simple & sincere tumours in those things which follow, by the which the remedies also of compound and intricate tumors shall manifestly appeare. For I thinke it good to discourse of all the kinds of tumours, and also to dispose aright that which shall seeme superfluous. For if a man shall know all the simple tumors, and learne after what manner they be compounded together, he shall be furnished sufficiently to exercise himselfe particularly in the rest. But now let vs see other opinions and iudgements generally concerning the tumors themselves. *Periodi, paroxysmi*, and the *crises* of tumors besides nature, do follow the analogie of the humors whereof they be constated or engendred (Guido affirming the same) which analogie, we here declare to be a propertie, or proportion, a nature, or a likenesse of substance, which they call *forma specifica & occulta*, a speciall and hidden forme. Such kind of tumours, especially they which be wholesome, and which are caused of the flowing of humours, are distinguished by foure times (that is to say) by their beginning, by their increasing, by their state, and by their declination. The signe of their beginning is, when the member beginneth to be stretched out, and when the beginning of fluxe is present, but yet with small griefe. We may also iudge augmentation to be present, when we see the tumour to be raised like a heape or pile, and the place affected to be filled, and the symptoms, which are wont to follow euery tumour, to be manifestly increased. But the token of their state is, when all the aforesaid things (that is to say) the

the tumour, and the symptomes of the differences of euerie tumour hath his owne proper force and vigour, neither can they any longer admit any increasing, but the matter causing the tumour doth degenerate and change it selfe into another kinde of substance. But their declination is then knowne to be present, when the pyle of the tumour and the proper symptomes thereof are decreased and diminished, or when the matter which prouoketh the tumour beginneth to be transformed into another substance. Therefore such kind of times do receiue their differences from three kindes especially, that is to say, from the essence of the tumour it selfe (that is) from the greatnesse or smalnesse; from the disposition of the matter, and from the accidents which do very much alter the declaration of the cure. But these foure times, sometime do seeme to happen all together, because of the soft hardnesse of euery one of them, which almost cannot be perceiued, (as it chaunceth in the venimous inflammations,) yet not mortall or deadly, which straightway do flourish and increase. Furthermore these kind of tumours, which do chiefly happen through the influxion of humors, except they be hindered by repressing the matter that floweth, or except they lurke secretly within, either of their owne accord, or without any manifest cause (the fluxe hauing recourse thither) it is necessarie that they should be comprehended vnder one of these foure, either vnder insensible exhalation or resolution, or vnder suppuration, or putrification, or induration and hardening. But of all these wayes the best and the most to be desired is that which is made by an insensible dissolution, and next to that, that which commeth by suppuration or mattering. But that which is caused by induration and hardening, is sayd to be euill, and that which happeneth by the corruption of the affected part, is to be thought the worst of all, the which Galen doth insinuate in libello de inequali intemperie, writing on this maner: Therefore of the two, we must of necessitie follow the one, either that the bodie be putrified & corrupted, because fluxion is predominant, or else we must grant, that this putrification being resisted & ouercome, the muscle must returne to his naturall habite and constitution. Let vs therefore imagine that all fluxion is withstood and impeached, then you haue two meanes to cure it, either by digesting those humors which were in the affected part, or by dissolving or loosening them: of these the dissolution is best. But in the concoction of the humours, these two things are specially required: viz. the perfect generation of the matter, & also his abscession into some space by it selfe. And a litle beneath he addeth also these wordes. But if that fluxion do make the parts as it were subiect to it, then they do fall to so great an intemperature, that their ordinary action periseth, and in proceesse of time they are corrupted & putrified. Thus farre Galen. The tokens of dissolution and loosening of the humours are these: the softnesse of the sore, and the little throbbing and beating thereof. But the signes of predominant fluxion & of the putrification of the part it selfe, are the black and blew colour, to which also sometime happeneth an odious stinch. But the tokens of a stony hardnes of the tumor are, the immution of the tumor, and also the extreame hardnes therof. The notes & signes also of the egestion and lurking of the tumor, are the suddaine diminution therof, which chanceth sometime by too much refrigeration & coldnes, sometime by reason of a secret

4
Declination.

The times of tumors do take their difference from three things chiefly.

Tumors above nature are contained vnder foure modes.

Gal. lib. de inequali intemperie.

Signes of dissolution.

Signes of putrification.

Signes of induration.

Signes of the egestion and lurking of a tumor.

venim, which lurketh in the place. And this same sudden and often imminution of the tumor succeedeth commonly some feuer, & also other euill symptoms. And thus farre of the signes and tokens of these tumours which our common Phisitions haue comprehended vnder this name *Apoſtēma*. The tokens also of those tumors which we call *pustule*, shal not be forgotten, when we shal haue occasion to handle them. But the signes and tokens of the abscesses, commonly called *exitura*, either those which foreshew their coming, or else those which do manifest their presence already, are these. When thou seeſt (sayth *Avicēne*) pulsation and beating, or hardnesse to haue continued a great time, and also that the griefe together with much heate doth augment, then you may imagine that the next euent that followeth is that the *Apoſtēma* will be turned into matter and suppuration, and so consequently to be an abscession. But when thou findeſt that the place is soft, and that the griefe is somewhat asswaged, and the heate mitigated, and that one place of the tumour is supereminant aboue the rest; and againe if by thrusting it with your finger, you shall perceiue a waterish inundation to subsist; and againe that the colour of his top shall waxe white, then you may well thinke that the tumour is mattered, and also that it is turned into abscession. And therefore it was verie well iudged of *Hippocrates*, that feauers did oftner happen, when that the matter was in ripening, then when it was already come to his maturitie. Moreover the markes and tokens as well of the present abscession, as also of the abscession to come are comprehended in these common verses,

Durities longa, pulsus, dolor, & calor aucti,

Signant pus fieri: sed factum, dicta remissa,

Sub digitis vndans, albescens pars & acuta.

Which may be thus Englished.

By hardnesse long, by pulse and griefe, and eke by heat encreas'd,
We know that matter doth approach: but made we iudge indeed,
If that it yeeld to fingers weight, and whitenesse doth appeare,
--and painfull be also.

But you must be verie attentue and vigilant in discerning and iudging of the matter it self. For the manifest knowledge of the matter and suppuration is sometime which holden from the Phisition by reason of the thicknesse of the skin in the which it is included, (as it is proued by this Aphorisme of *Hippocrates*.) Whosoeuer is ignorant of the suppuration which is in the bodie, his ignorance proceedeth of the thicknesse of the matter, or of the place wherein it is comprehended. And thus much for the signes of abscessions. Now of the iudgements of them, these things are deliuered vnto vs of *Avicēne* and his sect. Abscessions which are planted neare vnto any strong member or vnto any iuncture or ioynt, and in those places where there are most veines and sinewes, and againe in a weak part, hauing gathered his debilitie by the defect of naturall heat, being indurate also and couered with a thicke skinned, containing also thick matter, and so the more slow in motion, the outward place being plaine also, and euen, not ascending like a little hillocke, I say, such a like sore is greatly suspected, and verie hardly and slowly ripened: and such a one as is euery way by description opposite and contrarie to this, is of good and laudable

Signes of abscession to come.

Signes of abscession already present.

Apho. 47 lib. 2

Apho. 41 lib. 6

Iudicia abscessionum.

laudable habite, for both soone and easily it mattereth, and oftentimes also (no outward medicine ayding or assisting) of it selfe it gapeth and openeth. If therefore the abscession do grow vp into a sharpnesse, and the substance of the matter be thinne, and the skinne not thicke or hard, of his owne nature and power it will expell and thrust forth the conceiued humour without any foraine ayde, vnlesse a man by making incision will anteuert and preuent his voluntarie opening. Such like abscessions are digested sometime by breathing or wind (no solution being made subiect within the skinne,) but that happeneth when the matter is small in quantitie, good and thinne, and not sticking very deepe. But if there be any emissarie, or way made into the tumour, either by nature or by Art, the humour conceiued within doth breake forth oftner then digest. But that opening or apertion which is made by nature, is a great deale safer then that which is made by the hand: but if it be so, that it must be mollified by Art, you shall safelyer do it by a sharpe penknife, or other cleare and bright instrument of yron, then by that medicine which they call *ruptorium medicamentum*. And therefore (as before I said) euerie apertion, which is made and enforced by Art, is worse then that which nature affoordeth of it selfe, because such like manuell openings to make the matter ranke, may perhaps turne into a *Fistula*. But when necessitie vrgeth, & when we cannot vse a better remedie, we must boldly attempt that. And by this meanes you shall eschue those discommodities which before I named, if (when the matter so requireth) you do seasonably make apertion, and by that meanes hasten the ripening of the other baggage which lurketh in the tumour. *Hippocrates* in his last Oracle of his first booke of prædictions hath expressed the very notes and markes of the worst matter, and of the best, speaking after this manner: That matter is esteemed best, which is of colour white, and euery way like it selfe, and soft and gentle to the touch, and as little vnpleasant to the nose as may be. And that which is euery way contrary to this, is the worst of all. But the tokens and signes of all the other humors and solide substances also which are included in these abscessions, shall be manifested and shewed in their particular Chapters, as they shall by consequence and order ensue.

What abscessions may soonest be ended through resolution.

Abscessions are safest opened with a penknife then with ruptorium medicamentum.

The notes of the best and worst matter, out of Hippocrates.

CHAP. V.

Of the generall method of curing of all tumors besides nature, but of those especially which proceede from the influxion of humours, as Apoplexies, and Abscessions commonly called Exiture.

OF all Tumors aboue nature, as well those which are already engendred, as those which are not yet in generation, there is one common & principall order of curing (as it is in *Galen lib 13. and 14. Method. medic.*) namely that that which is aboue nature resident in any member, and raiseth the same into a tumour, should altogether be emptyed out. But those which are yet in begetting, in them there is a certaine obstruction of the humour that floweth to the

The common order of curing of tumors.

The common
method of cu-
ring of tumors
doth change
according to
the difference
of the tumor,
and the mem-
ber affected.

The order of
curing of tu-
mors is chiefly
taken from
two things.

The essence of
a tumor doth
containe three
things in it.

Four things
to be considered
chiefly in the
nature of af-
fected members.

aggrieved place, before the euacuation. In them therefore is requireth a diligent and singular care of the Physitian, to declare the cure of them. But these common manifestations, according to the difference of the tumor it selfe, and the nature of the affected member, do very much differ and alter. For truly in all tumors already ingendred, and in euery part of the body, the euacuation of that which annoyeth and infesteth, is in no case to be vsed and ministred, as *Galen* teacheth libro 2. ad *Glaucanem*, and in the places aboue recited, which also shall manifestly appeare in that which followeth. But we must not cure those tumors with such remedies, which are yet but beginning and occupying euery member, or emptie out that which is already ingendred in them, but we are enforced (if we intend to follow the right order in curing) to vse sometime one remedy, sometime another, which is of force to stop the fluxe, and auoid out that which is ingendred, so farre forth as the kind of the tumor, and the nature of the affected member doth require. *Galen* therefore chiefly draweth the demonstrations of the cure of tumors aboue nature from these two things. viz. from the disposition it selfe or essence of the euill, and from the nature of the affected member. Moreouer the disposition of the euill (which we haue now in hand, or the essence thereof doth comprehend three things in it, according to the iudgement and consent of the later sort, that is, the quantitie, the qualitie, and the matter or substance which prouoketh the tumour. By meanes whereof that chiefe and common declaration is changed, and from them is taken also the particular order of curing. For a great tumour is cured one way, and a small tumor another way. And the difference of them is knowne by their greatnesse and smalnesse (as some suppose;) and one way is a mightie *phlegmone*, and another way a litle *herpes* healed. Otherwise also is that tumor remedied, which is caused by fluxe, and is yet in begetting, then that which is procreated through congestion, or is already ingendred and congeled. Also a hot tumour (as *Erysipelas*) is otherwise cured then a cold, as is *edema* and *scurhus*. The quantitie therefore which in a tumour aboue nature varieth the cure, is either great or small. The quality is the fluxe, or (as some terme it) the deriuation and congestion. The matter thereof is the humor, be it either hote or cold. But in the nature of affected members foure things chiefly are to be considered. viz. their temperature, their forme or fashion, their situation or place, and their power and strength. To the which also may be added a fifth thing, which is the facilitie (as I may terme it) & difficulty of the senses: except you will with *Galen* comprehend and containe it vnder the last thing, which is the vertue and strength of the tumour. These things therefore also do much alter that generall order of curing, which is commonly obserued throughout all kind of tumors aboue nature. It is therefore requisite, that in curing those tumors which chance besides nature, we remember all those declarations which are taken from them. For *phlegmone*, or any other tumour which hath his abode in the fleshie parts of the body, is otherwise cured then those which are situated in the sinewy places: otherwise in the eye, then in the knee or necke; and otherwise are the kernels in the throat cured, then those which are resident in other parts of the body. But to be short, the temperature, the fashion, the situation & the strength of the member

ber that is affected and beset with the tumor, do change all those operations which we shall attempt and prooue in their cure: retaining still that generall intention, which *Galen* hath taught to be alwaies taken from the disease. Therefore first we haue here decreed to set downe a common and generall method of curing of tumours above nature, especially of those which are caused through the influxion of humors, taking their manifestation from the affect or euill it selfe, nothing respecting the affected part. Afterward we will teach the vniuersall cure of them, but chiefly of inflammations, when as they shall degenerate & change into abscessions. Then moreouer we will declare the particular order of curing all differences, especially of those which be simple, by whose proportion of analogie, the cure of compound tumors shall easily be learned. And in the meane time, as the place shall require, we will rehearse our of *Galen* certaine things concerning the order of curing, which haue their assumption from the parts which are affected, & as it were besieged with a tumor: which things being rightly weighed & considered, it shall be easie for any reasonable Physitian or Chirurgian, by our certaine method and order, to cure all kind of tumors which are incident to any part of the body. We therefore imitating *Galen*, will draw the beginning of the cure of tumors which are sayd to be above nature, from the flowing & ingendred humors, & from the inuention of the cause of the very euill, that so both the causes which excite the same, may be preuented, and that which is already in it may be taken away. Therefore by the example & analogie of one difference of tumors, which are caused through defluxion (for here we mind to intreat only of them) we will vnderstand also other differences, which do grow through flowing of humors. And here we will set downe a brieft and compendious curing of one kind of *phlegmone*, which chanceth very often, and procureth feuers and other verie dangerous euils and symptomes. But in this place vnder the name of *phlegmone*, our intent is not to comprehend euery hot & flaming disposition, which the Greekes call *phlogosis*, but that onely which proceedeth by the meanes of a bloody fluxe, chiefly incident to fleshie and fat bodies, wherein is vehement paine & rednesse appearing in the outward parts, & as it were a burning heat, a stretching out, and a striving or thrusting, and when the euill is increased, there is sence of the pulse bearing. For this inflammation with *Galen* & other Greeke writers, as *Paulus*, *Aetius*, and *Oribasius*, which do follow him as their best guide, we properly call *phlegmone*. That we may therefore come to the matter it selfe, these are the very words of *Galen*. The common ingendring of euery *phlegmone* commeth by the influxion of bloud, and that more abundantly then was wont to happen to that member: for bloud doth flow very abundantly (sometime one or other member sending it forth) and that part doth entertaine and receiue it, which beinnew to be affected with *phlegmone*: but sometime that member which is afflicted doth draw it vnto it selfe. But the parts which sendeth it forth do driue out the iuyce, being either superfluous by reason of the plenty thereof, or grieuous because of the quality, or else because of both. But they which are attractive, do draw or pul with a sickly heat or griefe. But to these also are adioyned certaine helping causes. viz. the weakenesse & basenesse of the member, the fulnes of the conduits & passages through which

*Lib. 2. ad
Glaucnem.
The order of
handling that
which follow-
eth.*

*The finding
out of the cause
is the begin-
ning of the
cure of tumors
above nature.*

*Phlegmone
quid.*

*Gal. lib. 13.
meth. med.*

*The common
ingendring of
euery phleg-
mone.*

The helping
causes of fluxe.
Three orders
are set downe
for the cure of
those tumours
which are cau-
sed through
the influxion
of humours.
Primus scopus

Plethora quid

Cacochimia.

Antispasis.

Secundus scopus.

Tertius scopus

Cases in which
we may not
use repelling or
repressing re-
medies.

the flux passeth, the straintesse also and narrownesse of the pores and ex-
pulsive parts, and the inferiour place, as we haue already declared. There-
fore of all these, there are three intentions of curing those tumours which
haue their beginning of flowing, collected and gathered of the latter sort
of Chyurgians. 1. The first is to turne away the fluxe, and prevent it also-
gether. 2. The second is to mitigate the griefe, and altogether to remoue that
cause, for the which the member intertaineth or also draweth the fluxe vnto it.
3. The third is to emptye out all that humor that hath flowed to the aggriued
place. But how the first intention should be finished, *Galen* hath fitly taught
lib. 3. meth. med. where he declareth vnto vs all the waies to auert & turn away
the flux, & the meanes to stop and inhibite *phlegmone*, which as yet remaineth
in generation, writing after this manner: When humours are equally augmen-
ted amongst themselves (which the Greekes call *plethora*) yea also when all
the bodie is void of excrements, and doth containe a mediocritie of iuicic hu-
mours, (paine and the heate of that member also wherein *phlegmone* raigeth
raising the fluxe) through the emission of blood, we helpe and remedie *phle-
mone* which now beginneth to rule. *Plethora* also is cured both with often ba-
thing and with exercise, and also with much friction and rubbing. Further-
more it is cured by medicines that will digest, so that a feuer be not present,
and besides all these it is helped through hunger, and a good diet, although
the sicke be feuerous. But when the bodie is stuffed either with melancholie,
or choler, or fleame, or with other clammy and viscous humours (which state
of the bodie the Greekes call *cacochimia*) the euacuation thereof must be labou-
red by a purgation, which is a fit remedie for every humor that raigeth. But
of them we will speake more at large in their particular Chapters. Now *Anti-
spasis* (that is) a reuulsion the contrarie way, is a common remedie against all
these kind of tumours, while the flux doth yet strongly preuaile, as in the be-
ginning & increasing of the euill: but in the end of the state, & in the declina-
tion thereof, while the fluxe now remaineth & sticketh in the member, and the
whole body is sufficiently emptied the euacuation must be attempted & fetched
either from the affected part, or fro that which is next adioyned therunto. The
second intention containeth remedies to prouoke sleepe. vidz. which do mi-
tigate paine, & also bind & prevent the flux. Moreouer it teacheth remedies,
which are able to loosen & dissolve the naturall pores, by the which the affe-
cted member is wont to be thoroughly purged. But the matter of al these shalbe
abundantly described hereafter. Now we will handle the third intentio, which is
perfected with such things as do euacuate the matter that exciteth the tumor
from the affected place. And that matter is euacuated not only by medicines
which do euaporate & dissolve, but also by such as do repel & repress, such as
the Greekes call *ἀπορρηκτικά*. And therefore in the beginning of these phlegmo-
nous tumours, & other whatsoeuer do deriue their beginning from the influ-
xion of humours, we may rather use repressing medicines, then those which do
euaporate: except in certain cases, of the which (saith *Guido*) *Galen* seemed to
haue appointed foure. 1. The first is, whe that such tumors be in cleane & pure
members. 2. The second is, when the subiect thereof is venimous. 3. The third
is when the matter is thicke, & not pliable to repulsion. 4. The fourth, when it is

very

very vehemently packed together. *Auicenn* excepteth only two causes, viz. when it happeneth in any cleane or pure part, or in any other place, out of the which it is to be feared that the matter will flow to some principall part of the bodie. Some other appoint onely one cause, other six, other ten, other nineteene, other twentie three. But before we do establish any thing of this so doubtfull a cause, we must know that there be two kindes of repulsives, both amongst the late Phisitions and also the Arabians, that is to say, common and proper. Common repulsives are such as do inhibit all fluxe, keeping vnder and repressing the same, and that is done either by cooling it, or by thickning it, or else by stuffing it (that is) by reason of the thicknesse of his substance, by shutting & occluding the pores and waies whereby it shall flow out, or else by confirming the parts affected. These things following do repress fluxe by refrigeration & cold, *sium green, lettuce, scyllium, cotyledon* (that is to say) *umbilicus Veneris, lenticula palustris, caphura*. And these also do stuffe and stop the passages, *farina* called *volatilis*, the white of an eg, *amylum, gluten*, & the kinds of gums. To conclude, all such things as do refrigerate with ease and without biting. But those things which do confirme & roborate (I meane such as do restore the naturall temperature to the part affected) as oile of roses, *oleum omphacium*, oile of mirtles, oile of cammomill, *absinthium*, horehound, *nux cupressi*, and such like things, which being applied do strengthen the affected part, and so do free it and defend it from all imminent fluxe. But proper repulsives are such as when the humours do slide into some other part, do meete with the same, and do enforce them to retire againe. And these are to be vsed then when the member is growne thicke, as attractiue medicines are commonly applyed to thin tumors. Of these many are of a cold qualitie, and many of a hot, but both sorts, (that is) both hot and cold are in operation attractiue & binding. The medicines repressing, which of nature are cold, are these, vine leaues, plantaine, nightshade, *dipsacos*, viz. *virga pastoris*, or *bursa pastoris*, *glacium, balausium, omphacium, sumach, terra cinolia, mentia*, commonly so called, and *terra sigillata*, and others of that kinde. Those be the simples out of the which many compounds are made, as *oxycratum*, the ointment of bole, the ointment of *Galen*, and such like. But the hote repulsives are *alume*, cypresse nuttes called *galbule*, *inuers rotundus* or *odoratus*, called of the Græcians, *χίρς ὀβύς*, called also *blatta, bizantia, lupinorum farina*, and certaine austere and sharpe wines, and many other such like things. But we will set downe the whole order of applying of repelling medicines in the beginning of fluxions, prescribed by *Guido* in two seuerall prologues. In the beginning of all tumors, which proceede from the influx of humours, but specially of such humors as are phlegmonous, it will be auailable to vse repulsives as they are called, these ten euaies only excepted, that is to say, when the tumor is in a far member, or when it proceedeth of a venimous matter, or a substance which is very thicke, and so vsite to be repelled: or else when the humour is vehemently packed in the affected part, and deeply also, if the tumor be inclined to supuration, or descending from a primatiue cause, if it be in a plethoricke or full bodie and very weake, if it be seated next vnto a principall member: to conclude, if it happeneth with vehement griefe, for in these cases we may better vse medicines which will mitigate the tumor and the paine

*Repellentia
communis.*

*Repellentia
proprie dicta.*

Frigida repressiua.

Calida repellentia.

*The first prologue of Guido
in repressiue
things.*

*Gal. 2. ad
Glaucnem.*

The second
Prologue.

Si tumor iam
factus est.

Emplastrum.
Cucurbitula.
Artis canon
generalis.

rather then such as shall repell and resist the humours. The second Prologue is after this manner: In the beginning of all tumors, but chiefly of those which are phlegmonous, common repulsives are profitable (three cases onely excepted,) that is, if the tumor happen in those partes which are called *glanulose*, if they be enclined to suppuration, or if they proceed of a venimous matter. And in all these cases, but especially then when the humour doth stand, and when the fluxion consisteth, and is almost made a tumour, it is behouefull to dissolue and scatter the matter, applying to the swolne place *diaphoretica*, nor biting or sharpe, but milde and gentle, being moderately hote and moyst; but this must be done principally in the three last remembred cases, in the which we must endeavour to attract and drawe the matter which is dispersed to the head, where the tumour most appeareth: and we must increase the tumour as much as we can, and so inhibite the course and fluxion of the mixed humours. Which truely we may sometime do, by vsing attractiue emplaisters, and oftentimes by fastening cupping glasses to the aggriued place, (as *Auicenna* teacheth.) Let this therefore be a generall rule or canon of Art. In the beginning of all tumours which proceed of the influxion of humours, (those three excepted which were named a litle before) onely pure repressiues are to be vsed. But in their increasing we must mingle with these repulsives, some of those things which do dissolue and discusse. But in the state of tumours, yea and somewhat before the state, we must commixe repressiue medicines equally with discussiue: and when there is declination present, or the end of the state, we may lawfully vse onely resoluing and releasing remedies. To conclude, so long as the humour doth yet abound, we must labour to repell it, and drine it away: but if the fluxe doth still remaine, we must seeke to digest it. But if it dependeth vpon both, (that is to say) that partly something hath already flowed, and cleaueth fast to the place, and partly something may yet abound and flow, then it shall be lawfull to vse commixed remedies, (that is,) partly those which can resolue and vnbind, and partly those which are able to bring backe and repell. For contrarie diseases being gathered into one place together, we must vse also compound cures, as *Galen* saith 13. *Therap.* Furthermore, all these things truly are to be vnderstood as thus, if a tumor aboue nature is to be dispatched and cured by resoluing medicines, or (that I may speake generally) by the way of resolution. But their cures, whereby we will finish all those intentions whereof we intreated before, according to their diuersse matter that exciteth the tumour, shall be described and declared in their particular Chapters, as by consequence and order they shall follow.

CHAP. VI.

Of Abscessions generally.

DE CVRATIONE ABSCESSVVM IN VNIVERSVM.

Of the cure of
tumors which
are turned in-
to abscessions,
which they call
Exciure.

BVt if Phlegmone, or any other tumour doth degenerate and turne into Abscessus, the cure thereof in the beginning is finishe d and ended (as saith *Galen Libro. 2. ad Glauconem*) by helpes and remedies that doe mitigate, which the Greekes call *chalastra*, (that is) by resoluing and remitting medicines: of the which nature and force is that medicine, which is called of *Galen Tetra-*

pharmacum

pharmacum, being very soft, and prouoking sleepe: with the which according to the opinion of the same *Galen. Lib. 13. Therap.* there must be commixed a litle hony. But *Tetrapharmacum* consisteth of foure things, of the which there must be of euerie one a like portion or quantitie (that is to say) of waxe, of rosin, of the gumme of the herbe *colophonica*, which distilleth from the roote thereof, and of bulles tallow. But in proceesse of time, we must passe ouer vnto those things which are able to concoct and digest, or to ripen and bring to supuration. But those which are turned into another kind, that is, into another substance, and that altogether besides nature, they are to be remoued and cured by the art of Chyrurgie. Moreouer in remouing them according to the counsell of *Galen. 14. Therap.* it shall be requisite to consider, that among all the wayes and meanes, whereby we intend to finish our purpose, we should alwayes make choyce of the best of them. The best meanes and wayes are declared and manifested vnto vs three manner of wayes: viz. by the shortnesse of the time to cure in, by curing without paine, and chiefly by curing safely and without danger. Again, that thou mayest cure safely, there are three speciall things diligently to be considered. The first and the chiefe is, that you thoroughly attaine to the perfection of your labour. 2. The other is, that if you cannot attaine to the same, yet at the least, that you hurt not the sicke. 3. The third is, that the euill or disease may not easily returne or come againe. By these considerations, if you will declare the best method of curing, you shall find in all those tumors before mentioned, when the cure is to be ended by the helpe of Chyrurgie, and when by the force of medicines. But truly the studie of Chyrurgie in these chiefly which now we do increas of, that is, in those tumors which are altogether aboue nature, doth make and tend to the killing and destroying of them, and doth wholly declare after what sort they may be taken away. But if it cannot bring this to passe, the next counsell is, to transferre the euill, as we vse to do in those tumors called *Hypochymata* (that is to say) the web in the eye. But that which is fetched from medicines, doth first tend vnto this end, that that which is aboue nature, may both turne into matter, and also into putrefaction: but this he appointeth in the second place. These things hath *Galen*: therefore whe the parts which are troubled with *phlegmone* do beat very vehemently, so that now you begin to despaire of their cure, (they being not yet mattered,) all the auncient Chyrurgians (sayth *Galen. 4. Therap.*) do minister and apply such kind of medicines which do speedily procure matter: but before it be mattered, they vse none at all. And although those parts which are annoied with *phlegmone* be annointed with a cataplasme, which may both heat them & moisten them, & bring the to suppuration, yet the same doth not appeare by the first reason or way, that is, as the remedy and helpe of the euill, but as the mitigating & easing of the symptomat, that is, of the paine. For truly the remedies of *phlegmone* are of a drying nature. And the same *Galen* addeth moreouer a litle after, that a short and compendious cure of those parts which are affected with *phlegmone* is quickly ended & dispatched, by remedies which are able to dry and vnbind, which truly doth altogether either remoue the affect, or else, if they leaue behind them some litle reliet, which may turne to suppuration, it is needfull to vse some other sharpe medicine, which is able

Tetrapharmacum.

The best order of curing is declared three wayes.

1
2
3

Ex lib. 4. Therap. meth.

Auicenn.

When abscessions are chiefly to be cut and opened.

A mattered tumor is more safely opened with a knife then with burning medicins. Lib. 13. Ther. A section imitating the olive or mirtle leafe. Great hurt cometh by wide incisions. Why mattered impostumes about the share must be cut overthwart. Seven things to be diligently marked in the apertion of an abscession already mattered.

1
2
3
4
5

to bring out the matter, or if the skin about the tumor be thin, and you willing speedily to ease the sicke, you necessarily must vse incision. And this truly is that which *Auicenn* saith, namely, that the cure of an Aposteme (as it is an Aposteme) is the extraction and drawing out of the strange matter which raiseth the Apostume. But to declare the remedies of them, wherewith it is expedient to draw and moue the matter, and to manifest other things also, which we spoke of a litle before, they are to be sought out of their particular Chapters. Furthermore, the Abscession being already come to suppuration, or changed, or strongly compact together, if the matter or any other baggage therein contained, be not discussed and dissolved, or if in conuenient season, and while the occasion is offered, it be not opened without the labour of the hand, you must make an issue by incision for that which otherwise will not be digested. But this thing chiefly is to be proued and enterprized, if there be feared any erosion or gnawing to insue, or any other danger, yea if necessity commandeth, it ought straight way to be opened, and the matter to be drawne out as speedily and safely as is possible, for the cause before alleadged. But an apertion is made more safely with a knife, then with burning and scalding medicines if nothing do hinder it; and commonly such kind of *phlegmonous* tumors, being already turned into suppuration, are opened with a penknife. Moreover an apertion or the letting out of the matter ought to be done, by reason both of the abundance of matter there gathered together, & also of the affected place. But if any part of the matterd member shall seeme to be putrified & rotten, it is needfull to cut it off, to the forme or likenesse of an olive or mirtle leafe, that it may heale the more easily. But *Galen* commandeth to auoid and eschue alwaies any great incisions, who did heale such kind of mattered tumors, both in the parts about the priue members, and also in the armeholes only by incision (as he vsed chiefly to do) & by medicines that were of force to dry. Now if need sometime required to cut off somewhat by reason of the plenty, not onely of matter, but also of the corrupted parts, he vsed no greater incision then the breadth of a great mirtle leafe. For by wide & large sections, when the member is brought vnto a scar, besides that it is made most filthie, it also becommeth very weake and vnfit to moue withall. But these kinds of sections imitating the mirtle leafe, are vsed in those tumors especially which do matter, vnder the armeholes, & about the share. And in those truly the lengths of them must be drawne ouerthwart & not by the straightnesse or rightnes of the leg or body: for whē we bend the leg or the arme, the skin naturally doth apply it self with it. But in other places we alwaies almost do vse simple incisions. Now in this apertion or incision, 7. things are especially to be considered, according to the consent of the later Chyrurgions. First, that incision be made in that place wherein the matter is contained. The 2. that incision be made in the neather place of the tumor, that the matterd & corrupted filthinesse may the better be auoided out. The 3. that it be made next the wrinckles and proceffe of the muscles. The 4. that you do auoid and eschue the finewes, veines and arteries as much as you can. The 5. that the matter be not brought out abundantly all at once, especially in great abscessions, lest that by too much emptying out and that suddenly, and also by the resolution of the spirites there follow

weaknesse

weaknesse, and faintnesse. The 6. that the place be handled and touched very gently, and with as litle paine as can be. The 7. that apertion being made, the place be wiped very cleane, and filled with the flesh againe, and brought to a scarre after the manner of vlcers. But *Galen lib 13. Therap.* warneth vs chiefly to marke two things in the incision of a suppurated abscession, writing after this manner. 1. If at any time the abundance of matter exceedeth and overcommeth your medicines, neither do they seeme vnto you to be able to digest all the corruption, it is requisite to make an issue by incision for that matter which yeeldeth not to digestion, in that place especially where it is most high. 2. Moreouer in the incision also of another abscession which pertaineth vnto fluxe, and yet respecting both the kinds, you must not forget to cut and lanch that which is already come to suppuration: and then apply some medicine thereto which can dry it vp without erosion or gnawing. But after the impostume is opened, you must vse remedies that be of a scouring and cleansing nature, and fit to purge the filthie vlcere, as are soft flaxe or lint, and soft linnen, emplaisters and ointments which shall be spoken of in their particular chapters. At the first time, *Guido* did apply the yolke of an egge being thickned with alume *Zuecharinum*, which medicine *Guilielmus à Saliceto* did also vse. But afterward you must come to the applying of *mel rosatum*, & *mundificatium ex apio*: and last of all, to *unguentum Apostolorum*, and *Aegyptiacum*, if the matter so requirerh. But aboue, without you must minister ointments, as *basilicon*, *diachylon*, & *diaphænicon*, so commonly called, and other of that sort, which are appointed for vlcers. For when you haue cut an abscession, it must be cured after the manner of other vlcers. *Galen lib. 13. Therap.* after the skin was cut in those plegmorous tumors which chance about the armeholes and priuie members, he did fill the affected place with that medicine which the Greeks call *Manna*, which is, *thuris purgamentum*: for this hath a light adstriction or binding. But you must also (sayth he) first assuage the launced member (as much as you see cause) first with fomentis, then with cataplasmes, and straight after with some moistning medicine, or else with such as do not much drie (all these being applied outwardly vpon the vlcere.) For in the very vlcere, both of *Manna* (as hath bene said) and also of those remedies which are taught and declared by vsing of lint, those things are truly first to be layed on, which do mooue and prouoke the matter, and afterward those which do purge and cleanse: after the applying of which things, if there remaine any hollownesse, you must minister those things which may fill the same: but if it fall out otherwise, you must vse things to bring it to a scarre. Moreouer if the sicke will not suffer incision to be made, either with some bright instrument, or with a penknife, by reason of the softnesse thereof, then the apertion is to be finished with burning medicines. For this purpose *Auicenna* praisth the seede of line or flaxe, leauen and doves dung, which you may make more excellent and forcible, if you mingle them with a little soft sope, or with the filthinesse that commeth of mustard seed. But that medicine which is called *ruptorium* or *causticum*, which is made of lime and sope, in this matter is most excellent, and obtaineth greatest fame. Hitherto haue we spoken of tumors about nature generally: now it followeth that we intreate of the particular differences of them as they follow in order.

6

7

Two things considered of Galen in the apertion of a mattered tumor.

1

2

Detegentia.

Ointments are to be applied about a tumor that is opened.

The vse of Manna and Thuris after the incision, & the vertue of them. The launced part must first be eased. What things are to be layed to an vlcere.

Auicenna in fine tracta. 1. Fen. 3. lib. 4.

*Of a true Phlegmone, and of other tumors
ingendred of blood.*

HAVING spoken generally of those tumors which consist about nature, it is convenient that we intreat particularly of the differences of euerie one of them, taking out exordium from *phlegmone*, as a tumor which chanceth very often, and exciteth (as *Galen* saith) very dangerous symptomes. Therefore *Galen lib. i. de morbis & symptomatibus*, taketh *phlegmone* two kind of waies. One way generally after the manner of the ancient writers which were before his time, that is, for euerie kind of inflammation of any member, or for any heating or burning, that is, for euerie hote and flaming disposition, which the Greeks do properly call *phlogiston*. Another way, both with *Galen* and other late writers, it is taken for a true and pure tumor ingendred of blood, that is, the best, and that also which retaineth but meane thicknesse or grossenesse. And this truly borroweth his name of the kind thereof, and of the Latines it is called diuersly, by reason of the kind, *Inflammatio*, of the Greeks absolutely *phlegmone*. But this after the mind and consent of the later sort is two fold, *videlicet Vera & non vera*. A true *phlegmone* is caused of good blood, which is the best both in quality and substance or essence, but yet more abundant then naturally should happen to the member. But *phlegmone* which is not a true and lawfull *phlegmone*, is caused of naughty and vnnaturall blood. For blood is a hore and moist humor proceeding from a more temperate part of the very *Chylus*, which is a certaine iuyce that commeth of the meat in the first digestion. And it is two waies, naturall and not naturall. Naturall blood is a hore and moist humor, slender and meane in substance, but of a very red colour, in savor and taste it is sweet, gentle and good. But that blood is said to be vnnaturall, which differeth or digresseth from the former description of blood: yet notwithstanding containing it selfe within the bounds of his breadth & largenes, which if it do. h. once passe, it is no more to be called a blood, but some other humour. But blood doth chance to degenerate from his proper nature two kind of waies. The first way is (as they terme it) in it selfe, that is, in respect of it selfe, (his proper substance being changed without any commixtion with another.) The second way is by another, or in respect of another: and yet it consisteth two waies by it selfe (that is to say) either because the substance thereof is more thicke, or more thinne then it ought to be: or because it is burnt, and that which is thinnest of it is turned into melancholy, but that which is thicke into choler, and that without separation. But in respect of another, blood becommeth not vnnaturall, when as another humor is mingled withall. Which may happen many waies, according as the diuerse kinds of choler, fleame or melancholie may be commixed with blood. By which thing it is manifest, that of blood there are engendred four kinds or differēces of tumors about nature. First, of naturall & good blood there is engendred a true *phlegmone*. But of blood which is corrupted through the admixtion of other humours, there do grow three differences of that kind of *phlegmone*, which is neither true nor lawfull: because that the three other humours (that is to say) fleame, choler & melancholy

may

Phlegmone taken two waies.

Phlegmone taken for phlogiston.

Phlegmone also taken for an inflammation comming of the best blood.

Phlegmone. 2. I. Vera.

2. Non vera. Sanguis quid. Sanguis quosuplex.

Blood doth degenerate from his proper nature two waies

Four differēces of tumors caused of blood

may be easily commixed with blood. Therefore if melancholic be mixed with blood, it is called *phlegmone Schirrodens*: if choler (which then is conflated of both kinds) it is called *phlegmone Erisipelatodes*: if flcane, it is termed *phlegmone Edematodes*. But of blood which is filthie and corrupted through the aduotion and corruption of his owne proper substance, according to the manner of the thinnesse or thicknesse thereof, there are ingendred either Carbuncles, which are called of the Greekes *Anthraxes*, or else *Gangrena* and *Sphacelus*, which we call Cankers. Of the which diseases we will speake of hereafter in that which followeth.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Causes, Signes, and iudgements of Phlegmone.

There are three causes of *phlegmone*, as there are also of all other tumours besides nature, which do chaunce through the defluxion of humors, *vide phlegmone.*
licet. 1. *Primatiua*, which we call both *progressa* and *euidens*; 2. *Antecedens*; 3. & *Coniuncta*. 1. *Progressa.*
 Euident causes of inflammation are outward causes, as, bearing or belking, diruption, conuulsion, breaking or bursting a wound, a voluntarie vlcere, a loosenesse, and other of that sort which do prouoke fluxe, by exciting paine in the affected member. The Antecedent cause, is abundance of blood, which is good and faultlesse, as when the veines touch nigh together to the moderate repletion of the arteries. For then is blood prouoked (as a certaine superfluous thing) to flow and descend to some member which is either weake or immoderately hote, or affected with paine, where it is thrust, and abideth compact together, vnlesse it be by and by repressed from the beginning, as we haue said before in our generall Chapter: to the which we must therefore haue continuall accessse, that we may attaine to a more perfect knowledge of particular tumours, whereof we now entreate. The Coniunct or continent cause, is the blood it selfe, which is already stuffed in the affected place. 2. *Antecedens.* 3. *Coniuncta.*
 The markes or tokens of *phlegmone* are the tumor, or the augmenting of the member aboue the naturall habite, vehement heate, so that the member seemeth to burne. There appeareth rednesse in the outward parts, such as is wont to come through bathes which are made hote either with the fire, or by some other meanes. There is extreame paine, vnlesse the member hath altogether a dull sease. There is also grievous beating and pulsation very vehement inwardly. *Signes of a true phlegmone.*
 There is also extention or stretching out of the member, which not onely we alone haue found out, but also the patient himselfe may perceiue by his owne feeling. There is furthermore resistance of the member if it be touched, after the manner of extention. There be also other such like signes, which do testifie that abundance of blood is present in some part of the bodie: *Lib. de Tum. prater naturā.*
Four times of phlegmone.
 1. the beginning. 2. the increasing. 3. the state. and 4. the declination: except at the least way, fluxe hath recourse within, or it be straight way repressed by repulsive medicines. But when it shall lightly passe over these four times, it is needfull either to resoluue and draw out the matter of it, or to bring it to suppuration, or else to putrifie & rot it, or to turne it into a *schirrus* and stonie hardnesse. And truly the signes of all these are to be sought out of the chapter that intreateth generally of them: where the markes of all times, *Iudicia.*

Symptomates
which hinder
the cure of
phlegmone.

and the meanes to finish tumours about nature (which they commonly call *apostemata*) be declared and expressed. But *phlegmone* is accompanied with many other euill symptomates which do alter and change the order of his cure, as are, vehement paine, which doth greatly occupie the sensible part: recourse of the matter from the kernels (which the Greeks call *Adena*, and commonly they be called *Emunctoria*) to the internall partes. Also mortification of the affected member (which they call *corruptio esthiomenica*) proceeding of too much refrigeration, and of a strong compacting or stuffing of the matter, which did cause the inflammation. Also a stonie and almost an indissoluble hardnesse, commonly called *Sclerotica*, which proceedeth through a certain ouerthwart & vncoward dissolution of the thinner humor. Wherefore in curing tumors which consist about nature, we must diligently oftentimes marke and consider, how farre we meane to proceed in the matter, and what accidents may chaunce vnllooked for, that so we may chiefly insit and be occupied about that most which appeareth, and is most vrgent: which *Galen* hath admonished vs of verie well, *Lib. 2. ad Glauconem*, and 13. *Therap.* speaking after this sort: In diseases whose resolution is difficult and hard, it is to be feared, least some remnant of them be left behind which is very hard. Wherefore in euery resolution, we must diligently consider into what thing euery tumour whose cure is once begun, may be changed. For that cure which is attempted by medicines that doe mightily dry, doth leaue very hard knobs which are hard to remooue: hither to *Galen*. But the time requireth, that we do now declare the cure of *phlegmone*.

CHAP. IX.

The order of curing *Phlegmone* caused of the defluxion
of humors affecting the outward parts
of the bodie.

The method of
curing phleg-
mone which is
yet in genera-
tion.

By what means
fluxe is stayed.
1. Retractio.

2. Repulsio.

3. Cause sum-
motio.

SEEING that *inflammatio*, which is called of the Greeks properly *phlegmone*, doth ingender and grow through the influxion of bloud, happening more abundantly to some member then nature requireth, and fluxe also (*phlegmone* being yet but beginning to raigne) is partly in begetting, and partly begotten alreadie: there must needs truely be a double consideration in the cure of the *phlegmone*, being yet but beginning: that is to say, to emptie out and auoid that which hath flowed alreadie, and to hinder and stop that which is now in flowing. Moreouer we shall stop fluxe, if we shall draw backe and repell the humor that floweth, if we will adde strength to the afflicted member, and if we shall seeke to remooue that which causeth the flux. We shall draw it backe and bring it into a contrarie defluxion of the other humours, by bloudletting, if strength and age will suffer it; but if not, we shall do it by applying cupping glasses, or by vsing bindings and frictions, and by heating those partes which haue a direct passage to the affected part. We shall bring back and repell flux, by ministering those medicines which are able to driue and turne the flux another way. We shall also remooue the causes that do bring or fetch defluxion to the member alreadie infected with *phlegmone*, by confirming & strengthening the member if it be weake, by vsing attraction if it be too loose, by cooling it if it be too hot,

as it is wont to be, by easing the paine if it be vehement, and by emptying the whole bodie with bloodletting, if it doth abound with blood, & if it sendeth infection to the member: of all which things we will speake by and by. But we do emptye out and auoide that which is flowed alreadie, & hath gotten it selfe into the affected part, not onely by those medicines which do digest, that is, which do discusse and dissolue, but also by those remedies which do bind together & refrigerate. And truly in phlegmonous tumors now beginning, we must rather vse (saith *Galen*) cooling and astrictiue medicines, then those which do concoct and digest, and so much the rather, if that which floweth be not of a thick substance. But if blood be greatly compact together in that part which *phlegmone* hath caught & taken vp, you must not apply any longer repercussive remedies (as we said before) but then it is conuenient to vse those which can digest. Also in an old & inueterate inflammatio, which after the euacuation of the whole body, and other some fit cure, hath left behind it a certaine hardnesse & blacknesse in the member, it is not vnprofitable (*Galen* also affirming the same) to take away the blood by scarification. And these things haue we spoken briefly and by a generall method, concerning the cure of inflammations that do happen through the defluxion of humours, which the Greekes properly are wont to call *phlegmone*: which things may be sufficient to content a reasonable Phisition, and one which is exercised in this kind of studie. But because we haue taken in hand to write these things for the practicioners of Chyrurgerie, & not for the learned only, it shall not be amisse, neither any thing from our purpose, if after this generall and compendious method, we set downe more particularly those things which not only the ancient Phisitions, but also the later sort of Chyrurgians haue left behind them in writing. Therefore aboue the generall rule (as they terme it) the Chyrurgians of our age are wont to reduce the order of curing *phlegmone*, into foure branches or particular intentions: that is to say, into a iust obseruation of a good diet. 2. The stopping of fluxe, or the turning away of the matter which went before. 3. the emptying out of the humor, which hath alreadie entertained himselfe in the member (which they call *materia coniuncta*), 4. and the correcting or amending of the symptomatics. The first intention therefore is made perfect by the due vsing or administration of fixe things, commonly called vnnaturall things, and by the vsing of those things also which are said to be annexed vnto them. And these things which are fixe in number, called of the Phisitions *res non naturales*, (as hath bene declared from the beginning of this treatise) are, the aire, meate and drinke, mouing and rest, sleepe and watching, emptying and filling, the affections of the mind, or the accidents. All which things (because *phlegmone* doth commonly prouoke feuer) ought to pertaine vnto coldnesse and moderate moistnesse. For which causes we haue thought good to set downe these precepts following. Let the sicke be in a pure and cleare aire, and that somewhat cold. Let him keep a thin diet, cold and moderately moist. Let him drinke small ale, or beere, or other small drinks. But if a vehement feuer shall haue any accesse (which is wont often to happen) let him altogether abstaine from wine. Let him not exercise, or moue that member which is beset with *phlegmone*. Let him be quiet as much as he can, especially if there be very great abundance of humors in the body. Let

*Vacuacion of
that which is
flowed alreadie
Gal. Ther. 13.*

Scarificates.

*Foure intentions
in the cure of
phlegmone.*

1. 2.

3.

4.

*1. The first intention is an
order in diet.
Res non naturales.*

*Aer.
Cibus.
Potus.
Morsus.
Quies.*

Somnus.
Repletio.
Inanitie.
Animi pathemata.
Venus.

him keepe a measure in sleeping and watching: and let him shun sleeping on the day time, especially about noone. Let him diligently beware of drunkenness and gluttonie. Let the belly be alwayes kept soft and soluble, and now and then let it be washed with clisters if need require. Let him flye anger, cryings out, and wrath, as deadly enemies. Let him abstaine from venereous actes, as a mortall foe.

2. *The auersion of the fluxe is the second intention.*
A veine is alwayes to be cut directly.

The second order in curing *Phlegmone*, which is the turning away of the fluxe, is dispatched by letting of blood, if strength and age doth suffer. But in all members of the body, whether you intend to repell, that is, to draw backe againe another way, or to turne it from that place at the side, either straight or uer against the place, or directly forth (which is called in Greeke κατεξω) a veine must alwayes be cut, although there be great abundance: but directly, the right sides do answer to the right part, and the left to the left. Therefore if *ophthalmia* doth annoy the right eye, or the squinancie doth affect the right side of the throat, the shoulder veine, or some other in his place (if that doth not appeare) must be cut in the right arme, by and by at the beginning of the fluxe. But if a humor doth flow in the knee, you must cut a veine in the elbow, either the outward or the middle veine, except you meane to scarifie the other legges, or breake the veine assunder in it, as *Galen* counsellerh in a certaine place.

The choise of blood letting is declared of the afflicted part.

Therefore the election of the cutting any veine, & the inuention to turne the humor another way (which *Hippocrates* calleth *antispasis*) is manifested and declared by the affected part, and by the place or situation of the member that is to be cured, as *Galen* 13. and 14. *meth. med.* and in other places, doth oftentimes teach. But that body which *Phlegmone* occupieth, not onely when it is plethoricke and full of humors, but also when the greatnesse of the euill doth exhort vs to it (though it be but meanely stuffed with humors) we must emptie & euacuat by letting of blood, if we will follow the aduise of *Galen*, who *lib. 13. meth. med.* commandeth that it should be so, thus writing: Paine, and truly the heate of the member wherein *Phlegmone* hath settled himselfe (although the whole body be voide of excrements) do happen by reason of the fluxe. But then it is expedient to do it but meanely, that is, to draw forth blood and to make euacuation, no further then it shall best agree with the age and nature of the patient. Further you must haue consideration both of the time of the yeare, of the nature of the aire wherein the sicke remaineth, and also of the former custome of the man. Also these do profit not a litle to draw backe the blood that floweth to the affected part, walkings, frictions, and binding of the opposite member, but first chiefly the detraction of blood, as hath bene sayd. Therefore if *phlegmone* appeareth in the hands, the legges are to be exercised, bound and rubbed, if in the legges, the hands must be also so vsed. But these things belong more vnto the Phisition then to the Chyrurgion.

3. *The third intention is the euacuation of the humor already compact in the member.*

We now dispatch the third scope or intention, in the beginnings of *phlegmone*, onely by applying repulsive things to that member which labourerh with the inflammation (excepting those cases before rehearsed.) For that which is filled with corrupted water (as *Galen* sayth) is emptied out, not onely by those medicines which digest, but also by those which do bind and refrigerate: as be those which are called *repellentia* & *regerentia*, repulsives and restrictives.

But

But in the increasing thereof at the present intentio, (that is) to emptie that which is flowd, and also to stoppe that no more doth abound, you must ioyn digestiue medicines with repressiues: but yet so, that the abundance and strength of the one may yet preuaile with the other. But in the state they must equally be commixed together by euen portions, & somewhat more mild & mitigating remedies must be applied, if paine be vehement. But in the end and declination of the state, it is requisite to euacuar by digestiues only that which is compact together, if that *phlegmone* must be ended by resolution or discussio. If truly it doth turne into abscession, and that it cannot be, that the gathering together and eruption of the matter should be letted, it shall be lawfull to vse medicines which can both matter, open & cleanse the vicer. Furthermore those remedies which do drie, are profitable in the end of both the euils (that is) of *phlegmone* and *abscessus*, for they do altogether consume that which remaineth of the humor, but when incision is made in the abscession which is already come to suppuration, you must lay on such a medicin as may dry without ero- sion or gnawing (as hereafter shall be said.) But in those phlegmonous tumors which now are but in the beginning, the most apt remedie to repell and driue backe, is *oxieraton* in *Galen*, which the Latines call *pusca aquosa*. It is a mixture of water and vinegar, so tempered together, that it may be drunke: and then (a sponge being wet and laied in this *oxieratum*) must be applied to that part where *phlegmone* is. But in steade of *oxieratum*, by the counsell of *Galen*, we may take sharpe wine, or apply cold things onely to the partes which are about the sinewes. These are the words of *Galen*: In those members which are about the sinewes, it shall be sufficient in the beginning of *phlegmone*, to lay on a sponge dipped either in cold water, wherewith a litle vinegar is mingled, or in water on- ly, or in sharpe and soure wine. For the same purpose also this cataplasme of the same *Galen* is very effectually made of syngreene and the rindes of pome- granates foddin in wine of *thru*, that is, *sumach*, and *polene*. This by restraining doth repell that which floweth, and by drying doth emptie out that which is contained in the tumor, and both wayes it doth strengthen and corroborate the affected parts. The remedie hath bene described of the later sort: of *Au- cen* after this sort as followeth. R. of the iuyce of syngreene. ℥. j. of wine that is thicke of substance, and sharpe in taste, ℥. ss. of barley meale, one quart, of the rind of pomegranates, and *sumach* powdered. ana. ℥. ss. boile them and make a liniment. There is also another which greatly auaieth for the same purpose, inuented of *Haly Abbas*: R. of *santalum* white and red, ana. ℥. iij. of *memitha*, which is called *Glaucium*. ℥. ij. of *terra cimolia*, and bole armoniack. ana. ℥. i. ss. let all be brayed into very fine floure or powder, and well searced, then dissolve them in the iuyce of syngreene, or purslaine, or lettuce, and make a li- niment. Another also in the beginning of phlegmonous inflammations, very common and much vsed, which is very profitable for greene wounds, and brues taken lately. It is made of the white of an egge, of oile of roses, and of the distilled water of roses, that is, of rose water, wherein you must wet fine clothes & lay them to the inflamed member, & let them be changed often. But there are many other medicines both simple and compound, which do profite in the beginning of *phlegmone* to restraine and repell fluxe, which are to be sought

Repressiues in the increase must exceed digestiues.

If phlegmone doth turne into abscession.

Repulsiues are to be vsed in the beginning of phlegmone. Oxieratum.

Lib. 13. Meth. meden.

Galen's cata- plasma, lib. 2. ad Glau.

Fen. 3. lib. 4. tract. 1. cap. 3.

Haly Abbas Linimentum.

Aliud.

out of other Authors, which haue written of this thing. But these shall content vs for this time.

Remedies to be vſed in the increaſing of Phlegmone, Amongſt the remedies which in the increaſe of *phlegmone*, being outwardly applied do greatly helpe, oyle of roſes is maruellouſly effectuall, (the Greekes call it *rhodonon*.) For this doth partly draw back, and partly doth digeſt through the vapor: becauſe it perfectly holdeth a middle nature betwene the oyle and the roſes. Therefore in oyle of roſes there is a certaine aſtriction, which cannot

Lib 3. de ſimp. medis.

Oyle of roſes a preſent remedy in the increaſe of phlegmone.

(ſayth *Galen*) ouerco the weake parts of the tumour: but when they haue pierced ſomewhat deeper, it beginneth then to worke outwardly according to the ſtrength, both to thruſt together, to draw into one place, & to thicken greatly, wherby it commeth to paſſe, that in the augmenting of *phlegmonous* tumors, oyle of roſes is a moſt excellent and readie helpe. In the augmenting of *phlegmone* there is another in *Auicene* verie proſieable. *Rx.* of the leaues of mallowes *M. j.* of wormwood, roſes. ana. *℥. ℥.* of barley meale. *℥. j.* oyle of cammomil, quart *℔.* ſeeth them, and bray them together, and bring them to the faſhion of a ſoft emplaſter. Another of the ſame. *Rx.* of wine boiled either to the halfe or third part, (one we call *sapa*, the other *deſrutum*) quart. *j.* roſe water, and vineger. ana. quart. *℔.* ſaffron. *℥. ij.* let them be a little het ouer a ſoft fire, then ſtraine them, and dip a cloth in the liquour of that decoction, which you muſt apply to the *phlegmonous* member after the maner of an epitheme. Moreouer ſuch kinds of remedies which are vſed in the increaſing of the inflammation, and haue their power and vertue commixed together of reſreſſiue and digeſtiue medicines, ought ſeldomer to be removed and chaunged, then thoſe which repell the matter, being miniſtered in the beginning of *phlegmone*.

What things do helpe in the ſtate of Phlegmone.

Aetius, in the vigor or ſtate of *phlegmone*, and when there is vehement paine felt, hath ſet downe theſe remedies: as mallowes mingled with a litle bread, & with oyle of roſes. Alſo melilior boiled in the liquor called *paſſum*, and applied with a litle bread: of the like vertue (ſaith he) are dates ſodden in *paſſum*, and mingled with bread and oyle of roſes. Another alſo, which digeſteth through breathing in the vigor of *phlegmone*, very effectual. *Rx.* pellitorie of the wall, mallowes. ana. *M. j.* fine branne, the floure of meale. ana. pug. *j.* fenugreeke, dill. ana. *℥. ℥.* oyle of cammomill, quart. *℔.* let them be boiled in wine, and wel braied together till they be well incorporated, and make an emplaſter. Another taken out of *Galen. Lib. 13. Therap.* *Rx.* of the crummes of bread made of corne. *℔. j.* ſteepe it in hote water the ſpace of one houre, then ſtraine it, and commixe therewith of the beſt honie, quart. *j.* and make it to the forme of a cataplaſme. This doth diſſolue and mitigate paine. *Auicene* counſelleth to miniſter in the rigor of *phlegmone*, *vinquentum baſilicon*, and that which is made of the iuices thereof called *diachylon*: but the one is good to molliſie, the other to ripen and bring to matter: although notwithstanding both of them do carie with them a digeſting qualitie. But theſe and other ſuch remedies, which are miniſtered to diſſolue that which is already flowed, and to eaſe paine, becauſe they are of a very moiſt nature, muſt be changed verie ſeldome. Furthermore, when as by the remedies before mentioned, the humor which is fallen into the member that is troubled with *phlegmone*, is diſſolued and diſcuſſed, and the tumour together with the extention thereof is diminished, and the griefe ſomewhat aſſwaged, then

Emplaſtrum Galeni.

then it is to be iudged that the declination of the inflammation is at hand, at which time you must vse onely discussive things, as are wild mallowes bruised, *what reme-*
 annointed, raisins (the kernels being taken out) applied with bread and a litle *dies must be*
 honie, & barely meale vsed also with honie. Also moist wool, flaxe, a sponge, or *vsed in the de-*
 some such like thing, wet in hote wine, then streined or wringed, you must mi- *clination of*
 nister it: for all these haue an excellent discussive nature, & prouoke not pain. *phlegme.*
 But if by reason of the stubburnesse and hardnesse of the disease, the affected
 place doth containe too great plentie of matter, and that such as resisteth re-
 solution, you must not by and by (as some do) breake forth vnto Chyrurgie,
 that is, to make incision, or to scald it and burne it, but you must labour by al
 meanes possible, that the humour collected together may be digested and dis-
 solved by such medicines as can worke this effect. For it is conuenient to at-
 tempt the digestion of the humor by such medicines as can profit in that case,
 before you begin to cut the inflammation. But if the tumour will not yeeld to
 digestive medicines, and no further hope doth remaine to dissolve that which
 is compact in it, but the matter seemeth rather to pertaine vnto suppuration,
 you must come vnto those things which can ripen and procure matter. And *what resolu-*
 we hope that a tumour (although it degenerate into abscession) may through *tion is to be ho-*
 the vapour be digested, if the matter which exciteth the same, be thinne and *ped for.*
 little, and fit to be resolved: or if it remaineth not any thing deeply within, and
 the skinne of the affected member be thinne. But if the humour be plentifull,
 and thicke, and lurketh very deepe, and the skinne also thicke, exhalation or
 resolution is not to be hoped for. Therefore you must come vnto those helps
 which can ripen & prouoke matter, of which force is this cataplasme, made of *Pus mouentia.*
 wheate meale, sodden moderately in water and oile: for this (Galen being our *Lib. 2. ad*
 Authour) doth speedily bring to suppuration those inflammations which will *Glauconem.*
 not yeeld to digestion, & it hath also a heate like vnto our heate, that is, tempe-
 rate and meane, and by reason of the meale and oile (which haue a certaine
 clammy and gluish propertie, whereby in stopping the pores, they hinder the
 naturall heate of the member) it hath the force of an emplaister, which two
 things are most required in medicines that do ripen and moue matter. There
 are some which do mingle with this cataplasme a litle saffron to colour it. But
 if a tumour, by reason of the thicke and viscus humours which are stuffed in
 it, be hardly brought vnto suppuration, this cataplasme doth notably helpe
 which is made of the decoction of the rootes of *althea*, and of figges that be
 sweet and fat, which do resemble the thicknesse of honie, comixed with wheat
 meale, as followeth. R. of the foresaid decoction, ℥. j. of wheat meale, ℥. ℥.
 boile them thoroughly together, & bring them into the forme of a cataplasme.
 But if in stead of wheate meale, you vse barely meale or crible bread, which
 the Greekes call *συσχυριστον*, it more auaieth to discusse the inflammation the
 to bring it to suppuration (as Galen hath noted *lib. secundo ad Glauconē*) There
 is another also excellently profitable to prouoke matter in the declination of
phlegme, which is commonly vsed of the common Chyrurgians. R. of the
 barke of the roote of Marsh mallowes, that is, of *althea*, of the roote of lillies,
 grownswell, called in Greck *erigeron*, leaues of mallowes, ana. M. j. wheate meale,
 quar. j. of the meale of the seed of flaxe, ʒ. j. fresh swines grease, ℥. ℥. seeth the

Haly Abbas
remembreth
this cata-
plasm.
Alud.

A common
cataplasme.

herbes in sufficient quantitie of water, and bray them with the other things in a mortar, and make a cataplasme. But if (when the matter is gathered together and dispatched,) the abscession whereinto *phlegmone* is turned, doth not open of the owne accord, (the members now being free from the inflammation) you must go about to euacuate and emptie out the matter which cannot be digested, with a penknife, or some such instrument, or by some drawing medicine. Then you must bring the vicer vnto a scarre, like vnto other vicers, which you must do by cleansing the sore, by filling it with flesh, and joining it together, which at the last will cause a scarre. Moreover, if the matter be thicke, which bringeth forth the tumor, and very disobedient to resolution and digestion, and be exceedingly compact in the passages of the fleshe (as is wont to be in continuall inflammations which be naughtily cured, the thinn part of the humor being resolved, & the thicke part remaining still in the passages, then you must not be afraid to vse scarification, especially (as *Galen* admonitheth, *lib. 2. ad Glauc.*) when hardnesse, blewnesse, or blacknesse do appeare.

*Symptomatum
correctio.*

Dolor.

*Lenifiers of
paine in phleg-
mone.*

*Lib. 2. ad
Glauconem.*

Crocum.

The fourth intention, which in the cure of *phlegmone* was propounded to the Chyrurgion and Phisition, is the correction and the removing of the Symptomes, which do so suddenly come vpon the inflammation, & those are paine, recourse of the matter, whereof the tumour is raised to the inward parts, putrefaction and corruption of the materie member, and as it were a certaine stony hardnesse remaining behind, by reason of some mightie drying and digesting medicines. Therefore if vehement paine shall happen to the tumour, you must labour by all meanes possible to mitigate and assuage the same, because (besides that it weakeneth the strength, and hindreth the lawfull duties of the bodie) it prouoketh fluxe and draweth bloud vnto it. If paine therefore doth grievously torment in *phlegmone*, straight way you must lay on those medicines which can lenifie and ease the vehemencie of the paine without any hurt, as is this of *Galen*, which was made of the liquor called *passum*, of oile of roses, and a litle waxe melted with them both: but this is to be taken in moist wool, which hath much oile in it, and to be ministred cold in sommer, and hote in winter. Therefore such a medicine being tempered & applied (as is said before) doth rarefie, extendate, digest & euacuate: it maketh the humor that is sharp, viscus, grosse, or plentifull, & which cleaueth to the aggrieved parts, to be equall, constant & moderate, & it discusseth the thicke vapour which can find no fit issue, & so it mitigateth paine: it bringeth no hurt with his heat, for it maketh dull or taketh away the heat of the oile of roses. Whereby it cometh to passe, that this remedy doth assuage paine without doing any hurt, and disprofiteth not the euill, as hote water, oile, & wheate meale, which things in an inflammation that happeneth with paine cannot be profitable (as *Galen* witnesseth.) For these do loosen & release through their heat & moisture, & do resolue the strength of the member, whereby it was made more weak, & more prone & apt to entertain flux. To the same vse (that is, to allay the paine in *phlegmone*) you must apply effectually oile of roses, yolkes of egges, crummes of white bread steeped in hote water, & then straine them, and commixe them with oile of roses. These also are a present remedie: mallows sodden in water, and mingled with bran and oile of roses, or with oile of violets. But *Auisen* in mitigating every paine useth saffron, which

which he profitably cōmixeth with asswaging medicines. Furthermore if the sharpnesse of paine be so great & vehemēt, that it cannot be eased with those things, which because they mitigate and lenifie paine (the succours of nature being stretched out) are properly called *Anodina & paregorica*, that is, prouokers of sleepe & helpers of paine: you must passe ouer vnto thole aides which we call *narcotica*, that is, stupefactiues. Amongst the which we haue tried by daily experience besides the authority of some writers, that henbane hath profited in this case maruellously, whole leaues you must take, & bake them in the hote embers, then mingle with them fresh swines greace & apply them to the place. This doth pacifie vehemēt paine, & bringeth phlegmonous tumors vnto suppuration. But, while you attempt this thing, you must haue a diligēt care least you apply too much moisture, because it is a thing, which in the beginnings of inflammations, when fluxe aboundeth with great griefe, is very pernicious (as we said a litle before.) But if you feare recourse of the matter that excireth *phlegmone* to the inward parts, & that chiefly toward the principall members, you must cause it to come foorth by some drawing medicines, or else by applying cupping glasses, which do draw vehemently from the inward parts. But if by reason of vehement drying and digesting medicines being rashly applied to the inflammation, the reliētes of the tumor do turne into *Scirrhus*, you shall boile in water the roots of wild cucumber (which is commonly called in herbaries and shops *cucumer asininus*) or of briony or of *Asarum*, seething them oftentimes alone by themselves (as *Galen* commandeth) and sometime putting to them fat figges. Then commix meale with water, to the which also put a little suet, either of a goose or a cocke, but if there be not plenty of these at hand, adde swines greace and make a cataplasme. This doth notably heale that schirrhous affect which through mighty drying and digesting medicines in the member which *phlegmone* occupied, doth still remaine behind. Also the aforesaid herbes together with the rootes of *Althaea*, being after a moderate boyling well mingled with bread and suet, and then applied, do discusse and dissolue such hardened tumors: as *Galen* doth plainly teach *Lib. 2. ad Glauconem*. Therefore if you feare, that phlegmonous tumors, which are scarcely digested through their vapour, neither yet are easily concocted, be turned into *Scirrhus*, you must alwayes commixe with digestiues those things which can mollicke and soften. Moreouer if any part of the mattering member shall putrefie, you must straight way cut it out, or else seeke to cure it by many deepe scarifications: afterward you must sprinkle on it salt water, & the lay on it an emplaister made of the meale of beanes or rases sodden in *oximel*. There be other things also to be proued in this case, which we will by and by set downe in the cure of Gangrena, But now it shal be more profitable, if we comprehend the Chapters concerning the cure of such phlegmonous affects in some short sentences. And first we wil begin to declare the sum of the cure of *phlegmone* being yet but beginning, and not yet vexing with any grievous paine. 1. Let the whole body be emptied with cōuenient purgations, & especially by letting of blood, if nothing do let it. 2. Let the inflamed member be all to washed and annointed with such things as haue power to drie backe the flowing of the humor. 3. Let the humor, which is contained in the

Nota de hy-
sciam.

Recurfus ma-
teria ad inte-
riora.

Durities reli-
cta.

Galen's cata-
plasm for
hard tumours.

Putrefactio.

Galen lib. 2.
ad Glau.

1

2

3

- 4 *The summe of the cure of phlegmone when it afflicteth with much paine.* aggrieved place, be emptied out by drying and digesting medicines 4. Let the affected part, and those also which are about it, be strengthened and fortified. Now followeth the summe of the cure of the sayd *phlegmone*, when it tormenteth with a more grievous paine. 1. When as inflammation being caused through the defluxion of humors, doth vex with great paine, you must mitigate the vehemency of the same without any hurt doing. 2. Then, you must not minister those things, which do strongly bind, or vnloosen through their heate and moisture, or resolute strength. 3. But you must apply to the inflamed place such helps, as by meanly binding, can repell that which floweth, and evacuate that which infesteth the affected member. 4. Applie to the tumour, a sponge dipped in sharpe wine or *posca*, that so you may prevent the passage of the humour that floweth. 5. If these things shall profit, and yet the matter appeareth not any where, you must vse soft & gentle emplasters, & those especially, which are made as remedies against fluxe. 6. Amongst those things which are of power to drie, & repell the fluxe of blood without paine, you must chuse the best, as is that resolution with oile of roses, which is made of the stone *chalcitis*: then lay vpon it pure woll dipped in sharpe wine. 7. But when matter appeareth in the member, you must often apply the afore sayd cataplasme, or that rather which is made of barley meale. 8. If the abundance of thicke matter doth exceede the medicines, so that there is no hope of resolution, you must make an issue for that which yeeldeth not vnto digestion, in that place especially where it is highest. 9. After incision, you must drie the wound, if paine be not vrgent, and cleanse it and scoure it without griefe. 10. If after incision, paine be vehement, you must first assuage it with fomentes, then with a cataplasme, straight after with some moist medicine, or with such a one as drieth not. 11. If the member, be still enflamed, lay on a cataplasme made of a certaine pulse called *chittes*, which doth empty out and drie backe.

CHAP. X.

Of a Carbuncle, and a Cancre, and of the maladie named Sphacelus, all which they call sanguinea pustula, i. blood pushes.

De Carbunculo.
lo.

*αἰσπράξ.
γανγραῖνα.
σφακελός.
Gangrena &
Sphacelus do
follow great
phlegmones.
The generatio
& description
of a Carbuncle.*

SEING that we haue intreated abundantly, as much as pertaineth to a Chyrurgion, of *phlegmone*, which is the first difference of inflammations, & most incident to mans body: it now remaineth that we speake first of *Carbunculus*, which is called in Greeke *αἰσπράξ*: next of *Gangrena*, the Cancre; and last, of *Sphacelus* (which with the expounder of *Auicenna* they commonly call *esthiomenon*) for that hath his beginning of a bloodie fluxe, as *phlegmone* hath, and doth prouoke a most sharpe feuer: but these are wont oftentimes to accompany great *phlegmones*, as *Galen libello de Tumoribus præter naturam*, and in manie other places hath diligently noted. A Carbuncle therefore proceedeth of the flowing of blood, which is blacke, thicke, filthie, burning, and exceedingly hote, with the which if there be mingled but certaine thinne humours, there are raised vp on the out side of the skinned whelkes or pushes, like things that be burned or scalded; & then this inflammation is called *Carbunculus*.

carbunculus cum pustula, the Carbuncle with the push, which euill truly doth happen very often. In the meane time notwithstanding it beginneth (although seldome) without push or pushes; but then is caused a crusty or hard vicer: I say without push or pushes, because sometime there ariseth with this euill one onely push of some greatnesse, which being broken, the vicer is brought forth with a scurfe or scabbe: but oftentimes nor one push alone doth breake out, but many little and slender ones, sticking thicke in the member like vnto the seedes of hirse: which being burst forth, there doth likewise arise a certain crusty vicer, such as hote iron doth cause. But betweene their beginning, before that the pusshes do appeare, they trouble the member throughly. Now these scales or scurfe do sometime receiue an ashie or earthly colour, sometime blackenesse, and in that place the skinne cannot be cafed, but it is as it were fastened to the inner flesh. The flesh also about it is brought to an exceeding hote inflammation, which the Greekes call *Phlogosis*, and is blacke in colour, and shineth after the manner of lime or pitch, as though there were a little blacke commixed with a great quantity of red. This colour is caused altogether of melancholy. And these truly are the signes and tokens of a Carbuncle drawne from the very effect it selfe, to the which may be added a very grieuous and vehement paine of the afflicted member, as though it were bound with strong chaines. They also which are thus affected do necessarily fall into a feauer, and that sooner then they which are vexed with *Phlegmone*, *crisipelatosa*. But if any poyson doth lurke within (as oftentimes it chaunceth) the sicke persons are miserably tormented with perbraking & continuall vomiting, together with a want of appetite and lothing of meate. There are presented also with them quaking of the heart, panting or mouing of the stomacke, and an often fainting of courage. This euill is called properly of the Chyrurgians of our age, *Anthrax*, differing from *Carbunculus*, by reason of the malice and crueltie of the euill (as they please.) When as in very deepe among the Greeks is the very same, that *Carbo* or *Carbunculus* is among the Latins. Therefore it is superfluous to distinguish, and to handle in diuers Chapters the signes and cure of them (which all Chyrurgians almost do vse at this time.) But these Carbuncles do chiefly arise of violent causes killing the people suddenly, and they follow a pestilent plague. Wherefore there is required a diligent heede or care about them, neither must they in any case be neglected. Moreouer although *carbunculus* or euery carbuncle be a sharpe disease, dangerous & contagious: yet the worst of all and the most deadly is that of *Anticen*, which doth arise in the purest places and neare to the principall members. For it is to be feared, lest this venomous matter which excireth the Carbuncle, do suddenly returne to the inward parts, and to some principall member: which if it shall happen, the sicke is in great danger of his life, especially if any euill signes shall bewray the same. But if the exhalation thereof be onely filthy and corrupted with abhominable poyson, it is inough to kill the man, if a carbuncle chaunceth about the stomacke, or about the cheekes or iawes, it suddenly oftentimes (as *Celsus* saith) bursteth out the stomacke. And lesse deadly is that Carbuncle in *Auicen*, which appeareth first red, and then yellow, or of orange colour. But if it waxeth blew or black, it killeth almost euery man, of the colour,

4. Iudgement
of the acci-
dentes.

and there is none that is iudged more dangerous of the owne nature then it, If the accidenties which are wont to accompany with this disease, be very much remitted or released, there is some hope of recoury. But if they be still more and more continually stretched out, and made more vehement, then truly the matter is in great despaire.

CHAP. XI.

Of the cure of a Carbuncle.

The cure of a
carbuncle must
be begun by
blood letting.

*Vena è directo
secunda.*

Deepe scarifi-
cation.

Sprinkling of
hote salt wa-
ter.

Arsenicum
Sanguisuga.

Fluxe in a car-
buncle cannot
be turned a-
way, neither
ought it.
Lib. 14. Ther.

A cataplasme
good for a car-
buncle.

Cataplasma de
Arnoglossa.
A cataplasme
of pomegra-
nates.

GALEN *Lib. method. med. 14. & secundo ad Glaucon. m.* commaundeth that the cure of a Carbuncle (hauing set downe a conuenient order of diet) must be begun with blood letting by and by at the beginning (if none of those things do let, which are wont to forbid the cutting of a veine) who also wil- leth to draw blood euen to the fainting of the heart: for it profiteth much those that be troubled with this euill. And this alwayes is to be marked, that the veine be stricken directly against the vicer. But the choise of the veine is manifested vnto vs of the affected member (as we haue sayd in the cure of phlegmone.) Therefore in that matter, euen a skilfull Phisition must take coun- sell of the Chyrurgian, who hath the knowldge to declare, from what place and how much blood is to be drawne out. The veine (as it behoueth) being cut, if nothing (as I sayd) do hinder you, it shall not be amisse to scarifie the sayd tumour, vsing somewhat deepe cuts or wounds, by reason of the thick- nesse of the malicious humour, that is, such cuts as are somewhat deeper then ordinarie (as it pleaseth *Galen.*) There are some, which would haue scarification made in the crustie or hard vicer onely, and then they straight way sprinkle those incisions with hote salt water, that blood might not meete togeth- r in them, or increase, but that it might be emptied out. Somtime they also apply some gnawing medicine, as arsenicke, which in this case among the rest hath the greatest vertue: but some do minister to the scarified place horse leeches or blood suckers. But strong repulsives are in no wise to be vsed or ap- plied to the aggriued member (although refrigeration be needfull, which indeede doth belong vnto the inflammation.) For you cannot so turne away the fluxe or preuent the malice hereof, because of the thicknesse of the hu- mour. And if at any time you shall do it, you shall find some other naughtie humour (as *Galen* saith) which is setled in the depth or inward parts of the bodie: but this humour must not be suffered to flow abundantly (the same *Galen* being our authour.) Therefore such remedies are to be sought for, as by a moderate repression can digest or disperse the humour. Such truly is that cataplasme, both that which is made of plantaine, and also that which is made of lintels twise sodden. But with this you must commixe crummes of bread, which hath bene baked in an ouen. Let the bread (after *Galen* coun- sell) be neither altogether without branne, nor very full of it. But this kind of cataplasme is called of the latter sort *Emplastrum de Arnoglossa*, which they make after this sort, *Rx.* of plantaine, lintels, bread baked in the ouen, of each a like portion, let them be boyled in water. To these *Auicenna* putteth gaules, who also for this purpose doth allow the cataplasme which is made of the two pomegranates sodden either in vineger, or in sharpe or tart water, and these they

they apply both to the affected member, and also to the partes about it. Of this mind also is *Paulus Aegineta*, who saith, that if you will plucke vp a Carbuncle as it were by the rootes, and disseuer it from hauing aniesocietie with the partes about it, you must seeth in vineger a sharpe pomegranate cut in small peeces: when the sore is corrupted you must wipe it smooth, and cleanse it with a linnen cloth, and when it waxeth drie, you must moisten it with vineger. Also the kernell of the olde silberd nutte or of the young doth ripen and breake Carbuncles. But the best remedie for the partes lying about it, is the ointment made of bole armoniacke, of the oile of roses or mirtles, and of vineger: which is vsed, because the humour which hath flowed already, should not returne backe againe within. There are some which doe drawe and allure the poyson and malicious humour in a pestilent Carbuncle, with sucking or drawing it with cupping glasses, and with medicines that can bring the humour to the place which is beset with Carbo. Which thing truly I would also counsell to doe, if *Arteriae* doth occupie the arteries, and the partes about the lesser veines, and if the fluxe doth moue but slowly. But if it rusheth or breaketh forth strongly and abundantly, the rage of the humour must be tamed and bridled by medicines that can moderately repress (as of late we recited out of *Galen*,) least that there be caused too vehement paine through the fluxe that floweth so strongly in the affected member, and so the euill be made more painefull and angrie. But vpon this hard or crustie vicer, especially when the member is putrified, you must lay some strong medicine, both which can greatly drie (but not that which can concoct or digest), and also which can moue the matter, (seeing that so you shall fauour the putrefaction of the member:) of this nature is that of *Andron*, *Musa*, *Pasta*, or *Polyda*: and it must be washed in some sweete wine, or in *Sapa*, by reason of the thicknesse of the filthie humour. That Cataplasme also which in *Galen* is made of the meale of Tares and oximell, is rightly applyed, when as the vicer is malignant and corrupted. But commonly the ointment called *unguentum Aegyptiacum* is to be applyed. But if these things doe little profite, you must come vnto more sharpe remedies, which haue euen a fierie force. Of the which kinde are these, the roote of *Dracunculus*, or *Aristolochia* broken and layd in vineger, lime, arsenicke, yellow oker, and other of this sort, which do burne like fire. These do profite sufficiently, if they doe thoroughly resolute the corrupted member, euen from the quicke. This being done, whatsoeuer is corrupted and dead within you must by and by pull away, and plucke it vp by the rootes. But when after these gnawing medicines there followeth a scurfe or scarre, which is drawne euery way from the quicke flesh, the wound truly, which is raised through them, must be diligently regarded, as in other sores that be burned. But being in extreame diseases, (as *Hippocrates* saith) extreame remedies are perfectly the best: we are constrained sometime, (our medicines not preuailing with the euill) to root out a malicious Carbuncle by actual or manuell instruments (as they call it) that is, with a bright knife or some other such thing. But the end of burning is, while there is sense of paine euery way, as *elsus* hath taught very well. After these things the crust or scabbe which is vpon the vicers, must be resolved by

*Paulus.**Nyx auellana.*

Remedies to draw the poyson in a carbuncle.

What must be applyed to a crustie vicer.

A cataplasme of the meale of Tares and oximell.

Unguentum Aegyptiacum. Adurentia medicamenta.

When adustion must be vsed.

Finis aduredi.

Pſſi.

such medicines as are meete for that purpose. But if the sick shall refuse to suffer aduſtion, the helpe of ſome poore and baſe fellow is to be vſed, who by laying holde on the Carbuncle with his teeth, may quite exinguiſh and pull vp the ſame. As were in time paſt certaine people in Italie named *Pſſi*, who did ſucke their wounds, which they received by the ſtinging of Serpents, and that without any harme taking thereby. Moreouer the Carbuncle being thus taken away, or conſumed any other way, the hollowneſſe thereof (the inflammation now ceaſing) muſt firſt be cleaned, & afterward being made pure and cleane, it muſt be healed with filling medicines (which the Greekes call *Sinnolotica*.) Which when it is thoroughly filled, neither doth there remaine any hollow place at all in it, it is conuenient to vſe thoſe things which can bring it to a ſcarre, as in other vlcers. But if the euill doth not rage very much, but ſhal ſeeme to offer vs truce and peace, it is ripened and opened (as *Auicene* ſaith) by applying figges commixed well together with leauen and ſalt. And when this Cataplaſme or the like is layd too twiſe or thrife, the place is wont to appeare altogether blacke and full of chinkes or cliſtes, and then the place is to be ſcoured and cleaned with mundificatiues made of *Apium*. That medicine

Maturatiuū
Auicenne.Mundificati-
uum ex Apio.A common ca-
taplaſme vſed
in Paris.Conſolida-
maior.

Scabioſa.

what things
do reſolue the
Cruſts of vlcers

Theriaca.

also which is made of the yolkes of egges and of ſalt, if it be often applied, it ripeneth and openeth a Carbuncle, (as *Theodoricus* writeth.) For the ſame purpose we vſe commonly at this day that medicine which is made of honie, ſalt, wheate meale, and the yolkes of egges. *Conſolida maior*, that is, comferie (which the Greekes call *Symphyton*) being brayed betweene two ſtones, doth heale *Anthrax* very maruellouſly (as they report) and within the ſpace of one day it quite deſtroyeth it, ſo that it needeth no other curing after any more: beſides alſo it is a common helpe for other woundes. Some alſo do declare wonderfull things of *Scabioſa*: becauſe that (being eaten or drunke in wine) it thruſteth out internall tumours to the externall places, and it doth diſſolue and diſcuſſe them without paine.

In the vlcers of a carbuncle theſe do reſolue the cruſtes or ſcurfe, freſh butter, ſwines ſuet, and other fat things of that ſort. For this purpose alſo this emplaſter following doth maruellouſly profite: for beſides that it reſolueth the ſcarre, that is, the cruſt, more ſpeedily then the aforeſaid things, it alſo aſſwageth the paine that is cauſed either of the ſharpe & burning medicines, or of the bright inſtrument, and it mightily diſcuſſeth the malicious humor, which exciteth the Carbuncle. R^e. of wheat and barley meale. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ iij. of the which make a ſolide emplaſter with the decoction of mallowes, violettes, and the rootes of *Althea*, and put thereunto of butter, and ſwines ſuet melted. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. the yolkes of two egges, which muſt be put in when they are taken off the fire, and all theſe muſt be diligently commixed and incorporate together with the aforeſaid rootes and herbes; which muſt be well beaten and brayed together the one with the other, and then ſifted through a ſcarce. As concerning their diet, epithemes, cordials, & other of that kind, which are made to ſtrengthen the heart, alſo euacuations, if they be needefull, they do altogether pertain vnto that part of Phiſick, which cureth with diet and medicines. Wherefore in miniſtring theſe, you muſt aſk the aduiſe or counſel of ſome learned Phiſition. But commonly all men almoſt do vſe *theriaca*, which is w^ot to be miniſtered

ro the greatnesse of a beane, made of the water of scabios, or if a very sharpe and vehement feauer be present, you must make it of rose water, or water of buglosse: which the sicke must take sixe houres after meate. But because we haue made mention before of the Trochiskes of *Andron*, *Polyida*, and *Musa* (which *Galen* so greatly vsed) it shall not be amisse to set downe here the description of them.

R. of Cytrines, that is, of the first floures or buddes of a pomegranate. $\mathfrak{z}$. x. *Andronis* of alume that may be cut, $\mathfrak{z}$. iiij. of coperous or vitrioll $\mathfrak{z}$. xij. of mirrhe $\mathfrak{z}$. iiij. of *Trochiscus*. frankensence, *Aristolochia*, and gaules ana, $\mathfrak{z}$. viij. of salt ammoniacke. $\mathfrak{z}$. iiij.

R. of pomegranate rindes, $\mathfrak{z}$. vj. of mirrhe. $\mathfrak{z}$. viij. of alume that may be cut *Polyida* $\mathfrak{z}$. v. of frankensence. $\mathfrak{z}$. iiij. of coperous. $\mathfrak{z}$. iiij. of the gall of a bul. $\mathfrak{z}$. vj. let these *Pillus*. be taken in sweete wine.

R. of cut alume, $\mathfrak{z}$. iiij. frankensence, $\mathfrak{z}$. iiij. of mirrhe as much, of coperous, *Polyida* $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. of the floures of pomegranates. $\mathfrak{z}$. xij. of bulles galle. $\mathfrak{z}$. vj. *Aloes* $\mathfrak{z}$. viij. Take *aluz*. these in sharpe wine.

R. of cut alume, *Aloes*, mirrhe, coperous, ana, $\mathfrak{z}$. vj. of saffron, & of the dregs *Musa trochisc* of the oyle of saffron. $\mathfrak{z}$. iiij. of the floures of pomegranates. $\mathfrak{z}$. iiij. Let them be *an*. taken in *mulsum* made of *Falerum*.

CHAP. XII.

Of Gangrena and Sphacelus.

GALEN lib. 2. ad Glauconem, calleth them Cankers, which by reason of the greatnesse of the inflammation be made & changed into mortifications, yet they be not thoroughly engendred and alreadie confirmed. The force and tyrannie of this euill is so outrageous, that except it be remedied very speedily, the affected member doth easily represent the habite of death, that is, it doth very readily drawe together the extinction and quenching both of life, sense and mouing. But when the member is so corrupted and so feeble, that it is altogether without sense, and as it were dead, so that whether it be stroken, or cut, or burned, the sicke feeleth it not, then the Greekes call this euill no longer *Gangrena*, but *Sphacelus*, the Latins *Syderatio*, the latter sort call it *Esthiomonon*: which name also they giue vnto *Gangrena*. But *Auicenna* calleth it *Esthiomonon*, when as the corruption therof doth passe to the continuall parts, which terme the Grecians do vse in another order. Some call this affect sometime *Herpeta Esthiomonon*, sometime very improperly, *Cancer vlceratus*. But this affect chanceth also to the bones, when as the flesh being beset & compassed about with them, bringing forth and ingendring filthy and stinking corruption, doth infect them with this horrible poison, and consumeth them with most corruptible rottennesse. Therefore when as the member shall together appeare void of life, sense and mouing, you must by and by pare it to the quicke as neare as you can to the sound flesh. *Sphacelus* therefore differeth from *Gangrena*, because the one doth grow vp in the bones (as we haue declared) and not in the flesh and the vessels of the bodie onely: but the other commeth not to the bone. Notwithstanding it is one kind of *Sphacelus*, but it borroweth a proper and singular name beside the common terme. This kind of corruption being

What a Cancer is, & where it hath his beginning.

Gangrena pessimus tyrannus

Sphacelus.

Syderatio offi-
um.

The benigne d member must straightway be pared.

*Ignis Sancti
Antony.*

*Three causes
of mortification.*

*1.
What things
do dissolve the
mixture of the
member.*

2.

*3.
Signes of gan-
grena & spha-
celus.*

1.

2.

3.

4.

Iudicia, lib 4.

Lib. 5.

perfect in the affected part, and altogether deprived of sense, is called commonly in France *Ignis Sancti Antony*. In another place, *Ignis Sancti Martialis*. But this mortification of the members, or the extinguishing and destroying of the life in them, chaunceth three waies. One way, when as the member can no longer receiue the life that is sent to it fro the heart through the arteries, by reason of the dissolving of the mixture and consent of the affected member. Which mixture and harmonie of the member is dissolved and destroyed, either because of too much cold, (as sometime it happeneth in sharpe and boysterous winters) or by reason of immoderate, rash, and vnadvised refrigeration of the inflammation, or else because of the exceeding and vmeasurable vehement heate, and poyson of the inflammations, and malignant vlcers (as they call them.) Another way *gangrena* and *sphacelus* are caused, when as the life being gotten into the member is choked and stopped, as it oftentimes happeneth in great inflammations, which sometime do so close vp and stoppe the veines, arteries, and pores of the skinne, that there the spirites (the breathing forth of the vaporious streames, and the drawing in of the aire, being altogether hindred) are strangled and choaked. The third way, these mortifications & destroyings of life are caused in the members, when as the passage and flowing of the virall breath from the heart to some member is letted and forbidden: and that happeneth either by reason of a vehement and strong binding, or else because of some bruise received in those passages and pores, through the which the breath is caied. To conclude, *gangrena* and *Syderatio*, which the Grecians call *necrosis* and *Sphacelus*, do chaunce vnto mens bodies, destroying either the member, or the vitall facultie, or the naturall heate and temperature of the bodie. But the signes of *gangrena* and *Syderatio*, *Galen* in his little treatise of tumors aboue nature declareth to be these. First truly that flourishing colour is extinguished in them, which is wont to be in phlegmonous inflammations: then paine and beating of the pulses, that is, the mouing of the arteries, which is felt of the sicke, do depart a little aside, yet their naturall disposition is not altogether ended, but their sense altogether dead and mortified. Whereupon the member straight way appeareth blacke, and it is verie soft and full of corruption, it breatheth out a filthie saueur, and it is like vnto a dead thing without life. Whereby it commeth to passe, that when it is touched with the finger, it easily yeeldeth very deeply, neither after doth it rise vp againe or returne, but the skinne appeareth as though it were separated from the flesh. But this mortification of the affected member, (which the Grecians call *gangrena*), is of so great crueltie and madnesse (as *Paulus* saith) that except you presently seeke a remedie for it without all delay, the affected member soone perissheth, and then it inuadeth the other parts that be next vnto it, and killeth the man. But if (as *Celsus* repouseth) it yet hath but small power, but is now in beginning, it is not very hard to cure, especially in a young mans bodie, and so much the rather if the muscles be sound and whole, if the sinewes be not hurt, or smally affected. But when this euill hath taken deepe roote, and is turned already into *sphacelus*, it is incurable, and very many do dye of a cold sweat.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

*Of the cure of Gangrena caused of great inflammations, and
of the destroying or curing of Sphacelus, which
is ingendred of Gangrena.*

BECAUSE abundance of blood doth ingender a canker, the order of the cure thereof must be straight way attempted by a plentifull and copious euacuation of the corrupt blood, which is packed together in the affected member. But in the meane season, you must not neglect those things which shall same to belong vnto diet, medicines, cutting of a veine (if need require) and strengthning of the heart, in which things the Chyrurgian must take the aduise of some learned Phisition, who knoweth how to instruct him therein (as the matter shall require.) But there must be great plentie of that congealed blood (which causeth mortifications) drawne out from the affected part, either in the veine that is cut, if it appeareth any thing full and swolne about the same member, or in the whole skinne of the part affected, together with his substance either kept downe and made obedient, or cut or diuided by many deepe scarifications. Some to this end do apply horse leeches, and they do open little the veines that be next the sore, but those deepe and often sections or scarifications are much more effectuall to cure that euill. But because of the greatnesse of the Canker, we vse very great sections, or often incisions (which we call scarifications:) the one, when the euill is neare rotten, the other when it onely beginneth to rot. For the greater the euill is, the greater remedie it requireth (as euerie man may know.) But when you haue drawne out blood abundantly by those deepe slashes or cuts, you must wash the place with salt water, that the thicke blood which otherwise would abound there, may be brought forth. Then you must apply some medicine that can let and dissolue putrefaction, as is the meale of rares or darnell (which the French men call *yreria*, because it doth prouoke drunkenesse after the manner of wine:) or if there be scarcity of them, you must vse the meale of beanes with *oximel* and *syrupus acetosus*. It shall be profitable also to wash the scarified place twise a day with hote vinegar, but especially with *mulsam*. For these by reason of the driness, do consume the filthinesse and corruption, and do cleanse it, but because of their coldnesse they do chalenge of putrification that which is not yet defiled and corrupted. But when this feruent heate is now abated, and the furie of the euill somewhat remitted and slaked, you must lay aboue vpon the sore that oyntment which is commonly called *unguentum Aegyptiacum*, made of verdigreese, alume, hony, and vinegar, of each a like quantitie commixed and boyled together. This doth stop putrification and resolue it: and it doth disseuer also the putrified and corrupted humour from the sound and whole parts, and it doth cause it to fall and perish. Moreover it procureth a crust or scarre, and preserveth and defendeth the whole parts from any infection. But if you will apply a more strong and effectual medicine, mingle salt with the aforesayd things; or if the euill shall increase yet more & more, minister some of the Trochiskes before mentioned, being thoroughly

*Emptying of
corrupted
blood.*

*After scarifi-
cation you must
wash the place
with salt wa-
ter.*

*Medicines pu-
trifacilnes.*

*Unguentum
Aegyptiacum.*

*Burning Tro-
chiskes.*

Arsenicon sublimatum.

Lib. 2. ad Glau.

When adustio is to be used.

If the canker turneth into sphacelus.

Lib. 2. ad Glau.

Lib. 4.

Remedies that can loosen the crusts from the seared members.

brayed and beaten together, and then washed in vineger and wine: as that either of *Andron*, or *Polyida*, or *Musa*, or one of those which are called of the lauter sort *calithicon*, *Aldiron*, or that made of *Asphodelus*, which by reason of the burning force do separate the corruption from the sound parts. In this matter before all other things *Arsenicon* is praised and allowed of, which they call *sublimatum*, *purum* or *correctum*, which must be dissolued either in some powder or in wine, and taken in linnen or cotton (which the Frenchmen call *Coton*) and so applied betweene the sound and corrupted member: for this doth straight way stay the euill, and that truly without paine. But if necessity requireth, you must deuide the good from the euill with a certaine instrument called a probe, or sife. But in ministring such medicines (that the matter may be handled more without care) you must be diligent to know the nature of the sicke body (as *Galen* hath well taught vs saying:) If the body be rusticall and hard by nature, it requireth very vehement medicines: but if it be tender and soft, it requireth more gentle and mild medicines. Infants also or children, and they which loue to liue at their owne pleasure in idleness, must haue gentle medicines ministred to them. Moreover the nature of the parts which are euill effected must be regarded as well as the whole bodie, when you do either cut off, or cut about that which is putrified and corrupted. For there are some sores, which very quickly do come to matter and corruption, if they be negligently cured: and some very slowly: some also do slowly feeble the force and benefite of medicines applied, and some very soone.

Furthermore if (notwithstanding these burning medicines) the euill shall yet remaine, you must burne that place which is betweene the whole and corrupted member. But all these remedies are wont sometime to profit nothing at all, and then this is the onely helpe, although (as *Celsus* saith) it be a miserable helpe, that is, to cut off the member, which by little and little waxeth dead, that so the other parts of the body may be without daunger. For that which is once corrupted, euen with touching, it doth infect and corrupt that part which is whole and sound, after the manner of poyson. But if at any time you shall cut off this putrified and dead member, or shall lance off that which is corrupted in any member euen to the sound flesh, then by the counsell of *Galen* for more quietnesse sake, you must seare or burne with some bright instrument that member, which as a roote is ioyned to the whole and sound body, for so you shall quickly stay the flowing of bloud, and debarre corruption. Now adustion being done and ended, you must vse the iuyce of leekes, or (as *Paulus* saith) you must apply salt with the leekes, or some of those remedies which we haue spoken of a little before. For these do dry and bind the corruption, and do also stop the fluxe of humours. But when by vsing these remedies rottennesse or corruption shal seeme to cease: that the crustes and scurfe may soone fall away, you must vse a cataplasme made of bread, or barley meale, or wheate meale boyled in *hydreleon*. Also that medicine which they call *Cephalicum*, annointed with hony. These through their cleansing or scouring, do resolve the crust from the flesh which lieth vnder it. Moreover that medicine which is called *Tetrapharmacum*, and that also called *macedonicum*, by moving

and mollifying the matter do bring the scurfs from the parts that lye vnder them, as all other things do, which do bring the sores vnto suppuration. For these remedies do both mollifie, and ripen or end the matter vnder the crust, which matter doth resolue it: (I meane that matter which lyeth betweene the crust and the flesh.) Bread also beaten and brayed with *ajium*, or *ocinium*, thorough their clensing doth mightily draw the crustes from the whole parts without erosion or gnawing: of the like vertue also is *Iru*, or the root of *panax*, or of *aristolochia*, or of *acorus* mixed with hony. But they are commonly wont to vse butter or some other anointing thing to resolue the crustes. But when the crust is fallen off, they wash the place with vineger, and then applie this plaister following, which is rehearsed by *Guilielmus de Saliceto*. R. honie. ℥.ss . *Emplastrum* raw yelkes of egges ij . or iiij . of barley meale ℥.ss . mingle these together and bring them into the forme of an emplaister. But two or three dayes after, *Saliceto*, that the mundification or cleansing may be the better accomplished, you may adde to this emplaister, of chosen mirrhe. ʒ. x . But in tender and young bodies for the separation of the crust, and detersion of the filthie corruption, the meale of *tres* mingled with hony, or frankensence (which was vsed of *Galen*) doth abundantly suffice. These things being rightly ordered, such kind of vicers must be brought vnto some soundnesse of health, with such kind of medicines as can draw together the flesh, and procure a scarre: the Grecians call them *synulotica* and *epulotica*. 1. Empty out abundantly the corrupted blood, which is stuffed in the affected member. 2. After scarifications or sections, wash the affected place with salt water. Then lay on a medicine appointed for corrupted sores. 3. When the fury of the euill is somewhat slaked, minister *unguentum Aegyptiacum*. 4. If the euill will not yeeld to these remedies, seare with a bright and hote yron that place which is betweene the filthie and corrupted member. 5. But if all these things shall nothing helpe, & now *Gangrena* is changed into *sphacelus*, cut off that member very speedily, which is so perished euen to the whole, so that no filthinesse remaine behind. 6. When you haue cut off that which is putrified, you must vse some hote burning instrument, that so you may the more quietly pull vp euen the verie roote of the euill. 7. After exustion, minister the iuyce of leekes, and other such things, which do drie, bind, and stop fluxe. 8. Make no great speede to resolue the crust or scurfe by vsing burning medicines, or some hote instrument from the subiect places (for then there is wont to follow abundance of blood.) 9. When rottenesse or corruption is ceased, and you feare no more the flowing of blood, apply those things which can draw off the crust. 10. When the crustes or scurfes be fallen from their places, you must vse the same cure, as in other places.

1. First appoint a thinne and cooling diet for them which are vexed with *Gangrena* and *sphacelus*. 2. If nothing do let it, turne away the fluxe by letting of blood: and draw it out abundantly, if it floweth plentifully. 3. Purifie the blood with the medicine which is called *Catholicon*, or with the blacke pith of *Cassia fistularis*, or with the decoction of *Tamarindi*, of hoppes, and fumitorie. 4. Let the sicke take *Theriaca*, and other of that kind, which are able to defend the heart (which is the fountaine and beginning of life) from those cor-

*Butyrum.**Emplastrum**Guilelmi a**Saliceto.**Lib. 2. ad**Glauconem.**The summe of**the cure of**Gangrena and**sphacelus.*

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

*Aphorismes*1. *pertaining*2. *to a phisic*

3

4

rupted and filthie smelling fluxes, which are mounted vp from the putrified member.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Erysipelas and other tumours caused of Choler.

*Fleame in the
generation of
humors is next
vnto blood.*

*Erysipelas
quid.*

*Erysipelas ex-
quisitum.
Spina.*

*Erysipelas cum
vulceratione.*

*Erysipelas non
legitimum.*

*Medium vi-
cium.*

Bilis.

Although fleame in generation of humors doth follow next vnto blood, & there be greater abundance of that humour in the body next vnto blood, then of other humors, yet because tumours aboue nature proceeding of choler (which they commonly cal cholerick apostumes) do in many things greatly conspire & agree with bloody humors, it followeth (after the determination of phlegmone, and of other tumours consisting aboue nature, which proceede of blood) that we now speake of those swellings, which are caused of choler, and are called of the Greekes by this generall name *Erysipelata*, but of the ancient Latins *Ignes sacri*. *Erysipelas* therefore is the branch or bud of cholericke fluxe, most abiding about both the skinner, that is, both about that which outwardly couereth all the parts of the body, and also about that filmie and thin skin which inwardly compasseth the internall parts. But oftentimes also it occupieth some of the flesh that lieth vnder it, as phlegmone (which is the issue of bloody fluxe most incident to fleshy bodies) doth also possesse some of the skin. Therefore when very thin choler, or hote blood which is thin also in substance (called of the later sort *cholera naturalis*, but of Gal. *χολή ζαρη*) is spread abroad ouer the skin onely, nothing molesting the flesh vnder it, & yet somewhat raising the member into a tumor with a languishing inflammation & yellow rednesse, & altogether doth yeeld when it is touched, this affect is properly called of Galen, a true & exquisite *Erysipelas*. But this is for one consideration, or (as they say) it chanceth vniformely, and without vlcération. *Avicene* calleth it *spina*. But when a humour of bitter choler shalbe more thicke & sharpe, then that it cā retorne again naturally, it doth exulcerate or fetch off that litle outward skin (which the Greekes call *Epidermida*) & sometime that exulceratiō of the skin in proceſſe of time pierceth somewhat deeply, so that it toucheth the inner flesh vnder it, & then that affect is called also *Erysipelas*, but with vlcération, which (as Galen saith) is all one with *Herpes*. But if it be neither a cholericke fluxe, nor a bloody humour, but equally congealed of them both, it is not then called *Erysipelas* only, but Galen termeth it a disposition throughly commixed with *Erysipelas* & the inflammation: but of that which is predomināt in the mixture, is the title given to the euill. For when blood ruleth, it is called phlegmone *erysipelatosū*: but whē choler raigeth, we terme it *Erysipelas phlegmonosum*. But whē neither hath superioritie, but the accidents of them both appeare equal together in power, then that euill shall be called a meane betweene phlegmone and *Erysipelas*. Now also of other mixtures, there shall be the like interpretatiō, that is, if much choler be mingled with a thin and small humor, either of fleame or melancholie, it shall be called *Erysipelas edematosum* or *schirrhosum*. Moreover when we speake simply of choler, or of a bilious humour, after the manner of Galen and other Philistions, we meane pale choler, yellow, and bitter, and not that which is soire & blacke. And this is called of others, *naturalis* & cert a cholera, having his generatiō of blood that is thin & hote. But melancholy we ne-

uer

uer absolutely do terme choler, but alwaies with an adiection of the humours which ioyneth the colour of the name. Choler therefore, which is called of the Greekes *χολη*, & commonly *cholera*, is a hote and dry humor, proceeding of the thinner & hotter part of *chylus*, or thin and hote blood (as we said of late.) And this is two manner of waies according to the diuision of the new Phisitions, that is to say, naturall and vnnaturall. Naturall choler is a humor of power hote & dry, in substance thin, of colour yellow or red, declining vnto a certaine colour like orange tannie, but in tast very bitter, & not sharpe or soure (as some vntually haue affirmed) Vnnaturall choler is said to be that which doth degenerate from the aforesayd bilious humor, and yet it keepeth it selfe within the bounds of his circuite, which if it doth once passe or go out of, it is now not to be accounted choler, but rather some other humor. But this (I meane choler) doth happen to transgresse the limites of his libertie or circuite two waies. 1. One way (as we may say) by it selfe and in it selfe. 2. The other way by admixtion with others. By it selfe and in it selfe it is also two fold. 1. One way, when as that naturall choler doth putrifie, and is burned within, and that is called *adusta per putrefactionem*, i. burnt through putrification. 2. The other way, when as vnnaturall choler called *vitellina*, is thoroughly concocted euen with a fierie heate in the liuer, or in the stomacke, or in the veines, and it is made of the colour of leeks, which they also call *prassina*, or it is caused to be rustie or cankred, which truly are extreme griefes. But vnnaturall choler, or choler about nature through admixtion, is caused, when as another humor doth come vnto it extraordinarily. And this truly happeneth many waies. For if thin & waterish steame be mixed with it, it is made yellow & like vnto saffron; if thick & viscous steame be commixed therewith, it is made like to the yolkes of eggs; but if burned melancholie be ioyned therewith, it is made *bilis adusta per adnationem*. And so after Auicenns mind & iudgement, there are fixe kinds of naturall choler; with Haly Abbas, foure onely, for he maketh no mention at all of two kinds of adusted choler. But *Galen lib. 2. de virt. naturalibus*, saith that there is no choler besides nature, but that which is *vitellina*, very like both in colour and thicknesse to the yolkes of eggs: for he saith that *porracea* and *eruginosa bilis* are engendred oftentimes in the stomacke, of naughtie & corrupted humors, by reason of the cruditie or rawnesse of meates and drinckes, as are, the herbe called beete, onions, coolewortes. And also sometime, when these things are not well digested, it is engendred in the very veines, by reason of sicknes, or some other euill disposition. By these things therefore is gathered, that there are foure kinds or differences of inflammations engendred of choler (which commonly are called cholericke apostemes;) that is to say, of true, sincere, and laudable choler (which we call thinn and hote blood) is engendred that kind of inflammation, which *Galen lib. 2. ad Glauconem*, calleth a true and exquisite *Erysipelas*, which is as it were a passion of the skinne onely: in Greeke it is called *ἀρσπῆς* *erisipelas*. But of vnnaturall choler, being mixed with other humours, there do arise three other differences, as *erisipelas*, *phlegmonodes*, *erysipelas edematodes*, and *erysipelas schirroides*. And of choler which besides nature is caused of adustion, by reason of the thinnesse or thicknesse of the substance thereof, there *Herpes* are engendred either *herpes esthiomem*, that is *excedentes*, which are of the same deni-

Bilis si iud duplex.

Not naturall.

Choler doth digresse from his owne nature.

Bilis vitellina. Porracea. Prassina. Eruginosa.

Foure differēces of inflammations comming of choler. Verum erisipelas.

Three vnlawfull erisipelas.

Phagedana.
Cancro vlcera-
ti.

Cause veri
erysipelatis.

kinde with those *erysipelata*, which do chaunce with vlceration, or there are engendred *phagedene*, which do somewhat deeply gnawe the flesh together with the skinne, and there are caused exulcerat cankers, & other such gnawing euils: there are also engendred *cacoethe*, that is, malignant vlcers, which are called of the late Chyrurgians *pustule corrosive*. Therefore in such kinde of humours that is truly the most thinne, which raiseth the exulcerated herpes, and that most thicke, which prouoketh the canker. Then that which pertaineth vnto thicknesse, occupieth the next place, which doth engender *phagedene*, as *Galen* hath noted *Libro 14. method. med.* The causes of a true *erysipelas* as also of a true *phlegmone* are three. *Pregresse*, which are called also *primatiue*. 2. *antecedentes*. 3. and *coniuncte*. But *erysipelas* is seldome caused of any *primatiue* cause: notwithstanding violent frictions, the applying and ministring of attractive medicines do oftentimes excite or cause the same.

CHAP. XV.

Of the signes and tokens of a true *Erysipelas*.

Signes of erysipelatis.

A yellowish
rednesse yel-
ding to the fin-
ger, a small tu-
mour, vehement
beate.
Small pulse.
Prickling pain.

Judicia.

Erysipelas fol-
loweth the or-
der of a terti-
an feuer.

THE markes and tokens of a true and exquisite *erysipelas* are gathered and knowne by conferring the same with *phlegmone*, according to the doctrine of *Galen 14. Therap.* and 2. *ad Glauconem*: whereby it plainly appeareth that a true and lawfull *erysipelas* is a certaine species of *phlegmone*, that is, of an inflammation, as it is generally taken. The signes therefore of *erysipelas* are these, a red colour to behold, declining somewhat to yellow, which yellowish colour doth easily yeeld to touching or handling of it, that is, by thrusting it downe with the fingers, and then it slideth in againe, a small tumor rather remaining in the skin, then descending deeply, vehement heat causing a more vehement feauer then that which is ascended of *Phlegmone*: for *erysipelas* is farre away more hote then *phlegmone*. No great or strong breaking of the pulses, which is the proper symptome of a great *phlegmone*. A byting and pricking paine without any extension, as it chaunceth in *phlegmone*, and many other like signes which do signifie the dominion and rule of choler. But that which pertaineth vnto the iudgements hereof, *erysipelas* doth chiefly lay holde on the face, and beginneth commonly in that part of the nose, which is commonly called *lepus*, then straight way it spreadeth ouer the whole face, and that through a double occasion, that is, for the thinnesse of the skinne, and lightnesse of the choler. But in the vncovering or laying naked of any bone, *erysipelas* is a sodaine and marvellous disease, as *Hippocrates* writeth *Lib. 7. Aphorisme. 19.* that is to say, it is an euill symptome, if the flesh lying round about the naked bone doth seeme to be occupied of *erysipelas*; but this, as *Galen* witnesseth, chaunceth very seldome. Again, the same *Hippocrates* writeth in the Aphorisme following, that of *erysipelas* there cometh corruption, suppuration, together with the disease, which things (saith *Galen*) neuer doe chance vnto *erysipelata*, except it be to them which are very malignant. A true and lawfull *erysipelas* hath foure times or seasons, as other tumours also about the nature haue: the signes whereof are to be sought out of those things which went before. An exquisite *erysipelas* is seldome ended by suppuration, but chiefly through an insensible transpiration or resolution. There happen sometime

in

in *erysipelas* certaine symptomes, which oftentimes by reason of their greatnesse do exceed the very cause of the euill it selfe, and therefore they do hinder the order of the cure, that is, they do chaunge and peruert the method of curing (as hath also bene sayd before in *phlegmone*.) Moreouer also *erysipelas* followeth the moving of a Tertian feauer, with whose matter it hath a certaine analogie and proportion: for the matter of them both is a cholericke humour. But it is not good to driue or turne *erysipelas* from the outward partes to the inward, but contrariwise from the inward members to the outward partes, as *Hippocrates* hath writen *lib. 6. Aphor. 25.* But those *erysipelata* which do arise about the head, do put vs to more trouble, which (as *Paulus* saith) are wont to be so dangerous, that except they be holpen with some effectual remedie, they sometime strangle and choke the sicke. *Hippocrates* also writeth, that *erysipelas* is very mortall and deadly, if it chanceth in the wombe of a woman with child: for *erysipelas* being thus engendred in the wombe, the child of necessitie dieth. For truly a sharp feuer (as *Galen* saith in his commentaries) oftentimes destroyeth it without inflammation.

Erysipelas about the head are very hard to be cured. Erysipelas in the wombe of a woman killeth the child.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the cure of *Erysipelas*.

Seeing that *erysipelas* (as also *phlegmone* whereof we intreated a little before) is a hote affect, and engendred of the defluxion of humours, the method of the whole curing thereof shall also be two fold; that is to say, refrigeration and euacuation. And as in *phlegmone* the order of euacuation did surmount and ouercome the method of refrigeration: so in *erysipelas* refrigeration is more needfull then euacuation: for the one doth trouble and molest in quantitie, but the other (which is *erysipelas*) in qualitie. Therefore *erysipelas* must be greatly cooled and little emptied, whereas contrariwise an inflammation ought to be plentifully euacuated, and little refrigerated. Although there be a common chapter and summe of curing both affectes, (as *Galen* saith) that is, the vacuation of the troublesome humour: and therefore after that *erysipelas* hath bene cooled, we vse those medicins which can digest or discusse. Furthermore that we may attaine vnto this vniuersall method which we haue said to be two fold (I meane refrigeration and euacuation of the noysome humour,) it shall not be amisse, if we declare this cure by foure other particular orders after the content of the Chyrurgians of our time. The first scope consisteth in the right obseruation of a good diet. The second concerneth the auersion of the humour that floweth to the affected member, which they call *antecedens materia*. The third consisteth in the emptying out of the humour which hath flowed already into the diseased part, which they also call *materia coniuncta*. The fourth and last is busied and occupied about the correction and keeping backe of the euill symptomes that may happen thereunto. We shall easily dispatch the first scope, if the applying of all those things which they call *Res non naturales* shall belong vnto moistnesse and to coldnesse, as is a feauer tertian, seeing that *erysipelas* hath his beginning of choler, which is of a hote and drie temperature. Therefore chuse & prepare an aire as neare as you can, that is somewhat cold and moist. In sommer let the sicke be in a very cold house

Two general orders in the cure of erysipelas.

Foure particular intentions of curing erysipelas.

1.

2.

3.

4.

Primus scopus.

Aire.

Cibus.

Potus.

Motus.

Animi affe-
ctus.

Venus.

Secundus sco-
pus.

2. ad Glau.

In a phlegm-
nous erysipelas,
it is good to let
blood.

somewhat within the ground, that is, windie, and towards the North. But if there be no such place to be had, and the ayre very hote, make it readie for him your selfe by Art. Powre cold water very often out of one vessell into another: sprinkle the pauements of the house daily with water that is altogether ycie and cold. Spreade vppon the floore roses and violettes, vine leaues and branches, fallow boughes, and other floures and buddes which are of a cold and moist facultie. Let no great companie of men come into the parlour or place where the sicke abideth. Let him eschue all fat, sweete, soure, and hote meates. Let him eate lettuce, gourdies, purslaine, sorrell, (which they call *acetosa*) tice, and other things of that kind, which do thicken & refrigerate blood. Let him altogether abstaine from wine. Let his drinke be ptyfan broath, or barley water. Let him keepe a temperate dyet. Let his bellie be alwayes soft and soluble. Let him abstaine from all exercise and mouing, especially that which is vehement and immoderate. Let him eschue anger, contentions, and all vehement motions and perturbations of the mind as mortall enemies. Let all things be cleane and handsome about him. Let him refraine from carnall copulation. And let these things suffice concerning the first scope. But we shal also bring to passe our second intent about the cure of *erysipelas*, if by conuenient euacuation we take away that humour which is left behind in the bodie. Therefore in a true and lawfull *erysipelas* (not necessarily as in *phlegmone*) we must draw blood out of a veine, but we must also purge the belly downward with some medicine which can expell choler (called of the Greekes *cholagogon*) if that the affect be great, and the bodie doth seeme to abound with choler. Therefore when *erysipelas* doth accend and kindle feauers, and those more vehement then *phlegmone*, those medicines which are exceedingly hote, and the iuice of *scammonium* (called of the new Greekes *dacrydion*) and that also which is commonly called in the shoppes *electuarium de succo rosarum*, are in no wise meete or conuenient for this disease, and therefore you must vse either rewbarbe, or that potion which of *Rasis* is called *aqua tamarindorum*, which is made as followeth. R. damaske prunes. ʒ. 4. *tamarandi* that be new. ʒ. x. of broken sugar, quar. ss. to the which things to make them more effectually, you may adde rewbarbe that is well washed. But if the euill be very litle and small, these medicines called *cholagoga* shall not neede, but it shall be sufficient to vse at that instant some sharpe clyster, (as it pleaseth *Galen*.) But in a phlegmonous *erysipelas* your labour shall not be frustrate, if you shall beginne the cure with bloodletting (if nothing doe let it.) For that kind of *erysipelas* doth often lay hold on the face, whereupon *Paulus* commaundeth, that by and by in the beginning you must cut a veine in the elbow, especially chusing in it the shoulder veine. But if that do not appeare, you must take that which is most obiect to the sight. And if any thing do hinder the detraction of blood, he commaundeth to vse a purgation made of some medicine which is dedicated and appointed to drine out choler; yet *Paulus* doth not contend with *Galen*: for whereas *Paulus* hath commaunded to cut a veine in that *erysipelas* which doth rise about the head or face, he meant that of a phlegmonous *erysipelas*, which verie often molestheth the face: but *Galen* speaketh of a lawfull *erysipelas*, wherein he vsed no detraction of blood. But in *erysipelas acutissimum* or *schirrissum*,

sum, you must vse a purgation which hath a mingled and manifold force, that is, which can purge, partly choler, partly fleame, or a melancholy humour. And truly in all these things the aduice of some learned and wise Phisition is to be asked, from whose counsell and decree the Chyrurgian ought not in any wise to swarue or digresse. And let this be sufficient, that once you haue bene admonished, that the Chirurgicalian ought not to attempt any thing at all in those things which belong vnto purging and blood-letting, without the counsell and warrant of some cunning Phisition, except sometime necessitie shall compell him, and when no Phisition is ready at hand. The third intention is finished and performed by cooling and repelling medicines in the beginning of the fluxe, excepting those causes which we haue mentioned in our generall discourse. But the beginning being passed, and fluxe now remaining, you must emptie that which cleaueth fast vnto the member, and is compacted therein, by applying outwardly digestiue or euaporatiue medicines, that is to say, through the transpiration and breathing through to the sence. But of all these kinds of tumours thus consisting above nature, there is a double euacuation, *Galen Lib. 4 Therap.* one truly of repulsives to the other parts, the other of outward digestiues, through that vaporous breathing which doth stie the sence. But because *Erysipelas* doth afflict and molest not onely in quantitie, but also in the very qualitie, by reason of the vehement inflammation, it doth require a more often and greater refrigeration then *phlegmone* doth. Therefore after the emptying of the whole body (as we haue said a litle before) we will vse repressiue remedies, cooling it as it is conuenient the afflicted member, or that part which sustaineth the skinne: especially when *Erysipelas* is engendred without any manifest cause. But the end of refrigeration is the mutation or change of the colour: for that which is a pure *erysipelas* doth by & by rest and cease with this, but that which is not pure, but after a sort phlegmonous, if you shall refrigerate it much, it maketh the skin blacke and blew: but if you shall desist from seeking to change the colour, it waxeth black, especially in an aged body: so that some of those refrigerated tumors cannot perfectly be healed, no truly not with digesting medicins, but that some scirrhus tumour will remaine behind in the member. It is farre better therefore (sayth *Galen*) when you see the colour of the affected member altered, to passe ouer from refrigerating and moderating helps vnto their contraries, that is, vnto dissoluing or digesting and drying remedies, before that the member be altogether blew or blacke. But you must alwayes beware and take good heed, that those things which be annoynted, be very liquide and moist, and that they be often changed, and that those things which be applied, be often washed with sponges dipped in some cold liquor. For the great heate of the member quickly bursting forth into a vapour, doth dry vp these things. But amongst those things which cary with them a refrigerating and repelling force, verie conuenient for this affect, *Auicenna* chiefly praiseth among simple remedies the sprinkling on of cold water. But *Galen* commendeth the iuyce of nightshade, of syngreene, of purslaine, of *psillium*, of henbane, of lettuce, of *ymbilicus venetis* (which herbe is called of the Greekes *Cotyledon*) of endiue and succorie, of fenne lintels, of gourds, and other of that sort. Also that cerate made of

In phlebotomy
& purging, the
Chyrurgian
must be taught
by the Phisition.

Tertia intentio.

Hic Guido de
prauate citat
Gal.

How much e
rysipelas is to
be refrigerated.

Lib. 14. Ther.

Materia refri-
geratum cu
Gal.
Ceratium,

very cold water, which containeth foure times as much of oyle of roses with white waxe. *Rx.* oyle of roses with oyle of vnripe grapes made without salt, which being made very soft and pliable in a mortar, sprinkle on cold water as much as you thinke good, with the which if you commix a litle vineger that is thinne and very cleare, you shall make the medicine more excellent and more effectuall. Moreouer all these things must be ministred cold, and often chaunged, before they be any thing dried or withered. It profiteth also very much and that presently, to annoint the member annoyed with *Erysipelas*, with ceruse onely, or mingled with vineger and *lycium*, or with *terra cinolia*, or with potters clay, with nightshade, or with *spuma argenti*, with oile of roses, and with *actia* with vineger. To this purpose also this compound following helpeth much.

*A compound
medicine.*

Rx. iuyce of plantaine. $\mathfrak{z}$ i. oyle of roses $\mathfrak{z}$ iij. *lythargyri nutriti* $\mathfrak{z}$ i. *ceruse lota* $\mathfrak{z}$ iij. of womans milke. $\mathfrak{z}$ ss. let all be commixed together, and brayed in a leaden mortar, and make a liniment. But *lythargyrum* and *cerusa* ought first to be beaten, and then the oyle and iuyce aforesaid must be powred on them softly by little and little, vntill they be thoroughly incorporated together the one with the other. But if you desire greater coolers, you may commix with these and other remedies before recited (according to *Paulus* mind) a litle *opium* or *cicuta*, or mandrake. But I thinke it good to abstaine from applying either of them or the like, which are of a stupefactive nature, except great necessity do h moue you thereunto. But when the inflammation of the affected member is somewhat abated, and the heate of *Erysipelas* slaked, *Galen* (before that

*Evacuation of
the iointed mat-
ter by euapo-
ratives.*

any blewnesse did appeare through refrigeration) did vse to dissolve the humour gotten into the member (which they call *coniuncta materia*) by laying on a cataplasme of barley meale, or of *cruda polema* (called in Greeke *ῥυμνός*) and of other things before mentioned in the order of curing *phlegmone*. For euen as the signes of *Erysipelas* were desumed and knowne by the analogie of the tokens of *phlegmone*: so also the remedies of the cure of *Erysipelas* are to be fetched from the proportion of the remedies of healing *phlegmone*. Furthermore of such kind of medicines, which haue a dissolving and breathing quality very necessary in this euill, there are very many, both simples and compounds, rehearsed of *Paulus Aegineta* Lib. 4. cap. 21. and of *Aetius* Libro 14. de re medica. But now it shall be sufficient to rehearse among so many, one onely remedie, which of all the rest seemeth in my opinion to be most excellent, *Rx.* of the tender leaues of *althea*. $\mathfrak{ss}$ j. boyle them in *hydreleum*, and being well boyled, bray them well together, putting thereunto of oyle of roses. $\mathfrak{z}$ iij. *argenti spume*, and *ceruse*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. ss. againe plaine or smooth them with the iuyce of coriander, of syngreene, or nightshade, then put thereunto a few crummes of bread and annoint them after the maner of an emplaster. But if peraduenture blewnesse shall not occupy the place (the skinne being cut before) you must lay a cataplasme about vpon it, and sprinkle the place abundantly, as *Galen* hath commaunded, with hote water: for it doth digest and wash the wound. Also water and salt brine in the meane season shall auaille to nourish or cherish the place, when it is somewhat thicke and grosse, which things do scoure and cleanse the thicknesse thereof. The fourth intention of the cure of *Erysipelas*, which is the correction of the accidents, is perfected (as we haue sayd in

*Hydreleum is
a mixture of
water & oyle.*

*Si liuoriam lo-
cum occupatis.*

*Quarta inten-
tio.*

the

the cure of *phlegmone*) when as we shal returne and drue backe the recourse of the matter, induration, and corruption together with the paine and the heat: for these symptomes are wont to happen as well vnto *Erysipelas*, as vnto *phlegmone*. Moreouer the best remedie to assuage paine and vehement heate, is made of leaues & rootes of henbane, which you must rowle vp in towe and seeth them with prunes: then commixe them with the oyntment commonly called *populeon* or with swines grease (as is sayd before in the cure of *phlegmone*.) But if *erysipelas* shall chaunce to be exulcerated, you shall cure it with applying *unguentum album* or *unguentum de lybargyro*, with the which if you shall commixe a litle *scoria*, which is the drosse of lead molten in the fire, you make the remedie most excellent and effectuell. But it shall be more profitable to comprehend the whole order of the cure of *erysipelas* in some short sentences, after the manner of an Epilogue, that those things whereof we haue spoken before somewhat at large, may take the deeper roote in our mindes and memories. For this cause therefore we haue taken out of *Galen* these seuen Aphorismes following, which summarily do containe the whole cure of *erysipelas*. 1. In an exquisite *erysipelas* make no detraction of bloud. 2. If the bodie be full of choler and the affect be great, purge the belly downward with the medicine *cholagogon*. 3. If the disease be litle and small and the bodie without choler, vse no medicine to purge choler, but content your selfe with some sharpe clyster. 4. When you haue purged the whole bodie (as you must) annoynt the affected in the beginning with medicines that can moderately repressse and abundantly refrigerate, euen to the changing of the colour. 5. When you see the colour of the aggrieved member altered, and the heate of *erysipelas* slaked, and the inflammation ceased, you must passe ouer from refrigerating and adstringe medicines before that the member be thoroughly blew or blacke, vnto their contraries, that is, vnto digestiues, or discussiues and drying remedies. 6. Those *erysipelas* which are caused of vlcers and other manifest causes, you must scarifie, and afterward apply a cataplasme of barley meale. 7. If *erysipelas* be not exquisite or true, but *phlegmonous*, you may let bloud without fearing any thing, especially if bloud do abound in the bodie.

A remedie to mitigate paine and heat.

If Erysipelas be exulcerated.

Seuen Aphor. out of Galen concerning the whole cure of Erysipelas.

1. 2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Tumours which do associate Erysipelas, as Herpes, both Miliaris and exedens, which are called of the late Chyrurgians cholericke pustles.

THOS tumours aboue nature which haue any societie with the aboue mentioned *erysipelas*, or any way do seeme to pertaine thereunto (for that they haue their proceeding of vnaturall and hidden choler, that is, which is not mingled with other humours) both the latter sort of Phistions and also of Chyrurgians do call *mala cholerica pustula*: but the Grecians, as *Hippocrates*, *Galen*, and *Paulus* do call them *herpete*, which word doth almost sound and agree with the Latines, as *malum quod serpit*, the creeping euill. For *herpes* in Greeke is all one with *serpo* in Latin, whereupon *herpes* is called *serpens*, yet *herpes* doth perfectly signifie among the Phistions *malum quod serpit*, but a cer-

De herpete.

Pustula cholerica vulgo appellata herpetes.

Formice Aui-
cennae.
when herpes is
caused.

Two kinds of
Herpes.

1.
ἰσχνὸς ὀδιδύμ-
νος ἢ exedens
vel depascens.

2.
κίχρη, siue
herpes miliaris.

Lib. 14. Therap.

Ex Paulo &
Gal.

Lib. de tumo-
ribus præter
naturam.

Lib. 4. de Mèd.
medendi.

The cholerick
humour which
causeth herpes
is very thin.

taine kinde of disease whereof we now intreate, therefore the creeping euill extendeth and stretcheth further then herpes, for Phagedæne are also called *Serpentia vlcera*, creeping vlcers. But Aui-
cennae called all these kinds of pusses *Formice*, and Galen numbred them among inflammations; but Celsus seemeth to comprehend them vnder the name of *facer ignis*. Lib. 5. Cap. 28. Herpes therefore is caused, when yellow choler, vnnaturall, alone, and secret, that is to say, which is commixed with no other humour, doth flow into some member, and there remaineth; whose substance if it be any thing thicke and sharpe, it exulcerateth the whole skinn, euen to the flesh which lyeth vnder it, and then this euill is called of Hippocrates and other Grecians ἰσχνὸς ὀδιδύμνος; but of the Latines herpes exedens or depascens, an eating or feeding herpes; and it is called 14. Therap. of Galen by this absolute name, herpes. But if choler be somewhat thinn, and not so thicke and hote, it exciteth small wheelkes outwardly in the superficies of the skinn (for that it doth onely as it were burne and scald) like vnto the feedes of millet or hyrse: by reason of which similitude and likenesse the affect is then termed of the Latines miliaris herpes: but of certaine of the Græcians after Hippocrates time, it was called for the same reason κίχρη: for κίχρη in Greeke is called milium with vs. And this kinde of species of herpes (Galen witnesseth the same in Libro secundo ad Glauconem) doth borrow his name or title of the generall wordes, seeing that the same Galen calleth it herpes simply and without addition: Notwithstanding in another place by the name of herpes, Galen calleth it herpes esbiomenos, that is, exedens, as afterward shall be said. But this kinde doeth not altogether cause the vlcere, as the other doeth which is called exedens, but as it hath bene sayd, it exciteth little small pusses to the likenesse of milium; which pusses in proceſse of time, when they are broken out, doe turne vnto an vlcere. Therefore not without any great reason or cause did Oribasius and certaine other also before Galens time, iudge and thinke, that in this kinde of euill, there was mixed with choler some thinn fleame, which did bring forth those little pusses, whereupon it was called of some pustulosus herpes. But the other which is called esbiomenos, is not so mixed with fleame, but seemeth to be a pure choler infected with no other humour: and therefore it chanceth with erosion, which continually affecteth the skin, whereupon this name is attributed vnto it. For esbiomenos is all one with erodens or exedens. And truly this euill is of one and the same kind with a pustulous & exulcerate Erysipelas, from the which notwithstanding it somewhat differeth by reason of the thinnesse of that bilious humour (whereof both of them doe take their beginning.) That is that which Galen testifieth in these wordes: It is (saith he) a very thinn humour which raiseth herpes, and so thinn truly that it passeth through not onely all the inward members, which are euerie where of a fleshie substance, but also through the very skinn, euen vnto the outward little skin (which is called of the Greekes Epidermida) which only (because it stayeth there) it both gnaweth and feedeth on. but if it should also pierce through this, after the maner of a sweat, it should in no wise excite any vlcere, for that is a comon thing vnto vlcers which do arise of a byting humour, which vlcers they call Spontanea, because the humour which causeth them,

then, is stayed & tarieth still in their going out or issue: hitherto *Galen*. When he nameth *herpes* simply & without any addition, he meaneth *herpes esthiomenos*, as it is easie to be known by the ioyning together therof, by the signes & cure, & so in that place it borroweth his title of the generall word, when it is simply and absolutely called *herpes*, as in that little booke *de tumoribus præter naturam*, where the same *Galen* writeth thus of that same kinde of *herpes* word for word; *Herpes* also feedeth and gnaweth vpon those parts which are about it, but the *Herpes exulceration* is of the skinne onely. But almost all the barbarous sort of Chyrurgians, euē they of late time, do comprehend both these kinde of *herpes*, viz. *milisus* & *exedens*, vnder this title of *formice*, to who both in this thing, & in many other also, *Auicene* first gaue the occasion of errour, who being deceiued by the likenesse of the name, because the Greekes call *myrmecie*, that is, *formice*, a certaine kind of verruce, hath through a maruellous ouersight, euē in the same Chapter, confounded those verruce with *herpetes*. *Guido* notwithstanding maketh a difference between *herpes* & *formica*, & confoundeth the name of *formica* sometimes with verruce, which the Greekes call *myrmecie* and *acrochordone*, sometime with *herpes exedens*, which (I meane *herpes comedens*) is sometime named of the same *Guido* *herpestes*, sometime absolutely *herpes*, who also thought this *herpes* to be nothing else but a pustulous and vlcerrated *Erysipelas*, when this notwithstanding (as we haue alledged out of *Galen*) doth differ from the other, by reason of the thinnesse of the humour. For that choler which exciteth *herpes* is thinner then that which causeth an vlcerate *Erysipelas*. Furthermore *Erysipelas*, which chanceth with vlceration doth not only occupy the skin, but with it also it annoyeth some part of the flesh vnder it. But *herpes*, wherof we now intreat, layeth hold on the skin onely, & exulcerateth it. Therefore although these euils are of one and the same kind (as *Galen* thought) yet they are not altogether one, neither are they alike. Those whelkes also, which the interpreter of *Auicene* and the vnlearned company of Phisicians, do terme *morbili*, *Hippo Lib. 3. Epidemiarum* ex *herpetum* hath comprehended vnder *herpes*. But these *morbili* are caused of a more thin & genere. slender matter, then those pustles which are commonly called *Variole*. For these *Variole*, (as *Auicene* writeth) proceede of bloud, but the other are caused through the admixtion of choler and bloud. But if any man doth long or desire to know what name the auncient Phisitions did bequeath vnto these pustulous vlcers, we haue declared that in Latin they are called of *Plinie* *Papula*, and sometime *Papularum pituite eruptiones*, flegmaticke eruptions, but in Greeke of *Hippocrates Libro eruptiones. tertio Epidemiarum, Eclizmata*, of *Galen* *Epanthemata*. But the signes, and iudge. *Eclizmata. mentes*, and cause of both kindes of *herpes*, may sufficiently be knownen by *Epanthemata*. those things which went before. It remaineth therefore that we now declare the cure of them. In curing these euils called *herpetes*, (as in other ratio. such like voluntarie vlcers, which haue their originall of a byring and vehement humour) three intentions are to be obserued and marked. The first is, that the confluxion of the humour vnto the affected part be stopped and leited. The second is, to make euacuation, of that whatloeuere is flowen already, into the aggriued member, and sticketh fast in the same. The third is, to heale the vlcer. We do finish our first intē, by purging the whole bodie with some medicine that can bring forth the humor wherof the euill doth grow, &

*Herpes requi-
reth the medi-
cine cholago-
gon.*

*Herpes milia-
ris requireth a
remedie which
can purge both
choler and
fleame.*

*Reprimendi
tempus.*

*Lib. 14. The-
rap.*

*Repressives are
not to be used
if the humour
be plentifull.
Reprimendum
materia.*

*Those remedies
which do coole
& moisten are
not meete for
herpes exedens.*

*Repressives
meete for her-
pes exedens.*

*Cataplasm.
Sumach.
These things
do accomplish
our second in-
tention.*

when the bodie is throughlie emptied, by repressing and driving backe the humour that floweth. Therefore in *herpes exedens* we must vse some medicine, which can prouoke choler downeward, seeing (as we haue sayd before) a pure and sincere bilious humour doth procreate this euill. It happeneth therefore that in respect of the emptying of the whole bodie, *comedentes herpes* must be cured like vnto *Erysipelata*. Therefore because it is a thin and waterish humour which causeth this euill, *Galen* hath sufficiently declared to mollifie and soften the bellie gentlie, or to prouoke vrine with those things, which can moderately cause the same. But in the other kinde of *herpes*, which by reason of the similitude which it hath with *miliari*, we haue sayd to be called in Greeke *miliari* and *senchria*, there is required some remedie which is of a mixed facultie (that is) which can purge foorth both choler and fleame. For some haue thought, and that not without great reason (as *Galen* sayth) that in this euill there is some fleame commixed with choler. Furthermore that humour which aboundeth in the bodie; and causeth the euill, being emptied oot (as it is required) you must applie those medicines which can repress and keepe backe the flowing of the humour, for then ministering of them shall be more without daunger, and more conuenient also, seeing that (as *Galen* sayth) if one do thrust backe but a little portion of the vicious humour, which after conuenient purging remaineth yet in the bodie, to the bowels and great veines, it will not cause any sensible euill at all that can be felt. But if the quantitie of the humour be great, it sometime coucheth it selfe in some principall member, whereas through the force of the purging nature, the whole bodie is not euacuated either by purging downeward, or by the vrine, or by the skinn, which includeth the whole bodie. But repressives and repulsives be not onely those which do binde, but also those which can refrigerate without any adstriction. Of the which nature are these, as lettuce, knotgrasse, fenne or ponde lintels, purcelayne, endiue, fenegreene, and other of that sort, which were verie conuenient also for *Erysipelas*. But those medicines, which besides their cooling, are so apt by nature to moisten, *herpes* especially *depiscentes*, do in no wise require, but they do onely admit those refrigeratiues, which can also greatly drie vp. For those remedies which haue but a meane and weake force to coole and drie, as is nightshade, are not sufficient for them. Therefore by *Galenes* counsell you must in the beginning lay vpon them the young tender buddes of the vine, bramble, leaues of *rubum caninum*, and plantaine. After applie also with these lintels, sometime honie and barley meale. Also minister that cataplasme *sine semperuiuo*, which is appointed for those phlegmonous tumours which proceede of fluxe, for it doeth repell that which floweth, and it drieth vp that which is contained in the affected member, and it strengtheneth the parts about it. The beginning of the being past, this remedie auaieth greatly. Make a cataplasme of the rindes of pomegranates sodden in wine, and of *rhū* or *rho* (that is) of the seedes of the shrub *coriariū* (which of the late Phisitions is called *sumach*) and of the meale of barley. But by this cataplasme you shall verie well accomplish the second intention or scope of curing *herpes*, because it is of sufficient power to digest that, which is flowed already into the affected place,

for

for it appeareth evidently, that those remedies which haue a repressing facultie, ought to exceede in the generation of the vlcer, but when the vicious humour doth cease to flow any more into the affected part, then those medicines are requisite which do digest. As concerning our third intet which declareth the cure of the vlcer, it behoueth you briefly to know these things following: viz. That euerie vlcer whether it commeth of the owne accord, or be caused by some accidentall cause, doth desire to be dried vp by some medicine (as Hippocrates sayth) that is not sharp, byting, or vehemently prouoking, except, when the vlcers be malicious and full of corruption, for such euils (sayth Galen) require more sharpe medicines, and those which haue euen the power of fire, as is, *misos* and *chalcitis*, and *arsenicum*, and lime, and *sandaracha*, and other things of that kinde, which burne as hote as fire. Those places therefore that are exulcerated in *herpes exedens*, must be tended with pilles, and trochiskes, written for the cures of *herpes* in those bookes which are called *pharmaceutici*: which remedies, when necessitie compellerh vs to vse them, must be thoroughly washed in *passum* or in some other sweete wine, or if sweete wine be not ready at hand, in thinnne and somewhat sharpe wine, which is not too old (that is, which for age hath no sharpe tast) or else in *posca aquosa* (which they call *oxyeratum*.) Paulus in *herpes* which annoyeth ynder the skinne, vseth these remedies, the scourings of lead steeped in the iuyce of smooth reu, or a cerate of mirtles in stead of reu. Another of old wooll, washed and burnt about a torch. $\mathfrak{z} . xij . \beta$. of wax. $\mathfrak{z} . xxv$. of the scourings of lead. $\mathfrak{z} . j$. of goates tallow, trimmed and washed with water. $\mathfrak{z} . xxv$. of mirtles. $\mathfrak{z} . v$. But for those *herpetes* which do gnaw and bite vehemently called *depaſcentes*, he chargeth to vse this remedie: $\mathfrak{R}$. of the rindes of sweete pomegranates. $\mathfrak{z} . vj$. *argenti spuma*. $\mathfrak{z} . vj$. of washed wooll cleauing to the torch or to some sweete wood, & that burnt. $\mathfrak{z} . iij$. of waxe. $\mathfrak{z} . xij$. of ceruse, $\mathfrak{z} . viij$. of frakenſence, alume scissible, ana. $\mathfrak{z} . j$. let them be steeped in wine or in oyle of mirtles. But now the vlcers being of long continuance, those trochiskes about sayd, and other such like medicines which are appointed to cure *herpetes*, must be washed neither in sweete wine, nor in *posca aquosa*, but rather in wine that is somewhat sharpe, especially in that which is blacke, and if that be not to be had, you must vse white wine. But those medicines which are more effectual and most meete at that time when vlcers be inueterate, are the pilles of *musca*, and *ron*, and *polyda*, whose descriptions are set downe in the end of the cure of *carbunculus*, and those trochiskes also which of *Auicene* and the latter sort of Physicians are called *calidicon* and *aldaron*. But those *herpetes* which do onely exulcerate the outward skinne, as they be which we haue called *miliars*, must in no wise be enioyned to any of those medicines before rehearsed (if we will credit Galen) for they be verie vehement, and do greatly drie. But those medicines whatsoever they be, which haue the nature and force of *glaucium* done in *pustule* (that is) of *menytha*, shall suffice these vlcers, and you must wash them with *miliars* if they this, but especially with water. But if these things shall nothing auayle, you turne into an must also commixe vineger therewith. Also if you annoynt it with iuyce of nightshade, or plantaine, you shall helpe it greatly. Hitherto haue we spoken of *herpes*. Now because in that which we haue sayd, we haue not as yet touched by the way any thing concerning the euils, called *formice*, which both the

The cure of the vlcer in herpes is our third scope.

Euerie vlcer must be dried vp.

Lib. 2. ad

Glauc.

How exulcerated places must be looked to.

Posca.

Remedies take out of Paulus.

Alind.

Ad herpes depaſcentes.

For inueterate vlcers.

What is to be done in pustule with miliars if they vlcers.

Lib. secundo ad Glaucnem.

Arabians, and the latter sort of Phistions do erroneously (as we haue sayd) confound with *herpetes*: this present place doth require; that we set downe a few wordes both of them and of other tumours and increasings appearing in the skin, which the Latins call *verruca*.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the euils called Formica, and of other differences of Verruca.

Verruca. **T**H O S a little tumours, or low swellings, which are seene to appeare in the skinne like little billockes, the Latines haue sily called *verruca*, for *verruca* signifieth properly the highest part of a mountaine or hill: but the common sort call them *porra*, leekes, because sometime they haue certaine theedes lying betwenee them not much vnlike vnto the rootes of leekes. The Greekes haue no name, wherein they may comprehend all those kindes of *verruca*, but they do call a certaine kind thereof by proper names, which be these, *ῥυττινία*, *ἀκροχόρδων*, *ἰλός*, *θύμιον*. *Verruca* therefore of them be called *myrmecia*, which are of a large foundation, and as it were sitting iust to the ground, and when they be touched, they are felt painfull like vnto the byting or stinging of an ant, whereupon their name is giuen vnto them, for the Greekes do call *μύρμηκα*, *formica*. Wherefore the Latins applying the name therof to the Greek word, haue called *formica*, *verruca*, and for their forme & fashion, *sessilis verruca*. These euils sayth *Celsus*. *Lib. 5.* do grow either in the palmes of the hands or in the soles of the feete: but these take deeper roote, and are lower and harder then a wart, & do cause greater paine, & they send forth more store of bloud, & they scarce at any time exceed the bignesse of a hop. But *acrochordon* is a *verruca* that is as it were hāging, & of a more narrow foundation (that is) a certaine round highnes or growing vp in the skin, which hath the foundation (that is) the neather part very strraight to the skia. It is so called because it seemeth to hang as though it were tyed with a string. By this difference therefore *acrochordones* are distinguished frō *myrmecia*, because they are very smal at the neather end next the skin, but at the other end are very large and broad: contrariwise, *myrmecia* (as hath bene said) are of a large foundation, but at the other end they are very small and slender. But these oftentimes are equall together with the skin, and *acrochordones* do alwayes appeare about the skin, (as *Gal. 14. Lib. de morbis curandis* hath manifestly declared.) Beside these things, *acrochordones* (as *Celsus* sayth) do grow vp thicke and many together, & do most trouble children, & oftentimes they fall againe suddainly, and sometime they cause but meane inflammation: there are some also, which are turned into corrupted matter, but they seldome passe the greatnesse of a beane. They be called of *Auicene clavi*, but the Latins do terme *clavi*, *verruca alba*, because they be like to the round heads of nayles. These do chiefly happen in the fingers, and the soles of the feete, where they do cause great paine, the Greekes call them *ἰλός*: but *Auicene almismar*. These be often caused of a bruiſe, and sometime otherwise. But *thymion* or *thymon*, in English a wart, is called of *Celsus* and of the Greekes *verrucula*, a little billocke, appearing about the bodie, which as the neather part next the skinne

is

is very small (as *acrochordon* is) but aboue it is more large: it is also somewhat hard, and very sharpe in the top, which doth represent the colour of the floure thime, wherupon the name is giuen vnto it, and also it is easily spread abroad. Oftentimes it giueth forth some blood, and is almost as great as an Egyptian beane, seldome bigger, but sometime lesser: sometime there groweth vp one alone, sometime many together, either in the anckles of the feet, or in the hands, or in the soles of the feete. But the worst *thymia* of all are in the filthy parts of the body, where they do commonly bleed. *Auiscen* seemeth to haue named this kind of verruca, *iusum*, or (as another translation hath) *earseum*. Of the kind of verruce be those euils also, which *Auiscen* called *cornua*, not much differing from the other sorts, but that they be somewhat long and are turned crooked againe like vnto hornes. The euils called *calli* (called of the Greekes also *τελλει*) do not much differ from the aforenamed *clavi*, but that they be of themselves without griefe and nothing painefull, and of the colour of the skin wherein they are resident, neither do they ingender of themselves or of their owne accord, but of the hardnesse of the skin caused by labour.

Thymia magnitudo.

Thymia inobscanis pessima.

Cornua.

Calli.
Τέλλει.

CHAP. XX.

The indgements and cure of Verruca.

AMONG all these euils *Acrochordon* and *Thymion*, are oftentimes (as *Celsus* reporteth) ended and do heale of themselves, and the lesser they be, the sooner they be ended. But *Myrmecia* and *Clavi* do scarce at any time cease without curing. If *acrochordon* be cut off, it leaueth no roote behind it, and therefore it groweth not againe. But where *thymion* and *clavi* be cut off, there riseth vp vnderneath a little round roote, which descendeth downe somewhat deepe into the flesh, and there abiding, it doth cause the aforeseyd euils to grow againe. *Myrmecia* do hold fast with verie broade rootes, and therefore they cannot be cut off without great vlceration. It is very profitable to cut off *clavi*, and then sprinkle it ouer with hote water, for so it doth waxe soft and tender without any more adoe, and if it doth bleede, it oftentimes dyeth and ceaseth. It is also taken away by cleansing it round about, & by laying on it rosin mixed with the beaten powder of *lapis molaris*. But the other kinds (as the same *Celsus* affirmeth) must be cured with hote medicines. Now the fittest remedy for the other euils is that which is made of the dregges of wine, and that medicine is good for *myrmecia*, which is made of alum and yellow oaker. *Paulus Aegineta* lib. 4. cap. 15. rehearseth very many remedies, which do take away and utterly abandon these verruce, especially those which be sessiles and pensiles. Of the which kind are *claterium* (which is the iuyce of wild cucumbers) rubbed on with salt, the barke of frankensence with vinegar, rath ripe figges, which are ripe before their time, with vinegar, meale and *nitrum*. Also the iuyce or liquor of the aforeseyd figge tree annoynted doth greatly helpe, the iuyce of *thylymalus*, in English spurge, the head of the fish *sinarus* salted and burnt, the

Acrochordon.
Thymion.

Lib. 5.

Myrmecia.
Clavi.

Myrmecia.
The cure of verruca out of Paulus.

Aqua ex far-
mentis distil-
lans.

Stercus bubu-
lum.

Lacerta caput.

rust of some mettall with quicke brimstone, that is, which is not throughly burnt in the fire, the leaues of *oryzum* with shoemakers bleach (which the Greekes call *chancalithum*;) the water of the greene twiggcs of the vine burnt in the fire, sheepes dung with vinegar, goates gall annoynt, the fruite of the great herbe *heliotropium* applied by it selfe or ministred with wine, rew with *nitrum* and pepper, *nitrum* with the vrine of a young boy not yet accustomed with venerous actes, oxes dung ministred in vinegar. But these, which we haue mentioned as remedies for the extirpation of *myrmecia* and *acrochordones*, are greatly also effectuall for those euils called *clauis* and *thymia*. They do vse also the head of a lyzard to take away *myrmecia*, *acrochordones* and *clauis*. There are some which do boyle the heads of salted fishes in that water which distilleth out of the greene branches, while they be burning: which they do do declare to be a most excellent remedy for the aforesayd euils. Other some to extinguish these diseases do make a liniment of the rust of brasie (which of the late Phisitions is called *vinde aris* & *flos aris*) of brimstone, and of the distilled water of vine branches. And this is the onely method of curing, which they are wont to vse in racing out of *verruca*, that is, by gnawing and scalding medicines. But this one thing is most diligently to be obserued in administering such kind of medicines, which *Celsus* doth admonish vs of in his fift booke: namely, that those parts which are about the euils, ought to be couered with leaues, least they also be exulcerate; for which cause some do annoynt the places about the diseases, with oyntment of bole armoniacke, with *terra sigillata*, with rose water and vinegar. Furthermore we abolish *acrochordones*, *myrmecia*, and *thymia*, not onely with these aforesayd burning medicines, but also with the flame of the fire, or with some hote instrument rightly applied to them. Oftentimes also we cut them off. But sometime we do take them away and vterlic destroy them by a ligature cunningly made and prepared for them (as it happeneth in that true disease called *fungus*) or else by setting too the foreteeth, as some at Rome in *Galenis* time were wont to do. But if you shall apply fire by some hote instrument to *verruca*, you must prouide, that a plate of yron or some thing being bored through be made readie for the burnt sore, the hole whereof must so fely comprehend the same, that none of the skinné about it may be seene. Adustion being now made, you must resolue the crust with butter, or with some other annointing medicine. Afterward you must cure the sore like vnto other vlcers. But how *myrmecia*, which do not appeare out of the skinné, but altogether equall therewith, ought to be brought forth and cut off, *Galen* teacheth very well *Lib. 14. in thod. med.* where he maketh mention of one in his time at Rome, who deuised a new order to cure these *verruca*: first be brought out the euils by applying his lippes vnto them or by sucking them, and then (which did seeme maruellous) he plucked them from the roote, afterward setting too his foreteeth he vterly destroyed them. But *acrochordones*, appearing about the skinné, he straight way bit off with his teeth, and so quickly dispatched them. *Galen* also setteth down another double maner to cure the euils, saying: But a Chyrurgian being somewhat exercised in manuell practise, may easily cut off these *verruca*, both

Other orders of
curing.

How verruca
are safely bur-
ned.

The cure of
myrmecia be-
ing equal with
the skin.

A new cure of
myrmecia out
of Galen.

Another cure
of myrmecia
Lib. 14. metho-
med.
Scalprum.

with

with that instrument made to the forme of a mirtle leafe, and with that also *Scalprum*. which the Greekes call *scolopomacherion*: this alwayes provided, that the fore be kept and separated from the skin or parts about it. We also bring forth *myrmecia*, by laying some strong and stiffe quill about the compasse or circle thereof, the hollownesse of which quill must be equall with the thicknesse of *myrmecia*, invented by that it may pinch it round about in euerie place. Which being afterward turned about the fore, and enforced downward, it will quickly bring forth the whole *myrmecia* together with the very root, but you must marke, that the very end of the quill which shall cut it in a circle, ought to be not only thin & slender, but also sharpe and strong. The quill therefore of an old cocke, or rather of an eagle is very fit for this purpose. But you must cut it off onely towards the roote, seeing the hollownesse of the other part of the quill may easily comprehend *myrmecia*. And truly by this abscission, if it be done cunningly, you shall learne great Art. Hitherto speaketh *Galen*. But the vlcere which remaineth (*verruca* being thus taken away) must be filled vp and brought vnto a scar, as other vlcers be.

Scolopomacherion.
Scholopomacherion.
Another cure
invented by
a quill.

Prima scitè
abscindenda.

CHAP. XX. Of Oedema and other cold flegmaticke and flatuous tumours.

HAVING sufficiently intreated of those tumours which are engendred through hote humours, we are now againe determined to handle those tumors which haue their original of a cold matter, taking our exordium from that euill which of the Græcians is called *oedema*. For as *eryspelas* is caused of a cholericke fluxe; so *oedema* proceedeth of a flegmaticke humour: *oedema* therefore (*Galen* defining the same) is a certaine loose and vn painfull tumour: or it is a certaine thinne swelling without paine, rising of a flegmaticke humour that floweth into some member of the body, so that the same *Galen* in lib. 14. Ther. thought of *oedema*, that it was a disease and no symptome. For truly we know (sayth he) that *oedemata* doth come otherwise then of the flowing of a flegmaticke humour (that is to wit) of a flegmaticke humour, or vaporous spirite gathered into some member, and sometime engendred in the same, as in the legges & feete which are troubled with a corrupted water running vnder the skinne, and with the euils challed *phthoe*, and *cachexia*, which are euill habites and deformities of the body. For in those dangerous dispositions, *oedema* is an accidentall symptome of that affe which oppresseth the man, that is, an accident necessarily following, which requireth no severall or proper cure (as afterward it shall appeare.) *Oedema* (as *phlegmone* and *eryspelas* also) is discerned of the Chyrurgians by two differences, that is, by the true, or vntrue or vnlawfull *oedema*. A true *oedema* cometh of naturall choler, which truly is nothing else but a raw blood not thoroughly digested, which is found in a lump of blood, very fit to nourish flegmaticke members. An vntrue and vnlawfull *oedema* proceedeth of vn naturall steame. That we may not deale herein any thing obscurely, naturall steame is a cold and a moist humour, in substance crude or raw, in colour inclining to a certain whitenesse, but in tast,

Oedema quid.

Oedema est
symptoma.

Oedema di-
plex verum.

Illegitimum.

What steame is.

What & after
what sort
fleame doth
degenerate
from his owne
nature.

Galen appointeth
two kinds
of fleame.

3. Differences
of tumours be-
sides nature
comming of
fleame.

and (if I may speake it) in smell it is sweete and pleasant: vnnaturall fleame is that which doth degenerate and differ from that fleame before described; and yet it keepeth it selfe within the bounds of his circuit and libertie, which if it shall once passe, it is then no more to be called *phlegma* or fleame, but some other humour. But this fleame chanceth to degenerate from his owne proper nature two maner of waies. One way is (as they say) in it selfe, when in his own naturall and proper substance it is chaunged, without any admixtion with any other humour, which truly happeneth verie often: for it is turned either into a waterish substance, or into a flatuous substance, or into a verie thin matter, & then it is called *phlegma aquosum*, *flatuosum* or *tenue*; or it is turned into a thick and viscous substance, which maketh the fleame verie grosse and clammy, and through a greater (or as we say) through a further induration, it is caused to lookelike a plaister, or like glasse, or it doth putrifie and is altered, and then it is made both salt, nitrous, and corrosiue. The other way vnnaturall fleame is caused through admixtion, that is, when as some other humour doth happen to come vnto it extraordinarily: as for example, either blood; or choler, or melanholic. If blood be commixed with fleame, it is made sweete: if choler be mingled therewith, it is caused to be salt: if melanholic, it is made sowre and sharpe. There are therefore eight kinds of vnnaturall fleame after the opinion of *Auicenna*. *Haly Abbas* appointeth foure onely. But *Galen* (sayth *Guido*) seemeth to assigne vnto it onely two kinds, that is, salt and sowre, although in his second booke of the differences of feuers, and in his second booke *De locis affectis*, and in many other places also he maketh mention of the fleame called *vitreum*, which oftentimes doth ioyne it selfe with sowre fleame, by reason of that affinitie and acquaintance that it hath with it. By these things therefore it is gathered, that of fleame there are engendred eight species or differences of tumours besides nature. For, first of fleame that is naturall commeth a true and a lawfull *oedema*. Secondly of vnnaturall fleame by reason of admixtion there proceed three other differences of tumours, because that three other humours may be commixed therewith; and these be they: *oedema phlegmonodes*, *oedema eryspelasoides*, and *oedema scirrholdes*. Thirdly of vnnaturall fleame, through the alteration of his proper substance, there arise foure other differences of tumours. For first of windy and vaporious fleame doth come that tumour, which of the Latines is properly called *inflatio*, but commonly among the Phisitions it is termed *apostema ventosum*, a windy aposteme. Secondly, of waterish fleame there proceedeth a waterish aposteme. Thirdly of raw, thicke, and grosse fleame, there are engendred those tumours which some do call *lenis nodi*, & there are also ingendred stegmaticke abscessions, which they do commonly call *exitura phlegmatica*. But these are called of the interpreter of *Auicenna* *dubelat frigida*, of which sort are these, *steatomata*, *atheromata*, and *melicerides*, *ganglia* also, which be called of *Auicenna*, *glandulae*, & other of that kind which shall be spoken of in that which followeth. Now of hard or rather of indurated, and (as I may say) of caked fleame, there do arise all those hard knots, which are most found in the ioynts, and those euils also called *brume*, which are commonly called *scrofule*. Fourthly of corrupted and putrified fleame, there do come *fistula* and other vlcers which they call *scrofulosa*.

The

The causes of *oedema*, as also of other tumours besides nature are threefold. First, primatiue causes are these: a fall from some high place, a stripe, a naughty diet. Secondly, antecedent causes, as the abundance of a flegmaticke humour running downe into some member of the bodie. Thirdly, *continēte cause* is the very fleame which is alreadie stuffed and heaped in the member that is beset with a tumour. The signes of *oedema* are these, a loose and soft tumour, which yeeldeth to the weight of the finger, and is hollow after the manner of a caue or denne, it doth not rise vp againe at the removing of the finger, but it doth retaine the very footstep or marke of that which pressech it. There is felt very small paine, or almost none at all. Very little heate, a very white colour, or (as some will haue it) a meane betweene whitenesse and palenesse, and other such like signes, which do testifie the dominion and power of fleam. *Oedema* (as other tumours also) hath foure times, the beginning, the augmenting, the state, and the declination of the tumour. This kinde of tumour is most cured by resolution, or exhalation, but seldome by suppuration, verie often by turning and chaunging them into knots or kernels called *Nodi*, or into other increasing (as they call them) which are termed of the Grecians *Apossemata*, but of the Latines *Abscessus*. But the markes and tokens of the ending and finishing of these kindes of tumours are handled before in our generall discourse of tumours. These *oedematous* tumors are rather excited in the winter time, then at other seasons, for then very much fleame is gathered together in mens bodies. These tumours also do greatly and very often trouble old men, and them which be giuen to gluttonie.

Iudicia.

CHAP. XXI.

*Of the cure of Oedema caused of a flegmaticke humor
flowing into some member.*

BECAUSE *oedemata*, after the manner of other tumors, are raised through the fluxe of humors into some member, the scope and order of their cure shall also be two fold. 1. The one is to dissolue the substance of these humours which nowē do occupie the member. 2. The other is to withstand and restrain the flux. And as the one scope doth excell the other, so the remedies of their cure must be commixed together the one with the other, either somewhat plentifully or somewhat sparingly. When therefore the order of restraining shall ouercome that which counselleth vs to vse euacuating and digesting remedies, the force of restrictiues must be augmented. But when there is more need of euacuation then of restriction, the nature and vertue of digestiue or discussive and drying medicines must of necessitie excell in the mixture. Moreouer both the plentiful fluxe, and the small deale of matter in the affected part doth tell vs, that in the mixture the vertue of restrictiue medicines must be more effectual, & of greater force. Contrariwise you must vse a greater measure of drying & digesting remedies, when matter aboundeth in the member very plentifully, & the fluxe very little. But in an old & inueterat *oedema*, & that which is already ingendred, you shal not vse any longer this order of curing which hath a mingled power, but you shall apply such things as can

Curandi oedematis scopus duplex cum adhuc gignitur.

The order of curing an old oedema.

*Oedematiue
symptoma est
curatio.*

disperse and deuide the matter. Which thing is also diligently to be obserued in all other continual vlcers. But *oedema*, which is an euill symptoma following other dangerous affectes, as leanness of the body, the dropie and an euill habite of the bodie, which the Graecians call *cachexia*, doth desire no proper, peculiar or seuerall cure (as we haue before mentioned) for it cannot be cured but by expelling that euill affect whereof it first groweth. Yet somewhat is to be remitted out of it, if it doth debilitate the strength or increase the chief affect, or else hinder the cure. It shall therefore be sufficient (if it shall neede any cure) to rub diligently the swelling place, sometime with *oxyrhodinum*, sometime with oyle mingled with salt, or else with *oxyrhodinum* with salt. For this kind of friction doth slake the tumour, and doth mitigate paine, if it be prouoked thorough too much distension (as sometime it chaneth:) *oxyrhodinum* doth stay the fluxe, oyle with salt hath power to digest and emptie out that which is compact in the member. But *oxyrhodinum* with salt, doth partly digest and dry vp, and partly restraine and stoppe the affluence of humors. But our generall method being before declared, let vs turne our pen to declare the proper & particular order of curing a lawfull *oedema*, which hath his beginning of the flowing of thin steame, which method, according to the opinion of the Chyrurgians of our time, doth consist of foure things, (as hath bene said of *Phlegmone* and *Erysipelas*) that is to say, 1. In a iust order of diet. 2. In preparing of the phlegmaticke humor, which they call *equatio*, an equal diuision, & in purging the same. 3. In repressing, dissoluing and drying vp the humour that is flowed already & now doth occupie the member. 4. And last of all in correcting and remouing the symptomes or accidents which do follow *oedema*. These therefore are the foure particular intentions by the which we dispatch those two generall orders before mentioned. The first intention therefore is perfected or finished by the due and iust vsage of fixe vnnaturall things, which shall be well and fitly applied to the sicke bodie, if they shall all decline vnto heate and drincesse, with a certaine attenuation or diminishing. Therefore chuse and prepare a thinne and dry aire. Let him take for his drinke wine that is fined and cleane from dregges, cleare, white, or somewhat red, which they call claret wine, which in his kind must be excellent good, and allayed a litle with water. Let his bread be very well baked, and well handled. Let him eate the flesh of sheepe, or the flesh of the birdes of mountaines and of the plaines, and those rather roasted then sodden. Let him vse sparingly fat brothes, potherbes, and other fat meats. Let him abstain from things that be vnleauened, raw, and very moist. Let him not eate of any kinde of pulse or cheefe, nor of vntimely & vntripe fruites, nor of fishes (except they be those that liue in grauelly places; and those also either roasted or boyled in wine.) Roasted meates generally are better then sodden, and better then those things also which the industrie of the baker can provide. Let him eate litle, and drinke lesse. In all his diet let him eschue lecherie and gluttonie. If the belly be bound, loose it with figges, or with *Carthamus*. Take therefore fixe or fixe dry figges, and fill them with the pith of the seed of *Carthamus*, and eate them either in the morning, or before dinner. Let the bodie be exercised moderately, if so be the affected member can permit the same without hurt. Let his sleep be litle & short. Let him altogether auoid bathing, and

*Foure particular
orders to be
kept in curing a
lawfull oedema*

Prima intentio.

Air.

Potus.

Cibus.

Somnus.

Balneum.

and all other moistening things . The second intention is accomplished by *Secunda intentio* preparatives, or by remedies equally deuiding (which they commonly call *digestives*) and by medicines which can euacuate that flegmaticke matter wherewith the bodie of the sicke doth abound. Therefore you must giue him some kinde of *Oximell*, which can cut, and deuide, and purge forth the fleame that lurketh in the bodie . Afterward the matter going before the expulsion being thus prepared, at the appointment of some cunning Phisition, must be emptied out with some medicine that can purge fleame, called *phlegmagogen*. But if, (saith *Guido* out of *Cauliacus*) aboundance be present in the bodie, you may safely open a veine, but yet not without the aduise of some expert Phisition . But in a plethoricke and full bodie there are scarce at any time seene any *adematata*, especially those which be lawfull, for fleame doth not abound in it more plentifully then other humours doe . Therefore it being simple and alone, not commixed with other humours, it can seldome flowe into any part of a plentiful bodie, wherefore letting of bloud especially in a lawfull *adema* doeth seeme to be nothing profitable . The third intention is finished in the beginning by applying repercuissues, & not by those remedies which by binding vehemently with their naturall coldnesse doe repell and driue backe; but by those which haue power to drie greatlie and digest well, which they call prouokers of drinnesse and resolution: but in the increase by vsing discussive remedies somewhat more forcible. And in the state thereof, especially about the ende, the fluxe being already stayed, by pure medicines, and by those which doe verie strongly digest and resolve . But in the declination by consuming and drying helps, if the cure be to be dispatched by resolution. But if it doth degenerate and turne into Abscessions, which they call *Exitura*, it shall be cured by ripening medicines, and by other helps which are set downe for the cure of Abscessions. Moreover, repressing remedies ended with a drying digesting nature, which do profite in the beginning of *adema* comming of the influxion of a flegmaticke humour are comprehended vnder three speciall rules. The first is out of *Galen Libro 14. Therapeut. & secundum ad Glauconem*, where he saith, that if *adema* doeth consist of a flegmaticke humour flowing into some member, a sponge wet in water wherein is a little vineger, shall sometime abundantly suffice . But these must be so well tempered and commixed together, that they may either be drunke, or that they may not haue much vineger vpon it. But you must bind the sponge to the place, beginning at the neather part, & ending aboue. Let the sponge be very new. And if there be not a new to be gotten, you shall cleanse and scour the olde verie diligently, by washing it in *nitrum* and *aphonitrum*, and in lye. *Auicene* commaundeth that in steade of a sponge, you sometime applie a double linnen cloth, or some such like thing . The second rule is mentioned of *Auicene* himselfe, *Rx. Baurach* of the decoction of water, that is, of salt peter, or of the some of salt peter, of ashes, of vineger, of each as much as shall suffice. The third rule is described of *Raxis* after this maner. *Rx. Aloes, mirrhe, licit, acatia, fess, memitha*, that is, of *Glauicum*, of *Cyperus*, of *crocus orientalis*, of bole armoniacke, of each a little quantitie: powder them, & comix the with the iuyce of coleworts called *Brassica*, and with vineger, & make an emplaister. Furthermore those remedies

Tertia intentio.

Remedies to be used in the beginning of adema.

1. *Posca aquosa.*

2.

3. *Emplastrum Raxis.*

Remedies to be
used in the
time of increa-
sing.

Lib. 14. Ther.
& 2. ad Glau.

Remedies for
the state and
declination.

1.

Spongia aqua
lixivia imbuta.

2.

Linimentum.

3.

Emplastrum
Aucemae.

Vsnea quid.

Concoquentia
seu maturata.

This is given to
Theodoricus.

which were of late rehearsed, doe also helpe much the increasing of this oedematous tumour, if you doe put vnto them a good quantitie of vineger, and a little alume, especially in strong bodies, which haue a hard skinned, and when as *aquosior posca* shall not auaille. Therefore if *oedema* doth not cease or rest with these helpes mentioned a little before, when you bind it too againe, you shall commixe a little more vineger, that the *posca* may be the stronger: or you shall lay on a little alume, and apply a new sponge: for this doth helpe as an excellent medicine, and doth long continue very effectually, and with his substance it doth drie vp the affected member. If there be no plentie of new sponges, it is better (saith *Galen*) to vse that which the common sort call *elydmion*. But aboute all things let it be left, which kinde is vsed at *Tariss*, whereof if there be any plentie, you may boldly vse: for you shall trie it to be more profitable then the vsing of sponges, but let it be wetted in *Posca*, and a little alume therewith. Then (as it is set downe already) let it be bound to, and let the binding begin at the neather partes, and end aloft. Let the binding be meane and small, as in the setting of a bone. But truly the first casting about of the swathing band, which must beginne beneath, ought to be tyed somewhat strait, but all the rest must be slacked by little & little, but yet not so, that any part of the binding be loose. Now the remedies which are to be ministered after the vigour of the state, when the fluxe is stayd, & in an vniuersall declination (if *oedema* doeth require resolution) are wont also to be described & contained vnder a three fold rule. 1. The first is of *Auicene*, which is a sponge dipped in lye, of the ashes of the figge tree, of the vine, & of the holmes, which is a kind of oake: apply these to the member, for truly in them there is great power and vertue both to dry & to cleanse. 2. The second is of *Brunnus* which *Theodoricus* also vsed. Rx. of alume, brimstone, mirrhe and salt, of each a like quantitie: commixe all these with oyle of roses, and with vineger, and make a liniment, which yet doth dry more strongly then the former remedie. 3. The third is of *Auicene* likewise, whose description is this as followeth. Rx. of cowes dung lb. 3. of *olybanum*, of *styrax*, of *vsnea*, that is, of the mosse of trees, which is called of the Gracians *bryon*, of *calamus aromaticus*, of spikenard, of wormewood, ana 3. lb. apply all these with vineger, and with the decoction of colewortes, and make an emplaster. And this truly is the way to cure *oedema* which is finished by resolution. But if they do not yeeld vnto digestion, but do come vnto suppuration, you may applye and that verie profitably *unguentum e succis* called *diachylon*, and that ointment especially which *Rogerius* was wont to make. To the same purpose also this emplaster following is very effectually. Rx. mallowes, branke vsine, or *hiricina*, which is called *Achanius* and *achanta*, roote of *althea*, roote of lillie, roasted onions, snailles, leauen, linseede sodden and kneaded, & mingled with swines grease, or with butter, bring them into the forme of an emplaster, or rather of a cataplasme. Another for the same purpose very effectually. Rx. of the iuyce of elder, of walwort, of sorrell (which our late writers do call *aparium acutum*) of *leuisicum* or *ligusticum*, & of fennel, of ech of them as much as you thinke good, yet of an equall weight, boyle them with *dialthea*, with hony, oyle, & butter, & of the make a cataplasme. The Aposteme being ripe, do not rarie till it open of the own accord, for that happeneth seldom, or peraduenture neuer, but let a-

percion

perition be made with some hot iron, or some burning medicine, wherewith the matter may be purged out, according to the maner and forme before expressed. Then let the filthinesse be cleansed out & wiped away with that ointment commonly called *unguentum Apostolorum*, or with a mundificatiue of *apium*, and with the iuyce of wormewood, or with this ointment following which doth draw & cleanse the thicke and grosse matter. *Rx.* of *Galbanum*, of *Ammoniacum*, of *resin*, *terebinthina*, pitch, of bullocks tallow, of old oyle, ana. a like quantity: dissolve the gummes in vinegar, and let them melt or boile vpon the fire with the rest, & make an ointment. Afterward let it be cured like vnto other filthie vltcers. But we dispatch our fourth intencion, according to the nature and quality of the accidents that chance very suddenly; as if paine doth happen, it must most especially be mitigated, by applying moist oyle of wooll (after the doctrine of *Auicenn*) or by boiled wine, or by a cerate made of the oyle of cammomill, of the oyle of wormewood, of the oyle of spike, and of waxe. But if hardnesse be present, it must be dissolved & mollified with the marrow of the bones of bullocks, or with harts marrow, or with some such like thing, as hereafter shall be sayd. But *Galen* in an inueterate *œdema* did annoynt the sore with oyle, and then ministrd a sponge dipped in lye, and binding it somewhat iust or strait did perfectly cure the cuill.

Now it remaineth that we set down the summe of the cure of *œdema*. 1. First therefore vnto an *œdema*, which is a symptome happening & coming suddenly with other diseases (as the dropsie, leannesse of the body, and that euill called *cachexia*) apply such medicines as cā discusse & dry vp without grief. 2. Therefore rub the swolne place diligētly with *oximell*, or with *oxyrhodiniū*, or with oyle & salt, or else with *oxyrhodinum* & salt: for by this frictio you shall both mitigate the paine (if any be caused through distention) & remit the tumor also. 3. But to an *œdema* which commeth of the influxion of thin sleame, if flux doth not yet cease, apply those medicines, which partly digest, & partly constraîne and restraine. 4. Therefore bind a new sponge, or some other dipped in lye, or wetted first in alayed *Posca*, especially in soft and tender bodies, & (if the tumour doth possesse the members of the body) bind about them softly some swadling band from the neather part to the vpper, as we vse to do in setting of bones. 5. But if by these remedies, the tumour doth not slake or yeeld, put a litle alumē with *posca*. vizd. with *oxycratum*. 6. But if the affeēt shalbe of any continuance, you must not vse any more those remedies which haue a mingled faculty (that is to say digesting and restraining) but rather digestiues. 7. Therefore the member being first annoynted with oyle, you must minister a sponge (as we said) dipped in lye, and bind it with swathing bands somewhat iust and strait.

CHAP. XXII.

Of Tumours above nature, which the Latines call inflations, but they are commonly called windy Apostemes, *apostemata ventosa*.

IT is now very requisite for vs to dispute of the Tumours called Inflations, The difference whose cure is diuerse from the cure of *œdemata*. For they (as *Galen* sayth *Lib. betweene infla- 14. Therap.*) haue their originall of a phlegmaticke humour, and therefore do

Aperitio.

A mundificatiue ointment, which is attributed to Diuina

Quarta intencionio.

Li. 2. ad Glau. Oedemate diuturno.

Capita curationis œdematis.

1. Oedema morbus.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

Oedema inueteratum.

7.

Lib. 4.

Inflationum
causa.Lib. 6. de mor-
bis & sympto-
ma.

Lib. 4.

Inflationum
nota.Inflationum
prognostica.Inflationum
curatio.

yeeld vnto touching and handling, & our fingers being layed thereon do descend somewhat deeply into them. But inflations do come of a flatuous spirite gathered together, breeding sometime vnder the skinne, sometime vnder the thinne filmes which are compassed about with the bones, or they do shut in & include the muscles, or else some part of the bowels. Furthermore sometime there is also not a little of this humor gathered together in the belly & in the inward parts, & also in the middle space of them & of the *Peritoneum*, as in that kind of water (saith *Paulus*) vnder the skin (which euill we call a Tympany.) These also differ from *oedemata*, because they being touched with the finger do not retaine any marke, and they do giue a sound like a tabour, and also because sometime they are contained in a sensible hollownesse, and that oftentimes very great. The cause of these kinds of inflations, is the weaknesse of the natural heat, which is placed in a flegmatike matter to prouoke windines. For truly heat may take vp such a vapor of a moyst substance, but it cannot deuide nor discusse it. For euen as (saith *Galen*) we see in outward things, that a very cold constitution (especially when the North wind bloweth) doth make the aire very calme, and a very hote constitution in sommer maketh the ayre pure & cleare, but the middle constitutions do cause cloudes, so it happeneth in liuing creatures. For heat, neither by extreame weaknesse, nor yet by vehement strength can beget wind, but when it getteth a meane betweene these affections. For this vapour is holden in some place (as *Aesculap* sayth) either because of the thicknesse of the member, or for the grossenesse of the vaporous spirite. Which thing also *Paulus* after the opinion of *Galen* witnesseth in these words: saying, that the thicknesse of the members, and the grossenesse of the spirit or vapour, doth cause that the same vapour is not dispersed abroad.

The signes of inflation are these, a tumour not yeelding to any touching or handling, it appeareth very cleare and bright, & when it is beaten on, it giueth a sound like vnto a bottle, or tympany. Moreouer there is felt oftentimes windinesse throughout the whole body, sometime running this way, sometime that way, which causeth extensue paine. But concerning the iudgements and opinions hereof, a flatuous or vaporous spirit, which is not dissolued & dispersed, doth procure many discommodities. But a breathing and windy vapour, coursing vp and down within the body with paine and great anguish, is greatly to be feared, because it doth seeme to be drawn fro some venomous matter. But now seeing these three things, vidz. the moist matter, the imbecillity of the naturall heate, and the thicknesse of the pores of the body, do concurre together to the generation of *inflatio* (as hath already bene declared) the order therefore of the cure thereof shall be this; first to strengthen the substance of the heat, to extenuate the vapour & flatuous matter, & to preuent or opene the thicknesse of the pores of the body (wherein this vaporous spirit gathered now together, is contained.) Now we make perfect and we finish the two latter things, that is, the rarifying of the thicke body, & the extenuation of the grosse vapour, by one and the same kind of medicines, which is by vsing those remedies which do profit to the extenuation of the members, and by applying those helpes, which can beare either more or lesse according to the inflation of the afflicted members, according to the thicknesse or thinnesse thereof, & according also

also to the grossefesse or thinnesse of the vapours. For according to the difference of these things, the power or faculty of those medicines which are ministered, ought to be intended and remitted. The thin parts therefore, and the vapour or spirit which is not very thicke, are but meanly to be dealt withall: but the grosse members, and that vapour which containeth much thick matter, do require medicines which may greatly extenuate and heate them. But if the substance of naturall heate shall perish or diminish, it must be repaired againe; regarding the greatnesse of the losse thereof. But if it shall be altered, you must bring it vnto a certaine mediocrity. But if griefe there shall vexe or molest the sick, you must hasten vnto those helpes which can mitigate paine. Very well therefore haue the Chyrurgians of our age declared, that the cure of inflations (which they call *Apoſſematata ventosa*) is dispatched by three intentions. The first consisteth of a iust and due obseruation of diet. The second of a good concoction or digestion, and the third dependeth of the discussing and dispersing of the windy spirite, which is assembled in the member. Therefore let the institution of diet be after this manner. First of all you must abstaine from all grosse, viscos, raw, flegmaticke and windy meates: as are sweete meates, all kind of pulse, raw fruit, rape rootes, Chest-nuts, and other things of that sort which do ingender a flatuous vapour. You must vse hote and dry things, and those remedies also which can attenuate and dissolue windinesse, as is bread made of barley with a litle salt and commin seede. Let the patient his drinke be small and becre. Let him vse the decoction of Cicers mixed with onyons: let him take *apium hortense* (which is commonly called *petroselinum*, parcelsly) calamint, rew, commin. Let the flesh which he eateth on, be rather roasted then sodden, and especially the flesh of birdes (as hath bene sayd in the former chapter.) But now that you may dispatch the second intention, you must strengthen & corroborate the vertue concoctiue with some sweet and odoriferous sauiours, and by electuaries appointed for this purpose, as be these, *diacuminum*, *diacalaminthe*, *Aromaticum rosatum*, and this decoction following, which they call *Dragea*. R^x. of annise, of *Dragea hel-fennell*, *Carnus daucus*, commin, of laurell berries bearen together. ana. $\frac{3}{4}$. j. of peth digestion. liquoric, galingale, white ginger. ana. $\frac{3}{4}$. β of cloues, cubebs, of long pepper, seede of rew, ana. $\frac{3}{4}$. ij. of annise seede couered ouer with sugar. $\frac{3}{4}$. iij. of sugar $\frac{1}{2}$. β . make a powder. But outwardly let the stomacke be annointed with oyle of spike, of *Costum*, and oyle of rew: or make an Epitheme of those things which can discusse wind, and which are appointed to helpe concoction, and let it be applied to the stomacke. But these things do rather appertaine vnto Phisicke then vnto Chyrurgery. The third intention is accomplished by applying some medicine which hath a double vertue, that is, which can both concoct, digest, and moderately bind, neither will increase paine. But to the perfecting of these things, there are appointed three manner of remedies in *libro 14. Therapeut.* The first is mentioned of *Galen* in these words: In the arteries (sayth he) and in the muscles which are vnder the skin, or vnder the filmes which do couer the bones, when *Inflatio* is risen, if it be without griefe, some liquour applied to the thinnest members shall profite greatly, of the which nature is lye ministered with a new sponge. But if griefe doth also trouble

Three intentions of curing inflations.

Prima intentio.

Cibus.

Potus.

Secunda intentio.

Tertia intentio.

*Inflation com-
meth of a bruse
in the arteries,
muscles, and
filmes which
cover the bones.*

Sapa.

Lana succida.

Oesopus.

*Ceratum ex
resepe.*

Prolixio.

Aphonitrum.

Formula tertia

*How an old
inflation must
be handled.*

him, you must annoint the member with some oyle which hath power to mitigate and remit the same. These diseases happen through a stripe or bruse, when as either the muscels, or the filme which compasseth the bone, is brused or hurt, vpon which filme that goeth about the bone, the aforesayd sponge must be layed. 2. The second rule is described also in the same place after this sort: But vnto the muscles (for they sometime are painefull) you must apply some medicine which can mitigate paine in greater measure, so that to them you must apply not onely lye alone, but you must put into it both *Sapa*, & also a litle oyle. But it shall be more profitable in the beginning not to apply lye, but to vse *Sapa* with wine, and a litle vinegar, and to put to them a litle oyle, which things when they are mingled together, it is good to heare them, and lay on vnwasht wooll (which they call *succida*) dipped in them. But if there be no plenty of such wooll, then the oile of wooll is to be vsed with the former mixture: but if oyle of wooll be at hand neither, you shall commixe very well some cerate, which is made of the oyle of wooll. For the brused muscles must needs be lenified with some medicine which hath a double strength, that is, which can both concoct, digest, and moderately bind. But if the medicine containeth no astringion, it encreaseth sometime *phlegmons*, and especially in those bodies which are plethoricke and full of humours. Being mindfull therefore of these three indications already declared (that is of concoction, digestion, and moderate astringion) in the muscles which are inflated by means of some bruse or stripe, when great paine doth afflict, you shall the rather vse a more mitigating remedie, and you shall greatly resist paine, by vsing more oyle and wine, whose force I know to be mighty, when as paine together with the inflation doth speedily hasten to an end. And truely the time is the shorter, if you minister those things which haue a strong and mighty effect, as are these, lye and vinegar, and next after them wine hath a mighty operation. As often therefore as you mind not to assuage paine, you shall cast into the mixture, a greater quantity of lye and vinegar. Again when you intend to repell and drive backe, you must put in more of wine then of other things, which wine shall be more effectuell for this purpose if it be blacke and sharpe. But if you please to digest, you shall minister the greater quantity of lye. But if you shall mingle vinegar with them, the mixture shall be profitable both wayes, because that vinegar hath a double and mingled faculty. But when the muscle is not pained, you may lawfully for want of lye vse *Aphonitrum*, but it must not be grauelly, but rather somie. The third rule is an emplaster made of the filthinesse which is wiped from the bodies of men that wrastle, and of vnslaked lime, boyled together in water and wine. These are the words of *Galen lib. 14. Therap.* But those inflations (sayth he) which through negligence are inueterate and of some antiquitie, you shall apply to them those helpes which are made of lye (as hath bene sayd before:) and secondly you shall minister some emplaster. But I wil declare also the example or order how to prepare these things. First the filthinesse that commeth of mens bodies must be heat and throughly strained that it may be cleane and pure: then againe take the lime, which must be brayed as small as meale, and sprinkle it in the vessel where the filthinesse is, and temper it together to the thicknesse of clay.

Thar

That medicine also is verie good for these inflations which is made of *Sycoman-*
rum, & other remedies of that sort do greatly helpe also. But if this flatuous spi-
 rit, which causeth the inflation shall be smokie, wicked, corrupt, & excited of a
 venomous matter, with intollerable paine, and vehement heate, running vp
 and downe in the members of the bodie, no more safe or better counsell can
 be given then that (when it is resident in some particular member) that mem-
 ber be straightway bound beneath and aloft, and in the midstest the tumour be
 opened with a razor, or with some hote instrument, so that the venomous va-
 pour may easily come forth. Afterward the gaping wound must be filled with
 aloës, and with bole armoniacke dissolued in oyle of roses and vineger. But
 within three or foue dayes after, you must fill vp the wound with flesh, and
 bring it to a scarre. But in such venomous inflations, a verie then diet must be
 obserued, and the bodie must be emptied with some purging medicine. And if
 you minister *Theriaca* to the sick, it wil helpe him greatly. Now there remaineth
 the summe of the cure of a flatuous tumour, which we mind to declare in these
 wordes following. First, confirme and strengthen the weake substance of heat
 that is in the affected member, restore the same againe, and when it is altered
 bring it into some mediocritie. Secondly, extenuate the vaporous and windie
 humour which raiseth the tumour. Thirdly, open the thicke pores of the skin,
 and of the whole affected member with medicines that are effectually for the
 thinnesse of the members: afterward seeke to discusse the flatuous vapour.
 Fourthly, (but according to the difference of the affected parts, and according
 to the thicknesse of the flatuous vapor, or thinnesse of the medicines which are
 applied,) intend and remit aswell the matter as the facultie & vertue of them.
 5. Furthermore, if such a vaporous tumor shall chance with grieve and with in-
 flamation (as it happeneth in the muscles which through some bruse are stuf-
 fed out with wind) applye in the beginning mitigating medicines: but in pro-
 cesse of time, vse such remedies as haue power to dissolue, increasing by little
 and little the plentie thereof. Sixtly inflations, which through negligence are
 inueterate, first annoint them with lye, & then lay too some plaister, which can
 mollifie, dissolue and discusse them.

If the windie
 vapour shalbe
 venomous.

Actus ratio.
Theriaca.
 The summe of
 curing of a fla-
 tuous tumour.

1

2

3

4

5

6

CHAP. XXIII.

*Of a Tumor caused of a thin substance, which they call aquosum
 Apostema, that is, a watersish Aposteme.*

IF steame doth vniuersally abound throughout the whole bodie, that kinde of
 disease (which is a watersish humour running betweene the skinne and the
 flesh; called *Leucophlegmatia*) doeth accompanie the same, as *Galen* hath no-
 ted in his sixth booke *de symptomatum causis*. But when this stegmaticke hu-
 mour doeth flow in one onely member, there is engendred *oedema*: for so they
 call a loose tumour, which is without paine. But if watersish excrementes do
 abound, they are wont to bring the dropisie (which they call *Ascites*) which if
 they shall couch themselves in one onely member, they do raise in it *Phlyctene*
 (that is to say) ulcers or wheelkes. Furthermore the latter sort of Phistions
 (that is to say) ulcers or wheelkes.

Leucophleg-
matia.
oedema.
Ascites.
Phlyctene.

have bene accustomed to all this kinde of waterish tumours, *Aquosum phlegma*, as also they do terme that humour to be fleame which floweth in the feet and legges of them that are troubled with the dropsie, and aboundeth in the leane partes of the bodie, and in other members, which do labour of an euill habit, (which the Græcians call *Cachexia*.) And these kindes of tumors which do proceede of waterish fleame, or of the aforesayd serous increasing, they do also call vnlawfull and vntrue *œdemata*. But in those dangerous dispositions or diseases they call it *Tæbes*, which name *Hydrops* and *Cachexia* do require: but *œdema* (as hath bene already declared out of *Galen*) doth not deserue the name of a disease, but of a symptome, for that it truly needeth no particular or seuerall cure. For the onely rubbing of it with *oxirrhodium*, or sometime with salt and oyle, or with salt and *oxirrhodium* doth stop it, and many other things of that kinde do worke the like effect. But the cause of these tumors are these, the altering of the vertue or facultie of the members through a cold and corrupted intemperature of the bodie, and the naughtinesse of nourishment declining to aquositie, as you may easily gather out of the sixth booke *de symptomatum causis*. The signes and iudgements are almost all one with a true *œdema*. Yet they differ in this, because in the waterish tumors the tumor is more loose then in a lawfull *œdema*: and therefore it doth not so resist touching, neither doth it sound like winde, but rather as water, and it doth seeme to shine after a sort, whe one beholdeth it against the light. Now concerning the iudgements of this kind of tumor, there is no doubt but that a waterish tumor proceedeth of a greater coldnesse then a flatuous tumor doth, as *Galen* declareth in the eleuenth commentarie of his fourth booke of Aphorismes. But it seemeth (saith he) that a waterish *Hydrops*, which they call *Ascites*, is engendred of great coldnesse, but a *Tympanie* of lesse cold, which disease is named of *Hippocrates* a drie water running betweene the skin. For a moist substance cannot be chaunged into a flatuous vapour without some heate. Moreouer waterish tumors do happen oftener in the feet, in the stones & cods, in the head, and in the ioynts, then in any other partes of the bodie, both because such a kinde of humour doth readily rush into those partes, and also because heate is verie meane and little in them, for because they be farre off from the hottest members. And as a flatuous vapour is seldome found without a waterish humor: so a waterish or serous humor is scarce contained at any time in any member without a windy spirit. Hitherto haue we spoken of the generation, the causes, signes, and iudgements of a waterish tumor; now we will set downe the cure thereof. Seeing that these waterish tumors are caused (as we haue sayd already) of the flowing of a serous humor, there needeth no other meanes, specially no other generall order to cure them, then that method which we haue expressed already in the cure of other tumors, which are engendred of the influxion of humors into some member. The order therefore of remedying such kind of tumors in the beginning shall consist of two points, (that is to say) 1. to emptie out that which is flowed, 2. and to stoppe and inhibite the fluxe of the humor. Wherefore, as in all other diseases, which are yet but in begetting, so also in these affectes, the Physition must be carefull and diligent, as well in curing them, as in foreseeing the daunger following (that is) both to remedie the disease, and prouide

Lib. 2. ad
Glaucnem &
14. Therap.

Causa.

Signa.

Iudicia.

Ascites is caused of more cold then *Tympanites*.
What parts these tumors do most occupy.

Aquosum tumoris curatio.

Curatio duplex.

prouide for the fluxe. The first order therefore is subiect to that part of the Arte of Physicke which cureth the diseases: but the second belongeth to that part which preuenteth the disease to come. But that we may profit & dispatch this doubt and generall method, it is necessarie to recite fve other particular intentions, expressed of Guido out of *Cauliacus* for the cure of a waterish tumour, in this manner and order as followeth. The first consisteth in a iust institution and obseruation of a good diet. The second in the helping and furthering of concoction. The third in purging out the waterish humour by the belly. The fourth in bringing out of the waterish humour through the passages of the vrine. The fifth & last consisteth in the euaporation and drying vp of that waterish humiditie which is compact and contained in the aggriued member. But because the foure first intentions do rather pertaine to the Phisition then vnto the Chyrurgian, for whose profit we haue taken this worke in hand, and also because they may sufficiently be knowne by those things which went before, I haue set downe the cure in the 33. Chap. of my 3. booke: and am determined to handle in this place the last intention onely, which requireth some new intended remedies. The first intention therefore is ended with those medicines which can dry vp, and resolue those waterish and serous humors which are contained in the affected member. But of these remedies there are commonly set downe three rules or orders. The first out of *Galen lib. 2. ad Glauconē*, and *lib. 14. method. medendi*. which is made of *oxyrrhodinum* and salt (as hath bene before declared.) The second is out of the same author, which is a new sponge dipped in lye: and to this purpose serueth those remedies also which we haue before set downe for the cure of *oedemata*; with the which helpes (that they may drie vp and discusse the more strongly) you must commix *Aphonitrum*, alume, and brimstone. The third rule is a certaine emplaister described of *Auicē* for the cure of *scrofula*, which emplaister he attributed to *Galen in libro suo de compositione medicamentorum capit. 26. v.* But this emplaister (as he sayth) within one weeke at the most, and oftentimes within three dayes, doeth resolue all the hardnesse of the euill. But although this emplaister cannot be found in the booke before rehearsed to belong vnto *Galen*, notwithstanding we may vse the same verie fitly to the dissolution of a waterish and flatuous hardnesse: whose description out of *Auicē* is this that followeth. *Rx.* of mustard seede, of nettle seede, brimstone, *spuma maris*, *aristolochia rotunda*, and *bdellium*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. of ammoniacke, old oile and waxe. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. But if the hardnesse of the tumour be not discuffed by this emplaister, you can deuise no other more excellent or more present remedie, then to open with some instrument, and then to cleanse it and scoure it, and afterward to cure it after the manner of other filchie vlcers. The summe of curing a waterish tumour is this. 1. Appoint such a dyet to the sicke as can attenuate heate, and drie vp 2. Let him vse a moderate exercise of his bodie, let him eate and drinke little, let him not sleepe much, let him oftentimes prouoke his bellie and bladder to auoid excrements. 3. Take heed that he digesteth his meate well, and that he begetteth not windinesse. 4. Purge out the waterish humour, wherewith the whole bodie of the sicke doth abound, by the bellie, and by the pores of the vrine. 5. Drie vp and digest through breathing that serous humour which is included in the affected mem-

Fve particular intentions in curing a waterish tumour.

1 2

3

4

5

1

2

3

Auicē emplaister to discusse waterish tumours.

*Capita curati-
onis aquosi tu-
moris.*

1 2 3

4

5

- 6 ber. 6. But if it cannot thus be discusſed, put ſome penknife, or ſome other hor
instrument into the tumour, if it occupieth the arteries, and open it in that
place where it is moſt inclined downeward, that ſo the humour may the more
easily come forth. 7. Euacuate the humour which did cauſe the tumor by ſome
emiffarie, and then without delay diſpatch all other things which do pertaine
vnto the cure of other corrupted vlcers of the like nature.

CHAP. XXIIII.

*Of the diſeaſes called Glandule, Nodi and Struma, together
with other Abſceſſions, which they call Phleg-
matica excreſcentia.*

*Enumeratio
abſceſſuum pi-
euitorum.*

GANGLIA ſo called of the Græcians, *Charades* (that is) *Struma*, which they
alſo call *Scrofula*, *Brouchocele*, which they name *Bocium*, and *Hernia gutturus*,
Melicerides, *Stomatata*, and *Atheromata*: alſo *Teſtudo*, *Talpa*, *Nacta* or *Napta*,
which names giuen to tumours were inuented of the late Philoſophers, and are
not to be found among auncient writers. Thoſe tumours alſo which *Auicene*
calleth *Fugilla*, alſo *Nodi*, and *vulgaris Bubo*, together with many other tumors of
that kinde, in what part ſouer of the bodie they do grow, they haue their ge-
neration of fleame, and for that cauſe they are iuſtly referred vnto plegma-
tike tumours. But although certaine of the aboue named Abſceſſions do dege-
nerate into a ſtonie hardneſſe and into ſchirrous diſeaſes, yet the roote and
the originall beginning of them for the moſt part is fleame, (as *Auicene* de-
clareth) yet we will not denie, but that ſome other humour may ſometime be
commixed with fleame, whereof ſuch kinde of Abſceſſions do come, and ſo
there do growe vp thoſe Abſceſſions which are both compound and of ano-
ther kinde. But our intent is to ſpeake here of ſimple Abſceſſions onely, by
whoſe proportion or analogie the knowledge of compound tumours ſhall ap-
peare moſt euidently: for the one muſt alwayes be referred vnto the other as

*Simplicia ſunt
regula compoſi-
torum.*

*Glandula
Guidonis.*

*Auicens glan-
dula are al one
with Ganglia.*

it were vnto certaine rules or canons (as we haue ſayd elſewhere.) Therefore
all the aforeſayd tumours are comprehended vnder the kinde of phlegmatike
Abſceſſions, or (that I may ſpeake after the maner of the cōmon Chyrurgians)
vnder the *genus* of phlegmatike increaſings, which diſeaſes haue certaine ſpe-
ciall differences among themſelues (as it ſhall afterward appeare.) For *Glandu-
la*, (as *Guido* thought) tooke his title of the likeneſſe of *Glans* an acorne, which
forme he doth ſeeme to vnderſtand in this place. This *Glandula* (ſayth he) is
euery where ſoft, one alone, mouable, and diſſeuered from the other parts ly-
ing about it, oftentimes growing in the cleane and pure parts of the body. But
Glandula in *Auicene* doeth breede either in the hand, or in the foote, or in ſome
other place ioyned to the ſinewes and cords of the body, and theſe *Glandula* he
would not haue deſtroed, leſt the ſicke thereby ſhould fall into *Spasmos*, the
crampe. They do happen alſo in the palme of the hand, and in the forehead, as
Auicene ſayth, who alſo calleth them ſometime *Glanduloſa Apſtemata*, ſometime
Nodi: for he doeth intreat of thoſe euils verie raſhly in diuerſe Chapters, as in
his Chapter *de Nodis* even vnto the end, & in his treatiſe *de Glandulis*. Therefore
Auicens Glandula do ſeeme to be diuerſe from *Guido* his *Glandula*, and *Ganglia*
among

among the Græcians to be all one with *Auicene* his *Glandule*, which thing *Paulus* his words next following do plainly testifie. *Ganglium* (saith he) is a gathering together of the sinewes, which is caused of some stripe or of wearinesse, & that in many parts of the bodie, especially in those which are alwaies mouing, as in the midst of the hand and in the feete. *Aetius* saith, that it seldome possesseth the elbow and the head, and it doth seldome also arise voluntarily. And again the same *Paulus lib. 6. ca. 39.* declaring what *Ganglium* is, how it doth grow, in what members chiefly it doth arise, & what signes or tokens do accompany it, confirmeth those verie words which we spake before, saying: *Ganglium* is a conuulsion of the sinewes, caused of some blow, or of labour, chancing for the most part in the ioynts of the hands & of the armes, and in the ankles and ioynts of the feet, although also it ariseth in other parts of the bodie. These are the signes of *Ganglium*, the tumor is al of one color, resisting touching or handling, & without paine, but if you do thrust it any thing violently, it is felt painefull being not deeply rooted, but lying vnder the very skin next the sides: but againe, if you prouoke it by force, it doth so neither before nor after. Hitherto speaketh *Paulus Aegineta de Ganglijs*, now we will discourse of other flegmaticke tumors. Those Abscessions which the common sort call *Serofule* are nothing else but hard kernels contained within the litle filmes, videlicet, *Glandule*, chiefly appearing in the necke, the armeholes, & in the parts about the priuie members, where *Glandule* are placed by the vessels of the body that lye vnder them: yet somtime (although seldome) they are caused by meanes of the flesh of the same places, which through a certaine kind of affinitie is turned into the nature of *Struma*, and is increased by the addition of matter (as it pleased *Leonidas*.) The Latins call them *Struma*, but the Greeks *Chærades*, either truly because of the stones called *Chærades* growing in the sea, or else because of those beastes called *Sowes* that bring forth a great companie of pigges at once (for these euilles do rise vp many together) which beastes are often infected with that disease. For *Serofule*, that is to say *Sues*, haue thicke and glandulous necks, & commonly they be strumous & full of kernels. But *Celsus* saith that *Struma* is a tumor, wherein vnder the congeled place there do arise certain things like *glandule* of matter & blood. But these do not onely possesse the necke, but also the nosegthrills, the priuy parts of the body, & the sides. The Chyrurgian *Meges* declareth also that he hath found them in the paps of women. *Paulus* also speaketh thus of them: *Struma* saith he, do arise in the fore part of the necke, or in one part or other both at once, either two or more: but all are included within their filmes, as *Steatomata*, *Atheromata*, & *Melicerides*. *Lupia* saith *Guido* is soft & round like vnto a hop, & chiefly chuseth his place in hard & dry places of the body, as in the eye-lids & in other sinewy members: the Frenchmen call it commonly *une Loup*. Therefore if the description and cure of it, (which shall be afterward handled) be conferred with the description and cure of *Ganglium* amongest the Greekes, the diseases will appeare not much different or vnlike: but they do greatly erre, which do make this euill called *lupia*, to be al one with that disease called *Lupus*. For *Lupus* is a malignant vlcer quickly consuming the neather parts, but specially annoying the thighes & legs, & it is very hūgry like vnto a wolfe (whereof it seemeth to receiue this title) eating vp the flesh that

Cap. 16 lib. 4.
Ganglium
quid.

Signa Ganglij.

Serofule.

Chærades
Græcorum.

Sues.

Struma Celsi.

Lib. 6.

Lupia.

Lupus morbus.

*Nodi.**Anicene nodi.**Atheroma.**Meliceris.**Steatoma.**Tesudo.*

lieth next vnto it, which euil without doubt is of the kind of *Phagedene*. Diseases therefore are farre diuerse among themselves the one from the other, although in name they be somewhat acquainted. *Nodus*, (as the knot of a rope) is said of the same *Guido*, to be round, hard, and abiding in one and the same place, growing especially about the sinewie places of the bodie. But *Anicene* in a certaine place defineth *Nodi* to be *dubeleta frigida*, and he compareth this name with *Steatomata*, which are called *adiposi & adipini nodi*, fat kernels, and with *Melicerides*, which are called *mellitij nodi*, and with *Athermata*, which consist of a certaine kind of matter like vnto a pulse, which the Greeks call *Athera*. But because these three kinds of abscessions, that is to say, *Steatoma*, *Meliceris*, & *Atheroma* are most incident to mens bodies, and *Galen* also maketh mention of them in verie many places, we thinke it conuenient (having here gotten so fit oportunitie) to intreat of them plainly to declare their nature and their markes, whereby they may be knowne, and in what things also they do differ and dissent, and in what things they doe also conspire and agree. *Atheroma* therefore is a tumour of one and the same colour, and without paine, containing within the filme or sinewie tunicle a soft humor like vnto *Athera*, that is, a kind of pulse which is made of boyled meale. Sometime also in *Atheromata* together with a soft humor, there are found certaine stonie and hard substances, and other things like vnto small peeces of brimstone, oftentimes there are found in them certaine things like vnto the chewed bones of a henne, and like vnto haire wound vp together. This tumor *Atheroma*, appeareth in forme and figure very long, and somewhat eleuated in height, which being pressed with the fingers, by reason of the clammisnesse and thicknesse of the humor, it doth slowly yeeld or go backe, and the fingers being remoued, it doth slowly also return againe. But *Meliceris* is a tumor which is void of pain also, but yet it is round, wherein the humor which is also included in some sinewy tunicle, (which they call *Cystu*) is found somewhat thinne, representing the substance of honie: whereupon some of the Latins do call it *Melificarium*, a hony combe. *Meliceris* therefore doth differ from *Atheroma* in fashion, and in the substance of the humor: for both the forme is more round, and the substance of the humor more slender. This hony tumor therefore is further extended then *Atheroma*, and by pressing it with the fingers it doth speedily giue place, and when the fingers are remoued, it doth with the like celeritie returne to the former place. But *Steatoma* is a tumor also besides nature, all of one colour, and verie gentle to be handled, in the beginning truely it is verie small, but in processe of time it increaseth and becommeth more copious, wherein is contained a humour verie like vnto tallowe, which is also comprehended vnder the filmes of the bodie. This is distinguished from *Meliceris* and from *Atheroma*, by reason of the hardnesse thereof, for it is both full and plentifull; and it doth resist touching, that it will in no wise yeeld to the thrusting of the fingers. But let vs now proceed to declare other kinds of Apostemes which are almost reduced vnto these three, whereof we haue now intreated. *Tesudo* (saith *Guido*) is a great Abscession, verie humerall, soft, and of a broad fashion, after the manner of a target, (whereupon it receiued the name) which euil if it groweth (saith he) in the head, it is called *Talparia* or *Talpa*: if in the necke, it is called

Bacium :

Bociu: if in the stones, *Hernia*: but sometime it is found with matter, or with certaine scales, or with a *fistula* accompanying it. But *Testudines* & *Talpa*, amongst the ancient Physicians, had neither any proper name, nor yet once intreated of. But some of our dayes do define *Testudo* to be a soft tumour, or not greatly hard, yet somewhat big, in the which is contained a grosse matter lying hid in a certein tunicle, which doth so cleave vnto the whole head of a man (for it is a disease incident to the skin of the head) that it oftentimes corrupteth the same. This euill (no doubt) is to be accounted among the number of Abscessions, & comprehended vnder *Meliceris* or *Atheroma*; but it rather seemeth to incline vnto *Meliceris*: but *Talpa*, because it containeth a white matter, is rather referred vnto *Atheroma*, then vnto *Meliceris*: Notwithstanding *Guido* affirmeth that it is a kind of *Testudo*, yea also that it is *Testudo* it selfe (as we sayd of late) as *Hernia* also and *Bocium*, which he also nameth: but these affects haue borrowed their diuerse names according to the variety of the places wherein they are found. But that which the common sort call *Bocium*, the Greekes (fetching their title or name euen from the very depth) do properly call *Brouchocele*: we call it *Hernia gutturis*, whereupon they also call them *Gutturiosi*, which do labour of that disease, *Brouchocele* is a great tumour chancing in the necke, very round betweene the skin and the wind-pipe, wherein there is included, sometime dead flesh, sometime a certaine humour like vnto hony, or fat, or sodded meale, or water. Sometime also (as *Celsus* sayth) there are found in such tumours certaine haire mingled with little bones. *Nacta* (as *Guido* writeth) is a great tumour, full of flesh, like vnto the flesh of a mans buttockes, of diuerse formes and greatnesse, as are melons and gourds; and therefore it borroweth sundry names according to the varietie of the fashion and member wherein it is placed. Moreouer this tumour which of the latter sort is called *Nacta* or *Napta* or *Napta*, is void of paine, except peraduenture it be so great, that by the continuall drawing of the parts of that member, it bringeth some grieffe to the parts about it. This also is of the number of Abscessions, and doth pertain vnto *Steatomata* (as we sayd before in the enumeration of tumours besides nature. *Bubos* (sayth *Galen*) is a disease of the loose members, or of *Glandulae* (which the Greekes call *Adene*) that is to say, a simple inflammation. Wherefore *Guido* hath either vsfully here rehearsed it among the number of flegmaticke abscessions, or else he vnderstandeth some other matter then *Galen* doth. But *Bubones*, which are caused through a fall from some place, or by other vlcers and diseases, are without any danger: but those which are wont to happen in pestilent feauers, are the worst of all (whether they inuade the thighes, or the nofethrills, or the necke. *Fugilla* (saith the interpreter of *Auicenna*) is of the kind of glandulous Apoplexies, and this terme (sayth he) is appropriated vnto it, because it is a disease chancing behind the eares. By the which description it may easily be coniectured, that *Fugilla*, so called of *Auicenna*, is that tumour, which is called of the Greekes *Parotis*, that is, a glandulous disease growing vnderneath the eares. But some do thinke *Fugilla* to be all one with *Bubo*: but then *Bubo* is farre otherwise taken of then of *Galen* and *Paulus*, which is (as they say) a tumour that is deeply planted and rooted, and oftentimes not compassed with any skinn: it is very hard also after the manner of

Talpa.*Bocium*.*Brouchocele*.*Nacta*.*Nacta* or*Napta* is re-

ferred vnto

Steatomata.*Bubo*.*Fugilla*.*Parotis*.What *Bubo* iswith *Guido* &

other late Phi-

sicians.

The differēces
of flegmaticke
abscessions.

Of the causes,
signes & iudg-
ments of the
aforesaid tu-
mours.

Causes of tu-
mours which
pertaine vnto
fleame.

The matter of
flegmaticke
abscessions.

14. Therap.

Signa.

Nota absces-
sus relamento
inclusi.

Iudicia ab-
scessuum pitui-
cosorum.

Arnaldus à
villa noua.

the euils called *Scrofule*, and in that significacion (as I iudge) is *Bubo* taken of *Guido*, because he doth register *Fagillinus Bubo* amongst the number of flegmaticke abscessions. But there are now found out very many titles giuen to these kinds of phlegmaticke abscessions. But we ought not greatly to stand vpon the names of them, so that we know and vnderstand the onely differences of them, because it falleth so out, that according to the diuersitie of their names, their cures and iudgements do varie. Therefore of such kind of abscessions, some truly are included within a certain skin or tunicle (which they call *cystis*) and some are deeply planted in the flesh: some haue a slender foundation, or small roote, & some againe are very large and brode. Also some are easie to be resolued, and some are farre otherwile: some great and some litle. Some also doe come vnto suppuration, and some do not. To conclude, some tumours are scalie, fistulous and cancerous, but some do admit or suffer none of these things. The causes of these kinds of tumours are threefold, *videlicet*, 1. Primitiue causes, as a fall, a stripe, excessiue or inordinate liuing, and an euill diet. 2. Antecedent causes, as are vnnaturall humours, especially those which be flegmaticke, and true *œdemata*, which do degenerate into abscessions. 3. *Coniuncta causa*, which are the diuerse substances, and properly the matters of euery abscession, contained in the affected member. But in these kinds of tumours there are contained certaine humours, which be either ferous or waterish as is vrine, putrified and corrupt, or filthy, or dirtie, or else humours like vnto hony, or foddren-meale, or vnto fat. But there are sometime found within these abscessions, phlegmaticke, and waterish, and glandulous flesh, sometime also stones, sand, shels, wood, coales, and other such like solide substances. Notwithstanding these three kinds of tumours do most frequent mens bodies (as we haue sayd before) whereof euery one hath borrowed in Greeke his proper title: as *Atheroma*, *Steatoma*, and *Meliceris*, which are thus called by reason of the similitude of the substances contained in them. For there is another tumour amongst these, like vnto tallow, or some other fat thing, another like vnto hony, another like vnto a thinne kind of meate, which they call *Athera*. The signes and iudgements of such kinds of tumours, which belong vnto fleame, may easily be found out by their descriptions and differences before declared. But the marke wherby we may know whether they be couered with any veile or not, is this, there is moucablenesse and inconstancy of the filme or skinne called *Cystis*, which the auncient Phisitions haue named *tunica*, and there is a separation of the skinne: but when they be surely fixed, that is, abiding in one place, and do cleaue fast to the flesh, it is an euident token that they are garded about with no filme or tunicle at all. Furthermore, those tumours which are new and tractable, may easily be discusse, but they which be hard and inueterate, can in no wise be resolued. Rednesse, paine, & increasing of heate do declare that those abscessions will either come to suppuration, or else degenerate into a fistula or a canker. *Struma numerosa*, which do affect the outward members, & do often change their place, wandring here and there about the body, with a certaine extraordinary heat, do testifie and declare very plainly, that they will beget and breed those inward diseases called *Cherades*, as *Arnaldus* hath noted in a certaine place. Those remedies therefore, which are

out-

outwardly applied to them, do profit little or nothing. But these diseases (as *A-
wien* thought) are increased and doe multiply by some fall, or by some hurt or
bruise in the body. Now these strumous tumours are greatly helped by vsing
purging medicines, diureticall potions, & electuaries, (as they call the) which
can dry vp. Also the change of aire doth greatly auaille in young children. But
children, by reason of their excessiue eating and immoderate diet, and the
slenderesse of body, are very often annoyed with *Strume*. But old men by rea-
son of the contrary causes, are seldome troubled therewith. Moreouer they
which haue a narrow forehead, & straight temples, & great cheekes, are sub-
iect to *Strume*: for in such the matter is readily brought downe to the necke,
as one *Hemricus* among the number of the late Physicians hath noted very well.
But *Strume* (as *Celsus* sayth) are wont commonly to wearie Physicians, because
they procure feauers also, neither doe they at any time ripen easily, and
they are cured either with some harte instrument, or with medicines, and
oftentimes they doe rise vp againe beside their scarres, and a long time after
they require medicines againe: and moreouer it so cometh to passe that they
remain in the flesh a long season. The incision & corrosiue of such tumors
is greatly to be feared about the belly, the necke, & the ioynts, by reason of the
affinitie and knitting together of the veines, the arteries, and the sinewes, and
also of the internall capacitie. In the incision also of great Glandule, it beho-
ueth greatly to eschue that veine which lyeth at the roote of them, and doth
bring nourishment vnto the. For oftentimes it causeth great profusio of blood,
wherupon there ensueth straight way no smal danger. These euils called *Stru-
me*, do greatly differ amongst themselves both in greatnes, nature, place, begin-
ning, multitude, and ioyning together of the vessels (as *Aetius* hath gathered
out of *Leonidas*.) Therefore little *Strume* are sooner & more easily cured then the
great, euen as the gentle tumors are more tractable then those which are in-
flamed. Noisome *Strume* cannot be remedied, for seeing all such diseases cal-
led *Strume* are cancerous, and do stufte vp the vessels of the body, while they
are curing, they must needs bring the daunger of profusion of blood, besides
that also, they are found very deepe in the flesh, and therefore they cannot any
way be cut off. For a malicious & hurtfull *Strume* doth possesse the best vessels,
that is, the greatest veines and arteries (which are called *Carotides*) euen as
though it should hold by certain rootes. The superficiall *Strume* are more ca-
sie to be cured then the internall, by reason of their place, & those also are cu-
rable which doe happen in the necke, where yet you must be verie diligent
to eschue the loude and great sinewes: for many by cutting *Strume* about the
windpipe, and by cutting other loude sinewes haue caused the sicke all the
time of his life after to remaine speechlesse. For beside the excision of that si-
new, the great vessels being layd bare, & cooled in the cure, do hurt the duty of
the tongue. For the multitude of *Strume*, it appeareth that one alone may easi-
lier be cured then many together. And concerning the maner of their rising,
it is manifest also, that they which hang downeward are a great deale sooner
healed, then they which are planted in the flesh. Thus much of *Strume*, which
Aetius hath recited out of *Leonidas*. The cure of these kinds of abscesses, which
haue their originall of fleame, is of the late Chyrurgians appointed to be two.

*In what ages
and bodies
Strume do
raigne.*

Celsus.

*Magnitudo
Strume.*

Natura.

Locus.

*Multitudo
ortus.*

*Duplex absces-
sum pituito-
rum curande
ratio.*

1. *Vniuersalis*. fold, that is to say. 1. General, and vniuersally common at all. 2. and particular, which is proper in euery difference. Therefore our generall methode of curing these tumours shall be, to appoint such an ordinarie and conuenient diet to the sicke, as that the matter which causeth such abscessions be not heaped vp together in the bodie, and by all meanes to preuent and turne away the antecedent matter (as they call it) which now is gathered together in the sicke body, least at the length it be vnited to the ioyned cause, that is, vnto that matter which now bringeth the disease: But we shall accomplish the first intention of our generall cure, if the sicke do diligently obserue that kinde of diet, which is prescribed in our former Chapters (this one thing excepted) which is, that they ought to keepe a very thinne diet, and that which is more conuenient to deuide thicke and clammie humours. Therefore if they will follow the counsell of *Auicenna*, let them eschue all those meates which are of a grosse iuyce, the drinking also of cold things, too much sacietie, & immoderate fulnesse, and those things also which procure vomite and abhorring of meates. But they must abide as much hunger as can be. They must chiefly procure good digestion, and auoyde a moyst house, that is either situated in low valleys, or in fennes, or frequented with corrupted waters. Let his drinke be wine that is excellent and of the best, or else let it be water of alume, or of brimstone: for such kind of minerall waters, especially those which do represent in tast the dregs of wine, do not onely diminish and discusse these inward strumous and flegmaticke abscessions, but those also which doe outwardly affect the superficial parts of the body (as *Arnoldus* affirmeth.) But we doe perfect the other part of our former proceeding (that is to say) to turne away the antecedent matter, least it be mingled with *coniuncta materia*, by foure kindes of euacuations, that is, by some medicine to purge fleame downward, and sometime by letting of blood, also by those things which can prouoke vrine, and last of all by those remedies which can through their vapour both resolue and digest the humour which is gathered together in the inwarde partes of the bodie. To purge the bodie downward, the powder of *Turbish* is greatly commended, which is made thus in *Auicenna*: R^x. of *Turbish*, ginger, and sugar, of each a like portion: but he taketh thereof two drachmes, and he affirmeth also, that (besides that it doth resolue grosse fleame) it doth neither heate, nor violently wrest the inward members. But *Razes*, who was very bold in declaring and vsing purging medicines, made this kinde of powder, in his ninth Chapter *de doloribus ventris ad Almanforem*, of twentie parts of *Turbish*, of ten of ginger, & thirty of sugar, and ministred of it at one time. 3. iij. *Benedicta* also and *Hierapicra*, and *pilule de agario*, and *pilule maiores de Hermodactylis* doe greatly helpe these diseases. To prouoke vrine, *Guido* out of *Cauliacus* was wont to vse this potion following, which (he sayth) he gathered out of the writings of many Physicians. R^x. of *Scrofularia*, partes iij. of *phylipendula* partes, ij. of *pimpernell*, mouseare, *Tenacetum*, of red coleworts (which of some are thought to be *Brassica maritima*) of *rubia maior*, ana. part. j. of the roote of *Aristolochia*, of *spasmodica*, of the roote of radish, ana. part. 3. put them all together, and boyle them in white wine and honie vntill halfe be consumed, then streine them, whereof euery third day in the morning let the sicke take three ounces, and

Vicius ratio.

Aque aluminose vi.

Antecedentis materia euacuatio.

Pacuantia per aluum, Pulvis Turbith, Razes.

Hierapicra. Prouokers of vrine.

Porio Guidonis a Cauliacus.

let

let it be drunk hot. But in the applying of all these remedies, (as also for blood-letting, if at any time it be required) the counsel of some learned physician is to be vsed, who may prescribe both the qualitie, quantity & vse of them. But to resolve through breathing, and to digest the humor which is gathered together in the depth of the body, and doth excite inward Glandules, (which also are the causes of outward discales) *Galen lib. 14. Therap.* willet vs to minister *Theriaca, Athanasia, Ambrosia*, and that medicine also which is made of *cretica calamintine*, the Greeks call it *Diacalamintine*: whose composition is to be sought out in *Lib. 4. de sanit. tuen.* Many other helpes are appointed for the cure of these abscessions, as potions, electuaries, and oiles, which are cast into the eares. There are also very many remedies called *Empirica*, consisting in practise, described & celebrated of the ancient Physicians, the vse whereof I do not allow, and therefore I thinke it good to pretermitt the declaration of them in these our commentaries. Notwithstanding this one thing I stedfastly affirme, that the Christiā king of France is indued as it were by inspiration with so wonderfull a gift, that with the onely laying on of the hands he can restore them which be diseased with *Struma* or *Scrofula* to their perfe& health againe. King Edward also (as histories do report) was wont marvellously to cure Strumous persons only by touching them, which gift immortall doth come as it were by inheritance to the Kings that succeed. For the Kings of England at this day, by laying on of hands, and rehearsing certaine ceremoniall prayers, doe heale *Struma*. And these things truly are generally spoken in all the abscessions before mentioned. Now those things which follow do concerne the particular and proper method of curing euerie difference, which method is made not onely diuerse, but also it is changed both by the substance of matter whereof they haue their beginning, & by the quantitie of them, whether they be great or small, and by the nature also of the affected member, & of the whole body. But the continuance of time, although it declarerh not the cure, yet sometime it sheweth vs, and it doth innuuate the qualirie of the disposition thereof, (as *Galen* hath set downe *lib. 4. de morbis curandis.*) Therefore although many indications and intentions of their cure may be gathered & learned by those things we haue spoken before, yet for our present purpose, we haue reduced them into 6. points, which we haue expressed in these fixe canons following. The first whereof is after this maner: inprimis, let those flegmaticke abscessions that are soft and small, (which are commonly called *Lupre*, and of the interpreter of *Auicen*, *Glandula*) if they be seated in the strong partes of the bodie, and because they are not yet inueterate, haue their thin *Cystis*, that is, their filme to couer them, let them I say, be appeased, suppressed, consumed, and afterward dried vp. 2. Mollifie, discusse, and consume the great abscessions which be not greatly hard nor inueterate, after the manner of cedematous tumors whereof we haue before intreated. 3. Ripen, open, and cleanse such flegmaticke, corrupted, and vlcereous apostemes, which do pertaine vnto suppuration. 4. Those *Struma* which are not cured by the former remedies, and yet are moueable, gentle, tractable, & obedient, cut them off, and draw them out. 5. Those which are vnmoueable, deeply rooted, inwardly planted, and wound about the veines and arteries, and broad at the roote within, corrode them about, and cleanse them throughly. 6. Those

Quae per habitum digerant.

The Kings of France do cure Struma by applying the hands.

What things do alter the particular cure of abscessions flegmaticke.
Tempus quid insinuet.

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

Compresso & attritio.

Lupia curatio.

Lamina plūbea

Unguentum Rogerij.

Gangly curatio ex Philagrio.

Lupia & ganglion is all one euill.

Archigenes lib. 4.

Oribasius his medicine to mollifie Ganglia.

which are fastned but to a thin & slender root, bind them about and pluck the out. The first canon, according to *Auicenn* his opinion is perfected after this manner, if when you do consume and suppress vehemently these soit and litle abscessions (which *Auicenn* doth call *Glandule*, & the new Phisitions *Lupie*) you do lay on a plate of lead made fit for the tumor, & bind it very strongly in the midst lest it slide from the place: for this doth digest these kindes of tumors. First therefore let *Lupia* be softly rubbed with the hand vntill it waxe somewhat hote, and vntill it be after a soot softer then it selfe. Afterward let the affected member be surely laid hold on with the hands, and let it be so often, & so vehemently stricken with the bottome of a saucer, or with some other solide thing, that it may be disseuered, and that the inward *Cystis* thereof (which is the filme wherein it is included) may be rent and broken, and to the matter therein contained may be dispersed: which thing being done, apply the place of lead vpon the place, and let it be bound very strongly with a swathing band that hath two ends, neither let it be remoued for the space of nine or ten daies, but let the plate be of that greatnesse (as it was said of late) that it may answer to the proportion of *Lupia*. But there are some which before the application of any plate of lead do minister this ointment made of burnt lead, of the bark of the elder tree, or of the figge tree, with oil and vinegar. Other do first vse an emplaster made of aloes, *acatia*, mirrhe, *olibanum*, *sarcocolla*, putting to them a litle vinegar, or the white of an eg, as much as shall seeme sufficient to commixe with the rest. *Hemicus* was wont to lay vpon them litle flakes (as he and other Chyrurgians of that sect do call them) made of flaxe dipped in the white liquor of an egge with salt and alume *Zuccharium* vnthickened. Moreover *Philagrius* almost after the same manner was wont to cure *Ganglia* (as it is in *Aetius*) which diseases are tumors vnequall (as we said before) speaking after this sort. We denie (saith he) the labour of the Chyrurgian, that is, bloodletting in *Ganglia*, especially if they chauce in the handes, or in the teere, but we must cure them onely by medicines. For we annoint them by the fire with ammoniacke which must be made pliant to the thicknesse of an emplaster: afterward we apply a plate of lead equall for the tumour, and lest it should slide away from the place, we bind it in the midst with straight bands. But a few daies after, when we know that *Ganglion* is mollified, we take away the bands, & (not saying any thing to the sicke) while the place is yet hore, we fasten the thumbe of our right hand vpon *Ganglion*, and laying fast hold on the member with our other foure fingers, we violently breake it, and so *Ganglion* is presently dissolved. Hither to *Philagrius*. Therefore by this our order of cure, it may easily be gathered, that *Lupia* amongst the late Phisitions, *Auicenn* his *Glandule*, and *Ganglion* among the Greeks, is all one disease which the former description of the do also manifestly declare. *Archigenes* in this disease, commendeth to lay our lime with the fat of a goose, and with rosin *Terebinthina*, which is the right turpentine. The same *Archigenes* also did oftentimes vse that medicine made of the stone called *Lapis achates*, as *Paulus* reporteth. But *Oribasius* vsed verie often this medicine. R^y of ceruce, *resina picca*, old oyle. ana. ℥. j. of ammoniacke *Thimiana*, and *Galbanum*. ana. a like quantitie, of waxe ℥. iij. The same medicine is to be seene in *Aetius*, but the quantity doth vary in certain things,

as thus. *Rx.* of ceruse, old oile, and *resina picea*. ana. $\mathfrak{ss}$. j. of waxe. $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. of *ammoniacum* *Thimiana*, and of *Galbanum*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. boile the ceruse with oile till it lose his staining faculty, then bray the ammoniacke, and cast it into the ceruse with the oile, afterward cast in the *resina picea* and the waxe, and last of all the *Galbanum*, which first must be made very soft and tender. Moreouer that famous Phisition of Greece, I meane *Oribasius*, did not apply any plate of lead, as *Philagrius*, *Auicenna*, and other late Chyrurgians were accustomed, but he did lay and bind vnto *Gargillum*, a thick round peece of lead like vnto a wherue, which do hang vpon womens spindles to make them turne round, which was more large and ample for the disease. For truly sayth he, with the weight thereof, it doth more speedily dissolve the euill. Therefore in the cure of *Ganglia*, it is far better to vse such mollifying and dissolving medicines, then the diligence of the Chyrurgian (with excision of the tumours) especially when they do grow in the legges, or in the armes, or in the principall parts of the body. For it is to be feared, that if they be cut off, the member is made lame and vnperfect. But those diseases which do occupy the head or the forehead, may safely be cured with the hand, that is, may be cut off, or pulled vp by the roots. Therefore diuide the outward skin with a penknife, and then (if the tumours be small) lay hold on the foundation of the with a paire of pincers, or some such like instrument, and cut them off from the root. But if they be great, thrust them through with a hooke, and lift them vp, and wind them round about vntill you haue plucked and drawne them forth: last of all, sow vp the sides or brims of them together, and vse those medicines which are appointed for bloody vlcers. But these things belong vnto the fourth canon. The second canon (because I wil be silent in those medicines which are appointed for flegmaticke & cedematous tumors which we haue described already, and yet together with these remedies following, they be very profitable and expedient for these Abscessions whereof we now intreate, and also for all kind of *Hernia*) is finished by the applying of a certaine emplaister, which is described of *Galen libro sexto de compositione medicamentorum* $\kappa\alpha\tau\alpha\gamma\epsilon\gamma\eta$: which emplaister (as he himselfe testifieth) doth digest through breathing, and doth repell *Phlegmone*, and is effectuell against the diseases called *Siruma*, *Pani*, and *Parotides*: it is auailable also against the gout, and it beneficieth many other diseases. The emplaister is this. *Rx.* of old oile. $\mathfrak{z}$. 100. *spume argenti*, *picea succa*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. 50. of *Ladanum*. $\mathfrak{z}$. 25. of *arugo rasa*. $\mathfrak{z}$. 8. of *Galbanum*. $\mathfrak{z}$. 4. let *Argenti spuma*, which they call *Lithargirum* be braied and boiled in the oile, and when they are somewhat thickned together, put in the pitch & the rust of the scourings of brasse commonly called verdigreece, then the *Ladanum*, and *Galbanum*. Afterward powre them into a morter, and bray them and mollifie them, and reserue them to your vse. Some to make it haue a good colour, and to looke somewhat browne, do commixe with them also the offall of brasse. $\mathfrak{z}$. viij. for other wise it would be very blacke. This emplaister is found other wise described in *Guido* his commentaries vnder this forme, *Rx.* of old oile. $\mathfrak{z}$. xij. of the scourings of brasse. $\mathfrak{z}$. xiiij. of dry pitch. $\mathfrak{z}$. vj. of *Ladanum*. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. of *Lithargirum*. $\mathfrak{z}$. xij. of *Galbanum*. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. For the same purpose *Diachylon* also which is called *Commune* & *creatum* doth profite much, whereof you must take one pound, and commixe therewith the powder of the roote of

Verticillum plumbeum.

Gangliorum per Chyrurgiam curatio.

Secundus canon.

Discussion by digestiones.

Emplastrum.

Diachylon.

*Stercus capri-
bui vetus.*

*Haly Abbas
emplastrum.*

*Emplastrum
Auienne.*

*Brunni &
Theodoric
emplastrum
ad strumas.
Rogerij empla-
strum.*

*Emplastrum
præceptoris
Guidonis ex
limacibus.*

ireos. ℥j . The same effect hath that *Diachylon*, called *magnum Mesues*, whose description shall afterward ensue. Some counsell vs, for the digestion of these abscessions, to apply vnto the grieved place, the old dung of a goate with hony & vineger, which must be her ouer the fire vntil they be wel incorporat together, and then brought to the forme of an emplaister: also an emplaister made of fenugreeke, of the seed of flaxe, & of coleworts, with the serapings of the roote of *Althea*, which medicine (if there be any hope of suppuration) doth ripen it notably. *Haly Abbas* also for the same purpose doth greatly commend this emplaister following. ℞ . of beane meale, and of barley meale. ana ℥.v . of the roote of liquorice, of the roote of *Althea*, and of pitch. ana ℥.x . of white waxe, goose suet. ana ℥.x . bray them, and mingle them together with old oile, and with the vrine of a child that hath not yet tried Venus sports, and ouer a soft fire make an emplaister. Another out of *Auicenn* which *Guido* vsed. ℞ . of oxes dung. ℥.ij . of the roote of coleworts, of the roote of capers, of the fish called a shrimpe, of fat figges ana. ℥.℥ . of hops and *bdellium*. ana. ℥.ij . of vineger, hony, sowes tallow, of the dregs of old oile, of each as much as is sufficient, whereof make an emplaister. *Brunnus* approueth this remedy following, whose opinion *Theodoricus* also doth confirme. ℞ . of ammoniacke, *bdellium*, *Galbanum* of each a like quantitie: steepe them three daies in vineger, whereto (when they be dissolved) you may adde of small bran as much as shall suffice, and make an emplaister. *Rogerius* was wont to vse this remedy for *Strume* (which they commonly call *Scrofula*.) ℞ . of the roote of brakes of daffadill, or of walwort (if you please) of each as much as you thinke good, let the be boiled in the best wine, and then braied in a mortar, and ad to them a litle quicke brimstone, and make an emplaister. *Guido* his maister in *monte Pessulano*, hath often tried this emplaister to be most effectuall, which is made of xij snailes (which they also call *Limaces*) boiled in wine, or in lye made of ashes, commonly called *clauelata*. But that which is more profitable, he did minister euery day to the sicke to be eaten one snail, either dry or otherwise prepared, and as they terme it, made ready to chew. *Paulus* also was wont notably to discusse *Strume* with vnslaked lime, steeped in hony, or in the filthinesse of mens bodies that do arise either in exercising theselues, or in bathes, or else in oile, or sowes greafe. The like vertue saith *Aetius*, hath the filthinesse of exercising places scraped from the walles, which must be well beaten together and spred vpon a linnen cloth, and applied after the manner of an emplaister. For the same purpose this helpeth effectuall. ℞ . of lime & *nitrum*. ana. a like portion, of *Cardammum* and fenugreeke, foure times as much, with hony, and apply it after the maner of a mollifying plaister. Also the meale of bitter hops boiled and annointed with *oxmel* doth discusse *Strume*. For the same purpose also oxes dung boiled in vineger and annointed, doth notably auaille, which being applied after the manner of a cataplasme, doth maruelously dissolve all hard and scirrhous tumors. Rath ripe figs also, especially of the wild fig tree, applied with hoggs greafe, do discusse all kinds of tumors. Therefore by this our method of curing, you shall heale all kind of *Strume* which are but newly begun, and not yet inueterate, as well in children as in them which cannot abide manuall practise, euen by the applying of such medicines as can dissolve, digest, & discusse. But first you must labor to mollifie, and afterward to dissolve

discusse, or else vse some medicine of a double qualitie, which can worke both these effectes together, of which kind are all those remedies almost which are before described. Nowe if digestive medicines shall nothing preuaile in these Abscessions, they must be either brought vnto suppuration, or consumed or else cured by Chyrurgerie, (as it shall be said hereafter.) But here we must not omit that thing which is recorded of some verie diligently: namely, that they which are diseased with *Strume*, and with any Leprosie, are maruellously holpen by the vsing of vipers and serpents, and by the drinking of the gumme called *Laser*, euerie day fasting to the quantitie of a cich pease. Therefore cast the dead serpent into a pot, & stop the mouth thereof verie iust with some plaister, and set it in the fire, then take the ashes of the burned serpent, and mingle them with the like quantitie of fenugreke, and vse them in wine. For this doth excellently helpe them which be strumous. Also in them that labour with *Struma*, you must prouide that the belly be made soluble, and a slender diet obserued: you must daily prouoke vomiting, & in deuout to purge steame vpward: you must also drie the head, and applie cataplasmes to the forepart thereof, which can raise little pushes in the skin, as is, the roote of capers, with *potenta*, and other such like things. And you must also vse purging medicines, and fine powders that be of the like vertue. We also do generally dispatch the declaration of the third rule, by the vse of the former remedies: for all mollifying and resolving medicines, if they find any place or matter disobedient vnto resolution, they doubtlesse do ripen the same matter, and bring it to suppuration, especially if the said matter be gentle & tractable, or commixed with blood. But Haly Abbas, that he might bring these kinds of abscessions vnto maturity, ministrd a plaister made of barley meale, pitch, and *olibanum*, and of the vrine of a young child all well incorporat together. But *Auicenna*, to repress the vehemencie of the heate, willet to commixe the decoction of coriander with the aforesaid vrine. But if these things doe nothing helpe, and there be required a more effectuell remedie, take of mirthe part i. of *licium*, parts ij. and mingle them with the aforesaid decoction. This medicine vnder written, doth bring *Strume* vnto suppuration, which medicine is recorded of *Paulus Aegine- nius*. 4. Re of mirthe 3. x. of *ammoniacum* Thymiana. 3. vij. of *viscus quercinum*, 3. viij. of *Galbanum*, 3. iij. propolis. 3. j. beate them in a mortar. But when these abscessions be ripe, and brought vnto suppuration (which you shall easily perceiue by the tokens of the matter) they must be opened and cleansed within, which you shall do verie well, if you do cleanse them after their aperition with that ointment commonly called *Vnguentum Apostolorum*, which is an ointment of great efficacy in malignant and ulcerated *Strume*. To this purpose also the ointment called *Vnguentum Aegyptiacum* is verie profitable, and the *Emplastrum de succis* (which they call *Diachylon*) & *Diapalma*, which the Greeks call *κορυκλιον*, whose descriptions are to be found in other places. But if these Abscessions shall possesse any member, wherein there subsisteth any putrefaction, and corruption of the bones, or any euill symptome shall haue access to them, they must be cured after the maner of vlcers, with which they haue some affinitie & acquaintance. Concerning our fourth canon, you shal cure gentle, obedie, superficial, and curable *Struma*, very cunningly and shortly after this sorte.

The vsing of
vipers and ser-
pents doth
maruellously
helpe them
which are
strumous.

3
Terrij Canonis
declaratio.

Suppurantia
seu maturan-
tia.

Pauli medica-
mentum ad
strumas suppu-
randas.
Detergentia.

Vnguentum
Apostolorum.
Vnguentum
Aegyptiacum.
Diachylon.
Diapalma.

4.
The way to
cure and de-
stroy *Seruma*,
out of *Albugi-
nis* and *Leoni-
das*.

First, command the sicke to lie downe: for that when he sitteth his heart wil quickly faile him. When he is thus layd, bind his legs surely together, and tie them to the bedstead, and charge the seruants about him to hold his head very hard. Then cut the skin that compasseth the tumour, either with a right or a litle ouerthwart section, but that incision which is drawne ouerthwart in the necke is altogether vnprofitable, because in it the vesselles and sinewes are extended right forth. But you shall not cut the whole thicknesse of the skinne hastily at one time without ceassing: for our mind is to vse no violent thing in this our worke. And truly in litle tumours, that is, in small *Siruma*, make but a simple incision, or deuide them with a small line: but in great abscessions cut the skin to the forme of a myrtle leafe: then those vessells which are vncovered (as the veines and arteries) put them softly and easily aside. After these things, distend & stretch out the sides of the section, or the edges of the diuided skin with pinfers, or with other such instruments, and plucke out the filmes within, either with your fingers, or with some other instrument appointed for that purpose, and so by litle and litle picke out *Siruma*, where it appeareth bare & vnfolded from the tunicles. But if *Siruma* shall be wound about the vessells, you must handle the cure with great attention, lest through negligence there followeth a copious profusion of blood. Therefore in dispatching this cure, draw one onely side of the section at once with the pinfers, and so by litle and litle separate it with the point of a penknife from the other partes therunto adioyned, and when you haue drawne and loosed the connexion on the one side, doe the like also on the other side, and then cut out the whole foundation or ground worke, because of the sinewes and vesselles lying vnderneath. But in those *Seruma* which do chaunce about the armeholes, and about the priue members, you must make an ouerthwart incision, by reason of the doubling of the skinne. Moreover, in that section which is made in *Siruma* that possesse the neck, you must haue a singular care, least either the arteries, which they call *carotides*, or the quiuering sinewes be touched and hurt. But if by the cutting of any vessell when you make incision, the profusion of blood doth delay and hinder your worke, either take vp the vessell with a small cord, or (if it be not verie great) cut it quite off, (as *Paulus* counselleth) or else, (if it bursteth not out with great violence) apply such remedies as are appointed to stanch the blood. Afterward returne againe vnto your enterprised labour. Therefore when the foundation of *Seruma* is brought into a narrowe roome, cut it cleane off cunningly and handsomely, and then put in the forefinger, and search the place diligently, whether there be any other *Siruma* therunto adioyned or not: which (if there be any found) you must also drawe forth after that manner which we haue before expressed. Moreover you shall easily repress a meane fluxe of blood by applying those things which haue power to drie vp, as flaxe, sponges, or liniments made of cotton, infused in cold water, or in vinegar, or in a mixture of both, (which they call *oxyeraton*) and afterward wrong out. But if the section shall continue without bloudshed, fill it vpp with the powder of frankensence, and applie linimentes, and for the longer preseruacion of the liniments, bind too wooll dipped in wine. But if any full veine worthy the speaking of be connexed within the root or bottom

What is to be
done, if a veine
be annexed
vnto *Siruma*.

of *Glandula* or *Struma*, or some such like tumour, it is not conuenient to cut it off at the verie ground, but to take it vp and binde it with a small cord, that it may fall out of it owne accord, peece by peece without any daunger. In which fall the cure must be followed with linimentes: but the cord must be of some matter which will not easily putrifie, as are those threads which are called *Serica*, or small lute strings: for those bandes which do quickly rot, do soone fall from those members whereunto they are tyed. But, if when the worke is finished, some of the skiane which couereth the matter of the former Abscessions, or some other straunge thing shall remaine behind, *Albucafis* willet it to be drawne out, first by filling the wound with cotton, or with some other like thing dipped in salt water. But *Guido*, to draw out those reliques which remained behinde, did fill vp the gaping vlcer, first with the whire of an egge, and with alume sprinkled ouer it, afterward with *Unguentum Aegyptiacum*, or with some of those corrosiue medicines which are described in the *Antidotorie*. Moreouer in all these operations, you must applie such medicines as can lenise paine: but amongst all other things, we do commonly lay on flax dipped in the whire of an egge, and in oyle of roses. You shall finish the scope of our fifth rule after this sort: breake the skinne with some burning hote medicine according to the greatnesse of the Abscession: But while you attempt that thing, you must giue diligent heede, least that the scalding medicine do touch the other partes lying about the tumours. You shall not ablie dispatch this labour, by applying some hote medicine made of lyme, or sope, which things do happily execute their effectes within the space of twelue houres: but though they remaine somewhat longer, yet there will enlue no daunger or discommoditie thereby. The skinne therefore being thus broken by some burning medicine, and crust procured in the place thereof, you shall diuide the tumour with a straight line all along through the middest of the crust: but you must make incision somewhat deeply, almost to the very quicke, and then lay vpon the cut or gaping wound, a liniment striked with some consuming or eating medicine, as is, the powder of *Aphodius*. Moreouer although many do applie a great number of medicines in these abscessions, yet *Arsenicke* in this case obtaineth the prebeminence, so that a man know how to vse it aright. But the certaine quantitie of vsing the same cannot be described (as *Galen* hath noted in *libro tertio Therapeut.*) It is not therefore to be vsed rashly, because it is a medicine vehement and violent without measure, exciting feauers, and procuring many other vicious symtomes. Besides that also the ministring of a small quantitie doth performe a marvellous and almost an incredible effect: notwithstanding the common measure or quantitie thereof, is the medietie of one graine of wheate in a strong bodie, and in those members which are farre off from the principall partes: but in weake natures, and in those places which are situated neare vnto the principall members, a lesse quantitie must be applied. But to be short, it is better, and more safe, to minister a little at once and often, then at one time to applie an immoderate quantitie. The operation or effect of *Arsenicke* remaineth three whole dayes, in all which time, the sicke must vse the diet of them that are feuerous. But the affected member, & the parts lying about it, both for the owne

Cordes made of silke.

Albucafis.

Corrosio & mundificatio.

Casticum ex calce & sapone.

Arsenicum.

Quantitas arsenici.

Quando cru-
sta a vinore.
soluenda.

6
Ligature &
euulsio.

Curatio Athe-
romatis, Stea-
tomatis & me-
liceridis.

How many
wayes these
Abscessions
may be cured.
Lib. 4.
Curatio per
digerentia.

defence, and to stop the fluxe, (which immoderate heate may cause) ought to be annoynted and all to washed with the oyntment called *populeon*, with water also, or with the iuyce of nightshade, and with vineger, and with other refrigerating remedies of the like kinde. But when you are certainly assured, that *Glandula* is destroyed and wasted away (which you shall know by the hardnesse and swelling of the procured crust) then the crust must be resolved even from the quicke, by washing it with butter, & by applying a litle wheat meale thicked together, and by some other fat and yctuous thing that is not salted, as swines grease and such like. But when the crust is fallen from the tumor, if any thing either of *Glandula*, *lupia*, or *struma* do yet remaine behind, it must be fetched out with some gnawing medicine, as with the powder of *Asphodelus*, with *unguentum Aegyptiacum*, or with some such like thing. But if there remaineth nothing behind, it must be brought vnto a scarre after the maner of other vlcers. But now that we may also accomplish the intention of our sixth canon: these abscessions which haue verie narrow bases or foundations, must be fast bound either with a corde of silke, or with horse haire, and they must be bound dayly more and more, either with the former bands, or with other new cordes, vntill they appeare verie drie, and voluntarily do fall away of their owne accord, (as we haue sayd of those Abscessions, which are deeply planted, and soulded about the great vessels.) But the band must be ayded with some consuming and drying medicine. The paine also must be asswaged with the white of an egge, with oyle of roses, with *unguentum populeon*, or with some other remedie that can mitigate paine. But when the cordes shall fall off alone of their owne accord, the tumor must be cured after that manner which we haue before expressed. And thus much generally concerning those abscessions which vniuersally consist about nature, especially of them that haue their originall of steame. Now we haue here thought it conuenient to set downe the proper and peculiar method of curing *Melicerides*, *Steatomata*, & *Atheromata*, which diseases are alwayes and often incident to mens bodies, and do comprehend vnder them other certaine kinds and differences of tumors besides nature, called of the late Physicians after certaine new titles and names, which among the auhcient forbes were neuer heard of, as *Talpa*, *Tessudo*, *Nacra*, and others of that kinde, which we haue expressed in our former chapters, in those three kinds of Abscessions, which do most frequent mens bodies, (I meane in *Steatomata*, *Atheromata*, and *Meliceris*) there is one generall order of their cure, namely that the matter which is contained in that tunicle which they call *Cystus* may be dissolued, or that the whole tumor together with the verie tunicle may be consumed by medicines, or taken away by section. But some of these tumors require a threefold method of curing, as those which containe a more liquide humour, as is *Meliceris*. Some againe are cured two wayes, as *Atheroma*, which is destroyed by section, and consumed by medicines. But *Steatoma* can neither be dissolued nor consumed, but it is cured by the onely labour of the hand (that is) by section onely. Moreover of medicines, which in these affectes haue power to dissolue & disperse, you shall find plentie among those remedies which we before haue set downe for the cure of *struma*. But *Paulus* doth particularly and properly dissolue *Melicerides* with that medicine, which containeth of pressed grapes

grapes (the kernels being taken out) xx. of the scourings of brasse. ℥.iiij. which medicine must not be applied before the member be nourished with formets. Another emplaister appointed for *Melicerides*, which *Actius* reported vnto *Leonidas*. R. of pressed grapes (the kernels being detraethed) lb. j. of comin seede beaten verie small. ℥.vi. of *mirum*. ℥.iiij. bray all together in a mortar, & bind the to the tumour. Another discussoio medicine expressed of the same writer, verie profitable against *Melicerides*. R. *Sals ammoniac*, of the scourings of siluer, and of Ceruse. ana. lb. j. of waxe *Terebinthina*, *chalbana*, *opopanax*, ana. ℥.j. of *rubrica sinopica* ℥.vj. of vineger. ℥.vij. s. boyle the scourings of siluer, ceruse, and salt beaten verie small all together, then cast in the *rubrica sinopica*, which first must be steeped in vineger, and melt them together: last of all, when they be all boyled together and cold, commixe therewith *opopanax* and *chalbana*, both dissolved in vineger, and conferue them to your vse. But if in such kind of Abscessions you mind to waite the humor by applying of gnawing medicine (which the Grecians call *Septica*) it is expedient first to yncouer them (as also in *Strumae*) by hore burning medicines applied to the skin, whereof (saith *Paulus*) (the best remedie is that which consisteth of quicke lime (that is) which is not yet quenched with water, of sope, and of the ashes of lye that are made in a stillatorie. There is another more diuerse remedie which may be kept a long time. R. of vnslacked lime. ℥.iiij. of *speckle*, (that is) of the burnt dregges of wine, of liquide *nitrum* parched in the fire. ana. ℥.ij. of *nimum* or *rubrica sinopica*. ℥.j. Let them be brayed with the distilled ashes of lye, and when you haue brought them to the thicknesse of liquide honie, heate them thrie ouer the fire, that it may be of a meane substance, and lay on *pixis plumbea*, with the distilled lye aboue, least it drie vp too soone. Therefore first breake the skin that is beset with such medicines as can procure a crust: but when the crust is fallen off, apply consuming remedies, among which this remedie following doth notably waite without gnawing and byring. R. of the offfall of brasse. ℥.iiij. of *Sandaracha* (that is) of red arsenicke, and of *Heliehorus niger*. ana. ℥.ij. applye them with oyle of roses. Another remedie verie effectuell for the same purpose. R. of a burnt hedgehog. of *Tessa sepi*, and of orpine or arsenicke. ana. an equall portion, commixe them with oyle of roses. But the partes which lye about the tumour, and are adiacent thereunto, let them be first annointed with ceruse and oyle. But if we purpose to cure these kindes of Abscessions by making incision (that is) by Chyrurgerie, truly in that method of curing (whether it be a mealy humor, or a honie, or a fat humor, or of what substance soeuer it be, which is contained in them) we must obserue one onely and principall intention, namely to take away the tunicle wherein the humor is included. But in entreprising the same, we must be verie attentine and warie (as we haue sayd before of *strume*) that we rashly hur nor and teare in peeces the filme or tunicle, whereupon the humor which was contained therein, gushing out plentifully, doth both hinder our operation and some portion thereof also remaineth still behind. For if (when the tunicle is diuided) and the humor issued) the tumour shall sinke downe, the tunicle will hardly be plucked away and cured. But if any remnant of the humor be left behind in the Abscession, it is to be feared that the distace will grow againe (as doth *struma*) when as any portion thereof

Lib. 15.

Curatio per
cedentia.
Lib. 4.A medicine to
waite without
byring.Curatio per
Chyrurgiam.

Actius lib. 15.

sticketh behind. But if any such thing doeth happen, it is not expedient to sew together the Abscession, but to draw out the reliques thereof, either with those consuming medicins which we haue before expressed, or by some such like remedies. Now if *sciatoma* hath a verie broad top, and a verie narrow and slender foundation, then (setting aside all other superfluous remedies) you must cut it vp quire euē by the very root, for so the labour of the Chyrurgian shal quickly be ended, the vicer made plaine and equall with the other partes, and the cure shortly dispatched.

CHAP. XXV.

Of hard and Scirrhus tumours, engendred of melancholie.

Scirrhus duplex.

Melancholia naturalis.

Scirrhus illegitimus.

Melancholia non naturalis.

Differentia. 4. non naturalis melancholie.

Bilis atra exquisita.
Gal. com. 21.

WE haue hitherto discoursed of those tumors which are caused of blood, choler and fleame: of *Perruca* also, and of those abscessions which are excited through a waterish humor, and a stantuous vapour: of those Apostemes also which haue their beginning of a phlegmaticke substance, and of other tumors generally consisting about nature. Now it remaineth that we intreate of those Abscessions which do proceede of a melancholike humour, as are scirrhus, indurated and cancerous tumors, which they call *Cancerosi*, *Apostemosi*. To *Scirrhus* therefore (as also to *phlegmon*, *Erysipelas*, and *edema*) there is assigned of the late Chyrurgians, a double difference, which notwithstanding is comprehended vnder the same title, videlicet, *Scirrhus verus*, & *Scirrhus non verus*. But a true and lawfull *Scirrhus* is sayd to proceede of naturall melancholie. Also naturall melancholie, is the dregges of good blood, and as it were a certaine slimie superfluitie, and verie grosse blood, whose colour is blacke, but the tast thereof sharpe and soure (as it is not vnknowne to them that do vomite the same) it is lodged in a certaine bloudie corner, wherein all the humors are contained, and appointed of nature to nourish the melancholike members. But an vnlawfull *Scirrhus*, after the opinion of the late Chyrurgians, is that which is engendred of vnnaturall melancholie. And vnnaturall melancholie is that, which differeth from the former description of the naturall humour, and yet it keepeth within the precincts of his libertie, which if it shall once pretergresse (they say) it is no longer to be called melancholie, but some other humour. But melancholie (to enter into the generall definition thereof) is a cold and drie humour, proceeding (as *Guido* sayth) of a verie grosse portion of that which we call *chylus*. But of vnnaturall melancholie there are commonly appointed foure differences. 1. The first is, when as that melancholike humour which is called naturall, and doeth daylie engender in the bodie, even when a man is in perfect health, is in his owne proper essence, burned, putrified, and become exquisite melancholie. For that (as *Galen* sayth) is engendred of a blacke humour that is vehemently burnt, and it glisteth like vnto lime and pitch. But this is soure, and being powred vpon the ground, it is hote like vinegar, and it riseth vp like leauen. It is also verie vnpleasant to all creatures living, so that neither mice nor flies will tast thereof. It sheweth likewise like vnto abundance of salt, wherein no living thing

can vphold his life, as the sea which is sayd to be dead. Furthermore this blacke kind of choler is then ingendred, when as that slimie bloud (which we haue said to be naturall melancholy) doth continue long in the bodie, and is purged out neither by any sensible nor secret effluxion, but is transformed, corrupted, and rotten. For truly this humour (sayth *Galen*) when it waxeth vehemently hore, either because of the corruption thereof, or because of a burning feauer, it causeth melancholy: which truly is cold, because it resemblith the nature of the earth, but yet it is not voide of heate, as is ashes and vingger, and when it is purged downward (as it happeneth sometime to them which are diseased with *Dysenteria*) it appeareth more glistering and more blacke then that thicke and blacke bloud which we do call a melancholious humour. 2. The second species or difference of vnnaturall melancholy is that which commeth through the adustion of other humors, as that which proceedeth of choler vehemently burnt, which is of so great malice and rancour, that it raseth the earth, and listeth it vp on high, after the manner of exquisite melancholy. But the Sies also do abhorre it, as in a true melancholy. If bloud also or fleame shall be vehemently heated in the body, and burnt, there is also caused a melancholicke humour, which *Auicen* because of the adustion, tearmed to be vnnaturall. But these two last kinds, which do come of the adustion of bloud and fleame, *Auicen* hath thought to be verie mild and gentle: yet *Galen* writeth, that that kind of melancholy which is engendred of burnt choler, is a great deale more dangerous then that which hath his generation of grosse bloud, which is like vnto the dregs of wine in the bottome of a vessell, or in proportion resembling the dregs of oile, for this is more gentle and mild, yea and especially when as it tarieth not long within the body with any abundant heate exceeding nature. But before it be changed into exact melancholic, it passeth first into a yeallowish forme, secondly into a leekie substance, and thirdly into a rustie colour. 3. The third species of vnnaturall melancholy is that which borroweth his originall of a certaine stony concretion, as when through the ignorance of vnskilfull Phisitions or Chirurgicalians, *Erysipelas*, and those inflammations which the Grecians call *phlegmones*, or any other tumours proceeding of naturall humours, are too vehemently cooled and bound by the applying of extraordinary remedies: or else when those medecines which do mightily draw and digest, are ministred to the same tumours. For then (the whole substance which was very small in them, being dispersed) the grosse matter which remaineth, being exceedingly dried, will resemble the hardnesse of a stone, and be conuerted into a melancholious humour. 4. The fourth difference of vnnaturall melancholy ariseth, when as some other humour is mixed with naturall melancholy: which thing while it happeneth, it is made sweete, and doth waxe mild, vntill such time as one burnt choler or other be commixed therewith, for then it waxeth sharpe, and bitter, and is made partaker of immoderate gnawing. We may gather therefore by our former words, that the 4. differences of tumors about nature do proceed of melancholy: for first of naturall melancholy (which we haue said to breed daily in found bodies) there is caused a true & lawfull *scirrhus*, called of the Arabians *scirrhus phirus*, but of the Greekes *καρκίνος* & *καρκίνος* in *απεκνέειν*, that is, *scirrhus* or *scirrhus non exquisitus*.

Lib. 4. Apho.
Lib. 4. Therap.
pentices.

3
Melancholy
commeth by the
adustion of o-
ther humors.

Com. 29. lib. 3.
pradict. Hip.

3
Bilis atra per
congelationem
(ut vocant) &
indurationem.

4
Melancholy
through ad-
mixture of o-
ther humors.
Foure differen-
ces of tumours
caused of me-
lancholy.
Versus scirrhus
non exquisitus.

non exaltus seu non exquisitus, which kind of tumour truly is very hard and void of paine, but yet not altogether insensible: *Auicenna* calleth it *impurus*. Yet *Galen lib. 14. meth. med.* pardoning them which do contend about the names of tumors, calleth it a tumor constated of a melancholius humor, & then properly *scirrhus*, when as notwithstanding it is expert of any feeling or sense; but if it be not yet made altogether insensible, it is rather to be called a scirrhus tumor, then *scirrhus* it selfe. Secondly, of vnnaturall melancholy through the admixt^{ion} of other humours there do grow three other differences of tumours (that is to say) *scirrhus phlegmonoides*, *scirrhus adematoides*, & *Erysipelatoides*, which diseases are here rehearsed for one onely difference. Thirdly, of vnnaturall melancholy caused through a certainestony hardnesse and concretion, there is engendered an exquisite *scirrhus*, hard, and void of sense and paine: it is called of *Auicenna*, *purus*, which euill admitteth no cure. Fourthly of vnnaturall melancholy through detulsion, are all the kinds of cankers ingendred, as well ulcerate as not ulcerate: of the which kind is *scirrhus canerosus*, *scirrhus* therefore properly is a tumor very hard and without paine, but yet not altogether without feeling, proceeding of a naturall melancholy, and vncorrupt humor, which definition the late Chirurgicalians haue assigned therunto. The causes of *scirrhus*, as of other tumors besides nature are three. First primitive, as is an euill diet, ingendring and gathering grosse and melancolike blood. Secondly antecedent, as a melancolike humor collected in the body, which is drawne from the spleene (whose dutie it is to purge the liver from that grosse and muddy blood) and yet is not expelled without the body (as it ought to be). Thirdly *coniuuncta causa*, is the melancolike humor it selfe, compacted in the affected member. The signes of *scirrhus* his presence (as *Guido* reporteth) are these, a hard tumor, and mighty resisting, a middle colour between a red and a blacke, which is a brown colour. This *scirrhus* when it happeneth in the parts of the body, many of the Physicians (as *Galen* saith) do call it *ipulidus*, that is to say, black & blew. Moreover if the affected member hath any manifest veines appearing in it, you shall see them purged vp and swolne by the meanes of thicke and blacke blood, such as is sometime purged downward in them which labour with the disease of the liver, but then it is called *scirrhus impurus* & *canerosus*. For these signes which *Guido* doth here ascribe vnto *scirrhus*, do properly agree with the signes of cancer (as *Galen* writeth *14. meth. med.* And truly they may very fitly be attributed vnto *scirrhus*, if this one thing be excepted, namely, that *scirrhus* hath not such swelling and full veines, as cancer hath, except *scirrhus* (as we haue said before) chance to be *canerosus*, for *scirrhus* doth oftentimes degenerate into cancer, and that notwithstanding great cause, seeing that both proceed of one matter, that is, of a melancolike humor. The proper signes therefore of a lawfull *scirrhus* are these: a hard and stony tumor, very obstinate and resisting touching, wherein there is present a very dull sense. There do also appeare many other signes which do testifie the dominion of a melancholy humor in the body. Such tumors as are truly *scirrhi*, in their beginning and first conception are wont to appeare very small, but in proceesse of time, they do grow and increase by little and little, and become great and mighty, whereof some do annoy one onely member, but other some of the sayd tumours do leaue that member which they did

first

Scirrhus phlegmonoides, adematoides, Erysipelatoides.
Scirrhus exquisitus.
Scirrhus canerosus.
Scirrhus proprius quid.
Causa 3. scirrhi legitimi.

Signa.

14. meth. med.

Guido notat canceri tribus scirrhus.

Iudicia Scirrhi

first infect, and afterward do passe ouer into the possession of another, which thing when it happeneth, then *Auicen* calleth the euill *ferinos*. Fur hermored, *Ferinos*. these kinds of melancholious tumors if they be rightly handled, they are commonly cured by resolution; oftentimes they continue indurated and hard, and many times (which is worst of all) they degenerate and change into *Cancer*.

But now we will prosecute the absolute cure of these kinds of hard tumors about nature, which are called true *Scirrhi*, and not *Exquisiti*, by three special intentions. The first prescribeth a conuenient order of diet. The second admonisheth to take away the antecedent matter, which is ready to procure the disease. The third warneth vs to enterprize the vacation of that coniuinct & grown in matter (as they call it) which now causeth the euill. Therefore (to speake generally) you must appoint to them which are diseased with *Scirrhus*, a sober and moderate diet, and such a one as declineth vnto heate and moiture in those things (which they call *non naturales*) as before. Giue him therefore meates of good iuyce, and which can ingender good blood. Let his bread be made of wheate, well kneaded, and baked in an ouen with a soft fire, and let it haue some leauen, and salt as much as shall suffice. Let his drinke be small ale or beere, giue him rare eggdes, the flesh of chicken, capons, hennes, and the brothes of them. Let him also eate the flesh of partridges, pheasants, quailles, young kids, sucking calues, and of weathers of a yeare old. For potherbes, let him vse that which the Arabians call *Aspanar*, but we somewhat altering the name do call it Spinach also lettuce, hops, borrag, buglosse, and other herbes of that nature which can purge forth blood, and make it more pure. To conclude, let him flie and auoid all those things, which naturally do engender melancholike blood, which things *Galen* in *libra tertio de affectu capite sexto* hath described vnto vs, as are, the flesh of goates, and of oxen, and of buls, but especially the flesh of asses, and of camels, of foxes and of dogs, of hares also and of bores. Furthermore, snails (if they be accustomed to be eaten) and the flesh of all terrestriall creatures seasoned with salt. The flesh also of fishes, as of Tunic, of the fish called *Balena*, the sea calfe, the dolphin, the dog-fish, & of all kind of whales. But of potherbes, coleworts, is wont onely to engender this kind of blood. The buds also of trees, when they are seasoned either with brine or with *Oxalme*, especially of the tree called a mastixe tree, of the Terebinth, of the brier, and of the wild eglantine brier (which the Greekes call *Cynosbator*.) But of all kind of pulse, lintels chiefly are accounted amongst the number of melancholike meates. Bread also made of bran, and that which is made of rie and of other corrupt and naughty seedes, which other countries do vse in stead of corne. Moreover, thicke and blacke wines are very fit to engender a melancholious humour: especially, if one drinking them abundantly, doth by occasion keepe his body in great heat. Finally old cheese when as by chance it shall be exceedingly hote in the body, doth easily breed this kind of humour. These things haue we hitherto recited out of *Galen*. Furthermore you must diligently beware of meates that are burnt, roasted, & fried, which do vehemently dry vp, of salt meats also, and of those which are sharpe and sowre, as onions, garlick, pepper, mustard, and of other things of that kind which do burne the blood. You must also eschue anger, wrath, sadnesse,

The cure of a true & lawfull *Scirrhus*, yet not exquisite,

to a stony hardness; altogether insensible.

Three intentions.

Victus ratio.

Euchyma.

Panna.

Potus.

Oua.

Carnes.

Limaces.

Pisces.

Olera.

Oxalme is made of ringer and salt.

Leguminum.

Panna.

Tospha.

Vinum.

Casew.

Sanguinem adurentis.

Animi pathema.

Exercitatio.

2
Evacuatio ma-
terie antee-
dentis.3
Evacuatio ma-
terie cōiunctae.Materia scir-
rhorum caute
trahenda.Gal. 2. ad
Glauc.
Medicines
good for scir-
rhus.Raz's medica-
mentum ad
scirrhos emol-
liendos & dis-
solvingendos.

watchings, heaviness, carefulesse, and immoderate exercises. Quietnesse and tranquillity of mind, with mirth and gladnesse is greatly to be desired: and you must diligently endeavour every day to emper the bellie. Hitherto concerning the first scope. 2. Now that we may accomplish that which our second intention doth proponnd, let vs somewhat consider the precept of *Auicē*, who wilteht vs to euacuate the whole body both by blood letting, if too blacke and grosse blood shall appeare, and also by some purging medicine, which can expell melancholy, as are those which follow, out of *Aleſia*, *epithymum*, *sene*, *polyoty*, *ſumaria* (which of the Grecians is called *Capnos* or *Capnios*, of the Latines *ſumaria lupulus*, and the herbe called *valubilis*). Also *Cassia fistula*, *myrabolani Indi*, *ſapizuli*, which the Greekes call *Cyanus*, the Romanes *Ceruleus*, *diacene*, *diacatholicon*, *hierra*, *Ruphi*, all which things do purge forth melancholike humors. But these things which pertaine vnto phisicke do exceed the bounds of Chyrurgians. Omitting therefore the professors of the art of Phisicke, we will hasten vnto the third scope, which we shall very speedily dispatch, if we labour to emper, out all that matter, which vnnaturally is compacted in the aggrieued member. Which truly is the generall and principal indication of all tumours which consist aboue nature: in which that leaky matter (as we haue said before) is not yet engendred. But this is the onely and proper way to euacuate them, about the which the Chyrurgian ought to be very circumspect & attentiuē. For truly the matter of such kind of tumours, is naturally so malignant and stubborne, that it will turne into a stony hardnesse if it be rashly resolved. Againe, if it be mollified more then is requisite, it is greatly to be feared that it will putrifie and corrupt, and that *Scirrhus* will degenerate into *Cancer*. We must therefore in this case follow the counsell of *Galen* and *Paulus* (who wrote of this thing long before *Auicē*.) Namely, that in such scirrhus effects, we must not apply any vehement, hot, and drying medicine, neither any thing else which hath the power only to mollifie and moisten. For that tumor which hath a superfluous humor, it doth nothing at all dissolve: but that which hath a small fluxe, it doth more dry vp then need requireth. Hereupon *Auicē* did well admonish vs, to apply to these indurated tumours by turnes, sometime mollifying, and sometime digesting remedies. But because that order was very tedious and hard to be done, it pleased *Galen* to vse for the cure of these euils, such medicines as had a mixed and double faculty, which deuice was more safe and lesse dangerous. For by this meanes we shall both mollifie and digest the indurate and hard substance all at one time: yet in the beginning we must commixe something with them which can moderately repress. For this purpose *Auicē* hath set downe many kinds of remedies, which because they are rather appointed for those *Scirrhi* which proceed of *phlegmone* and *Erysipelas* when they be exceedingly cooled (as we will declare in the chapters following) we will omit them, making choyce of that medicine which *Razus* in *libro septimo ad Almanſorem* hath described, vſing notwithstanding at the beginning some equall repressiō of the flowing of humours (by applying some moderate repelling remedy.) The forme of the medicine is this. *R. of bellium*, *Ammoniacum*, and *Galbanum*, of each a like quantity: beate them in a mortar with oyle de ben, which the Greekes call *balanum myreſſice*, the Latines,

Glaus

Glaus vnguentaria, or with oyle of lillies. Then take of the filth of fenugreke of linseed, and of figges the weight of all the former things: bray them all together till they be thoroughly incorporated the one with the other. *Galen* for this cure doth greatly commend the bark of the roote of *Althea*, which the common sort (saith he) doth call *Anaden dromalache*, as though one would say, *arborescens matua*, melted with the fat of a goose or of a cocke, and then beaten together, and brought into the forme of a cataplasme. But if the tumor doth belong vnto suppuration, you must be verie warie, least the affected member be incended or stirred with hote medicins, or by any other meanes, for so *Cancer* should easily be procured: but if the tumour be opened, and the substance thereof already turned into matter, you must vse the helpe of that ointment which is called *diachylon*. Againe, if it shall degenerate into a stonie hardnesse, you must straight way repaire vnto those remedies which shall be described in the chapter following.

But now when as through the vnskillfulnesse and ignorance of Physicians, those inflammations which the Græcians call *phlegmone* or *Erysipelata* are exceedingly refrigerated, or else rashly resolued through the ministring of such medicines as can vehemently drawe and digest by their vapour, then all that substance which is any thing thinne and slender in them, is dissolved, but that which remaineth behind, being as it were congealed together, and maruellously dried vp, doth take vnto it a stonie hardnesse, and at the last cometh to that disease which is called of the Greekes *Schirrus*. But it chanceth sometime that some member is hardened through extension of the flesh which commeth by reason of winde or by some waterie humour (as we haue sayed before in our Treatise of flatuous and waterie tumours.) Oftentimes also there ariseth vp in certaine members a stonie hardnesse, caused of the priuation of the moisture of the bodie, and through too much drynesse, as it happeneth in the hardnesse of the ioyntes, and in the pores of the bodie, when the gowte or such like diseases doe raigne. But here we will onely discourse of *Schirrus*, or of other hard tumours, which haue their originall from *phlegmone* or *Erysipelas*, or else from *edema*, when as they be greatly refrigerated and cooled; which tumours we haue termed not without some reason *Schirri ex coincidentia procreati* (that is) *Schirri* proceeding of an vnitie, being as it were a double disease incident both at one time. The signes and tokens of an vnlawfull *Schirrus* which is not exquisite or perfect are these: a hard tumour, scarce sensible, that is, as though it were without feeling & paine, perfectly representing the colour of the bodie, drawing his beginning from vnnatural melancholie. This euill is not altogether incurable, and yet it admitteth no easie cure, neither is it easily remedied. For that humour whereupon this euill gathereth his force, is clammy, glewish, and thicke, or (as *Galen* sayth) a partaker of both kindes, which when it is stuffed in the hard members, it doth obstinately withstand resolution; and when the humiditie thereof is thoroughly resolued, then that which remaineth behind is dried vp, and made as hard as a stone. But an exquisite *Schirrus*, and such a one as is altogether insensible doth not receiue any cure. But if it may be holpen any way, it must be done by some moystening medicine. That hardnesse also which commeth through

Galen cataplasma.
Therap. 14.

If Schirrus will matter.

Schirrus illegitimus & non exquisitus. Quomodo generetur.

The causes of hardnesse in the partes of the bodie.

Schirri ex coincidentia procreati.

The signes of an vnlawfull Schirrus.

Iudicia.

Schirrus exquisitus curationem non admittit.

too much exciccation, and when the moisture of the bodie is cleane extinguished, is also incurable, for it is sufficient if you stop it, that the drinnesse may proceed no further. But those *schirri* also, wherein there do grow certain haïres, and which are great and very hard, and do resemble the colour of the bodie, are neither cured, nor yet changed at any time into any other disease, as *Auicenna* hath declared.

The common and generall declaration of curing these tumours, is in this order described: namely, to euacuate all that matter which vnnaturally is contained in the member. For the onely way of euacuation (as *Galen* hath noted *lib. 4. meth. med.*) is this, euen to cleanse and draw out that corruption which stubburnly doth cleaue vnto the humour. But if any man shall assay to make euacuation by those medicines which do vehemently drawe and digest, neither shall mollifie and soften with any drying & moistning remedies, the cure shall seeme to him within few dayes greatly to haue preuailed: for *Schirrus* will manifestly appeare to be diminished, but that which remaineth of the disease will be incurable. For truly when the whole substance which is verie thinne in the tumour, is digested or dispersed, then that which remaineth behinde, is turned into a certaine stonie concretion. For this cause therefore there is no medicine that doth vehemently heate or drie vp, meete and conuenient for these hard and schirrous affects, but such remedies onely, which can firly both mollifie, and also digest, as are these things following: the marrow of a hare and of a calfe, also goates suet, bulles suet, the tallow of a lybard and of a Lyon. Among the fat of birds, gooses grease is greatly commended, next that the fat of a cocke and of a pheasant. Also *ammaniacum thymiana*, viz. *suffinen*, perfume *galbanum*, and *bedellium* of both kinds, but rather that which is called *scithicum*, because it is somewhat moist. *styrax* also which is something moist and fat. Moreouer the roote of *althea*, and of the wild mallowe, which groweth almost euerie where, the leaues whereof must be moderately boyled with gooses or cockes suet, or if there be none of these at hand, you may vse swines grease: these remedies are greatly profitable for this intention. But *Auicenna* warneth vs not to commixe any hogges tallow that is salted with the former things, and to vse masticke, *labdanum*, oyle of wool, *frygmenta gymnasorum*, (which they call the filthinesse of bathes) asses dung, and the deags of oile of lillies, of oyle of *alchanna* which they call *cyprinum*, and of *cherua*, which of the

Medulla seua.

Adipes.

Gal. 14. meth. med.

Anadendromalache.

Oleum recini.

14. Meth. med. P/su Aceti.

14. Meth. med.

14. Meth. med.

14. Meth. med.

14. Meth. med.

14. Meth. med.

14. Meth. med.

14. Meth. med.

14. Meth. med.

14. Meth. med.

14. Meth. med.

14. Meth. med.

14. Meth. med.

14. Meth. med.

14. Meth. med.

Greeks is called *utrixor*, but of the Latines *recinum*. But that cure which is administered by vinegar is profitable for this euill, that is, for *schirrus* which is full grown, and when the member is prepared to receiue mollifying medicines, as *Galen* also hath declared: for truly saith he, the force of vinegar, if it be vsed moderately & in due time, is very wholesome in these diseases, because it doth deuide and resoluë the grosse humors included in them: but if it be applyed immoderately and out of a conuenient season, it violently consumeth the thinner parts, and maketh that which remaineth behinde to become very harde, also if it be vsed long, it will diminish and corrupt the verie substance of the sinewes. For this cause therefore, we must not very often nor at the beginning, nor any long time, apply those medicines to the great sinewes or cords of the body, which are compounded and made of vinegar. Wherefore *Galen* did

did cure the childe of one Cercilius, who through too much cooling and vehement binding of *erysipelas*, had a hard and schirrous tumor remaining in his thigh, after this maner. First he annointed his thigh with *oleum sabinum*, which of all oyles is most thin, in stead whereof they vse in these daies *oleum sambucinum*, oile of elder, which the common sort call *iasminum*. When he had thus washed and annointed the member, be applied *ammoniicum thimiana*, which must be grosse and not verie olde, commixed with the aforesaid suettes and marrowes. Afterward he annointed his whole thigh round about with verie fat *ammoniicum*, dissolued in exceeding sharpe vineger, and commaunded the childe to hoppe on the other legge; that so the more flourishing might be brought vnto it. By such medicines therefore as could release and mollifie the tumour, and by digesting or resoluing remedies also, and by the moderat and right vse thereof, he perfectly cured the childe. But in those great sinewes and ligaments of the bodie, which are drawn together and couered with *Schirrhus*, you must vse vineger after this sort, as *Galen* counselleth vs: Take a stone, and heate it verie hote in the fire, and quench it in verie sharpe vineger, if it be possible, let the stone be that which we call *pyrites*; but if there be no plentie thereof, take the stone called *lapis molaris*, which the Greekes call *mylites*; then let the affected member be holden ouer the hote vapour that riseth vp from the stone out of the vineger, that it may receiue the steeming vapour, which doth dissolue *Schirrhus*; and afterward lay on againe some mollifying medicine: yet the affected part must be euery day cut from the beginning throughly annointed with oile and not with water, which oile must not be adstrictiue in any case, but of a thinne substance; as is oile of saune. But sometime you may boile in oile the rootes of *althaea*, and of the wilde cucumber, and other things of that sort. By this methode of curing, many men truely haue bene perfectly healed in a short space, so that some haue thought it (as *Galen* sayth) to be done by the art of Magicke. By these things therefore it doeth plainly appeare, that with that cure which is accomplished by mollifying remedies, as well in the sinewes, as in the ligaments of the bodie, you must commixe some medicine that can cur, dissolue and deuide, among which number vineger is chiefly the principall. Now as concerning other medicines which can mollifie the hardnesse of these tumours, we haue spoken nothing, hoping that they may easily be gathered out of our former discourse. Now followeth the summe of the cure of *Schirrhus* tumors, which we haue drawn into a cōspendious forme hereafter ensuing. 1. That kind of *Schirrhus* which hauing all his humidity and moisture consumed and wasted, is growne into a stony hardnesse, and is altogether destitute of sence (as is that which *Galen* calleth *exquisitus Schirrhus*) of such a *Schirrhus*, I say, attempt not the cure, but leaue it as an euill incurable. 2. To *Schirrhus non exquisitus*, which is not altogether insensible, and yet scarce feelth any thing, apply such medicines as cary with them a marvellous heat, and a meane moisture (that is to say) which by mollifying, can also moderately digest. 3. Vnto such members as are infected with *Schirrhus*, minister no remedies which do vehemently digest, & immoderately dry vp, for in them their small humidity is quickly resolued, and then that which abideth still behinde is dried vp and turned into a stonie hardnesse. 4. In hard and grosse members,

Historia.
Lib. 2. ad.
Glaucōnem.
Oleum sabinum.

Suffimentum.

The cure of
Schirrhus, si-
newes, and
veines, out of
Galen and
Paulus.
Lapis mylites.
Lapis pyrites.

Oleum sabinum.

2. ad Glaucōnem.

Lib. 6.

The summe of
curing *Schir-
rous tumors.*

1.

2.

3.

4.

which are annoied with *Schirrus* (as are the great vessels of the bodie) and in other places also, where the euill is inueterate, you must commixe such medicines as haue power to cut and deuide, as is vineger, with those remedies which can mollifie and moderately digest. 5. Also commaund, that this *schirrous* member which is hard and grosse, or any other part besides, which is affected with *Schirrus*, be holden ouer the hote vapour of *Lapis molaris* burnt in the fire, and quenched in vineger, and let this be done often. 6. Furthermore let the aggriued member be euery day annointed with some thinn oile, wherein either the roote of the wilde cucumber, or of *althea*, or greene and fresh dill, or some such like thing hath bene boiled and infused. 7. Apply vnto the aforesaid *schirrous* members such medicines as can drie, deuide, and resolu the grosse humours moderately (that is to say) neither often, nor any long time, nor out of conuenient season, that is, not at the beginning of the disease, to preuent the vse of mollifying remedies. 8. To conclude, all such *schirrous* tumours as are not indurated and of a stony hardnesse, let them be cured with such medicines as can sicly digest and mollifie. 9. Last of all com mit the cure of a *schirrous* splene and a lapidous liuer, to the wisdom of the Phisition.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of a cancerous tumour, which they commonly call *Cancer Apoftematosus*.

Cancer pertaineth vnto two kinds of diseases.

1
2
Of what humour cancer is engendred, Cancer sine vlcere, Cancer cum vlcere.

Cancer of tumour in description.

Cancer nomen a cancro a quatico.

The name and title of the disease called *Cancer*, among the Phisitions and Chyrurgians hath diuerse and sundrie significations: for the notifying or declaration thereof is extended vnto two kinds of diseases, that is to say, vnto a cancerous tumour (which they commonly call *Cancer apoftematosus*, as well that which is euident and appeareth in the outward members, as that which is hidden, and lieth in the inward and secret parts of the bodie, as in the hips, the roote of the mouth, and in the pappes of a woman.) The other signification pertaineth vnto an vlcerate cancer. But both these euils are engendred of melancholie, that is to say, of such a humour as resemblith the dregges of wine, and the filthines of oile, which thing *Galen libro de cimo quarto Therapeutices*, and in his little booke, *de tumoribus præter naturam* doth plainly testifie. Now this aforesayd humour, when it is quiet, milde, and gentle, it engendreth a secret or an inward *Cancer* without any vlcere. But if it happeneth to be sharpe, fierce, & malignant, it gnaweth the skinne, and causeth a cancer with an vlcere. But here we will onely discourse of that kinde of cancer which hath his residence in the outward parts of the bodie, and of that which is not yet exulcerate, which also sometime (as *Galen* affirmeth) is said to be a priuie cancer. That cancer therefore whereof we now intreate, is a hard tumour, vnequall, round, hauing the veines round about it swollen and puffed vp, it is blew or browne, and (as *Pau-lus* saith) it is more blacke in colour then an inflammation: it is also hote, but yet not so vehement as inflammations are; it sodainly increaseth, and greatly weariech the sicke, and afflicteth them almost with a continuall griefe: in Greeke it is called *καρκίνος*, and *καρκίνουσα*, which title aswell the Latines as the Grecians haue assigned to this disease of the fish called a crabbe, because the

the veines about this euil are filled and stretched out, very like vnto the feete of crabs, descending from the round compasse of their bodies. But some haue giuen it this name, because it is very hardly pulled away from those members, which it doth lay hold on, as the sea crab doth, who obstinately doth cleave to that place which it once hath apprehended. Moreouer this tumor doth also represent the colour of a crab, whose hew is very blacke. But the first beginnings of these cancrs are sometime so confused and so small, that the common sort may be ignorant thereof: for when they do begin, they do scarce resemble the greatnesse of a pease or of a beane. Wherefore it is no maruaile (saith *Galen*) though the common sort do not know them, for they be like vnto the little rootes that arise out of the earth, which are not discerned but of skilfull husbandmen. But after ward they grow vp into such a huge greatnesse, and do bring with them so vehement, great, and manifest symptomes, that a child may easily discern them. Let no man therefore doubt of the name thereof, seeing all men with one consent do terme this kind of disease *cancer*, because (as we haue sayd) the veines in this euill do swell on euery side, and are greatly stretched out, and they do represent the forme and likenesse of a crab. A cancerous tumour (as we haue sayd before) is hard and vnequall, which by the touching of it doth plainly appeare. It hath a blew or browne colour, which is a meane betwene red and blacke, called of the Greekes *πυλιδεον*. About the place where cancre is lodged, there is felt a certaine beating or pulse, and as it were a pricking, sometime also (as *Celsus* sayth) the tumour is asleepe, and as it were dead. It maketh the veines round about it to swell and rise vp, like vnto the cancre in the armes. Oftentimes also in some they are secretly hidden, and when the place is touched, it is felt in some very painefull, but in other some it is contrary. This tumour also is maruelously stout, and resisteth touching. Moreouer it hath in it a certaine strange and extraordinary heate. *Cancer* or *carcinoma* generally is a grieuous and pernicious disease, for it can scarcely be healed any way, by reason of the grosnes of the humour, neither can it be repressed or discuffed, neither will it yeeld to any purgation, though it be throughout the whole body. The malice also of this disease is so great, that it contemneth all gentle and easie remedies, putting forth but the middle finger to them (as the proverbe is) but it must be stirred and chafed, and overcome with very vehement remedies (as we wont to do in the euill called *crabro*.) This disease is wont to happen in euery part of the body, but especially in the vpper parts about the face, the nosethrils, the eares, the lippes, and about the pappes of women, and of those chiefly, which are not naturally purged of menstruis. But cancrs do also commonly haunt men, whose accustomed purgings are suppressed through hemorrhoids growing in the fundament: for by them, that grosse & thicke blood (whereupon this euill taketh his first beginning) is wont naturally to be purged out. Moreouer when this melancholious humor, resembling in proportion the dregs of wine, doth descend & flow into any member, and there abideth compact together, it causeth sometime the disease called *varices*, and sometime it breedeth a cancre, as when the same is somewhat cooled. But when it is thrust out to the whole skinn, it causeth that euill which they call *elephans*. *Cancer* therefore

*Canceri nota
per initia con-
fusa, & ob-
scure.
Lib. 14. The-
rap.*

*Note cancri
evidentia non
ulcerati.*

*Iudicia.
Lib. 14. Ther.*

Celsus lib. 5.

*Gal. lib. 2. ad
Glauc. conem.*

is a certaine particular *elephantiasis*, which the common sort call *lepra*, the leproy. But the thicker and the blacker the blood is, whereof cancre proceedeth, the more dangerous will the disease be. Now when cancre is full growne (as they say) and inueterate; it admitteth not any cure, except it be plucked vp by the roots, either by section or by aduision: but those cancre, which haue their constitution in the inward parts of the body, do not desire any such kind of cure, as that ancient *Hippocrates* simply the Prince of Physicians hath taught vs very well in the Aphorisme following: saying that it is not good to cure all inward cancre: for when they are cured, they do soone perish againe; but when they are not cured, they remain a long time. For experience hath taught vs, as *Galen* witnesseth in his commentary vpon this Aphorisme, that they which enterprise the cure of these cancre, either by section or vition, do rather increase their fury then abate it, whereby they shortly destroy those men whom this euill hath attached. Those cancre therefore are only curable which do stick in the outward part of the body, and which are exulcerate, and do so weary the sicke, that they willingly desire the diligence of the Chyrurgian: and these tumors also do consist in those parts, which a man may cut and seare off by the rootes. Now when I name the rootes of *Cancer*, I meane as *Galen* affirmeth, those veins which are full of melancholike blood, and which euery way are extended toward the places lying about the tumour. But of an vnulcerate cancre there often proceedeth an vlcerate tumor, when as in proceffe of time the humour doth putrifie, and the disease is couched in the vessels of the body, or else when it is stirred and made worse by medicines vnaduisedly ministred. This exulcerate cancre of all other is thought to be most vile, because it doth altogether resist the true cure, which attempteth and worketh all things to bring the sicke member vnto health, for this tumour, to cure it perfectly & absolutely, doth require gnawing, sharpe, and vehement medicines: howbeit by such remedies, as we haue said, it is the more prouoked & stirred to anger, and therefore it cannot be, that it should either be lenified, or cured by the. It shall therefore be sufficient to hinder the increasing of vnulcerate cancre, which as yet do occupy the outward parts of the body, especially those which be great and inueterate, withdrawing out skill from any perfect cure, which thing *Hippocrates* also hath admonished vs of in his former Aphorisme. For those tumors which do weary the sicke without exulceration, *Galen* also hath called them secret and inward cancre, wherein both their vehement heat, and their great pulse or beating do threaten or foretell exulceration to ensue. The cure of a cancre which is not yet vlcerat, but newly begun, hath three principall intentions. 1. The first is to stop the generation of the melancholike humour. 2. The second is to empty out the melancholious humour dispersed throughout the whole body. 3. The third is to digest the humour which possesseth the affected member, and to strengthen, & confirme the diseased place. The first intention is finished by a iust & due obseruation of that kind of diet, which is before prescribed in the chapter *de siccis legitimo*. But among other things this is chiefly & principally to be obserued, namely, that such nourishments be given to the diseased, as haue vertue to refrigerate and moisten, and which do engender good and slender iuice: as are these, the iuyce of barley steeped in water and pressed,

Apho. 38. lib. 6.

What cancre
must be rooted
out, and what
not.

An exulcerate
cancre worst
of all.

What things
do foretell ex-
ulceration.
Curatio cancri
non vlcerati.

Primus scopus.

Victus ratio
tenuis sit &
probi succi.

pressed, fishes of grauelly places, birds of all kindes, saue those which liue in fennie grounds, the yolkes of eggs, but specially of rere eggs, (which the Grecians call *βόγητα*) and other things of that sort. But if any extreme heate shall infect the aggrieued place, and yet without a seauer, you may safely giue him bullocks milke, from the which the butter is taken, or else the whey of milke. Potherbes also which haue a coole and moist nature, as mallowes, orage, spinach, & when time serueth gourdes: citrons also and borage may be giuen him in meate. The second scope (which is to purge the whole body from that melancholy humour, whereof this euill proceedeth) is accomplished by the applying of purging medicines, which are appointed to euacuate melancholie, whereof you may finde plentie in the Chapter of *Schirrui*: among the which *epithimum* (which the Romaines call *inulacrum*) as a present remedie, doth obtaine the preheminance, whereof you must take foure drams steeped in the whey of milke, or in *mulsā*, (as *Galen* commaundeth *lib. 14. meth. med.*) But this quantitie of *epithimum*, or somewhat more, must be offered euery third day, that the melancholike humour which is gathered together in the veines, and causeth the generation of cancre, may by little and little be emptied & purged out, because it is impossible to euacuate all at one time. But we cannot alwaies prohibit the fluxe, least afterward the like humour be engendred in the body, & compact together in the veines. The purging therefore of the antecedent matter must be attempted at the beginning, as it were by turnes, by the applying of some simple medicine: afterward (if the matter so requireth, & the ministering of simples doth litle auaille) you may vse the help of some compound remedies, as is that medicin of *Galen* dedicated for the purging of melancholie, which consisteth of two and thirtie simples, or *hiera Ruffi*, or *hiera Auicenne*, which is made of blacke *helleborus*. But you must not desist from those former rehearsed purgations, vntill the whole melancholious humor which is stuffed in the veines be brought out, and vntill the member which is beset with this cancerous tumour, be thoroughly reduced to his naturall state. But if nothing do let it, as age and strength, it shall not be amisse in these cancre to let blood, and then to purge (as we haue laid before:) and if they be women, you must labour to purge menstruis, if they be not aboue fiftie yeares old (as *Galen* hath taught vs *lib. 2. ad Glaucomem*.) This second indication (saith *Galen*) is the first and chiefe of all, for that which is put in the first place, doth rightly challenge the second degree. The generall manifestation therefore (saith he) of the cure of a cancre, consisteth in the speedy emptying out of that humor whereof this euill groweth, and in the prohibition and stopping thereof, and to foresee, (if it be possible) that this melancholious humor be not collected in the veins by the meanes of another. But if that thing cannot be brought to passe, you must euacuate the humour by turnes, now some and then some: and you must also endeavour to strengthen the member, least the abundance of the humors do plentifully flow vnto it. 3. The third intention, which is generall to all such diseases comming of the flowing of humors, doth will vs to digest the humour, which lurketh in the affected member, and to roborate the same: least the humors abundantly haue access thereunto: moreouer you must appoint a convenient time to repell that which is flowne, and that truely in the beginning,

Secundus scopus.

Humori melancholici euacuatio.

Epithimum.

Hiera Ruffi.

Hiera Auicenne.

Sanguinis missio.

Lib. 14. meth. medendi.

Tertius scopus.

*Quod aptum
medicamentum
canceris.*

Lib. 14. Ther.

Succus Solani.

Diapompholygos.

Diaphenicon

feu diapalma.

Unguentum

diapompholy-

gos Theodori-

ci.

Appollonij me-

dicamentum.

The force of

lead is mar-

vellous in can-

cred tumours.

Pavins lib. 4.

ex Archigene.

aswell in the very time of purging, as before, but now when the whole body is thoroughly purged, then may you lawfully endeavour to digest, and if there went before but a small and meane purging, then you must apply some remedie which hath a mixed facultie, that is to say, which can both repress and digest. Now, that we may iustly accomplish these intentions, we must make choise of those medicines which are of a meane force, and of a gentle qualitie, for such remedies are most conuenient for these diseases. For those which cary with them a weake and feeble power do worke no eff. & (as *Galen* saith) but are easily ouercome: but such remedies as are strong and mightie, doe vehemently either digest or thrust backe the thinne bloud which lyeth in the veines: but the grosse and melancholike partes, which wee haue likened before to the dregges of wine, they neither purge forth nor repress: but rather do make them more obstinate and more hard to be dissolued and discussed. Therefore to cure these cancrs but yet beginning, you must vse medicines of a meane and moderat strength, which neither their imbecillitie can be vanquished, nor for the vehemencie can mightily thicken the bloud. Furthermore you must apply (as it is said) such medicines as are gentle, and which do not gnaw or bite: because the malignity of the euill through such vehement medicines is stirred and prouoked, and made more fierce and sauage (as we commonly terme it.) But when the matter whereof these cancrs doe come, is for the most part grosse, and thicke, and disobedient to resolution, and partner also with many other vicious humours, we shall deale sufficiently in this case (especially when we feare the daunger of Chyrurgerie, and that the euill cannot otherwise be cured) if we by the vse of the former remedies, which are made of burnt and washed metals (as *Galen* counselleth) shall stop and hinder their growing and increasing, especially if they be great tumours: or else after the opinion of *Auicenn*, if we seeke to defend them from vlcration. For the which intentions, *Galen* lib. 2. ad *Glaucon*. doth greatly commend the iuyce of nightshade, and that medicine which is made of *pompholygos*, or that which consisteth of *chalcites* commonly called *diapalma*. Therefore *Theodoricus* also for the same purpose, appointed the ointment named *diapompholygos*, which is made of oile of roses, of white waxe, ana $\mathfrak{z}$. v. of the iuyce of red pomgranates, and of nightshade. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. iiij. of ceruse washed. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. of lead burnt and washed, of *pompholygos*, which is commonly called *tuthia*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. of frankensence. $\mathfrak{z}$. $\mathfrak{ss}$. *Galen* also reporteth *libro primo de compositione pharmacorum secundum locos*, which booke is entituled of the auncient interpreter *Myamis*, a certaine oyntment inuented of *Apollonius* for vlcers appearing in the head which the Greekes call *achore*, which oyntment hee affirmeth to be verie effectually against these cancerous tumours. The medicine is this. R^t. of oile of roses, or of vnripe oliues, *hemina*, which the Greekes call *coryle*, viz $\mathfrak{z}$. vij. $\mathfrak{ss}$. which must bee infused or put into a leaden mortar, and stirred vp and downe with a leaden ladle, or else brayed with a leaden pestill so long till it waxe thicke and blacke, resembling the very colour of lead: then beate by it selfe alone, of *lythargium* lib. 1. of ceruse as much, and commixe them with the oile, and make an ointment. Moreouer how great the force of lead is in all such cancerous dispositions, especially that which is burnt and washed, all men may sufficiently know, which haue had some experience thereof,

thereof, and which haue studiously perused those things which *Galen libro no-
no de simpliciis medicamentorum facultate* doeth write of lead, which he himselfe
calleth in Greeke *molybdo*. For this cancrus disease *Paulus* and *Auicenn* do
greatly commend the emplaster made of sea crabbes, especially if it be min-
gled with an equall quantitie of the scourings of brasfe. Take therefore of sea
crabs burned, and of the offall of brasfe an euen portion, beat them to flower,
and straw them vpon the tumour, or else lay on the ashes of the crabbes with a
scarce cloath or cerate. But the same *Auicenn* willethe to plucke vp these litle can-
cres hard by the rootes, or else to cut them off, and then to wring and crush
out the thicke blood on euerie side, and afterward seate the place with some
hote instrument. For this doeth dissipate the reliques of the matter, and confu-
meth them, it strengtheneth the member and stoppeth the fluxe of blood. *Gal-
len* also before *Auicenn* his time, did allow that cancrus might sometime be cu-
red by Chyrurgerie. But truely although *Galen* and *Auicenn* do permit this ma-
nuall cure by Chyrurgerie, yet to auoide the daunger of immoderate fluxe of
blood and of vlceration, yea and of the life of the sicke, omitting those things,
we ought to follow that prescript rule of curing, which is onely accomplished
by gentle and milde medicines, as a more safe way and lesse troublesome, and
to content our selues with that onely methode: because that if such a cancrus
tumour which is growen to a mightie bignesse, should be cut round about in
those places which are ioyned to the whole partes, the daunger of immode-
rate profusion of blood would straight follow, by reason of the greatnesse of
the vesselles and widenesse of the arteries, which partes (sayth *Galen*) if you
should take vp and binde them with cordes, the other members by reason of
their neare acquaintance would be troubled and greatly grieved. Moreo-
uer *Celsus* sayth, that although *carcinomata* be cut off, and brought to a scarre,
yet they will returne againe, and giue occasion of death. But if you intend to
seare off the rootes of this euill, yet truely you cannot do this neither with-
out hurting of the next partes, especially if you make exustion neare vnto the
principall members. Great cancrus therefore, and those which are inueterate,
must neither rashly be burned with any instrument, nor cut off with a pen-
knife, but rather handled gently and mildly (as we haue sayd before.) For
many men not by the applying of any forcible or vehement medicines to take
away this euill, but by the onely ministring of easie and gentle remedies,
which can as it were please or delight, haue so hindred these tumours, that
they could not attaine vnto any perfect age or ripenesse. Now followeth the
summe of the cure of *Cancer non vlceratus*, which is yet but beginning, and doth
occupie the outward partes of the bodie, briefly in these wordes. 1. In primis
in a Cancre which is but newly begun, and which consisteth of no verie thicke
humour, nor causeth the veines to swell greatly, purge out the melancholicke
humour which causeth this euill vniuersally throughout the whole bodie. 2. If
age and strength doeth suffer it, cut a veine in the elbow, and draw out as
much blood as neede requireth. 3. Afterward minister to the sicke such me-
dicines as can purge melancholie downward: in the beginning let them be
gentle and easie, but afterward somewhat vehement, increasing their force by
litle and litle. 4. If the purging of menstruis in women before fiftie yeares of

*Lib. 14. Meth.
len*

*Chyrurgery not
rashly to be
used in cancrus.*

Lib. 5a

*Capita curatio-
nis Canceri non
vlcerati.*

1

2

3

age, or if hemorrhoides both in them and in men be so suppressed, that blood aboundeth not at times now and then, you must prouoke them by all meanes possible. 5. In the meane time appoint vnto the sicke a thinne diet, which can engender good iuyce, and cause no melancholicke blood. 6. If you cannot auoide it, but that a grosse and melancholious humour be gathered together in the veines, you must euacuate the same by turnes, both with simple and compound medicines. But these former Aphorismes do pertaine vnto the Phisition: now we will declare the dutie of the Chyrurgian. 7. Applie vnto the affected member doth before purging, and in the very time of purging, such medicines as can repell, and driue backe; but when the body is vniuersally purged, then vse digestiue remedies, but let them be such as are of a moderate strength and of a gentle nature. 8. Therefore minister to the aggrieued place iuyce of nightshade, or the medicine made of *Pompholygos*, or that which consisteth of *Calcites*, commonly called *Diapalma*, and other remedies of that sort. 9. But if by the Art of Chyrurgerie you dare enterprise the cure of *Cancer*, you must first (taking the Phisitions counsell) purge forth the melancholicke humour, and then cut the corrupted tumour cleane off, and suffer a good quantitie of blood to come soorth, and wring the thicke blood out of the adioyned parts, and afterward cure the disease after the maner of other vlcers.

The end of the fift Booke.



THE SIXT BOOKE, CONTAINING THE CVRE OF THE DISEASE CALLED MORBUS GALLICVS.

CHAP. I.

*Of the diuerſe names of the griefe which I minde to ſpeake of,
and where it had beginning.*



Having promised to write of all the infirmities in mans body, and now ſpying many faults in the firſt Print and in the ſecond, I will performe my promiſe, and amend the faults eſcaped in all the bookes, for the benefit of my countrey: and being preuented by the Printer, this Booke was left out, wherein is contained a grievous paine and trouble, which doeth raigne in all the world at this day, in great furie and raging manner: in ſomuch that it ſpareth none of what degree or calling ſoeuer they be of, (if they ſeek for it) be they Kings, Lordes, or Ladies, it ſearcheth them. This griefe hath gotten many names, and ſo many as come to my memorie I will rehearſe, and where they were firſt begotten. Firſt, the Spaniards borrowed it of the Indians, and brought it home in ſtead of their gold, and afterward *Charles* the fiſt Emperour of Rome, who was a man of great power, and delighted much in ſhedding of bloud, ſpared neither man, woman, nor child, in ſomuch that he ſpoiled a great part of Italic, and ſubdued the Dukedome of Millan, with great hurt, ruine and ſpoile to all the common wealth of Florence: and at the laſt he came to Rome and Naples with his whole hoaſt, ſpoyling all as he went with great crueltie: and for his hire, this diſeaſe began firſt to ſhew it ſelfe plentifully among his people, and ſpecially becauſe his ſoldiers were much giuē to venerie. The Frenchmen at that ſiege got the buttons of Naples (as we terme them) which doeth much annoy them at this day. But the firſt finding of this grievous ſickeneſſe, was brought into Spaine, by *Columbus* at his coming home, ſo that all Chriſtendome may curſe the Emperour and *Columbus*. This griefe at the firſt was ſo extreame, cruell, and ſo mercileſſe, that is moleſted thoſe which were infected therewith, even the head, eyes, noſe, palate of the mouth, ſkinne, fleſh, bones, ligaments, and all

the inward parts of their bodies. Then *Columbus* trauelled againe, and brought with him little gold, but all his men were well infected with this griefe: in so much that the *Phisicians* in those daies did not know what to make of the griefe, nor how to helpe the people. So for want of knowledge manie were spoiled. After (as I told you before of the siege of Naples) the *Spaniards* for friendship they bare to the Frenchmen, sent to them of their curtizans infected with this griefe, minding to let them haue some of their iewels, which they brought out of the Indian country. The Frenchmen (not knowing their kinde hearts) fell in loue with them, and (being rauished with their beautie) dealt with them to their great cost and trouble to this day. Now to the varietie of the names: First the *Italians* call it *Morbus Gallicus*, and some call it *Variolam Gallicam*, because it first appeared among the Frenchmen at the siege before named. The French call it *Scabiem*, or *Morbum Italicum*, because they had the victorie, & for that they had this sicknesse. And they also call it *Scabiem Hispanicam*, because the *Spaniards* first brought it out of the Indies. The Germans call it *Menium*, why they should so terme it, I know not well, vnlesse *Menium* do signifie the priuy parts infected with this disease. Some of them call it also *Scabiem Hispanicam*. In Spaine the name it *Morbum Neapolitanum*: the cause I told you before. They of Naples call it also *Patrysa* *paradnetur*, that is, the proper name at home in India. Some intrepere it *Violentum morbum*, or thus; a great, foule, and vehement disease. Other some call it *Pendendagra*, because it first infecteth the priuy parts both of men and women: and we in our country call it the French disease. But howsoeuer it be called it skilleth not, so that we know how to helpe it, which I minde to declare hereafter by Gods grace.

CHAP. II.

Of the signes.

But first I meane to declare the signes how you shall know those which are infected with this griefe, and then the nature of this French disease; as by the effectes following it may appeare; and after, the cause thereof is shewed to be nothing else but that contagion. It resteth that we now say somewhat of the signes, whereby you may vnderstand and perceiue those which are infected with this disease: and because signes do proceede and are taken either of the nature of the affectes, or of the causes of the sicknesse, or also of some symptomes or consequents thereof; and because it chiefly beginneth in the liuer, and cannot be looked into, let vs not looke for any signes as *Analogia morbi*: for all signes that can giue certaine testimonie and shew thereof, are contained vnder the affectes, and consequently of the disease. Of these there be two sorts, some are, *symptomata*, other some be *morbi*, or affectes of nature. *Symptomata* be these, falling of haire, ach in the head and members, and small infection of the skin. Those which I called *morbi*, be most sore and vehement vlcers, tumours of the shins, and other parts of the body, with pustules, &c: which followeth this disease, euen as the shadow waiteth vpon the sunne. But because long diseases haue their times, to wit, beginning, increase, state, and declination, and this French disease is one kinde of long disease, great reason there is why it should haue his distinct times, and according to the diuersitie of those times there

there happeneth diuerse *symptomata*: For one kind of *symptomates* happen at the beginning of this disease, another kind to the state or vigor, &c. And therefore I will diuide all *symptomates* into two sorts, to wit, those which follow and properly belong vnto this grieue, beginning at those which follow the same being inueterat & confirmed; and these next ensuing be of the first sort. Straight wayes after a yong man is infected, he feeleth in himselfe a certaine lassitude or wearinesse come vpon all his members without any outward occasiō, as walking, or mouing, &c: which foresheweth this cruell disease, and happeneth vnto them which are most strong and lusty before. There is perceiued also a lumpish heauines in the whole body, a dulnesse, faintnesse, listernesse, or slownesse to moue in all the members. The occasion of this, is the infection of the naturall spirits, which are the immediate instruments of the faculty sustaining and giuing liuelines to the whole body: by whose infection, the body waxeth more heauy and wearisome then it was before. Moreover, there is a certaine paine or ach, which wandreth throughout all the body and parts thereof. After this lassitude of the body, the head aketh: and againe by & by it leaueth the head, and goeth into the shoulders, and from the one shoulder into the other. Out of the shoulder it fleeth into the legs, the one of them or the other, & in like sort may it be said of all other members. The cause of this is a certaine vapor which beginneth to rise vp from the liuer. The euill humor of this affect is not yet begotten: but by reason of that seruent heat of the liuer caused by infectiō, there is engendred a certaine small vapor, whereof do grow these wandring or fleeting pains. Thirdly, when the disease hath begun, & hath a lile preuailed, the color of the face is changed; you shall see the most beautifull, liuely, and cleane complexion of the skin, in three or foure daies space changed into a much worse course then before; and what maner of motion this is, I cannot tell. But certes their face differeth not a litle from that it was before, the colour is altered, the liuely spirits in the eies be changed, the mouth, lips, and cheekes sometimes are changed from their natural comelines. And marke you this (which may much further your iudgement & knowledge therein) there is vnder their eies a wan coloured or blewish circle, such as appeareth in women when they haue their naturall purgation, or before it. Noting and finding these things in him, consider with your selfe whether he passed measure in drinking, in watching, or sleeping, or haue vexed his mind with care: & if it happē not through one of these, then may you iudge he is taken with this disease. Fourthly, there is wont to breake out a notable heate in the palmes of the hands, and the soles of the feete, yea euen in the winter time. This appeareth through vaporos spirites, taking their beginning of the liuer, which being infected, the face also is affected, and the extreame parts or vtermoost members are sore distempered with heate. Fifthly, you may adde a drowinesse, or disposition to sleepe oftentimes interrupted: and this is caused through a turbulent vapour, which is increased through the infection and heate. Sixtly, you may adde heauinesse, and sadnesse of the mind: for though a pleasant and merry nature should be infected with this disease, yet he shall straight way be sad, and giuen to pensiuenesse, and euen grone therewith. This infection increasing, burneth the blood, which sendeth vp troublous and noy some vapours vnto the head,

7 and seat of the mind. Seuenthly, the patient sometime hath a seauer, because
 8 of the heat which is about the distempered parts: but this seldome chanceth.
 The eight is the appearance of some purified matter, and this is *signum pa-*
thognomicum, a signe to discover the malady. Therefore as often times as you
 shall see this purified matter, yet small in quantity about the priuy place, and
 know no occasio to haue gone before, you may pronounce it to be the french
 disease. And what is the reason? This Caries or matter cannot happen but of
 two causes: either because the corruption of the womans matrice hath eaten
 and gnawne the fine skinne of the yarde; or else because the contagion is com-
 municated and imparted vnto the liuer by the naturall spirites, and the liuer
 expelleth those infected spirits & sanious matter vnto the priuy parts. Of this
 Caries, how it may be knowne when it commeth of *Morbus Gallicus*, and when
 9 it is caused otherwise, I will speake afterwards. In the ninth place succeedeth
Bubo, and those not great, as thus; A yong man had to do with a woman, after
 which act there came vpon him a heauinesse of his members, and a sadnesse of
 the mind, and after two or three dayes there appeareth *Bubo parvus*, that is to
 say, a small tumour in the armeholes or share, which is painefull, not growne
 to any greatnesse: this signifieth that the disease is yet gentle, and in the be-
 ginning, but the cause of this is the greatnesse by the purging places of the li-
 uer, and therefore the liuer disburdeneth himselfe by sending the disease vn-
 to them, and hereof commeth *Bubo*. The later signe of this disease at the be-
 ginning is *Gonorrhœia Gallica*, which bewrayeth vnto vs the nature of this Pro-
 teus. After the first coming in of this disease, for the space of fortie yeares,
 there was not ioyned with it *defluuium capillorum*: but the nature of the disease
 is to be changeable and diuers, for *Gonorrhœia Gallica* hath not bin seene aboue
 these fūe and thirty yeares. Therefore we may looke for new and strange *symp-*
tomates, I pray God they be light and easie to be holpen: Now how this *Gallica*
Gonorrhœia is to be discerned from that which is not *Gallica*, I will hereafter de-
 clare, to auoid tediousnesse in this place. The cause of this *Gonorrhœia* is *labe-*
factio spirituum, weakning and subuersion of the spirites, which rule the natu-
 rall faculties or vertues of the testicles & spermiatike vessels, by reason where-
 of the strength of those parts is dissolued: so that they cannot keepe their seed
 but it continually droppeth forth. But now let vs speake of those signes which
 are appropriated to the disease in his progresse or confirmation: and first, of
 hard pustules in the whole body, and the same grievous and deformed in the
 head and beard, sometimes with sanious matter, sometimes without it. And
 know you, the disease cannot be aboue the age of fūe or sixe moneths at the
 most when these *symptomates* appeare. And if the disease beginneth in the win-
 ter, it shall bring forth his crusts in the beginning of Sommer: if it begin in the
 spring time, his crusts appeare in Autumne, &c.

CHAP. III.

Of the causes of the breaking out of Pustules.

1 A ND the chiefe causes of this breaking out of pustules are these: First, be-
 2 cause the matter infected is sent thither from the liuer. Secondly, because
 the parts affected do not digest and expell (by way of transpiration) his excre-
 ments,

ments, and therefore they remaine in it still, and grow vnto crusts. The third
 signe of this disease confirmed, is callous vlcers about the priuy parts, which
 either be callous at the beginning, or become callous afterward: and there-
 fore as often as you see the *Caries* in the priuy parts healed, and that there re-
 maine *Calli* or hardnesse about the place where it was, be you assured that
 this is *Galicus Morbus* confirmed. Therefore I wish that you remember this,
 when you take in hand the cure; for those hardnesse be most manifest & cer-
 taine signes of this disease confirmed. The fourth is hanging downe of the
vuula; the *vuula* hanging downe in the further part of the mouth, and if it do so,
 much moisture commeth to the mouth, by reason whereof happeneth *raucedo*
voxis, a great hoarsenesse of the voice. Therefore open their mouth when you
 shall heare them speake thus hoarsely, and you shall perceiue the *vuula* full of
 moisture, and (if the patient haue no cararich) say that it is *Morbus gallicus* con-
 firmed. The cause of this humectation or moistnesse of the *vuula*, is the natu-
 rall spirits infected and changed, which is caried with the blood of the veines,
 throughout the whole body, and because it is so infected and weakned, there-
 fore the function thereof is weake and feeble in the stomach, and maketh euill
 digestion. Therefore the same stomach aboundeth with sleame in the braine,
 and it doth not his function. Therefore in the braine there is engendred *Mu-*
cus, that is, a skinned cold moisture in the veines, by the reason of weakenesse
 of the spirits, engendred of flegmaticke blood, with vnnaturall humours.
 If they be afterward by excesse of heate adust, the disease becommeth very
 grieuous and vehement. No maruaile therefore, if this abundance of moist
 humours fall to the *vuula*, and be pressed downe with moisture: and if the blood
 be sharper, then the skals breake forth in the skinne, the rootes of the haire
 be consumed, so that they fall: it exulcerateth the mouth, the palate, and the
 nose: it perisheth the scalpe of the braine, and is the occasion of many other
symptomates. The cause of hoarsenesse of the voice, is humidity and excrements
 which do stop and let the waies of the voice. Fiftly, you may adde the tu-
 mors of the glandules in the further part of the mouth; and when you see this,
 be you out of doubt, that the infection of the disease is now confirmed. For
 the infected matter is now sent vnto the head, which is expelled by his *emmu-*
tory places, that is, glandules. And sixtly, adde thereunto the corruption of the
 palate of the mouth, and of the teeth: and when you see these, looke not to a-
 ny greater signes of the confirmation of this euill. In the seventh place I put
 outrageous and continuall paine, making the patient euen to cry out: this be-
 ginneth at the two and twentieth houre of the artificiall day, and continueth
 not fully vntill midnight; and these most orguilous and extreme paines are
 caused of a very moist and malignant vapour, which riseth vp from the liuer,
 and from the excrements be acquired, and gathered by euill nourishment in
 euery part, and especially about the *periostion*, that is, the rims which couer the
 bones of euery part. And in the eight place, I remeber corruption of the bones
 in the head, and in the armes, before there appeare any vlcere. How you may
 know the bone to be corrupted, the skinne remaining whole and sound, I will
 hereafter shew. In the ninth place you may adde tumours *atheromacous*, that
 is, tumours which yeeld a tough slimy matter. These of some writers are called

10 *Bumata* or *Gummata*, by a similitude taken of trees. For in *Morbo Gallico* tumors do grow like the gummes which issue out of trees, and this happeneth, either because the party himselfe is not well nourished, and heareth vp vndigested excrements, or else because the liuer communicateth and sendeth vnto it infected matter. We may adde here in the tenth and last place, malignant vlcers in all the parts of the body, which vlcerate the whole skinne, head, and all parts, through abundance of offensive matter. To conclude, there succeed this disease sometime their effects, as *Asthus*, which when it is come vpon a patient, it declareth him to be past cure. Therefore neuer put such a one to paine by medicines or other meanes, for you shall neuer heale him. Now will I teach you in proceſſe of time following, the wayes how to assuage and cure all the sayd *Symptomes*, which although they be very hard and rebellious to remedy, yet I vnderstand vnto you that I haue found out such waies and meanes by medicines, as will assuredly, speedily, and without all danger (as much as is possible) helpe and cure them, by Gods grace.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the cure of Morbus Gallicus.

NOW after we haue declared the names, nature, causes, and signes of this affect, it remaineth that we proceed and declare also the cure. And vnderstand you, that the waies of curing therof are manifold and diuers, because the nature thereof is not comprehended in any method of curing, but was alwayes opened by the experiments of Emperickes, for *Hap* & *Hardy* haue giuen vs medicines against this disease. And because diuerse medicines haue bene found out by chance, therefore there be diuerse waies of curing this affect, of the which one is light and easie, that is, great mouing and exercise of the body, which in yong men, strong and lusty, able to endure sweat, either in wrastling, leaping, darting, dancing or playing at tennis, or such like, hath bin a sufficient remedy for this euil in the beginning, for by it the heat so groweth, and the excrements thereby be so abundantly expelled, that the spirits, be renewed and made more pure and apt to ouercome the infection: and therefore it is not to be marvelled, if by this meanes the liuer sometimes purgeth himselfe, when the disease hath taken no deepe roote in him. Why doth *febris putrida* cease & take an end without medicine? Because perdy, it is not in the sound parts of the body. But in *febris letica* the patients are healed by medicines alwayes which coole and moisten, because the affect consisteth in the sound parts. Semblable, in *Morbo Gallico*, when the disease is in the beginning and not confirmed or fixed in the inward parts, it is possible that the spirits may be restored of themselves; for this affect is in the spirites. Therefore to returne to our purpose, some indeed by procuring a great sweat haue bene cured, but this was in the beginning of the disease, in very strong bodies, and yet it hath not had in all such successe neither.

CHAP. V.

Of Fumigations.

THERE is another way that Emperickes haue vsed to cure this disease, and that is per *Suffumigia*. The auncients cured indeed diuerse affects by suffumigations.

migrations: but the Emperickes trying alwaies to helpe this affect, at length found out an excellent Suffumigation, *ex cinabari*, yet this oftentimes hurteth: albeit it is counted amongst the waies of curing this disease, and sometime doubtlesse it healeth them.

CHAP. VI.

Of purging of Morbus Gallicus.

HAVING thus farre proceeded in this matter, wee will now come vnto the first scope proposed, I meane euacuation of the matter present in *substantia*, wherewith is ioyned *fermor*, out of the which groweth a hote distempure and excrementous matter. First therefore naturall, and that whensoever you goe about to cure this disease: for the verie Emperickes doe that euer at the beginning of their cure. And because the present humors may offend either in quantity, or in quality, or in both, you ought to vse diligent consideration therein. For if they offend in quantitie onely: first, we must giue him a lenitiue medicine either of *cassia*, or *sirup. ros. sol.* and after that open a veine, that the ebullition of blood in the liuer may be so tempred and aswaged. Secondly, abate and diminish the matter, which requireth first to be altered by medicines, and afterward to be expelled. Thirdly, for as much as the disease happeneth by contagion, which contagion infecteth the liuer, vnto the which their fountaine all the humours haue their recourse, it behoueth reuulsion to be made from the inward partes vnto the outward, as in blood letting it is. I omit the greatnesse of the disease, which also indicateth *Phlebotomy*: but the three first onely we take as indications of bloodletting, and the veine that is to be opened is *hepatica*, in the right arme, because it is direct vnto the partes affected. But vnderstand that sometime we may not vse this euacuation, because in the beginning of the disease (for the most part) the patient is woont to haue *Bubones*, which *Bubones* because they come from the liuer, expelling the superfluons or vnnaturall matter vnto his excretory place, if we should cut the veine the patient hauing them vpon him, we might happily thereby diuert and turne backe the matter againe vnto the liuer, to the danger of the patient. So that in this case it is determined among learned men, that a veine ought not to be opened, least the matter (as I sayd before) should be drawne againe vnto the liuer, and the disease made more dangerous and painefull.

CHAP. VII.

Of the preparation of humors.

AFTER the patient hath bene let blood, as his strength may permit, the time well serueth to prepare his humours: and for as much as in the beginning of the disease, there is not alwaies the same mixture of humours, that is in the end, in which there is *pituita* and *exusta materia*. This *pituita* ought to be prepared, first by those things which haue power to attenuate and scoure, and to open obstructions, of which medicines you shall finde plentie in the former bookes, for the auoiding of cholericke, flegmaticke and melancholike humors and mixt humors, and then let vs come to the cure.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the certaine and true medicine for the disease.

IN the cure of this disease, after euacuation is made, the state and tempera-
ture of the inward parts by conuenient meanes altered, the bodie prepared
by the medicins before sufficiently, and purged, and afterward confirmed and
comforted againe as before we haue declared: if we see the disease continue
still, and not yeeld to all this ministratiō, we ought then to come vnto that
which maketh the true & certaine alteration of the inward parts, and that of
it selfe hath knowne vertue, both to alter and restore the liuer to his naturall
estate: and this is the decoction of *lignum guaiacum*, otherwise called *lignum in-*
dicum and *lignum sanctum*, which medicine was found out by chance, and con-
firmed by great experience to cure this disease, the patient obseruing a very
slender diet, and drinking the decoction in which there is a vertue to attenu-
ate, and power to ouercome this disease.

CHAP. IX.

What sort of that wood is to be chosen as best for this purpose.

NOW sithence it is determined that for this purpose to vse this wood is best,
it is necessarie to shew also the maner of vsing this wood, concerning which
you ought to obserue these things. First what maner wood, and what manner
rind is to be chosen for the best. Secondly the preparation. Thirdly the way of
giving it. Fourthly the order of diet to be vsed in ministring it. First concern-
ing the election or choise of the wood, I say it is not to be doubted, alwaies to
choose that which is of most vertue, and that is *lignum sanctum*, which is yel-
lowish and fatte, hauing no blacknesse in it: and if we cannot haue this, let vs
vse *guaiacum*, whereof there is more plentie. Moreouer, in both kindes of this
wood, the meane sort is best: we may haue it of a tree that is old, or of a young
tree, or of a tree of middle age. I call that the meane sort which is not altogether
blacke, nor for the greater part white, neither slender nor grosse. I choose
this middle sort, because it hath more vntuositie or oylifnesse in it then the
other which is growne vnto age. For if the same vntuositie doth more abound
in the younger wood, it is more inconcoct and excrementous. Moreouer, we
ought to choose that which is best in respect of the disease: to wit, in a confir-
med disease, the most vertufull and efficacious, as is *lignum sanctum* of middle
age, but if the disease be not so greatly confirmed, but light and easie, we may
vse that which is of a more weaker operation both in *genere* & in *specie*. Further-
more, regard must be had also of the patient his age, for in an old bodie, the
old plant is most conuenient: for one that is yong and strong, the middle sort
is to be chosen. Fifthly, in choosing this wood, we must consider of the time
of the year: for in a cold season, as in the winter, we ought to vse the hotter,
sharper, and bitterer kinde, which we may iudge by our senses: in the sommer
time, that which is lesse sharpe, and least of all bitter, either of an old or young
tree. And the markes whereby we may discern the best from the other, of
the wood of the old tree, which hath in it great quantity of blacknes, are these:
it is verie bigge, and hath a grosse and thicke rinde, which so cleaueth vnto the

wood,

wood, that vnneath it can with a knife be separated. For as often as you see the rinde to come easily from the wood, it hath bene moistned with salt water, and is of the worst sort. In the middle sort of this wood, all these things appeare in a meane. Besides this, I would wishe you to rape a little of this wood, and if in so doing you perceiue not a smell proceed from it, you may be bold to say, that it is either very old, or else corrupt. The third signe to choose this wood by, is, if in raping it appeareth oylish, so that the dust thereof doth somewhat glister. Fourthly, you may tast of that you haue raped in your mouth, and if it bite the tongue forthwith, and afterward yeeldeth a bitternesse, it is good. Fifthly, rake & rape it, and if there appeareth in the substance thereof manifest pores and small holes after you haue raped it, and the superficies remaineth not equall and sound, it is of the worst sort: and if you make your decoction thereof, it is cleare, and neither bitter nor sharpe in taste. Sixtly, it ought to be chosen very ponderous and heauie. Seuenthly, see that it be such as hath not the whitish colour enclining to dimmednesse, neither hauing the veines of the white part blacke, but greenish, and of dimme pale colour: for if it be otherwise it is a token of corruption. The last prooue of this wood is, to boile the rapings thereof, and if the decoction be thicke, verie bitter, and sharpe, it is good. The signes of goodnesse in the rinde are these: First, that it be taken of a tree which is olde, or of middle age, for that which cometh of a small bough is naught, and we know when it cometh of a middle aged or old tree, for it hath great peeces, and large cauities. Secondly it is required, that the rinde be very thicke. Thirdly, that it be verie hard. Fourthly that on the inside it seemeth as it were blacke, sprinkled with an ashe colour: and this is the colour of the most excellent barke. If withall in breaking it appeareth blacke, but not like vnto *Ebenus*, be ye sure it is of the best sort.

CHAP. X.

Of the decoction of Guaiacum.

THE wood being thus raped, we come to his boyling, which we call decoction. And touching that, we shall note that the common vse is, for euery ounce of raped wood, to adde a pound of water. But truth it is, if we deale with a ladde or a stripling of tender yeares, of hore complexion, and that in sommer season, wee must vse for euery ounce of the wood, to take one pound and a halfe of water. But the common custome is (as I said) for euery ounce of the said wood, to take one pound of water. Therefore in making the decoction we are wont to take one pound of the raped wood, and twelue poundes of the water, except in the sommer season when the sirupe cannot be kept: and then we take *lignum* 3vj of water lb. vj. Also in the winter time we take of the wood raped lb. j. of water eightene poundes. In the middle seasons or times betwixt both these, one pound of the wood, and twelue poundes of water. But you must take and macerate, or infuse the woode twelue houres before, or sometimes more, sometimes lesse while. Some infuse the wood in cold water, but I like not that way, for if you marke the difference which is betweene the decoction made after the infusion of colde water, and that which is

made after the wood is infused in hote water, you shall finde the last far more sharper, more bitter, and more thicker. Therefore hardly let it be infused in water, which is made euen seething hote. Moreover, I wish that you stop your pot very closely, and set it in a place amongst branne, couering it vpeuen vnto the middle part in the sayd branne: for by this meanes it long time retaineth his heate. Besides this, encompasse it round about with linnen clothes, that it may be perfectly macerated; and the decoction haue his requisite strength; and to be boyled in a vessell of stone; or of earth well glased within; those vessels of glasse are best of all. And note you furthermore, that this decoction may be made two diuerse waies, to witte, by dry fire, or in *balneo marie*, which is the more excellent way; for the decoction will be far better, & worke better effect and sooner. Also choose your vessell hauing as small a mouth as may be, and boile your liquor therein, the top being close stopp'd, and keepe it in boyling continually: let it boile till halfe be wasted, as the common vse is: some will boile it till three parts be consumed, to haue it dry more. This is the rule for boyling this decoction, which when it is boyled, sometime is suffred to coole before it be strained, and some straine it whiles it is yet boyling hot, that the wood make not the decoction thicke or grosse with his substance. I think it no matter whether it be cleaned hote or cold, and this is the making of this first decoction. The spume or froth thereof must be gathered for that purpose, which hereafter I will declare. The second decoction is made in this wise: we take the same wood (without macerating it any more) & boile it againe in the same quantity of water (as custome is): that it boile vnto the consumption of the third part: so that of twelue pounds, after boyling there remaine eight. But in the second decoction we vse to increase the quantity of this water: for sometime we adde eightene pounds of water, sometime fiftene: and this we are accustomed to doe when we haue a patient that is giuen to drinke much. Secondly we increase the *dosis* of the water, if it be in the sommer season, for then the patients are compelled to drinke betweene dinner and supper. And this is to be drunk at dinner and supper, or (if need be) at any time of the day. Neuertheless ye shall vnderstand, some Physitions doe giue the first decoction euen at dinner & supper also, and so they make but one decoction only: but this vse is but rare, and when they will dry vehemently. One thing I must adde, which is this, that in leane and weake persons we vse to prepare this wood to be giuen with the broth of veale, of a chicken, or a bird, so that the broth be not fatte. It is boyled after the manner aforesaid: and this I thought necessarie to let you vnderstand. Thus much may suffice the simple for making of these decoctions.

CHAP. XI.

Of making the compound decoctions of this wood.

THis *Guaicum* is boyled not onely single and by it selfe, (as I haue shewed before) but also diuerse other things in boiling are mixed and compounded therewith diuersely. First I will declare vnto you those decoctions which be made of this wood most singly. Afterwardes others, which because they haue more things added vnto them, are called compound decoctions of this wood. The most simple or single decoction, is made of the rind of the wood, and pure water only. And this simple decoction the best Physitions do vse, when they will

make

make the decoction strong. The forme of making it is this: We take the same quantity of the wood of *guaicum*, & the some of water which is declared in the chapter before, and we adde vnto the same the barke, or rind of *guaicum*, which hath no determinat quantities, for sometime we put 2. sometime 3. sometime 4. ounces vnto one pound of the wood, & for halfe an ounce of the rind, we adde 4. pounds of water: as for example, admit the quantity of the wood be 1. pound, the quantity of the rind $\frac{3}{4}$. the quantity of the water shall be 16. pounds. But when we will haue the medicine of great operation & strength, we take of the wood 1. pound, of the rind $\frac{1}{2}$. of water $\frac{1}{2}$. 18. we beate the rind into grosse powder, & afterward steepe it in the water 24. houres, then boile we it to the consumption of the 3. part, in such wise as is said of the simple decoction. In certaine places they prepare & make this decoction with wine: the forme of preparing it is this: *Guaici*. 1. pound *corticis eius*, halfe a pound, water $\frac{1}{2}$. 18. let these be infused together according to art, afterward boile them to the consumption of 2. or 3. parts, so that 6. pounds only of the decoction do remain. This done, they adde thereto of strong white wine, which they boile a litle, and then straine it, and vse it as before. Sometime it hapneth (by the weaknes or vice of the patient his stomach) that the whole decoction is cast vp againe: therefore that it may pierce the sooner, we adde wine therto, but if the patient can receiue and retaine it without wine, it were the better way. Yet haue we another decoction of this wood which is more compounded, which is this: *R. ligni guai.* $\frac{1}{2}$. *corticis eius*. $\frac{1}{2}$. *aq. aqua*. $\frac{1}{2}$. 18. these be infused according to art, then they boile to the consumption of the 3. part: then we adde to it *Cardus benedictus*, which is much vsed, *Chamedrios*, *Betonice*, of each of these herbes a handfull. Againe they boile it euen till the one halfe be wasted. So that of the whole decoction remaineth no more then 6. pounds. Then we adde thereto againe of wine 3. pintes, and after 1. walme or 2. boiling we cleanse or straine it. *R.* the same wood, the same rind, and the same water in quantity, infuse & boile them after the same maner: then adde of rosemary. *feniculi*, *stachadi*, *betoni.* ana. $\frac{1}{2}$. *scine*, annise $\frac{3}{4}$. let these boile to the consumption of the halfe part, so that there remaine of the liquor but 6. pounds, and thereto adde 3. pintes of wine, after the maner aforesaid. Lastly, we make yet another way, as thus. *R.* the same quantity of the wood and rind, whereof we spake before, and adde of the roots of *enula campana*, of the roots of *althea*, of the dry rootes of *ireos*. ana. $\frac{3}{4}$. of maidenhaire, of liquorice, *stachados*. ana. $\frac{3}{4}$. Boile these together to the consumption of halfe, then put vnto it three pintes of wine, and so the decoction is made perfect by boiling, as is aforesaid. And these be the formes & descriptions of those decoctions which are vsuall with practitioners and others. They which vse to minister these maner of decoctions, make no second decoction, but prepare some other liquor for their dinner and supper at their discretion. I my selfe haue bin wont in this decoction to put in purging medicines, & specially to those which haue such stomachs as cannot haue purging medicines. I haue vsed the foresaid compound decoctions, but not alwaies, but especially in cold griefes, as *Asstima*, and coldnes of the stomach, *sciatica*, & palsey, in fistulaes, and other soule sores & paines in the ioints, and in affects of the feet comming of cold distempure: in these causes I haue vsed the said decoctions with good successe. But

the most simple decoction, I say doth best against *Morbū Gallicum*, so that there be no compound disease ioyned with it, then the compound decoctions are chiefly to be vsed according to the direction of them which do practise.

CHAP. XII.

Of the time conuenient to giue this decoction.

BUt at what time is this decoction to be giuen? certes the most meete time is the spring time, for although we require in the working therof, heat, sweate, and much digestion of excrements, yet the heate of sommer is too great, the bodies are therby resolued & made faint. Therefore the mid spring, and the beginning of sommer is most conuenient. Next vnto the spring is the autumn; as for the sommer and winter they be seasons vnfit for it, the one for his great heate, and the other for his excesse of cold. And if of these two I must needs chuse one, yet would I rather chuse the winter, for in the winter season we may haue good fires, the chamber may be made close and warme. Therefore concerning the time remember alwaies the spring is best, the autumn next, the winter next, and the sommer worst of all.

CAAP. XIII.

Of the place where this decoction is to be giuen.

WE may not conueniently giue this decoction in euery place. Our ancestors the Phisitions that liued before these last 40. years, were wont to keepe their patients in darkentisse, as it were in a dungeon, for the space of 40. daies, pining them euen vnto bones, and they did well, so cruell, so fierce and outragious was then this disease. But now sithence it is become more meeke and tollerable, Phisitions ought not to deale so hardly withall. Therefore we keepe our patients in a chamber, where is somewhat drier ground, not open vnto the winds, the windowes closed in with paper or linnen clothes, the dores not altogether kept close.

CHAP. XIII.

What quantity of the decoction is to be taken at once.

IN measuring the quantity we obserue these things. First, how great the affect is, for if it be great & rebellious, then must a great quantity of this potion be giuen: if the affect be not great, the quantity should be lesse. Vnto a child we minister a smaller quantity then to one of full growth. Also consideration ought to be had of the complexion, for the patient if his temperament be hot, a litle quantity, if it be cold a great quantity is to be giuen. If the stomacke be weake, we giue a very small quantity; if the stomach be strong, we giue a great quantity. This quantity is giuen (when it is large) by 2. sirupes, but when it is litle by one sirupe only, our limits are frō 3. iiii. vnto 3. x. In a child frō 4. vnto 6. 3. if he be strong and valiant of stomack, you may proceed to 3. viij. In the strongest person, the disease also being rebellious, we proceede not aboue 3. x. and that quantity we seldome vse in any. Moreouer, you must obserue another rule, that is, to giue a greater quantity alwaies of the sirupe in the morning, then in the euening, because in the morning the stomack is empty, & in the night because of sleepe the force thereof is greater. Again, this is to be obserued, in the 1. & 2. day we giue no more, but each day once of the day, which is in the morning, and

and likewise in the end of the diet. But after we giue the sirupe twice a day, (to wit) morning and euening, at a certaine, without failing or breaking of time,

CHAP. XV.

How many daies this decoction is to be receiued.

THe question hath bene to giue the decoction of *Guaiacum* the space of forty daies, because this *Morbus Gallicus* is *Morbus erraticus*, a long disease, requiring therefore along cure. But this time serueth when the disease is in a meane betweene confirmed and beginning. If it be but *morbus incipiens*, we scarcely prolong the vse of this decoction till the thirtieth day, or the five and twentieth day; but when the disease is inueterate, we vse not to giue it in *retro*, vntill the 60. day. Whereby shall we know certainly when to leaue the vse of this decoction? Truly when we see that all *symptomata* be ceased and gone, and if they be ceased at the sixteene daies end, let vs leaue the vse of the drinke, if not, let vs continue it still, vntill the *symptomata* be all gone. But if after we haue giuen it fortie daies, the *symptomata* cease not, yet thereby leaue not off as yet for all that, but continue it still, prescribing to the patient *victus mobilis*, and let him till an hundred daies be expired drinke of the decoction, least the disease returne, or be confirmed more. And ye shall vnderstand, there be two rebellious *symptomata*, which if they remaine, hope ye not for any perfect cure. The one sort of these be certaine callous and hard scarres, we English men terme them the buttons of Naples, for they be certaine scars like indeede vnto buttons, and except the patient continue this decoction till these be perfectly cured, it is alwaies to be feared, that the disease will againe returne. The other rebellious *symptomata*, is *Gonorrhoea gallica*, which if it ceaseth not through the vse of the decoction or other medicine, of which I will speake hereafter, the disease also endureth. Therefore see that after fortie daies, yet they drinke one of the decoctions.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the time of giuing this decoction, and things to be obserued therein.

NOW comming to speake of the time of giuing this decoction, I say, that the Physicians giue it in the morning before dinner, the space of three or four houres, and for the euening after supper three houres. And if it so chanceth that we giue but one sirupe only, the time is not so much to be regarded. Moreover, remember that the decoction ought alwaies to be taken very hot, to the end it may prouoke sweate: againe, that it ought to be receiued of the patient lying in his bed. The sirupe being drunke, the patients do vse to sleepe vpon it, and this they must attempt to do, that it may the better be digested and distributed into the habite of the bodie.

CHAP. XVII.

Of things to be eschued of him that receiveth this decoction.

CHiefly *Venus* must be shut out of the dore quite, especially while this decoction is in giuing. Some by committing this act but once in this cure have

failed of remedy through the same. There be diuellish women desirous to be handled and dealt withall, who will beautifie themselves, to inflame mens hearts to lust towards them; abandon these your companie, and thrust them out of the dores and house, let none of that hue be seene in your diet; beware againe of perturbation and chafing of the mind, which to auoide, flie cardes, dice, and all manner of games, which may prouoke anger, and nourish fraud, and couetousnesse, which doth inflame the bloud, & stire cholericke humors,

CHAP. XVIII.

*Of things to be corrected, or symptomes to be op-
pugned in this cure.*

Certaine accidents also in this cure are to be corrected and holpen, among the which, one is a certaine lothing of the stomacke, or disposition to vomit, called of the Latines *Nausea*. This comming vpon the palate, letteth him to receiue his potion. This is resisted and helped by mixing pleasant things with the decoction, as is some pleasant lulep to be mixed with the decoction according to the humour which is the cause therof: some hauing a hot stomack do abhorre it, therefore let them vse in the decoction cold waters, as *cichorri*, & such like, to make it more thin. Some cannot eate their bisket, in which case we permit vnto them good common bread, made of the best floure of the best wheat. Moreouer sharpe and grieuous paines are wont to happen vnto the patients after the fourth day, or the eight day of their begun diet, vntill the fifteenth day be past, which we endeuour to qualifie and lighten two waies. First by perswading with the patient to sustaine them patiently, telling him it is the nature of working of the wood, and that they will soone be at an end, to his great commoditie and much comfort. Secondly, by fomenting the partes, and anointing them, wherof I wil speake more at large, when I treat de *doloribus*. Another inconuenience that followeth this cure, is costiuenesse, and the patient commeth into lassitude, or wearinesse: this is holpen by clisters, giuen euery third day. Again some do abhor clisters, vnto such we giue once in the day of the sirupe *cum duabus radicibus*, or *melis rosacei*. And if it be such a person as will not be scoured by common *mel rosaceum*, then in stead thereof we adde vnto the sirupe *ros. solut.* 3j. Some vse to giue pills of *Aloes*, but *mel ros.* in my iudgmēt is best. Also other whiles it happeneth that the patient fainteth or swooneth, and this happeneth after foure and twentie daies, through the slendernesse of the diet. Then graunt him a larger diet, as an egge every day, morning & euening, or some other thing at your discretion. And other whiles the cause of this their faintnesse and swooning commeth, for that they are not nourished, or because they take litle of their bisket, in which case (as I said) we helpe them with a draught of ale, or an egge reare. But if their stomackes will not digest bisket, let him haue good fine bread. And you shall know this weakenesse of the stomackes digestion by these signes. When either the said solutiue sirupe or clisters be giuen them (if their stomacke be so weake) there is brought forth with it a great part of the decoction, yellowish, somewhat resembling the colour of the yolke of an egge, and somewhat thicke or troubled, in the which ye

may

may see crummes and small peeces of the bisket swimming whole. And when this appeareth vnto you, vse a remedy for it betimes, that is, permit vnto the patient a larger diet, and let him haue a lesse quantity of the decoction, with which if you do mixe also some lulep, it is the better. These be the *symptomata* and the meanes to remedy them by.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Excrements.

NOW am I come to that part of my treatise, wherein I haue to speake of Excrements. And concerning this matter, first you shall vnderstand, there be two kinds of excrements which are to be regarded and considered of. The one is *Excrementum siccum*, that is to say, the ordure whereof I haue spoken. The other kind of excrements, whereby the body is purged, being of three sorts, is auoided sometime by vrine, sometime by sweat, sometime by purging medicines. Although (in this case) it be not necessary that the matter be purged, but that the inward affected part be altered, yet euacuation is good by the way of vrine: very good it were indeed, but no Phisition hath attempted that way. For (be it neuer so good) they haue thought it inconuenient to send such hote matters vnto the reins: especially if the patient haue *Gonorrhoea*, for then assuredly the disease shall be exasperated, and more hurt then commodity will thereupon ensue. To driue forth by sweat, Phisitions do their diligence, for a large sweat dissolueth the matter of this disease. Some therfore do further and prouoke this sweating after the most simple and common way, that is, by couering the patient well with clothes, couering the patients head, by laying him in a hot bed, and giuing him his decoction warme to drinke (the head of the patient being couered,) I doubt whether that wil do hurt or nay.) I can comend it in such patients, as haue not the head very hot and sweating already: also in such as haue pustules, & do feare the shedding of their hair. Others take bread hot out of the oven, and apply it to the backe and sides of the patient, that by the moist heat therof, they might the more easily sweat. I like not this deuise, for the bread is infected thereby, & therefore this is not good. Some vse to lay a warme bricke sprinkled with wine or veriuice, and wrapped vp in clothes, & this is a good comendable way, obseruing yet this rule for the vse thereof, that you omit it in such persons as haue *Rhagades* in their feet: in such you must lay no bricke to their feet in no wise. The last way of voiding excrements, is to expell them by the siege. And the *guaiacum* potion is wont sometime to worke that effect, but sometime it doth it not. The most part of Phisitions do (in this case) comend euacuatio made with conuenient distance of time, by purgatiue medicines, wherefore if very great euacuation be made by sweats, let them euery eight day be purged: if they sweat not plentifully, the purge them ofner euery third or fourth day, in the name of God: and the purgations which we in this case do vse, be according to the humors which do most abound, as sometime with pills, with *sena*, *Epithymo*, *Hermodactilis*, & sometime with electuaries, as *confectio Hameeb*, *Diacatholicon*, and such other like, as you may find plenty in the first and second bookes, if you looke carefully in them for the medicines for the purpose which you would haue auoided.

Of diet to be obserued in this cure.

NOW are we come to speake of the diet to be vsed while this decoction is in taking. This diet is ordained alwayes slender touching the quantirie, and drying: and it consisteth in bisket which we giue vnto the patient first and before other things, to the intent the meate taken after it might the lesse moisten, (and so it helpeth much to the cure of the tumours, which belong to this disease) and also because this bisket bread tarieth longer in eating, and yet the patients appetite is somewhat stayed: and if the stomach be verie weake, permit him to eate common bread of the verie best. His meat must be roasted and excellent good; chickens, rabbits, mutton, partriches, and such like. And when he doth purge, let his meate be boiled that day: once, twise, or thrise in the weeke let him haue to his supper bread & great raisins, as you like his strength. Some do minister corants, which I commend. But when the excrements of the bodie are dayly auoided by abundance of sweat, so that we may hope the patient shall that way be perfectly purged: then I thinke best to giue no purging medicines, for nature her selfe expelleth them to the skinne, to be euacuated that way by sweate, whose worke should by purgatiue medicines partly be hindered. If his sweat be not sufficient, then it is best to vse purging, of what kinde you thinke best (as before.) For his ordinarie drinke at meales & other times, let him vse the second decoction, whereof let him take as much as he will. But do not you beleue, the more they drinke the sooner they shall be cured of this disease: and if they cannot drinke the second decoction we must suffer them to take some ale or beere, but let it not be verie strong in no case. The time of the diet being expired, we ought forthwith to obserue whether the liuer be too hoate yea or no: if it be so, then prescribe a medicine to qualifie the distempure as thus. Take conserues of roses, borage, or of violets, or such like, whereof you may finde plentie in our former bookes.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the roote of China.

NOW haue we to treat of the roote of China, whereof some Physicians do make very great account, not onely for *Morbus gallicus*, but also for the cure of *pyxis*, vlcers of the lungs, consumption of the members. In *Lepra Grecorum*, i. scabbies *Elephanteasie*, i. leproie proceeding of the melancholicke humour *podagra*, in all which affectes they vse it, the Spaniards do bring ouer this roote, but from what place I cannot learne, I could neuer attaine to try the vertues thereof this way, but vse it profitably against the dropisie: also to repress and temper the melancholicke humor, for bleare eyes comming of a hote distempure: moreouer, in an exceeding hote distempure of the stomach and liuer. But in the cure of *Morbus Gallicus*, I will not vse it againe, for I haue proued it three or foure times, and could yet neuer bring any thing to good perfection: to finish their cures they take two pounds thereof.

CHAP.

Of the way of making the decoction of the roote China.

THe decoction is made in this wise, we take this roote and cut it in thinne peeeces, afterward we take ℥.ij. thereof, and xij. pounds of cleare water, we heate the water, and infuse the China in it, for a whole night space, or foure and twentie houres. Afterwardes we set it to the fire, and boile it to the consumption of halfe, so that fixe pounds and no more remaine. We make but one decoction which forthwith we cleanse, and spread out the sayd thinne peeeces vpon a table, that they may be dried in the shadow, because they are reserved to vse againe. The decoction is kept warme in a pot, set either vpon the embers or the hore coales, for if it remaineth not luke warme, it waxeth sower. But obserue that the decoction be made in a vessell with a very narrow mouth, and the same stopped exactly with corke, while it is in boyling. Of this decoction we giue in manner of a sirupe in the morning. ℥. x. or xij. in the euening as much. The stomach liketh well thereof, for it is a pleasant drinke: sometime we permit the patient to drinke wine if he haue bene accustomed to wine, or else to common ale at his meat, if he be weake, or else not. Their diet is common bread of the best, and flesh both sodden and roasted in moderate quantity. No purging medicine is to be giuen before the end thereof, and so the decoction is daily made, for of two pound (which as we told you in the end of the last chapter, is the full Dosis of this roote) we take daily two ounces, and so the whole lasteth twelue daies. Afterward, we take againe of the same roote dried, and boile againe of the same every day ℥. iij. & so it lasteth six daies more, till the space of eightene dayes be finished. Now if we will minister it longer, if need be, we do as before.

Diet.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the election of China.

IF you will chuse the best China, take that which is rough in colour and ponderous, not worme-eaten, nor corrupted. And be diligent in this, for among a hundred rootes, vnneath you shall find foure good, for commonly they haue two faults: one, that they be spongeous and light, another, that they be corrupt & worme-eaten. And if you can haue none without both these faults, (as few there are indeed to be found) rather chuse those that be eaten with wormes, for that they are lesse euill of the two. And spongeous rootes soone putrifie, and haue in the decoction no strength to profite the patient any thing at all. And this is the second way or maner, whereby some Physicians endeavour to vanquish this euill.

CHAP. XXIIII.

*Of another manner of making of the decoction with salsa and
the wood, and without the wood, and sometime
with the barke.*

IHaue alwayes obserued and followed this rule, I take of salsa periglia. ℥. iij. of water, x. pintes. I cut the salsa periglia into small parts: afterwards infuse

it in hote water, by the space of foure and twenty houres. When it is infused, it is boyled to the consumption of the one halfe, afterward it is strained, and this decoction kept for the sirupe. Then we take the same *salsa* againe, & put thereto of water fifteene pintes, and without any more infusion, we boile it vnto the consumption of the third part, and this decoction is good to be drunke at dinner and supper. Truth it is, I sometime make this decoction with wine, in this wise: The first decoction being made (as I haue before declared) I take of water fifteene poundes or pintes, and the same quantitie of *salsa*, and boile them together till halfe the liquour bee wasted, then before I take the vessell from the fire, I put thereto of white wine not strong, but pleasaunt in drinking, one quart, and after it hath boyled a little, I cleanse it out, and this wine I vse to put vnto it when I see the patient not much infected, and so he may walke abroad if it please the patient, or else when his stomacke is much infeebled. Moreouer, sometime I vse to mixe the wood, and sometime the rinde, and then I take of *salsa* ℥. iij. of the Guaicke wood as much, and sometime of his rinde. ℥. ij. (but not both at once, very seldome.) Sometime I vse the one, and sometime the other, after this forme. Rx. *salsa*. ℥. iij. *ligni guaiaci*. ℥. iij. β. or else of the rinde. ℥. ij. To which I put of water thirteene pintes, and let them boile together till halfe be wasted. Againe to make their drinke for dinner and supper, I take of water eighteene pintes, and boile it to the consumption of the third part: when I vse the barke, I take euen the same quantitie of water, although there be of it but ℥. ij. Now when it chaunceth me to haue a patient very delicate, and therefore will not giue him these decoctions: in this case I boyle the *salsa* in thirteene pintes of water, vnto the consumption of halfe, and when it is thus boyled, I haue a vessell either of the raped *Guaicum*, or the powder of the rinde, which I best like of, and into it I cleanse the decoction of *salsa*, as hote as is possible, and so it is infused for thirteene houres, and then I straine it, and thus I prepare this sirupe. At dinner and supper, I giue onely the second decoction of *salsa*. The reason why I thus admixe them, is because the decoction of *salsa* doth little offend the stomacke, but sometime it mooueth the bellie, therefore I mixe *guaicum* therewith. Another cause why I mixe them, is to eradicate the disease, wherefore *salsa* is needefull. Thirdly, when I haue one that hath had this disease long time, I vse both *Guaicum* and *salsa*, yea and sometime the rinde, but that I doe verie seldome, and I vse this decoction in all pointes as the other in quantity and time. And sometimes if the patient be very full of vlcers, I vse this decoction followings: I take *Guaicum*, ℥. vij. of *salsa*, ℥. iij. and infuse them in fourteene pintes of warme water, foure and twentie houres, then boile them vntill there be left seuen pintes, and towards the end of the boiling, adde to of licorise. ℥. j. raisins of the sunne, the stones picked out. ℥. ij. the rootes of *consolida maior*. ℥. ij. β. of the seedes of *Cardus benedictus*. ℥. β. & when it is colde strayne it. This decoction take for the first morning and evening, ℥. viij. at a time warme, and euery morning procure him to sweat if it be possible. For the second decoction, take that which is strained, and adde thereto of fresh *Guaicum*. ℥. iij. of *salsa*. ℥. j. put of water sixteene pintes, let it infuse thirteene houres, and boile them to tenne pintes, and adde in the end

of the boiling barley. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. licorise and raisins of the sunne, the stones taken out, ana $\mathfrak{z}$. j. violet flowers. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . and then when it is cold, straine it, and drinke of it at his meate, and at any other time of the day, remembering to purge the body once in foure daies, if there be need. And let him take this decoction thirty dayes, or fise and twenty dayes at the least, as you see cause, & as the vlcers do heale, remembering to wash or bathe the places griued, morning and euening with the first decoction warme.

CAAP. XXV.

Of other faculties or vertues which this salsa hath.

BVt you shall vnderstand, that this *salsa* doth not cure and put away this *Morbum Gallicum* onely, but the same is good for many other affects, as in a catarrhe, or distillation from the head, being sharpe and salt, in cancrs not vlcerate, and in tumours which are hard to be resolued: and I haue found by mine owne experience, that it yeeldeth good effect in the cure of *scrophule*, commonly called the Kings euill. I minister it in this wise for the space of forty dayes, I take of the powder of *Salsa*, and the powder of *Ruscus*, called of some *Bruschus*, of both a like portion, and euery day I giue of this powder. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. with white wine, or ale, as I see cause, and it commeth well to passe thereby, sometimes purging the body as I see cause, and let the patient go abroad at his pleasure. I haue proued this powder in the tomour of the splene, but I adde thereto the iust quantity of *Tamariscus*, which maketh it the better.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of Suffumigations which some practitioners vse.

THIS disease sometime is cured of practitioners by Suffumigation, otherwise called perfumes, which way of curing is not to be recommended amongst those wayes before named. The cause is this; often and many times sore inconueniencies come thereupon, and it cureth not with so small daunger to the patient. Wherefore, I haue alwayes held it the best (as much as may be) to shunne this way of curing, for as much as in some it is extremely euill and dangerous, as in leane persons, such as haue a hote and dry temperament; also in those which haue straightnesse in the breast, either through obstruction of the vessels, or somewhat distilling from the head. Moreover, it is pernicious vnto them which at any time haue spitted blood: furthermore such persons as haue *peripneumonia*, if they vse these suffumigations, it costs the their liues. To be short, all such as are troubled with *dysentery*, or any other kind of fluxe, ought to forbear these suffumigations. I my selfe neuer vsed them, but in one case or two at the most, and maruel you not thereat, for I vtterly mislike of them. But I will speake a litle of Suffumigations; they haue in them these faculties & strengths: First they open al the cōduits of the body, for their nature is such, that immediately they pierce the body, in piercing they alter it, they

mundifie or scoure the inward parts, and first the heart. And the braine it selfe is altered, for by the lungs it is communicated vnto the heart, by the nose-thrills vnto the braine, as by the veines the same is also communicated vnto the liuer. And this appeareth by experience, for *suffimenta* alwayes loosen the belly, and bring excrements vnto the bowels, euen as a purgation, therefore it must needs be that they pierce or penetrate.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the manner of performing the whole body.

First there is none so ignorant or foolish an Empericke, but he purgeth the body, before the vse of those Suffumigations, by one, two, or three purgations, with respect of the humour abounding, the habite of the body, and the sicknesse. And if the disease be confirmed and inueterate, the purgations ought to be strong, which rules of euacuation you may find before in their conuenient place, where we treated of purging the body both in the beginning and the ending. And first to begin this worke with him, euen about that houre that the sunne riseth, they giue the patient a couple of rere eggs, and straight after he hath eaten them, a sop of bread infused in Malmesey, then they let him drinke a little quantitie. Lastly, after all these, they let him take, $\frac{3}{4}$ of *saccharum ros.* and lye still after that a quarter of an houre. In the meane time they prepare a litle chamber which they make very hote, and therein they make a pauilion, or tent, which is made of a thicke and close cloth, within the which they set a pot full of burning coales, and the patient himselfe also sitteth naked vnder this tent on a litle seat for the purpose. And they haue their things ready at hand, which by litle and litle they strew vpon the coales, and the smoke thereof being closely kept in, flieth about the tent, drying and drawing out of his body. And when that which they haue already cast vpon the coales faileth, and is gone, they strew on more, and that diuerse times, and there they let the patient continue (if he can) the space of a whole houre, or halfe an houre, as he can abide it. But let them alwayes take heede, so long as he is vnder the pauilion, that they talke with him and aske of him how he fareth, for sometime they swoond and fall downe within the tent, which is very dangerous, and if he answereth verie faintly, take him out in all the hast you can, then wrap him vp in a warme linnen sheete, and lay him in bed, and there couering him with clothes, let him continue there two houres space, And this is the way which they vse or ought to vse: they vse to perfume them three dayes together, and rest one day, and then other three dayes, and so to nine dayes. Somtime we vse this suffumigation more daies, euen as the disease requireth, for if we see that the palate of the mouth is exulcerated or sore in the third day, & that the matter floweth out, forthwith we leaue off, or if a lax commeth vpon the patient, we cease: yea though it be in the third, fourth, fift, or sixth day. If once in the day we vse suffumigation still, and that is in the morning, afterward dry vp the sweat, and let him eate his meate and drinke thinne ale. In all other things, let his diet be at large, and at his pleasure, to his best liking.

*A good signe
to know the
time to leaue
off.*

Diet.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.

*Of the Symptomata which sometime happeneth in
this way of curing.*

THis way of curing by Suffumigations is endangered to certaine euill *symptomata*, as sometime laxe of the belly, sometime corruption of the roose of the mouth, sometime loosenes and shaking of the teerth. All which are wont to follow the anointing with quicke siluer: and where we shall come to treat of that way of curing, we shall speake our mind concerning these *symptomata*.

CHAP. XXIX.

*Of Suffumigations made of a matter benigne
and harmelesse.*

ITold you before that there is two sorts of Suffumigations, one sort is compounded and made of things gentle and benigne, another sort is made of things venimous and maligne. First, let vs speake of those which containe a matter benigne and voide of malice, amongst which this is: (the first forme of one which is mighty indeed of operation, but yet of the gentler sort.) *R. Thu- ris masculi, aloes, myrrha, ana. ʒ. j. cinamomi, storacis sicce, spicanardi, moschate, ana. ʒ. ʒ. ambra vel charabe. ʒ. j. moschi gra. ij.* These are mixed together and lightly beaten vnto powder, and with a litle spoone it is strewed vpon hote burning coales. Another is described thus, *Santal. alborum, rubrorum & citrinorum, ana. ʒ. j. nucis moschate, maceris squinanthi, gariophyllorum, camphore, assari, ana. ʒ. ʒ. corticum mali apoli, seccatorum ambre, ana. ʒ. ʒ.* They are mixed and beaten into powder, and with *terebinthine* made into a paste, which paste is afterward deuidded into round bals, which by litle and litle are layd vpon the fiery coales. The third composition being yet more strong is this. *R. storacis sicce, belizoni, ligni aloes, gallie moschate, ana. ʒ. ʒ. gummi hedere. ʒ. j. ladani. ʒ. ij. squinanthi, cinamomi, ana. ʒ. ʒ. albianime, carabe. ʒ. ʒ. misce.* These are beaten, and with *storax liquida* made into a paste, which paste also is made into litle round bals, *vs supra.*

CHAP. XXX.

Of maligne Suffumigations.

Morbus Gallicus is ouercome by Suffumigations, which piercing through the whole body, do dry the braine, the heart, the liuer, and the whole habite: these be of two sorts. The one sort particular, the other common. Of which some be light and easie, some strong and vehement, some of a matter more benigne, some of a matter more maligne. Which they be that consist of a benigne matter, we haue declared in the former chapter; now we haue to speake of the composition of those which do consist of a matter maligne. Of this sort I will set downe three in number which are now in vse, and the principall things in them be *cinaberis artificialis*, *sandaracha grecorum*, and *auripigmentum*; and these be those which (for as much as they be poisons) of their owne nature, do inspire a certaine venimous vapour into the body. But to be brieue, you shall vnderstand that the whole effect consisteth in *hydrargyre*, or in some other matter of like nature vnto it, as is *Arsenicum*, *sandaracha*, and *cinaberis artificialis*, or *precipitatum*. These things be mixed with: *romatickes* to

- strengthen the inward parts, for otherwise they should be much offended by them and hurt; and the chiefe of these aromaticke things, be *Resine* and diuers kinds of gums. The first forme of this sort is this: *R. cinaberis. ʒ. iij. myrrhe. ʒ. iij. aloes hepatica. sandaracha arabum. styracis sicca. belzoni. ana. ʒ. iij.* These be beaten grossly, and thereof is made a powder, which is sprinkled vpon the fiery coales. The second forme is this: *R. cinaberis. ʒ. iij. sandarache grecorum. ʒ. iij. mirrhe. ʒ. iij. ligni aloes. ladanii. ammoniaci. ana. ʒ. i.* These are beate in grosse wise, and mixed with *terebinthine*, and thereof are made small bals to cast vpon the burning coales. The third forme of maligne Suffumigations in this: *R. cinaberis. ʒ. iij. auripigmenti. sandarache grecorum. ana. ʒ. ʒ. precipitati. ʒ. iij. thuris. aloes hepatica. mastiches. myrrhe electe. belzoni. storaci sicca. ladanii. ammoniaci. ana. ʒ. ʒ. miscentur.* Of these make a grosse powder which is strewed vpon the burning coales. And these be the descriptions of those Suffumigations, which haue a venomous faculty, and do expell by the malignity of their nature.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the cure by annointing with Quicke siluer.

Harmes following the vse of quicke siluer.

THE first way that experience found out to heale this disease in Italy, was by *argentum viuum*. For when this disease began to spread in that country, Chyrurgians attempting all things for the cure thereof, because they had read that Quicke siluer should be of great vertue against an old rebellious scab (and at the first comming in of this disease, it had alwayes vicers ioyned therewith) they thought good to try that *Argentum viuum*, and that with good successe, for some thereby gathered great riches. Many fell into *Marasmus* by this annointing, many lost their teeth after it: some had the palate of their mouth rotted away, some had the bones of their head eaten, which so doth continue still, one hath his mouth in like sort, another his face set awry thereby. For if it healeth not, it driueth the whole channell of vicious humors into the head: I haue taken in hand some, who haue bene annointed with this ointment three yeares before; and when they haue had sores (called *gumata*) vpon their skinnes, whereby the bones haue bene discovered, I haue seene the *Argentum viuum* gathered within the place: for this cause I commend not this medecine. I haue vsed it sometime when I could not attaine my purpose, by the said waies of curing called *Regie*. I saw once a young stripling that had *Morbum Gallicum*, vpon whom all the aforesaid *Regie curaciones* had bene practised, and he neuer the better therefore, yet he afterwards was cured by the waies of annointing. Wherefore in such as haue rebellious affects, and are to be despaired of, I vse it, when I haue proued all waies, and all sorts of medicines before. And when I vse it, I obserue this order. First, to purge the humour that doth abound, and if the humours be mixt, then all the body: I giue the *decoctum gnaici* by the space of ten or twelue daies, to strengthen the inward parts, as the head, braine, and liuer, and then the venomous medicine hurteth not so much. And after I haue thus prepared my patients, I annoint them in this sort. First three dayes if the symptomes do not appeare, then to foure, siue, fixe, yea ten dayes, till I see the symptomes do appeare, then I annoint no more. Of these symptomes,

some

some happen commonly very much, other some very little, it commonly happeneth that after annointing, the patients haue their palate swelled, and raw, their tongue growne bigger, so that sometime they can neither speake nor swallow downe any meate: their tongue is exceeding sore, by reason of great inflammation, and such abundance of corrupt and stinking spittle flowing vpon it: all their teeth are loose in their heade, and doe shake, sometime they loose some of them. Finally, such a quantitie of corrupt matter is gathered and brought to the mouth, that sometime the teeth are quite couered therewith. This medicine of his owne nature flieth altogether to the mouth, and there seeketh to breake forth. In this case you ought to appoint the patient a diet of things easie to be digested, as some cullaze of delicate fleshe. Let the drinke which he drinketh be pleasant, and if he hath vsed to drinke wine let him haue it, and let his diet be large enough, of broth, and good store of fine bread in it, and so nourish him largely and plentifully, for the euacuation which he sustaineth is great, so that I haue bene compelled to cut the *cephalica* veine for the swelling of the tongue.

CHAP. XXXII.

To correct the Symptomata which happeneth in the mouth in this way of curing

AND amongst other things this also is to be obserued, as much as is possible to draw out the *Hydragyon* which lieth soaked in the palate and the teeth. The way to doe it is this: Let the patient hold and keepe in his mouth, a ring of fine gold, and draw it forth twise or thrise, and if it chaunce to looke white, lay it on the coales and it will come to his colour as before, and then put it in, and so keepe it at his pleasure. But if the patient haue great paine, we vse to washe his mouth with milke. If the paine continue, I vse barley water and sirupe *myrtillu*, or *Diamoron*, or *Memphar*, and sometime wee vse *aqua solani*, or plantaine. Sometime wee vse of repersussive iuices, as *succus foliorum rubi*, *foliorum plantagini*, sometime of the iuice of vine leaues. Sometime we vse barley water, with *mel ros.* sirupe *myrti diamoron simplex*, to coure withal the mouth. Another *symptomata* yet followeth vpon this way of curing, and that is, immoderate laxe of the belly, for sometime the patient voideth by the siege pure blood, or strings of blood, as we see in *dysenteria*. In this case (if the patient his strength may well sustaine it) let vs not stay the fluxe, but moderate it, and cause that the excoriation of the bowels do not thereby increafe. First by ministring clisters of milke, wherein haue bene quenched red hore gaddes of Steele, or litle black flint stones, or by the injection of the iuice of prysan, pure milke. Sometime (the patient being weake) we come to the vse of astringent things, as *oleum myrtinum*, or *oleum omphacinum in clisteris*, also the iuice of plantaine, or of the hip brier. Sometime we put in our clisters also *bolus armenus*, or *lapis hematit.* Moreouer, we vse astringent waters, sometime we open a veine, sometime we vse ligatures and other means or waies of reuulsion: now if none of these *symptomata* shall come vpon them, we nourish them with good meates (as is said) and so end the cure.

Of the diuerſe compositions of ointments which be vſed
in this way of curing.

- 1 **T**Here be diuerſe kindes of vnguents: I will ſet forth but two of them. *Re.* *oleum petrolium*. $\mathfrak{z}$. *olei lumbricorum*, *olei ſpicanardi*, *olei tartari albi*, *olei turpenti*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. *unguentum dialthee*, *ungu. mercurionis*, *axungia toxicon*, *ſtorax liquida*, *turpentin* an. $\mathfrak{z}$. *axungia porcina*. *lb.* *ſarmoniace*, *opoponacu*, *bdelly*, *elenim*, *ladani*, *ſtyracu*, *calamintha helzoni*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. *tartari albi combuſte*, *aluminis combuſte*, an. $\mathfrak{z}$. *iiiij. triole Romani combuſte*. $\mathfrak{z}$. *quicke ſiluer*. *lb.* *i.* *minium*. $\mathfrak{z}$. *lb.* mixe all, and beate them in a mortar 2. hours at the leaſt, if it be three it is the better, without ceaſing. *Re.* *pinguedini galline*, *axungia porcine*, *axungia viſine*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. *iiiij. olei liliorum albi*, *olei laurini*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. *iiij. quicke ſiluer*. $\mathfrak{z}$. *viiiij.* In this compoſition, the fatres are not melted at the fire, but the ſilmes cleane taken out, they are beaten in a mortar verie diligently; then by little and little the quicke ſiluer is put into the mortar, & the medicine is wrought in the mortar, by the ſpace of two or three houres at the leaſt. Afterward put in theſe powders: *Thuris*, *maſtiche*, *mirrhe*, *ammoniari*, *ſtyracu*, *pulueris ſalua*, *pulueris ſteſchados*, *lythargiri*, *ceruſſe*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. *lb.* Of theſe is made a very fine powder, which by little and little is put into the mortar, continually beating till all be well incorporated. Thus theſe two ointments be made, the firſt is ſtrongeſt and beſt. If there be many vlcers, and at the fourth or fifth annointing, commonly the ſymptomata will appeare, they vſe no more annointing.
- 2

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of Precipitum giuen by the mouth.

Doſis.

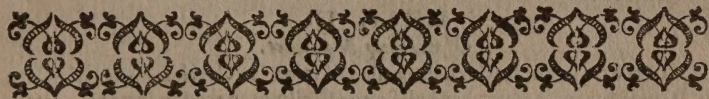
The doſis of
Turbiſh mine-
ralis.

Furthermore, you ſhall vnderſtand, that ſome practitioners vſe to cure this diſeaſe, not onely by annointing (whereof we haue ſpoken before) but by giuing precipitum by the mouth. Some giue the common precipitum ſo prepared: It is giuen in waight. *gr.* ſeu or tenne at the vttermoſt: they mixe this quantity with medicine to alter the colour, that it may not be knowne. Some mixe it with *aloes*, *mirrhe*, *maſtiche*, *gr. iiij.* Some mixe it with conſerues of roſes, ſome with *Mithridatum*, and ſuch like. But there is a more ſafe curing then this by *Turbiſh mineralis*, which the *Chymiſts* haue inuented in ſtead of precipitum, which I better allow of, and it is very dangerous for the better ſort of men: of the which I minde to ſpeake hereafter as followeth. Firſt, the vſe of *Turbiſh mineralis* is betwixt graines. *xviiiij.* and *xx.* graines, or *xxv.* graines at the moſt, after the ſtrength of the patient: they vſe it in this maner. Firſt they take the doſe as they themſelues beſt like, and mixe it with *Mithridatum* one part or two as they will: ſome mixe with it conſerue of roſes, ſo that there be not in all paſt $\mathfrak{z}$. *i.* or $\mathfrak{z}$. *iiij.* at the moſt. They make it into a ball: ſome make three or foure pills and gild them, other ſome roule it in powder of *Diambre* or ſuch like. The patients bodie muſt be prepared by ſome eaſie meane, and eate a light ſupper: let the patient receiue it early in the morning, after he hath receiued it, let him lie in his warme bed an houre at the leaſt, and ſleepe after it, if it be poſſible, then let him ariſe and apparell himſelfe warme, and ſit by the fire.

Let.

Let this chamber be very warme, so that he may sweate temperately. Within foure houres after he hath receiued the sayd bole, cause him to eate of some warme broth, and let him not come out of his chamber till he be throughly whole or cured. Let his diet be verie good warme meate. Two mornings next following giue him a little *Melhidatum* in clarified Mace ale, and cause him to sweate and houre or two in his bed. The third morning next following, giue him the Turbith as before, and let him keepe the same order aforelaid: and if his mouth grew not sore in the meane time, giue it him the third time in the third morning next following the second time: do so till his mouth be sore, then seeke in the former chapters to heale his mouth as is taught there. Thus haue you all the waies and meanes to helpe this pernicious grieve.

Libri sexti finis.



THE VII. BOOKE

TEACHETH THE FORME AND RVLE OF MAKING REMEDIES AND MEDICINES, WHICH OVR PHISITIONS DO

commonly vse at this day, and to know after what sort their
proportion and quantitie is distributed and noted,
with the names of each medicine.

CHAP. I.

Of Suppositaries.



Suppositarie is a remedie, whole, long, and round, which is put into the fundament, that it may auoyd the pricking, and moue & proueke the vertue expulsive to the auoiding of the excrements, compost, or ordure. We do vse Suppositaries especially for three causes: the first is for bringing out of ordure, which when it lyeth in the right bowell, it requireth no clyster. The second is, when one or two clysters haue bene put into the bodie, and do not come out againe at the fundament, as it doth chaunce in passions of the cholicke, then it is very perillous to put in other clysters. The third cause is, when the sicke person is so weake that he may better suffer a suppositarie then a clyster. A Suppositarie is made of honie that is boyled so long, till it doth waxe thicke and hard; oftentimes common salt is mixed with the hony: but if you will make it more sharpe and quicke, take salt gemme, the dounge of a mouse, agaricke, or else *hiera simplex*. so bring forth
R^x a suppositarie made of honie, which if you thinke so weake that it will not
the ordure.

*A Suppositarie
against the
wormes called
Lumbrici.*

move the compost or ordure, ad too these following. R^x. to make a common Suppositarie of sharpe honie, *sal armoniac.* ʒ. ʒ. or of salt getame, ʒ. ʒ. or of mouse doung, ʒ. ʒ. or ʒ. j. or of *hiera simplex.* ʒ. ʒ. Also make suppositaries of white sope, tallow of beastes, fat of bacon, candles, the stalkes of beets or mercurie, or their rootes annointed with oyle or honie, & strewed with powder of salt, specially for children & sucking babes, for whom one corn of salt put in is sufficient. R^x. thime, or *cyclaminum*, or wormewood, or sothernwood, stamped in a mortar. ʒ. j. or ʒ. of boyled honie so much as sufficeth, and make a suppositarie. Suppositaries are good against the palsey, made of pellitory, pepper, napy (that is, a kind of rapes called a nauew) centorie, birumen, that is, a kinde of lime, the root of *panax*, hysope, *galbanum*, mixed with dry rosin, or pitch & wax. Let a suppositarie be round, & 6. 7. or 8. fingers in length. We do vse no suppositaries to them which haue the hemorrhoids, or any other swellings in the fundament.

CHAP. II.

Of making Nodulus.

NODULI be those which are called of *Aetius* in Greeke *πρόσθιτα*, they are good for thole which haue clefts and swellings in the fundament. These do auoid and take away the hardnesse of suppositaries, because sometime we are compelled to vse flockes in their steds: their matter is the same that suppositaries be. R^x. flockes mingled or beaten with honie, and put into the tuell: and truly that *Nodulus* is best and sweetest which is made of salt and the white of an egge in cloth or wooll, made in the forme of a beane, and put into the tuell with a threed hanged at the end, that it may be drawne out againe.

CHAP. III.

Of making Pessaries.

*To cease in-
flammations.*

To dry vlcers.

A Pessarie is a medicine which is made of soft wooll, or such like thing, and it is put into the priuities of women. The figure or shape of it is like a suppositarie, but that it is longer & thicker, because it must be put into the womb. It is made of waxe, or of cloth or cotton, or of lint first dipped and wet in ointment, or in a medicine meete and conuenient for the cure. Afterward wind them in silke, and hang a threed thereon, that it may be drawne out the more easily. It is put into the tuell & into the wombe to cease the inflammations & vlcers of them both. Priuarly it is put into the womb to prouoke the menstruis & the secūdine, or to stop immoderat flux of mēstruis, or to mollifie the hardnesse of the wombe, or to cure other diseases of the wombe. R^x. a pessarie dipped and wet in *unguentum rosatum*, and put it into the place. To this sometime is added *opium*, that is, where the inflammation causeth great paine. *Opium* by his coldnesse maketh astonied, therefore his quantitie ought to be small, as from halfe a scruple to a scruple, and let it be holden a litle time, lest through his coldnesse the partes which are sinewie be hurt. It therefore may be holden halfe an houre. R^x. a pessarie dipped and wet in *unguentum pompholygos*, put it into the tuell or into the matrice that is grieved. Pessaries to bring forth menstruis are made otherwise. The medicines are taken in silke cloth, that is as thinne as sindall, and let the forme and fashion be thicker, which may bring out

our with his power, as thus: *Rx. hierapicra composita. ʒ. j. of euphorbium, and the apple of colocintida. ana. ʒ. ʒ. mixe them and make a pessarie. Annoint it with aleum nardinum, or with the iuice of herbes that prouoke menstruis. Such pessaries be made oftentimes of brayed herbes prouoking menstruis: as, Rx. mercurie, neppe, or mugwort, or fothernewood, M. ʒ. bray them, and roule them in silke, and make a pessarie. If the menstruis haue endured with swelling and paine, first make a bath, for that doth mollifie and moist: the paunch ought first to be emptied, and the bladder to be vnloaden, because the matrice is in the midst betweene them: for these being filled, and pressing the matrice, the menstruis for ouermuch straightnesse, may be retained and made slowe in coming out. If immoderate menstruis doe flowe, doe thus: *Rx. a pessarie wet in vnguentum comitisse, and put it into the matrice: or thus: Rx. of plantaine, or knotgrasse, or brier, of mittle, or other that can stop menstruis, M. ʒ. bray them, and roll them in silke, and make a pessarie. Pessaries mollifying may be made of the marrow of a calfe, and a hart, of rosin, terebinthine, fatnesse of a goose, or porke, and of gumme armoniacke dissolued in water.**

To bring forth
menstru.

To mollifie the
hardnesse of
the wombe.

CHAP. IIII.

Of Clusters or Enema.

A Clyster or *Enema*, is a kind of medicine the which is cast and put into the bowels by the fundament, liquide and thin, and it is profitable for eight things. 1. To mollifie the wombe restrained with hardnesse. 2. To prouoke the violence detestable and astonied. 3. To auoide any kinde of humors. 4. To put away ventosities. 5. To cease dolours and paines. 6. To bind and restrain the bellic. 7. To make cleane vlcers of the guttes or bowels. 8. To make sound the same. There may be also added to alter or chaunge, as here followeth: *Rx. of lettuce, scarioll, rostrum porcinum, leaues of fallow. ana. M. j. floures of violets, and nenuphar, of each a little handfull: make a decoction of one pound. In the straining, let one ounce of Cassia fistula bee dissolued, oyle of violettes, and of nenuphar, ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. camphire, ʒ. j. and make a cluster. Rx. the foure kindes of remollitiues, or mollificatiues, pellitorie of the wall. ana. M. ʒ. the rootes of the mallows called althea, and white lillies. ana. ʒ. j. seede of flaxe, fenugreeke and anise. ana. ʒ. ʒ. of fat figges. iiij. make a decoction of ʒ. j. in weight. In the straining thereof dissolue therein of Cassia fistula, mel violatum, and fresh butter, ana. ʒ. j. oyle of violets. ʒ. iiij. and make a cluster. If you will make a cluster mollificatiue lacking the things aforesaid, doe thus: *Rx. oyle made warme, ʒ. j. and make thereof a cluster, or thus: Rx. oyle and fresh butter, ana. ʒ. ʒ. and make a cluster. Rx. the foure remollitiues. ana. M. j. seede of Carthamus. ʒ. j. of anise, fennell, and careum. ana. ʒ. iiij. and make a decoction of ʒ. j. and in the straining dissolue hiera simplex, or benedicta, or diaphenicon, or electuarium de succo, or electuarium indi maioris, ʒ. ʒ. of clarified honie, or iuice of squill. ʒ. j. or common salt. ʒ. ij. or salt gemme, ʒ. j. or ʒ. ʒ. Many do ad to clusters. ʒ. j. of the iuice of beetes, which doe moue and grieue the belly, or iuice of beetes and colewortes, ana. ʒ. ʒ. of common salt, ʒ. ij. or ʒ. j. which bite and gnaw the belly, or lesse, but the iust waight must be as you coniecture to be easie or hard for the sicke. Also such a clyster expulsiue the dete-**

A cluster mol-
lificatiue.

A cluster pro-
uoking & ma-
king void the
violence asto-
nied.

*A clister auoi-
ding humors.*

*A clister to put
& drine away
ventosities.*

*A clister to
ease paines.*

stable facultie or matter, may very well be made onely of honic, or hony with iuyce of *squilla*, or other things decoct. And if that the vertue expulsiue be assonied and dull through the hardnesse of the ordure, the make a clister partly of mollificatiues, & partly of expulsiues aforesaid. Clisters which auoid humors are made so, that they varie according as the humors differ. For when the humour is grosse and cold, euill disposing the bowels, let it be made thus: *R.* the foure remolitiues. ana. *M. j.* cammomill, the tops of dill, origan, calamint, sothernewood, ana. *M. ss.* anise, *careum*, comin, ammeos, seseleos, ana. *℥. ss.* berries of lawrell, seede of rewe. ana. *℥. ij.* make a decoction. In the straining dissolue *catholicon*, and *diaphenicon*, ana. *℥. ss.* or *diaphenicon*, or *benedicta*, *℥. vj.* or of both, *℥. ss.* of red sugar, and *mel anthos*. ana. *℥. iij.* or *℥. ss.* oyle of dill and cammomill, ana. *quar. ss.* or oyle of rewe *℥. j.* oyle of dill, *℥. ij.* or oyle of lillies, *℥. ij.* make a clister. If ventositie be present, adde calmatiuues, if paine be present, take a medicine releasing griefe by prouoking sleepe, as hereafter shall appeare by examples. If a cholericke & gnawing humor must be brought out with a clister, then let the clister be made of such things as will auoid that humour, and mixe it partly with such helps as doe cease inflammation, as thus: *R.* mallowes, bismallowes, violets, pellitorie of the wall, endiue, succorie, lettuce, purslaine, ana. *M. j.* and if there be so much neede of coldnesse, take the foure great cold seedes brused. ana. *℥. iij.* or *℥. ss.* of whole barley, *p. j.* make a decoction of one pound. In the straining dissolue *castia fistula* and common sugar. ana. *℥. j.* the white of one egge or two, oyle of roses, or of violets, or common oyle, *quar. j.* make a clister. If such a passion cometh of a melancholike humour, make it thus: *R.* the foure mollificatiues, the leaues of buglosse and borage, the tops of dill, *lupuli*, and fumitorie. ana. *M. j.* melilor and cammomill, ana. *M. j.* seede of *carthamum*, and polipodie of the oke, ana. *℥. j.* annise, and fennell, ana. *℥. ss.* make a decoction. In the straying dissolue *hiera russi*, which is not in vse, or *confectio hamech*, *℥. ss.* or *catholicon*, *℥. j.* red sugar, or *mel rosarum*, or violets, *℥. j.* oyle of dill, lillies, and violettes, ana. *℥. j.* make a clister. *R.* mallowes, bismallowes, pellitorie of the wall, origan, calamint, cammomill, the tops of dill, ana. *M. j.* annise, *careum*, comin and fennell, ana. *℥. ss.* or *℥. vj.* of lawrell berries. *℥. iij.* or *℥. ss.* seede of rewe. *℥. ij.* or *ij.* and make a decoction. In the straying dissolue *benedicta*, or *diaphenicon*, or *electuarium indi maioru*, which we do not vse here. *℥. ss.* confection of lawrell berries, *℥. iij.* or *℥. ss.* red sugar, *℥. j.* oyle of dill, cammomill and rewe, ana. *℥. j.* make a clister. Into these clisters which put away ventosities, oyle of nuts is wholesome to put in, and also (as *Galen* saith) *vinum maluaticum cretense* may well be mixed with such a clister as is aforesaid. The signes of ventosities and winde contained in the bowels, be often farting and noise in the guttes, because it chaunceth as often as burbles are broken in the bowels. Bowels wherein be burbles (as *Galen* teacheth *Particula 2. Aphorism. strangulati nondū mortui, &c.*) be caused of aire shut and enclosed with the humour. Clisters to cease paines are made many waies, for if the cause be a hore gnawing humour, the example is shewed afore by colde things, where he intreateth of a clister to auoide humours; if the paine be of a cold cause, take the same that is giuen against ventositie last before: if the paine doe come of moe causes, make a clister of
many

manie of those things, which are meete for the causes; and when the cause of the paine is not knowne, make it thus: R^x. floures of cammomill, melilot, the toppes of dill, ana. pug. ij. make a decoction in milke. In the straining dissolue therein white sugar, because the red is biting and pricking. ℞. iij. whites of egges ij. oyle of dill and cammomill, ana. quar. ℞. and make a clyster. Or thus, R^x. oyle of cammomill, dill and violets. ana. ℞. iij. cast it in with a clyster, and when we want such oyle, we make it of quar. iij. or ℞. j. of oile oliue. R^x. milke sodden, quar. iij. or ℞. j. *amylum sine amygdum*, halfe a dramme, or a dramme at the most, gumme arabique, or Tragacanth, or both, a little burnt. ana. halfe a dramme, or a dramme, or two drammes, bolearmoniacke, and *Sanguis draconis*. ana. ℞. ij. oyle of roses and cammomill. ana. one ounce and a halfe: make a clyster. R^x. the iuyces of plantaine, *Arnoglossa*, that is, a kinde of plantaine, knotgrasse and purslaine: let these iuyces be cleansed either by seething or residence, take of all these, or of one of these, as much as sufficeth for a clyster, adding of the powder aforesaid, and with those oiles make a clyster. Note that when there is need, then you may make clysters of those herbes sodden; or of the waters distilled out of them, adding rose water, as: R^x. the water of *Arnoglossa*, of plantaine, of roses, of purslaine, of knotgrasse, as much as sufficeth, and dissolue some of the aforesaid things therein. It is to be noted, that sometime there are put into the aforesaid decoctions, seedes and fruites that be stipicke, to make harde, and to binde, so that they lacke sharpenesse, because else they would pricke, prouoke and expulse, therefore we can mixe together the seedes of mirte, forrell, of purslaine, plantaine, cypresse, *cauda equina*, horf-raile, and such like. Moreouer note, that oyle must neuer be put into clysters, if the bowels be vlcerate as they be in *Dysenteria*, (which is a fluxe in the bodie) yet many do neglect that, not knowing that oyle is an enemy to vlcers, (as *Galen* intreateth *tertio & quarto Methodi*.) Truly wine is a speciall friend, the creame or curde of a hare or of a goate, in weight ℞. iij. *Sonbus*, proynes, medlars, quinces, ana. ℞. ij. more or lesse, do restraine and binde. R^x. of whole barley p. ij. of red roses and cammomill, and of plantaine if paine be present, ana. p. j. make a decoction. In the straining dissolue therein *mel rosarum*. ℞. j. the white of one egge or two, make a clyster. Such a clyster is to be giuen alwaies before clysters restraining, binding and consolidating, by meanes whereof the thing is made prompt and easie. A clyster consolidating is made when the filthinesse of the bowels is not purged and tried out, because that is deadly: and therefore there needeth no clyster, but that prognostication is sufficient. R^x. of the iuice of plantaine, *Arnoglossa*, and purslaine. ana. ounces three, of bolearmoniacke, *Sanguis Draconis*, and *Amylum* ana. dramme one and a halfe: or the tallow of a male or female goate one dramme, or one ounce and a halfe, and make a clyster. And because goates tallow cannot well dissolue, but almost alwaies it congealeth and hardeneth together in the bowelles of the sicke. Therefore it may be and ought to be dissolved with a litle oyle of roses, and then it neede not be feared for vlcers. Also ointments consolidating (as is *unguentum album*) sometime are made liquide and mixed, and specially when the vlcers be nigh, or in the great guttes. Sometime in the steade of iuyces may clysters be made of milke verie well for his whey portion, which

A clyster restraining.

A clyster profitable against a hot humour gnawing in the bowels.

A clyster to scour and cleanse vlcers in the guttes.

A clyster consolidating, that is, making solid of vlcers.

doth restraine and consolidate. Oftentimes both in these and in restraining clysters, the whites of egges hard sodden are dissolued. And thus finisheth the making and vse of clysters or *Enema*.

CHAP. V.

Of making Syrupes.

A Syrupe is of medicines, a iuyce with sugar or honic molten therein, decoct and boyled vnto the measure of that sugar. Practitioners do put a double vnderstanding in sirupes, that is, *simplex*, which is called vsuall; and *compositum*, which is called magistrall. Simples or vsuals be these, syrups of violets, of roses, of endiue, of nenuphar, of maydenhaire, of wormewood, of mynts, *Oximel squilliticum*, syrupe of eupatorie, of *Epithimum*, and of *lyxantijs*. They are called simples, as well because they consist in one simple medicine, as also because they are ordained for one sicknesse and one vse. *Syrupus compositus* which is called magistrall, is compounded of diuerse medicines, being good for sundry diseases, as in example: if any man compound together syrupe of wormewood and stachados being taken in euen portion or quantitie, there would come thereof a sirupe good for the stomack, because of the wormewood, and good for the head because of the stachados. A Sirupe is good and profitable to digest humours before a purgation, that they may the easier and better obey the purgation. Therefore they are vsed of many Phisitians to be giuen before medicines, although we haue not read that old practitioners did obserue it, but they did commit the digestion of humours wholly to nature. Looke the comment. *Aphorism. 9. Lib. 2.* when any man will purge the bodie, it behoueth to make it flowing. Truly *Hippocrates* would do thus, saying, that the concoct and digest matter ought to be healed & moued, and not the crude and raw matter. And *Galen ad Glauconem libro primo*, speaking of the cure of *Tertiana Notha*, would not haue wormewood to be giuen till the seventh day. Therefore it doth appeare for a truth, that sirupes ought rather to be giuen for the humours left after a purgation, then for their digestion and coction. But many doe obserue and vse, that humours being grosse and clammy, and viscous, may by sirupes that do attenuate, cut, and deuide, be preparate and made easie to auoiding and purging; they call this digesting of humours. Cold and cleauing humours are preparate with sirupes that be hore, cutting and scouring, as to digest rheumie matter, such as is a feuer quotidian, and to prepare it to the purging. *Rx.* the five rootes appetitiue, made cleane and tempered in vineger foure houres, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . or $\mathfrak{z}$. iiij . or the rindes of the five rootes, organ, calamint, hysope, betonie, and germander, ana. $\mathfrak{M}$. β . of anise and fennell, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . of raisins the stones picked out, $\mathfrak{z}$. iiij . both the stachados, ana. p. j . make a decoction. In the straining, dissolue of good honic quartes iiij . of white sugar, $\mathfrak{z}$. iiij . make a syrupe perfectly sodden. Minister three spoonfull with double as much of water of liquorice, or with pytan, or with water of raisins or anise. Humours that be moueable and thin, must be preparate to the auoiding and purging by syrups that do make thicke and let the mouing, which humours if they be caried to the waies of expulsion, or be kept & contained in the wayes and conduites, by which an apt and readie expulsion may

A syrupe digesting of reumy matter.

A syrupe against thinne and moueable humors.

be

be made of them, then they may be avoided without any preparatiue. But if those humours be restrained and kept out of the places aforesayd, then they shall be rectified and remedied with colde sirupes, the making whereof doth followe.

Rx. sirupes of purcelaine, sorrell, endiue, nenuphar, of rybes, of barberies, of *agresta*, of quinces, of roses, take of one of these or mo, ℥.vj. minister it with double as much of well water sodden: there may also conueniently be made a iulep in this wise: Rx. sirupes of roses, purslaine and sorrell, ana. ℥.j.℥. or ℥.ij. water of roses, *Arnoglossa*, succorie or endiue, or purcelaine, or sorrell, ana. ℥.ij. water sodden or burnt, specially if fluxe of the bellie be present. ℥.vj. make a Iulep clarified, and aromatized with ℥.ij. of cinamon elect. Furthermore, if those humours doe not make and cause fluxe of the bellie, but being inflamed do begin a feauer, then neither sirupes stipticke nor waters are to be vsed, but rather cold sirupes lacking stipticitie, as be sirupes of endiue, purcelaine, violets, of *nymphaea* called water lillies, of maidenhaire. But if we do suppose that there ought to be a greater extinguishing and quenching, that the rotten matter may be driuen out the more easily, we do vse cold sharpe sirupes, as be *Syrupus acetosus simplex*, which is put in both causes, as well hote as cold. Also of *accharum simplex*, and *Syrupus de acetositate citri*, and of lymons, which if the fluxe *diarrhea* be present, being raised and caused of such hote humours, then sirupes that be acetose and sharpe are not to be ministred, because they excoriate, rase, and slay, but sirupes of ribes, barberies, quinces, and iuyce of sorrell may be suffered and giuen, because they haue but meane sharpenesse and acerositie. But against hote humors, make potions or sirupes magistral in this wise: Rx. Endiue that is young, or new set, and not growne long, wash it not, *adiantum*, maidenhaire, succorie, purslaine, lettuce, singreen, scarioll, plantaine, of all, or of some of them, two or three, ana. Mij. the foure great cold seedes, ana. ℥.ij. the roote of succorie, the roote of sorrell, of gramen and nightshade, that is, the lesse morrell, called *Solatrium*. ana. halfe an ounce, or ℥.ij. make a decoction, to which may be added the iuice of the herbes afore written, cleansed so much, and halfe so much, or halfe as much more as the third part of the decoction. In one pound of the straining dissolue sugar taberzes, ℥.vj. of wine of pomegranates, ℥.j.℥. of vineger, ℥.℥. make a sirupe clarified and aromatized with ℥.ij. of white saunders, or red, or both, ana. ℥.j. But if thou wilt make the sirupe perfectly concoct and sodden, adde too sugar, and let it be sodden to the perfection that it may be kept. The vse and ministration must be with double as much of some liquor, as water sodden, water of liquorice, or the water of some of the herbes aforesaid distilled; yet I doe not much praise and allow the vse of distilled waters. But if the sirupe be not perfectly boyled (as is shewed in the first example) it must be giuen by it selfe, and without the administration of any thing else, neither shall the iuices be put in, which should be put in, in a sirupe perfectly sodden. Like formes and vses may be made of sirupes, rubifying or digesting cold matter. Sirupe of *E-pithimum*, sirupe of fumitorie, which is made two waies: one way is of the onely decoction or iuice of fumitorie, and then it is *Syrupus de fumiterre simplex*: another way is according to the description of *Mesua*, and such a sirupe hath mi-

A sirupe so
make humors
grosse & thicke.

Note.

A sirupe for
melancholic
humors.

rabolanes, *Cassia*, and many other things: which sirupe is called compound. For that cause, sirupe of buglosse, sirupe of borage, sirupe of harts-tongue, which openeth and looseth the stoppings of the spleene, and sirupe of violets, because it moisteneth very much.

The simple medicines wherewith these sirupes are compounded be these: Borage and buglosse, fumitorie, *Lapulus*, *Epithimum* and such like, that do helpe and aide the digestion of such an humor. Out of the aforesaid things may be made sirupes, potions, and luleps, decoct and boyled to the satisfying of these intentions and meanings. Oftentimes there be made sirupes laxatiue for the purging and auoiding of matter that is rheumie and filthie, and also melancholike matter, when long continuing diseases be bred of them, partly to the digestion of raw matter or humors, and partly to the auoiding and purging of humors which be rotten, or halfe rotten, as is in long feuers.

A sirupe laxatiue against reumie matters and feuers Nothe.

R. the roote of *Apium*, fennell and percelly scraped and made cleane. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. of hysope, origan and calamint. ana. M. β of seede of *Carythammum*. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. greene polipodie of the oke. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. of anise, fennell, and dill. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . of liquorice scraped, $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. of raisins the stones pulled out. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . of the three cordiall floures ana. p. j. make a decoction strained to $\mathfrak{ss}$ j. or $\mathfrak{ss}$ j. β . in the which infuse new trochiskes of agaricke. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . leaues of scene cleansed. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. after ten houres make a straying, wringing it strongly, whereto adde sirupe of violets, *sirupi de Bizanijs*, and white sugar. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. make a sirupe perfectly sodden and aromatize with $\mathfrak{z}$. j. of cinamon elect, and with one sirupe. $\mathfrak{D}$. j. *Chilolaloes*. The dose of this sirupe by meanes of the things that are put into it, may be $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . which also the fourth or fifth day, may be giuen with double as much of hydromell, that is, water and hony sodden together, or *aqua mulsa*, or of some other decoction. By like meanes may the laxatiues entring into this present sirupe be increased or diminished, by reason of the quantitie making of the sirupe, for this present sirupe is ordained for 6. or 7. or mo doses, therefore the forme & fashion of the proportions being kept, it may be made for 1. 2. 3. or mo doses. Moreouer by like reason a sirupe laxatiue is made, for matter cholericke and filthie (as one would say) virelline, the which causeth feauers hard to be eradicate and taken away.

A sirupe laxatiue against filthy cholericke matter.

R. the roots of *Apium*, and of fennell cleansed, and scraped, and tempered in vineger one nights space. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ β of hysope, maiden haire, *Adiantum*, *Politricum*, some call it wal-ferne, harts-tongue, endiue, succorie. ana. M. β . or M. j. the 4. great cold seedes brused ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. or $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. raisins the stones pulled out, $\mathfrak{z}$. β . the three cordiall floures. ana. p. j. make a decoction, in the which infuse agarick newly made in trochiskes. $\mathfrak{z}$. vj. the leaues of scene made cleane. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. in the straining dissolue sirupe of maidenhaire and violets. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. of white sugar. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. make a sirupe perfectly boyled, putting in the end of the straying of it. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . of rewbarbe elect infused as it ought to be, which thing after it be strained, let it boile on a soft fire without flame or smoke vnto the perfection of the decoction: the dose of it is. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. or. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . with double as much of the decoction of endiue, and succorie, or liquorice, or with double as much of whey made of goates milke. This sirupe is for five or sixe doses. And if the first dose will not satisfie your intent, then you must dissolue somewhat therein that

bath

hath power to purge the humour that thou wouldest haue brought out : as for example. R^x of the sirupes aforesaid. ℥ j. β. of whey made of goates milke. ℥.iiij. make a dole. And if thereof do not follow the effect that you looke for, adde thereto either of *cassia fistula*. ℥. β. or of *diaprunis laxative*. ℥. j. or ℥.ij. or *diaphenicon*. ℥. j. β. or also some rewbarbe. You may also do the same in the example of the sirupe made to auoid theume.

R^x of the iuices of *lupuli* (that is) hops, and of fumitorie, but it is vnpleasant, of buglosse, of borage, and of sweet apples cleansed. ana. ℥.ij. or iiij. let them be twise cleansed, either by decoction & clarifying, or by residence of Greene polipodie of the oke ℥. ij. or iiij. of fat Tamarinds. ℥. j. *Epithimum Cretensis* put in the end of the decoction, ℥.ij. of *adiantum*, harts-tongue and the three cordiall floures. ana. p. j. make a decoction strained to quarts. iij. in the which infuse the leaues of sene made cleane. ℥.iiij. make a straining, and mixe it with the aforesayd iuyces: afterward adde thereto sirupe of violets. ℥.vj. sirupes of buglosse, and sugar taberzet ana. ℥.iiij. make a sirupe perfectly sodden, and aromatizate with ℥. j. of cinnamon, and. ℥. j. of white ginger scraped. The dose is two ounces with water of buglosse, or hops, or fumitorie, or whey made of milke. And thus much of making sirupes.

A sirupe against melancholie.

CHAP. VI.

Of making Iuleps.

IULEP doth not much differ from a sirupe, but that it is lesse boiled then a sirupe is, and because also it is made without the permixtion of any other decoction with it, as sirupes are wont to haue when they are made. Iuleps are made either of water of infusion or distillation, or else of the iuice of some simple medicine, as thus. R^x of the water of infusion of roses, or the water of infusion of violets. ℥. v. sugar. ℥. iiij. boile it easily and make a Iulep: minister it with twise or thrise as much of sodden water made cold againe. Or thus, R^x water of roses ℥. viij. of sugar. ℥. iiij. boile them easily and make a Iulep. Or thus: R^x the iuice of roses, or the iuice of violets. ℥. vj. sugar. ℥. iiij. boile them easily and make a Iulep. Likewise Iuleps may be made of other things, that do either make warme or hote, or that do open and loose, or that do restraine and bind. But yet Phisitions commonly do call a sirupe, dissolved in sodden water, a Iulep: saying, R^x sirupe of roses, and the sirupe of violets, or sirupe of maidenhaire, or of any other sirupe. ℥. iiij. of sodden water. ℥. β. mixe them together, and make a Iulep.

CHAP. VII.

Of Dole, sine Potio.

DOLIS, otherwise called *Potus* or *Potio*, is a medicine laxatiue dissolved in some kind of liquor, and giuen in drinke. There be of this many differences, because of the diuersitie of humours that they voide and purge. The simple medicines do purge and bring forth rheume or fleame, as be these, *Agaricke*, *Turbit*, *Carthamus*, *colocymith*, and other often sought out by *Mesusus*. The compounds be *Diaphanicon*, in forma opiate, *Diacarthami* in the forme of lozenges. *Electuarium de Citro*, *Electuarium Indum maius & minus*, *Benedicta*,

and *Hiera simplex*, *Hiera composita* and such like. But these be compounded, not that they auoid only one humor alone, but being mixed with another humor, as choler mixt with fleame or melancholy. Medicines are ministred in diuerse formes and fashions. As first in the forme of a potion, for one only dose, or for one time, in the forme of a bole, whereof shall be spoken hereafter, in the forme of an electuarie liquide, as *opiate*, whole in forme, as lozenges, in the forme of sirupes of iuleps. Also in the forme of powder & pills. *Rx. diaphanicon* ʒ.β. or ʒ. vj. if the sicke be strong, dissolue it with water of the decoction of liquorice, raisins and annise, as much as sufficeth. Make a dose with sirupe of violets ʒ. vj. or ʒ. j. or dissolue it with common straining, and make a dose, or dissolue it with hidromell, or dissolue it with certaine distilled waters, as waters of hops, buglosse, succory, or such like, or dissolue it with the decoction or broth of a chicken, or with the whey of milke, or thus: *Rx.* the three cordiall floures, ana. one handfull, of proynes damascene, *Iuiubarum* and *Sebesten*, ana. foure in number, liquorice scraped ʒ. j.β. annise ʒ. j. make a decoction strained for one dose: in the which dissolue *Diaphanicon* ʒ.β. or ʒ. vj. sirupe of violets ʒ. j. & make a dose. If you will adde to it another electuary laxatiue, take of one a quantity away, & adde to as much of another, as where it is sayd, take of *Diaphanicon* drams vj. you may say, take of *Diaphanicon* and *Carthamum*, ana. three drams, and so likewise of other.

The forme of
a potion.

The forme of a
potion or dose,
whose decoction
doth auoid cer-
taine rheume
and fleame.
Simples to a-
uoid choler.
Compounds.

Rx. Raisins the stones pulled out ʒ.β. seede of *Carthamum* and polipodie of the oke, ana. ʒ.β. or ʒ. vj. of annise, fennell, and liquorice scraped, ana. ʒ. j.β. leaues of hyslope ʒ. j. make a decoction, in the which infuse agaricke newly trochiscate ʒ. j. or ʒ. iij. or ʒ. j.β. In the straining dissolue *Diacarthanum*, or *diaphanicon*, or *Benedicta* ʒ. iij. or ʒ.β. sirupe of violets ʒ. j. and make a dose. These things auoide choler: iuyce of roses, violers, Tamarindes, manna, *diagredion*, that is, scammonie preparete, *Psyllium*, rewbarbe and myrabolanes. *Cassia fistula* purgeth as well choler as rheume: iuyce of roses and ireos do bring forth thin choier and yellow water. Compounds to auoid choler are these, *Electuarium de succorofarum*, *diaprunis laxatiuum*, *diaprunis simplex*, trochiskes of violets which be seldome in vse.

The forme of a
potion loosning
and resoluing
choler.

Rx. of fat Tamarinds ʒ. j. the three cordiall floures. ana. p.β. liquorice scraped ʒ. j.β. of proynes damascene, number. vj. make a decoction in a little quantitie of water, in the which let the Tamarindes be strongly wrong out. In the straining dissolue *Cassia fistula* that is new ʒ. j. or ʒ. x. make a dose. In the like decoction you may dissolue ʒ.β. or ʒ. vj. of *diaprunis simplex*, with ʒ. j.β. or ʒ. ij of *diaprunis laxatiue*. If it be feared that *diagredion* will do hurt, and if the sicke be rich, in the stead of *Diaprunis laxatiue* may be dissolued ʒ. j. or ʒ. iij. or ʒ. j.β. of rewbarbe. Take heed and note, that such a potion is good in cholericke feuers, and in those feuers, in which the frensie is feared, and truly it is excellent good, for by it is eschued the auersion, and also the refrigeration and cooling. In the stead of this present decoction and colature, medicines laxatiue may be dissolued in a common decoction, or with water of fruites, or with hidromell, or with waters distilled, either with endiue, succorie, hops, or with the broth of a chicken, or with the whey of milke. *Rx.* raisins the stones picked out ʒ. iij. liquorice scraped, and annise seedes, ana. ʒ. j. proynes damascene

The forme of a
common dose,
in the begin-
ning of chole-
ricke feuers,
especially in
scorbutic feuers.

damascene, in number vj, Tamarinds. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{ss}$. the three cordiall floures, succory, young set endiue. ana. $M.\mathfrak{j}$. make a decoction boiled for one dose, in the which dissolue new *Cassia fistula*. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{j}$. or $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{vj}$. after the straining, infuse. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{j}$. or $\mathfrak{D}.\mathfrak{iiij}$. or $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{j}$. $\mathfrak{ss}$. of rewbarbe elect as it ought to be, of sirupe of violets. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{ss}$. or $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{j}$. make a dose. Giue in the morning before dinner 5. or 6. houres, on that day he is least afflicted. If choler be mixed with fleame, by reason of that mixture, let such things as do loosen choler, and such things as dissolue rheume be mixed together. Spikenard which is wont alwayes to be ioyned with rewbarbe, is vnpleasant to the belly, for it looseth oppilations and stopping vehemently. Also it prouoketh vomit, and in women with child, it prouoketh menstruis strongly. Therefore many do thinke that it ought not to be mixed with rubarbe in medicines that are giuen to women with child, or to those which be apt to vomite. For that cause if it be mixed, 3. or 4. graines are sufficient for. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{j}$. of rubarbe. For delicate persons which do abhorre all medicines, make a dose vnder the forme of a sirupe for two or three times, or for one dose after this sort, especiall for Tertians exquisite and deinty. $\mathcal{R}$. endiue young set, and succory. ana. $M.\mathfrak{ss}$. the three cordiall floures. ana. $p.\mathfrak{ss}$. liquorice scraped. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{j}$. $\mathfrak{ss}$. proynes damascene vj, in number, fat Tamarinds. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{6}$. annise. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{ss}$. make a decoction boiled to $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{iiij}$. or else you may make a decoction for one dose, in which dissolue sirupe of violets, and endiue. ana. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{vj}$. or $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{ss}$. of white sugar. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{j}$. the wringing and straining of $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{ij}$. of rubarbe elect, infused as it ought to be without spikenard, make a long sirupe, that is as it were in the forme of an *Apozema* (which is a decoction so called of the Greekes, and vsed of them in stead of our sirupes.) Let it be boiled vpon the coles without any smoke long time together, wringing the rubarbe strongly, being bound in a peece of linnen cloth, clarifie it, and aromatizate it, and make a dose of $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{j}$. $\mathfrak{ss}$. it may be multiplied for two or three doses (the proportion of all being kept and obserued.) But if you will make a sirupe to last long, seeth it to the perfection, and of that sirupe minister. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{j}$. $\mathfrak{ss}$. or $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{ij}$. with whey of milke, or with the decoction that serueth for thy purpose. Also you may adde some scene in the infusion, especially if you thinke choler adust doth raigne, or if you desire a more full and quicke effect of the medicine. $\mathcal{R}$. of young set endiue, of succory, of *Adiantum*, and of harts-tongue. ana. $M.\mathfrak{j}$. the foure great cold seedes. ana. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{iiij}$. the seede of *Carrhamum*. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{j}$. $\mathfrak{ss}$. polipodie of the oke. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{ij}$. fat Tamarinds. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{j}$. $\mathfrak{ss}$. seede of endiue, scarioll, and liquorice scraped. ana. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{ij}$. of raisins the stones picked out. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{ij}$. proynes damascene. 12. in number, the three cordiall floures. ana. $p.\mathfrak{j}$. make a decoction of $\mathfrak{ss}.\mathfrak{j}$. or $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{viij}$. in the which infuse the leaues of scene cleansed. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{j}$. $\mathfrak{ss}$. agaricke newly trochischate. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{j}$. In the straining of the decoction dissolue sirupe of violets, and maidenhaire sirupe. ana. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{iiij}$. white sugar. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{ij}$. make a sirupe boiled vpon a lent fire, without smoke, putting into it the straining of $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{vj}$. of rubarbe elect, infused as it ought to be, make a sirupe perfectly boiled and aromatizate with. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{ss}$. of cinamon, and $\mathfrak{D}.\mathfrak{ij}$. of red saunders, reserve it in an earthen or glasse vessell. The dose of the aforesayd sirupe shall be the fourth part of it (that is to say. $\mathfrak{z}.\mathfrak{ij}$.) the which may be dissolued with whey of goates milke, or water of the decoction of the common colature, or with the waters of the decoctions of distillations of succory or endiue. But *Igorrem* doth

*A dose vnder
the forme of a
sirupe for deli-
cate folke.*

*A dose against
bastardly fe-
uers, especialy
Tertians.*

not allow distilled waters. And if the aforesayd dose do not sufficiently moue the belly and cause it to be soluble enough, an infusion may conveniently be added to the second dose. ℞.ij. or ℥.j. of rubarbe elect, or some *Diaprunis laxative*, or *Electuarium de succo rosarum*, as in example. ℞. of the aforesaid sirupe. ℥.ij. the straying of two scruples of rubarbe elect, or *Diaprunis laxative*. ℥.j. ℞. or ℥.ij. of whey made of milke. ℥.ij. or as much as is sufficient, and make a dose. It is to be noted that the aforesaid sirupe ought rather to be giuen and ministered to those that haue *Tertianae Nothe* (that is bastardy Tertian feuers) rather then to those that haue feauers exquisite dainty, and lawfull, for these be of fewer fits, and be ended in a short time. The other be long and of more fits, so that they remaine many times and often from one Equinoctiall to another. To this also the Tertians that be exquisite and pure do come, and are caused of sincere and good choler: and the feuers *Nothe* and bastardy do come of filthie and vile choler. Here note also that *Carthamus* and *Agaricke* which do auoid and purge rheume, the leaues of *Scene* which do purge melancholy, and also rewbarbe, which doth purge choler, may be put together to the aforesayd sirupe, whereby the matter that causeth feuers *Nothe* of long continuance is auoided and purged. Also note, that in one day, or in the third or fourth day, one dose ought to be giuen, but more daies must be let passe according to the doctrine of *Auicenna de Cura Tertianarum Notharum*. These do purge melancholy: Hops, fumitorie, *Epithimum Cretensis*, polipodie of the oke, the leaues of *scene*, *lapis lazuli*, *myrabolani nigri* or *Indi*, *lapis armenius*, blacke hellebore, and a thousand other are to be sought out of *Mesua*. The compounds that do purge melancholy be *Catholicon* or *Diacatholicon*, *diasene*, *Catharticon imperiale*, *Hiera Rusi*, *Confectio Hamach*, *pilule de fumitoria*, pils of *lapis lazulus*, pils of the five kinds of myrabolanes, of *Epithimum*, of hellebore pils, whereof the dose is ℥.j. We can or do seldome vse the other compound medicines, for the bitterness that they haue in taste: all electuaries (except *Catholicon*) be euill in tasting & therefore they are confect and made in forme of potions ℞ fumitorie, and the tops of hops. ana. M. j. ℞. the three cordiall floures. ana. p. j. of raisins the stones pickt out. ℥.iiij. or ℥.℞. of greene polipodie of the oke. ℥.iiij. of *cuscuta*, and *Epithimum*. ana. ℥.iiij. of anise and liquorise scraped. ana. ℥.j. ℞. make a decoction, in which infuse the leaues of *scene* made cleane. ℥.ij. or ℥.iiij. In the straying of the decoction, dissolve *diacatholicon*. ℥.j. or ℥.x. sirupe of violets. ℥.j. make a dose. In this dose sirupe of violets, and the cordiall floures are put in, that they may temperate the driness of *scene* and *Epithimum*. If we will more diligently purge melancholic, we do put in *hierapicra rusi*, whose dose is ℥.℞. in which Hellebore is entred, which is not in vse at Paris. Or else take *confectio hamach*. ℥.℞. the which is exceeding bitter, for the plenty of *coquimbida* that is therein. Remember and note, that medicines loosening and purging choler, or rather melancholy, may conueniently be dissolued with the whey of goates milke, or with the water of the decoction or infusion of the things aforesayd, putting in the dose before written, as in example. ℞. of all those or of part of those good things which be written in the dose aforesayd, afterward make a decoction in the whey of goates milke, and in the decoction infuse the leaues of *Scene*, &c. And with some of the aforesayd electuaries confect & make a dose,

accor-

Simples to
purge the me-
lancholike hu-
mour.

The some of a
dose against
melancholy.

according to the nature and strength of the sicke person: or thus. *Rx* the leaues of Scene made cleane. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. infuse them in the whey of goates milke all one night, and in the straining of the decoction dissolue *Catholicon*. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. or $\mathfrak{z}$. x. or $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . and make a potion. Note that *Epithimum* doth sustaine and maintaine a decoction: and therefore we may write thus. *Rx*. *Epithimum cretensis*. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. let it boile with whey of goates milke, afterward straine it, and wring it out strongly, and with $\mathfrak{z}$. j. of sirupe of violets make a dose, which if it seeme not to be sufficient, adde to it some *catholicon*. *Galen* doth counsell to take this potion, *lib. 13. Therapeut.* in which place he considereth, that cankers, and all melancholike diseases ought to be taken heed of before hand, and to be eschued: but he putteth in but $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. which drammes do shew to be of no effect, because (as I thinke) we haue not the good *epithimum*, and therefore we take an ounce for the quantity, whereby the working of it may be the quicker and the better. All authors do follow this sentence, which in their bookes of practises or abridgements haue remembred this against the *Elephantia*, which is commonly called the Leprie, and is now made for the cure of *Elephantiasis*. Manie do thinke and iudge, that the decoction of an old cocke is very good & whole-
The decoction
of an old cocke.
some for diseases growne and begun, as well of melancholy, as also of rheume and steame. The chiefe vse of it is against the paines of the cholicke, caused of rheume, and partly of wind, and also against diseases of the breast, as difficulty in breathing, and moreouer against diseases of the ioynts caused of cold matter. It is prepared and made against the cholicke, caused partly of rheume, and partly of ventositie and wind. It is thus as followeth. *Rx*. of hysope, calamint, ana. $\mathfrak{m}$. j. raisins the stones picked out. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . of annise, fennell, and *caryi*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. vj. of the seed of *Carthamum*. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. of greene polipodie of the oke. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . the three cordiall floures. ana. $\mathfrak{p}$. j. of the floures of cammomill. $\mathfrak{p}$. β . and make a decoction, putting all together into the bellie of an old cocke preparate as it ought to be, infuse in the end of the decoction, the leaues of Scene made cleane. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. β . of agaricke newly trochiscate. $\mathfrak{z}$. x. make a decoction of two pound, and reserue it to your vse. *Rx*. of the aforesayd decoction. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. sirupe of violets. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . make a dose. Note that if the sicke person be strong and sturdy borne, there may be put in the dissoluing some *diaphenicon*, as $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . or $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. or as much *benedicta*. Take heede also, for agaricke (as many do thinke and iudge) is suspected, and thought to be hurtfull to those that haue the cholicke: because that if the substance of it be throwne in with a clister, the lightnesse of his substance cleauing to the guts, doth pricke them and grieue them, and doth prouoke a fluxe also, and oftentimes doth cause one to desire to sit long on the siege, because that it hath vertue and power to draw downe humours from the farre parts of the body, and therefore *Democritus* (as *Mesua* doth witness) called it *Medicinam familie*, the medicine of his familie or household. Therefore it may not well be given to those that haue paine in the bowels, because it maketh a fluxe, that would not be except that caused it, and therefore I counsell in such cases, to take away agaricke. Furthermore note, that cammomill may aptly and well be put into these decoctions, although the vse of it is rare, and seldome seene among Physicians, yet it is manifest, that the one-ly decoction of it in the broth of a chicken or capon, is excellent profitable a-

gainst all inward griefes, and specially for those which haue the cholicke and the frensie (as many haue proued it, to the great preferuation of their health.) The water of the distillation of cammomill is ministred for the same purpose, but yet the decoction thereof is of more and better effect then the distillation of it. The bitteresse of the decoction may be mitigated with sugar, if it be for delicate persons. Also the decoction of a cocke may conveniently be giuen for diseases in the breast and of *disputas*, if medicines pectorall be decoct with it: as, R^x. of hyssope, of *Enula campana*, of each, the third part of a handfull, of Sauory the fourth part of a handfull, horschoofe, called *ungula caballina*, which is an herbe called of some, litle clote, whereof you may take a good handfull; seede of *Carthamum*, and greene polipodie of the oke. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. of anise and liquorice scraped. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . rootes of ireos, and rootes of *Enula*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.iij. or $\mathfrak{z}$. β . of fat figs not putrified foure or six in number, of fat dates, the skins and filmes taken away, foure in number, of Iuiubes and sebesten. ana. twelue in number, of raisins the stones picked out. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. the three cordiall floures. ana. p.j. make a decoction in the belly of an old cocke, that is hunted, preparate and dressed as it ought to be, putting into it at the end, of agaricke and of the leaues of senna, as much as you thinke will be sufficient for your purpose: but note, that here agaricke may conveniently be vsed and ministred. There are other medicines also which be made against all superfluities in other formes (that is to say) in the forme of liquide electuaries, that is, *ad formam opiata*: or in forme whole, that is, like an electuarie made in lozenges or tables.

CHAP. VIII.

Of making Bolus.

BOLVS in English is called a morsell. It is a medicine laxatiue, in forme and fashion it is meanelly whole, and it is swallowed by little gobbers. It is made of diuerse things, by reason of auoiding and purging diuerse humours: but the plainest and simplest way of making it, is of *Medulla*, *Cassia fistula*, new drawne out of a fat cane or reede, sixe drammes or an ounce, of sugar so much as sufficeth, and make a bole. But if it be feared that *Cassia* will do hurt, as if great paine be in the bowels, whereby many times it prouoketh swouning, as some do that haue but weake and tender bowels: to such *Cassia* is not to be ministred, neither by bole nor by clisters. And for that cause the sicke person must be asked how he feelet himselfe before *Cassia* be ministred vnto him. Truly many authors do thinke, that this hurt which *Cassia* may bring, may be taken away, if there be added to it some graines of barbaries, or sugar roset: for they are of this mind, that through their stipticity the belly and the bowels are strengthened, and the paine impedit and letted, which *Cassia* doth cause by his clamminesse and mollifying softnesse. There be others that do mixe some laxatiue with *Cassia*, that it may quicken the slownesse of his operation, and that it descending, may the sooner slide away and be auoided. Boles chiefly are thus ordained and made, being very profitable remedies against the diseases of the reyns. R^x. *medulla cassie fistule* newly drawne, $\mathfrak{z}$.j. or $\mathfrak{z}$.x. the graines, that is, the kernels, of barbaries, $\mathfrak{z}$. β . & with sugar roset make

make a bole. Other do adde $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. or $\mathfrak{z}$ j. or $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. of *Diaprunis laxativa*, or *electu-
num de succo rosarum*: as in example following. *Rx. medulla cassia fistula* newly
drawne. $\mathfrak{z}$ vj. of *Diaprunis laxativa*. $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. of sugar roset tabulate as much as suf-
fisteth, make a bole. Note that many, because of the ventosity which *cassia* doth
ingeder in the bowels, they adde to the bole powder of anise. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. or $\mathfrak{z}$ ss. which *The forme of*
availeth much. *Rx. cassia fistula* newly drawne out of a fat cane or reed. $\mathfrak{z}$ iij. or *a bole purging*
 $\mathfrak{z}$ j. the soft matter of fat *Tamarindes*. $\mathfrak{z}$ j ss. of chosen rewbarbe. $\mathfrak{z}$ ss. or $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. or *choler.*
 $\mathfrak{z}$ j. sugar as much as suffisteth, make a bole. If the sicke person be poore, in,
stead of rewbarbe, make a bole with $\mathfrak{z}$ ss. or $\mathfrak{z}$ vj. of *cassia*, and $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. of *diaprunis*
laxativa, and with sugar. *Rx. catholicon*. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. or $\mathfrak{z}$ x. and with white sugar make a *The forme of*
bole: or thus, *Rx. catholicon*. $\mathfrak{z}$ ss. or $\mathfrak{z}$ vj. of *confectio hamech*. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. or $\mathfrak{z}$ j ss. & with su- *a bole against*
gar make a bole. *melancholy.*

CHAP. IX.

Of making Pils.

PILLES are ministred for the auoiding of every humour: vidz. against
rheume or fleame raining, and also against *Cholera Notha*, which is vile
and filthy choler hauing dominion in wan. *Pilule aggregatiue* after the descrip-
tion of *Mesua*, de *agarico*, de *rhobarbaro*, *stomachica*, de *hiera simplici*, de *hiera compo-
sita*, which respecteth the head, *Coccia* or *cocchia*, which is so called of *granis*
cocci, and not of the head, as some thinke. *Pilule aurea Elephangine*, sine quibus,
de *Hermodactilus maior* & minor, de *Serapina*, de *Sarcocolla*. Truly the four kinds
of pils last recited, are most appropriate and agreeing against corrupt and
stinking humors: of the which vertue also be *Arithetica maiores* & *minores* when
rheume raineth, but these when choler raineth in the diseases of the ioints:
then also the pils of *hermodactilus maior* and *minor* are dedicated & ministred.
Pils that do onely voyd pure choler and purge it, there are a thousand to
be found, but many of them haue more respect to the auoiding of filthy and
bastardly choler, or that which is greatly mixed with rheume, as *Pilule de Rheu-
barbaro*, de *Hiera simplici*, *Aggregatiue de Agarico*, *Ante cibum*, *Imperiales*. In a man-
ner the chiefe dose of pils is one dramme and a halfe, of which make nine
pils, and with some conuenient sirupe, as sirupe of endiue, sirupe of maiden-
haire, sirupe of *stachados*, or also with *Oximel* or *Hydromel*, or with some other
licour.

CHAP. X.

Of making Apozema.

AN *Apozema* is a decoction of medicines gently made for the concoction
and digestion of humours, or for preparation of them, and sometime for
euacuation and purging. It may be made diuerse, and for diuerse intents and
purposes: as to make hote and to make cold, to make moist and to make drie,
to loosen and open, to restraine and bind, to attenuate and make thinne, to
make grosse and thicke, to prouoke menstruis and vrine. Of medicines parti-
cular and conuenient, and of their rootes, fruiets, feedes (and other, as it shall
seeme meete and expedient for your purpose.) In effect an *Apozema* doth not
differ from a sirupe, but in boyling: for sirupes are wont to be boyled long,

The forme of
an ApoZema
against chole-
ricke humors.

and to the perfection, but an *ApoZema* is boyled easily and little. Therefore si-
rupes may be long kept, and ApoZemes may be kept but a few dayes. R^x. of suc-
cory, endiue, *Cuscuta* and *Adiantum*. ana. M. ss. of the rootes of sorrel, and of gra-
men. ana. ʒ ss. the foure great cold seeds made cleane. ana. ʒ. j. of the three cor-
diall floures. ana. p. j. make a decoction of ʒ ss. In the straining dissolue sirupe
of violets, or *Syrupus acetosus*, or sirupe of lymons, or also white sugar. ʒ. iij. and
make an *ApoZema*, clarifie it, and aromatize it with. ʒ. ij. or ʒ. j. of cinamon
elect for two doses. Likewise *ApoZema* may be made against other humors, the
matter and effect whereof must be sought out of the head of the sirupes. Note
that in the confection and making of *ApoZema*, for ʒ. ij. or at the most for ʒ. iij.
of the decoction it is sufficient to adde. ʒ. j. of sugar or sirupe. Also there be
made ApoZemes laxatiue, as there be sirupes laxatiue, adding to laxatiue
things in that decoction, or infusing them in it after the decoction is made.
Looke in the title of sirupes for the example, for they, be like them (this onely
excepted as we sayd before) that an *ApoZema* after the dissolving of the sugar
or sirupe in it, ought not to be boyled any longer.

CHAP. XI.

Of making *Mulsio*.

The forme of
Mulsio.

MVLSIO is made of seeds cleansed, or of fruites, or of both sometime to
quench the thirst, and the inflammation of the breast and lungs, and a-
gainst diseases of the reines and the bladder, or against *Ischuria*, that is, re-
tention and withholding of vrine, and for the strangurie, that is, the voyding
of humours by causing of vrine to issue out by drops with burning in the yard.
R^x. of the 4. great cold seeds & new cleane. ana. ʒ. iij. or ʒ. ss. of sweet almonds
blanched in cold water. ʒ. j. beate all together in a stone mortar with wel-water
first sodden, and make a decoction of ʒ ss. j. and reserue it & keepe it in a glasse
vessell. The aforesayd *Mulsio* is good against the burning of the vrine, or the
strangurie, if ʒ. iij. or vj. be giuen in the morning 3. or 4. houres before dinner,
and 2. or 3. houres before supper, the same quantity of the premises, or a little
lesse with one Lozenge of *Diarragacanthum frigidum*, in which are put in the a-
foresayd seeds, and gums, and many other things. But if in the dforesayd cases
we thinke that there be greater need of in frigidation and cooling, mixe with
your *Mulsio* the seeds of purslaine, of lettuce, and white poppie. But in the dis-
eases of the breast, adde too new pine apples, sweete almonds, and fresh figges
that be not putrified, with one Lozenge of *Electuarium Diaris simplicis*, of *Diaris*
Solomonis, let it be ministred straight way without delay. Also with the aforesayd
Mulsio, there may conueniently be mixed some quantitie of sugar, or some
sirupe apt and meet for the purpose (as *Ruellius* was wont to make against the
filthy matter, and corrupt blood in the vrine of a man:) as thus: R^x. the seede
of white poppie and the foure great cold seeds, of sweete almonds. ana. ʒ. ss.
stampe all these in a mortar, with as much water of the decoction of liquorice
as suffiseth. In the straining dissolue of sirupe of violets, of maidenhaire, and
of mirtles. ana. ʒ. j. make a *Mulsio* for two times, and let the griued person take
it in the morning foure houres before dinner.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Of making Powders.

POWDER is made of seedes, rootes and minerals powdred and beaten finely, and sugar put to them that they may be the more pleasant. Powders be ministred for many causes and intents, whereof their most common ministration is after meate to helpe digestion, or to stop and keepe downe vapors which ascend and are caried vp into the braine, or else for both causes as it often chanceth. *Rx.* the seedes of annise, and fennell. ana. ʒ. j. the seede of citron, cinamon, liquirice, and roses. ana. one scruple, of chosen peatles and the scraping of yuorie. ana. ʒ. ss. of sugar rosate as much as sufficeth: make a fine powder, whereof minister after meate one spoonefull: and looke what powder is so made to stop and keepe downe vapors, euen the same is good to helpe digestion: as is this that followeth. *Rx.* Coriander preparate. ʒ. j. ss. the scraping of yuorie, red corall, the horne of a Hart burned. ana. ʒ. j. of cinamon. ʒ. ss. of sugar rosate as much as sufficeth: make a powder which may be giuen after meate. Also they are good for many other things, as for wormes in children, for binding in the belly, and for strength; and against the plague coming of the owne proper matter. These powders are to be ministred before meate, some alone, some with wine or vpon tostes of bread wet in wine. Sometime they are giuen for the corroboration and strengthening of all vertues, in malignant feuers, and in great imbecility and weakenesse of strength. *Rx.* the scraping of an Vnicornes horne grained 4. 5. or 6. the scraping of yuory, of chosen pearles, and of Harts horne. ana. grain. 6. seed of citron, and *Carduus benedictus*. ana. gran. 4. & make a fine powder, which may be giue with conuenient liquor, as with white wine, distillatō restorative, water of Scabious, of Buglosse, or of some other such like. And such powders for the most part are ministred about mid-night, or early in the morning. There may also be made powders laxatiue (as is) *Diascenc*, and *Diaturbith*, and the powder of *Electuarium Diacarthami*, to the which ought to be added three times, or foure times as much sugar, and they may be ministred being dissolued in the decoction of a chicken, or of liquirice or of ptyisan. But yet these powders are seldome vsed among practitioners.

*A powder to
helpe digestion.*

CHAP. XIII.

*Of Electuaries, and Conserues: Of Lozenges,
and Mannus Christi.*

AN Electuarie is ordained and made two wayes, that is, either liquid, as in *Forma opiate*, or whole, as in tables or lozenges, or in fashion foure square and long, which they call *Mannus Christi*. Electuaries truly are ministred to corroborate and strengthen, and for that cause they be called *Tonica*, as affording strength to the members (that is to say) they roborate and strengthen the vertues naturall, vitall, and animall. If they be confect and made to strengthen the naturall faculties and vertues, then they must be administred to a fasting stomack. If the vertue digestiue be weake through coldnesse, minister them after meate. But if any matter arise through moistnesse, then minister one houre

two before meate, that they may alter the temperature, and drie vp the vnwholesome substance. But if the vertue vitall requireth strengthening, you may minister them verie well in a manner at all houres. But if you intend to strengthen the vertue animall, you may conueniently minister in the houre of sleepe or about midnight. The formes of electuaries are in this order as followeth, and first, of a liquide electuarie which is profitable to strengthen the naturall vertue when the substance of the belly is made feeble by coldnesse & moistnesse. R^x of the powder of *Electuarium Aromaticum maiori* (which Gabriel describeth) ℥.ij. powder of *Electuarium Aromaticum Diacalaminu* ℥.j. of Diatrion piperion. ℥.ij. of *Conserua Anthos*, that is, of floures of rosemary, and of Roses, ana. ℥.ss. of sugar taberzet. ℥.j. ss. of sirupe of mintes as much as sufficeth, make a liquid electuarie in *forma opiata*, and minister it before dinner or breakfast an houre or an houre and halfe, or two houres: the dose is. ℥.ss. or rather ℥.ij. *Electuarium Aromaticum Rosatum*, being ministred fasting taketh away all corrupt and rotten humidities, and being ministred after meate, it strengtheneth the vertue digestiue. Now followeth the forme of a whole or hard Electuarie made in Lozenges, or fashioned like *Manus Christi*, against hote distemper of the liuer, and against obstructions of the same, as thus, R^x of the powder of *Tria Sandalorum*. ℥.ij. the powder of *Diarrhodon Abbatis* ℥.j. of Conserues of succory and roses, ana. ℥.j. ss. of sugar taberzet or white sugar dissolued in water of succory, or endiue, as much as sufficeth, make an Electuarie in Lozenges of the weight of ℥.ij. or. ℥.ij. ss. or ℥.ij. minister one before meate. Many times conserues are not put in, but onely powders. The Apothecaries are wont for euerie draghme of powder, to put to ℥.j. of sugar. But if you will make the Electuarie more strong, you may well take a draghme and a halfe of powder, for ℥.j. of sugar. If the stomach be troubled with the presence of melancholy abounding & flowing to it, either through the vice of the liuer that multiplieth it, or by diseases of the spleene, as be stoppings which hinder the receipt thereof: then make an hard Electuarie, or in *forma opiata* with things following, as in example. R^x of the powder of *Electuarium Latificans Galeni*, ℥.ij. the powder of *Electuarium Diamargariton calidum*. ℥.j. the powders of the Electuaries of *Aromatibus*, or of *Gemmis*, or *Diamoschi dulcis*, or *Diambre* may be put in, seeing that they haue the same vertue: of conserues of buglosse, & borage, and violets, ana. ℥.j. ss. the barke of Citron seasoned. ℥.j. of as much white sugar dissolued in water of buglosse or borage as sufficeth, make an Electuarie in Lozenges, or in litle gobbets, or like *Manus Christi*: in weight. ℥.ij. or. ℥.ss. And if you will make it in the forme of a liquide Electuarie, put to it twile or thrise as much more of the conserues, & some powder of white sugar, or sugar rosate (that is to say) ℥.ij. as is shewed in the example aforesayd, with some sirupe hauing respect to the melancholike humor (as is) sirupe of buglosse, of borage, of roses, of Harts tongue, of *Epithimum*, of *Fumitorie*, of which adde to as much as sufficeth: my meaning is, that it may be in a liquid forme.

An electuarie for the strong stopping of the liuer or the spleene, wherein there is daunger of the dropsie, or in the breeding of *Cachexia*, that is, a spice of consumption: such an Electuarie (I say) is made of the powders of the Electuaries *Diagalanga*, *Diachenuris*, *Diacapparis*, *Dialacca*, and of conserues, which if

An Electuarie
strengthening
the naturall
vertue.

An Electuarie
against hote
distemper of
the liuer.

An Electuarie
against melan-
choly.

you will commixe together, conserues of succory may conueniently be mixed with them. Note also that electuaries be made of Trochiskes, or of powder of Trochiskes, hauing respect to the disease, as in a hore cause take *Trochischi Diarrhodon*, Trochiskes of *Carolus*, Trochiskes of bolearmoniacke, of *Terra sigillata* (specially if we would restraine or bind) Trochiskes of *Carabe*, if we would stop the fluxe of blood. But if we would open or loosen the obstructions of the liuer or spleene, we must bring this to passe with Trochiskes of rewbarbe, or of *Capparis*. Electuaries respecting the vertue vitall, if it be aggriued with cold, may be made of *Electuarium Diambre*, *Diamusi dulcis*, *Electuarium de Gemmis*, and *Aromaticum nardinum*, *Aromaticum muscatum*, *Aromaticum Rosatum maior Gabrielis*, *Letyficans Galeni* or *Rasi*, *Electuarium Conciliatoris*, of *Alkermes* confection and making. Conserues for the same intent be these: Conserues of roses, buglosse, borage, Anthos, barks of Citron, ginger condite, oranges condite, and other of that sort. If the vertue vitall be wearied, and laboureth of heate, take the *Electuarie Rosata nouella*, *Electuarium trium Sandalorum*, and *Diarrhodon abbatu*, *Diamargariton frigidum*, and Trochiskes of *Camphora*, vse them often. These be the conserues that be good, conserues of roses, of violets, of buglosse, and of borage, and also of *Nimphaea* or *Nemuphar*, that is, water lillies. If the cough be present, and if the humour contained in the breast be hore, flowing and thinne, if you will cause it to auoid and come forth, minister *Diarragacanthum frigidum*: if the humour be clammy and thicke, minister *Diarragacanthum calidum*, and *Diarris simplex*, or *Diarris Salomonis*. And if there be suspicion of venomous substance, then with the powders of Electuaries cold or hore, which do resist poyson, we do commixe maces, and muske, *Zedoaria*, saffron, cinamon, and *Xilaloos* in cold causes. But in hore causes there may conueniently be mixed pearles, corall, cristall, roses and *Camphora*. In causes mingled one with another either hore or cold, by a certaine property, these do corroborate and strengthen and defend, pearles, seede of Citron, roote of Tormentill, *Tunici* and *Distamus*, the bone of the Harts hart one in number, or if you will weigh it. $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ or $\mathfrak{z} . \text{ss}$. as in this example following against a pestilentiall feauer. $\mathfrak{R} x$. the powder of the Electuarie of *Diamargariton frigidum*. $\mathfrak{z} . j . \text{ss}$ or white shining pearles elect and powdered in a marble mortar. $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ of *Camphora*, gran. ij . or else Trochiskes of *Camphora*, $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ or $\mathfrak{z} . \text{ss}$. the rootes of *Distamus*, of Tormentill, and of *Tunici*, and the barks of Citron. ana. $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ of conserues of buglosse, borage, *Nimphaea*, and roses, take of these, either one, two, or three, or all, to the quantitie of two or three draghtes: of white sugar dissolued in water of roses, or of buglosse, or borage as much as sufficeth, make an Electuarie in Lozenges, or make a liquid Electuarie in the forme aforesaid. $\mathfrak{R} x$. the three kinds of saunders, and *Diarrhodon Abbatu*, ana. $\mathfrak{z} . j .$ the bone of the Harts heart one in number, sugar rosate tabulate, or white sugar dissolued in rose water as much as sufficeth, make an Electuarie, gild it with leaues of pure gold in weight $\mathfrak{z} . \text{ss}$. Also there be made Electuaries laxative against all superfluities and diseases, that together with the purging we may also strengthen, as in example; against long diseases comming of theume, or of some clammy humour breeding the cough. $\mathfrak{R} x$. *Cassa* that is new. $\mathfrak{z} . j . \text{ss}$. *Diacarthami*. $\mathfrak{z} . \text{vj}$. new *Penidios*, and *Diarris simplex*, ana.

An electuary
for the vertue
vitall.

An electuarie
against a pesti-
lent feauer.

An electuary
for the vertue
animall, in a
hore cause.

An Electuarie ʒ.ʒ. of conferues of violets. ʒ. iij. of sweete anise powdred, and powder of
against disca- liquorice ana. ʒ.ʒ. syrupe of violers as much as sufficeth: make a liquide E-
les of the brest, lectuarie, in forma opata. The dose is. ʒ. j. or ʒ. x. or at the most. ʒ. j.ʒ. the
and against the which may be ministred an houre, or an houre and a halfe, swallowing it, or
cough. he may take it foure houres before dinner, because it may not conueniently be
 giuen a litle before meate, because of the *Diacarthamum* which hath *Diagredi-*
um in it. Also you may dissolue it in the broth of a chicken, or in ptylan, or in a
 common pectorall decoction, and make a potion, and minister it foure or fise
 houres before meate. And this note, that you must appoint the wayes and
 meanes of the ministration of phisicke, according as you see the nature and
 condition of the sicke person. Such Electuaries which may be brought into a
 powder, are made in Lozenges or Boles of laxatiue medicines that be pleasant
 in taste, the forme and fashion whereof may be knowne in taking *Diacarthia-*
um, and *Electuarium de Succo rosarum*, after which fashion you may make other
 verie meete and seruing for your purpose.

CHAP. XIII.

Of making Conditum, and Conferua.

A conditum to
strengthen all
vertues and
powers.

CONDITIONA be made as Electuaries be made, to strengthen the might and
 the primitiue and worthiest members. They rather haue respect to the
 substance and matter of breathing, then to the beautie and soundnesse of the
 flesh. But forasmuch as the weaknesse of strength, causeth sores and diseases
 to grow in their instruments, therefore it is ministred to them that begin to
 recouer and waxe strong. *Rx. Conferua Anthos* (that is) of rosemary, conferue of
 borage, buglosse, maidenhaire, and succorie ana. ʒ. iij. the barke of citron con-
 dite. ʒ. j.ʒ. the powder of *Electuarium plirisarcoticon*, the powder of *Electuarium*
ducis, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, and *Triasandali* ana. ʒ.ʒ. the leaues of gold in num-
 ber vi. of white sugar as much as sufficeth, make a *Conditum*. Of the same
 powders of Electuaries is made a whole and a hard *conditum*, as thus. *Rx.* the
 powder of *Electuarium plirisarcoticon*, the powder of *Dianthos*, the powder of *Du-*
cis, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, and *Triasandali* ana. ʒ. iij. conferues of roses and succo-
 ric ana. ʒ. j.ʒ. white sugar dissolued in rose water as much as sufficeth, make an
 Electuarie in lozenges or morsels like vnto *manus Christi*, of the weight of ʒ. iij.
 In like proportion may condites or Electuaries be made to strengthen al kind
 of vertues, as in example. If onely the vertue vitall be weake, then take Electu-
 aries and conferues either hot or cold, hauing respect to the vertue, accor-
 ding as the owne distempure or the cause of it desireth. Now there followeth
 these hote Electuaries hauing respect to the vertue vitall: as *Electuarium diam-*
aries respecting bre, *Diamargariton calidam*, *Diamuscum amarum*, *Diamuscum dulce*, de *Gemmis*, *Lati-*
the vertues vi- *ficans Galeni*. Cold Electuaries, *Electuarium Diamargariton frigidum*, *Diarrhodon*
sal. *Abbatis* which be temperate, *Triasandali*. Conferues respecting both the di-
 stemppures (that is) hote and cold: as *Conferua rosarum*, *Boraginis*, *Ruglosse*, *Pio-*
Cold Electua- *larum*. Cold conferues, *Conferua Nymphae*, *Piolarum*. Hot Conditas respecting the
ries. vertue vitall, as *cortex citri conditus*, which may be ministred in both causes, *con-*
Conditas respe- *fectio de cinamomo*, *confectio de Xilolae*, *confectio Alkermes*, which is common to
cting the ver- the Physitions: of *adonty pessularis*, ginger condite, peares condite, apples con-
sue vitall. dite,

Note Electua-
ries respecting bre,
the vertues vi-
sal.
Cold Electua-
ries.
Conditas respe-
cting the ver-
sue vitall.

dire, and so for other. Hote Eleſtuaries for the vertue animall be theſe: *Pluri-ſarcoticon, dianthos, Diamuſcum dulce and amarum, Mithridatum and Triacle*, which be opiate, that is, liquid. Hote conſerues reſpecting the vertue animall be theſe, *conſerua Anthos, Acori, Roſarum*, which is temperate, almoſt all opiate, that is, liquid things, as *Mithridatum, Triacle*, and *aurea Alexandrina*: Hote Eleſtuaries for the vertue naturall be theſe, *Diacalanimbium, Diacuminum, Diatriopiperion, Aromaticū roſatum maiorum* (which *Gabriel* deſcribeth) *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, which is temperate, and neceſſary in both cauſes, *Diurnu Salomonu*, or *ſimplex, Dialacca*, and *Diacurma*, the which are good againſt opilations in the liver, and againſt the dropſie. Hote conſerues reſpecting mightily the vertue naturall be theſe: *Conſerua Eringiorum, conſerua Satiry, Zinziber conditum, cortex citri conditus*, meate of quinces condite, peares condite, and ſuch like. Cold Eleſtuaries be theſe: *Triſandali, Diatragacanthum frigidum, Diarrhodon Abbatis, Diamargariton frigidum*. Cold conſerues be theſe: *Conſerua Violarium, cichoree, Nimphæe, &c.*

Hote conſerues reſpecting the vertue naturall. Cold Eleſtuaries.

Cold conſerues. A Conditum againſt the hot diſtemper of all kinds of veins. Another for the ſame diſtemper.

Rx. the powder of *Eleſtuarium trium ſandalorum*. *ʒ. ij.* the powder of *Diamargariton frigidum*, and *Diarrhodon Abbatis*. ana. *ʒ. ij.* conſerues of ſuccory, and violets. ana. *ʒ. j.* white ſugar diſſolved in water of endiue, or ſuccory, or roſes, as much as ſufficeth. Make a condite in lozengs in weight. *ʒ. ij.* or *ʒ. iij.* or thus: *Rx*. conſerue of ſuccory, of violets, of *Nimphæe*, and of Bugloſſe. ana. *ʒ. ij.* *ʒ. j.* conſerue of roſes *ʒ. j.* powder of *Triſandali*, and of *Diamargariton frigidum*. ana. *ʒ. iij.* the leaues of gold viij. in number, white ſugar as much as ſufficeth, make a condite: the doſe is one ſilver ſpoonefull. Many in theſe condites, where there is ſuſpection of ſome venomous matter, as in peſtilent fevers, or in ſwouning, they do adde to the ſeed of citron, the ſeed of *Carduus benedictus*, the roote of *Diſtamus* and *Tormentill*. And for rich ſolke of the ſcraping of *Unicornes* horne (although there is no author that maketh mention of it) but onely the opinion of the common people: as in example, in the aforeſayd *conditum* take away ſome portion of the aforeſayd Eleſtuaries (that is to ſay) the third or fourth part, and then let it be in this order as followeth. *Rx*. of the ſeed of *Carduus benedictus*, of the ſeede of Citron, of the roote of *Diſtamus* and *Tormentill*. ana. *ʒ. j.* or *ʒ. j.* two or three of theſe may be added. Furthermore *Trochiſkes* are added to Eleſtuaries and condites, as in example: to ſtop the fluxe, take *Trochiſkes* of *Diacorallus*, *Diarrhodon*, of *Terra ſigillata*, of bolearmoniacke, &c. of *ſcurabe*. And to keepe the temperature of the hart, take *Trochiſkes* of *Camphora*, of the which take as much in quantiry as the powders of the Eleſtuaries be, when there is no ſugar put into them.

CHAP. XV.

Of making Paſta Regia or Mazapane.

PAſta Regia is a confection, ſo called by the Phiſitions of late time, which is ſpecially ordained for diſeaſes of the breaſt, or to driue away the cauſes of leanneſſe: the forme and making whereof doth follow, being very effectuall againſt both the cauſes, that is, the diſeaſes of the breaſt, and the lungs, and againſt leanneſſe: as thus, *Rx*. ſweete almonds blanched. *ʒ. iij.* of new pines cleaſed, and tempered ten houres in water of Scabious, or of *Enula campana*, or in ſome other meete for this purpoſe. *ʒ. j.* of *Piſtadium*, that is, a

kind of nuttes, let them be new cleansed, and tempered one day in some of the aforesaid waters. ℞. j. *Anylum*, *Diatragacanthum*, and of gumme Arabicke. ana. ℥. ℔. of the meate of dares, prunes damascene, and sebesten, and raisins, one or else more of these, to the quantitie of one ounce, white sugar dissolued in well water, or in rose water, or in water of *Emula* as much as sufficeth, make a *Pasta Regia*, and cut it in fashion like a wafer, or else make it in little gobbets. Also sometime the great cold seeds (the barks being picked off) are put into them.

CHAP. XVI.

Of making a Lohoch or Echigma.

A LOHOC or *Echigma* is a medicine that must not be eaten or chewed, but it must melt in the mouth, and distill downe to the stomach by little and little. It is good against diseases of the breast and the lounge, (as is) *Dispneas Apneas*, short and hard breathings, sighings, and coughes, whether it cometh by heaping of matter together, or by falling downe of some moist substance

A Lohoch (as be catarrhes, and rheumes, which chance oftentimes.) ℞. *Electuarium Diarris Salomonis*, and *Diarris simplex*. ana. ℥. vi. Lohoch de *pino*. ℥. j. conferue of *Emulgealed toge-la campana*. ℥. ℔. *Oximell Scilliticum* as much as sufficeth. Make a Lohoch, and let the sicke vse it with a liquorice sticke, licking or swallowing a little at once. If there be greater need of detersion and scouring, then there is of incision and cutting, you must augment & increase the quantity of the scouring receipts, and in stead of *Oximell Scilliticum* put too syrupe of liquorice, or of Horehound called *Prassum*, or of iuiubes, or else of hylope: many do thinke syrupe of hylope to be abstersiue, onely for the saying of *Auicene*, which (*Mesua* declareth) is vnlike to be true. Lohoch *Combosium*, Lohoch de *Pino*, Lohoch de *caulibus sanum* and *expertum*, Lohoch de *Scilla*, these may conveniently be ministered by themselves. But when a feuer is present (as in the pleurisie) then to auoide and bring out from the breast, the material cause that floweth, and partly for the matter that is already flowne, we may make a Lohoch after this sort and fashion. ℞. of *Electuarium diatragacanthi frigidi*. ℥. x. new penidies, and white pilles. ana. ℥. iij. syrupe of violets, or of iuiubes, or of both as much as sufficeth, make a Lohoch and vse it with a liquorice sticke, swallowing it by little and little. If the matter be partly flowe, and partly flowing, you shall make a Lohoch to correct both after this fashion. ℞. *Electuarium Diarris simplex*. ℥. j. *Diatragacanthum frigidum*. ℥. vi. new penidies. ℥. iij. syrupe of iuiubes, or Hylope, euen as you thinke good, the more to enforce the matter now flowe or flowing, and make a Lohoch. A Lohoch also may be made against deuotions and flowings of humours that be hote and sharpe, or gnawing, causing the cough: that the heate and gnawing of the humour may be stopped, and also that the thinnesse and subtiltie thereof may be made thicke, and grosse, and the partes to the which the fluxe cometh being subiect and obedient, they may be made safe from any nociment or hurt (as in example). ℞. *Electuarium Diatragacanthi frigidi*. ℥. j. Bole armoniacke washed in rose water, ℥. ij. Trochiskes of *Ferra sigillata*. ℔. ij. syrupe of poppy as much as sufficeth

A Lohoch in the beginning of the pleurisie where the matter floweth.

sufficeth and make a Lohoch. In stead of *Diatragacanthum* may be taken *Diapapauer*, or of each a like quantity. Also Trochiskes of *Carabe* in the which is put some *opium* may be added to them, if there be no cause that *opium* be suspected to do hurt. These Lohoches are giuen against the Ptiticke in the houre of sleep; *Electuariū Diapapaueris*, Lohoch of poppy. All the pills of *Mesua* for this vse against diseases of Cararre and Rheume, may be mixed and giuen the same houres, and for the same intent.

CHAP. XVII.

Of making *Balneum*, and *Semicupium*.

BALNEVM is a baine, the vse whereof was common and often among old practitioners, but now it is rare and seldome, and not at all vsed almost, except it be in certaine diseases, as in an vniuersall goutte, in the palsey and in consuming feuers. But against the goutte and the palsey naturall baines are conuenient, in the which, although there be penurie and lacke of things, yet we may make things artificially, and cunningly prepared with boiling together in water, herbes, rootes, seedes, floures, and also many mettals, as it shall seeme requisite for the disease. But *Semicupium*, which in Latine is called *Incessum*, is a particular bath, which is applied for paines of the nefresie, for the cholicke, and for the liacke, so that they come not by reason of an impostume. It is profitable against diseases of the belly and wombe, for it is a conuenient aide and defence to prouoke menstruis, and to amend the distempure of the wombe. Now followeth the forme of *Semicupium*, when we would in the Nefreticke disease, haue the pores and passages of the body enlarged and made soft and pliant, and also to cease the paine, as thus. R. the rootes of *Aithæa*. ℥. iij. the leaues of *malua*, *Bismalua*, and *Parietarie*, the floures of cammomill and melilore, the tops of dill. ana. M. ij. of origan, calamint, betonic and lothernwood. ana. M. j. seedes of flaxe and fennell. ana. ℥. ij. of cleane bran. p. iij. boile all these in a bag in sufficient water for a *Semicupium*. Note also that one that hath the Nefresie may enter a Bathe before he hath receiued a clister. If the paine of the cholicke or the Nefresie seeme to come of much ventositie, or of a cold humour, which seemeth to haue neede of calefaction, and attenuation or thinnesse with incision and cutting; make a *Semicupium* thus. R. origan, calamint, toppes of dill, and of cammomill. ana. M. iij. fenugreeke, carawayes, annise and fennell. ana. ℥. ij. laurell berries. ℥. ℥. And if there be more sicknesses and causes wrapped in with the aforelayd griefes, you may adde too such medicines as be meete for your purpose, as if there be any neede of mollifying and making soft, the leaues of *Malua*, *Bismalua*, *Parietarie*, and violets will worke that effect. If you iudge it necessarie to make incision, or to open the pores and passages of the body, adde too, of the roote of spinach, *Bruscus* and *Apium*, knit them in a litle bagge and seeth them for a *Semicupium*. Likewise to prouoke menstruis, make *Incessus* or *Semicupia*, putting in medicines meete and apt to prouoke menstruis, as Mugwort, *Sapein*, Horehound, *Nux Cupressi*, and Iuniper berries; of all these there may be put in two handfuls.

The forme of
Semicupium.

Aliud *Semicu-*
pium.

Epitheme.

EPITHEMA is a medicine ordained to lay to the heart or liuer to coole it; and Fomus is a medicine nourishing or keeping warme. They are made for many intents & purposes, but chiefly to correct the hot distemper of the liuer, the making wherof is this as ensueth. R^t the waters of endiue, succory, roses, & petymorrell, and nightshade. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. of vinegar. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. the powder of *Electuarium triasandali*. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. or $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . mixe them for an Epitheme of the liuer with a felt, or a peece of linnen or wollen cloth, or a sponge infused in the aforesaid liquor, and laid against the liuer before meate an houre or an houre and halfe. Also there is made for the same purpose the like decoction of the herbs, as is of the aforesaid waters. If there be stoppings of the liuer, together with his hote distemper, make an Epitheme after this sort. R^t succorie, both the roote and the hearb, young set endiue, agrimonie (which is) eupatorie. ana. $\mathcal{M}$. j. flowres of succorie. p. j. the foure great cold feedes, and litle cold feed. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . of cypresse $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. of lupines. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. all the saunders. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. of squinint. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . the toppes of wormewood. $\mathcal{M}$. β . make a litle bagge, and boyle it in foure parts of water, and one of wine, and a litle vinegar, with one onely great heate in an earthen vessel, and make a fomentation in the manner aforesaid: such an Epitheme is very good for diseases depending vpon opilation or stoppings, and misfortune comming by opilation and stoppings, as is a fluxe, and for him that is diseased in the liuer, and for those diseases for the most part which come and go by courses. Also it is good against consumptions, which cause distempures and stoppings of the liuer. Moreover against the beginnings of knobbes and kernelles, to which (if they be come forth) there must be applied mollificatiues, and things that do loosen and vnbind. Also there be Epithemes that be made for many purposes of the stomach: first to strengthen the stomach that it receiue not the superfluities comming from other places, & then the Epitheme is made of stipticke things. Secondly to correct and amend the distempure of the stomach: And thirdly they serue to cease the paines that are caused by the nature and condition of that grieve: ministring duely to the contrarie of the matter as the cause shall require. The making of the first intent, that the stomach may be deliuered from flowings of humours to it, and may be preserved safely, that it shall not suffer inflammation, or course of euill humours. R^t red roses. p. ij. of arnoglossa and plantaine. ana. $\mathcal{M}$. β . the tops of wormewood. $\mathcal{M}$. j. the third part, all the saunders. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. red corall. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. put all these in a litle bagge, and make a decoction in sufficient quantitie of water with a litle vinegar, to which may be added a litle thenisli wine, and make a fomentation. Corall (although it be *Ashyllum*) yet it is not put into the decoction without great cause, for it profiteth naturally against all diseases of the stomach, and therefore it ought rather to be beaten into powder. Epithemes for all other intents and purposes, may be described by particular and proper medicines, after the forme of the late described Epitheme. There be Epithemes good for the stomach made of oyle, as oyle of roses, cammomill, wormewood, masticke, and mirtles. Note that in all Epithemes, for what intent soeuer they be mi-

nistred,

nistred, you must mixe something with them that may preserue and keepe the essence & strength of the member that the Epitheme is layd too, as *Galen* commaundeth and teacheth in many places, to be obserued and done likewise in medicines taken inwardly. But *Epithema* and *Forus* be all one, yet some do make a difference, saying that *Epithema* is only that, which is made of distilled waters and powders mixed together: and *Forus* is a more generall thing, which is made of the decoction of any kind of herbes and rootes.

CHAP. XIX.

Of making Sacculus.

SACCULVS *videlicet* a litle bagge. It is ministred for the same causes that *Forus* be vsed for. It is made of herbes, floures, seedes, and other such like things. They be layd too either drie, or else wet in some liquour. The drie be chiefly made of seedes and herbes: the wet must be first pressed before it be laid to the place. *Rx. mlij. vsulati. p. iij. of orobum* (which some thinke to be rares) and of leane branne. ana. p. ij. floures of cammomill, and the tops of dill. ana. p. j. of comin and caraway. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. of laurrell berries. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. make thereof two litle bags, and sew them in into two linnen clothes of a competent bignesse, and baste them thoroughly. Let them be so bigge that they may couer the belly, and let one after another be layd hote to the belly againe and againe. Now followeth the forme of a moist bagge for the digesting, mollifying, and dissolving of raw humors, as thus: *Rx. the floures of cammomill. p. ij. the tops of dill, melilote and origan. ana. p. j. fenugreeke and flaxe seede. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. the leaues of malua, bisnabae, and violets. ana. M. ss.* make a litle bagge, or make two bagges, and boyle them in water or in cowes milke, and of the decoction make a fomentation with a sponge, or a felt, or wollen clothes, or two bagges, let them be laid to the grieued places one after another. According to this forme, you may make and apply bagges, partly of things that can mollifie, and partly of things that can remoue and discusse, and lay them to knobbes, kernels, and hardnesse of the flesh. But if the person be strong, take other remollitines, or discussives, euen as you shall find the matter that causeth the hardnesse to require.

*A drie bagge
against the
windie cholicke
or Tympanites.*

A moist bagge.

CHAP. XX.

Of making Scutum.

SCUTUM in English is a target or buckler. *Scuta* are ministred to the stomach, and made for the same causes that ointments & epithemes be. They are often made of the drie powder of medicines, to correct some distemper of the stomach, and to adde strength to it. Furthermore they serue in steed of ointments or emplasters, when the patients doe refuse and abhorre them for their tediousnesse. *Rx. mints, marioram, and wormewood dried. ana. p. j. or $\mathfrak{z}$. j. ss. of cloues, galingale, and Xilooloes, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. of comin and redde corall. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. make a powder,* wherewith make a *Scutum* with a litle cotton, sewed in betweene two litle clothes, with stitchings betweene, and bands as it ought to be, let it be bound to the stomach. Powders to *Scutum* ought not to be past an ounce and a halfe at the most, manie times an ounce or fixe drammes is enough.

*A Scutum a-
gainst the cold
distemper of
the stomach,
with ventositie
and other sub-
stances.*

CHAP. XXI.

Of making a Cataplasme.

CATAPLASMA is a plaister, &c. *Cataplasmata* be made of herbes, rootes, seedes, and meale sodden in water or milke, with some greace or oyle added to them as the matter requireth. *Cataplasmata* be made for diuerse intents, sometime to cease paines, sometime to resolute and vnbind, sometime to make ripe, sometime to mollifie or make soft, sometime to consume & sometime to dry vp humours and vapours. In commixed affects and causes, diuerse intents and purposes are mixed together in *Cataplasma*, as remollitiues with discussiues, and discussiues with such things as cease paine, as the example following shall declare. And first of the forme of a Cataplasme for the cure of *oedema* (which is a botch of flegmatick matter, or an imposthume without griefe) in the which euill it is necessarie to haue remollition with discussion, or (as they say) resoluing, loosening and ceassing of paine, as thus, *Rx.* the leaues of *malua*, *bismalua*, and violets, ana. *M. j.* or *M. ss.* the roote of *Althea*, the roote of white lillies, and the roote of ireos, that is, *floure de luce*. ana. *℥. ss.* or *℥. j.* floures of cammommill, melilot, and tops of dill, ana. *p. j.* seede of flaxe, and of fenugreke, or rather, meale of flaxe seede, meale of fenugreke, and meale of barley, ana. *℥. ss.* or *℥. j.* or you may measure it by litle handfuls, comin. *℥. j.* laurell berries, *℥. ij.* saffron, *℥. j.* or *℥. ss.* of duckes greace, goose greace, the marrow of calues shankes, fresh butter, oile of lillies, and oile of ireos. ana. as much as sufficeth; make a cataplasme. In this plaister are contained three intents and purposes: that is, mollifying, dissoluing, and ceassing of paine, as may be knowne by the matter contained in it. The quantitie of mollificatiues ought to be most, if there be greatest need of mollifying, and the quantitie of dissoluers ought to be most, if there neede to be great dissoluing, and so likewise of ceassing of paine. Therefore in the beginning of *Oedema*, as also in the beginning of euery abscession or course of ill humors, you must commixe together with mollificatiues some repercussive remedie, wherewith the member may be comforted. In the beginning of the augmenting, take most remollitiues, and fewest discussiues. In the end of the augmenting and state of the disease, take of both a like much. In the declination, take and apply onely dissoluers and looseners. In the making of this present plaister, you must put into it no stipticke thing; but if you do put in anie, put it in at the beginning of the flowing of the humour. But what medicines they be that haue stipticke vertue, and which do comfort the member, and also which do mollifie, and dissolue, you must seeke them in the tables of authors, as *Arnoldus* and *Sauanarolla*, and such like. Also there be plaisters made without oyle or greace, as is that common thing of crummes of bread steeped in cowes milke, & a litle sodden together with whites of egges, oftentimes mixed with a litle saffron, as ten or twelue chiues. And this Cataplasme we often vse for the cure of the gowt.

CHAP. XXII.

Of making Emplastrum.

Emplaisters are ordained and made for diuerse purposes, and the making of them is common as well to Physicians as Chyrurgians. They are made

made of gummes, oiles, greace, and dry medicines, commixed with some sufficient quantitie of waxe, or without waxe, if that the materials can thicken, and gather together of themselues. Emplaisters are applied to all parts of the bodie, but chiefly to the stomacke, for the same cause that ointments, cataplasmes, and *Scuta* are ordained. Now followeth the forme of an Emplaister for the stomack when it is afflicted with a cold distemper, by reason of the flowing of some cold substance, as thus: *Rx. Ceratum stomachi confortatiui Galeni. ʒ. ij.* of galingale, cloues, and red coral, ana. *ʒ. ʒ.* of wax dissolved, braied al together in a mortar with oile of masticke, or of wormewood as much as sufficeth. Commixte them and make a plaister spread vpon lether like a buckler, with a double linnen cloth, well stitched and basted as it ought to be. Also an Emplaister may be made of simples for the aforesaid intents, in this manner. *Rx. pure Ladanum. ʒ. vj.* masticke *ʒ. ij.* frankencense. *ʒ. j.* coriander prepared, red corall, drie mintes and galingale. ana. *ʒ. ij.* *Xib. aloes*, and maces. ana. *ʒ. j.* turpentine, *ʒ. ij.* waxe dissolved with oile of spikenard, or wormewood, or masticke, or roses, or of two or three of these, as much as sufficeth. Make it in a lump together, spread it vpon leather, and make it like a *Scutum* of double linnen with stitches and bandes, and lay it to the stomacke as it is requisite. Warne the Apothecarie to dissolve the gummes with wine and oile, afterward let him commixte the rest without the vse of any fire. *Ceratum stomachi confortatiuum Galeni*, is made of roses, wormewood, masticke, spikenard, waxe and oile of roses In hote causes and cholericke vomites, you may likewise make *Scuta* of cold simples, as of mirtles, coriander, coral, mastick which is temperat, *Psidia*, *balaustia*, also oiles, as of roses, mirtles, quinces, and of mastick. There are made emplaisters for the liuer, for the allaying of euerie distemper of it, to loosen the obstructions thereof, and to strengthen it also, as in this example following. *Rx. Ceratum sandalinum. ʒ. ij.* meate of quinces, *ʒ. j.* of masticke *ʒ. ʒ.* of coral. *ʒ. j.* of waxe dissolved with oyle of roses as much as sufficeth. Make it in a lump, and spread it vpon leather, like a Moone when she is beginning to increase, with a double linnen cloth, and with bandes, as it ought to be, and apply it to the liuer. Emplaisters also are made to cease paines, and partly to ripen Apostemes, and partly to resolve them, as in example. *Rx. Muscilaginis* of the seede of *Althea*, fenugreeke, and seed of flaxe, ana. *ʒ. iij.* barley meale, *ʒ. iij.* oile of white lillies, and the fatnesse of a henne. ana. *ʒ. ij. ʒ.* butter. *ʒ. j.* saffron. *ʒ. j.* the whites of egges in number *ij.* boyle the *Muscilagines* with a soft fire, and with the meale, and put in the whites of egges in the end. It doth soften and ripen all Apostemes congealed of a hote and cold matter, and it ceaseth their paine, in what part soeuer of the bodie they be resident. If you will appropriate this emplaister to all kinds of cold Apostemes, then adde to it *Ammoniacum*, *Bdellium*, *storax liquida*. ana. *ʒ. j.* and it will worke a maruellous and profitable effect.

A plaister for
the hot distem-
per of the liuer.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of making Vnguenta.

VNGENTA, in English oynments: And those which appertaine vnto Phisitions, are made to lenifie and assuage paine, to represent, shew, and

An ointment
for the stomack

Alind.

¶ *inguentum.*

assigne alteration and chaunging, to mollifie and dissolue knobbes and kernels, specially in the liuer, in the spleene, and in the stomack. The vertue of oyntments for other purposes and for other members belongeth to surgerie, the forme and making whereof is to be sought out of the Antidotaries. The forme of an oyntment to mitigate the paine of the stomack caused of cold, or by the presence of some such like substance, is in this manner R^x oil of mastick, spike and wormwood. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β cloues, *Xilaloei*, maces, and *Calamus aromaticus*. ana. $\mathfrak{d}$. j. *galia muschata*. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. or $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . if he be rich, because of the dearenesse thereof, of new waxe as much as sufficeth, make an ointment for the stomack, and a *Scutum* with cotton, and with bands, as it ought to be, and lay it vpon the stomack after the annointing. But to cease the paine in the stomacke comming of a hote cause, as of the flowing of choler, which often chanceth in feuers, vse this ointment. R^x oil of roses. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. oil of nirtles, or else of quinces. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . white sanders and red. ana. $\mathfrak{d}$. ij. or $\mathfrak{z}$. β . new waxe washed in endiue water, or in rose water as much as sufficeth, & make an ointment for the stomack. Also make a *Scutum* of cotton, and apply it to the stomack after the annointing. In ointments we do exceed or passe the quantitie of $\mathfrak{z}$. j. It is also to be noted, that some do wash oiles with the iuyce or the water of distillation of cold herbes in a hote cause, or in hote iuyces in a cold cause or disease. Moreover note, that many do thinke, that there should be no ointment nor cerate applied to the stomack without galingale, neither to the heart without mace or saffron, neither to the braine without *Spica Arabica*, nor to the liuer without *Spodium*, or sanders, or wormwood, or other such like things, thinking verily, the nature of the member to be preserued with restrainers, but yet not alwaies in the forenamed medicines. For that law and method is to be kept in all causes of contrarietie, which should be broken in medicines, if galingale were added to the aforesaid medicine, because galingale is hote. For twely the nature of the stomacke is strengthened sufficiently by the commixing together of stipticke things which are put into the aforesaid ointment, because truly they be temperate in heat, as it appeareth by their nature. Now followeth an ointment very profitable for hardnesse and knobbs of the liuer or spleene, wherewith those two members are most in danger, in this forme. R^x the roots of *Althea*, and the roots of white lillies. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. leaues of *Malua*, *Bismalua*, and violets. ana. M. j. of the floures of cammomill, melilor, and the tops of dill. ana. M. β . meale of fenugreek, of flax seed. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. gum *ammoniack*, called *Serapini*. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. *Bdellium* that is soft and whitish. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . turpentine. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. gum of pine tree, $\mathfrak{z}$. β . *Siorax liquida*. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. or $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. the marrowe of calues or Hartes shankes, if you can get it, hennes greace, and duckes greace, oiles of sweet almonds and of Ireos. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. β . or ana. as much as sufficeth. Dissolue the gummes with wine and a litle vinegar, and to the aforesaid oiles, ad too new waxe as much as sufficeth; then afterward take the said greaces and powders, or meales, or herbes, first sodden and brayed, and mixe them all together, and make an ointment. In this said ointment there be more things that doe mollifie, then there be that dissolue, because the matter of schirrous knobs doth chiefly require the same. If you will minister the aforesaid ointment for the hardnesse of the liuer, you may adde to it of the branches of wormwood, of roses, of squinance, or of spikenard to preferue

preferue the strength and nature of the member. If you will minister it to the spleene, you may mixe with it some *Tamariscus* barke, the roote of capers, or such like. If you minister to the hardnesse of the stomacke, ad too wormwood, red roses, *Calamus aromaticus*, mints and galingale.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of making a Liniment.

LINIMENTVM is an ointment that is soft and liquid, which hath in it little waxe or none at all. It is also made for the same vse that ointments be made for. The forme of a liniment to cease paine, (as in the pleurisie) is after this manner. *Rx.* oile of cammomill, and capons greace, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. $\mathfrak{ss}$. fresh new butter without salt. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. a little waxe washed, and make a Liniment.

CHAP. XXV.

Of making Frontale.

FRONTALE, or *Splenium*, be plaisters made to apply to the forehead, either to cease paine in the forepart of the head, or to cause and prouoke sleepe, or to cease paine in the head caused of a hot distemper, as it oftentimes changeth in feuers. Against cold causes make a *Frontale* (as *Galen* teacheth) of red roses steeped and soaked in vinegar, laid betweene two linnen clothes, of three fingers breadth, and in length from one eare to another: or make it for the same intent, after this fashion. *Rx.* red roses, p. $\mathfrak{ss}$. floures of water lillies and violets, ana. p. j. beronie, and melilot. ana. p. $\mathfrak{ss}$. put all betweene two fine linnen clothes, (if the patient be rich) or betweene two coarse linnen clothes if he be poorer: and make a *Frontale* well sewed (as it ought to be) for the forehead, and the temples: if you will prouoke sleepe, adde to the aforesaid *Frontale* the leaues of lettuce, or of new white poppie, or of *mandragoras* in the places & times that you may haue it, but there is but small store of these colde things. At all times you may put in the seedes of white poppie, or the barks of the heades of white poppie, or lettuce seed, or henbane seede, as in example. *Rx.* floures of water lillies, violets, and melilot, ana. p. j. floures of lettuce, or white poppie, ana. the 3. part of M. j. or of each of them. M. j. $\mathfrak{ss}$. seed of white poppie, $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. lettuce seed, dill seed, and white henbane seed. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. $\mathfrak{ss}$. bray all together and make a *Frontale* betweene the coarse or fine linnen clothes well sewed and basted in right order. To the former *Frontale* melilot and dill seed is added to comfort the braine, that it be not hurt with cold things. In the diseases called *Cephalalgia* comming of a cold cause, make *Frontalia* of hote herbes & floures, as sage, rosemarie, cammomill, beronie, briony, melilote, and such like. *Frontalia*, before they be layed to the forehead, are wont to haue some liquor powred vpon them, or to be ayred with some vapour; as in example. *Rx.* the waters of roses, betonic, and balme, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. of vinegar. $\mathfrak{z}$. $\mathfrak{ss}$. commixe them, and of the aforesayd waters, powre a little portion vpon a burning tyle, or some such like thing, and hold the aforesaid *Frontale* ouer the steame & smoke of the said waters. The forehead is oftentimes annoiued with many ointments seruing for the same vse and purpose that *Frontalia* do serue for, as in a hote cause, *unguentum populeon*, *rube di trochiscata* dissolved in water, is verie meet for this pur-

pose, & yet it is seldome in vse with them at Paris. Many Physicians in the old time, in a cold cause did annoint with *Mithridatum* and *Aurea Alexandrina*, and such like. In all causes (saith *Galen* 12. *libro Therapeutices*) you may conveniently annoint with *Oxyrrhodinum*, which is made of oyle of roses, and fixe times so much vineger, as in example: R. oyle of roses. ℥. j. vineger, ℥. ij. commixe them, stirring them in a plate: or else thus in hotter causes, when as without foresight the frenzie will breed, then we commixe cold things, as thus: R. oyle of roses. ℥. j. oyle of nenuphar. ℥. β. oyle of poppie, ℥. iij. iuyce of *Solatrium*, or lettuce, or white poppie, water of roses and of vineger ana. halfe an ounce, commixe them together, stirring them verie long in some peece of plate: and annoint the forepart of the head therewith, yea all the head, if there be inflammation of the braine.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of making Cucufa, and Semicucufa.

CUCUFA is made for the cure of the euill called *Cephalalgia*, which is a paine in the head comming of cold, and many times also to stop rheumē, as in example: R. *Sampfucus*, that is, marioram, rosemarie, stechados both of Araby, and yellow. ana. p. j. of red roses. p. j. drie citron barks, graines of Alkermes, ana. ℥. iij. maces, long pepper, quibibes and cloues. ana. ℥. β. Make a powder, and make a *Cucufa* betweene two fine linnen clothes, with a little cotton basted betweene, or with flax, or scarlet scraped, and giue it according to the measure. And if the paine lyeth most in the forepart of the head, put most of the powders or spices in that place: likewise if it be in the hinder part, do so also, and if the *Cephalalgia* be in all parts of the head, then commix them equally. But it is called *Semicucufa*, when we provide but for one part of the head. If we will stoppe rheumes, then we mixe with it stipticke things, or we make a *Cucufa* onely of stipticke things, either cold or hote as the cause requireth. Therefore we make a *Cucufa* with *miliū* burned, or not burned, mirtles, cypresse nuts, and *sandaracha* (commonly called vernice) viz. yellow oker, the barke of frankensence, and such like stipticke things.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of making Suffitens.

SUFFITENS (in English a perfuming) is made of drie things, to stop distillations which fall from the braine into the lower partes, and it is made of restraining medicines, as thus for example. R. red roses. p. j. masticke. ℥. β. vernice, that is, yellow oker. ℥. j. mixe them, and make a perfuming for the head, or thus: R. *miliū*. p. j. red roses. p. β. of vernice and *Olibanum*. ana. ℥. β. Commixe them and make a perfume for the head. Note that when the distillation falleth to the lounes, and thereof commeth spittle, then take no perfume by the mouth, because it shorteneth the breath, and letteth the spitting, and maketh the humours grosse and thicke: but you must perfume the couering of the head, or else perfume some wool, and apply it to the head.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.
Of making Collirium.

Collirium is a medicine that is ministred in a liquid forme to heale the eyes. Wherefore, because there be diuerse euils in the eyes, the Colliries are made of diuerse fashions: for you must vse one kind in the beginning of *Ophthalmia*, and another in the state of it, and another in the declination thereof, as it is also commonly vsed in the inflammations of other members. Therefore in the beginning you must make it of cold and stipticke repercussiuues, as the whites of egges, the sappe of quince seed, and *Psyllium*, and other things of like vertue: minister them alone, or else let them be first dissolued with conuenient waters, and afterward applyed, as in this example following: *Rx.* the white of one egge, and stirre it with rose water, or plantaine water, or with water of balme, or with all these waters, make a Collirie, and put into the eye that is pained. Or thus: *Rx.* the sappe of quince seede drawne out with plantaine water, or rose water. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. and mixe them with the white of an egge, and stir it a long time with a spatter, and make a *Collirium*. But if there be no paine nor rednesse in the eyes, but a certaine vncleannesse which ought to be dried vp, then it is good to make Colliries of tutty prepareate, and of Aloes washed, & of *lapis calaminarius*, & other such like things, which ought to be taken with some conuenient liquor, except it rather liketh you better to put into the eye the powders of them: for so they dry vp and wipe away the filthinesse the cleaner.

A Collirium in the beginning of Ophthalmia.

CHAP. XXIX.
Of making Nasale or Erthinum.

Nasale and Erthinum be medicines which be cast into the nose for many causes and intents, as to stoppe bleeding at the nose, to prouoke sneezings, to cause child-birth, or to bring forth the Secundine which is retained within after the birth; and furthermore it purgeth the braine. It may be made many wayes, as in drie powders, which must be snuffed or blowne vp into the nose, or it may be made liquide, and then you must annoint the nostrilles within, or you may make it whole & hard, and then it must be put vp into the nose. *Rx.* the hairens that be in a Hares bellie. p. ss. the saw-dust, or moinesse of willow. p. ss. bolearmoniacke, and *Sanguis draconis* powdred, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ j. cut the hairens very small & mixe them all together, and blow them vp into the nose, or dissolue them all with some stipticke water, or with the iuice of some herbe, or with the white of an egge, and adde to them also (if you please) *Balaustia*; or the rindes of pomegranates, or *Acacia*, all powdred, and with a linnen cloath, make a *Nasale*, and dip it in the aforesaid medicines, and put it into the nose. Sneezings are prouoked by drie powders, snuffed or blowne into the nose, which be sharpe and biting, as be these, pepper, pellitorie, stauesacre, and root of floure deluce powdred. You may commixe the said things with some liquor, annoint the nostrills, or take cloth or silke wound vp together, and dippe it in the aforesaid liquor, and put it into one nostrill, or into both.

A Nasale to stanch bleeding at the nose.

A Nasale to prouoke sneezing.

Of making Apoplegmatisinus.

APOPHLEGMATISMVIS is a medicine which causeth one to vomite vp fleame it prouoketh rheume out of the braine into the mouth, & it is good to purge the braine. Masticke is commonly vsed in this case, which being long holden in the mouth and chewed, it bringeth forth rheume and fleame. Also Sage leaues holden in the mouth doe likewise purge rheume by the mouth. Also make *Noduli* of pellitory, pepper, staefacre, roote of *Ireos*, and *Panax*, & hold them in the mouth. Furthermore make gargarismes of the same medicines. Also there are ointments made of the same things, wherewith the roote of the mouth must be annointed, for they by reason of their heat and tartnesse, do draw fleame and rheume into the mouth.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of making Distillations restorative.

DISTILLATIONS be made to sustaine strength and might, when the sicke is so weake, that he cannot digest any hard nourishment. Distillations are of a mixed kind, (that it to say) they are partly food, and partly medicines. They are made for many inrents and purposes: for some be made to restrain, as in the fluxe of the belly, some to alter or change, as when they are ministred for feuers to refrigerate, or in cold diseases to make hote: and some doe resist poyson and malignant humors, as in pestilent feauers, and they are made after this manner. R^x. conserues of *succorie*, of roses, of *Simphyum*, that is, comferey, of *Cornius*, of *Maua*, & of quinces. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. powder of Electuaries, *Diarrhodon Abitis*, and *Tria Sandali*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. trochiskes of *Carabe*, of barbaries, and of *Terra figillata*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.β. of red corall, and *Lapis hemaiten*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. water of the decoction of one capon or of two, alctred with plantaine, knotgrasse, moleyne, lettuce, seede of barbaries, *Sumach*, and *Omphacium*. ℞. viij. put all together in a Limbecke with the flesh of two chickens, or of two partriches, or of two turtle doues, or of one capon, or of more of these, and with the crums of one white loafe, or of two wet in rose water, and make a distillation in *balneo Marie* with a soft fire. R^x. of the aforesaid distillation ℞. β. iij. iuice of pomegranats. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. or $\mathfrak{z}$.j. β. sugar rof. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. cinamon elect. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. straine them (as *Hippocrates* teacheth) through a sieue, and let the sicke vie it euery houre. But if you will make a distillation to haue a cooling vertue, alwayes obserue the same order and portion that is spoken of before, and for the restraining conserues, adde to such as do coole, as conserues of water lillies, of violets, of roses, succory, and balme, and likewise cold Electuaries, as *Diamargariton frigidum*, and Trochiskes of *Camphora*, also alter the decoction of the flesh with lettuce, sorrell, purreclaine, scarioll, and such like. Moreouer you shall make a distillation restorative against malignant and pestilent feauers in this sort. R^x. conserues of violets, water lillies, balme, borage, and buglosse. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. barke of citron condite. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. roore of *Distamus* and Tormetill, roore of *Angelica*, and roore of gentian. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β. powder of *Electuarium Diamargariton frigidum*, all the Sanders, bolearmionicke, trochiskes of *Camphora*, wood of Aloes. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. scraping of yuorie, and Harts horne, maces, cinamon, cloues, and seed of *Cardus benedi-*

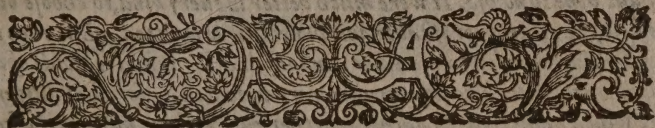
*A distillation
restorative re-
straining.*

Another.

A distillation
restorative cool-
ing.
Against ma-
lignant & pe-
stilent fevers.

ana. ʒ. j. of old triacle. ʒ. iij. the water of the decoction of two chickens, or of espous altered with sorrell, scabious, lettuce, borage, buglosse, quar. iij. put all together in a g'asen Limbecke, with the flesh of some things, and with the crummes of two white loaves infused in white wine, and make a distillation with a lent and soft fire, in conuenient order as is requisite; Another: or thus: *Rx.* of the aforesaid distillation. lb. ʒ. Syrupus de aciesitate Citri. ʒ. ij. commixe them together, and let the sicke vse it euery houre.

The end of the seventh Booke.



THE VIII. BOOKE OF COMPOVND MEDICINS.

THE PREFACE.



*W*e haue found by experience, that notable men in times past which haue become famous in the practise & exercise of Physicke and Chirurgerie, haue bestowed chiefe care and great diligence to store vp for their vse (as treasures) certaine peculiar remedies for euery hard maladie, both to increase and preserve the worthines and renownednes of their good name, by the prosperous successe of their labours. The which remedies, although euery of them provided to be made at home, and tooke them for secrets, yet notwithstanding in space of time and number of yeares, either by death, or intreaty, or for money, or through change, or other manifold meanes, they haue bene made knowne and published. Whereupon others the rather minding the publicke utilitie of men, thought good to gather together the dispersed compositions of medicines then euery where knowne, and endenoured themselves to transfer out of the most famous authors, the best and most receipts into their bookes of Physicke. And by these means truely did Seribonius Largus, Actuarius, Nicolaus Myreplus, and Nicolaus Præpositus, make their workes. By this industrie it could not but come to passe, that out of diuerse authours many receipts not

much unlike were taken tending to one end, as syrups of like effect, and many medicines of Aloe, nor fewer of Scammonie or Colocynthide, or Turpetho, all which differ onely in way of composition, or for the variety of certaine simples. And softning and scouring Electuaries also there be many, whose chiefeest force is of Aerugo, and which differ by a sole change of other simples, as is granted to every authors iudgement. So then many things haue bene heaped together; the most part whereof haue bene to no use. It were much better in every kind, to choose out the best, the other unprofitable and vnnecessarie omitted. But even in this heaping together of remedies, manie diseases remaine voides of all helpe, for the which no fit remedies were inuented: for that diligent care which many haue to gather together every where medicines (after a sort an imitator and follower of practicke) without choise or method had, doth apply neither fit remedies, nor medicines to the diseases, nor to the sensible griefe ioyned to the sicknesse, or to their causes, neither doth set downe the kindes of remedies according to the diuersitie of diseases: neither at any time weyeth what every composition hath, either profitable or to no use, neither pleasant or vsuoury, but receiveth and alloweth for the most part such receipts, as haue bene used of vnlearned men, commonly without regard of iudgement. And many of those likewise diuerse haue perueried and depraued, every man according to his iudgement, so that now there remaineth scantly any certaine kinde or trade of composition for Apothecaries, and that part of Physicke (as it is not ratified and establisshed) which is most necessarie for the cure of diseases: & whereas many haue indged well of the reformation of that part, I haue done mine endeuour, that the composition of medicines might be set downe in writing according to Art, as the simples haue bin in the bookes before. And what soeuer of them were profitable and easie for practise, might keepe their old formes: and what soeuer were amisse, by vpright iudgement might be brought to better perfection, so that nothing were either redounding or wanting, necessarie to take away the diseases affliction incident thereto, and cause thereof. Therefore I doe not take out all the compositions vsuall in old writers, but the best onely: and oftentimes I put too new, to fill my work with all kind of medicines, and I cut off many, which contained under those, make a confused heape: I haue kept their common names, but yet not with the same simples and doses every where: for as much as certaine in many things were to bee changed,

changed, to make the receipts more fit and pleasant for the cure of the malady: and at length, to doe the Apothecaries pleasure, I haue sorted and set in one place the sirupes, in an other the Electuaries, in an other the potions, and whatsoeuer else in their proper place, out of which they may be easily taken again, and applied to the practise and vse of curing.

OF SYRVPES.

Syrupus acidus simplex.

S*yrupus acidus simplex*: that is, the sharp simple sirupe, doth prepare all humours, as well hot as cold, and with a certaine force doth attenuate them, doth withhold or reſtaine the corruption, doth mitigate the heate of choler, and aſſuage the burning of agues and thirst, ſetteth at libertie, and ſcoureth the paſſages through the body obſtructed, and doth piercingly enter into all parts, as alſo after a purgation it moueth ſweat and vrine. *Rx. aquæ puriſſimæ. ℥b. iij. Sacchari albi. ℥b. v.* Boile them ſo long as they caſt out ſome or ſkumme, and to the conſumption of halfe the water: and then poure to them *Aceti vini albi ℥b. iij.* Boile them then againe to the thickneſſe of a ſirupe.

In Syrupum acidum Scholia Guliel. Plantij.

The barbarous titles and names, doe apparantly argue, that ſirupes and Iuleps and many other as well ſimple as compound medicines, were the inuentions of the Arabians. But many yeares before them, the old Grecians had of the ſame matter, and for the ſame uſe their *Apozemata*, (that is, decoction of water and herbs) in ſtead of ſirupes, which becauſe they were ſitly applied, as well to prepare the body as humours to purging, were of them termed *propotiſmata*; as if you would ſay, potions before purging, becauſe that according to the direct order of curing, they make a way for purging medicines. So *Galen in muſſo*, that is, wine and hony ſodden together, and *Oximellite*, that is, hony, vineger, and water boiled together, doth incoct *Origanum*, hyſope, pennyroyall, and calamint, to the preparing of the body to be purged. And if he be an author of credite, *Archigenes*, *Antonius Muſa*, and many other auncient Philoſophers did make ſuch like ſweete confections or potions for ſicke folke of the iuice of cicory, dill, floure deluce, and celidony, and ſuch like herbes, tempered together with wine and hony by decoction, for diuers diſeaſes of the liuer and other parts affected. And *Dioſcorides* did boile the rootes, leaues, and toppes of plants, and did ſtraine the liquor boiled, and then miniſtered it either alone, or elſe ſweetned with *muſſa* or hony, or to bring it out of knowledge did decoct it to the thickneſſe of hony. So that theſe three *Apozema*, *Syrupus*, and *Iulepus*, differ onely in the manner of conditure; that is, making them pleaſant to the taſte. For in *Apozema*, becauſe that ypon occaſion ſodainely and out of hand, for the moſt part it is ordained to be diſſeuered into three or ſoure parts, to bring it to a ſeaſonable ſweetneſſe, it ſhall be ſufficient if he take the third part of ſugar or hony, or ſomewhat more then the third part of ſugar, in reſpect of the ſtrained decoction and purified iuice. But the ſirupes,

to the intent they may be longer kept, require a perfect coction, and therefore it is meete to haue so much, or very little lesse sugar or hony, as there is of the strained decoction or purified iuice. But because the Iulep is more thinner, penetrating and pleasaunt then the two before, it shall be sufficient enough if it haue the sixth part of sugar, or in stead thereof the like quantity of a conuenient sirupe, so that there be somewhat more then two parts of the sugar, in respect of the decoction prepared, or distilled waters. To all these portions made of decoctions and the iuice of plants, and fruites, sugar and hony be mingled, not onely for their preseruatiō, or for their sweetnesse and pleasauntnesse in taste and sauour, but also for the proper force of hony and sugar, which they impart vpon these decoctions. For sith these two be almost daily vsed, and familiar vnto vs, not onely for sauce, but also as meates, both wayes the portions to which these shall be mingled, doe quicken and stirre vpe the naturall strength altonied, or dulled, and languishing in the sickenesse, and doe comfort the naturall heate, which alone doeth concoct and mitigate diseases; and by extenuating grosse matter, scouring slimie, and making a riddaunce of obstruction, they cause easie purgations: and these faculties come to the decoctions or potions of the sugar and hony, which decoctions notwithstanding of themselves doe much auaille to diuerse vses, the commodities whereof I will declare in describing eache of them, by obseruing that order which both the trade of compounding doeth require, and the methode of curing doth prescribe. For simple is by nature before the compound, and the right order of ministring medicines well beareth by order one thing to bee propounded and to be vsed before an other. We beginne this Booke of more simple medicines, and of such as by direct order of curing are vsed before others, minding to obserue the same order in all this booke, beginning with the sharpe simple sirupe: for in this place we speake not of *Apozemata* and Iuleps, but onely of such as are kept a long time of Apothecaries: and further, *Apozemata* agreeing to the diseases of euery part, haue bene handled before. And although *Condita*, commonly called conserues, and of herbes and fruites certaine well seasoned iuices, called of the Græcians *αποχυδες*, be more simple then syrups, and therefore might seeme the rather to be spoken of before, yet because for the most part they be ordained after purgations, to the keeping or getting of the strength of the partes, therefore my minde was to deferre them to another place, the methode of curing so requiring: and syrups were inuented to haue in a readines so oft as occasion chaunceth, because that herbes and other rootes, and fruites alwaies be not ready at hand, and sometime when they be at hand, necessitie so vrgeeth, that there is no leysure to make of them *Apozemata* and Iuleps. In the first place the composition of syrups is set downe, which are fit to prepare humours for purging, then after, such as be meete to purge the remnants of the parts, and to keepe or preserue their strength. And this generally of syrups. Particularly the sharpe simple syrupe was not to be made only of vineger and sugar, as other sharpe syrups be, but also of water, to mitigate the strength and sharpnesse of vineger. Heed must be taken that in stead of white vineger, distilled be not put in, which being most sharpe doth pierce and pinch the

other

other parts to no small annoyance of the receiuer. Heed likewise must be take that no more quantity of vinegar be put in: for this measure was thought meet and equall. But if any suspect the sharpnesse of the vinegar (lest through his piercing, cold bodies of tender constitution, as children and women, and in women chiefly, their wombe should be harmed: for according to *Hippocrates*, vinegar is noisome to the wombe) they may when they vse it by mixture of some sweete or distilled water, or some meet decoction, make the syrupe more delaied, or in stead of that vse *Oxy. saccharo*, a syrupe of vinegar and sugar. The sharpe compound syrupe is not here described, lest I should burthen the Apothecaries with vaine losse, for by putting too a portion of syrups to roores, it will be a compound seruing for the same vse. This was my purpose, to propound the best compositions of all other to euery chiefe kinde of disease, and cause that nothing should be wanting of remedy. But to heape together a vain friuolous heape of medicines euery where, after their fashion which do fill vnconsiderately papers, with vnknowne and vnapproued remedies, I thought it too much a burthen for Apothecaries, and a worke not plaine, but full of confusion for students.

Syrupus è succo limonum.

THe syrupe of the iuice of Limons, doth lesse then the sharpe syrupe extenuate and pierce, and yet the vehemencie of choler and heat of the bodie and thirst it more asswageth, and doth more restraîne the corruption of hore feuers, and the malady of pestilent agues, it defendeth likewise the strength of the mouth of the stomach, and heart, and principall partes, it expelleth lothesomnesse, vomiting, defection of the minde, and swooning for feeblenesse, peculiarly it purgeth the kidneis, and prouoketh vrine. *R. succi Limonum* purified, and going through a woollen streiner without compulsion freely. *℞. iij. sacchari albi* fined. *℞. v.* Boile these with a soft fire into a syrupe.

PLANTVS.

Syrups of Limons of the sharpnes of oranges or citrons, of tart pomgranats, of *auracm*, of vnripe grapes, of the iuice of sorrel, of the iuice of barberries, and of *ribes*, & all other tart or sharp syrups be made of iuices, which either by setting or by streining be made more cleare and pure. And to the iuyces is added like quantity of sugar or somewhat lesse without mixture of any water, because the sharpe tartnes of the syrupe, is nothing noisome, but pleasant & comfortable to the heart: and it should be delaied likewise with lesse sugar (as in *Iuleps*) if the iuices could be long preserved. There be some which purifie the iuices by setting, or by setting them in the heate of the Sun, and fining them with the foaming whites of egges, or else only by wringing them out lightly, as in wine coming of the grapes before they be pressed, called in Latin *vinum protopum*. And then with fined sugar. i. boiled with the like quantity of water, & after clarified, and at the last concocted to a Iulep, mixing by little and little the one with the other, they stir the with a spatter vntill they come together, & become as one, or they boile it a litle with sugar throughly & well sod, or else with the best sugar, such as the *maderanti* is, they boile it so long, vntill the sugar be melted and dissolued altogether. And hereof the syrupe of the iuice of Limons, of Citrons, the sharpe simple syrupe, and the rosate Iulep become very white. As for the

simple sirupe of pomegranates, barberries, of *ribes*, of red vineger to keepe the finenes of their natural colour, must not so long for mixture sake be beaten together with a pestle. And this order of composition in the iuices, chiefly of tart fruits taketh place: for other iuices of herbes, of roots, &c. require more preparation to the making of a sirupe, for they must be boiled twice, once by themselves almost to the consumption of the 3. part, after, when they haue beene purified with streining & seeling, they must be cōcocted with the best sugar to a sirupe, otherwise they do soone corrupt and become filthie. The sirupes that follow, made of sharpe iuyces are in force like the former, as the sirupe of the tart iuyce of Citrons, the sirupe of sharpe pomegranates, the sirupe of *Aurancijs*, the sirupe of *Omphacio*, i. vnripe grapes, the sirupe of the iuyce of sorrell. But peculiarly the sirupe of sharpe citrons doth quench the heate of an ague, and restraineth the corruption and malady thereof. The sirupe of pomegranates doth corroborate the stomach, and the chiefe entrals of a man, as the spleene, the liver, the lounge, &c. it restraineth vomiting, and mitigateth swooning. The sirupe of *Aurancijs* doth more comfort the heart, and is more pleasant. The sirupe of *Omphacio* doth more quench thirst. The sirupe of the iuyce of sorrell doth allay choler and open obstruction. The sirupe of *Ribes* is more sweete in tast and more astringent. The way or order of making them all is alike, for in the iuyce of euery one of them purged, a litle lesse sugar must be dissolued, and these two put in a tinne yessell, must be set on the fire, and boiled by litle and litle to a sirupe.

Oxysaccharum simplex.

O*xysaccharum simplex*, hath a mixed nature or force, both to attenuate, to abate, to dull, to corroborate or comfort, and is good against a diuerse mixture of humours, and vnsstable agues arising thereof. *Rx. Succī mali punici acidi. i. sower pomegranates. ℥. viij. Aceti. ℥. iij. Sacchari albi & puri. ℔ j.* Boyle them to the thicknesse of a sirupe.

PLANTIYS.

Oxysaccharum hath the same vertue that the sower syrupe hath, but not in like force, sauing it excelleth to comfort and roborate, and therefore the vse thereof is more safer in diseases chauncing in sommer, and tender bodies, then of the sharpe sirupe. Left so great varietie of sirupes should be retained in vain, I omit, *Oxysaccharum compositum*, *Oximeli compositum*, and *Oximeli scylliticum*. i. made of *Scylla*, for when they are thought good to be vsed, the Phisition may make and prescribe them speedily and fitly, *Oxysacchari. ℥. j. sirupi maioris & radicibus. ℥. ij. vel sirupi adianti. ℥. j. ℔.*

Oximel simplex.

O*ximel simplex*, doth extenuate grosse humours, and doth scour out slimy matter, doth open olde obstructions, doth expell from the chest thicke matter, and is good against *Asthma*. i. obstructions of the lungs with fleame, whereof ariseth shortnesse of winde, and rebellious agues. *Rx. aqua purissime, mellis optimi. ana. ℔. iij.* Boyle them vntill with exhaling halfe the water be consumed, and then poure in of *Aceti acerrimi*. i. very sharpe vineger. *℔. ij.* and let them be boiled againe by euaporation to a meete consistence. That which

is made more liquide, hath *aquæ purissime*. ℞. j. *mellis optimi* ℥. iiii. *aceti* ℥. j. ℞.
Let these be boiled by foming out easily their corruption.

Oxymel Scylliticum.

O*xymel Scylliticum*, doeth more forcibly attenuate grosse matter, and is good for all things we haue spoken of, and it is made of vinegar of *Scylla*, which is put to hony boyled and clarified by foming and sodde as the other, both become compound by putting too double portion of the sirupe *è radicibus maioris*.

PLANTIVS.

We haue lesse vse of *Oxymel*, that is, sweete vinegar, then the auncient Physicians hadde, who then hadde not inuented the sharpe sirupe, which (the power of cleansing onely excepted, wherein hony excelleth) sugar hath other vertues not much inferiour to *Oxymel*, and besides other effects, is verie good against agues. But sweet vinegar which euery where is in vse in Apothecaries shoppes, is very vsuauory, whether it be full of the too much grossenesse, coming of overseething thereof, or of the too much sharpenesse which is not so much qualified and dilled with the mixture of our honie as of sugar. For although you delay and dissolue that thicke *Oxymel*, with sweete water, or some set decoction, yet you shall neuer make it so pleasaunt to drinke as the soure sirupe. That which is made of many more thinner for present occasion, and is called *Oxymel Galeni*, is more piercing into euery part, and more pleasaunt. For whereas for the little boyling it doth not thicken, but the thinnesse of the water is therein retained, which the thinnesse of the vinegar doth further, and all the filthinesse of the honie partly by skimming, partly by clarifying is taken away: therefore it becommeth most thinne and most cleare, especially if it haue bene made with white vinegar and white honie: and with the little sharpenesse of vinegar, it becommeth nothing vnpleasant to the tast: but it is found by experience, that by too much vse, & too great a draught thereof, the stomach is annoied chiefly in those, whose mouth of the stomach is by nature feeling and sensible. Wherefore there is no safe vse thereof in agues, whether you make it sower or sweeter. Choose good hony which is betwixt thicke and thinne, most sweete and sharpe in taste, and therewith making a sweet tast, and biting the tongue (as it were) with pulling, in colour pale, or somewhat red and cleare, most fragrant and new, and which taken out and handled, for his clamorie humor is not dissuered or pulled into parts, heauie in weight or ponderous. Wherefore that which is in the bottome of the vessel is better then that which swimmeth aboue, and it doth cast vp little skum in boiling. But in our daies there hath bene brought the white and sweetest hony, and aromaticke indeede, most liquide and fluent, and making a white and hard crust vpon it, out of *Lusitania*, and *Gedano* to Antwerpe, hony as good as either the *Atticke* or *Siculum*: but they counterfait that honie (as many other things else) and forge another in stead thereof, by often washing and whiting, which deceit of theirs you may easily find out by the vnsweetnesse of smelling, and vnsauorinesse of tasting. Then next this both in goodnesse, and in colour, is the *Narbonense* hony, and in those regions, also our country hony, that which commeth out of the combes freely, and is commonly called Virgine hony, is

best. The worser honie by boyling is made better, and the vse of the skummed is alwaies fitter, except by long abiding in the stomach it swell it, and become vehement hore, and augment choler. Honie is good for children that haue no wormes, and for old men, for it causeth order and state, and stirreth vp and preferueth naturall heat, it prolongeth old age, and is euill for cholericke and yong men, because it is easily turned to choler.

Syrupus è Cichorio.

S*yrupus è Cichorio* doth coole moderately, doth comfort all the *viscera*, that is, principal partes within, as the heart, liuer, and loong, with an easie binding, and doth set at liberty the obstructions of the liuer, and other parts by scouring and opening, it doth quench choler, and maketh it meete for purgation, in the beginning of hot pestilent and vehement feuers, it is meete and wholesome. *Rx.* totius intubi *agrestis* .i. of the whole Cichory. *℥.iiij.* radicum *oxalidis graminis*, & *asparagi*, brused ana. *℥.ij.* *lichenis*, *eupatorii*, *intubi satiri*, commonly called *Endiue*, *se-viole*, *cicerbite*, *lactuce satine* & *agrestis*, *adiani albi*, *adiani nigri*, *adiani simplicis*, *sambisfragi*, *lupulorum cassutha*, ana. *M. j.* Boyle them in *x ℔.* of water, vntill it come to *vj.* in the streined decoction dissolue *sacchari albissimi* *℔.vj.* and boile all these together to a clarified sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas the sirupe of Cichory, of the description of *Nicolaus Florentinus*, or *Guilielmus Placentinus* is oft in vse, & both their sirupes do consist of a confused heap of simples, as wel cold as hot without order, & of reubarbe, that it is hard to tel to what vse they may be applied: not without good reason, the description is here chaged & framed to those ends which be here expressed in the title, to the which neither of the other can be applied for the hot roots. If it be desired to be somewhat tart or sharp, there may be mixed to it the third part of *acetosus sirupus*, or *oxy. saccharum*, or if it must be somewhat hotter, or more piercing, as against many diseases heaped together, so much or half so much of the sirupe of roots: if reubarbe must be at any time put to it, it rather seemeth meete to be put in thereto, at the time of vsing then making therof, because the vertue of reubarbe to spurge, both by boiling & long keeping, vanisheth away, and this sirupe made rather for preparation then purgation, and there is more strength of roborating in reubarbe, the that wel doth agree to a preparatiue porion. But neither in the time of ministring reubarbe can commodiously be intermixed, viz. the grosseffe of the sirupe hindring the operation of purging, either by making it very litle or else none at all: and for the same thicknesse the sirupe it selfe is not so effectuall for those purposes, for which it was described, as if it were dissolved and made more sweeter with some conuenient decoction, therefore they worke not for any commoditie of the sicke, but onely of losse which to euery pound of the sirupe do employ. *℥.j.* of Rewbarbe, and do not only double and triple, but also mixe by measure foure or sixe times so much, contrarie to the credite of all bookes which for euery pound do bid and will only. *℥.iiij.* to be mingled. And they also be farre wide which do affirme that this sirupe must be made of the only iuice of Cichory, no otherwise then the sirupe of the iuice of Citrin, for although therein they haue the trueth, when they account a heape of compound simples contrarie one to another, to be reiected in the composi-

composition of medicines, and therefore do refuse the compositions of *Gulielm. placenti. & Nicola. floren.* of Cichory as contrary, and made rashly, and without reason, yet notwithstanding the composition of the iuice of Cichory must not take place in stead of them, when as it cannot truly be ordained for that vse, to the which the sirupe of Cichory by experience is found to auaille, for whether when choler must be prepared to purgation or the stopping of the liuer and other parts must be opened, or you haue occasion to coole, and moderately roborate, as in the beginning of vehement and pestilent agues, which of these I pray you can this sirupe do or bring to passe, which first by much and long beating and hard straining is made thicker, and then after by it selfe boiled to the consumption of the 3. part, and after concocted with sugar to the grossefne of a sirupe, by euaporation hath almost lost all the vertue, as much almost becommes as meere sugar. It is farre otherwise in the decoction and iuice of fruites, especially sharp, as the iuice of Orenge, Citrons, Limons, Pomegranates, and such like, for they shed their whole force vpon sirupes, whereas neither by pressing their reuinitie, neither by concoction, they leese their faculty, as we haue noted in other places aboue. And decoctions because they haue the force of many simples, & for the water be more thin and fluxible doe not thicken, and leese their vertue in boyling: whereupon the sirupes consisting of these decoctions, be more meet and amiable to prepare the body to purging, but they which be made of their iuices after purgation (the body being now open & pliant) be better adiudged to those vses, (which I think) doth repeate in describing euery one of them.

Syrupus Intubi domestici.

Syrupus Intubi domestici, doth allay choler, doth coole the liuer, and purge and strengthen it, and cureth the iaundies and diseases comming of the obstructions of the liuer, very commodious after purgations: and when the matter of an ague and other diseases is after a sort wel and thoroughly digested. *Rx. Endiuia recentis, seriole, lichenis, lactuce, agrimonij, cicerbitae, hieracij. ana. M. j. ss. quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum. ana. ʒ. j. santali albi & rubri, contusorum rosarum rubrarum. ana. ʒ. ij.* Boile them in viij. pound of water to the halfe, to the strained liquor put of white sugar iiij. pound. Seeth them together all againe, and skum and fine them as they boile, adde thereto of the iuice of Endiue purged by setting. *℞. j.* Afterward of the pure iuice of pomegranats without dregs. *ʒ. iiij.* Boile them all together to the height of a sirupe.

PLANTVS.

The Author thought this sirupe of Endiue meete to be made and retained, although it were the inuention of an vncertaine Author, because it seemed to be described vpon good ground of reason, and therefore wil be more effectual, then if it were made of the sole iuice of Endiue, as many would haue it. After the body be purged, it auaileth al the diseases of the liuer, and to purge the residents of cholerick malladies, and chiefly necessary for the scab and the itch.

Syrupus Bizantinus.

Syrupus Bizantinus hath a mixed vertue both to addresse and purge the liuer and splene, and that after purgation. For the yellow and blacke iaundies.

and the remnants of agues especially good. *R. Succintubi satiri & apij. ana. lb. ij. succi lupi salicarij & buglossi. ana. lb. j.* In seething cleafe them till they waxe cleare, and make a sirupe with iij. pound of sugar.

PLANTIVS.

The interpreter of *Meſua* denieth the vse of the sirupe *Byzantine* in agues before the seventh day, for commonly immediately at the beginning of composid agues, the Phisitions vse *Sirupus acetosus simplex*, with the decoction of fennell, and the third part of hony roset. But after purgation, because it mightly scoureth the reliques of the diseases *Hepaticke* and *Splenaticke*, this sirupe *Byzantine* is good to cure all maladies of both the forenamed intrals, which be hard to be dissolued and rebellious to be cured, as the blacke and yellow iandies, especially by putting thereto sirupe *radicibus*. The compound is omitted, because it doth deprave the force of the simple, and hath too much vineger.

Sirupus Scolopendrij.

Sirupus Scolopendrij doth extenuate, mollifie, and make fluent grosse and searthy melancholy, it openeth the stopping of the splene, and doth abate the swelling thereof, and is speciall good for melancholy quartanes, and continuall agues. *R. Polipodi & quercu. radicem vtriusque buglossi, corticis radicis capparis, corticis thamarisci, singula. ʒ. ij. scolopendrij veri. M. ij. lupi salicarij, cassie, capilli veneris, melissophylli, singula. M. ij. Coquantur in aque. lb. ix. vntill there remaine v. put to the streined decoction, of white sugar. lb. iij. Boile them to a fined and cleare sirupe.*

PLANTIVS.

Sirupus Scolopendrij, the author here to this place hath referred well and for great vse made, because there was no sirupe of the old Phisitions description meete to prepare earthy and massie melancholy. The true *scolopendrium* or harts tongue is *Asplenium Dioſco. & officinarum ceterache*.

Sirupus è radicibus.

Sirupus è radicibus doth scour, extenuate, and prepare slimy and grosse sleame, it openeth the obstructions of the liuer, and all the other entrals. it asswageth swellings, taketh away the euill colour of virgines, prouoketh vrine, and doth quite make an end of agues hardly dissolued and old diseases. *R. radicem apij, feniculi, petroselini, ruscii & asparagi. ana. ʒ. iij. radicis capparis & rubie. ana. ʒ. ij. Coquantur in lb. x. hydromelytis diluti, that is, dissolued vntill they become to lb. vi. & cum sacchari. lb. v. make a cleare sirupe.*

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there be confected of rootes two sirupes, one of the two rootes parcell and fennell he omitted of set purpose as nothing effectuell and easie to be come by, if need require, and thought meete to retaine the other of siue as of greater vertue: to which he hath vpon good consideration added the rootes of *Capparis & rubie*, that it might be more effectuell for diuerse vses. He omitteth vineger, because for the most part it is desired without it, and if need require, a portion of the sharpe sirupe may easly by prescript be mingled thereto, and somewhat likewise it may be tempered with the mixture of other sirupes.

Sirupus

Sirupus Adiantinus.

Sirupus Adiantinus doth with a moderate heate easily and gently deuide and scour all humours alike, in what part of the body soeuer they be, agreeable to euery disease beginning, euery nature, age, region, and women with child. R. *Adianti albi*. M. iij. *Adianti nigri*, *adianti simplicis*, *saxifragi*, *betonice*, *pimpinellæ*, *aspleny*. ana. M. ij. *Coguantur ex aqua*. ℞. viij. vntill they consume to v. And in the pressed decoction, dissolue or melt *sacchari albi*, ℞. iij. *mellis optimi expurgati*. ℞. ℞.

PLANTIVS.

Sith there is no artificiall description extant of maidenhaire, this is commodiously intermingled amongst the other which is compound of chosen simples auailing altogether to diuers effects by their temperature. Wherefore this sirupe of all other for his manifold and diuerse vse, is of most operation, *polichrestus*. i. very good for the diseases of al parts, especially of the breast, the liuer, the splene, the kidneys, and al diseases of the wombe in all ages & natures. And the prerogatiue also thereof is such, that it doth make soluble whosoever vseth it any space, and it doth not only prepare humours, but also purge them when they be prepared, and especially grosse fleame and choler, as certaine new Phisitions and we also haue obserued in practise oftentimes: the which effect likewise the decoction *omnium adiantorum*, but especially the white hath, although contrariwise *Diosc.* teacheth that it bindeth. But they which do mingle either raisins or liquorice with *adiantis* into the sirupe, do restraine the large & ample nature thereof to diuerse vses to some peculiar effect, and by mixture do dull the force thereof in extenuating and scouring. They should therefore more fitly make this sirupe of the sole decoction of *adiantinorum*, which might be reserued as a common matter for euery kind of griefe, and then they might apply it as need required to the diseases of this or that part. As for example, to the breast affected, with raisins and liquorice decocted; for the liuer, with the decoction of *Agrimony* or *cichory*; for the splene, *asplenij* aut *tamarisci*; for the kidneys, such things as prouoke vrine and breake the stone: for so by a fit and meet decoction, the common nature of the sirupe may likewise be applied to some one part, and his strength augmented, which in the sole sirupe described is very much effectuell. These compositions of sirupes haue bene meete to prepare bodies to purgation: now we must teach what sirues be good to purge the reliques of euery part.

Sirupus è stœcade.

Sirupus è stœcade is wonderfull good against the cold diseases of the braine, & nerues or sinewes, as *Paralysis*, i. the palsey, *Epilepsia*, the falling euill, *Comulso*, the crampe, *tremori*, i. quaking & distilling out of the head when it lieth. R. *florum stœcados*. ℞. iij. *thymi*, *calamymbes*, *origani*. ana. ℞. j. *saluie*, *betonice*, *florum rorismarini*. ana. ℞. ℞. *seminis rutæ*, *peoniae*, *feniculi*. ana. ℞. ij. Boile them in x. ℞. of water till the halfe be consumed when the decoction is strained, boile it againe to a sirupe with hony and sugar, of each ij. pound, and condite it with cinnamon, ginger, *calamus aromaticus*, of each. ℞. ij. which being bound vp in a course cloth with open threads, must be hanged in the sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Sirupus scædæ, because it was not good in working for the head, he hath not without cause put other certaine things, as sage, betony, rosemary, the seeds of rew, piony, and fennell, very profitable for sundry diseases of the braine and sinewes, otherwise I see not wherefore this sirupe ought much to be applied or ordained for the diseases of the braine, sith *scædæ* which is the chiefe in this discription, and is as it were the *basis*, that is the ground of the sirupe, is rather *hepatica*, that is, good for the liuer, or *splenica*, that is, good for the spleen, then *cephalica*, that is, good for the head. For it is chiefly commended for the stopping of all the intrals, the which with his thin and hote substance, it doth easily open and with the other somewhat astringing earthy quality, doth corroborate all the inward parts. If you want *Calamus aromaticus* for to make it sweet in taste, in stead thereof may be vsed *nux muschara*, which hath singular force to comfort the braine.

Sirupus rosarum siccarum.

The sirupe of dry roses doth mitigate the hot diseases of the braine, it asswageth the thirst, strengtheneth the stomacke, causeth sleepe, and stayeth thin defluxions, *R. aque simplicis* ℥.iiij. in the which being made bloud warme, foke xliij. houres red roses dried ℥.j. and after this be strained, dissolve therein white sugar ℥.ij. this done, boile them to the substance of a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Certaine Phisitions thinke good to renew the infusion of dry roses twice or thrise, to the intent (as they suppose) the force of the sirupe might be augmented: whereas notwithstanding one onely infusion is for that purpose as effectually: for in three infusions it is necessary that great store of water be vsed, as for a pound of roses, viij. pound of water, otherwise with manifold maceration the water will either be drunke vp, or with forcible straining will become too thicke, and as for the vertue and strength of the roses, the sirupe will as much draw and drinke vp by one infusion as by many, as it chancess by salt when it is dissolved in water. This sirupe is auailable in euery fluxe of the belly, and it is of like operacion in comforting and strengthening the parts of the body, in agglutinating vlcers, and in mundifying them mildly, both by it selfe, and also ministred with other things.

Sirupus Nymphae.

This sirupe of *Nymphae* mitigateth the heate of the head, frensies, & watchings, procureth sleepe, and lastly asswageth the sharpnesse of distillations, *R. florum Nymphae recentium* ℥.ss. *florum violarum* ℥.ij. *foliorum lactuce* ℥.ij. *semi lactuce* ℥.ss. Adde to these before the boiling, *portulacæ* ℥.ss. & *cucurbitæ* ℥.ss. Boile them in foure pound of water till one be consumed, and when it is strained, put thereto of distilled rose water ℥.ss. white sugar ℥.iiij. and boile them to a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

The simple sirupe of *Nymphae* is omitted as nothing commodious, and as for the compound sirupe, according to the description of *Franciscus Pedomontanus*,

tamus, by reason of sundry seedes, vineger, and the iuice of pomegranates, it is nothing convenient nor commodious to worke those things, for which it is required. Wherefore vpon good occasion, here is described another very easie and profitable to those vses which are propounded in the inscription. The floures of that *Nimphae* which hath yellow floures and white root, is to be preferred in the composition of this sirupe.

Sirupus de papauere.

Sirupe of poppy hath the same vertue that *Nimphae* hath, but peculiarly it staith a grieuous cough and such distillations as do exasperate the iawes and throte, R. *capitum papaueris albi* not thoroughly riped and new. ℥. viij. *Capitum papaueris nigri recentium*. ℥. vj. *Aque celestis*. ℔. iij. boile them to the consumption of halfe, and put therinto *Sacchari & penidiorum ana*. ℥. viij. Boile them to the consistence of a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

In the simple sirupe of poppy, there be fewer heads of the blacke poppy put in, because it cannot so safely be vsed as the white: as for the compound sirupe of poppy, hauing many lenitiue things, it is therefore omitted and not put in practise, because when necessity requireth it may easily be prepared, by putting too this sirupe, or the sirupe of iuiubes or of violets.

Diacodion.

Diacodion as it procureth sleepe, so it abandoneth the distillations of the braine whithersoever it presseth, it staith the *dysenteria* and other fluxe of the belly. R. *Capita papaueris albi* meanelly great and meanelly ripe numero xij. *Aque celestis*. ℔. ij. Boile them to the third part, and when it is strained, put thereto of the best *Sapa*, that is, new wine. ℥. iij. boiled to the third part, *mellis optimi*. ℥. ij. Boile all these together: put in the end of the decoction, *rosarum rubrarum, balaustiorum, acatie, rhois culinarij tritorum ana*. ℥. ij. *seminis portulacae, coralli albi & rubri ana*. ℥. j.

PLANTIVS.

Diacodion is brought into a better forme, seruing to stay distillations by reflecting, certaine vnneccessary and vnpleasant things. *Dio* to the same purpose boileth the heads of poppy alone in water, to the consumption of halfe, & then putting thereto bony and the iuice of *Hypocistis*, he reduceth it to the consistence of an *edigma*. As for the heads of the poppy, they must neither be too Greene, nor through drinesse too much void of iuice, but when they begin through a Greene kind of ripenesse to rattle, they must be gathered for this composition. Whereupon they be rearmd of the Grecians (*Kai d' anes & Kai dea*, that is, the whisking heads of the poppy). For that this composition through too much thicknesse may be vnpleasant to some, when it is to be taken, it may be dilayed with the decoction of barley, or some other thing of like conueniency: and also if sleepe must be procured, or daunger be imminent of a sharpe and thin fluxion of exasperation, both to stay and assuage that, you may lawfully augment the force of *diacodion* with a fresh decoction of the seeds of poppy, or with the thicke iuice strained out of the decoction of barley. Neither is it to be dread lest harme should betide to the body by poppy, notwithstanding

It be recorded by authors to be cold in the fourth degree, such that sundry nations do use with meats after the fashion of herbes, the tender springs of poppy, and do feede of an oile pressed out of the seeds thereof: and in preparing dainties, they sprinkle the seeds thereof vpon tarts and cakes made to please the taste without any annoyace or heauinesse through sleepe. And in such like order the Egyptians use to make the taste pleasant, *Oleum sesaminum* & *sesamum*. And *Petronius*, grounding vpon that custome vsed in the Latine tounge, for an eloquent and pleasant oration and composition of words, to say, all his sayings and doings are as it were sprinkled with poppy and *sesamus*. For both the liquor of poppy, called in Greeke *Opium*, and the iuice wrung out of the leaues and heads teamed in Greeke *meconium* consist not of an vniforme, but of manifold substance, one watery and very cold, another airy temperate, the third hote, bitter, and sweet smelling. The first is more apparant in greene and tender poppies, the two last in dry. As for the *opii* or rather *meconium* which is brought to use, it is altogether counterfeit, and through a secreet quality is noysome, and therefore in no case to be vsed, though it be neuer so artificially corrected. For whereas *opium* is by great labour in litle quantity confected of the milke of the seedes of wild poppy, and *meconium* without any trouble is abundantly pressed out of the leaues, the factors which seeke after gaine and lucre, may easily counterfeit *opium*, or in stead thereof bring out of *Apulia* and *Spaine*, *meconium*.

Sirupus violarum.

THe compound sirupe of violets doth mitigate a sharpe distillation, doth assuage horsenesse, grievous cough and roughnesse of the arterie, doth ease the pleurisie, and doth quench thirst. *R. florum violarum recentium. ℥ij. Seminis Cydoniorum, & malua. ana. ℥ij. Zizypha, myxaria. ana. in number 20. decocti cucurbitae vel seminis eius. lb. v.* Boile them to the halfe, and with lb. ij. of sugar, compound them to a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

In this compound sirupe there is nothing changed, because he thought it compounded artificially, seruing commodiously by smoothing, cooling, moistening, against all the heate and roughnesse of the arterie, as also it appeaseth the vehement burning of the vrine, and the vehement torments of the reines: for the herbe and leaues of the violet boiled, haue a ripening faculty in them, the seede is good to purge choler in such wise as rewbarbe doth: in the midst of the floure there is a thing somewhat yellowish, which is recorded to be helpfull for the *Angina* and the *Epilepsia* in children, if it be drunk with water. The floure of violet and a simple sirupe made of it, by infusion once or twise, doth mitigate, assuage, & scoure scorching & sharpe humors, & therefore is very necessary in a pleurisie, & bringeth vnder black burnt choler, & the noysome vapours arising thereof, and thereby doth set at quiet the *symptomata* arising thereof, namely, the headach, watchings, and dreaming, and expelleth the heauinesse of the heart: it temperateth hotter and drier medicines by mitigating them commodiously. Whereas then these qualities be singular, the sirupe confected of the infusion of fresh violets, may be iustly registred amongst the sirupes seruing to many uses. This infusion wrung out of pleasant

or well smelling violets; dried somewhat in the shadow, as it becometh, and soaked in luke-warm water, if it be boiled with very good sugar to the consistency of a sirupe, may be kept the continuance of a yeare and more without any filth or corruption, to the uses tofore repeated, & is to be taken both before and after purgation. As for those which reiterate the soaking of the violets and roses nine times in the confection of the sirupe of violets and roses, they labor in vaine, for they cannot become lesse effectuell in working, though they vse (at the most) infusion but foure times, as we will declare to Apothecaries in the forme of making medicines. As for the sirupe of liquorice, it seemeth nothing commodious, because it is of little vertue, and for that it is contained in the sirupe of hysope; and such great variety of sirupes bringeth rather confusion then commodity to students.

Syrupus Zizyphorum.

Syrupus Zizyphorum, accomplisheth the same which the sirupe of violets doth, but with more efficacy, both of them are convenient in the beginning of the disease. *R. Zizyphorum mīm. lx. myxaria nūm. xx. storum violarum, adianthi albi, hordet a cortice liberi, glycyrrhizē. ana. ʒ. vj. semi. malvæ, cydoniorum, semi. papaveris albi, melonum & lactuce, tragacanthæ, ana. ʒ. iij.* The seedes of cydoniorum, of mallows, and tragacanth bound in a coultie cloth, must be boiled with the rest in *℞.vj.* of water, to the consumption of half, and then with *℞.ij.* of white sugar to the substance of a sirupe.

Syrupus de Hyssopo.

Syrupus de Hyssopo by a gentle and light mitigation, doth purge and ridde the breast and lungs of all hot and cold maladies, doth coniect the spittle or fleame, and maketh it more easie to be avoided, by attenuating and scouring it. And lastly, is good as well for the aggrievances, as approaching or inclination of peripneumonia or pleuritis. *R. Hyssopi arefacti. ʒ. j. ʒ. radicum polypodij quercini, feniculi, glycyrrhizē, semi. carthami. ana. ʒ. j. hordet exurgati, adianthi albi. ana. ʒ. ʒ. ʒ. passilatorum purgacardum. ʒ. j. ʒ. ficus sicca, palmuli & pingues. ana. x. noma.* Boile them in *℞.vj.* of water to the consumption of half, and boile the strained iuice thereof into a sirupe, with a pound and a halfe of hony, and sacchari *℞. j. ʒ.* make a sirupe.

PLANTIVE.

The description of the sirupe of hysope, remaineth vnvaried, saue that in stead of the roote of smallage, there is substituted the roote of polypody, and for the roote of parcelly, the seed of garden saffron; which be much more fit and commodious. Certaine mitigatives be abstracted which be sufficient enough in the sirupe of violets and *Zizyphorum*, the rather to make the force of the sirupe more scouring.

Syrupus de prassio.

Syrupus de horehound curtieth mightily, attenuateth, scoureth, and purgeth the diseases of the breast and the liuer, it is excellent good against inveterate diseases of grosse and stinky fleame, as for *asthma, tussis vetus, empiema*, and also is available for peripneumonia and pleuritis already inclined. *R. Prassii albi recentis. ʒ. ij. glycyrrhizē, polipodij quercini, radicum apii & feniculi. ana. ʒ. ʒ. ady-*

anisi albi, hyssopi, origani, calamintae, flabes, satureia, tussilaginis. ana. ℥. vj. semi. anisi, & bombacis. ana. ℥. iij. uuarum passiarum expurgatarum. ℥. ij. ficus passas pingues. x. numer. Boile them in viij. pound of Hydromel delaied, to the consumption of the halfe, boile the strained iuice into a sirupe with bony lb. ij. and white sugar. lb. ij. Season and sweeten it with an ounce of the powder of the roote of the Florentine floure deluce.

PLANTIVS.

The sirupe of horehound seemed confused of so great a mixture of lenitiue, scouring, and cutting simples, that it was difficile to declare to what vse it serueth, which may be also affirmed of many other sirupes, which be gathered out of diuerse Authors without any methode or reason. Wherefore sith before hath bene propounded the sirupe of violets and *Zyphorum*, for moistening & sufficient lenitiue; and the sirupe of hyssope for scouring moderately, cutting & purging the diseases of the breast, the Author thought it necessarie vpon good ground, to annex this sirupe of Horehound, being of a very good deuinding and scouring faculty, thereby the rather to cure extreame and rooted diseases, which notwithstanding who so will, may temper with the mixture of the other.

Sirupus Symphyti.

Sirupus Symphyti, doth purge mildly and easily the quieture and filthinesse of consuming and vlcerrated lungs, without feare of any issue out of blood, and doth also corroborate the lungs. *R. radicum & cymarum symphyti maioris & minoris. ana. M. iij. rosarum rubrarum, betonice, plantaginis, pimpinelle, polygoni, scabiosae, tussilaginis. ana. M. ij.* All being bruised fresh, you must straine out a iuice, which must be boiled and skummed to lb. iij. and make a sirupe thereof by putting thereto of white sugar. lb. ij. ℥.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there was no sirupe yet extant at any time, or set out in vse for the consumed and purulent lungs: in so great scarcity this profitable sirupe of comfery was vpon good ground of art here to be placed.

Sirupus e succo Buglossi.

Sirupe of the iuice of buglosse, doth especially comfort and cheere the hart, and maketh a riddance of the quivering and swooning thereof, and is very good for melancholy and mad persons. *R. Succi buglossi defecati*, that is, purified. lb. iij. *Sacchari albi. ij.* Boile them to the consistance of a sirupe. The sirupe of the iuice of garden buglosse, of the iuice of violets, of the iuice of peaches, be all cordiall, and are made all one way.

PLANTIVS.

Nothing was to be changed either in the sirupe of wild or garden buglosse, or in the sirupe of the iuice of violets, or in the iuice of peaches, or of the barkes of oranges, but there was great occasion to adde the sirupe of Balmemint, because there was none in vse which did make a riddance of the diseases of the heart, and take away the annoyance of pestilent and of venomous diseases.

Sirupus

Syrupus è cortico Cytij.

THe sirupe of the barke of the orange, doth reuiue and exhilarate the heart being heavy, and the trembling thereof of any cold cause, and driueth away sorrow. *R.* *Corticum citriorum malorum recentium*, infused or prepared in *℔. j.* of water. Boile them in *vj. ℔.* of water till *℥. iij.* be consumed, and with *℥. iij.* of white sugar make a sirupe, and condite it with *gran. vj.* of muske.

Syrupus Melissophylli.

Syrupe of balmemint is of all other the best, for the tembling and ouercastring of the heart, and of a peculiar power, it abateth the malignity of pestilent and venomous diseases, and maketh ariddance thereof. *R.* *radicum dielamni, pentaphylli, betanice, daronici romani, ana. ℥. ℔. foliorum melissophylli, staves, & morisus, florumbuglossi viriusque & rorisimarini. ana. M. j.* Semi. *oxalidis, citrij mali, feniculi, atracitidis*, that is, *cardui benedicti, & cimi, ana. ℥. iij.* Boile them in *℔. iij.* of water, to the consumption of halfe, and being strained, put thereto *℔. iij.* of white sugar, of the iuice of balme and rose water. *ana. ℔. ℔.* Boile all this into a sirupe, condited of cinamon and red saunders. *ana. ℥. ℔.*

Syrupus è menta.

Syrupe of mint doth heate the stomach moderately, and doth corroborate it with an easie adstriction, it helpeth concoction, abateth lothsomnesse, vomit, chincough, and lyentery. *R.* *Succi cydoniorum dulcium, succi cydoniorum acidodulcium*, that is, tart. sweet, *succi granatorum acidorum, succi granatorum acidodulcium. ana. ℔. j. ℔.* Mixe these together and infuse *℔. j.* of dry mint in them *xxiiij. houres*, of red roses. *℥. ij.* Boile them to the halfe, and when they be strained, put to them *℔. iij.* of white sugar, and to condite the sirupe, boile *℥. iij.* of gallia muscata bound in a cloth.

PLANTIVS.

In the greater sirupe of mint, nothing was to be varied, neither was the other lesse sirupe to be set downe, for that it is comprehended vnder the greater, and in the sirupe of wormewood nothing is to be changed.

Syrupus Absinthij.

THe sirupe of wormewood either purgeth or consumeth the reliques in the stomach, and doth recouer a chearfull colour, and get a stomach to those that be recouered of a disease: it riddeth the liuer of weaknes, & expelleth the iaundies. Lastly it corroborateth all the instruments of concoction. *R.* *absinthij romi. ℔. ℔. rosarum rubrarum. ℥. ij. spice nardi. ℥. iij.* Bruse them and infuse them *xxiiij. houres* in old & wel smelling white wine, and the iuice of quince peares, *℔. ij. ℔.* Boile them with a lent fire to the consumption of the halfe, then boile them againe with *℔. ij.* of white sugar to the thicknesse of a sirupe.

Cydoniorum Miba, that is, the iuice decocted to thicknesse.

CYdoniorum Miba, doth roborate the stomach and the liuer, furthereth concoction, procureth appetite, staie vomit and lientery. *R.* *succi cydoniorum desecati. ℔. vj.* Boile it with a lent fire to the consumption of the halfe, by foming litle and litle, then poure in of old and good red wine. *℔. iij.* & white sugar *℔.*

liij. and boile them againe to the thicknesse of hony, condite it with one dram and a halfe of cinamon, of cloues, and ginger. ana. ℥.ij.

PLANTIVS.

This *Miscydoniorum* is a meane betwixt the simple and the compound, and hath the vertue of them both.

Syrupus Myrtinus, that is, of the myrtle.

S*yrupus Myrtinus* corroborateth the stomach & the intrals, staieth an old issue of the belly, all eruption of blood, and euery distillation of the braine. *R.* *Baccarum myrti.* ℥.ij. *℞. lantali albi, & boi culinarij, balauflorum, baccarū oxiacāthe, rosarum rubrarum.* ana. ℥. j. *℞. mespilorum.* ℥. ℞. Bruise them all, and boile them in viij. ℔. of water to the third part, and to the strained decoction, put of the iuice of quince pearces, and pomegranates. ana. ℔. ij. sugar. ℔. v. Boile them together according to Art.

PLANTIVS.

Syrupus Myrtinus retaineth the old composition: and the sirupe *Byzantinus*, for that after purgation it seoureth all the reliques of the hepaticke diseases, may commodiously be referred to this place.

Syrupus fumariæ.

S*yrupe of Fumitorie*, seoureth from blood, salt and exust humours, it taketh away itch, skabbe, tetter, leprosie, and all the diseases of the skinne, asswageth maligne and fistulous vlcers, the canker and Elephantiasis. *R.* *Endiuie, Absinthij roma, lupuli, cassiæ, Scelopendrij veri.* ana. M. j. *Epithymi.* ℥. j. ℞. Boile them in ℔. iij. of water to the consumption of halfe, and put to the strained decoction, of the purified iuice of Fumitory. ℔. j. ℞. *Succi vtriusq; Buglossi.* ana ℔. ℞. *Sacchari albi.* ℔. iij. Boile this sirupe to a good subsistence.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there be many descriptions of the sirupe of Fumitory, there seemeth none more fitter or more easie to be practised then this to purge impure blood. The sirupe of the iuice of both the Buglosses, of the iuice of violets, and the sirupe of balmemint do also appertaine to the splene.

Syrupus è malis odoriferis.

The sirupe of mellow apples, abateth the noysome vapours of melancholy, pacifieth and asswageth feare, sorrow, and madnesse, and exhilarateth the patient. *R.* *Succi malorum acidodulcium, & fragantium.* ℔. iij. *Succorum violarum, buglossi domestici & siluestri, aquæ rosarum stillatitiæ.* ana. ℔. j. Boile them together, skumme them and straine them, and adde thereto white sugar. ℔. vj. boile them vnto a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

It were ridiculous to haue the sirupe of apples onely made thereof, without addition of other iuices seruing for melancholy or blacke choleser.

Syrupus Althææ.

The sirupe of the water mallow, doth cleanse mildly and gently the grosse obstructing steame of the kidneis, the slimy and purulent quitture, and their sandy grauell without sensible heate: further it asswageth the insensible heate of the vrine. *R.* *Radicum althææ.* ℥. ij. *Cicerum rubro.* ℥. j. *passarum ruarum*

expur.

expurgatarum, radicum graminis & asparagi, glycyrrhizæ mundatæ. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . Cymarum, that is, the tender croppes, Althææ, maluæ, helxiner, pimpinellæ, plantaginis, & dianthi vtriusque. ana. $\mathcal{M}$. j. quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum & minorum. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ iij. Boile them in vj . lb . of water till lb . ij. be consumed, and with lb . iiij. of sugar make it a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas the sirupe of water mallowes was tofore neuer described, and yet according to euery mans opinion there is great vse thereof, it could not more commodiously be made for the vses for which it is propounded.

Sirupus Raphani.

THe sirupe of radish, doth more forcibly scoure the kidneis and the bladder, breaketh the stone, forceth out grauell, and prouoketh vrine suppressed. $\mathcal{R}$. Radi. raphani domestici & sylvestris. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. radicum saxifragi, rusci, leuistici, Eryngij, auonis, petroselini, feniculi. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . foliorum betonicæ, pimpinellæ, pulegij, cymarum vrticæ, nasturtij, crithmi, callitrichi. ana. $\mathcal{M}$. j. fructus haliacabij, & Zythæ. ana. numer. xx semi. ocimi, bardanæ, petroselini macedonici, seselios, carui, dauci, liobospermi, corticum radicis lauri. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$ ij. vuarum passarum expurgatarum, glycyrrhizæ. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. vj . Boile them in a decent order in x . lb . of water, till the consumption of foure, of the which with sugar. lb . iiij. purified hony. lb . ij. a cleare sirupe must be made, condite it with cinamon. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. and nux muschata. $\mathfrak{z}$. β .

PLANTIVS.

Whereas no sirupe is found described to breake the stone and expell grauell, this sirupe of radish is substituted to great vse, which is aptly and conueniently compounded of these simples, which haue great faculty to breake the stone, with an intermixture of other lenitiue and scouring things.

Sirupus Artemisiz.

THe sirupe of mugwort doth prouoke mightily the suppressed floures, or auoiding more sparingly, which also the sirupe of *Adiantum* and hysope doth, but more mildly: this sirupe asswageth the strangling and ouercasting of the wombe. $\mathcal{R}$. Artemisiz. $\mathcal{M}$. ij. radicum iridis, hellenij, rubiæ, pæoniæ, leuistici, feniculi. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . pulegij, origani, calamintibus, nepitæ, melissophylli, sabine, sampsuchij, lyssopi, præsij, chamedrios, chamæpitij, hyperici, parthenij, betonicæ. ana. $\mathcal{M}$. j. semi. anisi, petroselini, feniculi, ocimi, dauci, rute, nigellæ. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. Bruse them and infuse them foure and twenty houres in eight pound of Hydromel, till three be consumed, and then after boile it with sugar. lb . v. into a sirupe, condite it with. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. of cinamon and $\mathfrak{z}$. iiij. of spice.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas in the sirupe of mugwort without consideration confounded, many things nothing apt for diseases of the wombe were contained, and sundry things which could not be got, or whose strength by boiling wasted, the author cut off such simples as vnnecessary and vnprofitable, leauing only the chiefeest and best.

Purging receipts.

M

Edicines prescribed for purgations of humours, although they be made in diuerse formes, yet it is much better then to reduce all into one place, orderly beginning at those which be most gentle.

Electuarium è prunis.

THe electuary of proines is maruellous lenitiue, mollifying the coſtiue belly, purging mildly and gently ſundry humours, very commodious in extreme heat of weather, and to all ages in burning of agues and thirst. *R.* radicū altheæ, polypodij è quercu, passarum expurgatarum, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. glycyrrhizæ mundatæ, semi. cnici, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. maluæ, violæ helxines, mercurialis ana. $\mathfrak{m}$. ij. Boile them in ten pound of water to the remnant of vj. In halfe of the strained decoction boile sweet proines, iuiubes, sebesten. ana. numer. xx scus passe pingues numer. x. Then let the pulpe passe through a siue. In the other halfe of the strained decoction boile solierum sennæ mundatorum. $\mathfrak{lb}$. j. β . and this being strained, mixe it with the pulpe with sacchari & mellis exspum. ii. ana. $\mathfrak{lb}$. β . then boile them to the consistence of an Electuary, sprinkling in the end cinamomi tenuissimè triti. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. Xinziberu. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. The dose is $\mathfrak{z}$. j. the whole composition is $\mathfrak{lb}$. iij. The doses be about xxviij. or xxx. The solid Electuary of proines hath the same vertue. *R.* pruna dulcis nume. x. maluæ, violæ, mercurialis, helxines. ana. $\mathfrak{m}$. j. polypodij è quercu, semi. c. erthami, radicis altheæ, passarum purgatarum, glycyrrhizæ. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . solierum sennæ mundatorum. $\mathfrak{z}$. x. Boile them in v. $\mathfrak{lb}$. of water till ij. remaine, then presse it in a presse, put sacchari rubri. $\mathfrak{lb}$. j. β . Boile them againe with a lent fire to the consistence of a solide Electuary, in the end sprinkling powder aromatici electuarij rosati maioris, ad $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. make tabella in weight. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . The whole composition is about $\mathfrak{z}$. xx. the doses be about xxx. Compound both these Electuaries together, and it will more forcibly purge from the furthest parts of the body all humors, especially both the cholers in this order. *R.* Electuary è prunis simplicis & recentis, & adhuc calentis, $\mathfrak{lb}$. j. In the which dissolve diadacrydy. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. The dose is from $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. to $\mathfrak{z}$. β . In one pound of the composition, the doses be about xxxij.

Solide Electu-
ary è prunis.

Plantij scholia in purgantes compositiones.

AS the sirupes, so the compositions of purging medicins be taken out euery where without all art, and put in bookes of Physicke, so that you may find two, three, or more of like effect, nothing aptly applied to the cure of diseases: wherof it is that the Author vpon good consideration, hath very much altered the compositions of purging medicins, the rather thereby to afford a convenient and commodious receipt for euery malady. How much those receipts which he hath set downe, retaining the ancient names of antiquity, do differ from the ancient receipts, or how much they be more auailable for the proposed diseases, euery man may vnderstand by estimation had of the faculty of the simples. For whereas Diaprunis both simple and compound described à Nicotao, should greatly haue refrigerated and bene applicable vnto agues, it containeth

taineth many vehement hore *Aromates*; which also in the compound doth exasperate it into the sharpnesse of scammony.

Catholicum simplex.

Catholicum simplex doth deduce and purge froe every part of the body mildly and gently all humors alike; nothing noysome either to children, old folke, or women with child, whether with an ague or without an ague. *R.* radicum *helenij*, *buglossi*, *cichorii*, *alibae*, *polypodij quercini*, *semi. enici contusorum*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. *stecados*, *hyssopi*, *mellisophylli*, *eupatorii veri*, *asplenij*, *betonicae*, *artemisiae*, ana. $\mathfrak{M}$. ij. *vasarium passarum expurgatarum*. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. *quatuor semi. frigidorum maiorum*; *semi. anisi*, *glycyrrhyze*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. Boile all these according to art in $\mathfrak{x}$. $\mathfrak{lb}$. of hydromel till vij. be remanent, in the strained decoction macerate xij. houres *foliorum semina mundatorum*. $\mathfrak{lb}$. j. $\mathfrak{ss}$. *Agarici albi*. $\mathfrak{lb}$. $\mathfrak{ss}$. *Zinziberu*. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. Boile them a litle, and in the pressed liquor, dissolve of the pulpe of *sebestens*. $\mathfrak{lb}$. $\mathfrak{ss}$. *foliorum semina mundatorum tenuissimiorum*. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. *Sirupi infusionis rosarum pallidarum*. $\mathfrak{lb}$. j. *mellis optimi expumati*. $\mathfrak{lb}$. ij. Boile them with a lent fire to the thicknesse of hony, insperging in the end, *rheibarbari electi*, *cinamomi electi*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. *santali citrini*. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. *nucis moschate*. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. the dose is $\mathfrak{z}$. j. the whole composition is $\mathfrak{lb}$. iij. the doses be about 50.

PLANTIVS.

This may be truly termed *Catholicum*, that is, vniuersall, for that it containeth medicines purging all humors and very agreeable, especially for all the inward parts, purging mildly and gently, it doth draw either nothing or very litle from the extreame parts. But the greater *catholicum* doth worke that effect forcibly and mightily; the composition whereof consisteth of all kind of medicines, which draw as well from the nigher as further celles, aptly confused and repressed in the ancient *Catholicum*; the reubarbe is not fully boiled, neither the *casta* which becommeth sharpe with the *thamaryndes*, and almost corrupteth the whole composition.

Catholicum maius.

Catholicum maius doth also draw all the humors vniuersally, and that more forcibly, not onely from the places nigh, but also farther off, without disturbance of the body or losse of strength. *R.* *quatuor semi. frigidorum maiorum mundatorum*, *semi. papaueris albi*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. *tragacanthae*. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. *rosarum rubrarum*, *santali citrini*, *cinamomi*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. *Zinziberu*. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. *rheibarbari selecti*, *diadacrydij*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. $\mathfrak{ss}$. *agarici*, *turpithi*. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. vi. *sacchari albi soluti in aqua rosarum*, in the which $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. of the leaues of *sene* hath bene incocted. $\mathfrak{lb}$. j. let tables be compounded of weight. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. the dose is one table, the whole composition is $\mathfrak{lb}$. j. $\mathfrak{ss}$. the doses be about 50.

Sirupus infusionis rosarum pallidarum.

Sirupus infusionis of white roses; doth easily draw from the principallest intrals thin choler and waterish humors, couenient in easie diseases for children, for old folke, and such as be enfeebled. *R.* *aqua infusionis rosarum pallidarum*. $\mathfrak{lb}$. v. *Sacchari expurgati*. $\mathfrak{lb}$. iij. Boile them with a lent fire to the thicknesse of a sirupe. Soke $\mathfrak{lb}$. ij. *rosarum pallidarum recentium* in $\mathfrak{lb}$. vi. of tepide water twelve houres and couer the vessell, and in stead of this likewise, substitute other fresh roses and these cast away, put in the water other new roses, the

third, fourth, eight, or ninth time, vntill the liquor haue imbibed much strength of the roses, in the which the sugar must be dissolved. Neither truly the sirupe of bruised roses, or of their iuice, will be so effectuell as this. There is also made a sirupe, which draweth and purgeth likewise choler and water, and killeth wormes, of the floures of the peach macerated in water, as I haue told you before,

PLANTVS.

The sirupe *rosarum pallidarum*, the Electuary of the iuice of roses and *diacydonion*, keepe their old order of composition without any manifest mutation, but in the Electuary of *diacaribamus*: for that the adiection of *manne granate*, *mellis rosati*, and *sacchari geminati* preuerred the perfect order of composition, the way of making it in this place is vpon good consideration omitted.

Electuarium e succo rosarum.

Electuarium e succo rosarum doth draw forcibly from places far distant, choler, thinne and aqueous humors, very commodious and easie to be vsed of those which be troubled with the gout, in case they haue not a vehement ague. *R. Succo rosarum recentium, sacchari albi, ana. lb. j. ss.* Boile the into a solid Electuary with a lent fire, and in the end sprinkle *trium santalorum*, *massiches*, *cinamomi exquisiti tritorum. ana. ʒ. ij. diadacrydy. ʒ. j. ss. caphure. ʒ. ss.* make tables in weight ʒ. ij. ss. The dose is one table, the whole composition is xxij. ʒ. The doses be about 70.

Diacydonion.

Diacydonion worketh the same that the Electuary of the iuice of roses doth, but more moderately and easly. *R. Pulpe cydoniorum expurgate colte & cribro transmissa. lb. j. ss. Succo cydoniorum. lb. ss. Sacchari albi ssimi. lb. ij.* Boile them to the thicknesse of hony, sprinkling in the end *cinamomi triti. ʒ. j. Zinziberis, maceris, charophyllorum. ana. ʒ. ij. diadacrydy. ʒ. ij.* The dose is from ʒ. iij. to ʒ. ss. the whole composition is lb. iij. the doses be about 90.

Electuarium diacnicu.

Electuarium diacnicu, doth draw and purge from the furthest places steame and serous humors, and also choler, and is especially good for paine of the head, sinewes and ioynts. *R. Pulueris electuarij diatrageantis frigidi modulle, semini cici, hermodactylorum. ana. ʒ. ss. rosarum rubrarum, succi glycyrryze, cinamomi. ana. ʒ. ij. turpetis. ʒ. j. diadacrydy. ʒ. ss. sacchari albi, aque rosarum soluti. lb. j.* make tables thereof the weight of ʒ. iij. ss. the dose is one table.

Diaphenicon

Diaphenicon doth mildly purge choler, crude and slimy steame, agreeable and conuenient in compound and continuall agues, and diseases arising of crudity, and also for the cholicke and flatulent paine. *R. pulpe palmularum mundatarum boiled in Hydromel, and fined in a siue, penidiorum recentium. ana. lb. ss. amygdalarum expurgatarum. ʒ. iij. ss.* When they be bruised and mingled altogether, put in to them *mellis expumati. lb. ij.* Boile them a litle, and then sprinkle *Zinziberis, piperis, maceris, cinamomi, soliorum ruta siccorum, semi fenuculi & dauci. ana. ʒ. ij. turpetis tenuissimè triti. ʒ. iij. diadacrydy. ʒ. j. ss.* The dose is from ʒ. iij. to ʒ. ss. the whole composition is about lb. iij. the doses about 130.

PLANTVS.

PLANTIVS.

In *Diphenicon*, *palmula* be rightly soaked and boiled in *Hidromel*, for that the ancient infusion which was prescribed to be done three daies in vineger, procureth a horrible sauor, many things also be subtracted, as the seed of louage, *pinei nuclei*, *galangae*, *xyloaloe*, for that there were many of the same faculty and operation, and the quantity of dates, penidies, and other gentle medicines is augmented, that thereby the whole composition might become more pleasant and easie to be vsed.

Benedicta.

Benedicta, draweth forth grosse and flegmaticke humours, and also serous from any part, it recelleth the matter of the stone, and displaceth the stones themselves, abateth paine of the reines, is very good for cold natures, and in cold weather. *R. turpethi. ʒ. x. diadacrydy, hermodactylorum, rosarum rubra. ana. ʒ. v. charophyllorum, zinziberis, saxifragi, semi. apij, scalis gemmei, galange, maceui, carui, feniculi, acinorum, asparagi & ruscii, semi. milij solis, quatuor semi. frigidorum maior. glycyrrhizae. ana. ʒ. j. mellis optimi expumati. lb. j. lb.* confect them according to art. The dose is from ʒ. iij. to ʒ. lb. the whole composition is almost lb. ij. the doses be about 50.

PLANTIVS.

The author hath vpon good occasion subtracted out of *Benedicta*, because it was too hot, and could not be easly & safely vsed in an ague, *spicam nardi, macropiper, cardamomum & crocum*, and hath placed in stead of those the foure greater cold seedes and liquorice.

Confectio hamech.

Confectio hamech, purgeth blacke choler, and burnt choler, & salt sicame, it is a peculiar remedy for the leprosie, the canker, the tetter, the *Elephantiasis* & *psora*. *R. corticis myrabolanorum citrinarum. ʒ. ij. cepularum, & nigrarum violarum, colocynthidis, polypodij quercini. ana. ʒ. j. lb. absinthij, thymi. an. ʒ. lb. anisi, feniculi, rosarum rubra. ana. ʒ. iij.* Bruise them all and soake them in whey lb. ij. then boile them to a pound, rub them in your hand and wring them. To the strained decoction adde the iuice of sumitory, the pulpe of proynes & raisins, ana. lb. lb. sacchari albi, mellis expumati, ana. lb. j. Boile them to the thicknesse of hony, sprinckling in the end *agarici, senne tritorum. ana. ʒ. ij. rheubarbari triti. ʒ. j. lb. epithymi. ʒ. j. diadacrydy. ʒ. v. cinamomi. ʒ. lb. zinziberis. ʒ. ij. semi. fumarie & anisi, spica nardi. ana. ʒ. j.* The dose is from ʒ. iij. to halfe an ounce, the whole composition is lb. iij. and ʒ. viij. The doses be about 80.

PLANTIVS.

In the confectio of *Hamech*, the *mirabolanes* be twise put in to none effect, first in the decoction, and after bruised; *reubarbele* leseth his strength & vertue being boiled, *Cassia, manna* and *thamaryndis* being boiled, do turne to putrifaction. The force of *scammony* being boiled wasterh, and is not with facility mixed with others. Wherefore the author hath set downe a much more conuenient, composition and easie to be vsed: this composition of all other is the best, and the most safest, for that in them the sharpnesse and feruency of *turbith* & *scammony*, is notably well abated, either by the mixture of the pulpe of proines or raisins,

Ff iij

or by *hermodactilis* and *amygdalis*, or with roses and their iuice, or *myrobalanes*. There be other receipts extant not so safe to be vsed; as *Electuarium indum viri* usque, *electuarium elschof*, *electuarium de psillio*, *diaturbith*. In the which the sharpnes of *scammony*, and other stronger medicins is little abated, yea rather by the mixture of the other hote things is quickned. Further, they containe nothing, or are of power to worke nothing, which other receipts here described do not bring to passe with successe. Wherefore to take away the causes of all effects, these receipts be auailable enough.

Hiera simplex.

Hiera simplex by purging choler and flicame from the stomach, intrals, hypo-
chondrium, and melintery veines impacted, and arridding forcibly and
mightily of redundancie, doth mildly help all diseases proceeding of cruditie
and obstruction of veines. R. *inamomi, maceri, asari, spica nardi, croci, mastiches, a-*
na, ʒ. iij. aloes w^o lot. e. ʒ. i. o. or. ʒ. i. j. & ʒ. ʒ. mellis optimi expumati, ʒ. iij. confect the
according to Art: the powder alone is ministred from. ʒ. i. j. to ʒ. iij. but being
receiued in hony from: ʒ. j. to ʒ. j. ʒ.

Hiera diacolocyntidos.

Hiera diacolocynthis which hath bene in stead of all other described of the
Ancient Physicians, by purging safely and gently all grosse and viscous hu-
mours, especially blacke choler and citrin waters, it is especiall good against
the palsey, quivering crampe, gout, and inueterate diseases of the nerues, and
also for the dropsie. Secondly, for melancholy, mania, epilepsie, scabbe, leprolie,
maligne vlcer, cancre, and Elephantiasis, which diseases do expugne gentle me-
dicines. R. steccados, marrubij, schamedrios, hyperici, scyllæ affatæ, polii, calaminthes mon-
tane, cinamomi, spice nardi, epithymi, polipodii quercini aridi, quatuor seminum frigidor-
um. maio. mundatorum. ana. ʒ. j. B. pulpe colocynthis, scamony, hellebori nigri preparato-
rum. ana. ʒ. ij. Euphorbij preparatæ, calbes, myrrhe, ammoniaci, opoponaci, sagapeni, ca-
storiei. ana. ʒ. j. mellis cocti in succo cydoniorum & expumati. lb. j. ʒ. iij. thereof are
ministred colocynthis, scammony, blacke hellebore and euphorbe, being bruised, must
be rubbed with oile of sweete almonds, and then are two daies to be soaked in
a muscelage of tragacanthum and gumme arabicke drawne out of rose waver,
till they haue drunke vp the muscelage.

PLANTIVS.

The ancient composition of *Hiera simplex* is retained, and nothing is altered thereof, saving *xylobalsamum*, which we cannot come vnto. Many compositions do consist of stronger simples, some of *scammony*, as *Electuarium e pruni*, *dyacodion* & *electuarium e succo rosarum*. Others beside be compounded of *Turbith*, as *Diaphenicon*: others be confected of *hermodactylos*, beside the two former, that is, *Turbith* and *Scammony*, as *Diancon* and *Benedicta*: others admit to their composition *Colocynthis*, as the confecton of *Hamech*: others likewise do further take to their composition, *Helleborum nigrum*, & *Euphorbium*: as *Hiera diacolocynthidos*, which is a peculiar kemedey of certaine diseases, but not vsuall. Hereby then it may be gathered, that there is no simple purging medicine practised or put in vse, of which there is not some receipt extant, so that for such purpose more are not requisite.

Hydrago-

Hydragogum minus.

HYdragogum minus, drawing out the water of drop sicke persons mildly without aggrieuance, may be safely vsed both of children, old folke, infecbled persons, and women with child, whether they be aggrieued with an ague or without an ague. *R.* *succi rosarum pallidarum.* ℞. *S. sarcari albi, mellis optimi.* ana. ℥. xv. Boile them till they cast a some and become thicke, and then put into them *succi radicis ebuli.* ℞. j. *pnassii sicci, sem. faniuli trii.* ana. ℥. ij. *acinorum, ebuli & sambuci.* ana. ℥. ij. *cinamomi.* ℥. vj. *maceris, galange.* ana. ℥. iij. Boile them with a lent fire to the thicknesse of honey. ℥. ℞. thereof is ministred in whey of milk, decoction of barley, or of raisins. It wil be more effectually by putting thereto of the iuice of wild Cucumber. ℥. ℞. or of the root of wild cucumber dried and bruised. ℥. vj. or of the iuice of the roote of our flower deluce. ℞. ℞.

Hydragogum minus.

HYdragogum minus of laureole mightily expelling water. *R.* *seis lactis.* ℞. ij. *sacchari albi, carnis cydoniorum ex aceto cōcolorum.* ana. ℥. x. *manne Calabrine.* ℥. v. Boile them with a lent fire to the thicknesse of hony, when they be ready to be taken off the fire, put into them of the leaues of laureole prepared in vinegar, and oile of sweete almonds. ℥. ij. It is ministred in the Dose of ℥. ℞. the maner of preparing it is in this wise. *Foliorum laureole.* ℥. ij. macerate them foure and twenty houres in vinegar of pomegranates or purcelane, boile them softly, straine them, drie them, and brule them, and then put into them of rose water ℞. ℞. of the oile of sweete almonds. ℥. j. ℞. Boile them againe untill the water be consumed, and the powder mixed with the oile remaining, is to be added to the consumption.

PLANTVS.

That there should be nothing wanting in these receipts, in the last place he hath adioyned to the precedent receipts, certaine compositions to expell the drop sicke water, notwithstanding more strōger simples specially *scammoni & euphorbium* do purge, yet the author his meaning was to haue some peculiar receipts extant of such simples as haue a proper and accustomed vertue against such redundancy of water, the one whereof is more gentle in working, the other of the leaues laureole is more forcible in operation, which leaues tofore haue not bene applied to the composition of any thing: any man may make coniecture by the mixture of the simples, how fitly such kind of compositions be applied to the expelling of such water.

Vnguentum e lathyride.

Vnguentum e lathyride softneth and prouoketh the belly, and draweth out vehemently the water of hydropicall persons, asswageth the swelling or distention of the outward parts of the body, betwixt the nauel and the priities called *Abdomen*, all which redundancy it doeth scoure downward from the womb, if the nauel and the lower part of the belly, and the parts about the priities and the thighs be therewith annointed, and it arriddeth all such matter vpward by vomit, if the stomach therewith be made sick. *R.* *Succi lathyridis.* ℞. ℞. *succi esule.* ℥. iij. In the which dissolve *radix cyclamini.* ℥. ij. *scammony.* ℥. ℞. *granorum recini & lathyridis expurgatorii.* ana. ℥. j. ℞. *Se. feniculi, ruta, anethi, baccharum lauri.*

ana. ʒ. i. Bruſe the all, and macerate the a day in the iuice: after that take *anum.* ʒ. viij. & *cer.e.* ʒ. iij. liquifie them, and diſſolue all the reſt in them by little and little, and boyle them with a lent fire vntill the conſumption of the whole water, and vntill they all be come to the temperature of an ointment. If the ſame matter be boyled in ʒ. xv. of oyle, to the conſumption of the liquor, the ſtrained oile will retain the ſame vertue. If either gum armoniacke, or waxe, be concorporated with the ſame ointment to the conſiſtencie of an emplaſter, that will cauſe iſſue of the water, being laid vpon the belly, but not ſo forcibly.

Electuarium diaſarum.

Electuarium diaſarum doth by vomite expell all kind of humours about the ſtomach and midriffe, not by a continuall inſult, but hauing intermiſſion ſafely, & with facilitie to be vſed both of aged perſons, & of women with child. *R.* Syrupi mente & violarum. ana. ʒ. viij. Boile them to the thickneſſe of hony, after they haue boyled (draw away the fire) inſperſe in radicū peponis areſacta, ſemi. raphani & vitice, macerated in roſe water, dried and powdered ana. ʒ. i. radicū aſari, contrite & creta. ʒ. ij. Cinamomi, ſemi. ſeniculi. ana. ʒ. iij. conſect them to a li- quide electuarie, and let ʒ. iij. thereof be miniſtred either out of barley wa- ter, mulſa, or whey of milke.

PLANTIVS.

The Author ſeemed much to haue furthered Phiſick by theſe laſt receipts, eſpecially by that which is allotted to procure vomite, for that in no Authour there was any extant wherewith we might ſafely purge the humours vpward. Whereas notwithstanding that kinde of euacuation is moſt neceſſarie to the curing of any diſeaſes. Whereas tofore we haue applied Electuaries both li- quide and conſiſtent: ſo now let vs referre pills to all kind of cauſes and diſeaſes. *Pilula è hiera ſimplici* be conſected with ʒ. j. of powder tempered cum melle roſato.

Pilula ſtomachica.

Pilula ſtomachica, which taken before meate, purge the ſtomach, helpe con- coction, cary the meate downe, and doe mildely purge. *R.* Aloes. ʒ. vj. ma- ſtiches, roſarum rubrarum. ana. ʒ. ij. make them coherent with ſyrupo roſato, or Abſynthij.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there be vj. deſcriptions extant of the pills of the ſtomach, all (this onely receipt excepted) doe hurt the ſtomach, and cannot conueniently be vſed before meat, becauſe they retaine in their confection ſcammony & Tur- bith, wherewith the whole body (but eſpecially the ſtomach) is much agrieued.

Pilula Ruſſi.

Pilula ruſſi, which be tearmed alſo *Pilula communes*, being often vſed, helpe concoction, and doe not ſuffer any putrifaction of the meate, do preſerue the humours and bodie from corruption, whereupon they doe much auaille a- gainſt the peſtiſerous ague. *R.* Aloes optime. ʒ. ij. mirrhe electa, croci ſynceri. ana. ʒ. j. mixe them with aromaticke wine.

PLANTIVS.

Taking by little and little, and as it were coaugmenting compositions from
pills

pilles which consist of sole Aloe, after he addeth other vnto them which consist of Aloe & rewbarbe, & immediatly such as do consist of Aloe and Agarick, then such as be confected of agaricke, aloe, & rewbarbe. And of those he com-pounderh other of agaricke, rewbarbe, aloe, and *fenna*: to which in fine he hath annexed *Pilulas sine quibus*, in the which beside the foure precedent, the vertue and infusion of Scammony rather then the substance is contained. In confecti-on wherof he hath withholden a portion of myrabolanes, for that the porti-o thereof being retained, there would be some redundancie, especially with other so many astringent simples.

Pilula assaieret.

Pilula assaieret for that they containe more Aloe then *Hiere*, be more effe-ctuall in working. *R. Pulueris hierae simplicis*. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. aloes. $\mathfrak{z}$.iij. or according to *Pul-lerius Cordus*. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. To whom I rather encline, *massiches*, *myrabolanorum cyruarum*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . reduce them to a masse with sirupe of *stecados*.

Pilula de Eupatorio.

Pilula de Eupatorio do purge choler mildly, and doe aridde the liuer of stuf-fing, and corroborat it, and are to be had in more price then the pills which be described to be made of rewbarbe. *R. Succi Eupatorii*, *succi absinthij*, *myrabola-ni citrina*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.iij. *rheubarbari electi*. $\mathfrak{z}$.iij. β . *massiches*. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. *croci*. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . aloes. $\mathfrak{z}$.v. *suc-ci endiuiae*, in quantitie sufficient to incorporate them.

Pilula massichine.

Pilula massichine, for that they containe Agaricke, doe more forcibly purge choler and grosse steame, then they which consist of sole Aloes. *R. massi-ches*. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. aloes. $\mathfrak{z}$.iij. *agarici trochiscati*, *pulueris hierae simplicis*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. β . Incorporate them with Malmesey. *Pilulae ex tribus* be confected of the same simples by addition of *rheubarbari selecti*. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. *cinamomi*. $\mathfrak{z}$. β . and incorporate them with sirupe of Cichorie.

Pilula Imperiales.

Pilula Imperiales do mildly and moderately purge out of the intrailles all hu-mours, and therewithall comfort and strengthen them, ridde them of ob-struction, and helpe the concoction of all partes, seruiceable to nourishment. *R. Aloes optime*. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. *rheubarbari electi*. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. β . *agarici trochiscati*, *foliorum fenae mun-datorum*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. *cinamomi*. $\mathfrak{z}$.iij. *Zinlebern*. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. *nucis muschate*, *caryophyllorum*, *spi-ee nardi*, *massiches*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. moisten it with the sirupe of violets, and bring them into a masse.

Pilula sine quibus esse nolo.

Pilula sine quibus esse nolo, do drawe choler, steame, and melancholie out of all partes of the bodie, but especially out of the head, eyes and senses, they assuage suffusions of the eyes, & preserve sight, they take away paine & noise of the eares. *R. Aloes optime*. $\mathfrak{z}$.xiiij. *myrabolano cytri*, *chebularum indarum*, *rheu-barbari*, *massiches*, *absinthij*, *rosarum*, *violarum*, *fenae*, *agarici*, *casturae*, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. *scam-monie*. $\mathfrak{z}$.vj. β . Dissolue the scammony in the iuice of fennell, as much as will suffice, and straine it through a cloth, and with the same iuice incorporate the fine powders.

Pilule de fumaria. *Pilule de fumaria* doe extract bilious, salt and sharpe humours, and doe correct what so is vicious or vnseemly in the skinn. *Re. myrabola, cyri. chibula. & indiana. ʒ. v. diadacridij. ʒ. v. aloes. ʒ. vii.* When all these be brused, imbrue them in the iuice of fumitorie, and permit them to drie three times, and in fine bring them to a masse.

Pilule Auree.

Pilule Auree be more effectuell in working then *Pilule de fumaria*, for *colocynthis* which they containe: they scour the head, & senses, but especially the eyes, and recouer the quicknesse of sight, they expell bilious, and also flegmaticke humours. *Re. aloes, diadacridij. ana. ʒ. v. rosarum rubra. sem. apij. ana. ʒ. ii. ʒ. Semi anisi & feniculi mastiches. ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. croci, pulpa colocynthis. ana. ʒ. j. misculaginis gummi tragacanth. q. s. and confect thereof a masse.*

Pilule de Agarico.

Pilule de agarico do mightily draw choler and stinky humours from all the partes of the bodie, but especially from the head and breast, peculiarly standing in stead against distillations and asthma. *Re. agarici, mastiches. ana. ʒ. ii. radici iridi, brassij. ana. ʒ. j. turpethi. ʒ. v. puluer. hiera piera. ʒ. ʒ. pulpa colocynthis, sacocolle. ana. ʒ. ii. myrrhe. ʒ. j. sape quant. suff.* the rather to reduce them to a consistent substance.

PLANTIVS.

In the pilles of Agaricke, there be orderly disposed all such excellent simples as auaille to draw out of the bodie grosse fleame, as well from the high parts as from the parts farre distant, in confecting whereof, the Author thought good to alter nothing.

Pilule coccie.

Pilule coccie doe from all partes of the body purge choler, but grosse fleame more effectually, yet peculiarly out of the braine and nerues, whose diseases especially they doe cure. *Re. Pulue. hiera simp. ʒ. x. pulpa colocynthis. ʒ. iiij. ʒ. dyadacridij. ʒ. ii. ʒ. turpethi, stacados. ana. ʒ. v. and confect a masse of those with syrupe of stacados.*

PLANTIVS.

Pilule coccie, notwithstanding they doe forcibly purge choler and fleame, yet they doe not purge all humours at once, as those pilles which be termed *Polydorese*, and commonly *agregatiue* maketh. The composition whereof differeth nothing from the auncient receipt, sauing for respect of the dose certaine simples be altered. The confectiō of those pilles is much more conuenient then *pilularum de ochorebis*, or then the pills of five kinds of *myrabolan*, which notwithstanding containe the same simples. The description therefore of those pilles in this place, seeme vpon good occasion to be omitted, for that they seeme to be contained vnder these, as *Pilule de Emphethio* be comprehended vnder *Pilule de Hermodactylis*.

Pilule ex hermodactylis.

Pilule ex hermodactylis, do draw out grosse & tedious humours mightily from the furthest parts, especially from the ioyntes, most agreeable in cold diseases

eases of the braine, nerues, and ioyntes. *R. Hermodactylorum, aloes, myrabolano, cytri, turpethi, colocynthidis, bdellij mollis, sagapeni. ana. ℥. vj. Castorei, sarcocolle, opoponacis, semi. rute agrestis & apij. ana. ℥. iij. croci. ℥. j. ℞. succi brassicæ, quan. suff.* to the confection of a masse.

PLANTIVS.

Pilule ex Hermodactylis do retain the ancient composition, and be of themselves more effectually against the inueterate diseases of the ioynts, then those which be termed *arthritica*, and more safely to be vsed then those which be called *Fetide*, or which be cōfected *de opoponace, de sagapeno, or de sarcocolle*, so that it were needlesse to set downe their receipts.

Pilule Polychrestæ.

Pilule Polychrestæ be verie auailable against all diseases of the head, the stomach, the liuer, and other fundrie compound diseases of the other intrals, for it draweth out of these partes fleame and both the cholers. *R. myrabolano, cytri, rhenbarbari. ana. ℥. ℞. succi eupatorii, succi absinthij, myrabolano, chepularum & indarum, agarici, colocynthidis, polypodij, ana. ℥. iij. diadacrydij, turpethis, aloes. ana. ℥. vj. mastiches, rosarum rubrarum, salis gemmei, epithymi, anisi, Zinziberis. ana. ℥. j.* confect them with syrupe of roses: they be ministred from ℥. iij. to ℥. j.

Pilule à Lapide Cyaneo.

Pilule à lapide Cyaneo, do excellently purge blacke choler and fleame, especially good against *Melancholia, sadnesse and madnesse*: against the canker, *Elephantiasis* and blacke morpew. *R. lapidis cyanei ablutij. ℥. vi. Epithymi, polypodij, ana. ℥. viij. diadacrydij, hellebori nigri, salis indi. ana. ℥. ij. ℞. agarici ℥. viij. Caryophyllorum, anisi, ana. ℥. iij. pulueris hieræ picæ simplicis. ℥. xv.* and confect a masse of them with the iuice of endiue or succorie.

PLANTIVS.

Pilule de lapide Cyaneo for the blacke hellebore vsed, be more practised then *Pilule inde*, which containe also hellebore: wherefore he hath described those, omitting others, and for that they be more effectually against melancholike diseases then *pilule de lapide armeno*, for that occasion he omitteth them.

Pilule à Thymelæa.

Pilule à Thymelæa do mightily drawe out of the bodie ferous humours, and water of hydropicall persons. *R. foliorum thymelææ exciccatorum, & acetomaceratorum. ℥. v. myrabolano flauarum. ℥. ℞. myrabolano cepularum. ℥. iij. manne & thamarindorum* dissolued in water of succorie, so much as sufficeth for the forme of pilles.

PLANTIVS.

Nothing is altered in *pilulis à Thymelæa*, and to them is added certaine aptly confectioned of *Esula*, and which are verie effectually to draw out water. I suppose he omitted as well *Pilulas lucis maiores* as *minores*, for that they be confusedly made of a great and vnnecessarie heape of simples, and for that *pilule sine quibus* be effectually enough for the eyes hauing any affect.

Pilule ex Esula.

Pilule ex Esula do purge from the wombe the droppe sicke water with great aggricuance, and therefore agree onely to strong bodies, and then onely

when they be free from agues. *R.* Corticis radicis, esule minoris macerated in vineger xxiiij. houres, and in the iuyce of purslaine. *℞. ij.* grana rectini purged & brused *xj.* myrabolanorum cyrinorum. *℞. j.* *℞.* camedryos, chamepyteos spice nardi, cinamomi. ana. *℥. ij.* bruse them all finely and incorporate them in *℥. j.* of raga-canth dissolued in rosewater, and so reduce them to a masse. They be ministred in the dose of *℥. ij.*

Pilula è Cynogloss.

Pilula è Cynogloss were not provided to purge, but to stay distillations: whether they issue to the breast and lungs with a cough, or into the teeth or elsewhere. *R.* myrrhe, *℞. vj.* thuris masculi. *℞. v.* opij, hyosciami semi. radicis cynoglossi aride, ana. *℞. ℥.* croci, castorei, ana. *℞. j.* *℞.* and confect a masse thereof with distilled rosewater. They be ministred from *℥. j.* to *℥. ℥.*

PLANTIVS.

Very sily is *Castoreum* added *pilulis è Cynogloss*, which with saffron hath a singular vertue to correct the malignitie of *Opium*, which tofore in this receipt hath bene inconsiderately omitted.

Pilule astrolochie.

Pilule astrolochie hauing great power to deuide & seoure, are very auailable against *Epilepsia*, *paralysis*, *asthma*, and veterated cough, the beginning of *Schirrus* in the liuer and reines, *Nephritis*, suppressing of the floures, it expelleth the childe and seconds, they be more meete in winter, and for moist natures when the bodies be purged *R.* Radicis astrolochie rotunde. *℞. j.* radicis gentiane, myrrhe electe, ana. *℞. iij.* aloet, cinamomi, ana. *℞. ℥.* *℞.* Zinziberis. *℞. j.* when they be all exquisitely pownded, put in new oile of sweet almonds. It is ministred in Dose. *℞. j.* *℞.* and the broth in which they be dilaid is all at once to be supped.

PLANTIVS.

Pilule astrolochie be last of all, commodiously added to the rest, and be excellently described, because they haue a great opening vertue. They may be made in such forme that they may be drunke, but because they be verie bitter, they be more easily deuoured in the forme of *Catapodium*.

Of Antidotaries: And first of such as be made in a solide forme, by taking where- of the principall parts of the bodie be comforted and strengthened.

Dianthon.

Dianthon doth comfort the infeebled braine, doth stay the distillations thereof, doth mitigate excessive melancholie, and extreme sadness, it taketh away quawling and ouercasting of the heart. *R.* foliorum rosmarini. *℞. ℥.* rosarum, violarum, glicirrhizae, ana. *℞. iij.* cariophyllorum, spice nardi, nucis muschate, galange, cinamomi, Zinziberis, maceris, ligni aloet,

aloes, cardomomi, anisi, sem. anethi. ana ℥iij. Sacchari albi aqua saluie vel betonicae soluti. ℥iij. ℥ss make thereof an Eleſtuarie in tables.

Eleſtuarium pleres archonticon.

Eleſtuarium pleres archonticon, doth maruellouſly comfort and ſtrengthen the braine, quicken the ſenſes, recover the decayed memory, and is very commodious for ſuch as haue the falling euill, and difficultie of breathing; it comforteth ſuch as be ſadde, or annoyed with melancholia, or diſturb'd with idleneſſe of the braine, it reſtoreth and recouereth ſuch as be conſumed through ſome long ſickeſſe. R. Cinamomi, cariophyllorum, ligni aloes, galange, ſpice nardi, nucis muſcatae, zinziberis, ſpodij, ſcænanthi, cyperi, roſarum, violarum. ana. ℥. j. ſoly aut maceris glycyrrhizæ, maſtiche, ſtyracis, calamintheæ, ſampſuchi, baſamice, ocimi, cardamomi, macropiperis, myrtillorum, cortic. um mali cytrij. ana. ℥. ℥ss & gr. vj. margaritarum ſplendidarum, ben albi & rubri, coraliij, ſerici combuſti. ana. gr. xvij. moſchi. gr. vj. Caphure. gr. iij. Sacchari albi aqua meliſſæ ſoluti. x. or xij times ſo much.

PLANTIVS.

That Antidotaries be ordained to comfort and ſtrengthen the parts principall: therefore he doth very fitly inſtitute their compositions according to the order of the parts of the body, beginning at thoſe which be good for the braine, and after annexing ſuch as be meete for the breſt and other parts.

Diatragacanthum frigidum.

Diatragacanthum frigidum is very commodious in al diſtempures of the lungs, and breſt, and is good for the peripneumonia and pluſie, a conſumption and hote cough with an ague. Laſtly for the roughneſſe and ſharpeſſe of the iawes and arteries. R. Gummi tragacanthi albiſſimi. ℥. j. Gummi arab. ℥. v. amili. ℥. ij. glycyrrhizæ, ſem. papaueris albi, quatuor ſem. frigido maior, corticis liberorum. ana. ℥. j. Caphure. gr. v. penidiorum. ℥. j. ℥ss. Sacchari albiſſimi aqua violarum ſoluti. ℥iij. Make thereof an Eleſtuarie in ſefferas.

PLANTIVS.

Diatragacanthum is good for cold diſeaſes, and hath the vertue of another composition termed *Diapapauer*, which therefore was here vpon good occaſion omitted.

Diaireos ſimplex.

Diaireos ſimplex doth by a mild attenuation arid the breſt and lungs of all diſtempures, and maketh more eaſie vttering of ſpitule, meete for hote diſeaſes increaſing, and ſuch cold diſeaſes as be not extreame. R. Radicis iridis ſlorentini. ℥. j. Pulueris Eleſtuarij diatragacanthi frigidi, ſacchari candi. ana. ℥. ℥ss. ſacchari albi, hyſſopi aqua ſoluti. ℥. xij. Compound thereof a ſolide Eleſtuarie.

Eleſtuarium Diaireos compoſitum.

Eleſtuarium diaireos compoſitum, auaileth much in hote diſeaſes beginning to bracke, and in inueterate cold diſeaſes, as the cough, *Aſthma*, and hoarſeneſſe. R. Radicis iridis. ℥. ℥ss. pulgij, hyſſopi, glycyrrhizæ. ana. ℥. iij. tragacanthæ, amigdalorum amararum, pinearum, cinamomi, zinziberis, piperis. ana. ℥. j. ℥ss. ſemi. lini, alibei & ſenugraci. ana. ℥. ij. ſacchari albiſſi. aqua tuſſitagini ſoluti. ℥iij. or ℥. xij.

PLANTIVS.

The compound eleſtuarie of diaireos is here placed in ſtead of diatragacanth.

thum calidum and *diapenidion*, and therefore they cannot here be put in but in vaine, and to the losse and hinderance of the Apothecaries. In this composition the Author did for *caricis, passulis, palmulis & styraco*, which were vnmeete for this composition, ordaine *femini lini, altheæ & fenugraci*, which do preuaile exceedingly in inueterate distempers of the breast.

Diacalaminthes.

D*iacalaminthes* doth attenuate rebellious and inueterate distempers of the breast and lounes, and the grosse and viscos humours in these partes. It doth scoure and cast out the same, dispatch winde, furthereth concoction and distribution of the aliment, and in fine, prouoketh the floures, vrine & sweate. *R. Calaminthes montane, pulegij, petroselinij, fefelios, origani. ana. ʒ. ii. seminis apij, Cymatum, thymi. ana. ʒ. ʒ. leuistici, piperis. ana. ʒ. j. Sacchari albiissimi, aqua violarum aut rosarum soluti. ʒ. ii. ʒ. make an Electuarie.*

PLANTIVS.

In this composition of *Diacalaminthes*, *origanum* seemeth very aptly added. In the other simples the Author hath imitated *Galen*s composition, and the weights and doses, saue onely in louage and in pepper: for the Author taketh of louage halfe so much, and of pepper the sixt part of so much as *Galen* did, for that the whole composition is but the fourth part of that which is described of *Galen* in the fourth booke *De tuenda valetudine*. And whereas in other Electuaries before described, which were gentle and not vnpleasent either in tast or taking, he receiued and tempered the powders with sixe or eight times so much sugar. In this composition truly which is very hote and vnpleasent to be taken, he hath allotted a doses of twelue times so much. Further this composition of *Diacalaminthes* may stand for these which be termed *diaphysopus*, and *diaprasus*, which may by good right grow out of vse as vnecessarie, lest the multitude should be troublesome.

Diamargariton frigidum.

D*iamargariton frigidum* asswageth the burning heate of agues, fortifieth & comforteth the heart, and preserueth it from an infectious contagion, deliuereth the affected from quawling and swooning, and lastly abandoneth sorrow. *R. quatuor semino, frigida. maio. mundatorum, seminis portulacæ & papaueris albi, seminis endiuie, oxalydis & citrij, trium santalorum, ligni aloes, Zinziberu, rosarum rubrarum, florum nymphaeæ, buglossi, violarum, baccarum mirri, ossis de sorde cerui, eboris, doronici Romani, cinamomi. ana. ʒ. j. corallij albi & rubri. ana. ʒ. ʒ. margaritarum splendorum, ʒ. iij. ambaris, caphuræ. ana. gr. vj. moschi. gr. ij. sacchari albi, aqua buglossi vel rosarum soluti. ʒ. ii. ʒ.*

PLANTIVS.

The rather that this Electuary *Diamargariton* might become more excellent and effectuell, the Author hercofouer and aboue the vulgar description, hath added (being made of an vncertaine author) the feedes of endiue and sorrell, *cytrij ebur, os e corde cerui, doronicum Rom.* and *cinamomum*: all which be apparantly good for the heart. There be diuerse Phisitions which haue put into this Electuarie, certaine portions of precious stones, but yet to no vse, for that all what so is comprehended in the Electuary *de gemmis*, which at any time may

commodi-

commodiously be mixed in the description thereof, this Electuary containeth, except a fewe hote Aromates and many cold simples, the rather to make a more safe vse thereof.

Electuarium de gemmis.

Electuarium de gemmis doth excellently comfort and strengthen the heart, and preferueth it in agues from malignant and pestilent putrefaction, doeth release the affected of quawming, beating of the heart, and voluntary sadness. *Rz. Margaritarum splendorum. ʒ. j. B. saphiri, hyacinthij, Sardy, that is, corneole, granatorum, smaragdi. ana. ʒ. ij. & gr. v. Zedoarie, daronici, corticum cytrij mali, maceris, scorum carioptyllati. ana. ʒ. j. corallij rubri, succini, eboris, ana. ʒ. ij. B. Ben albi, ben rubri, caryophyllorum, Zinziberis, piperis longi, spica indice, solij croci, cardamomi maioris, ana. ʒ. ʒ. B. trochischorum diarrhodon, ligni aloes. ʒ. ij. B. cinamomi, galanis, ge. ana. ʒ. ij. gr. v. foliorum auri, foliorum argenti. an. ʒ. j. ambre. ʒ. j. muschi. gr. xv. sacchari albi aqua rosarum soluti ʒ. xx. which is eight times as much as the rest of the receipt.*

PLANTIVS.

Electuarium de gemmis, comprehendeth almost all the kinds of the hote Aromates, and they be not much dulled or restrained with the fragments of the precious stones. Therefore it were much better to take from this Electuarie some part of the Aromates, especially *Ben album & rubrum, cardamomi maioris, piper longum & solium* which seldome can be gotten.

Electuarium diambre.

Electuarium diambre comforteth and fortifieth the hart, the braine, and the principall parts, and quickeneth the naturall heate in old folkes, chiefly in feebled persons and cold natures, it doth not onely further the concoction of aliments, but also of cold humors, and it driueth away all the coldnesse of the body and of the wombe, and therefore it is good for conception. *Rz. cinamomi, daronici Ro. caryophyllorum, maceris, nucis muschate, solij galange, ana. ʒ. iij. spica nardi, cardamomi maioris & minoris, ana. ʒ. j. Zinziberis, ʒ. j. B. santali citrini, ligni aloes, piperis longi. ana. ʒ. ij. ambaris. ʒ. j. muschi. ʒ. ʒ. B. euery ounce of the powder is receiued and mixed with lb. j. of sugar dissolued in rosewater.*

PLANTIVS.

Diambres seemeth to consist of all kinde of Aromates generally heaped and confused without any choise, as *diacuminum*, and *dianyson*, *diacynamomum*, *diacinziber*, *diarion piperion*, *diacilaloes*, *diarmargariton calidum*, *diamoscu dulce*, & *diamoscu amarum*. All which be vehemently hoate, consisting of hoate simples no whit repressed, so that all these seeme to be of like power and effect. Wherefore the Author omitting the rest, hath here placed the onely composition of *Diambre*, which may supply the want of the rest, lest the student in Physicke should be overcharged with multitude, and the Apothecarie sustaine great losse. But in this composition which is vehemently hote, as the rest be, in my opinion, it were best to take out of the receipt both the *cardamomum* and the long pepper, and to substitute in stead thereof *rosarum rubra. ʒ. iij.* for otherwise it can scarcely be vsed in hoate natures, when the weather is hoate and in other hoate seasons, in agues and hoate diseases, and the excessive heate also

of these simples hath beene occasion that the vse thereof hath beene vnpleasant, and that it hath waken out of vse as vnprofitable, euen as *Diatrion piperion Galeni* and *Diacalaminthes*. The Author therefore perceiuing this, hath vpon good occasion commaunded, that the powders should be tempered in twelue times so much sugar, thereby minding to make it more pleasant to the receiuer.

Puluis cordiacus.

Puluis cordiacus doth maruellously comfort and fortifie the heart, and preserue it from contagion in a pestilent constitution, and may be safely taken in a burning ague, and in hote weather, for that it is of a moderate heate. *R.* Radicum tormentillæ, dictamnii, tunicis & scabiosæ, sem. acetosæ, endiuie, coriandri præparati, se. citrij, rute, cardui benedicti. ana. ʒ. i. trium santalorum, ben albi, ben rubri, doronici Ro. ligni aloes, Zedoarie, cinamomi, cardamomi, maceris, croci, rosarum rubra. florum buglossi vtrinſque, florum nymphæe. ana. ʒ. ij. rasuræ eboris, spody, that is, eboris vsti, ossis e corde cerui, coralliij albi, coralliij rubri, succini, margaritarum spleu tidarum, smaragdi, hyacinthi, granati. ana. ʒ. j. serici crudi torrefacti, boli armeni, terre lemanie. an. ʒ. ʒ. Scaphure, moschi, ambaris, ana. gr. vj. reduce them to powder and make thereof tables, with eight times so much sugar dissolued in rose water.

Aromaticum rosarum maius.

Aromaticum rosarum maius, comforteth the stomach with a moderate heate, and furthereth the concoction of al the intrailles, correcteth crudity, consumeth vnecessary humours, dispatcheth wind, and is most meete for such as stand in state of recovery of a sicknesse. *R.* rosarum rubra ʒ. xv. glycyrrhizæ rasæ. ʒ. vij. ligni aloes, santali citrini. ana. ʒ. iij. cinamomi electi, maceris, caryophyllorum, ana. ʒ. ij. ʒ. gummi arabi, tragacanthæ. ana. ʒ. ij. ʒ. nucis muschate, cardamomi, galange, ana. ʒ. j. spice nardi, ambre. ana. ʒ. iij. moschi. ʒ. j. and make tables with eight times so much sugar.

PLANTIVS.

The vsuall composition of *aromaticum rosarum* the Author liked of.

Electuarium diarrhodon abbatis.

Electuarium diarrhodon abbatis, mitigateth the heate of the stomach and midriff, & yet notwithstanding furthereth their concoction, asswageth paine, and dispatcheth wind. *R.* rosarum rubrarum. ʒ. j. ʒ. santali albi & rubri. ana. ʒ. iij. ʒ. tragacanthæ, gummi arabici, eboris vsti. ana. ʒ. ij. mastiches, spice nardi, cardamomi, succi, glycyrrhizæ, croci, xyloaloes, caryophyllorum, galliæ muschate, anisi, feniculi, semi. citimi, acimorum berberis, sem. scariole, portulacæ & papaueris albi, quatuor semi. frigido, maiorum, rheubarbari electi, cinamomi. ana. ʒ. j. margaritarum, ossis e corde cerui. ana. ʒ. ʒ. Scaphure. gr. vij. moschi. gr. iij. make thereof tables with eight times so much sugar dissolued in rose water.

PLANTIVS.

From the *Electuary of Diarrhodon*, the author hath subtracted *asarum*, for that it doth ouercome the stomacke, notwithstanding it be powned lightly, and sugar candie likewise, for that it hath no more efficacie or vertue then white sugar. The *Electuarie of Diagalange*, notwithstanding it be commended of many against the cruditie of the stomach, yet it is not in vse for the excess.

siue

fiue heate: in place whereof if neede so require, may be substituted *Diambres* or *Diacaalaminthes*.

Electuarium diatrion santalon.

Electuarium diatrion santalon, correcteth the hote intempure of the liuer, and ariddeth it of the remnantes of obstructing matter, cureth the jaundies, it comforteth the liuer and stomach. *Rx. trium santalorum, albi, rubri, & citrini, rosarum rubra. ana. ʒ. iij. rheubarbari electi, eboris rstri, succi glycyrrhizæ, sem. portulacæ. ana. ʒ. ij. gummi arabici, tragacanthæ, quatuor semi. frigido maio. mundatorum, sem. intubi. ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. caphuræ. ʒ. j.* and eight times so much white sugar dissolved in rose water.

PLANTIVS.

Amylum is substracted and exempted from the *Electuary diatrion santalon*, as vnnecessarie, neither is the *Electuary Diacucubi* here repeated amongst the *Electuaries*, notwithstanding it be commended of diuerse against cold affectes and obstructions of the liuer, for that it hath no more effect then this *Electuare diatrion santalorum*.

Diacroc.

Diacroc, which is also commonly tearmed *Diacucurma*, dissolueth inueterate affects of the liuer and splene, & maketh quite ariddance of rebellious obstructions, and a hard tumour lately begunne. And lastly it cureth ill habite of the bodie proceeding thereof, and the originall matter of the dropsie. *Rx. croci, asari, petroselinæ macedoni. dauci, anisi, semi. apij. ana. ʒ. ʒ. rheubarbari, meui, spice nardi. ana. ʒ. vj. costi, myrrhæ, cassiæ lignæ, scænanthi, carpobalsami, radicis rubei, succi absinthij, succi eupatorij arefacti, olei balsami. ana. ʒ. ij. calami aromatici, cinamomi. ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. scoræ, scelopendrij, succi glycyrrhizæ. ana. ʒ. ij.* and ten times so much white sugar dissolved in endiue water.

PLANTIVS.

Diacroc containeth certaine rare simples and hard to be commed by, as *Cassia lignea*, *carpobalsamum*, and *opobalsamum*, which notwithstanding if they be omitted, the receipt shall be as effectuell to the purpose wherefore it is instituted.

Dialacca maior.

Dialacca maior is more effectuell then *diacroc* against inueterate obstructions of the liuer and spleene, against an ill habit, and in the beginning of a dropsie. *Rx. Laccæ præparate, rheubarbari. ana. ʒ. iij. spice indici, mastiches, stirpium scænanthi, absinthij roma. succi eupatorij, mesuæ, sabine, amygdala. amararum, costi, myrrhæ, rubæ, sem. apij, ammeos, fœniculi & anisi, asari, aristoteliæ longæ, aristoteliæ rotundæ, gentianæ, croci, cinamomi, hyssopi, cassiæ lignæ, summitatum scænanthij, bdelij, ana. ʒ. ʒ. piperis, Zinziberis. ana. ʒ. j. sacchari albi twelue times so much.*

PLANTIVS.

Electuarium dialacæ maior, *Pleres archonticon*, and the exhilarating *Electuarie*, do retaine the old order of composition, for that they seeme to be most fit for such affects as they be ordained for.

Electuarium exhilarans.

Electuarium exhilarans, the exhilarating Electuary is falsely ascribed vnto Galen, it driueth away sadness, melancholy, and euill cogitations, it quickeneth all the spirites, it helpeth concoction, augmenteth naturall heate, and preserveth the receiuer from hoariness of haire. *Rx.* Florum ocy mi caryophyllati, croci, Zedoarie, xylobalsami, aut ligni aloes, caryophyllorum, corticum cyrii mali, galange, maceris, nucis muschate, styracis, calamithe. ana. ʒ. ij. ʒ. anisi, scobueboris, thymi, epithymi. ana. ʒ. j. capivure, moschi, ambaris, margaritarum splendorum, ossis e corde cerui. ana. ʒ. ʒ. foliorum auri & argenti. ana. ʒ. ʒ. of white sugar eight times so much.

Electuarium diaspermaton.

Electuarium diaspermaton refrigerating and comforting the kidneis, and the conduites of the vrine and seede, doth mildly purge them from all corruption of humours. *Rx.* Quatuor semi. frigido. maior & minor. semi. asparagi, pimpinelle, ocy mi, & petroselini, granorum haliacabi. ana. ʒ. ij. milij soli, succi glycyrrhice. ana. ʒ. iij. cinamomi, maceris, ana. ʒ. ij. sacchari albi eight times so much, dissolved in the water of marriish mallow.

Electuarium λιθον θροπτικον.

Electuarium λιθον θροπτικον, that is, lithon thropticon, asswageth the paines of the lounes, displaceth the grauell of the kidneis and bladder, easeth the paine of the kidneis, and redresseth the restraint of the vrine, and wasteth and breaketh the stone by little and litle. *Rx.* spice nardi, zinziberis, cinamomi, melampiperis, cardamomi, caryophyllorum, maceris. ana. ʒ. ʒ. costi, glycyrrhizę, cyperi, tragacanthę, chamedryos. ana. ʒ. ij. semi. apij, amneos, asparagi, ocy mi, viticę, cyrii mali, saxifragi, pimpinelle, cardui, dauci, feniculi, rusci, petroselini macedoni, bardane & sefelios, asari. ana. ʒ. j. lapidis spongie, lapidis lincis, lapidis cancri, & lapidis Iudaici, ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. sanguinis hircini preparati. ʒ. j. ʒ. make thereof a powder, and temper it with ten times so much white sugar, dissolved in water of betonie, but when extremity of paine forceth, and the vrine is restrained, the sole powder is mintred, ex passcretico, from ʒ. ij. to ʒ. j.

PLANTIVS.

Electuarium diaspermaton we haue read described for many and sundry diseases, this notwithstanding which is very aply compounded vnder the same name, seemeth to auaille much against the heate of the kidneis, the scalding of the vrine, and other affects to which it is assigned. These simples be withdrawn and expuncted our of that Electuary, which they terme *Lithon dridion*, which in no place be found sincere and pure, and other astringing be added in their stead which doe hinder the breaking of the stone, and the displaying of the sand: sundry seedes and many stones, and the prepared bloud of the Goat is added, all which haue a singular power and force against the stone, and against all the symptoma which arise thereof, and if in any respect the heat be feared, it may be tempered with *Diaspermaton*.

Electuarium diacalaminthes compositum.

Electuarium diacalaminthes compositum, doth mightily prouoke the flours, and all purgations of the wombe. *Rx.* Pulueris electuary diacalaminthes simplicis, ʒ. ʒ.

℞. *B. foliorum prassij, sampsuchi, melissophylli, artemisiae, sabine aridorum*. ana. ℥. j. *yperii, semi. ruce & rubiae, maceris, cinamomi*. ana. ℥. ij. and twelue times so much of white sugar, dissolued in the water of feuerfew or pellitorie of the wall.

PLANTIVS.

The compound Electuarie of *Diacalamintes*, seemeth fitly added in the last place to the other Electuaries, for that there was no other meete receipt extant to purge the corruption of the wombe.

Of moist Antidotaries.

Antidotus analeptica.

Antidotus analeptica recovereth al the powers of the bodie enfeebled and wasted; it taketh away the griping of the heart, & the quawling and swooning, it restoreth the bodie extenuated either by profusion of blood, or by any excessiue euacuation, it helpeth such as be consumed and wasted, for that it humecteth; nourisheth, strengtheneth, and comforteth. ℞. *rosarum rubrarum, glycyrrhice*. ana. ℥. ij. gr. v. *gummi arabici & tragacanthae*. ana. ℥. ij. & ℥. ij. *santali albi & rubri*. ana. ℥. j. and ℥. j. *succi glycyrrhice, amyli, semin. papaueris albi, portulacae, lactuce & seriola*. ana. ℥. ij. *quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum, seminum cydeniorum, seminum maluae, seminum bomberis, seminum violarum strobilorum, pistaciorum recentium, amigdalaram dulcium, pulpe sebesten*. ana. ℥. ij. *caryophyllorum, spodij, cinamomi*. ana. ℥. j. *croci*. gr. v. *penidiorum*. ℥. ℞. when they be all pownded, temper them with syrupe of violets.

PLANTIVS.

In the Antidotarie analepticke, which they tearme *resumptiuam*, the Author thought good to alter nothing besides the order of the simples, and that for the graines of *Barberies, pistacia* be put in the receipt.

Antidotus diasaterion.

Antidotus diasaterion, augmenteth the genitall seede, procureth a lust to Venerie, and doth as it were quicken and reuiue the dull desire thereto: and it is a singular help and comfort against the imbecillity of the kidneis and spermaticke vessells, whereby it auaieth much for procreation of children. ℞. *radicis saterij recentis & solidae, radieis pastinacae satyre, radieis eringij, nucis indicae, strobilorum, pistaciorum*. ana. ℥. j. *B. caryophyllorum, Zinziberis, anisi, sem. eruce, linguae auis quae semen est fraxini*. ana. ℥. v. *cinamomi, caularum scincorum, semin. bulbi*. ana. ℥. ij. *B. moschi*. gr. v. *mellis optimi despumati*. ℔. iij. The rootes being bruised are boiled in hony, and tempered, and after *nux indica, strobuli* and *pistacia* being bruised are also put to them, and the other simples in the end being exquisitely pownded.

PLANTIVS.

There be three compositions set downe of *diasaterion*, but this is the most effectuall of all, and therefore may stand in stead of all the rest.

Antidotus è cocco baphico seu grano infectorio.

Antidotus è cocco baphico seu grano infectorio, which the Arabians terme *kermes*, Acheareth the heart, and driueth away sorrow comming without occasion, it restraineth and bridleth melancholia and mania, and recovereth the decayed spirites and powers of the bodie. *Rx. succi malorum fragrantium, aquæ rosarum, ana. lb. ij. In quibus macera horis. xxiiij. serici staminis crudi. lb. j.* Let it boile easily, and then streine it, and in the streined liquor, boile granorum infectiorum. *℥. ij.* the decoction then will become red, in the which being streined, dissolue sacchari albi. *lb. j. ℥.* Boile them then againe to the thicknesse of hoay: in the end put in ambrosie crude contusa. *℥. ℥.* and when it is liquefied or melted, sprinkle in these powders, ligni aloes crudi, cinamomi. *ana. ℥. vj. lapidis cyanei loti & preparati. ℥. j. margaritarum non perforatarum. ℥. ij. foliorum auri purissimi. ℥. j. moschi. ℥. j.*

PLANTIVS.

Antidotus è cocco baphico, tearmed *confectio Alkermes*, cannot be safely prepared with silke already dyed, and as they tearme it *Karmesino*, for that such kinde of silke vsually is not dyed without galle, Alume, and Arsenick, which is altogether venomous, therefore this way of composition is much better.

Antidotus è baccis lauri.

Antidotus è baccis lauri, doth mightily dissipate winde through heate and tenuitie, and is especiall good as well for paine in the great guttes as in the small. *Rx. foliorum rutæ. ℥. x. annisi, cumini, nigellæ, leuistici seminis, origani, carui, amigdalorum amararum, piperis longi, mentastri, dauci, acori, baccarum lauri, castorei. ana. ℥. ij. sagapeni. ℥. ℥. opoponaci. ℥. iij. mellis optimi expumati. lb. j. ℥.*

Philonium.

Philonium ministred with Opium after sixe moneths, doeth take away vehement and grieuous paines, either in the great guttes or in the kidneis, or in splea, prouoketh sleepe, stayeth distillation, asswageth cough, and restraineth spitting of blood. *Rx. croci. ℥. v. picrothri, euphorbii, spica nardi, myrrhe, castorei. ana. ℥. j. piperis albi, hyosciami. ana. ℥. xx. opii. ℥. x. mellis optimi expumati. lb. ij.* the dose hereof is from *℥. j.* to *℥. j.*

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath preferred aboue the rest this description of *Philonium* approved both by authoritie of *Galen*, and by experience, for that this Alume is sufficient to allay vehement torments, & yet notwithstanding the Author following *Mesue* hath put in mirrhe and castorie (neither of which *Galen* improueth) that the mixture might the rather be the safer, for that they haue a peculiar vertue to correct Opium. If the manner of composition in this receipt be considered, the weight of Opium is almost twise so much as in *Philonio Romano*. The greater *Philonium* which they tearme *Romanum* (for that it hath but halfe the weight of Opium) may be ministred in a double Dose, namely from *℥. ij.* to *℥. j.*

Antidotus termed requies.

Antidotus tearmed *Requies* without Opium, doth allay the extreame heat of burning feauers, asswageth thirst, represseth madnesse, procureth sleepe, and causeth ease. *Rx. rosarum violatarum. ana. ℥. iij. corticum radicem mandragore,*
seminis

seminis hyoscyami albi, & papaveris albi, seminis seriola, lactucae, portulacae & psyllij, nucis muschatæ, cinamomi electi. ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. trium santalorum, spody, fragacanthæ, ana. ʒ. ij. mellis optimi expumati triplum.

PLANTIVS.

A Ntidotus tearmed *Requies*, hath lesse *opium* then any kind of *Philonium* or of *opiatum*: yet it cooleth mightily through the mixture of other simples which be almost all cold, notwithstanding the vse thereof is scarcely safe, for that the *opium* is not sufficiently corrected by mixture of hote simples. But if the composition be proued without *opium*, truly it doth not a litle auaille to aswage the burning heate of agues and dotage, thirst, and whatsoever *symptomata* do proceede of the feauerous heate. The other compositions of *philonium* are to be abandoned as nothing necessarie, as both the antidotarie *diacolibanū* and *athanasia*, and *musa aenea*, requies cum opio, *trifera magna*, and *Esdia magna*, of what Author focuer it was inuented. For such compositions as haue *opium*, if they be ordained to aswage paine, *philonium* described by this author may supply the want. But if it be ordained either to strengthen the principall partes, or to expell poyson and many other sundrie diseases, *eriphera magna*, *Esdia magna*, *aurea Alexandrina*, and *Athanasia*, *theriace* and *michridatum* may therefore stand in their stead. The confection *Anacardina* is also omitted, being flat contrarie to those which I haue repeated. For notwithstanding it be commended for many diseases, yet for the great exuperant heate thereof it is very daungerous, for that it doth speedily inflame the spirits and humours, and forthwith doth procure an ague.

Theriace diateffaron.

Theriace diateffaron is excellent good against Epilepsie, conuulsion, palsey, cruditie of the stomach, ill habite, dropsie, and other cold diseases, Further it auaileth much against venime receiued, against the byting of virulent beasts, and a pestilent constitution. *Rx. radices gentiane, baccarum lauri, myrrha, aristolochie rotundæ, ana. ʒ. ij.* and when they be verie seriously pownded, receiue and mixe with mellis optimi expumati. *℞. ij.*

Theriace Andromachi senioris.

Theriace Andromachi senioris preuaileth against the stinging of poysonous beasts, it helpeth the falling euill, the apoplexie, the resolution of the bodie, Cephalalgia, Asthma, hæmoptois, aggricuaunce in the stomach, iaundies, dropsie, paines of the kidneys, cholicke, gowte, melancholicke and lunaticke men: and lastly the leprosie, it expelleth the floures & a dead child: it maruellously comforteth and fortifieth the heart, the braine, the liuer, the stomach, and the whole bodie, and preserueth it from a pestilent contagion. *Rx. trochiscorum scylliticorum. ʒ. vj. trochiscorum theriacorum, magnatis hædyeroi, piperis longi, opij, ana. ʒ. iij. rosarum rubrarum, seminis nabi syluestris, scordij, opobalsami, cinamomi, A-garicæ, ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. myrrhe, costi, croci, cassiæ lignæ, nardi indica, scananthi, thuris masculi, piperis albi & nigri, diclammi, marrubij, rheubarbari, stæchadis, semi. petroselin, macedocalamites, terebintbine, Zinziberis, radices pentaphylli, ana. ʒ. vj. pollij montani, chamepyteos, styracis calamitæ, mei, annomi, nardi celticæ, figilli lemnij, pbi pontici, chamædryos, foliorum malabarr aut macis, cinalcidis rosæ, (which may be commodiously*

pretermitted) *radici gentiane, anisi, succi hypocistidis, carobalsami, gummi Arabici splendidi, semi. feniculi, cardamomi minoris, seselios, acacie, thalassios, semi. hyperici, ammeos, ana. ℥. ss. castorei, aristolochie longae, sentenuis, semi. dauci, bituminis Iudaici, opoponacis, centaurij minoris, Galbani. ana. ℥. ij. mellis optimi expumati triplum, id est, lb. xiiij. ℥. iij. Vini optimi odorati, so much as shall suffice to dissolve the liquors and iuices. The greatest dose is, ℥. iij. or. ℥. ss. for. ℥. j. of the powder, or ℥. iij. of the composition containe graj. of opium.*

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath therefore imitated the composition of triacle set forth by Andromachus senior, in an Elegiacall verse, for that neither the number nor the weight of simples can in verse be easily changed. Certaine Authors afterward framed this receipt in other order of simples, and peradventure more convenient to the which also they added sothernwood and gladine, and altered the doses of certaine simples, and therefore their receipt is not to be accounted so certaine. Wherefore without all controuersie we are to insist to this description onely. Whereas the Author doth admoniſh vs of *chalcitide*, id est, vs of vitrioll to be put in to this composition, therein imitating *Valerius Cordus*, that seemeth very convenient, for whereas that medicine, especially being burnt, is marvellous causticke, *escaroticum* and hurtfull to the intrayles, and hath bene experienced nothing to auaille for any externall disease, there is no cause why with so great inconuenience and vnpleasantnesse of taste, it should be admitted into this composition. For if it be (as some men thinke) therefore added to make the composition blacke, it ought not for colour sake, by taste and operation so much annoy the bodie. Finally by taking it away, the whole receipt will be more commodious, lesse sharp and hot, and will become more pleasant to the receiuer.

Mitridatum.

Mitridatum doth nigheſt reſemble the power of triacle, and is vsed againſt the ſame diſeaſes with a great deale more facilitie and leſſe extremitie of heate, according vnto the deſcription of *Andromachus* allowed of *Galen* and other auncient Phyſicians. *R. myrrhe, nardi. ana. ℥. j. D. ss. croci, Cinamomi, ſcordij, Zinziberis. ana. ℥. vij. ss. Opy. ℥. iij. graines. xxv. ſtyracis, ſeſelios, abrotani, libanolidis. ana. ℥. x. Caſtorij. ℥. vj. D. ss. ſcarnanthi, poly. coſti, piperis longi, ſem. dauci, ſcarnanthi, Galbani, ſerebinthine. ana. ℥. vj. ss. piperis albi. ℥. v. D. vj. petroſelini, ſeminiſ nardi celtice, ſeminiſ ſeniculi, ſoly Indis aut maceris, gentiane, roſarum ſucarum, mei athamantici. ana. ℥. iij. caſſie lignee ℥. v. ss. Turru. ℥. vj. D. j. ſucci hypociſchidis. ℥. vi. gr. xv. acori aut calami aromatici, plu. pontici, ſagapeni, ſorctus balsami, hyperici, iridis, acacie, gummi, cardamomi, polioini. that is, ana. ℥. ij. terre lemmie, lumborum ſcinci, cyphoeos, opoponacis. ana. ℥. vj. thlaſpi. ℥. vj. D. ij. anifi, hiſſopi, chamepitiſ os ana. ℥. iij. opobalsami, aristolochie rotundae, marrubij, ana. ℥. j. mellis optimi expumati. lb. vij. ss.*

PLANTIVS.

There be ſoure ſundry and very diuerſe compositions of *Mithridatum* extant, one (and that the greateſt) is the inuention of *Nicolaus Mirepsus*, deſcribed by *Nicolauſ Prepoſitus*, and vsed of all Apothecaries euery where, which euery man doth daily experience to be very effectually againſt maligne and peſtilent agues, venime, vomites, crudities, Lienteries, and many other diſeaſes, and what-

whatsoever first author or inuenter it had, it is now euery where much practised. The second is of *Democritus* an auncient Greeke Author, practised of *Auicenna*, and set out in the Apothecarie booke of *Nicolas Prappositus*, which as it is found to be both in composition and in vse more facile then the other: so in vertue it is no whit inferior to the same, but rather more excellent and effectuell against all maligne and contagious diseases. The third was described by *Andromachus*, and the fourth which *Galen* and *Aetius* and other Greek Authors tooke out of the workes of *Antipater* and *Cleophantus* auncient Physicians. The two later be not much vnlike, for they consist of the same simples, notwithstanding placed in diuerse order, whose Doses do differ in a certaine few halfe scruples onely, so that they two may seeme fitly to be applied to the same vse: yet notwithstanding, because this last is somewhat more copious compounded of 52. simples, and corrected and approued according to the diligent iudgement of *Galen*, it is to be esteemed the best of the rest, and most effectuell against the diseases tofore repeated. Wherefore the Author hath repeated this onely, because he would haue it vsed onely of all Physicians, and therefore he hath altered the order of the simples, reducing into one place all such as were of one Dose, that thereby the Apothecaries might haue lesse labour in compounding and confectioning the receipt.

De Trochiscis, seu Pastillis.

Trochisci è vipera.

Trochisci è vipera, which is vsed in the cōposition of the great triacle, the flesh of chofen and prepared vipers is boyled in pure water, with greene dill and salt from the bones, then being taken out it is grinded on a marble stone, and it is sprinkled by litle and litle, with like weight of crummes of wheaten bread dried, powring in the meane time (if neede so require) the owne broth of the vipers, and a litle opobalsami aut succidanei, whereof *Trochisces* be made the weight of ʒ. j. and be diligently dried in the shadow.

Trochisci scillitici.

Trochisci scillitici be referred to the same composition of Triacle. R. Medullæ scyllæ assatæ. ʒ. j. farine erui. ʒ. viij. and being well bruised they be tempered into *Trochisces*, and be dried in the shadow.

Trochisci hedricoi.

Trochisci hedricoi be likewise applied to the composition of Triacle. R. maris aut balsamie. amaraci. asari. aspalathi calami odorati aut galange. phi pontici. xylibalsami. opobalsami. aut succidaneorum cinamomi. costi ana. ʒ. iij. mirrhe. folij nardi. indice. croci. castie. ana. ʒ. vj. anomi. ʒ. xij. mastiches. ʒ. j. so much wine of the best as sufficeth to the making of *Trochisces*.

Trochisci cytheos.

Trochisci cytheos be requisite to the composition of Mithridate. R. pulpæ uarum passarum. zerebinthine coctæ. myrrhe. scenanthi. ana. ʒ. j. β. calami aroma.

tici. 3. ix. *cinamomi*. 3. ʒ. *bdelij*, *anicii*, that is, *blatte byzanthij*, *spice nardi*, *cassia lignea*, *cyperij*, *arctanthidum*, that is, *baccarum inuiperi*. ana. 3. iij. *aspalathi*. 3. ij. ʒ. *croci*. 3. j. *mellis expumati* & *vini optimi*. ana. so much as is sufficient to the tempering of Trochisces.

PLANTIVS, in Trochiscos.

There is no alteration made of the Trochisces which be commended by the iudgement of all Authors, as auailable to the great composition, lest that in the alteration of them there should be somewhat changed in the greater composition which be by vse approved.

Trochisci è capparibus.

Trochisci è *capparibus* doth take away the hardnesse of the splene, grosse melancholy, and dissipateth wind. R. *corticum radicum capparij*, *semi. agri*. ana. 3. vj. *ammoniacy*. 3. ʒ. *semi. nigellæ calamitæ*, *succi eupatorij*, *amigdalarum amararum*, *foliorum rutæ*, *aristolochia rotunde*, *semen nasturtij*. ana. 3. iij. *cyperij*, *scelopendrij*, that is, *ceterachi*. ana. 3. j. receiue and temper the powders in *ammoniacum* dissolved in *vinegar*, and make thereof Trochisces.

PLANTIVS.

Trochisci è capparibus be very wisely described, and yet notwithstanding, if you adde vnto them *Gummi lacca seu caucami* & *rubei tinctorum*. ana. 3. j. they shal become more effectuell, neither be other Trochisces of *Lacca* to be admitted for this purpose, but that these of *Capars* be sufficient enough against obstructions, and inueterate diseases of the splene.

Trochischi de Eupatorio.

Trochischi de *Eupatorio* do dissolve the obstructions and tumours of the liuer especially, and doth cure daily agues arising thereof, the iandies, and beginning of dropsie. R. *manne electæ*, *succi eupatorij*. ana. 3. j. *osarum*. 3. ʒ. *spodij*. 3. iij. ʒ. *spice nardi indicæ*. 3. iij. *rheubarbari asari*, *anisi*. ana. 3. ij. ʒ. and being all receiued and tempered with the iuyce of *agrimonie* and *Manna* are to be made into Trochisces.

PLANTIVS.

Trochischi ex Eupatorio, be substituted also in the stead of Trochisces of *rewbarbe* and *wormwood*, for that they be of great affinitie and like vertue.

Trochischi Alkakengi seu Halycacabi.

Trochischi *Alkakengi seu halycacabi* do mitigate the exulceratiōs of the kidneis and bladder, difficulty of vrine arising of those parts, and pissing of bloud. R. *Baccarum halycacabi*. 3. iij. *semi. cytrulli*, *melonum* & *cucurbitæ mundatorum*. ana. 3. iij. ʒ. *bolli armeni*, *gummi arabi*, *sturis*, *sanguinis draconis*, *papaueris albi*, *amigdalarum amararum*, *succi glycyrrhizæ*, *tragacanthæ*, *amyli strobilorum*. ana. 3. vj. *semi. apij*, *succini*, *terra lemniæ*, *semi. hyosciami*, *opij*. ana. 3. ij. and with the iuyce of winter cherries, make Trochisces of these simples. There be other Trochisces without *opium* compounded like vnto these.

Trochischi è Myrrha.

Trochischi è *myrrha*, do mightily bring downe the floures, and do cure the diseases arising of their suppressiō, & lastly do expell the secōds, or a dead child. R. *Myrrhe*. 3. iij. *dupinorum*. 3. v. *foliorum rutæ*, *mentastri*, *pilegij*, *cumini*, *rubeæ*.

asse fetile, sagapeni, opoponacis. ana. ℥. ij. and of these be made Trochiskes with the iuice of mugwort.

Trochisci à terra lemnia.

Trochisci à terra lemnia do stay coursing and outrageous humors, especially being thin, do restrain the excessive flux of the belly inwardly taken, and being outwardly applied, they do suppress profusion of blood, issuing either out of the nose, or wombe, or hemerhoides, or any other part.

℞. Sanguinis draconis, gummi Arab. Assali, spody, acatie, hypocistidos, lapidis hematice, balaustrorum, boli armeni, terra lemnia, coralli rubri, succini. ana. ℥. ij. margaritarum, tragacantae, papaveris nigri. ana. ℥. j. ℞. seminis portulacae tosti, cornu cerui vssi, thuris, mukum cupressi, croci. ana. ℥. ij. & confect Trochiskes thereof with the iuice of distilled water of plantaine **PLANTIVS.**

Trochisci à ramich be subtracted of the Trochiskes of terra lemnia, for that they comprehend the greatest part of them. These Trochiskes à terra lemnia comprehend great store of astringing and cooling simples, and therefore other astringing compositions be not requisite. And sith this receipt is of all other most effectuell and least dangerous, all the other be suppressed, as trochisci à ramich, trochisci à diarrhodon, trochisci oxyacantha, trochisci à succino seu carabe, & trochisci à spodio, for that the composition of all those is nothing apt nor necessary. The Trochiskes à diarrhodon which do consist of roses, spodion, red and white saunders, of saffron and camphire may supply the place of these, especially if they seeme to be vnpleasant in taste.

Trochisci à Caphura.

Trochisci à Caphura do assuage the heate of burning agues, the feruency of blood and choler, the inflammation and hote intempere of the intrals, & whatsoeuer thirst ariseth thereof. ℞. Rosarum rubrarum. ℥. ℞. spody, glycyrrhizae. ana. ℥. ij. quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum, tragacantha, gummi arabi, croci, spica nardi, iudice. ana. ℥. j. santali citrini. ℥. ij. ℞. Ligni aloes, cardamomi, amyli, caphura. ana. ℥. ij. sacchari albi, manne electae. ana. ℥. iij. musilaginis psyllij depromed out of rose water, as much as sufficeth to make Trochiskes.

Trochisci Gallie Muschata.

Trochisci Gallie Muschata do maruellously corroborate the heart, the braine, and the other intrailles, and dogiue a good smell to the mouth and the rest of the body. ℞. Ligni aloes crudi. ℥. v. ambrae. ℥. iij. moschi. ℥. j. musilaginis tragacanthae, made in rose water, so much as sufficeth for trochiskes.

Trochisci alypte Muschata.

Trochisci alypte muschata haue the same effect, either inwardly receiued, or by suffumigation, and further ariddeeth the body of difficulty of breathing. ℞. Ladani purissimi. ℥. iij. styracis calamintae. ℥. j. styracis rubrae. ℥. j. ligni aloes. ℥. ij. ambrae. ℥. j. caphura. ℥. ℞. moschi. ℥. ℞. and distilled rose water, as much as need requirerth.

Trochisci Bechici albi.

Trochisci Bechici albi, which be also termed pilula alba, do mitigate a sharpe distillation, and do assuage hoarsnesse and continuall cough. ℞. Sacchari albiissimi. ℞. j. sacchari candidi, penidiorum. ℥. iij. radices iridis florentini. ℥. ij. amyli. ℥. j.

℞. the muscilage of tragacanth made in rose water, so much as sufficeth to the conformation of Trochiskes.

Trochisci Narcotici.

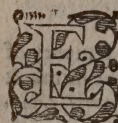
Trochisci Narcotici being safely applied, do assuage the paine of the head & teeth, do procure sleepe in the burning of feauers, do extinguish Erysipelas and inflammations, and being dissolved in other medicines do mitigate the paine of all the externall parts. *℞. Gummi arabici & tragacanthæ, amyli. ana. ʒ. ℞. ceruse lotæ aqua rosarum. ʒ. vi. styracis, calaminte, mirrhæ, calforij, osij sapa soluti. ana. ʒ. iij. croci. ʒ. ℞.* and when they be all bruised they are to be receiued and mingled with the muscilage of fleewort taken out of rose water, and thereof confect Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath brought in to the order of Trochiskes in this last place, Narcoticos trochiscos against extreame torments, the composition whereof is very apt, and the vse very necessary, and the rather, because there be none extant which can serue for that purpose.

De Ecligmatis & Conditis.

Ecligma è pineis nucleis.



Ecligma è pineis nucleis do extenuate and deterge grosse humours of the breast and lungs, very conuenient and commodious against Asthma, difficulty of breathing & inueterate coughes. *℞. Nucleorum pineorum recentium. ʒ. xxx. pulpe palmularum. ʒ. xxxv. amigdalarum dulcium & amararum, abellanarum assatarum, tragacanthæ, gummi arabici, Glycyrrhizæ, amyli, capilli veneris, iridis florentini. ana. ʒ. iij. pulpe passularum, butyri recentis, sacchari albisissimi. ana. ʒ. iij. mellis albi expumati. ℞. iij. fiat Ecligma.* A wholesome and approued Ecligme more effectually then the former against the same diseases. *℞. Cinamomi, Hyssopi, glycyrrhizæ. ana. ʒ. ℞. Reripha, & mixaria. ana. xxx. numero: Vuarum passerum purgatarum, ficuum aridarum, palmularum pinguium. ana. ʒ. ij. fenugreci. ʒ. v. capilli veneris, M. j. sem. anisi, feniculi & lini, radices iridis, folioris calaminte. ana. ʒ. ℞.* boile them al in ℞. iij. of water to the consumption of two, and boile againe the strained iuyce with ℞. ij. penidiorum to the thicknesse of hony, and then put in pinearum expurgatarum. ʒ. v. amigdalorum dulcium mundatarum, Glycyrrhizæ, tragacanthæ, gummi arabici, amyli. ana. ʒ. iij. iridis. ʒ. ij.

Ecligma è Scylla.

Ecligma è scylla auaieth against the same diseases. *℞. Succu seu mucoris scyllæ & mellis optimi expumati. ana. ℞. j.* boile them to the consistance of an ecligme.

Ecligma ad Asthma.

Ecligma ad Asthma is an Ecligme which of all other before propounded is most effectually against Asthma. *℞. Scylla assata. ʒ. v. radices iridis, hyssope, prassy, marrubij. ana. ʒ. j. myrrhæ, croci. ana. ʒ. ℞.* with sufficient quantity of hony, let the

com.

compound Ecligme of *Scylla* be conſected.

Many ſimples be condited with ſugar, that they may the longer continue with their full vertue, whereof ſome be whole, ſome be bruſed: ſuch as be whole be boiled in thrice ſo much ſugar vntill the whole moiſture conſumed, there remaineth the perfect conſiſtency of a ſirupe, as for example: *Acornis* is condited againſt the cold diſeaſes of the braines and nerues, and to recouer their ſtrength.

Ziniber is condited againſt the crudity of the ſtomach and ſlimy ſteam in the lungs.

The roote of bugloſſe is condited againſt the palpiration of the heart and quauſming.

Peaches, fragrant apples, the rind of the citrine be condited againſt *Cardialgia*, and *Melancholia*.

Quince peares, and *Diacydonion*, and peares, be condited to ſtrengthen and corroborate the ſtomach.

Walnuts, *mirabelani*, *emblici* & *Cepuli*, and nutmegs being condited, do further the concoction of the ſtomach, do get an appetite and increaſe ſtrength.

Cherries and the ſlips of endiue, purſlaine and lettuce condited, do reſtregarate, aſſwage thirſt, and procure appetite.

Barberies and Ceuifes being condited, do allay thirſt and the feruency of choler, and reſtraine fluxe of the wombe.

Saterion and *Eringium* condited, do increaſe the feed, and ſtirre vp a deſire to carnality, and further conception.

Conſerua.

BUt ſuch as cannot well be boiled, let them be bruſed and mixed with twice ſo much ſugar, and ſo be ſet in the ſun and conſerued, and retaine the name of compounded ſugar, as loſacchar, Rhodoſacchar. But of all other kinds of compound ſugar, theſe ought eſpecially to be in a readineſſe. Sugar of roſemarie, of the floures of ſage, of the floures of betonic, and of ſtarchados, of the floures of piony, for that they be eſpeciall good againſt the cold diſeaſes of the braine and nerues, to comfort and ſtrengthen them againſt the Epilepſie and Apoplexie.

The ſugar of the floures of ſoure deluce, of maidenhaire, and of the roote of Enula, doth mildly purge the breaſt, and eaſe the lungs.

The ſugar of Comferie doth ſtay ſpitting of bloud.

The ſugar of violets, and the floures of bugloſſe doth refrigerate and cheare the heart.

Sugar of roſes ſtrengtheneth the ſtomach, ſtayeth diſtillations and reſtraineth eruption of bloud.

Sugar of the floures of Cichory cooleth the liuer, and openeth the obſtructions thereof.

Further, there be ſundry medicinable iuyces reſerued to uſe, whereof ſome be ſimple and pure, others mixed with ſugar, which for that by boyling they

come to the thicknesse of *sapa*, be therefore termed of the Arabians *robuo*, that is, *sapales*. These iuyces being strained, be permitted to settle vntill they waxe cleare, and then the purer portion thereof is boiled to the thicknesse of hony, and then is set in the sunne, and so is kept. If sugar be therewith to be mingled, it must be in weight halfe so much as the iuice is.

Succus e nucibus.

Succus e nucibus, termed *Dyacaryon*, auaileth against sharpe distillations and *angina*, and hath of the iuice of young wal-nuts. ℞. iij. mellis optimi. ℞. ij. and be boiled to the thickenesse of hony.

Succus e moris.

Succus e moris, termed *Diamoren*, is good against the fretting vlcers of the mouth and iawes, and sharpe distillations. R. *Succi mororum domesticozum*. ℞. ℞. *succi mororum rubri*, mellis optimi expumati. ana. ℞. j. *sape*. ℥. iij. boile them to the consistencie of hony.

The iuice of wild plumbes be boiled vntill they become thicke, and then they be vsed in stead of *Acacia*.

Of Medicines applied outwardly, and first of Oyles.

Oleum Rosarum.



Oleum Rosarum doth quench inflammations and burning in the stomach, it doth strengthen, thicken, and stay fluxes. R. *Gumma-um rosarum rubrarum recentium* bereft of the prickles and bruised, *succi rosarum*, ana. ℞. j. macerate them in. ℞. v. of *Oleum Omphacium* which is without salt, in a vessell of glasse closely shut, then set them seuen dayes in the sunne, after boile them three houres in a double vessell, and the leaues being strained, and cast away, put in new, and change them twise or thrise: in fine, the leaues being againe strained and cast away, set it in the sun, and boile it in a double vessell vntill the iuyce be consumed. If you want *oleum omphacium* without salt, the common oile must be oftentimes stirred and washed in the iuyce of soure grapes.

Oleum Violarum.

Oleum violarum quencheth heate, abateth hore inflammations, easeth the pleuriticke, and asswageth the diseases of the lungs and breast: it is made of common iole being old, or of oile of almonds being new and vnsauory, or which at the least is washed with cold water, then fresh purple violets be put into the oile in a vessell well couered, and be set to sun vntill ten dayes, and euery third day the violets be changed, and in the end dry violets be put in.

Oleum Nymphae.

Oleum Nymphae doth more refrigerate, and doth especially asswage the heat of the kidneis, bladder & head, mitigateth madnes, procureth sleep: it is made as oile of violets, of the white floures of water lillies macerated in larded oile, but it is set in the sunne twenty daies, in the which space the floures be changed thrice.

Oleum

Oleum Papaveris.

Oleum Papaueri worketh the same effects that *Oleum Nymphae* doth, but more effectually and properly, it appeaseth paine of the head, madnesse, and procureth sleepe. The flowres, leaues, and heads of white poppie being bruised, be macerated in laued oile, and it is made as *oleum Nymphae*, yet it may be mingled in a double vessel; here be which do presse out the oile of the seeds of poppie, as out of almonds.

Oleum Hyoscyami albi.

Oleum Hyoscyami albi is prepared in like order as oile of poppie, both by maceration and expression, and is as effectuall as oile of poppie for all the repeated purposes.

Oleum Mandragoræ simplex.

Oleum Mandragorae simplex doth more apparently refrigerate, asswageth pain proceeding of inflammation & procureth sleepe, it is confected of the apples of mandrag bruised & macerated in oyle, & easily boiled as *oleum Nymphaeae*.

Oleum Mandragorae compositum.

Oleum Mandragorae compositum, doth of al other most effectually refrigerate, and doth asswage the paines comming of inflammation, and other aggruencians whatsoeuer: being annointed it doth mitigate the ach of the head, and frenchie, and put to the nosethrilles, forthwith it procureth sleepe. *R. Olei* *lb. ij. ꝑ. succi pomorum mandragorae. ʒ. iij. succi hyoscyami albi. ʒ. ij. succi capitis papaveris albi. ʒ. ij. succi violarum, succi cicutae tenerrime. ana. ʒ. j. Opy, Hyracis, galminthe. ana. ʒ. ʒ.* all which must be mixed together, and stand in the sunne ten dayes, and after be boyled in a double vessell vntill the iuice be consumed: in the end the oile must be strained and set vp vntill need require.

Oleum Melinum, quod & Cydoniorum.

Oleum Melinum, quod & Cydoniorum refrigerateth, astringeth, is very good for the stomack, intrailes and liuer being feeble, for that by annointing it restraineth vomite, laske and sweate. R. Cydonio: un cum cortice & semine ruforum, succi cydoniorum. ana. ℥. s. mingle them in a vessell of glasse, and poure in of Oleum omphacium. ℥. ij. s. for them in the sunne fiftene dayes, then boile them foure houres in a double vessell, and the quince peare being strained, other fresh are likewise to be incocted the second time, and also the third time vntill the humour be wholly consumed. In fine presse out the oyle, and keepe it to your vse.

Oleum myrtinum.

Oleum myrrinum refrigerateth, astringeth and comforteth, but properly the heart, stomacke, braine and nerues, it is made as *Milum* of the berries and leaues of Mirtle, by adding the iuice also when they cannot be come by.

Oleum Mastichinum.

Oleum Mastichinum, doth by affriction corroborate the braine, sinewes, stomach and liuer, very commodious against lientery, vomit, and crudity. *R. mastiches. ℥. iij. aqua rosarum. ℥. iij. olei omphacini vel rosacei. ℔. j.* Boile them in a double vessell to the consumption of the water. Wine in stead of rose water

is put in, when as the wearinesse or the vlnulinesse of the sinewes is to be asswaged.

Oleum menthe.

Oleum menthe doth by annointing corroborate the stomach & other parts, furthereth concoction with a moderate heate, and it is confected in this wise. The leaues of sowne mints bruised with the iuice be macerated in oile of *Omphacinum*, set in the sunne, boiled, and oftentimes changed as hath bene shewed in the oile of roses.

Oleum Absinthij.

Oleum Absinthij doth moderately calefie and corroborate, doth further concoction, procure appetite, open obstructions, kill wormes. The tops and leaues of wormewood be bruised and macerated in oile of *omphacino*, and it is absolved as oile of mint.

Oleum chamemelinum.

Oleum chamemelinum, doth with an easie obstruction corroborate the sinews and membranes, and doth excellently assuage paine. *Rx. Foliorum chamemeli recentium & tusorum.* ℥.j. infuse and macerate them in sweet mature oile, and let them stand in the sunne twenty of the Canicular daies, and straining and casting away the leaues, reserue the oyle.

Oleum liliorum.

Oleum liliorum asswageth the paine of the breast, stomacke, wombe, kidneys, bladder, and sinewes, and doth ease and concoct them. *Rx. Florum Liliorum alborum integrorum*, casting onely away the yellow filaments. ℥.j. macerate them in sweete and mature oile, and set them in the sunne twenty dayes. There is also another compound oile made thereof more effectuall to all the purposes which I haue tofore repeated, which receiuerh *maſtiſches, calami aromatici, costi, olei piceethri, carpopalsami, ana.* ℥.j. *carjophyllorum & cinamomi, ana.* ℥.℥. *croci.* ℥.iij. Bruise them all and macerate them in water foure and twenty houres. After let them boile a litle, and being taken from the fire, poure in of sweete oile. ℥.ij. of the leaues of lillies. ℥.viij. set them forty dayes in the sunne, then straine out the oile and keepe it to your vse.

Oleum leucoj lencei.

Oleum leucoj lencei, asswageth the paines of the breast, kidneys, sinewes, and ioynts. *Rx. Florum leucoj.* ℥.j. macerated in ℥.j.℥. of sweete oile, set in the sun ten dayes, changing the floures thrise, and the oile expressed is kept, by putting thereto if you thinke good. ℥.ij. of the dry floures.

Oleum iasminum.

Oleum iasminum worketh the same effect which *Leucoj* did, but more forcibly. Further it is an especiall mollifying and lenitiue oile, it is made as the oyle of lillies was of the floures of Iasmine.

Oleum anethinum.

Oleum anethinum doth moderately calefie and digest, asswageth paine of the head, and ach of the sinewes, procureth sleepe, it is made of the leaues of dill, which be macerated in sufficient quantity of sweete oile, and set in the

in the sun one day, or concocted in a double vessell, and the oyle being strained from the leaues is reserued.

Oleum amigdalarum dulcium.

Oleum amigdalarum dulcium, doth mitigate paine, comfort the exasperated parts, especially the lungs and kidneys, it mollifieth dry and hard matter, and is very meete for such as haue the Hecticke feuer, and be consumed: it is made in this wise; Sweet almonds being diligently purged, be much bruised, and then there is poured vpon them a litle rose water; after put into a vessell, they art kept and fostered as it were in hote water, that they may become somewhat hote. Lastly put in a litle bagge, they are pressed in a presse vntill the oyle issue out.

Oleum lumbricorum.

Oleum lumbricorum doth mollifie with a moderate heat, and asswage paine, very conuenient for such as be bruised, and haue paine in the ioynts. *Rx.* Lumbricorum terrestrium lotorum & preparatorum. *℥*. *℞*. vini albi. *℥*. *℥*. olei dulcis. *℥*. *℥*. Boile them to the consumption of the wine and the washing of the wormes, then straine the oyle and reserue it to your vse.

Oleum Iriinum.

Oleum Iriinum doth concoct, extenuate, & dissolue, it asswageth paine of the liuer, wombe, & ioynts, it concocteth likewise the offending matter of the lungs and breast. *Rx.* radicum iridis iunfarum. *℥*. *℞*. florum integrorum. *℥*. *℥*. decocti, or if you wish to haue it worke more effectually, take of the iuyce of another floureluucc. *℥*. *℥*. olei dulcis *℥*. *℥*. boile them in a double vessell till the water euaporate: and straining the rootes and leaues preserue the oyle.

Oleum Rutaceum.

Oleum Rutaceum calefieth and attenuateth grosse humours, dissipateth wind more forcibly then dill, it auaieth against the cholicke, palsey, crampe, and coldnesse of the wombe and bladder. *Rx.* foliorum ruta modici succorum, succi eiusdem ana. *℥*. *℞*. macerate them three dayes in. *℥*. *℥*. of sweete oyle: boile them in a double vessell vntill the iuyce be consumed, and then straining the rew, change it three or four times: in fine reserue the oyle expressed:

Oleum Amigdalarum amararum.

Oleum Amigdalarum amararum doth mightily attenuate and diuide, doth dissipate wind, especially the noise of the eares, and openeth the obstructions of the liuer and other intrailes by attenuating and deterging, it mollifieth hardnesse but especially of the sinewes, it is concocted of bitter almonds dried and purged, bruised and calefied in hote boyling water, and pressed in a presse vntill the oyle come out.

Oleum e Cappariibus.

Oleum e Cappariibus by extenuation and deterfion doth dissolue euery hardnesse, and obstruction, but especially of the splene, it asswageth the ag-

grievances, and easeth euery disease of the same. R. *Corticis radicis tamarisci, foliorum tamarisci, sem. agni, scolopendrij seu asplenij, Cyperi. ana. ʒ. ij. aceti, vini optimi. ana. ʒ. ij. Olei mauri. lb. j.* boile them in a double vessell to the consumption of the wine and vineger: then straine the oile and store it.

Oleum Nardinum.

O *leum Nardinum* doeth calefie, attenuate, digest and strengthen, and as well the simple as the compound doth redresse the cold and flatulent diseases of the braine, stomacke, liuer, spleene, kidneys, bladder and womb. R. *Spice nardi. ʒ. iij. vini optimi, aque rosacee. ana. ʒ. ij. lb. j. Olei dulcis. lb. j.* boile them three houres in a double vessell with no verie quick fire vntill the wine and the water doe euaporate.

Oleum Nardinum compositum.

O *leum Nardinum compositum.* R. *Spice nardi. ʒ. iij. Sampsuchi. ʒ. ij. Xiloloes, E-nulae, folij aut maceris, Calami aromatici aut galange, foliorum lauri, Cyperi, scænan-thi, cardamomi. ana. ʒ. j. lb. j.* these being brused poure into them *vini, aque rosacee. ana. lb. j. Olei dulcis. lb. v.* macerate them foure and twentie houres, and then boile them in a double vessell six houres, stirring it now and then vntill the wine and water be consumed.

Oleum laurinum.

O *leum laurinum* is hote and extenuating, doth dissipate the wind of the stomach, the cholick, and dissolueth cold diseases of the head, intrails, womb, kidneys and ioynts. The ripe berries of Laurell be brused and boiled a good space in water, and the salt that swimmeth about the strained decoction when it is cooled, must be gathered together and stored vp for oyle.

Oleum Vulpinum.

O *leum vulpinum* attenuateth and somewhat digesteth, it auaieth against the goutte and all paines of the ioynts, at all times of the sicknesse. Boile a foxe vncafed, and vnboiled cut into little gobbets, and in like portion of fountaine and sea or salt water, and when it is boiled to the halfe, put in *Salis. ʒ. iij. olei veteris puri. lb. iij. ethymi, anethi, origani. ana. lb. lb.* Boyle them till one ioynt fall from another, and till the consumption of the water, and then presse out the oile.

Oleum è Scorpionibus.

O *leum è Scorpionibus* doth so forcibly extenuate, that being annointed vpon the loines, it is thought to breake and disturb the stone of the kidneies, and being annointed vpon the share, or on the peritoneum, or iniected into the bladder. R. *radicis aristolochie rotunde, gentiana, cyperi, corticum radicis capparis. ana. ʒ. j. lb. j.* Bruse them all and macerate them in *lb. j. lb.* of oile of bitter almonds, and set them to sunne twentie daies: then boyle them in a double vessell with a lent fire. In the end put in xv. Scorpions, and set them in the sunne againe xxx. dayes, then straine the oile and keepe it to your vse.

Oleum

Oleum Terebinthina.

Oleum Terebinthina is hote and extenuating, and more penetrating then Turpentine it selfe. Wherefore it doth mollifie and extenuate hard tumors, and doth take away cold diseases of the nerues and ioynts, and notwithstanding comfort and strengthen them. *Rx.* Terebinthine lucida. lb. iij. put it in a cucurbit of glasse, and set it in sand, and by making a fire vnder it, by alchymic, first you shall distill out the water, secondly a moist cleare oyle, and lastly a yellow oyle.

Oleum resinum.

Oleum resinum, which they call *Oleum de Kerra*, doth mightily extenuate and digest, and therefore doth dissipate the paine and noise of the eares, doth scour the issuing vlcers of the head, and arideth the body of *Psora*, *Lepra*, and grisly scarres, and ministred in a clyster, it bringeth out wormes & water: it is made thus. *Rx.* The seeds of the greater spurge being brused, oile is pressed out of them in such force and maner as out of almonds.

Oleum balaninum.

Oleum balaninum doth dissolue paine and noise of the eares, doth wash away the speckles, pimples, spors, and blacke scarres, prouoketh the belly, and procureth vomite; it is made of *Balanum mirepsica*, which the Arabians call *Been*, and it is bruised, calcified, and oile is pressed out of the same in such wise as out of Almonds.

Oleum e castoreo.

Oleum e castoreo auaieth much against the cold diseases of the nerues and braine, against deafenesse and noise of the eares, and the extreme coldnesse of agues. *Rx.* castorij in aqua vite soluti. ʒ. j. olei. lb. j. Boile them in a double vessell till the consumption of the third part.

Oleum euphorbij simplex.

Oleum euphorbij simplex woteth the same effect, but more forcibly, and put into the nosethrills, it bringeth downe fleame. *Rx.* Euphorbij. ʒ. ʒ. leucoij len-
tei, vini odoriferi. ana. ʒ. v. Boile them to the consumption of the wine.

Oleum de lateribus.

Oleum de lateribus which is also termed the Philosophers oile, doth calcifie, penetrate, and mollifie hard matter, resolute and dissipate cold humors, and easeth the crampe, epilepsie, palsey, the gour, and all cold affects of the ioynts and nerues; the making therof is in this wise. Breake an old red tile-stone in litle peeces, burne those in hote coales, vntill they be come altogether as hote as fire, then take them out and extinguish them in cleare old oile, and let them so continue vntill they be replenished with oile, after take them out of the oyle, and bruse them into fine powder, and put the powder in a cucurbit of glasse: distill an oile thereof according to art, and store it to your vse.

Petroleum.

Petroleum, that is, naturall oile of stones, is extreme hote and extenuating, penetrating, drying and digesting, it consumeth cold water whatsoever in

any part of the body, it dissolueth the epilepsie, palsey, crampe, paine of the sinewes and ioynts, of the splene, kidneis, bladder, and all cold affects of the wombe. This oile commeth not by art but by nature, and in many places it issueth out of stones and rockes.

PLANTIVS IN OLEA.

The Author imitating the vsuall and ancient composition of oiles, thought good to alter nothing in them, neither was there any such necessity to alter them for pleasure of the affected, for that they be outwardly applied; he made choise and hath set downe the most effectuall oiles against all kind of causes and diseases, with omitting the other which were of little vertue or seemed vnnecessarie: for he accounteth *Oleum Nymphae citrine* superuacuous, for that it is contained vnder the other, and *Oleum populeum*, for that *unguentum populeum* is of greater vertue: and he omitteth likewise the oyle of the other inandrag, *Oleum cossinum*, *Oleum de piperibus*, and *Oleum maiorani*, and *Irinum compositum* for that there be many other sufficient extant, which may be vsed with more facility, and yet haue a greater power to calcifie, attenuate and digest.

Unguentum Galeni refrigerans.

Unguentum Galeni refrigerans is effectuall against *Phlegmones*, *Erysipelata* and tetters, and against euery hote intempere. *Rx. Cera alba. ℥. viij. Olei rosati. ℥. j.* and when they be molten in a double vessel, poure them into another, and by pouring cold water by litle and litle, and now and then changing, are to be tempered a good space: in the end, the strained iuice of housleeke or of morell is poured and tempered therewith, especially if it be applied to affects not exulcerated, or else vineger assused, if the skinne continue hote and not exulcerated.

PLANTIVS, in *Unguenta.*

Notwithstanding *Galen* his refrigerating ointment according to the vsuall description hath neither the iuice of nightshade, nor housleeke, yet by adiection of them it becommeth effectuall against the affects which require refrigeration.

Unguentum Rosarum.

Unguentum Rosarum is applied vnto the same affects, but truly it is not of such efficacy. The making thereof is in this wise. Swines greafe purified from the membranes must be washed nine times in hote water, and as oft in cold water, then like weight of red roses bruised must be mingled therewith, and so must stand seven dayes to putrifie; then melt the greafe with a lent fire and straine it: and againe macerating so much of bruised roses seven dayes, infusing together halfe of the iuice of roses, and oile of almonds fixe parts, then againe boile them with a lent fire vntill the whole iuice be sucked vp.

Unguentum Populeum.

Unguentum populeum asswageth phlegmones, burning of agues, feruent heat of the head & kidneis, and annointed vpon the temples procureth sleepe; *Rx. Germiasum populi racenium. ℥. j.* macerated in *℥. iij.* of fresh swines greafe prepared

prepared vntill all the simples which in order do follow may in sommer be come by. *Rx.* Foliorum papaueris rubri, foliorum mandragora, foliorum hyoscyami, cymarum ruti tenerimarum, folani, lactuca, semper vini, maioris & minoris bardanae, violae, umbilici veneris. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. bruse them and mixe them with the grease and the buds of the poplar, and after ten dayes infuse lb. j. of rose water. Boile them with a lent fire, vntill the water and whole liquor be consumed, then straine it, and presse it, and if need so require, boile it againe vntill it come to the temperament of an ointment.

Vnguentum album.

V*nguentum album* refrigerating and mildly astringing, doth assuage inflammation and exulsions, and doth allay the heate of scabbes and itch, and all out-breakings of choler. *Rx.* ceruse. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. lythargiri. $\mathfrak{z}$. ij. lay them in rose water a good space, then cast away the rose water, and put them in a mortar, and then by litle and litle poure into them so much rose oile as they can drinke vp, continually stirring and tempering them vntill they appeare in forme of an ointment: in conclusion adde thereunto a litle white vineger, and $\mathfrak{z}$. j. lb. of camphire.

PLANTIVS.

This kind of white ointment which is here described, is alone sufficient in steed of those which be termed *vnguentum de lythargira*, *vnguentum nutritum*, *vnguentum de cerusa crudum*, & *vnguentum de cerusa coctum*, which is termed also *Emplastrum de cerusa*: for this one ointment containeth the vertue of them all.

Vnguentum astringens.

V*nguentum astringens*, the astringing ointment bringeth together the open parts of the body, doth compact the conduites and poares, doth intercept and driue backe fluxes, restraineth the going out of the mother, of the wombe, of the anus, and of the gut, and being applied doth stay issue of bleud. *Rx.* gallae immatura, nucum cupressi, baccarum myrti, balauftiorum, mollis cortij corticum glandium, acatiae, rhois, mastiches. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$. j. Bruise them all exquisitely, and macerate them about foure dayes in the iuyce of vnripe medlars & sorborum immature. Then dry them with a lent fire, and confect thereof an ointment with lb. j. of oile of roses often laued in alume water, and $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. of white waxe.

PLANTIVS.

This astringent ointment for that it is very forcible, and easie to be come by, it is to be vied *pro vnguento comitisse* or any other astringing ointment.

Vnguentum diacalyteos.

V*nguentum diacalyteos* which they tearme *Palmeum*, doth stay all fluxes lately begun, and doth resolute such as be inueterate, doth agglutinate maligne vlcers & dyssepulatica. *Rx.* adipis suilla recentis sine sale & fibris. lb. i. olei veteris, lythargiri creti & triti. ana. lb. iij. calcitidos lauigate. $\mathfrak{z}$. iij. The greace and the oyle be molten with a lent fire, and the Litharge and Vitrioll must be then cast ypon them, stirring it continually with three greene boughs *Palme aut saltem myrti, sorbi* or *mespilini*, and when it is come to the thicknesse of a cerate, the tender boughes (cut in peeces) must be put in by litle and litle as it is in

boyling, Then boile it againe vntill it staine not the fingers, and be come to the consistency of an emplaister.

PLANTIVS.

Vnguentum diacalciteos (according to this description of *Galen*) is to be vsed in stead of those foure which *Mesues* hath described, two vnder the title of *vnguentum diaphenicon*, and the other two vnder the title of *vnguentum palmeum*.

Vnguentum diapompholygos.

Vnguentum diapompholygos refrigerateth, astringeth, and restrineth fluxe, filleth hollow vlcers, and bringeth maligne vlcers to a scarre. *Rx.* Olei rosacei ℥. x. succi solatri ℥. xiiij. bulliant ad succi consumptionem. Adde cere albe. ℥. v. ceruse loie. ℥. ij. plumbi risti & loti, pompholygis, thuris. ana. ℥. j. coquantur in vnguenti formam.

Vnguentum rubrum exsiccans.

Vnguentum rubrum exsiccans, the red drying ointment worketh the same effect. *Rx.* Olei rosarum lb. j. cere albe. ℥. v. liquatis insperge lapidis calaminaris, terrae lemmie exquisitè tritorum. ana. ℥. iij. Lythargiri, ceruse. ana. ℥. iij. caphure. ℥. j. boile them into an ointment.

Vnguentum dialtheos.

Vnguentum dialtheos is of a moderate calefying, mollifying, humectiue and lenitiue vertue. *Rx.* altheae radicum recentium & contusarum. lb. ij. seminis lini & fenugreci contusorum. ana. lb. j. macerentur in aqua. lb. viij. deinde leniter coquantur, & exprimatur muscilago de hac. lb. ij. & olei. lb. iij. bulliant dum muscilago sit absumpta: tum adde cere lb. s. resinæ. lb. s. terebintine. ℥. ij. percoquantur in vnguenti crassitiem.

PLANTIVS.

Vnguentum dialtheos simplex is here described, for that the cōpound through Colophonicum, Galbanum and Gummi hedere, was too filthy, and there were other receipts extant of a more dissolving vertue.

Vnguentum resumptiuum.

Vnguentum resumptiuum dictum, hath great power mildly to mollifie without any manifest heate, and therefore may be safely applied to such as haue Asthma or Hecticam febrem, a consumption, pleurisie, or an ague. *Rx.* seminis lini, altheae & fenugreci, gummi Arabici, tragacanthæ. ana. ℥. ij. macerentur & bulliant in lb. s. aque rosarum. Straine out the muscilage, and therein dissolue adipis suilli, gallinae, anseris & anatis. ana. ℥. ij. aspi. ℥. s. olei violarum, chamemeli & amigdalorum dulcium. ana. ℥. ij. medullæ vituli, butiri recentis, cere albe. ana. lb. s. coquantur in vnguentum.

PLANTIVS.

This ointment which is entituled *resumptiuum*, is described so excellently well, that it is preferred before all the other which be compounded either to mollifie, assuage, or to relaxe. For neither the ointment *diadipibia*, neither the double pectorall vnguent, and *vnguentum phlagrij*, neither any other hath benefit at any time inuented more excellent to mollifie, and to the fore repeated purposes.

Vnguentum

Vnguentum Agrippæ.

Vnguentum Agrippæ doth not onely mollifie, but also mightily attenuate and deuide and dissipare *ædemata corporis*, cureth inueterate affects of the sinewes, easeth paine of the kidneis, and by anointing prouoketh the belly, and thereby helpeth the drop sicke. *R. radices brionie. lb. ij. radicum cucumeris agrestis. lb. j. scyllæ. lb. s. radices ireos recentis. ʒ. iij. radicum silicis & ebuli, tribuli mariani. ana. ʒ. ij. trunsa omnia recentia maceantur diebus sex vel octo in olei veteris non rancidi. lb. iij. parum deinde seruefiant, & in expresso olei cere citrine. ʒ. xv. liquefiant in vnguento consistentiam.*

PLANTIVS.

The Author doth vpon good occasion admonish, that in the oyntment of Agrippa al the simples should be fresh, and that they must not be boyled much. For notwithstanding being crude, they haue a mollifying and attenuating vertue, yet by boyling that vertue perissheth and is lost: wherefore the Author did in another place very wisely command, that no especiall effectuall caraplasme should be confected to mollifie scirrhus and hard matters of these rootes bruised, and crude with grease and waxe.

Vnguentum Aregon.

Vnguentum Aregon, that is, the helping ointment, doth mightily extenuate and digest, and is very commodious against cold affects of the body, but specially of the sinewes, and is very conuenient against conuulsion, resolution, paine of the lunges, ioynts and great guts. *R. rosmarini, maioranæ, radices iari, serpilli, ruta, radices cucumeris agrestis. ana. ʒ. iij. s. foliorum lauri, saluie, sabina, pulicæ maioris & minoris, radices brionie. ana. ʒ. iij. laureoli. ʒ. ix. foliorum cucumeris agrestis & nopitæ. ana. lb. s. omnia Mayo mense collecta & expurgata tundantur recentia, & maceantur diebus septem in olei optimi. lb. vj. affusa aqua rita lb. j. deinde coquantur dum contabescant & abstracta sit aqua, oleum percolatur in quo cere. ʒ. xvj. liquantur & adapis rrsini, olei laurini. ana. ʒ. iij. olei moschelini. ʒ. s. petrolei. ʒ. j. butyri. ʒ. iij. agitando hi pulueres insperguntur mastiches, olibani. ana. ʒ. vij. picestri, euphorbii, cinthibis, piperis. ana. ʒ. j. omnia vnguenti forma coeant.*

Vnguentum merciatum magnum

Vnguentum merciatum magnum is especially good against cold affects of the braine, sinewes and ioyntes, against quiuering, conuulsion, palsey, and the gout, and is effectuall to mollifie hard tumours especially of the splene. *R. cere albæ. lb. j. olei. lb. iij. rosmarini, foliorum lauri. ana. ʒ. iij. tamariscii. ʒ. iij. ruta. ʒ. iij. s. ebuli, sauinæ, balsamitæ, that is, mentha aquatica, ocymi, salinæ, polygalamithæ, artemisie, hellenij, belonice, acanthæ, quæ est vrsa branchina, aspargule, quæ est aparine anemones quæ herba venti dicitur, pimpinellæ, agrimonij, absinthij, floribus minoris, qui & herba paralis, costii herba hortensis, quæ herba dicitur sancte Marie, cinerum sampsuchi, semperuiui minoris quod Crassula appellatur millefolij, semperuiui maioris, chamædrys, plantaginis seu quinque nerui, centaury minoris, fragariæ, quinque folij, tetralitis, id est, herba Iudaica. ana. ʒ. ij. ʒ. ij. radicum althææ, cumini, mirrhe. ana. ʒ. j. s. fenugraci. ʒ. vj. butyri. ʒ. v. semi. viticæ, violarum & papaueris rubri, mentastri, seu menta agrestis, menta sativa, oxylapati, polytrichi, cardiobataui, id est, cardui benedicti, periclementi, id est, caprisfolij, seu matris syluæ, muratri, herba moschata, quæ est*

prima gerani species, trifolij acetosi, quod aleuya dicitur, scolopendrij, quod est ceterach, crispa, id est bupthalmi, caphorata herba, id est abrotani, styracis, medulle cervinae. ana. ℥.ij. adipis visci, adipis gallinacei, mastiches. ana. ℥.℥. Butiris. ℥.ij. oli nardini, ℥.j. The herbes must be gathered in the moneth of May, and being fresh and Greene, must be bruised and macerated seven daies in the best fragrant wine, and the eighth day they must be boiled together, vntill the halfe be consumed, and then the oile must be powred in, then they must be againe boiled vntill the herbes be wasted, and the wine wholly consumed: after straine and presse out the oile, in which (calefied againe) put, in the order prescribed, styrax, butirum, adipis, mastiches, thus, oleum nardinum & cera, and when they are dissolued with continuall stirring, take them off the fire, and keepe to your vse the ointment then concrete.

PLANTIVS.

Of *unguentum Merciatum* there be three descriptions described in other Authors truly not very necessary against the cold affects of the sinews and other parts, such that *unguentum Aregon* tofore described is effectually enough against them: but whosoever desireth to haue this *unguentum Merciatum*, let him follow this description taken out of *Nicolaus Mirepsus* and corrected.

Unguentum Basilicum minus.

Unguentum Basilicum minus which the auncient Physicians termed *Tetrapharmacum*, doth calefie, humect and mitigate paine, procureth atter, and is very commodious against increasing Phlegmons. R. resine, picis, cere. ana. ℥b. Sand oile as much as sufficeth.

Unguentum Basilicum magnum.

Unguentum Basilicum magnum worketh the same effect, and doth purifie and fill vlcers. R. cera alba, resine, seni vaccini, picis, terebinthine, olibani, myrrhe. ana. ℥j. quod satis est.

PLANTIVS.

The Author thought good to alter nothing in these oyntments, namely *unguento basilico*, *aureo*, *Apostolorum*, *Aegyptiaco* & *emulato*, but he corrected the vncertain and depraued doses of the simples in *unguento citrino*; and he thought good to put in more *radicis dracuntij* (which hath great vertue against the pouldred affects of the skinne) then of *ceruse*, or of any other simple. And in the order of composition he hath expressed a certaine maner of putting in the oranges or citrines, whose pulpe & iuice is no lesse commodious against those malignities of the skinne, yea rather much more better then the rinde.

Unguentum aureum.

Unguentum aureum doth mildly deterge wounds, agglutinate and safely cure them. R. cera citrine. ℥b. Butiris, mastiches. ana. ℥j. olei non rancidi. ℥b. ij. terebinthine. ℥.ij. resine, colophoni. ana. ℥j. S. croci ℥.j. the waxe is melted in oile, and the other simples being exquisitely bruised be put in to them.

Unguentum Apostolorum.

Unguentum Apostolorum doth by detersion purge wounds and rebellious vlcers, and also fistulaes, wasteth fungious and dead flesh, and in stead thereof restoreth new. R. terebinthine, cere alba, ammoniaci. ana. ℥ xiiij. opoponacis, floris aris.

eris. ana. ℥. ij. as ifsolochie rotunde, thuris masculis, bdellij. ana. ℥. vj. myrrhe, galbani. ana. ℥. iij. lithargiri. ℥. ix. olei si aestus fuerit. ℔. ij. si hyems. ℔. ij. bdellium, ammoniacum, opopanax and Galbanum macerated in vinegar, and dissolved with the other brused simples to liquefied oyle and wax, and boiled and stirred into the forme of an ointment.

Vnguentum Egyptiacum.

Vnguentum Egyptiacum doth more forcibly exterge then vnguentum Apostolorum inueterate and fistulous vlcers, doth exciteate and eat out (not without feeling of of paine) excrefcient and dead flesh. R. aruginis. ℥. j. melis optimi. ℥. xiiij. aceti fortis. ℥. vij. all these be boiled together vntill the ointment become thicke and of purple colour.

Vnguentum ex Enula.

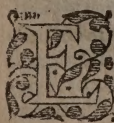
Vnguentum ex Enula, which is called Enulatum, is marvellous effectually against the itch or scabbes, either drie or moist, and also against other filthinesse of the skinne. R. radices enula ex aceto coctae, rosa & creta ℔. j. axongie porci, olei ana. ℥. iij. cera noua. ℥. j. argenti vivi extincti, verbeninae lotae, ana. ℥. ij. salis vulgaris bene trita. ℥. ℔. the waxe and the grease be liquefied in oile, and to them is added Enula, and after quicke siluer and salt, and last turpentine. It shall be with more safetie vsed, if in stead of quicke siluer, of the iuice of fumitorie and lymons. ana. ℥. j. be put in, and both of them must be had seuerall.

Vnguentum Citrinum.

Vnguentum Citrinum, or more truly Citreum, doth repressie pimples shooting out of the skinne, especially in the face, either by meane of choler or of salt fleame, and doth exterge speckles, tetteres, blewnesse, filthie scarres, and rednesse of the eies. R. Boracis. ℥. ij. Caphine. ℥. j. Corallij albi. ℥. ℔. Amiani, id est abominis plumosi, vmbilici marini seu bellirici, tragacanthae, amyli, crystalli, eubathi, dentali, thuris albi, nitri. ana. ℥. ij. cerusa ex radice draconis factae. ℥. j. cerusa vulgaris. ℥. vj. adipis suilli recentis, salis expetit & puri. ℔. ℔. sem. caprini. ℥. j. ℔. adipis gallinacei. ℥. j. Liquefie the fatteres in a double vessell, then macerate in them and with a lent fire boile two oranges cut in small peeces, straine the fat, and then iniekt thereto all the other simples finely brused, and temper them with a splatter. Last of all let the borax and camphire finely brused be strewed in, and after it hath boiled and become thicke, store it to your vse.

Of Emplaisters.

Emplastrum Diachylon simplex.



Emplastrum Diachylon simplex doth mollifie the hard tumours of the liuer, splene and externall partes, and likewise dissolueth, and by little and little dissipateth anie scirrions matter, if it be applied in the beginning. R. Mucilaginum seminis fenugreci, seminis lini, radicum altheae. ana. ℔. j. olei veteris puri ℔. iij. lithargiri purgati atque triti. ℔. j. ℔. The litharge must be dissolved in a morter with oyle by litle and litle, vntill

they be exquisitely mixed. Then boile them with a lent fire, and temper them still with a platter vntill they become thicke. After put into them leasurly the muscilages depromed, and boyle them to the substance of an emplaiſter, and if need ſo require, that it ſhould be more forcible in working, for euery pound of ſimples put in ʒ. j. of the roote of ſloure-deluce powdred.

Emplaſtrum Diachylon magnum.

Emplaſtrum Diachylon magnum is more effectuell for all and euery the affecte ſcoteſore repeated, for that it conſiſteth of more mollifying and digeſting ſimples. *R.* Lythargiri puri, triti, & creti. ʒ. j. olei irini, chamemelini & anethini. ana. ʒ. viij. muſcilaginum ſemini lini, ſenugreci, ſicuum pinguium & vearum paſſarum, ſucci iridis & ſcille, & ſipi. icathiocolle. ana. ʒ. xij. ʒ. terebinthine. ʒ. iij. reſine pini, cere citrine. ana. ʒ. ij. reduce them all to an emplaiſter in like order as hath bene deſcribed in the ſimple.

Emplaſtrum è muſcilaginibus.

Emplaſtrum è muſcilaginibus doth alſo mightily mollifie and digeſt hard tumours, it doth ripen an abſceſſe of humours, and when it is burſt, it ſcourereth the quitture and atture. *R.* Muſcilaginum, ſemini lini, alibæ, ſenugreci, & mediani, corticis vltmi. ana. ʒ. iij. ʒ. oleorum chamemeli, liliorum & anethi. ana. ʒ. j. ammoniaci, galbani, opoponacis, ſagapeni. ana. ʒ. ʒ. croci. ʒ. ij. terebinthine. ʒ. ij. cera noua. ʒ. xx. make an emplaiſter in order before preſcribed.

PLANTIVE IN EMPLASTRA.

The auncient Phyſicians haue deſcribed many mollifying emplaiſters, and foure of theſe they intituled vnder the name of *Diachylon*, whereof theſe two be the beſt. And as for this emplaiſter of the muſcilages it worketh more forcibly againſt all the ſoſaid affectes then that which is aſcribed vnto the ſonne of *Zacharie*, wherefore the Author thought it not good to mention that.

Emplaſtrum è Meliloto.

Emplaſtrum è Meliloto doth mightily mollifie alſo and digeſt, and mitigareth paine, and is verie conuenient in hard tumours of the ſtomacke, breaſt, and ſplene, and the outretching hypochondria. *R.* Meliloti. ʒ. vj. foliorum chamemelii, ſemini ſenugreci, radicis altheæ, baccarum lauri, abſinthij, ſampſuib. ana. ʒ. iij. cardamomi, cyperi, yreos, ſpicæ nardi, ammeos, caſſie lignæ, ſeminiſ opij, aniſi, ana. ʒ. ij. ʒ. ammoniaci. ʒ. x. ſtyracis, bdellij, ana. ʒ. v. terebinthine. ʒ. j. ʒ. ſicci pingues. xij. ſem. vrfini, reſine. ana. ʒ. ij. ʒ. cere. ʒ. vj. olei maiorani & nardini, ſo much as ſufficeth, make thereof an emplaiſter, liqueſie the goates ſuer, the roſin and the waxe in oyle, and put into them ſicci pingues tritas & cretas, then ammoniacum and bdellium diſſolued in vinegar, and laſtly the powders of the other ſimples ſearced.

PLANTIVS.

Emplaſtrum è meliloto, è baccis lauri, ceroneum, and oxicroseum ſeeme to be ſufficient againſt all affectes and paines which require digeſtion and reſolution, ſo that other be not neceſſarie, namely, neither *emplaſtrum è ſinapi*, nor *varia emplaſtra è fermento*, nor *emplaſtrum ex alijs*, nor the emplaiſter which is imputed to *Ariſtarchus*.

Emplaſtrum

Emplastrum à baccis lauri.

Emplastrum à baccis lauri doth maruellously assuage the torments of the stomacke, midriffe, intrailes, wombe, bladder, and other partes, especially taking their originall of any cold cause or of wind. R. *Thuris, mastiches, myrrhe, ana. ʒ. j. baccarum lauri. ʒ. ij. ciperi, costi. ana. ʒ. ʒ. mellis colati* so much as sufficeth to thicken them. And some there be that suppose it a maruellous emplaster for the dropisie, if the dose of *ciperus* be, ʒ. j. ʒ. and. lb. ʒ. of dried goates doing be put thereto.

Emplastrum Ceroneum.

Emplastrum ceroneum doth mollifie the hardnesse of the splene, doth release the cold affects of the wombe, and easeth the paines of the breast and shoulders proceeding of cold. R. *picis naualis colati, cera. ana. ʒ. ij. ʒ. iij. sagapeni. ʒ. ij. ammoniaci, cerebinthine, colophony, croci. ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. iij. aloes, thuris, myrrhe. ana. ʒ. j. opoponacis, styracis, galbani, mastiches, aluminis, fenugreci, styracis rubri, bdellij, ana. ʒ. iij. lythargiri. ʒ. j. ʒ. & the emplaster must be made in this wise: Sagapenum ammoniacum, opoponax, galbanum & fix must be liquefied in wine & strained, then put too the colophoniam colatam, deinde styracem, mastichon, thus, myrrham, bdellium, trita cretaque. Forthwith iniekt turpentine, alume, lytharge and fenugrecke. The emplaster which is made of this, is put into cold water, and wrought with the hands, by addition of the powder of aloes and saffron, alwayes anointing your hands with oyle of laurell, and thereof concinnate Magdala.*

Emplastrum oxicroceum.

Emplastrum Oxicroceum doth mollifie and dissipate also euery kind of hardness, doth assuage and driue away the paine of the ioynts, and the paine about the membranes of the bones. R. *Cera, picis naualis, croci, colophonie, ana. ʒ. iij. cerebinthine, ammoniaci, galbani, myrrhe, thuris, mastiches. ana. ʒ. j. ʒ. iij. galbanum and ammoniacum* must be liquefied and strained in vineger, then the pitch must be strained and put thereto: after that the waxe, forthwith colophoniam and the turpentine, a little while after the masticke and the myrhe. The emplaster being decocted must be put in cold water, and being streined out, must be wrought with powder of saffron, anointing your hand with oyle.

Emplastrum de Ianna.

Emplastrum de Ianna is maruellous effectuall in wounds and greene vlcers, it pacifieth an inflammation, it detergeth, agglutinateth and incarnateth, and also cicat rizeth. R. *succorum apij, plantaginis & betonica, cera, picis, resine, cerebinthina. ana. lb. ʒ.* Let three of the simples be concocted in the iuyces, stirring them easily to the consumption of the iuyces, then take them off the fire and put thereto cerebinthina.

Emplastrum gratia Dei.

Emplastrum gratia Dei consisteth almost of the same simples, and serueth to the same vse. R. *Terebinthina. lb. ʒ. resine. lb. j. cera alba. ʒ. iij. mastiches. ʒ. j. betonica, borbene, pimpinella recentium. ana. M. j.* Bruise the herbes, and boile them in white wine till they consume. Then straine out the liquor, in which concoct the waxe, rosin and masticke to an apt consistencie of an emplaster, and

when they are taken off the fire, mingle with them the turpentine.

Emplastrum diuinum.

Emplastrum diuinum is farre better against maligne vlcers, for it detergeth and consumeth quitture and corruption, and ingendreth new flesh, and bringeth them to an ascarre. *R.* Galbani, myrba. ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. ammoniaci. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. epomacis, mastiches, aristolochie longe, eruginis, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.i. lythargiri, olei communis, ana. $\mathfrak{ss}$. cere noue, $\mathfrak{z}$. viij. thuris. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. bdellij. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. magnesi. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. The lytharge by stirring is mingled with the oyle after it is boyled, vntill it become thicke. Then the waxe cut in small peeces is added, which being liquefied is taken off the fire, and forthwith be injected galbanum, ammoniacum, opoponax and bdellium, dissolved in vineger and wine, boyled and strained: after the powder, myrre, mastiches, thuris, aristolochie rotunde, & magnesi is sprinkled in: in fine, puluis eruginis, lest that if it should be boyled any long space the emplaister become red.

PLANTIVS IN EMPLASTRVM DIVINVM.

These emplaisters de Ianna, gratia Dei, & Diuinu which be described against wounds and vlcers, be also sufficient enough, so that it were vnnecessarie in this place to repeate any other. For emplastrum Oribasij duplex, & emplastrum Apostoloru be all comprehended vnder this Diuine emplaister, all which serue for the same purpose, but yet with lesse efficacy.

Emplastrum ad Herniam.

Emplastrum ad Herniam. *R.* Gallarum, mucumcupressi, pillij, balaustiarum, acatie, seminis plantaginis, seminis pillij, seminis nasturij, cepularum glandium, febarum torrefuclarum, aristolochie longe & rotunda, mirtilorum, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ss. Bring all these to powder, and macerate them foure daies in vineger of roses, then torrefie and drie them.

Aliud.

Emplastrum aliud ad Herniam. *R.* consolidamaioris & minoris, caudæ equine, glâsti, scolopendrij, radicis osmundie regalis & silicis, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.j. thuris, myrre, aloes, mastiches, mummie, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. boli armene lotæ in aceto, lapidis calaminæ preparati, lythargiri auri, sanguinis draconis, ana. $\mathfrak{z}$.ij. picis naualis $\mathfrak{ss}$.ij. terebintine, $\mathfrak{z}$.vj. or as much as sufficeth to make an emplaister.

PLANTIVS.

There be omitted here also other emplaisters astringing and corroborating the stomacke, kidneis and wombe, which be not in vse, and in stead whereof certaine other receipts be vsually ordained for present necessitie, so that this number of emplaisters and compositions seemeth enough both to store the Apothecaries shop, and to cure the chiefe kindes of diseases, causes and symptomes; neither was it necessarie to stuffe this Medicamentarie booke with vnusuall and vnnecessarie compositions, which cannot but vainely be repeated to make vp a confused number. And as for such compositions as auile to their peculiar effectes (because they be seldome put in vse) be described as conuenient and peculiar to the diseases and partes in the proper curation of euery part and disease.

The end of the eight booke.

A G E.

A GENERALL TABLE OF ALL THE PRINCIPALL MATTERS CONTAINED IN THIS VOLUME.

The Table of the first Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1. Of paine in the head.	1	30. A Treatise of the worthinesse of the eyes.	
2. Of headach caused of heate.	2	49. 50	
3. Of headach caused of cold.	5	31. Of the Cataract, what it is, and how to helpe it.	51. 52
4. Of headach caused of drinesse and moistnesse.	6	32. Of the three kindes of Cataracts incurable.	53
5. Of headach caused of bloud.	7	33. Of diseases which chaunce to the eyes, by bloud, choler, fleame and melancholie, and their cures.	ead.
6. Of headach caused of choler.	8. 9	ead. The making of an excellent water called a Collirium.	eadem
7. Of headach caused of fleame.	10	34. Of Pannicles.	54. 55
8. Of headach caused of windinesse.	11	35. Of the maladies in the eye proceeding of choler.	57
9. Of headach caused of the stomach.	12. 13.	36. Of the infirmities of the eye caused of melancholie.	58. 59
10. Of headach caused of drunkennes.	13. 14.	37. Of diseases happening to the eyes by outward causes, as by blowes with sticks, staves or stones.	60
11. Of headach caused of fevers.	14. 15	38. Of diseases which come by skipping in of stones or chips by chaunce into the eyes.	61
12. Of headach caused of old paine in the rate in the head.	15.	39. Of paine in the eares.	62.
13. Of headach called the Migraine.	17	40. Of sound or noise in the eares.	63
14. Of giddinesse in the head called Vertigo.	18. 19.	41. Of deafnesse and slow hearing.	64
15. Of the Frensie.	21	42. Of Impostumes breeding in the eares.	65.
16. Of the Leithargie.	24. 25	43. Of vlcers in the nose.	66
17. Of the losse of memorie.	26. 27	44. Of bleeding at the nose.	66. 67
18. Of dead sleepe called Carus or Suberis.	29	45. Of distillation, rheume, and boarcenesse.	68
19. Of congelation or taking.	ead.	46. Of paine in the teeth.	70
20. Of profound sleepe called Sopor or Coma.	30. 31.	47. Of teeth that be blacke and loose.	71
21. Of the losse both of moving and sense, called Apoplexie.	31. 32	48. Of vlcers in the mouth.	ead.
22. Of the Palsie in halfe the bodie.	33. 34.	49. Of a sinking mouth.	72
23. Of the Palsie in one member only.	38. 39		
24. Of the falling sicknesse.	40. 41		
25. Of the Crampe.	42. 43		
26. Of the Mave.	43		
27. Of Madnesse.	44. 45		
28. Of Melancholie.	45. 46		
29. Against trembling and shaking, called Tremor.	48. 49		

platonus

THE TABLE.

The Table of the second Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1. A gainst inflammation of the Colu- mella.	74	10. Of spitting of blood.	87.88
2. Of a loose Columella.	75	11. Of spitting of matter.	90
3. Of inflammation of the tonsils.	76	12. Of the Plisicke.	91.92
4. Of malignant vlcers of the tonsils.	77	13. Of panting of the heart.	93
5. Of the Squinancie.	78	14. Of Swallowing.	95.96
6. Of the Cough.	80	15. Of lacke of milke.	98
7. Of the Asthma.	82	16. Of abundance of milke.	99
8. Of the Pleurisie.	83.84	17. Of milke that is curded in the breastes of women.	100
9. Of the inflammation of the lungs.	85.86	18. Of inflammation of the paps in women.	

101

The Table of the third booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1. O f weaknes of the stomach.	101.102	29. Of obstructions of the Splene.	151
2. Of yelking and vomiting.	104	30. Of the laundies.	eadem
3. Of immoderate thirst.	105	31. Of the euill state of the bodie.	154
4. Of paine in the stomach.	106	32. Of the Dropisie.	155
5. Of inflammation of the stomach.	107	33. Of the dropisie Anasarca.	157
6. Of abhorring of meate.	108	34. Of the dropisie Ascites.	159
7. Of a doglike appetite.	110	35. Of the dropisie Tympanites.	ead.
8. Of great famine.	112	36. Of the reimes that send forth bloudie u- rine.	160
9. Of euill digestion.	113	37. Of inflammation of the reimes.	161
10. Of windinesse of the stomach.	115	38. Of the stone in the reimes.	163
11. Of yelking or bicket.	117	39. Of vnmeasurable pissing.	167
12. Of cholera.	119	40. Against vlcers of the reimes.	168
13. Of the fluxe Diarrhea.	120.121	41. Of the stone in the bladder.	170
14. Of the fluxe Lienteria.	123	42. Of bloud broken out of the bladder, or curded in it.	ead.
15. Of the fluxe Disenteria.	125	43. Of inflammation of the bladder.	173
16. Of Tenasmus.	127	44. Of vlcers of the bladder, and in the necke of the same.	ead.
17. Of the Cholicke.	129	45. Of the Strangurie.	175
18. Of Iliaca passio.	132	46. Of difficultie of pissing.	176
19. Of VVormes.	134	47. Of stopping of the vrine.	177
20. Of the Hemorrhoides.	137	48. Of exulceration of the priuie members.	178.
21. Of the falling out of the tuell.	139	49. Of the continuall standing of the yard.	179.
22. Of cleftes of the fundament.	140	50. Of shedding of sperme or seede.	180
23. Of the weaknesse of the liuer.	ead.	51. Of losse of carnall copulation.	182
24. Of the obstructions of the liuer.	143		52. Against
25. Of inflammation of the liuer.	144		
26. Of distempere of the splene.	147		
27. Of the inflammation of the Splene.	149		
28. Of hardnesse of the Splene.	150		

THE TABLE.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
52. Against brasting or emptines.	183	60. Of vwindinesse in the womb.	ead.
53. Of stopping of Menstruus.	185	61. Of exulceration of the womb.	199
54. Of flowing of menstruus.	189	62. Of straightnesse of the matrice.	200
55. Of vomans fluxe.	190	63. To take away barrennesse.	201
56. Of strangling of the womb.	191	64. Of sore trauell in child-birth.	204
57. Of falling out of the womb.	194	65. Of the Sciatica.	205
58. Of the Mole in the matrice.	195	66. Of the goutte in the feete and ioynts.	210
59. Of inflammation of the womb.	198		

The Table of the fourth Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1. A N exposition of feauers.	215	7. Of a pure intermitting Tertian.	232
A table of feauers.	219	8. Against a bastardly Tertian.	236
2. Of one day feauer.	220	9. Of a Quartaine feauer.	238
3. Of a Diarie lasting moe daies.	224	10. Of a Quotidian feauer.	241
4. Of a rotten feauer called Synochus.	226	11. Of a feauer Ethicke.	242
5. Against continuall feauers.	228	12. Of a Hemetrice feauer.	245
6. Of a burning feauer.	230	13. Of the pestilence.	246

The Table of the fifth Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1. W Hat swellings happen besides nature, commonly called Apostema.	255.	iudgements thereof.	269.
2. Of the differences of those tumours which happen besides nature.	257.	Four kinds or times of tumours besides nature.	270.
From whence the difference of tumours about nature.	258.	Signes of putrefaction.	271.
Of hote humours.	ead.	What abscessions may easily be digested.	273.
Of cold humours.	ead.	5. The common order of curing of tumours.	ead.
Tumours complicati, one will seemeth to haue affinity with the other.	ead.	Four things to be considered chiefly in the nature of affected members.	274.
Of the chiefe tumours that are caused of flowing of humours.	259.	The finding out of the causes, the beginning of the cure of tumors about nature.	275.
What tumours do associate Phlegmon.	eadem.	The common ingendring of euerie Phlegmone.	ead.
Of Erysipelatosi tumours.	ead.	Cases in which we may not use repelling or repressing remedies.	276.
Of Testudo and Talpa.	260.	6. Of Abscessions generally.	278.
Of Schirrosi tumours & Cancer.	ead.	The best order of curing is declared three wayes.	279.
Of Lepra.	261.	7. Of a true Phlegmone, and of other tumors ingendred of bloud.	282.
Four kinds of Impetigo.	ead.	Four differences of tumors caused of bloud.	ead.
Of white pustules.	265.	8. Of the causes, signes, and iudgements of Phlegmone.	283.
3. Of the causes of tumours about nature appearing vniuersally on the outside of the bodie.	265.		
4. Of the signes of tumors besides nature generally appearing, together with the			

THE TABLE.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
9. The order of curing Phlegmone caused of the defluxion of humours affecting the outward partes of the bodie. 284. Four intentions in the cure of Phlegmone. 285		20. Of Oedema and other cold, flegmaticke, and flatuous tumours. 317	
10. Of a carbuncle and a Cancere. 292		21. Of the cure of Oedema caused of a flegmaticke humor flowing into some member. 319	
11. Of the cure of a Carbuncle. 294		22. Of Tumours about nature, which the Latins call Inflationes, but they are commonly called windie Apostemes. 323	
12. Of Gangrena and Sphacelus. 297		23. Of a tumour caused of a thin substance, which they call Aquosum apostema, that is a waterish Aposteme. 327	
13. Of the cure of Gangrena. 299		24. Of the diseases called Glandulae, Nodi, and Struma, together with other Abscessions, which they call Phlegmaticae excrementiae. 330	
14. Of Erysipelas and other tumours caused of choler. 302		25. Of hard and schirrous tumours, engendred of Melancholy. 346	
15. Of the signes and tokens of a true Erysipelas. 304		26. Of a Cancerous tumour, which they commonly call Cancer Apostematofus. 354	
16. Of the cure of Erysipelas. 305			
17. Of tumours which do associate Erysipelas, as Herpes, both Miliaris and Exedens, which are called of the late Chyrurgians, cholerick pushes. 309			
18. Of the evils called Formicae, and of other differences of Verrucae. 314			
19. The iudgements and cure of Verrucae. 315.			

The Table of the sixth Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1. Of the diuers names of Morbus Gallicus, and where it had beginning. 361		14. What quantity of the decoction is to be taken at once. eadem.	
2. Of the signes thereof. 362		15. How many dayes this decoction is to be receiued. 373	
3. Of the causes of the breaking out of Pusules. 364		16. Of the time of giuing this decoction, and things to be obserued therein. ead.	
4. Of the cure of Morbus Gallicus. 365		17. Of things to be eschued of him that receiue this decoction. eadem.	
5. Of Fumigations. ead.		18. Of things to be corrected, or symptomates to be oppugned in this cure. 374	
6. Of purging of Morbus Gallicus. 367		19. Of Excrements. 375	
7. Of the preparation of humours. ead.		20. Of Diet to be obserued in this cure. 376.	
8. Of the certaine and true medicine for the disease. 368		21. Of the roote of China. ead.	
9. What sort of that wood is to be chosen best for this purpose. ead.		22. Of the way of making the decoction of the roote of China. 377	
10. Of the decoction of Guaicum. 369		23. Of the election of China. ead.	
11. Of the making of the compound decoction of this wood. 370		24. Of another maner of making the decoction with Sassa and the wood, and without the wood, and sometime with the bark. ead.	
12. Of the time conuenient to giue this decoction. 372			
13. Of the place where this decoction is to			

THE TABLE.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
barke.	ead.	nigne and harmlesse.	ead.
25. Of other faculties or vertues which this		30. Of making Suffumigations.	ead.
Sassa baib.	379	31. Of the Cure by annointing with quicke	
26. Of Suffumigations vobich some prasti-		silucr.	382
tioners vse.	ead.	32. To correct the symptomata which hap-	
27. Of the manner of perfuming the vvhole		pen in the mouth in this vway of curing.	
boadie.	380	383.	
28. Of the symptomata vobich sometime		33. Of the diuers compositions of ointments	
happen in this vway of curing.	381	which be v'sed in this vway of curing.	384
29. Of Suffumigations made of a matter be-		34. Of Precipitatum giuen by the mouth.	ead.

The Table of the seuenth Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1. O f Suppositaries.	385	16. Of making a Lokocho or Ecligma.	406
2. Of making Nodulus.	386	17. Of making Balneum, and Semicupium.	
3. Of making Pessaries.	ead.	407.	
4. Of clisters or Enema.	387	18. Of Epithema or Fetus.	408
5. Of making Syrupus.	390	19. Of making Sacculus.	409
6. Of making Iuleps.	393	20. Of making Scutum.	ead.
7. Of Dolis siue Potio.	ead.	21. Of making a Cataplasme.	410
8. Of making Bolus.	398	22. Of making Emplastrum.	ead.
9. Of making Pilles.	399	23. Of making vnguenta.	411
10. Of making Aporema.	ead.	24. Of making a Liniment.	413
11. Of making Mulso.	400	25. Of making Frontale.	ead.
12. Of making Powders.	401	26. Of making Cucufa and Semicucufa.	414
13. Of Electuaries and Conserues, of Lozen-		27. Of making Suffitus.	eadem.
ges and Mannus Christi.	ead.	28. Of making Collirium.	415
14. Of making Conditum & Conserua.	404	29. Of making Nasale, or Eribinum.	ead.
15. Of making Pasta Regia or Maxapane.		30. Of making Apophlegmatismus.	416
405.		31. Of making Distillations restoratiue.	ead.

The Table of the eight Booke.

Of Syrupes.		Syrupus è radicibus.	ead.
S yrupus Acidus simplex.	419	Syrupus Adiantinus.	427
Syrupus è succo Limonium.	421	Syrupus è Stœchade.	ead.
Oxifaccharum simplex.	422	Syrupus rosarum siccarum.	428
Oximel simplex.	ead.	Syrupus Nymphae.	ead.
Oximel scilliticum.	423	Syrupus de Papauere.	429
Syrupus è Cichorio.	424	Diacodion.	ead.
Syrupus Intubi domestici.	425	Syrupus Violarum.	430
Syrupus Byzantinus.	ead.	Syrupus Zyziphorum.	431
Syrupus Scolopendrij.	426	Syrupus de Hyssopo.	ead.

THE TABLE.

Syrupus de Prasso.	ead.	Pilule Polychrestæ.	445
Syrupus Symplicis.	432	Pilule de Lapide Cyaneæ.	ead.
Syrupus è succo Buglossi.	ead.	Pilule de Thymelea.	ead.
Syrupus è cortico Citrij.	433	Pilule ex Esula.	eadem.
Syrupus Melissophylli.	ead.	Pilule è Cynoglossò.	446
Syrupus è Menta.	eadem.	Pilule Astrolachne.	ead.
Syrupus Absinthij.	ead.		
Cydoniorum miba, that is, the iuyce deco- cted to thicknesse.	ead.		
Syrupus Martini.	434		
Syrupus Fumariæ.	ead.		
Syrupus è malis odoriferis.	ead.		
Syrupus Althææ.	ead.		
Syrupus Raphani.	435		
Syrupus Artemisæ.	ead.		

Of drie Antidotaries.

Of purging receipts.

Electuarium è Prunis.	436	Pulvis Cordiacus.	450
Catholicum simplex.	437	Aromaticum rosarum maius.	ead.
Catholicum maius.	ead.	Electuarium Diarrhœdæ abbatis.	eadem.
Syrupus infusionis rosarum pallidarum.	ead.	Electuarium Diatrion santalon.	451
Electuarium è succo rosarum.	438	Diacroc.	eadem.
Diacydonion.	ead.	Dialacca maior.	ead.
Electuarium Diacnicæ.	ead.	Electuarium exhilarans.	452
Diaphenicon.	eadem.	Electuarium Diaspermaton.	ead.
Benedicta.	439	Electuarium de Baccis Spon.	ead.
Confectio Hamecis.	ead.	Electuarium diacalaminthes compositum.	ead.
Hiera simplex.	440		
Hiera Diacolocynthidos.	ead.		

Of moist Antidotaries.

Hydragogum minus.	441		
Hydragogum maius.	ead.		
Unguentum Latheride.	ead.		
Electuarium Diasari.	442		
Pilule Stomachicæ.	ead.		
Pilule Russi.	ead.		
Pilule Assaieret.	443		
Pilule de Eupatorio.	ead.		
Pilule Mastichinæ.	ead.		
Pilule Imperiales.	ead.		
Pilule sine quibus esse nolo.	ead.		
Pilule è Fumaria.	444		
Pilule Auræ.	ead.		
Pilule de Agarico.	ead.		
Pilule Coccæ.	ead.		
Pilule ex Hermodactylis.	ead.		

De Trochiscis seu Pastillis.

Trochisci è Piperæ.	455
Trochisci Syllitici.	ead.

Trochisci

THE TABLE.

Trochisci Cythereos.
Trochisci Cappariibus.
Trochisci de Eupatorio.
Trochisci Alkakengi sem Halycacabi.
Trochisci Myrrha.
Trochisci Terra Lemnia.
Trochisci Capbura.
Trochisci Gallie muschate.
Trochisci Alypte muschate.
Trochisci Bechici albi.
Trochisci Narchotici.

De Ecligmatis & Conditis.

Ecligma e pineis nucibus.
Ecligma e Scylla.
Ecligma ad Asthma.
Certaine Conditis.
Of Conserues.

Of Oyles.

Oleum Rosarum.
Oleum Violarum.
Oleum Nimphee.
Oleum Papaueris.
Oleum Hyosciami albi.
Oleum Mandagore simplex.
Oleum Mandagore compositum.
Oleum Melinum, quod e Cydoniorum.
Oleum Mirtinum.
Oleum Mastichinum.
Oleum Menthe.
Oleum Absinthij.
Oleum Chamamelinum.
Oleum Liliorum.
Oleum Lencij.
Oleum Iasminum.
Oleum Anethinum.
Oleum Amigdarum dulcium.
Oleum Lumbicorum.
Oleum Irimum.
Oleum Rutaceum.
Oleum Amigdarum amararum.
Oleum e Cappariibus.
Oleum Nardinum.

ead. Oleum Nardinum compositum.
458. Oleum Laurinum.
ead. Oleum Vulpinum.
ead. Oleum e Scorpionibus.
ead. Oleum Terebinthine.
459. Oleum Recinum.
ead. Oleum Balauinum.
ead. Oleum e Castoreo.
ead. Oleum Euphorbij simplex.
ead. Oleum de lateribus.
460. Petroleum.

Vnguentum Galeni refrigerans.
Vnguentum Rosarum.
Vnguentum Populeum.
465. Vnguentum album.
ead. Vnguentum astringens.
ead. Vnguentum Diacalciteos.
461. Vnguentum Diapompholygos.
ead. Vnguentum rubrum exsiccat.
Vnguentum Dialibeos.
Vnguentum Resumptiuum.
Vnguentum Agrippa.

462. Vnguentum Aregon.
ead. Vnguentum Merciatum magnum.
ead. Vnguentum Basilicum minus.
463. Vnguentum Basilicum magnum.
ead. Vnguentum Aureum.
ead. Vnguentum Apostolorum.
ead. Vnguentum Egyptiacum.
ead. Vnguentum ex Enula.
ead. Vnguentum Citrinum.

Of Emplaisters.

Emplastrum Diachylon simplex.
Emplastrum Diachylon magnum.
Emplastrum muscilagnis.
Emplastrum e Meliloto.
Emplastrum e baccis Lauvi.
465. Emplastrum Ceroneum.
ead. Emplastrum oxicroceum.
ead. Emplastrum de Ianna.
ead. Emplastrum Gratia Dei.
ead. Emplastrum Diuinum.
ead. Emplastrum ad Herniam.
466. Aliud ad Herniam.

FINIS.

THE 1813

Newcastle

